



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

# ΗΡΟΔΟΤΟΣ



Educ T1240.800.908

Harvard College Library



LIBRARY OF THE

Department of Education

COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS

Contributed by the Publishers

TRANSFERRED

TO

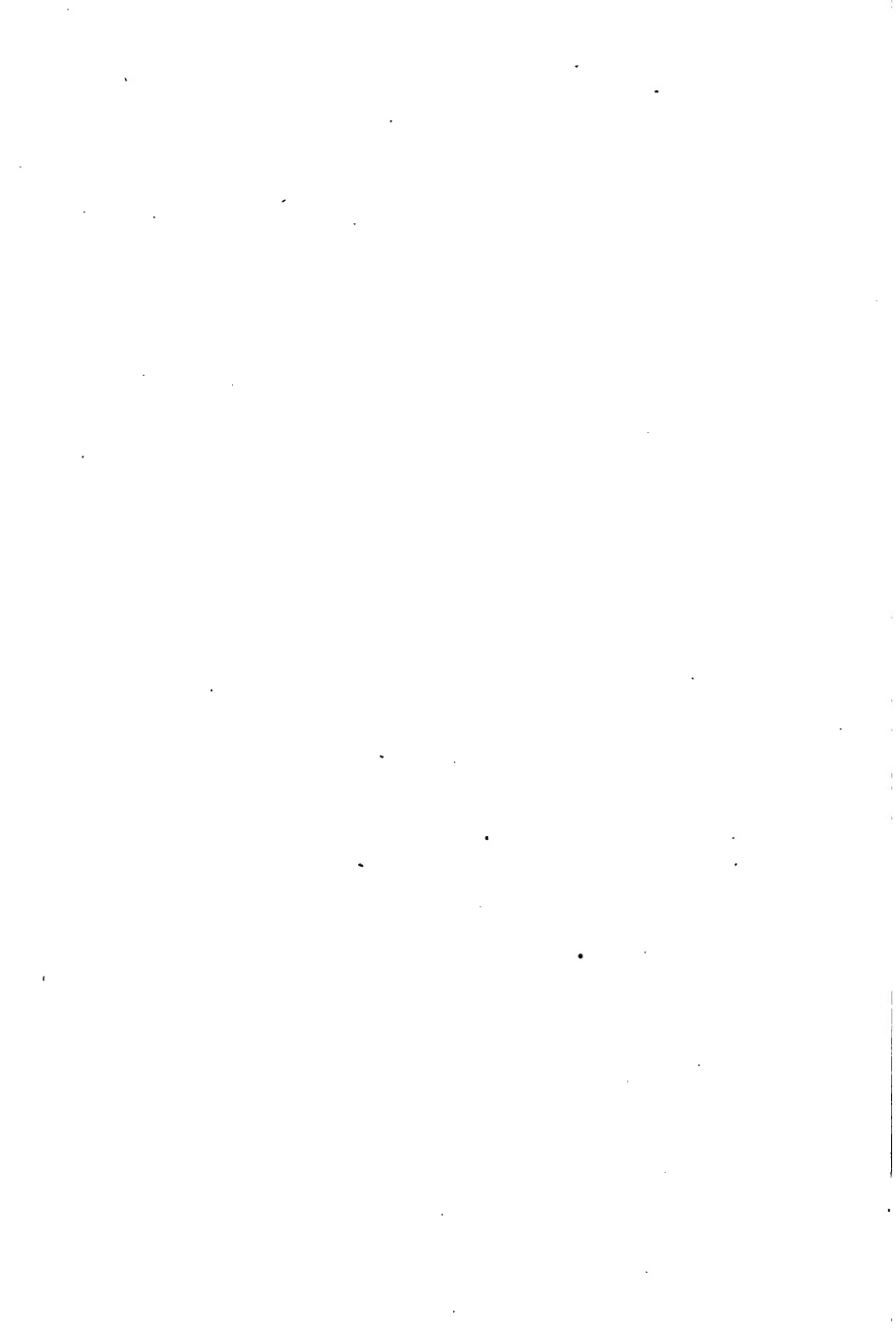
HARVARD COLLEGE

LIBRARY



3 2044 102 850 591









**GREEK SERIES FOR COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS**

**EDITED**

**UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF**

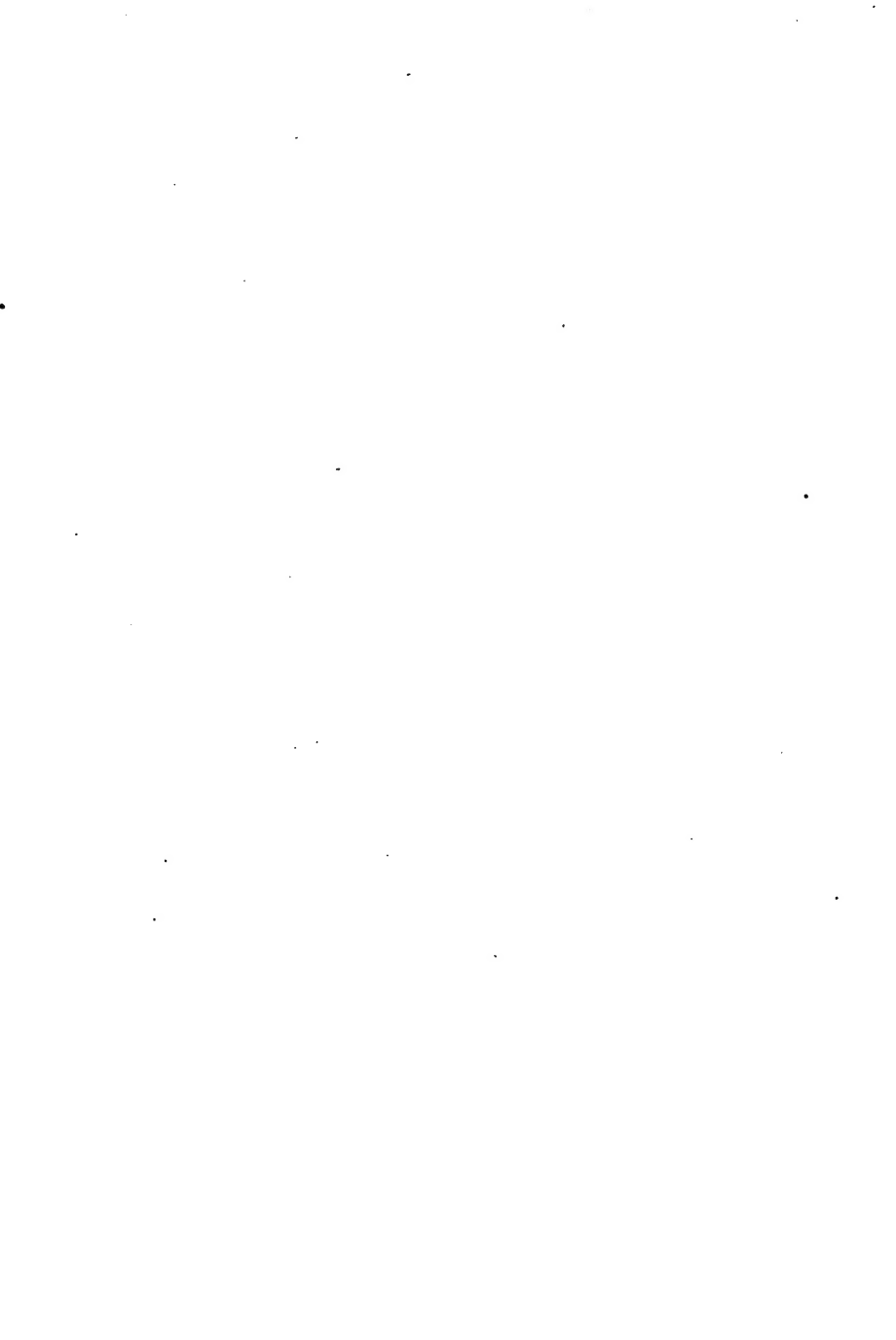
**HERBERT WEIR SMYTH, PH.D.**

**ELIOT PROFESSOR OF GREEK LITERATURE IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY**

## VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

- GREEK GRAMMAR. By the Editor.
- BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK. Prof. Allen R. Benner, Phillips Academy, Andover; and the Editor. \$1.25.
- BRIEF GREEK SYNTAX. Prof. Louis Bevier, Jr., Rutgers College. \$0.90.
- GREEK PROSE READER. Prof. F. E. Woodruff, Bowdoin College, and Prof. J. W. Hewitt, Wesleyan University.
- GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR SCHOOLS. Clarence W. Gleason, Volkmann School, Boston. \$0.80.
- GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR COLLEGES. Prof. Edward H. Spieker, Johns Hopkins University. \$1.30.
- AESCHYLUS. AGAMEMNON. Prof. Paul Shorey, University of Chicago.
- AESCHYLUS. PROMETHEUS. Prof. J. E. Harry, University of Cincinnati. \$1.50.
- ARISTOPHANES. CLOUDS. Dr. L. L. Forman, Cornell University.
- DEMOSTHENES. ON THE CROWN. Prof. Milton W. Humphreys, University of Virginia.
- EURIPIDES. IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. Prof. William N. Bates, University of Pennsylvania. \$1.25.
- EURIPIDES. MEDEA. Prof. Mortimer Lamson Earle, Columbia University. \$1.25.
- HERODOTUS. Books VII.-VIII. Prof. Charles Forster Smith and Prof. Arthur Gordon Laird, University of Wisconsin.
- HOMER. ILIAD. Prof. J. R. S. Sterrett, Cornell University.
- BOOKS I.-III. AND SELECTIONS. \$1.60. BOOKS I.-III. \$1.20.
- HOMER. ODYSSEY. Prof. Charles B. Gulick, Harvard University.
- LYSIAS. Prof. Charles D. Adams, Dartmouth College. \$1.50.
- PLATO. APOLOGY AND CRITO. Prof. Isaac Flagg, University of California. \$1.40.
- PLATO. EUTHYPHRO. Prof. William A. Heidel, Wesleyan University. \$1.00.
- THEOCRITUS. Prof. Henry R. Fairclough and Prof. Augustus T. Murray, Leland Stanford, Jr., University.
- THUCYDIDES. Books II.-III. Prof. W. A. Lamberton, University of Pennsylvania. \$1.75.
- THUCYDIDES. Books VI.-VII. Prof. E. D. Perry, Columbia University.
- XENOPHON. ANABASIS. Books I.-IV. Prof. J. W. Hewitt, Wesleyan University, and Dr. M. W. Mather, late Instructor in Harvard University.
- XENOPHON. HELLENICA (Selections). Prof. Carleton L. Brownson, College of the City of New York. \$1.65.
- GREEK ARCHAEOLOGY. Prof. Harold N. Fowler, Western Reserve University, and Prof. James R. Wheeler, Columbia University.
- GREEK LITERATURE. Dr. Wilmer Cave Wright, Bryn Mawr College. \$1.50.
- GREEK PUBLIC LIFE. Prof. Henry A. Sill, Cornell University.
- GREEK RELIGION. Prof. Arthur Fairbanks, Director of the Boston Museum of Fine Arts.
- GREEK SCULPTURE. Prof. Rufus B. Richardson, late Director of the American School of Classical Studies, Athens.
- INTRODUCTION TO THE GREEK DRAMA. Prof. William Fenwick Harris, Harvard University.
- BEGINNER'S NEW TESTAMENT GREEK BOOK. Prof. William H. P. Hatch, Episcopal Theological School, Cambridge, Mass.

*Others to be announced later.*





**Herodotus**

(From the double Hermes at Naples)

# HERODOTUS

## BOOKS VII AND VIII

EDITED WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES

BY

CHARLES FORSTER SMITH

PROFESSOR OF GREEK AND CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN

AND

ARTHUR GORDON LAIRD

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF GREEK AND COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY  
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN

NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY



~~7112.4957~~

Edw T 1240.800.908  
v

Harvard University,  
Dept. of Education Library,  
Gift of the Publishers.

JUN 12 1929

TRANSFERRED TO  
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
June 12, 1929

COPYRIGHT, 1908, BY  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.  
ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

HERODOTUS.

W. P. I

## PREFACE

THE basis of this edition of Books VII and VIII of Herodotus is the Teubner (Kallenberg) text, the few variations being mainly restorations of Mss. readings; in matters of dialect, however, we have followed Fritsch, who established the precedent of making the Ionic inscriptions the basis for determining Herodotean forms. The chief variations from Fritsch have been the use of *eo* for *ev* and the retention of the rough breathing.

The great edition of Stein has been consulted at every point, and more has been borrowed from him than from any other source. Much indebtedness is due also to Sitzler's excellent common-sense edition, especially as a guide in the effort to be brief, to the point, and not over-learned. Krüger and Abicht have also been constantly in hand, and especial mention should be made of help derived from Merriam for Book VII. Other works of especial interest are mentioned in the Bibliography.

The notes on Book VII are by Professor Smith, those on Book VIII by Professor Laird. The Historical Introduction — borrowed substantially, it is frankly acknowledged, from Stein's *Einleitung* — was prepared by the former; the Syntactical Introduction, which is an entirely independent study made for this edition, is by Professor Laird.

## LIST OF MAPS

	PAGE
XERXES' EXPEDITION AGAINST GREECE . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 83
XERXES' PASSAGE OF THE HELLESPONT . . . . .	129
THERMOPYLÆ . . . . .	266
SALAMIS . . . . .	365

# INTRODUCTION

## A. HISTORICAL

### a. LIFE OF HERODOTUS

Herodotus was the "father of history," as he was styled by Cicero.<sup>1</sup> The facts of his life are little known, for no vita has come down to us, beyond the article in Suidas. Even the date of his birth is not exactly known. Our earliest authority, Dionysius of Halicarnassus,<sup>2</sup> says that he was "born shortly before the Persian wars and survived till the Peloponnesian War." More definite is the statement of Pamphila,<sup>3</sup> a compiler of the time of Nero, who puts his birth fifty-three years before the outbreak of the Peloponnesian War, as Thucydides' birth forty years before the same, which would give us 484 B.C. as the date of Herodotus' birth. Eusebius puts his prime at 468 B.C., which would throw back the year of Herodotus' birth before 500 B.C.

Herodotus was born at Halicarnassus, a town of mixed Greek population, mainly Dorian,<sup>4</sup> which was the capital of the little kingdom of Caria, then, like all the other Greek cities of the coast of Asia Minor, subject to the king of Persia. It was directly ruled, however, by Artemisia, regent for her minor son Pisindelis, and as commander of the Carian contingent in the fleet of Xerxes glorified in the history of Herodotus.

His father's name was Lyxes, his mother's Dryo or Rhoeo, and he had a brother named Theodorus.<sup>5</sup> The family was

<sup>1</sup> *De Leg.* 1. 1.

<sup>2</sup> *De Thuc.* 5.

<sup>3</sup> See Aulus Gellius, *Noct. Att.* 15. 23.

<sup>4</sup> *Hdt.* 7. 99.

<sup>5</sup> Suidas, s.v.; Luc. *περὶ τοῦ Ὀίκου* 20; Steph. Byz. s.v. *Θούριος*.

prominent (*ἐπιφανής*, Suidas) and probably wealthy, judging from Herodotus' extensive travels; but perhaps not of pure Hellenic strain, at least on the father's side, whose name is probably Carian, as was also that of his kinsman, Panyasis. Now this Panyasis<sup>1</sup> — whether uncle or cousin — was a seer (*τερατοσκόπος*) and learned poet, who attained conspicuous success and reputation in his attempts to revive epic poetry, being the author of at least two lengthy epic poems, one on the Labors of Hercules, in fourteen books, another on the settlement of Ionic colonies in Asia Minor, and he doubtless much influenced the poetical and historical taste of his younger kinsman. We know nothing definite about Herodotus' early education; but this consisted doubtless, as generally for the youth of the time, mainly in the reading of the poets; and his familiarity with these is made abundantly evident, not only by the epithet applied to him by Dionysius H., *Ὁμήρου ζηλωτής*, or that of Longinus, *Ὀμηρικώτατος*, but by many references scattered throughout his history, above all to Homer, but also to Hesiod, Aristaeas, Musaeus, Arion, Alcaeus, Sappho, Solon, Pindar, Simonides, Phrynichus, Aeschylus.

It was a great and stirring period into which he was born. His first impression of the great world outside was the noise of the preparations Xerxes was making to avenge the defeat of the Persians at Marathon, with which all Asia was then in commotion, and he must have heard often enough the story of the Ionian revolt, which had culminated in the burning of Sardis and ended with the defeat of the Ionian fleet in the battle of Lade (496). That the Greeks of the motherland should have dared to attempt to withstand the power of the world-empire of Persia must have filled with astonishment the minds of all the men about him, and that little Athens alone should have signally defeated a Persian army vastly superior in numbers in the first conflict on Greek

<sup>1</sup> Suidas, s.v.

soil had doubtless filled the boy's mind with enthusiasm immeasurable. And all this must be taken into account as contributing to his mental development and as predisposing him to the task which he later undertook, of writing the history of the great conflict between the east and the west.

The Persian empire was then at the height of its power. It extended from Thrace and Macedon in the west to the confines of India in the east and of Ethiopia in the south. It had been consolidated by Darius into a vast unity, operated like a great machine from a central point, and articulated by a comprehensive system of post roads extending to all parts of the empire. It was divided into twenty satrapies, whose internal administration was modeled on that of the empire as a whole. In this great Persian empire the development of western Asia, covering more than two millenniums, seemed to have reached its climax and conclusion.

In the midst of the vast preparations that were making on the part of Darius to take vengeance on Athens for the defeat at Marathon came the revolt of Egypt and then the death of Darius. But Xerxes, his successor, had first subdued the revolt and then led against Greece the largest army ever assembled in the world's history up to that time; and when the news came that this vast host also had been defeated, first by sea and then on land, the boy Herodotus doubtless heard from the lips of his elders words like these, "It is not our work, but the gods and heroes have wrought it."<sup>1</sup>

According to Suidas, Artemisia, queen of Caria, was succeeded by her son Pisindelis, and he by his son — more probably brother or more distant relative — Lygdamis. And this Lygdamis, third in succession after Artemisia, seems to have come into conflict with a portion of the citizens of Halicarnassus over a claim of

<sup>1</sup> 8. 109.

theirs to autonomy, as a result of which strife Panyasis lost his life and Herodotus fled to Samos. Some time later, but certainly before 454 B.C.,—for, according to an inscription,<sup>1</sup> Halicarnassus in that year was one of the tribute-paying cities of the Attic sea-alliance,—the fugitives returned, Herodotus with them, perhaps at their head, and expelled the tyrant.<sup>2</sup>

But Halicarnassus, though delivered of its tyrant, did not get rid of party factions, and we next hear, from Suidas, of Herodotus leaving his native town, where he saw himself regarded with jealousy by his fellow-citizens. He went perhaps at this time to Athens, where, according to Eusebius, he read his History and was honored publicly. This was about 445 or 447 B.C. Besides the statement in the chronicles of Eusebius that Herodotus was honored by the *boulé* of Athens on the reading of his History, Plutarch says,<sup>3</sup> on the authority of the historian Diyllus, that the public honor was a gift of ten talents. The reward leads us to guess that the portion of the History read included the praises of Athens for her part in the Persian wars. The amount of money voted is so large as to be open to suspicion, but hardly the fact of the public reading itself. The report of the reading assumed in later tradition various shapes. Lucian<sup>4</sup> tells a pretty story to the effect that Herodotus having sailed from Caria to Hellas, full of the thought how he might get his work before the world quickest and best, appeared at Olympia and recited from his History to the throngs at the great games with such success that "his books nine in number were from this time called after the nine muses." But this story is clearly fiction in several particulars and is generally discredited. Still another story had it<sup>5</sup> that he wished to read at Olympia, but, on the pretext that he was waiting for shade in the

<sup>1</sup> *C.I.A.* i. 226.

<sup>2</sup> Suidas, *l.c.*

<sup>3</sup> *De Herod. Mal.* 26.

<sup>4</sup> *Herod.* i; cp. also Suidas.

<sup>5</sup> *Paroemiogr. Götting.* i. Append. cent. ii. 35.

temple court, put it off from day to day till the festival was over ; whence arose the proverb, *εἰς τὴν Ἡροδότου σκιάν*. Still more widely current is the story of a reading located now at Athens, now at Olympia,<sup>1</sup> at which the boy Thucydides was present and moved to tears, whereat the historian turned to the father and congratulated him on a son whose spirit was so eager for learning. But the story of the effect on the boy at least is impossible, since Herodotus could not, as shown above, have read at Athens earlier than 445 (or 447), whereas Thucydides' boyhood cannot be put later than 456.

During his stay at Athens we may assume that Herodotus was welcomed into the circle of wonderful men of genius who gathered about Pericles ; we know that he was a friend of Sophocles, who wrote an ode in his honor<sup>2</sup> 440 B.C., and there are indications in the History that point to close contact with Pericles himself. We may assume that he knew, besides Pericles and Sophocles, also Socrates and Euripides, Anaxagoras and Thucydides, Phidias and Polygnotus, Mnesicles and Ictinus.

From Athens Herodotus probably joined the Panhellenic colony sent out about 444 B.C. to Thurii, near the site of the destroyed town Sybaris in southern Italy, and became a citizen there. Other name-worthy colonists were the city-builder Hippodamus, the rhetorician Tisias, and the young (afterwards orator) Lysias. There Herodotus spent the rest of his life, though probably not continuously, there he died, and there he was buried in the agora. The epitaph on his tomb according to Stephanus Byzantinus<sup>3</sup> was as follows :

Ἡρόδοτον Δύξεω κρύπτει κόνις ἣδε θανόντα  
 Ἰάδος ἀρχαίης ἱστορίης πρύτανιν,  
 Δωριέων βλαστόντα πάτρης ἀπο τῶν γὰρ ἀτλητον  
 μῶμον ὑπεκπροφυγὼν Θούριον ἔσχε πάτριν.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Suidas; Marcellinus 54 ; Photius Cod. 60.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Mor.* 785.

<sup>3</sup> *s.v.* Θούριοι.

<sup>4</sup> Others, according to Suidas, put his death at Pella, and according to



The date of his death can be reached only approximately by combination. It used to be assumed from the mention of the Propylaea at Athens,<sup>1</sup> which was completed in 431 B.C., that we had here a reliable date for a second sojourn of Herodotus at Athens. But Wachsmuth<sup>2</sup> has shown that for the four-horse chariot there mentioned the space did not suffice inside of the Propylaea, and so Herodotus must have meant not the portico of the Propylaea, but the inclosed place in front of the old entrance to the Acropolis, where later the great gateway was built; consequently the four-horse chariot could not have stood after 437 where Herodotus saw it. With this agrees Herodotus' omission<sup>3</sup> of mention of the completed Parthenon (438 B.C.) and the fact that Amphipolis, planted as a colony in 437 B.C., is still called in Herodotus by its old name Ἐννέα Ὀδοί. But if the reference to the four-horse chariot does not prove that Herodotus saw the Propylaea in 431, the mention of the surprise of Plataea<sup>4</sup> does show that he was alive in that year, and the execution of Spartan envoys referred to at another place<sup>5</sup> occurred in 430 B.C. On the other hand, the mention of Darius Hystaspes in 1. 130<sup>6</sup> simply as Darius, without distinction from Darius Nothus, indicates that Herodotus was not alive at the time of the accession of the latter (424 B.C.). The refounding of Trachis in 426 B.C. is not mentioned in 7. 199, and hence Herodotus probably did not survive till that time. Indeed, as Stein shows, none of the references to contemporary events necessitates assuming a date later than 428 B.C. The unhappy Athenian expedition against Sicily he could not have survived; otherwise he would not have called the defeat of the Tarentines and Rhegines in 473 B.C. the bloodiest of all Hellenic disasters that he knew.<sup>7</sup>

Marcellinus 17 there was a monument to Herodotus by the side of that to Thucydides in the sepulcher of Cimon at Athens.

<sup>1</sup> 5. 77.

<sup>2</sup> *Die Stadt Athen* 150 and *N. Jhb.* cxix. p. 18 f.

<sup>3</sup> 2. 148.

<sup>4</sup> 7. 233.

<sup>5</sup> 7. 137.

<sup>6</sup> Cp. 6. 98.

<sup>7</sup> 7. 170.

## TRAVELS OF HERODOTUS

The travels of the historian are important to us for determining his sources. Nowadays a historian, unless he is writing memoirs of his own experiences, collects his material from archives and libraries. But Herodotus had little to learn from his forerunners, though at points he may have borrowed much from the logographer Hecataeus, and possibly from Xanthus. He had, in the nature of the case, to depend mainly upon inquiries made by himself of men of the older generation and upon visits to the countries and among the peoples whose history he was to write. That meant extensive travels and lengthy sojourns in the chief centers of the ancient world. Ancient tradition is silent about his travels, and we are left entirely to hints given by Herodotus himself or to inferences from historical statements of his. But unquestionably he had given the best period and powers of his life to his travels in search of historical material, and the result was a condition of mind like soil carefully prepared in which history might grow up and come to fruit. The extent of his travels was very remarkable for the time and has been estimated at from ten to fifteen thousand miles. Events in his career as described above brought him to various points in Asia Minor, to Athens and elsewhere in Hellas, and to southern Italy. Furthermore, he undertook longer journeys by land or sea to more distant countries: on the Euxine as far as the Cimmerian Bosphorus, to Cyprus, Egypt (from the Delta to Elephantine), to Cyrene, and through Persia, visiting Babylon, Ecbatana, and the ruins of Nineveh. The last-named journey, which was the most important of all, and made, doubtless, while he was still a Persian subject, he made either by the royal post road from Ephesus via Sardis to Susa or by the shorter way from the Syro-Phoenician coast. The times and order of his journeys can be only in part

determined. Egypt he saw in undisturbed possession of the Persians,<sup>1</sup> and he saw the skulls of those who fell in the battle of the Papremis;<sup>2</sup> he must have visited Egypt, then, after 455 B.C. Already before this he had been in Assyria,<sup>3</sup> and probably still earlier, while a Persian subject, in Pontus and the interior of Asia Minor. The longer journeys had to do mainly of course with the first or preliminary part of his History, *i.e.* the first five books; for the more immediate and important subject, the Persian wars, as described in Books 6-9, he had to depend on inquiries and investigations made in the cities throughout Greece, and here he was no doubt chiefly indebted to the Periclean circle at Athens.

#### b. THE HISTORY OF HERODOTUS

The work of Herodotus was called by himself an "Exposition of History" (*Ἱστορίης ἀπόδεξις*<sup>4</sup>). The division into nine books, not made by the historian, as is plain from his manner of reference, and most probably due to the Alexandrine grammarians, is first mentioned by Diodorus Siculus.<sup>5</sup> The central theme was the conflicts between the Greeks and the Persians in the times of Darius and Xerxes. This heroic struggle of the little Greek people against the great Persian world-power was the most brilliant period of Greek history, and has always been of universal interest as the first great contest of liberty against despotism, of free spirit against servility. The story of the actual war does not begin till the fifth book, from which point it proceeds consecutively to the end; in the preceding books the way is prepared by an account of the Persian empire and its preceding history, including the nations that had been absorbed by it, or at least had come in conflict with it; that is, a sort of general history of the world leading up to the special theme.

The starting point is the attack of Croesus upon the Greeks of

<sup>1</sup> Cp. 2. 30, 99, 149.    <sup>2</sup> 3. 12.    <sup>3</sup> 2. 150.    <sup>4</sup> 1. 1.    <sup>5</sup> 2. 37.

Asia Minor, and this leads to the history of the Lydians. Croesus and the Lydians were conquered by Cyrus, the founder of the Persian empire, and we have next the history and growth of the Persian realm, with that of the Median empire, which had given way to the Persian. Then follow accounts of the principal nations that had been subdued or invaded by the Persians, namely, the Babylonians, the Egyptians, — with digressions upon Polycrates of Samos, the Indians, Arabians, Ethiopians, — the Scythians, and Libyans. These various accounts may have been originally intended to be independent narratives, and it is a loose tie which binds the whole together.

In the use of the Ionic dialect Herodotus simply followed the precedent of the logographers, but it is not likely that he first learned Ionic, as Suidas intimates, during his exile in the island of Samos; for this dialect seems to have been spoken by part of the population of Halicarnassus, and inscriptions from there indicate that public documents were sometimes composed in Ionic. For us Herodotus is, with Hippocrates, the chief representative of literary Ionic, and in perfect harmony with the softness and fluidity of the dialect is the historian's simplicity of style and naiveté of narration. Aristotle<sup>1</sup> makes him the chief representative of the running style (*ειρομένη λέξις*), *i.e.* not antithetic or of balanced periods, but with clause tacked on to clause by means of *τε* and *δέ*.

He displays remarkable art of composition in the general arrangement of his material, the grouping and disposition of his subjects, bringing together narrative and description, things far and near, past and present, small and great, into one vast world-picture that unrolls leisurely before the reader. Uniting "the curiosity of the Ionian with the open eye of the impartial observer," he weaves about his central theme, in episodes or digres-

<sup>1</sup> *Rhet.* 3. 9.

sions, after the manner of the epic poets, an inexhaustible store of information about places, peoples, customs, monuments which he had collected in his travels, thus securing endless variety and interest. And with scarcely less art does he attain vivacity by means of speeches put into the mouths of the chief actors in his drama, making deeds speak, as it were; here, too, following the precedent of the epic poets. Art and skill in narration Herodotus certainly had, charm of style and gift of phrase, curiosity and zeal in the search for information, an open mind and impartial judgment. He is, moreover, without race prejudice or national vanity, and recognizes high qualities and noble deeds on the part of barbarians as readily as in his own countrymen. He is often misled and makes mistakes, but never intentionally deceives. When he cannot decide between conflicting accounts, he is apt to give both, and leave the matter to the reader. He was a true Greek in that he knew no foreign languages, and hence was often at the mercy of his guides and interpreters. Having recourse by preference, in Greek matters as well as in Egyptian and Assyrian, to priests, he often unwittingly imbibed views that were superstitious or meant to deceive. Indeed, his religious views and his ethical bias were in many respects a handicap to his judgment. Sharing with most of his contemporaries a belief in signs and wonders, he had a peculiar view of the jealousy of the gods and was prone to see everywhere in history evidences of an overruling and directing providence, and especially in the Persian wars was fain to recognize direct judgments of the gods on human crime and arrogance. Possessed by such a theory, he was easily taken in by priests, and failed to see that oracles brought to his notice were *vaticinia ex eventu*, and he allowed himself at times to alter chronological data in order to bring together striking natural phenomena and human events.

In all antiquity he was too often regarded as over-credulous or

as a romancer. This term was applied to him by Aristotle (*μυθολόγος*),<sup>1</sup> though he extracts not a little from him, and in the *Poetics*<sup>2</sup> treats him as the representative of history. Aristophanes early parodied some statements of his as extravagant or incredible; Ctesias maligned him, as is well known; Manetho<sup>3</sup> criticised many things in his Egyptian narrative as falsified through ignorance; and Plutarch<sup>4</sup> attacked him for conscious misrepresentation and malicious depreciation.

But if the historical value of his work did not find just recognition in antiquity, so much the more did it receive praise for style and language. Dionysius of Halicarnassus calls him the best model of Ionic (*τῆς Ἰάδος ἄριστος κανών*) and put his prose as a form of art on an equality with poetry; Dio Chrysostom commends his "free and leisurely movement and sweetness" (*τὸ ἀνειμένον καὶ τὸ γλυκύ*); Plutarch finds him "artless and unlabored, moving lightly over matters" (*ἀφελὴς καὶ δίχα πόνων καὶ ῥαδίως ἐπιτρέχουσα τοῖς πράγμασιν*); Cicero compares his style to the "peaceful flow of a quiet river" (*sedatus amnis*); Quintilian characterizes him as "sweet and clear and diffuse" (*dulcis et candidus et fusus*). On the whole his style has the character of oral discourse and is well adapted for the public readings with which he is credited, a quality which Thucydides seems to have had in mind in his famous remark, aimed evidently at Herodotus, describing his own work as "composed for an everlasting possession and not a showpiece to be heard for the moment."<sup>5</sup>

### EPITOME OF HERODOTUS

**Book i.** After briefly mentioning the myths concerning the first disputes between Europe and Asia, namely the abduction of

<sup>1</sup> G. A. 3. 5. 16. Cp. *μυθογράφος* of Themistius (*Or.* xxxiii. p. 367) and *homo fabulator* of Gellius (3. 10).

<sup>2</sup> *Poet.* 9. <sup>3</sup> apud Jos. c. *Ap.* 1. 14.

<sup>4</sup> *De Herod. Mal.*

<sup>5</sup> 1. 22.

Io, Europa, Medea, Helen, Herodotus finds the real source of antagonism in the subjugation by Croesus, king of Lydia, of all Hellenic cities on the coast of Asia Minor. Hence the history of Lydia is given (chs. 6-94), and, as Croesus in his contest with Cyrus appeals to the Athenians and Spartans for help, the most important facts of earlier Athenian and Spartan history are worked in (especially chs. 56-70). As Croesus and the Lydians were subdued by Cyrus, an account follows of the origin of Cyrus and of the early history of the Medes and Persians, including their customs (chs. 95-140); then comes the story of the conquests of Cyrus in Asia Minor (chs. 141-176) and in Central Asia (chs. 177-200), and of his expedition against the Massagetae and his death (chs. 201-216).

**Book ii.** Cambyses, son of Cyrus, succeeds to the throne and prepares to invade Egypt, which gives occasion for a digression concerning the land of Egypt (chs. 5-34), the people and their customs (chs. 35-98), Egyptian history (chs. 99-182).

**Book iii.** Expedition of Cambyses against Egypt (chs. 1-38); digression upon the tyranny of Polycrates of Samos (chs. 39-60); usurpation of the Pseudo-Smerdis, death of Cambyses, accession of Darius, division of the kingdom into twenty satrapies (chs. 61-97); digression upon the Indians, Arabians, Ethiopians (chs. 98-117); reign of Darius to the capture of Babylon (chs. 118-160).

**Book iv.** The Scythian and Libyan expeditions of Darius: the land, nations, climate, customs, religion of Scythia (chs. 1-82); invasion of Scythia by Darius (chs. 83-144); expedition against Libya, including the story of the founding of Cyrene and the history of its kings, with some account of Carthage and Barca (chs. 145-205).

**Book v.** Persian conquests in Thrace and Macedonia and the Ionian revolt: peoples, customs, religion of Thrace, people beyond the Ister (chs. 1-27); causes leading to the Ionian revolt (chs.

28-54) ; digression upon affairs at Athens, especially the history of the Pisistratidae (chs. 55-96) ; Ionian revolt to the death of Aristagoras (chs. 97-126).

**Book vi.** Suppression of the Ionian revolt (chs. 1-42) ; expedition of Mardonius and disaster to the Persian fleet at Athos, heralds sent to Greece to demand "earth and water" (chs. 43-47) ; digression upon the kings of Sparta, with the history of Cleomenes and Demaratus, and hostilities between Athens and Aegina (chs. 51-93) ; expedition of Datis and Artaphernes and the battle of Marathon (chs. 94-120) ; story of the Alcmaeonidae, of the wooing of Agarista, of Miltiades' expedition against Paros (chs. 121-140).

**Book vii.** Darius' preparations to renew the invasion of Greece and his death (chs. 1-4) ; Xerxes' accession to the throne, military preparations of unparalleled magnitude, advance across the Hellespont and as far as the vale of Tempe (chs. 5-130). Condition of affairs in Greece : medism of the Thessalians and Boeotians, Athens savior of Hellas, congress of deputies at the Isthmus, ineffectual appeal to Gelon of Sicily, fleet sent to Artemisium and Leonidas to Thermopylae (chs. 131-178). Defense of Thermopylae, treachery of Epialtes, annihilation of Leonidas and his Greeks (chs. 179-239).

**Book viii.** Sea-fights off Artemisium, Greek fleet retires to Salamis, Athens abandoned, Attica ravaged, fleet surrounded at Salamis, brilliant victory of the Greeks (chs. 1-106). Xerxes, leaving Mardonius with 300,000 in Greece, returns to Asia ; division of spoil by the Greeks, honors to Themistocles ; Mardonius' proposals, sent through Alexander of Macedon, spurned by the Athenians (chs. 107-144).

**Book ix.** Defeat and death of Mardonius at Plataea by Pausanias and the Greeks (chs. 1-89) ; victory of Leotychides and the Greek fleet in the land-battle of Mycale ; intrigues in the court of Xerxes ; capture of Sestos (chs. 90-122).



## B. GRAMMATICAL

## a. SUMMARY OF THE DIALECT FORMS

§ 1. **Vowels.** I. The most striking differences from Attic are

1.  $\eta$  for original  $\bar{a}$  in all cases; Ionic  $\bar{a}$  is due either to contraction ( $\epsilon\tau\acute{\imath}\mu\bar{a}$ ) or compensatory lengthening ( $\pi\acute{\alpha}\sigma\alpha$  from  $\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu\sigma\alpha$ ).
2.  $\epsilon\alpha$  does not contract to  $\eta$  (generally, but cp.  $\eta\nu$ ,  $\eta\lambda\omega\nu$ ), nor  $\epsilon\omicron$  to  $\omicron\upsilon$ , nor  $\epsilon\omega$  to  $\omega$ . We know from poetry that these sounds were in general contracted to monosyllables in Ionic, but in writing this was not indicated, except that  $\epsilon\upsilon$  occurs parallel to  $\epsilon\omicron$  in inscriptions after 400 B.C.  $\epsilon\epsilon\alpha$ ,  $\epsilon\epsilon\omicron$ ,  $\epsilon\epsilon\omega$  become  $\epsilon\alpha$ ,  $\epsilon\omicron$ ,  $\epsilon\omega$ .
3. Compensatory lengthening of  $\epsilon$  to  $\epsilon\iota$ , and  $\omicron$  to  $\omicron\upsilon$  in  $\epsilon\iota\acute{\nu}\alpha\tau\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\epsilon\iota\acute{\nu}\epsilon\kappa\alpha$ ,  $\kappa\epsilon\iota\acute{\nu}\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\xi\epsilon\iota\acute{\nu}\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\sigma\tau\epsilon\iota\acute{\nu}\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\epsilon\acute{\imath}\rho\omicron\mu\alpha\iota$ ,  $\epsilon\acute{\imath}\rho\omega\tau\acute{\alpha}\omega$ ,  $\epsilon\acute{\imath}\rho\iota\omicron\nu$  (from  $\epsilon\nu\acute{\imath}$ ,  $\epsilon\rho\acute{\imath}$ ), and in  $\gamma\omicron\upsilon\acute{\nu}\alpha\tau\alpha$ ,  $\kappa\omicron\upsilon\acute{\rho}\eta$ ,  $\mu\omicron\upsilon\acute{\nu}\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\omicron\upsilon\acute{\rho}\omicron\varsigma$  *boundary* (from  $\omicron\nu\acute{\imath}$ ,  $\omicron\rho\acute{\imath}$ ).  $\omicron\upsilon\acute{\nu}\omicron\mu\alpha$  and  $\nu\omicron\upsilon\sigma\omicron\varsigma$  are due to Homeric influence; in  $\omicron\acute{\nu}\omicron\mu\acute{\alpha}\lambda\omega$ ,  $\omicron\acute{\nu}\omicron\mu\alpha\acute{\imath}\nu\omega$ , and  $\nu\omicron\sigma\acute{\epsilon}\omega$  we have the regular form with  $\omicron$ .

II. Minor differences are

1.  $\alpha$  for Att.  $\epsilon$  in  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\alpha\theta\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\tau\acute{\alpha}\mu\eta\nu$ ; for  $\omicron$  in  $\acute{\alpha}\rho\rho\omega\delta\acute{\epsilon}\omega$ ; for  $\eta$  in  $\acute{\alpha}\mu\phi\iota\sigma\beta\alpha\tau\acute{\epsilon}\omega$ ,  $\lambda\acute{\alpha}\xi\epsilon\sigma\theta\alpha\iota$ ,  $\mu\epsilon\sigma\alpha\mu\beta\rho\acute{\imath}$ .
2.  $\epsilon$  for  $\alpha$  in  $-\pi\lambda\epsilon\kappa\epsilon\acute{\imath}\varsigma$ ,  $\tau\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\sigma\epsilon\tau\epsilon\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\rho\sigma\eta\nu$ ; for  $\omicron$  in  $\tau\rho\iota\eta-$ ,  $\pi\epsilon\nu\tau\eta-\kappa\acute{\omicron}\nu\tau\epsilon\rho\omicron\varsigma$ ; for  $\eta$  in  $\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\sigma\omicron\mu\alpha\iota$ ; for  $\alpha\iota$  in  $\acute{\alpha}\gamma\acute{\epsilon}\omicron\mu\alpha\iota$ ; for  $\epsilon\iota$  in  $\delta\acute{\epsilon}\kappa\nu\mu\iota$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\rho\gamma\omega$ ,  $\kappa\rho\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\sigma\omega\nu$ ,  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\omega\nu$ .
3. The pure diphthong  $\epsilon\iota$  loses  $\iota$  before vowels in fems. of  $\mu$ -stems, in  $\epsilon\pi\iota\tau\acute{\eta}\delta\epsilon\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{\eta}\rho\alpha\kappa\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\alpha\iota$ ,  $\mu\alpha\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\eta$ ,  $\pi\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\omega\nu$ ,  $\acute{\upsilon}\pi\omega\rho\acute{\epsilon}\eta$ ; the spurious diphthong  $\epsilon\iota$  is shortened to  $\epsilon$  in  $\acute{\epsilon}\omega\theta\alpha$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\bar{\alpha}$  (from  $\acute{\epsilon}\acute{\alpha}\omega$ );  $\beta\acute{\omicron}\epsilon\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\alpha\acute{\imath}\gamma\epsilon\omicron\varsigma$  etc. are used instead of  $\beta\acute{\omicron}\epsilon\iota\omicron\varsigma$  etc.
4.  $\epsilon\iota$  for  $\epsilon$  in  $\epsilon\acute{\imath}\lambda\acute{\imath}\sigma\sigma\omega$ ,  $\epsilon\acute{\imath}\rho\acute{\upsilon}\omega$ .
5.  $\eta\iota$  for  $\epsilon\iota$  in adjectives like  $\acute{\alpha}\nu\delta\rho\acute{\eta}\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\omega\pi\acute{\eta}\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\beta\alpha\sigma\acute{\imath}\lambda\acute{\eta}\omicron\varsigma$ .
6.  $\theta\eta\eta\sigma\kappa\omega$  and  $\sigma\psi\acute{\lambda}\omega$  have not iota subscript in the Mss.
7.  $\iota$  for  $\epsilon$  in  $\acute{\imath}\sigma\tau\acute{\eta}$ ;  $\acute{\imath}\rho\acute{\omicron}\varsigma$  for  $\acute{\imath}\epsilon\rho\acute{\omicron}\varsigma$ ;  $\acute{\imath}\theta\acute{\upsilon}\varsigma$  for  $\acute{\epsilon}\theta\acute{\upsilon}\varsigma$ ;  $\pi\omicron\lambda\acute{\imath}\eta\tau\eta\varsigma$  for  $\pi\omicron\lambda\acute{\imath}\tau\eta\varsigma$ .
8.  $\omega$  by contraction of  $\omicron\alpha$  in  $\acute{\omega}\nu\eta\rho$ , of  $\omicron\eta$  in  $\acute{\omicron}\gamma\delta\acute{\omega}\kappa\omicron\nu\tau\alpha$ , forms of  $\beta\omicron\acute{\alpha}\omega$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\acute{\nu}\acute{\epsilon}\nu\omega\nu\tau\omicron$  (from  $\nu\omicron\acute{\epsilon}\omega$ ; but  $\nu\omicron\acute{\eta}\sigma\alpha\varsigma$  etc.,  $\beta\omicron\eta\theta\acute{\epsilon}\omega$ );  $\omega$  for  $\alpha\nu$  in  $\theta\acute{\omega}\mu\alpha$ ,  $\tau\rho\acute{\omega}\mu\alpha$ ;  $\acute{\omega}\nu$  for  $\omicron\upsilon\nu$ ; contraction of  $\omicron\alpha\nu$  to  $\omicron\nu$  in  $\acute{\omega}\nu\tau\acute{\omicron}\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\mu\epsilon\nu\nu\tau\omicron\upsilon$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\omega\nu\tau\omicron\upsilon$ .
9. Occasional apocope as in  $\acute{\alpha}\mu\beta\acute{\omega}\sigma\alpha\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{\alpha}\mu\pi\omega\tau\iota\varsigma$ .

§ 2. **Consonants.** 1.  $\kappa$  for  $\pi$  in the pronominal stem  $\pi\omicron-$

(Lat. *quo-*), e.g. *κοῖος*, *κόσος*, *κότε*, *κῶς* etc. 2. *σσ* in *θάλασσα* etc. for Attic *ττ* (from *κκ*, *χχ* generally). Ionic *διξός*, *τριξός* are from *διχθ-ιος* (*διχθά*) etc., but Att. *διττός* from *διχ-ιος* (*δίχα*). 3. The rough breathing was lost (so-called *Psilosis*; in the text the rough breathings are written). Consequently a preceding tenuis remains unaspirated; cf. *ἀπ' οὐ*, *ἀπικνέομαι*. 4. Tenuis for aspirate in *αὔτις*, *δέκομαι*, *οὐκί*. *ἐνθαῦτα*, *ἐνθεῦτεν*, *κιθών* for *ἐνταῦθα*, *ἐντεῦθεν*, *χιτών*. 5. *ἴδμεν* for *ἴσμεν*. *σμικρός* for *μικρός*. *γίνομαι*, *γινώσκω* for *γίγνομαι*, *γινώσκω*.

§ 3. Declension. I. Substantives. 1. The dual is not used. 2. In the first declension the gen. plur. ends in *-εων*, the dat. plur. in *-ησι*; mascs. have *-εω* in the gen. sing.; abstract substantives from *s*-stems have *-ειη*, instead of *-ειᾶ*, as *ἀληθείη* for *ἀλήθεια*; so also *-οίη* for *-οια* in *πρόνοια* etc., and *ἱερίη* for *ἱερεία*. 3. In the second declension the dat. plur. ends in *-οισι*. 4. Nouns in *-ις* like *πόλις* have *-ιος*, *-ι*, *-ιες*, *-ίων*, *-ισι*, *-ιας*, and *-ῖς*. 5. The gen. of *βασιλεύς* etc. is *-εος*; *-κλέης* has *-κλέος*. 6. *γέρας*, *κέρας*, and *τέρας* have *-εος*, *-ει*, *-εα*, *-εων*. 7. *ναῦς* *shíp* is *νηῦς*, *νεός*, *νηί*, *νέα*, *νέες*, *νεών*, *νηυσί*, *νέας*. 8. *πολλός* for *πολύς*. II. Pronouns. 1. The dat. sing. of the second person is *σοί* or *τοί*. 2. The acc. sing. of the third person is *μὲν*. 3. *κεῖνος* is found occasionally for *ἐκεῖνος*. 4. *τίς* has *τέο*, *τέω* and *τίνι*, *τέων*, *τέοισι*. Similarly forms in the indefinite and *ὅστις* (neut. plur. *ᾗσσα*). 5. In the oblique cases of the relat. pron. *ὅς* the forms beginning with *τ* are generally used unless a preposition capable of elision precedes; but in such temporal expressions as *ἐν ᾧ*, *ἐς ᾧ* we have the aspirated form; *ἐκ τοῦ* is more common than *ἐξ οὗ*.

§ 4. Conjugation. 1. The syllabic augment is omitted in iterative forms. The use of the temporal augment is irregular. Most verbs with initial vowel are augmented, some vary, and others are never augmented. To the last class belong most verbs with initial diphthong, and also *ἀμείβομαι*, *ἄρρωδέω*, *ἔζομαι*, *ὀρμέω*,

ὄφελον, and others. ὁράω has ὥρων; ἔοικα has οἶκα. 2. In the perfect αἰρέω has ἀραίρημαι, and μετήμι μεμετιμένος. 3. The third pers. plur. mid. and pass. ends in -αται, -ατο in the perf. and plupf. of labial and palatal verbs (with aspiration, e.g. τετάχεται, except in ἀπικάται, -ατο); of ἀγωνίζω, σκευάζω, χωρίζω (ἀγωνίδαται etc.); of -εω, -οω, and -ωω verbs (with -εαται for -ηνται); in optatives (γενοίατο etc.); and in the pres. and impf. of -μι verbs (except stems in -ο), as δυνέαται, τιθέαται, ἐκέατο. 4. The -μι verbs have many forms on the analogy of -ω verbs, as διδοῖ, -θε-οιτο. τίθημι has 3 plur. τίθεισι. 5. εἰμί has 2 sing. εἰς, 1 plur. εἰμὲν, subj. ἔω, ἔωσι, opt. (once) ἐνέοι, partic. ἐὼν etc., impf. (besides ἦν) ἔα, ἔατε, ἔσκε, ἔσκον. 6. οἶδα has 2 sing. οἶδας, 1 plur. οἶδαμεν and ἴδμεν, 3 plur. οἶδασι and ἴσασι; fut. εἰδήσω. 7. The aor. of φέρω is ἤνεκα, perf. ἐνήνευμαι. 8. λαμβάνω has λάμψομαι, ἐλάμφθην, λελάβηκα. 9. πλώω and ζώω occur beside πλέω, ζάω. 10. θεάομαι and θέομαι are both used.

## δ. SYNTACTICAL USAGE

### § 1. AGREEMENT

1. Sing. verb w. plur. subj. ἔστι δὲ . . . ἐπὶ τὰ στάδιοι 1. 26. 6; 7. 34. 4; but plur. verb in agreement w. pred. ἡ περίοδος εἰσι στάδιοι ξξ 1. 93. 16; 6. 112. 3 and often. 2. Pred. adj. in neut. plur. οἶά τε ἦν ἀποπειρήσασθαι 8. 133. 5; cp. 5. 124. 5; 7. 16 γ. 15; 7. 162. 8; 7. 185. 2. 3. A participle com. agrees w. the subj. of an infin. rather than w. a preceding dat., as τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι δόξαι πέμψαντας ἀπαιτεῖν 1. 3. 6; cp. 1. 19. 10; 4. 111. 10. 4. A gen. absol. is often used instead of agreement w. an unemphatic pronoun; 1. 3. 8; 2. 151. 3; 8. 69. 6.

### § 2. ACCUSATIVE CASE

1. Object of Verb. a. For genitive w. ἀμελεῖν 7. 163. 7 (cp. παραχρῆσθαι 1. 108. 15; 8. 20. 2); ἐπιτροπεύειν 7. 78. 9 (gen. 7. 7; 7. 62. 13); κατηλογεῖν 1. 84. 17; 3. 121. 6; ἀμαρτάνειν

7. 139. 23; περιγίνεσθαι 9. 2. 8; ἀποκρατεῖν 4. 75. 6; μεμνήσθαι 2. 20. 4; 7. 18. 10 (gen. 9. 45. 18); ἐπιμνησθῆναι 8. 66. 16 (gen. 1. 85. 2); ὑπεροικεῖν 7. 113. 1 (gen. 4. 21. 6). b. For dative w. ἀντιοῦσθαι 9. 7. 26 (dat. 7. 9 γ. 1); λυμαίνεσθαι 8. 28. 3 (dat. 8. 15. 2); δωρεῖσθαι τινα 1. 54. 4; 3. 130. 19 (τί τινι 2. 126. 8); στέργειν 7. 104. 6; ἐσῆλθε 7. 46. 7; 8. 137. 15 (dat. 1. 86. 14); ἐπιφοιτᾶν 7. 16 γ. 13 (dat. 7. 16 β. 3). c. Without prep. w. σιγᾶν 7. 104. 24; ἀπορεῖν 3. 4. 15; 4. 179. 9; ἰκνεῖται 2. 36. 4; 9. 26. 32 (ἐς 6. 57. 22); ἐξελθεῖν 7. 29. 3; ἐκπλεῖν 5. 103. 9; cp. ἔξω τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον πλέων 7. 58. 1 (ἐκ 6. 5. 14). d. For other unusual instances cp. καταφρονεῖν *have in mind* 8. 10. 7; καταδοκεῖν 3. 69. 6; παραβαίνειν θεόν 6. 12. 11; τύπτεσθαι *lament* 2. 42. 26; λοχᾶν ὁδόν 5. 121. 3; γάμον σπεύδειν 1. 38. 6; ὕειν Θήρην 4. 151. 2 (cp. pass. 2. 13. 15); ἐξορκοῦν τὸ Στυγὸς ὕδωρ 6. 74. 8. e. For cognate accus. see 7. 10 δ. 10; 7. 43. 9; 7. 117. 11; 7. 147. 12; 7. 194. 9; 7. 233. 15 with subst. of same stem; w. related subst. 7. 50. 20; 7. 132. 5; 7. 148. 22; 7. 151. 9; 7. 192. 7; 8. 74. 2; 8. 102. 13. For *way traversed* see 7. 12. 12; 7. 31. 7; 7. 50. 27; 7. 58. 10; 7. 121. 13, 15; 7. 122. 6; 7. 128. 7; 7. 218. 2, 18; cp. καταθρῶσκειν αἵμασιν 6. 134. 16; τὸ μέσον τῶν ὁρέων ρεῖν 2. 99. 12. f. Inner object; ἐστιγμένος τὴν κεφαλὴν 5. 35. 7 (cp. 2. 63. 16; 3. 33. 7; 6. 5. 8); ἀπεστράφατο τοὺς ἐμβόλους 1. 166. 11; ἐλήλαται τοὺς ἀγκῶνας 1. 180. 6; κατατέμματα ὁδοῦς 1. 180. 10.

2. **Double Accusative.** a. With one acc. cognate — δεῖπνόν μιν θοιῆσαι 1. 129. 5; τὸν ἰσθμὸν τὰς νέας διειρύσαι 7. 24. 5; ταῦτα Ὑδάρνεα ἀμείβεσθαι 7. 136. 1; cp. also 2. 2. 9; 3. 88. 7; 3. 154. 11; 7. 121. 9; 7. 233. 16. b. Noun and verb gov. second noun — θῶμα ποιεῖσθαι 8. 74. 7; πληγὰς ἐπικέσθαι μάστιγι τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον 7. 35. 2; οὐλὰς πρόχυσιν ποιεῖσθαι 1. 160. 17; γέλωτα ἐμὲ θέσθαι 7. 209. 10; ζῶα γράφεσθαι ζεύξιν 4. 88. 4 (cp. 4. 87. 5). c. Freq. w. *ask, teach, conceal* etc.; cp. τὸ λέληθέ σε τὸ ὄνειρον

1. 39. 3; ἀφαιρεῖν w. acc. and gen. 5. 67. 24; 6. 70. 9, elsewhere two accs.; ἀποστρεφῖν w. acc. of thing only 6. 13. 16.

3. **Temporal.** At times the idea of extension is not clear; cp. ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν w. ἐγένοντο ἀγαθοί 7. 181. 3; 8. 86. 8; τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον χρόνον πέμψαντας 7. 151. 6; 6. 27. 7. τὰς νύκτας (ἡμέρας) expresses recurring rather than extended action in 1. 186. 21; 3. 18. 4; 4. 128. 14; 7. 125. 3; cp. τὴν ὥρην 2. 2. 12. πᾶσαν ἡμέρην of constant expectation 1. 111. 4; 7. 203. 6. Contrast acc. and gen. w. οὐκ ἀνιέναι, ἀπολείπειν in 1. 67. 25; 4. 28. 13; 8. 71. 12; 2. 133. 18; 4. 184. 15.

4. **Respect.** a. With verbs — εὐτυχεῖν τοὺς πολέμους 1. 65. 6; ὄρεα ἐς ὃξὺ τὰς κορυφὰς ἀπηγγμένα 2. 28. 7; cp. 2. 177. 2; 4. 104. 5; 7. 10 ζ. 1; 7. 86. 12. b. With adjs. in 7. 5. 17; 7. 9 γ. 8; 7. 61. 4; 7. 109. 12; 7. 111. 5, etc. c. With nouns — ὑβριστῆς φύσιν 1. 89. 5; freq. γένος, οὐνομυ 7. 176. 30.

### § 3. GENITIVE CASE

1. **With Substantives.** Appositive Κάνης ὄρος 7. 42. 3; cp. 7. 193. 2. Chorographic gen. very freq. 7. 175. 12. For a peculiar possess. gen. see 2. 124. 13: χρόνον ἐγγενέσθαι . . . δέκα ἔτεα τῆς ὁδοῦ. A patronymic in -ιος instead of gen. in 7. 106. 5. Partitive gen. w. vocatives in 4. 126. 3; 7. 48. 2. A peculiar partit. gen. occurs in 2. 134. 2: πυραμίδα εἴκοσι ποδῶν καταδέουσιν κῶλον ἕκαστον τριῶν πλέθρων *lacking 20 feet of 3 plethra*. For a curious example of inverted relation see σταθμοὶ καταγωγέων and καταγωγὰὶ σταθμῶν 5. 52. 18, 35.

2. **With Verbs.** Πείθεσθαι 1. 59. 13; 6. 12. 21 etc.; ἀκούειν w. gen. of thing 1. 45. 7; 1. 141. 18 (acc. 7. 14. 1); cp. 3. 128. 18, 23; the person sometimes w. πρὸς or ἐκ 1. 118. 4; 3. 62. 5; παραλαβεῖν 2. 19. 2, 9; 3. 157. 7 (w. παρά 2. 51. 10); ἐκδέκεσθαι 1. 16. 3; 2. 112. 1; ἐπεστάναι 7. 22. 9; 7. 117. 3 (dat. 7. 35. 12); ἐγκυρεῖν 7. 208. 16 (in Mss.); ἐντυχεῖν 4. 140. 15 (on ἀντᾶν,

ἀντίος etc. see dat.); ἐπιτροπεύειν 7. 7. 7; 7. 62. 13 (see accus.); ἱερᾶσθαι, προφητεύειν w. gen. of god or temple 2. 35. 19; σὲ μετέρχομαι τῶν θεῶν 6. 68. 11 as w. λίσσεσθαι β. 68; εὐλέων ἐξέζεσε 4. 205. 4 on analogy of *full*; καταλύεσθαι 1. 104. 10; 6. 9. 11. A peculiar pred. gen. in 8. 130. 6: Περσίων δὲ καὶ Μήδων οἱ πλείονες ἐπεβάτεον *the most of the marines were Persians* etc. Double gen. w. δέομαι and χρήζω 3. 157. 6; 5. 40. 6; 7. 53. 4.

3. **Temporal.** Words of time w. a demonstr. or ὁ αὐτός reg. in gen. when extent is not expressed; cp. 2. 47. 10; 7. 166. 2; 8. 7. 9; an exception is τῇ αὐτῇ πανσελήνῃ 2. 47. 10. W. ἕκαστος the gen. is reg., but τῷ ἐναντιῷ ἑκάστῳ 3. 57. 9 (ἐν in β); νύκτα ἑκάστην 2. 130. 5 of extent. With ordinals the dat. is reg. but τρίτου μηνός 4. 180. 25 of repeated cases (cp. 2. 93. 28). For interchange of acc. and gen. see 2. 25. 24; 2. 150. 19; 3. 104. 7; 2. 133. 18; 8. 71. 13 (poss. depend. upon χρόνον); in 2. 25 and 3. 104 of regularly recurring actions.

4. **Freer Uses.** Gen. of place more com. than in Attic prose; cp. ἐσιόντι ἀριστερῆς χειρός 2. 169. 17; 5. 77. 22; προτερῶν τῆς ὁδοῦ 9. 66. 14; ἐς μεσόγαιαν τῆς ὁδοῦ τραφθέντες 4. 12. 12 (cp. 7. 124. 4; 9. 89. 20). With ἐν Κροίσου etc. cp. ἐν ἡμετέρου 1. 35. 18; 7. 8 δ. 5.

Among adverbs the use of μέχρι οὗ is very striking, as μέχρι οἱ ὀκτὼ πύργων 1. 181. 11; cp. 2. 19. 8; 3. 104. 7 and μέχρι ὅτε πληθούσης ἀγορῆς 2. 173. 3. For μέχρι οὗ as a conj. and ἕως οὗ, ἐς οὗ see § 20. 3. ἐκάς of time w. χρόνον 8. 144. 27.

#### § 4. DATIVE CASE

I. **Pure Dative.** A. **With Verbs and Adjectives.** With *help*, *injure*—ἀμύνειν 8. 87. 22; τιμωρεῖν 1. 141. 23 (w. τιμώρημα 7. 169. 7?); προσωφελεῖν 9. 103. 8 (acc. 9. 68. 6); λυμαίνεσθαι 8. 15. 2 (acc. 8. 28. 3); μέμφεσθαι 1. 117. 3 (acc. of thing 7. 49. 3; 8. 106. 19); δνειδίζειν 8. 106. 20 (acc. of thing 8. 84.

13; 8. 143. 4); φθονεῖν 7. 236. 5; 7. 237. 8; 8. 69. 5 (gen. of thing 7. 236. 7; acc. inf. 8. 109. 14). *Be angry* χόλον τινὶ ἔχειν 8. 29. 1; 8. 27. 3 (? ἐνέχειν as in 1. 118. 3). Dat. varies w. gen. after cmpds. of κατά; cp. -γελᾶν 3. 37. 5; 7. 9. 5 (gen. in R; cp. 5. 68. 4); -κρίνειν 7. 146. 6 (acc. inf. 6. 85. 5); -υβρίζειν 1. 212. 12; -δοκεῖν 9. 99. 17; -αεῖδειν 7. 191. 6; -ομνύναι 6. 65. 12 (gen. in β); κατηγορεῖν w. gen. 7. 205. 15 (in 7. 10 η. 9 Mss. vary between gen., dat., acc.). *Meet*—ἀντιῴσθαι 7. 9 α. 8; 7. 9 γ. 1; 8. 100. 18 (acc. 9. 7. 26); ἀντίος 7. 10. 3 etc. (gen. 2. 34. 7; 2. 121. 3; 2. 154. 3); advs. ἀντίον etc. more com. w. gen. (7. 209. 11; 8. 52. 2), but dat. 7. 33. 5; ἐναντίος (ἵπ-) 7. 39. 9; 7. 50. 10; 8. 108. 11 (τὰ ἐναντία w. gen. 7. 153. 21; 8. 102. 9; adv. ἐναντίον w. gen. 6. 57. 25 etc., but dat. 6. 32. 4); ἔμπαλιν 2. 35. 8 (τὰ ἔμπ. w. gen. 7. 58. 2); w. ἦ 9. 56. 8; ἀγχεῖν 1. 134. 15; 7. 91. 5 (com. w. gen.). *Order, obey*—διακελεύεσθαι, 7. 16 γ. 4 (in 9. 111. 13 most Mss. have dat. w. κελεύειν); προειπεῖν 1. 126. 5 etc. (acc. inf. 7. 12. 9?); παραγγέλλειν 9. 53. 3 (acc. inf. 9. 66. 11); ἀπαγορεύειν 4. 125. 15 (acc. inf. 6. 81. 5); παρηγορεῖν w. acc. 9. 54. 1; πείθεσθαι freq. w. dat., but gen. 1. 126. 20 etc.; cmpds. of ἀκούειν = *obey* as ἐπ- 4. 141. 5; ἐς- 6. 87. 2; κατα- 3. 88. 4 (κατήκοος 3. 88. 2; 1. 141. 4; w. gen. 1. 72. 3 etc.). *Say, tell*—λέγειν, εἰπεῖν w. dat. or πρὸς w. acc. pers.; φάναι has πρὸς 3. 155. 18; ὑποκρίνεσθαι 7. 168. 2 (πρὸς 8. 143. 1); εὔχεσθαι 7. 178. 4 (πρὸς 7. 54. 6). B. **Dative of Interest.** 1. Possession is very com. expressed by dat. of pers. prons., esp. αἶ, σφι, the pron. being usually placed before the art., after the noun, or between art. and noun; cp. 7. 27. 8; 7. 38. 12; 7. 149. 5; 7. 171. 2; 8. 100. 10; 8. 108. 17. When the pron. is between art. and noun it is usually attached to γάρ, δέ, τὲ. For striking variations between gen. and dat. cp. 6. 109. 1 w. 6. 109. 20; 8. 89. 5 w. 8. 90. 3; 7. 146. 11 w. 5. 13. 2; 5. 118. 9 w. 8. 100. 10; note 7. 200. 11; 7. 144. 1. Words of relationship w. εἶναι,

γίνεσθαι vary between gen. and dat.; cp. 7. 5. 6; 7. 10. 4; 7. 82. 5. 2. *Dativus Commodi*. a. Dat. for ὑπό w. gen. after perf. pass. 7. 55. 1. etc.; w. aor. pass. the dat. is com. a pron. 8. 56. 6 etc.; w. other tenses 1. 31. 12; 1. 72. 12; 3. 24. 6. b. With στρατηγεῖν 6. 72. 3 (com. the gen.). c. With ποιεῖν *do for* 7. 119. 13 etc.; cp. dat. w. κακὸν ποιεῖν 4. 165. 2 for reg. acc. d. With *fear for* 8. 72. 5; com. περὶ w. dat. 7. 212. 3; 8. 74. 5. Cf. κινδυνεύειν τινί 7. 209. 14; 8. 60. 17 (περὶ 8. 74. 10). e. With ἔχει and adv. 7. 11. 16; 7. 161. 12; 8. 20. 5 (acc. inf. 8. 144. 12, 17). 3. Dative of Reference. a. Dat. of partic. without noun or pron. of local standpoint 6. 33. 2; 7. 198. 8 (plur. 1. 104. 5; 5. 53. 9). b. Dat. of partic. w. noun or pron. after εἶναι in expressions of time 1. 84. 4; 8. 129. 1. c. Dat. of partic. of verbs of *estimating* 7. 143. 10; 7. 184. 7. d. For other dats. of pron. and partic., resembling gens. absol. see 7. 13. 8; 7. 17. 5; 7. 125. 1. e. With adjs. 7. 8 γ. 12; 8. 100. 25, 30; 8. 101. 10. f. Dat. for gen. of separation 2. 16. 10; 4. 28. 11; 7. 70. 5. 4. Ethical Dative. Com. μοι, τοῖ 1. 141. 10; 7. 15. 7; 7. 141. 10; 7. 152. 12; 8. 68. 4; 8. 88. 14; 8. 100. 26; ἡμῖν 8. 22. 9; ὑμῖν 1. 212. 6; 4. 98. 8; 4. 136. 14; 5. 30. 20.

II. Instrumental Dative. A. Dative of Association. 1. With verbs and adjs. of likeness etc. Note προσμύγειν *land* 7. 168. 11; 8. 130. 2; ὁμιλεῖν w. countries 7. 26. 9; 7. 214. 12. ὁμοιος freq. w. dat.; w. καί 7. 50. 17; ὁ αὐτός w. dat. 7. 72. 7; 8. 22. 10; w. καί 7. 84. 3; 7. 86. 4, 11; w. relat. and καί (?) 7. 6. 10; 8. 43. 4; 8. 45. 1; 8. 46. 16; ὡσαύτως w. dat. 2. 67. 5; w. καί 7. 86. 7. 2. μάχεσθαι dat. more com. than πρὸς w. acc. (7. 9 β. 11; 8. 24. 13). 3. With cmpds. of σύν the prep. is not repeated (8. 1. 4; 8. 74. 1). 4. With ἅμα freq., often w. partic. in expressions of time 8. 23. 6; 8. 64. 3; w. ὁμοῦ 3. 134. 29; 5. 113. 2; 7. 121. 11. 5. Dat. of military accomp. 7. 20. 4; 7. 170. 6; 8. 17. 7; cp. πανοικίῃ 8. 106. 11. σύν is rare, 8. 101. 16; ἅμα 6. 118. 1.



6. Dat. w. αὐτός, as αὐτοῖσι ἀνδράσι 3. 126. 14; 4. 64. 15; 6. 93. 3 (α has art.); 7. 39. 6 (α has art.); 8. 17. 3. The art. is used only if the subst. requires it, as τοῖσι ἱροῖσι 6. 32. 7; τοῖσι νεωσοίκαισι 3. 45. 21; τοῖσι ἱματίοις (a class word) 2. 47. 2; τῇ κάλυκι (w. reference back) 3. 100. 6. σύν or ἅμα with αὐτός 2. 111. 20; without 7. 70. 9; 8. 92. 7 etc. B. Dative of Means, Cause, Manner, Degree. 1. Means. a. With furnish 7. 66. 1; 8. 33. 7 (cp. acc. w. pass. 7. 62. 1; 7. 84. 2); δωρεῖσθαι gen. w. τινά τινι 7. 27. 8; 8. 118. 20; but τινί τι 2. 126. 7; 5. 37. 4 (? 8. 85. 12). b. W. say λόγῳ 8. 61. 8. Very com. ἀμείβεσθαι w. dat. plur. of ὄδε, οὗτος, τοιοῦτος; ταῦτα as freq. as τοῖτοις, but τάδε rare and with Mss. variation. c. χρῆσθαι ὀργῇ 7. 101. 15; 8. 87. 18. χρ. συμφορῇ be unfortunate 8. 20. 11; but consider a misfortune 7. 134. 8; 7. 141. 2. χρῆσθαι θεῷ, χρηστηρίῳ, or absol. freq. = question an oracle 7. 141. 5; 8. 134. 5. χρῆσθαι w. two dats. 1. 179. 7; 1. 202. 21; w. ὡς 7. 209. 22. διαχρῆσθαι use w. dat. 7. 102. 7; 8. 118. 3, but δια — and κατα — kill w. acc. 6. 135. 8 etc.; παρα — despise w. acc. 8. 20. 2; w. gen. 2. 141. 3; absol. 7. 223. 21 (w. ἐς 5. 92 a. 12); ἀπο — be content with 1. 37. 1; impers. = satisfy 8. 14. 4. νομίζειν use com. w. acc. 7. 193. 2, but dat. 2. 50. 14; 4. 63. 2; 4. 117. 2. d. W. verbs of motion as πλεῖν πλοίοις 7. 36. 15; 8. 117. 4 (ἐν 7. 110. 6; 7. 195. 1). e. W. surpass etc. 7. 39. 11; 8. 74. 3; not used w. διαφέρειν (acc. 4. 183. 12); λείπεσθαι w. ἐς 1. 99. 11; 3. 102. 19 (in 7. 86. 12 dat. in β, acc. in α); γνώμη, μάχῃ νικᾶν 8. 75. 2; 9. 102. 8. f. W. adjs. of quality 7. 211. 14 (acc. 8. 113. 18); 7. 117. 4 (acc. 7. 103. 12); acc. and dat. 8. 113. 18; γνώμη w. ψευθεῖν 7. 9 γ. 5 but gen. 8. 40. 7. g. W. τεκμαίρεσθαι 7. 16 γ. 10; ἔχεσθαι 9. 98. 2 (ἐν 8. 135. 11); δέκεσθαι 3. 51. 11; ὕειν w. dat. 1. 87. 9 (acc. 4. 28. 12). 2. Dat. of Cause. a. W. rejoice etc. 7. 29. 1; 8. 69. 6; ἐκπλήττεσθαι 7. 226. 8 (acc. 9. 82. 11); cp. ἐπί 3. 40. 14; περί 8. 99. 9. b. Freer use w. abstracts 7. 107. 9; 7. 239. 8; 8. 124. 1 (more

freq. ὑπό w. gen. 8. 1. 3; cp. κατά 8. 30. 3; διά 7. 154. 9). 3. Manner. Cp. 7. 237. 7; 8. 74. 6; 7. 211. 13 (cp. κατά 7. 14. 9; σὺν 8. 86. 5). τρόπῳ freq., τρόπον rare, but reg. w. ὅδε (7. 60. 5), and w. foll. gen. (κατά 7. 103. 20). κόσμῳ: κόσμον 8. 60. 30; 8. 117. 7. τῇ ἄλλῃ πολλαχῇ 6. 21. 8. Modal ταύτῃ 7. 48. 7; τῇ 8. 41. 4; τῇδε 8. 34. 8; κῇ 8. 67. 3; ὅκῃ 8. 130. 20. 4. Degree. πολλῶ more com. than acc. w. compar. ; w. verbs the acc. (7. 196. 8; but cp. 8. 130. 18); μέγα 8. 144. 7. W. superls. acc. or dat. ὀλίγῳ w. compar., but acc. w. words of compar. idea 7. 9 a. 9. τοσοῦτῳ . . . ὅσῳ 7. 49. 15; τοσοῦτο w. verbs 7. 172. 14 (but ὅσῳ 5. 49. 10), w. compar. 8. 68 a. 8.

III. Locative Dative. A. Temporal. Words of time reg. in dat., if extent is not implied, w. ordinals, ὕστερος etc. (7. 31. 9; 8. 22. 4), but gen. w. demonstrs. and ὁ αὐτός; w. ἐπιών 3. 85. 14. W. ἕκαστος dat. only in 3. 57. 9 (β has ἐν). Unmodified nouns reg. in gen. (νυκτί 7. 12. 3 depends on διδούς; cp. Plut. *Them.* 26. 1); τῇ μεσαμβρίῃ 3. 104. 9 is strange after the gen. in l. 7 (β has nom.; cp. μεσοῦσα ἡ ἡμέρη καίει below). χρόνῳ 8. 107. 11 is instrum., but ὑστέρω χρόνῳ 5. 32. 11 etc. is loc. Dat. of plur. nouns only 9. 57. 17. Dat. of other than purely temporal words 1. 51. 10; 2. 48. 1; 3. 46. 4; 4. 180. 5; 6. 24. 8; 6. 92. 9.

### § 5. PREPOSITIONS

ἀμφί: a. Gen. Local 8. 104. 6 (?); causal 6. 131. 1 (?; dat. in β). b. Dat. Local and Causal 7. 143. 9. W. fear, strive 6. 62. 6; 6. 129. 7. W. say = περί 3. 32. 1; 4. 127. 15. W. ἔχειν 1. 140. 14; 5. 52. 1 = in regard to. c. Acc. Local 7. 142. 19; 8. 76. 7. Freq. οἱ ἀμφί τινα 8. 15. 9 (21 times: 2 περί: 5 σὺν: 12 μετά); cp. w. proper name 7. 218. 16; 7. 223. 7.

ἀνά: Local = up 1. 194. 22; throughout 7. 150. 2; 8. 10. 16; freq. Temporal 7. 153. 7; 7. 106. 4 (w. plur. 2. 132. 7; 8. 65. 21), Distrib. w. nos. 7. 184. 7 etc. Note ἀνά πρώτους 9. 86. 5 = ἐν,

*ἀντί*: *In return for* 7. 54. 14; of *price* 3. 59. 1; 4. 196. 7. *Instead of* 7. 41. 8 freq. Five times w. subst. infin., without art. 1. 210. 8; 6. 32. 6; 7. 170. 14; with art. 1. 134. 3; 2. 80. 6.

*ἀπό*: *Local* = *beyond* freq. in geographical sections; cp. 4. 17. 1; 4. 18. 4; peculiarly Herodotean are phrases like τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ Ἰστροῦ 4. 99. 4. πίνειν, λούεσθαι, ὑδρεύεσθαι ἀπὸ 2. 18. 15; 4. 66. 3; 3. 23. 7; 9. 49. 9. *Down from* 7. 192. 2 etc.; w. πεσεῖν 8. 39. 6; metaph. ἀπὸ τῆς δόξης 7. 203. 13. *Temporal* of the starting point 8. 23. 9 etc.; ἀπ' οὗ only 2. 44. 12; ἀπὸ δείπνου εἶναι *to be through dinner* 1. 126. 13 etc. (cp. ἐκ 1. 50. 8); metaph. 7. 233. 17 etc. Note ἀπὸ δὲ Αἰγυπτίων Ἀμμώνιοι (κριοπρόσωπον τοῦ Διὸς ποιεῖν) 2. 42. 16. *Causal* w. εὐδοκιμεῖν etc. 8. 87. 4; like ἐπὶ w. *name* 7. 74. 7 (21 ἀπό: 30 ἐπὶ). Of *descent, source of income, material* 8. 45. 4; 8. 106. 13; 7. 65. 2 etc. Almost like ὑπό w. verbs of pass. meaning 7. 102. 5; esp. w. εἶναι, γίνεσθαι 8. 22. 14; 8. 106. 19 etc.; cp. τὸ ἀπὸ σέο 7. 101. 13; 8. 15. 3. *Instrumental and modal* ἀπὸ πείρης 7. 9 γ. 8; ἀπὸ γλώσσης 1. 123. 20. *Partitive* 3. 98. 2; 6. 27. 9. Almost = περὶ in phrases like ταῦτα μὲν τὰ ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν ποταμῶν 4. 54. 1; 7. 168. 1; 8. 94. 8 etc., but with clear marks of the *local* meaning.

*διὰ*: a. *Gen.* *Local* = *through to end of* often with verbs of motion 8. 8. 14; cp. τάσσεσθαι διὰ ὄχθων 9. 25. 19; 8. 50. 4 etc.; διὰ σταδίων πέντε *after five stades* 7. 30. 6; cp. 4. 181-185. *Temporal* = *throughout* 7. 210. 12 etc.; *after 500 years* 2. 73. 3 etc. *Metaph.* δι' ἀρπαγῆς γενέσθαι 1. 3. 3; cp. 1. 206. 8; 2. 91. 16; 6. 9. 21. *Instrumental* chiefly w. *say*; cp. 7. 30. 10; 8. 134. 11. Of personal agents w. ἑρμηνεύς, ἄγγελος and pronouns 3. 38. 18; 7. 203. 4; 1. 109. 14 etc. Of prominent position διὰ πάντων ἀξίος 8. 37. 12 etc. b. *Acc.* *Causal* w. αἰτίην, πρῆγμα, ταῦτα etc. 8. 11. 16; 8. 116. 10 etc. With persons = *propter* 8. 125. 5 etc.; = *per* 8. 90. 3; 8. 106. 7 etc.

*ἐκ*: *Local* very common; πικρύν, ἀρύσσειν ἐκ 5. 88. 10; 6. 119.

13; metaph. ἐκπλῶειν ἐκ τοῦ νόου 6. 12. 13 (without ἐκ 3. 155. 13). W. *fasten* 4. 64. 10 etc. For ἔξω in ἐξ ὀφθαλμῶν γίνεσθαι 5. 24. 14; cp. 8. 22. 10. ἐξ Ἀρπάγου *from the house of* 1. 112. 6. ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ *on the way* 1. 157. 1; cp. 6. 18. 2; 7. 115. 5; 8. 8. 11 etc. *Temporal* = *after* 7. 119. 4; 7. 188. 8; 8. 12. 9 etc. *Partitive* esp. ἐκ πάντων w. numerals, superls. etc. 7. 52. 13; 8. 83. 4. Often w. *agent* after pass. esp. *do, say* (usually participle w. art.) 7. 11. 13; 8. 114. 4 etc.; cp. τὰ ἐξ Ἑλλήνων τεῖχεα 2. 148. 5 and 3. 16. 30; 5. 11. 2; 9. 44. 2. Freer νεώτερα πρήσσειν ἐκ Δαρείου 6. 2. 9; cp. 8. 80. 3. Often *causal* ἐκ προνοίης etc. 6. 66. 4; 7. 197. 18; 8. 126. 2; note *in imitation of* 4. 189. 2. Of *descent, source of income, material* more freq. than ἀπό; cp. 7. 70. 6; 7. 144. 4; 7. 31. 6. εἰπεῖν ἐκ τῶν ἱρῶν 7. 221. 5; cp. 8. 140 β. 3. With *receive, learn* etc. 5. 13. 1; 7. 122. 5 etc. In adv. phrases freq.; cp. ἐξ ἐναντίας 8. 6. 7; ἐκ παντὸς νόου 8. 97. 11 *heartily*.

ἐν: *Local* oft. repeated w. cmpds. of ἐν 7. 107. 11; 8. 140 β. 5, 6. Adv. ἐν μέρει etc. 7. 212. 9. ἐν Κροίσου 1. 35. 20 etc.; note ἐν ἡμετέρου 1. 35. 18; 7. 8 δ. 6. Seldom *on* of geogr. position 4. 78. 29; 5. 117. 1; 7. 137. 18. *Among* w. persons freq.; ἐν τοῖσι w. superl. only in 7. 137. 6; *partitive* idea in 8. 119. 5. *Instrumental* 4. 36. 9; 4. 71. 8; 8. 135. 11 etc. Periphrases w. εἶναι like ἐν λόγοις 7. 172. 10; 8. 59. 4; 8. 99. 4 etc. *Temporal* ἐν is used w. ἡμέρη etc. before οὗτος, ὁ αὐτός, cardinal nos., πᾶς, πολὺς (cf. 7. 14. 8; 7. 56. 3; 8. 8. 1) or when ἡμέρη etc. have no attribute (7. 12. 5; 7. 162. 8); also ἐν τῷ πρὸ τοῦ χρόνῳ is regular (8. 41. 12); ἐν ἄλλῃ ἡμέρῃ 2. 47. 20; but ἐν is omitted w. words of time qualified by ordinals and πρότερος etc. (yet ἐν τῇ προτέρῃ νυκτί 5. 56. 2; cf. 1. 209. 17). τῷ ἐναντῷ ἐκάστῳ 3. 57. 9.

ἐπὶ: a. Gen. *Local* gen. = *upon* 8. 118. 8; much rarer *at, by* 7. 44. 5; 8. 122. 7. Of *direction* w. verbs of motion 8. 65. 32 etc.; cp. acc. and gen. 4. 20. 6; ἐπ' οἴκου only 2. 121 β. 18, δ. 31. *Temporal* = *at time of* freq. w. pers. 7. 33. 7; w. added partic.

8. 44. 10; cf. also 4. 159. 1; 6. 56. 8. Freq. w. *name* 8. 44. 12. W. reflex. pron. *by one's self* 7. 10 δ. 4; 8. 32. 6. *Modal* only ἐπὶ προφάσιος 7. 150. 18; ἐπ' ὄρκου 9. 11. 14. ἐπ' οὐ ἐτάχθημεν 5. 109. 16; cp. 4. 84. 7. **b. Dat. Local** = *upon* much rarer than gen. 2. 176. 5; cp. gen. and dat. 3. 28. 11; 5. 12. 11, 21; dat. of head-covering 7. 70-84. W. ἐπί = *by, near* dat. more freq. than gen. 7. 235. 5, esp. w. rivers and capes. In 7. 55. 11, 7. 188. 5 = *behind, after* in a row. *Temporal* = *after* freq. 8. 94. 18; = *upon* w. ἕκαστος etc. 4. 162. 16; 7. 50. 4; 7. 187. 11. *Causal* ἐπ' αἰτίῃ 7. 194. 7; cp. 2. 132. 8; 3. 40. 15; 7. 194. 9. *Of purpose* 7. 156. 17; 8. 141. 11; in hostile sense *against* 7. 132. 5; 7. 235. 20. ἐπ' ἡμῖν *in our power* 8. 29. 7. *In addition to* 7. 164. 10. *Of circumstances* 8. 19. 9. **c. Acc. Local** of motion *upon* 7. 183. 9; 7. 239. 17; *over* 8. 107. 11; 9. 95. 4. Cp. ἐπὶ ὀκτὼ νέας 7. 188. 7. *Of motion to places*; occas. w. pers., esp. on public service 7. 172. 8; 8. 79. 5 (w. acc. sing. of pers. 2. 162. 10; 3. 73. 11; 7. 15. 3). Very often = *against* 7. 10 a. 8, 12; 8. 9. 7; after a subst. 7. 16 β. 2; 7. 18. 10; rare w. verbs of rest 5. 44. 14. *Temporal* ἐπὶ πολλὸν χρόνον 8. 129. 4; ἐπ' ἡμέρην 1. 32. 26; ἐπ' ἡμ. ἑκάστην 2. 149. 23; w. ἡμέρας etc. and cardinal nos. 7. 119. 8. *Purpose* 7. 193. 10; 8. 64. 9. W. nos. = *up to* 1. 193. 17, 19; 5. 9. 8; cp. 7. 12. 1. ἄνειμι ἐπὶ 7. 137. 22; cp. 7. 139. 23. *For* εἰς w. φέρειν 7. 19. 3; w. περιπεσεῖν 7. 88. 4.

εἰς: *Local* = *into, up to*. εἰς Ἀστυάγειος etc. 8. 134. 9; εἰς ἑωυτοῦ 1. 108. 17; 9. 108. 14. Freq. w. pers. in plur.; w. sing. only εἰς Ἀμμωνα 2. 18. 8; εἰς θεόν 5. 79. 2. In hostile sense freq. w. places, less often w. pers. in plur.; more metaph. w. ποιεῖν etc. 7. 15. 5; 8. 140 a. 3; 8. 129. 15; of friendly action 7. 194. 11 etc. W. *speak* = *before, to* 7. 142. 3; 8. 26. 12. *Purpose* 7. 8 γ. 11; 7. 28. 7; 8. 96. 3; 8. 97. 8 w. *go, give, prepare, use* etc. W. ἔχειν, φέρειν, λέγειν = *in reference to* 7. 130. 13; w. adjs. 1. 204. 4; cp. 5. 49. 15. Like μέχρι *up to* 7. 200. 6; cp. 7. 22. 11. *Temporal* =

*up to* 1. 32. 9; freq. ἐς ἐμέ 8. 121. 6, ἐς τόδε 7. 107. 17, ἐς ὃ; ἐς (τρίτην) ἡμέρην esp. w. ἀναβάλλεσθαι, ἦκειν 5. 49. 50; 3. 155. 21; cp. 7. 144. 2, 11; 8. 128. 21; more rarely=*about* in temporal sense 4. 113. 1; 4. 181. 20. Often *about* w. nos. Adverb. phrases 7. 168. 9; 8. 144. 13. In periphrases w. ἐλθεῖν etc., esp. ἐς λόγους 8. 36. 2; 3. 146. 2; 8. 19. 7; 8. 107. 5.

**κατά:** a. **Gen.** *Local* = *down from* 8. 53. 10; *down into* 7. 6. 17; 8. 36. 4. *κατὰ νώτου ἔχειν in rear* 5. 118. 10, 14. Transferred mean. only in οὐκ ἐπιτήδεα καταγόντες κατ' ἐμέο 6. 97. 7. b. **Acc.** *Local* = *down along* w. ποταμόν etc. 1. 194. 3; 7. 36. 8; = *over* a surface freq. 7. 1. 7; 8. 115. 14; = *after* 9. 53. 4; 9. 89. 15; = *in direction of* w. τρέπεσθαι etc. 5. 12. 1; 6. 101. 3. Often w. verbs of rest = *at, near, opposite* 8. 13. 7; 8. 85. 1; 8. 11. 4; 8. 78. 4. *Temporal* κατὰ χρόνον, κατὰ Ἀμασιν βασιλεύοντα, κατ' ἐμέ etc. 2. 134. 9; 7. 170. 7; 8. 17. 4. *Purpose* 7. 170. 1; 8. 83. 10. *Causal* 7. 165. 10; 8. 30. 4; esp. κατὰ τοῦτο etc. 8. 30. 3. Often *according to* 8. 51. 14. *Manner* κατὰ τῶντό etc.; freq. κατὰπερ; κατὰ = καθά (for which Mss. often have κατὰ τά; cp. 4. 162; 5. 89; 6. 54) occurs 11 times. W. ποιεῖν, λέγειν, γίνεσθαι etc. = *with reference to* 8. 87. 1, 3; cp. τῶν κατὰ νηδὺν ἰατροί 2. 84. 5; κατὰ τὸν κατὰ Κροῖσον χρόνον 1. 67. 2. *Distributive*, often w. ἕκαστος 8. 113. 14; rare in temporal use 2. 109. 5. W. nos. = *about* 2. 145. 14, 15, 18; 7. 173. 10.

**μετά:** a. **Gen.** 66 examples (: 73 σύν), one third in ninth book. Twice w. gen. of thing 2. 25. 24; 8. 105. 13; w. verbs of rest 7. 171. 10, of motion 7. 151. 5. οἱ μετὰ τινος 8. 137. 29. b. **Acc.** *Local* = *after* freq. 7. 40. 3; 8. 46. 6 (once ἔχειν μετὰ χεῖρας 7. 16 β. 10). *Temporal* = *after* often; esp. μετὰ ταῦτα. In 2. 150. 19, 4. 146. 6 μετ' ἡμέρην in contrast to νυκτός. Phrases like μετ' ἐμὲ ἐσελθόντα 1. 9. 8; 1. 34. 1; 7. 171. 5.

**παρά:** a. **Gen.** *Local* w. pers. after ἐλθεῖν, πέμπειν, 8. 141. 10. In transferred mean. w. *receive, take, learn* etc. 8. 10. 15; 7. 191.

10 (*παρὰ πυρσῶν* 7. 183. 2 only case of *thing*). Twice w. *say* 3. 72. 16; 8. 55. 4. Of agent w. pass. in 6. 4. 8; 7. 103. 11; 7. 106. 13. After substs. 6. 4. 7; 6. 54. 2; cp. 9. 1. 2. **b. Dat.** Usually w. pers., but cp. 4. 15. 18; 4. 90. 7. W. verbs of rest in pure *local* sense freq. 7. 235. 6; cp. 8. 88. 4; 8. 105. 9. **c. Acc.** Very freq. after verbs of motion of the goal, gen. w. pers. Often *along by* 7. 100. 9; cp. 7. 123. 21. *Temporal* only in 1. 32. 15; 2. 78. 8; 2. 121. 8. 23; 2. 123. 2; 7. 46. 11 = *during*. *παρά* = *in comparison with* 2. 160. 5; 7. 20. 7; = *contrary to* 8. 4. 3. Note *παρ' ἐν πάλαισμα δραμεῖν νικᾶν* 9. 33. 11.

**περί:** **a. Gen.** Often = *about* w. *say, learn, fear* etc. 8. 36. 3, 7; w. *fight* 8. 57. 7; cp. *κινδυνεύειν* 8. 74. 10. *περὶ πολλοῦ ποιεῖσθαι* 7. 119. 4 etc. For freer *with regard to* cp. 5. 49. 15; 6. 16. 9. **b. Dat.** *Local* w. articles of clothing 7. 61-92. In transferred sense w. *fear* 7. 163. 3; 7. 212. 4; 8. 74. 4; 8. 99. 9. **c. Acc.** *Local* w. articles of clothing 7. 61. 3; 7. 72. 4; w. *περιπλεῖν* 7. 22. 2 (cp. 8. 7. 4); w. *περιπίπτειν* 8. 16. 9; of protection etc. 8. 111. 7. *οἱ περὶ τινα* only 2. 163. 5, 6. *Local* also of operations repeated here and there 7. 183. 5; 8. 22. 3; = *about* 7. 131. 1. *Temporal* = *about* seldom 7. 215. 3; 8. 6. 2; 9. 101. 9. W. *πρήσσειν, γίνεσθαι* etc. = *in regard to* 8. 25. 7; 8. 21. 10; 8. 86. 1. Note *μάχη ἐγένετο περὶ τὰ γέγρα* 9. 62. 7. w. *local* meaning. *τὰ περὶ τι* is much more freq. than gen. 8. 24. 2; 8. 56. 2.

**πρό:** *Local* in 15 instances 7. 208. 10; 8. 37. 4. More often *temporal* 5. 50. 12; 7. 149. 20. *In defense of, in favor of* (w. strong *local* sense) 7. 172. 14; 8. 49. 8; 8. 56. 6; 7. 134. 11. *In place of* 8. 26. 5; *πρὸ πάντων λέγειν* 1. 152. 3. W. comparative ideas 1. 62. 6; 1. 87. 19; 7. 152. 17; w. *ἄλλος* 7. 3. 11.

**πρός:** **a. Gen.** *Local* = *from*, rare, 7. 216. 5; 8. 87. 9; often of direction (7. 36. 9), esp. of points of compass, freq. w. acc. in same passage (cp. 7. 126. 6, 8; 7. 176. 13, 15; 7. 129. 3; *eastward* always acc.). *πρὸς ἡμέων* *on our side* 8. 22. 8. Of *origin*

7. 166. 5; w. *receive* 7. 158. 7. Freq. w. passives esp. of *say*, *honor*, *name* 8. 124. 5; 7. 10 η. 12; 7. 62. 5. Of *source* w. *learn* etc. 7. 226. 4; 8. 57. 4. πρὸς θεῶν only 5. 49. 11. b. **Dat.** *Local* = *at*, *near* 7. 155. 2; 8. 33. 10; 8. 68 β. 4; 8. 135. 6. In *addition to* 7. 3. 7, esp. πρὸς τούτοις. c. **Acc.** *Local* of direction towards, oft. of points of compass. οὐρίζειν πρὸς 4. 42. 7. Metaph. w. *τρέπεσθαι*, *φροντίζειν* 8. 25. 11; 8. 100. 6. W. *say* 8. 101. 2; 8. 143. 1. Of *purpose* 9. 102. 19. Often in *reference to*, esp. w. *say*, *think*, 7. 149. 10; 7. 153. 17. In comparisons 3. 34. 15; 8. 44. 2. Adv. πρὸς τὰ μέγιστα 8. 20. 11.

σύν: Of accompaniment esp. military 7. 10 β. 6; 7. 57. 11; 8. 101. 16. οἱ σύν τινι 7. 225. 6; 7. 233. 5; 8. 11. 14. W. dat. of thing 4. 50. 15. σὺν θεῷ 1. 86. 15. σὺν δέ σφι 7. 10 θ. 8; 9. 11. 19. W. nos. = *inclusive of* 7. 89. 3; 8. 113. 20; cp. 8. 82. 6; 1. 24. 23; 7. 70. 10. Of *manner* 7. 9 β. 5. Adverbial 8. 86. 5, 6; 7. 197. 16. *Instrumental* 3. 88. 17.

ὑπέρ: a. **Gen.** Usually in pure *local* sense = *above* 8. 138. 14; οἰκεῖν ὑπέρ 7. 69. 12; 7. 70. 1; cp. 6. 25. 1. More rarely = *for* 7. 161. 10; 7. 8 β. 8; w. *fight* 7. 225. 2 (w. local sense); 8. 70. 8; w. *fear* 7. 178. 3; 8. 100. 9. W. λέγειν = *περί* 4. 8. 1. b. **Acc.** *Local* only ῥιπτεῖν ὑπὲρ τὸν δόμον 4. 188. 2 and τῶν ὑπὲρ Μέμφιν πόλιν κειμένων 2. 10. 3 (gen. in Stein). W. nos. = *beyond* 1. 165. 17; 5. 64. 7; cp. ὑπὲρ ἄνθρωπον 8. 140 β. 8.

ὑπὸ: a. **Gen.** *Local* = *from under* 4. 8. 14; ὑπὲκ *away from* 3. 116. 4. Often w. pass. of pers. agent (after perf. 30 times: c. 150 dat.); w. perf. of *do*, *find*, *say* reg. the dat. (usually pronominal). W. pass. also of *cause* 4. 151. 10; 8. 117. 5; 7. 129. 25; 8. 115. 13 etc.; at times when dat. alone is possible. ὑπὸ μαστιγῶν 7. 22. 5; 7. 56. 2; ὑπὸ κήρυκος προηγόρευε 9. 98. 13. b. **Dat.** *Local* in 15 instances 7. 42. 8; 7. 100. 9; 7. 226. 11; 8. 39. 5; 8. 90. 19. Of *subjection* w. εἶναι etc. 7. 11. 17; 7. 157. 11; 8. 53. 3; w. passives 7. 158. 12. c. **Acc.** *Local* of extension



beneath 7. 114. 11; 7. 36. 4, 6; w. vbs. of motion 7. 88. 5; w. idea of *under shelter* 6. 44. 8; 8. 92. 14. *Temporal* of extension 9. 60. 18; esp. w. *νύκτα*, com. w. idea *under cover of* 5. 101. 19; 8. 70. 11; 9. 51. 19; 9. 58. 2; 9. 60. 7; 9. 118. 4; cp. 7. 165. 6. *ὑπὸ τὸν νηὸν κατακαίεντα* 1. 51. 6 w. *causal* idea as well as temporal. Of *subjection* *ὑπὸ βασιλέα δασμοφόρος* 7. 108. 4.

### § 6. PREPOSITIONS AS ADVERBS

*ἐν*: *ἐν δέ* 7. 83. 12; 7. 176. 5; 8. 113. 16 (?) etc. *ἐν δὲ δὴ* 1. 192. 3; 2. 79. 8. *ἐν δὲ καί* 7. 238. 5 etc. *ἐν δὲ δὴ καί* 7. 224. 9 etc. *ἐπὶ δέ thereon* 7. 65. 3; 7. 69. 8; 7. 75. 2; *behind* 7. 55. 10; 8. 67. 10; *next of rank* 8. 93. 2, of time 7. 219. 3; *besides* 7. 92. 4. *μετὰ δέ*, 115 examples, com. temporal, also local (4. 47. 8). *πρὸς*: *πρὸς δέ besides* freq. *πρὸς δὲ καί* 8. 40. 5 etc. *πρὸς δ' ἔτι* 3. 74. 6. *πρὸς δὴ ὦν* 1. 58. 7. W. *ἄμα μὲν* 8. 51. 11. *καὶ πρὸς* 5. 20. 16; 8. 29. 7 etc.; in long combinations of numbers 2. 142. 12; 7. 184. 7, 12, 20, 27; 7. 187. 12 (*πρὸς δέ* in nos. only 9. 30. 6, which is not a long combination; possibly a later addition to correct the error implied by 9. 29. 10). *καὶ δὴ πρὸς* 5. 67. 29. *ὑπὸ* only in 7. 61. 6.

### § 7. TMESIS

1. The commonest case is that in which *ὦν* is used w. a gnomic aor. 1. 194. 20; 2. 39. 10; 2. 40. 6; 2. 47. 3, 17; 2. 70. 9; 3. 82. 23; 7. 10 ε. 7 etc. W. a partic. *κατ' ὦν κόπης* 2. 172. 10.

2. *τὲ* causes tmesis only in the phrase *ἀνά τε ἔδραμον καί* 7. 15. 2; 7. 156. 5; 7. 218. 5; *δὴ* only in *μετὰ δὴ βουλευέαι* 7. 12. 7. For *μὲν . . . δέ* see 8. 33. 2; 8. 89. 1 etc., the verb being omitted w. *δέ*. In 6. 114. 3 *μὲν . . . διαφθείρεται, ἀπὸ δ' ἔθανε*.

3. W. enclit. pron., *ὦ γύναι, κατὰ με ἐφάρμαξας* 2. 181. 10.

4. Once an adj. and noun come between: *ἀπὸ πάντα τὰ χρήματα ἄγων* 7. 164. 16.

## § 8. THE ARTICLE

1. **Relative Use.** See **Dialectic Forms**, § 3. ii. 5.

2. **Demonstrative Use.** Much less limited than in Attic. For  $\delta\delta\acute{\epsilon}$  repeating the subj. of the  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu$  clause see § 9. i. c. For  $\delta\delta\acute{\epsilon}$  in the apodosis see § 28. 3. The art. is found as antecedent directly before  $\delta\sigma\omicron\varsigma$  in 3. 23. 11; 3. 131. 6; 3. 133. 9.  $\delta\gamma\acute{\alpha}\rho$  in 1. 172. 6; 2. 124. 16; 2. 148. 12; 7. 137. 14 ( $\beta$  omits  $\gamma\acute{\alpha}\rho$ ).  $\kappa\alpha\iota\delta$ , in other prose writers com. in form  $\kappa\alpha\iota\tau\acute{o}\nu$  as subj. of infin., is freq. in H. in other cases; cp. 1. 24. 17; 1. 86. 21, 41; 2. 162. 6; 8. 56. 7; 8. 83. 3; 8. 87. 7; 8. 88. 7, 8. With prepositions, besides the com.  $\pi\rho\acute{o}\tau\omicron\upsilon$  (1. 103. 6) and  $\acute{\epsilon}\nu\tau\omicron\iota\sigma\iota$  w. superls. (only 7. 137. 6), occur  $\acute{\alpha}\mu\alpha\tau\omicron\iota\sigma\iota$  1. 51. 3;  $\pi\rho\acute{o}\varsigma\tau\omicron\iota\sigma\iota$  5. 97. 9.  $\delta\gamma\epsilon$  2. 173. 19 repeats the subj. as in Homer (cp. 7. 10  $\theta$ . 14).  $\delta\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu$  without  $\delta\delta\acute{\epsilon}$  and  $\delta\delta\acute{\epsilon}$  without  $\delta\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu$  are freq. for Attic  $\sigma\acute{\upsilon}\tau\omicron\varsigma$ ; cp. 8. 11. 10; 8. 46. 2; 8. 65. 30; 8. 77. 1; cp. the relat.  $\tau\acute{o}\nu\delta\eta$  w. strong demonstr. meaning 8. 32. 7; 8. 75. 6; 8. 92. 7.

3. **Omission.** Freq. when noun begins a clause for emphasis in a contrast 1. 194. 20; 2. 39. 6; 3. 29. 11; 5. 67. 32; 9. 88. 3. See also following sections.

4. **With Names.** With well-known or repeated names the art. is used. With names of cities, rivers etc. greater or less familiarity is indicated according as we find, for example,  $\delta\Nu\epsilon\acute{\iota}\lambda\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\delta\text{'}\Lambda\sigma\omega\pi\acute{o}\varsigma\tau\omicron\tau\alpha\mu\acute{o}\varsigma$ , or  $\text{'}\Lambda\gamma\gamma\rho\omicron\varsigma\tau\omicron\tau\alpha\mu\acute{o}\varsigma$ . Simple  $\Nu\epsilon\acute{\iota}\lambda\omicron\varsigma$  etc. only in predicate, in lists, at beginning of clause for emphasis, when dependent upon a prep. and standing between a noun and its art. (7. 25. 11; 5. 1. 5; 4. 110. 6). Names of countries in  $-\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$ ,  $-\acute{\iota}\varsigma$ ,  $-\acute{\iota}\kappa\acute{\eta}$ ,  $-\tau\iota\varsigma$ ,  $-\nu\acute{\eta}$  reg. have art., sometimes w.  $\chi\acute{\omega}\rho\eta$ ,  $\gamma\acute{\eta}$ ; some in  $-\acute{\iota}\eta$  vary, as  $\Lambda\nu\delta\acute{\iota}\eta$ ,  $\text{Κιλικίη}$ ,  $\text{'}\Lambda\sigma\sigma\upsilon\rho\acute{\iota}\eta$  etc.  $\text{'}\Lambda\sigma\acute{\iota}\eta$  and  $\text{Εὐρώπη}$  reg. have art. (without  $\gamma\acute{\eta}$ ) unless used together or w.  $\Lambda\iota\beta\acute{\upsilon}\eta$ ; the art. is omitted w.  $\Lambda\iota\beta\acute{\upsilon}\eta$ . Countries in partit. gen. omit art. com. only

when before the governing noun; cp. 2. 6. 11; 5. 103. 10 with 2. 8. 12; 2. 32. 15; exceptions in 2. 43. 3; 7. 30. 4 etc.

5. **With  $\pi\alpha\varsigma$  = *all*.** a. In gen. the art. is used if the subst. requires it as a class word (8. 69. 6), or when especially defined (8. 23. 12). b. The art. is omitted when  $\pi\alpha\varsigma$  =  $\pi\alpha\iota\tau\omicron\iota\omicron\varsigma$  (6. 139. 12), or means *complete, perfect* (7. 226. 9; 8. 36. 2), or begins a clause (or noun begins); cp. 1. 111. 14; 5. 106. 16; 6. 57. 7. It is reg. omitted w.  $\gamma\eta$  (7. 19. 6),  $\alpha\lambda\theta\rho\omega\pi\omicron\iota$   $\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\epsilon\varsigma$  (? 3. 38. 4), and w. race-names unless there is a contrast w. the parts (cp. 2. 39. 16; 2. 41. 6, but 7. 20. 14; 7. 64. 9; 8. 36. 12). c. W. numerals  $\omicron\iota$   $\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\epsilon\varsigma$  *in all* is freq. (7. 4. 4), reg. after a list of the parts (7. 185. 13);  $\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\alpha$   $\delta\acute{\epsilon}\kappa\alpha$  = *ten of everything* 1. 50. 2; 4. 88. 3; 9. 81. 14. Peculiar is  $\tau\acute{\alpha}$   $\pi\omicron\lambda\lambda\acute{\alpha}$   $\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\alpha$  = *nearly all* 1. 203. 12; 2. 35. 8; 5. 67. 6 (adv.).  $\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\alpha$   $\lambda\omicron\gamma\omicron\nu$  *the whole story* in 1<sup>st</sup> 21. 7; 2. 113. 16 etc., but  $\tau\omicron\nu$   $\pi$ .  $\lambda$ . 1. 111. 26; 6. 2. 9; 9. 13. 8 etc.;  $\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\alpha$   $\tau$ .  $\lambda$ . of his own history 2. 123. 2 (? 7. 152. 13).  $\tau\omicron\nu$   $\pi\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\alpha$   $\chi\rho\omicron\nu\omicron\nu$  is reg. w.  $\epsilon\varsigma$  9. 73. 3; cp. 8. 140 a. 12; 8. 140  $\beta$ . 5 etc. of the whole future or past, but  $\pi\alpha\varsigma$   $\acute{o}$   $\chi\rho$ . of a particular space of time 9. 13. 7 etc. (but cp. 8. 100. 1). We find  $\pi\hat{\alpha}\nu$  in 7. 50. 3; 7. 176. 25 etc., but  $\tau\acute{o}$   $\pi\hat{\alpha}\nu$  7. 50. 5; 7. 166. 10; 8. 29. 8.

6. **With  $\omicron\upsilon\tau\omicron\varsigma$ .** The art. is omitted if the noun is predic. or in appos. (7. 41. 7; 7. 53. 8; 8. 39. 9), or when the demonstr. follows its noun, which is very com. if a rel. clause follows (6. 34. 9), esp. in explanatory appos. (7. 9 a. 4; 8. 124. 13; 3. 153. 2). The art. is also omitted w. proper names (3. 160. 11, 13), if  $\omicron\upsilon\tau\omicron\varsigma$  =  $\tau\omicron\iota\omicron\upsilon\tau\omicron\varsigma$  (5. 41. 6), when something present is indicated (7. 49. 2), and if the noun begins the clause for emphasis (7. 13. 2). For  $\epsilon\kappa\epsilon\iota\acute{\nu}\omicron\varsigma$  see 2. 39. 7; 2. 40. 5; 4. 124. 10; 1. 133. 2; 6. 91. 12 ( $\beta$  omits art.). With  $\delta\delta\epsilon$  = *the following* the art. is omitted if the noun is predic. (7. 167. 2) or in appos. (7. 5. 15; 7. 8 a. 2; 7. 109. 2), but cp. 7. 122. 8; w.  $\lambda\omicron\gamma\omicron\nu$  considerable variation, cp. 7. 147. 1; 8. 49. 9; 8. 100. 11; w.  $\xi\pi\omicron\varsigma$  7. 135. 2;

7. 226. 3. W. ὅδε referring back the art. is lacking in 1. 9. 4; 1. 206. 7; 4. 118. 17; 8. 140 β. 7, but used in 1. 137. 2; 7. 5. 14 etc.; the noun is predic. in 2. 76. 1; 5. 8. 7. When the reference is to something present the art. is gen. used; cp. 7. 8 α. 5; 8. 100. 13, 18, but 7. 35. 7; 8. 65. 29.

7. **With Possessive Adjectives.** The art. is at times omitted even w. a partic. individual in mind; cp. 1. 42. 8; 3. 36. 8; 7. 8 α. 8; 7. 10 γ. 3; 7. 39. 4 (cp. 8. 103. 5); 7. 104. 8 (the Mss. vary in 1. 111. 13; 3. 62. 11; 7. 11. 21; 9. 111. 18; 9. 116. 11). The examples are nouns of relationship. Emphasis (7. 104), apposition (3. 36; 3. 62), and being in a list (7. 8 α; 7. 39) may have influence.

8. **With Ordinals.** The art. is reg. omitted w. words of time in expressions like *on the fifth day after or before*; cp. 7. 7. 2; 7. 192. 3; 8. 54. 5; 8. 55. 8. It is used w. πρῶτος 1. 108. 3; 4. 172. 13; 7. 168. 8 (except in a list 3. 131. 4-9) and w. δεύτερος (= ὑστερος) 4. 75. 14; 6. 31. 2; 9. 33. 2; but omitted in *on the second after* 7. 7. 2; 7. 192. 3; 8. 54. 4; 8. 55. 8 (cp. 6. 46. 1; 7. 80. 5); in 1. 82. 25 ἡμέρῃ is emphat. in position. In expressions like *he staid two days, but on the third* the art. is used in 1. 74. 6; 1. 19. 1; 2. 133. 3; 3. 129. 11; 5. 72. 12; 5. 89. 11; 6. 101. 11; but omitted in 7. 1. 12; 7. 191. 8; 7. 192. 1; 7. 210. 3 etc. (cp. 9. 41. 2). In 3. 155. 24-31, 3. 157. 8 the art. has definite reference back. Phrases like ἐς δεκάτην ἡμέρην do not have the art. (1. 77. 18; 5. 49. 50 etc.), nor does the ordinal in distrib. sense 2. 37. 8; 2. 4. 6; 3. 97. 11; 4. 180. 25.

9. τῇ ἄλλῃ = *elsewhere* 2. 36. 2; 2. 63. 3; 4. 28. 13; 4. 192. 11; *to other places* 1. 1. 11; 2. 116. 8; 3. 61. 15; 7. 32. 6; *otherwise* 6. 21. 9. In all these w. art., but cp. 2. 79. 5 (in a list of more than two) and 6. 48. 3 (ἄλλους ἄλλῃ).

10. **With Superlatives.** In κατὰ τοῦτο γάρ ἐστι τοῦ Πόντου εὐρύτατον the superl. is predic.; cp. 1. 111. 19; 2. 8. 18; 5. 92 δ. 5;

7. 25. 6; 7. 121. 6; 7. 128. 9; 7. 199. 3; 7. 200. 4 etc. The art. is used in 7. 176. 8, where, however, the gen. τῆς χώρας τῆς ἄλλης depends upon the superl., not upon κατὰ τοῦτο. In 7. 216. 8 the art. refers back to 7. 176; further the relat. has here a definite anteced. as distinguished from 1. 111; 7. 25 etc. (on this ground τὸ χωρίον in 1. 84. 16 should be retained). In 2. 158. 22 the art. refers to 1. 17.

11. **With μέσον.** The art. is omitted w. predic. μέσον in 1. 170. 15; 4. 17. 2; 4. 87. 15; also in preposit. phrases 1. 181. 4, 8; 2. 126. 10; 4. 171. 4; 8. 15. 5; 8. 23. 8. In 1. 186. 3 μέσον may be adverb. w. ἔχειν.

12. **Position.** A partit. gen. in attrib. position gen. occurs in contrasts w. μὲν . . . δέ; cp. 1. 143. 2; 7. 129. 3; 7. 156. 11; not infreq. the gen. depends upon art. w. partic. 1. 146. 10; 7. 110. 6; 7. 138. 4. Without marked contrast in μὲν clause in 1. 105. 13; 5. 1. 1; 8. 1. 1. In 8. 66. 9 τε . . . καὶ connects; in 8. 4. 1 and 8. 68 β. 11 there is no contrast, but other words intervene between art. and partic. In 1. 24. 18; 1. 98. 21; 6. 57. 27 the gen. depends upon a superl. in the attrib. position; but cp. 1. 53. 14.

The possessive gens. in attrib. position in 1. 165. 4; 2. 133. 6; 6. 30. 7 are also marked off by μὲν . . . δέ, but cp. 9. 50. 8. For reflexives in predic. position see 2. 26. 3; 2. 107. 5; 5. 5. 8; 6. 23. 11; 9. 33. 26; 9. 37. 15 (in 2. 26, 2. 107, 6. 23 the readings vary; in 5. 5 τοῦ οἰκησιότατου ἑωντῆς the governing word is not a subst.; in 9. 37 ἀπέταμε τὸν ταρσὸν ἑωντοῦ might be compared w. τοῦ ὠτὸς ἀποτάμνονται 4. 71. 10).

### § 9. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

1. **Nominative.** a. **τύ** in 4. 157. 7 in oracular verse. σφέως (4. 43. 23; 7. 168. 7; 8. 7. 7; 8. 108. 13 (?); 9. 55. 16) is always indir. reflexive. b. The nom. is freq. inserted when there is

no special emphasis, esp. after *ὥς ας*; cp. 7. 53. 9; 7. 101. 9; 7. 184. 3; 7. 239. 21; 8. 30. 3; 8. 35. 10; 8. 38. 6; 8. 68 β. 9; 8. 80. 13; 8. 144. 26 etc.; the adv. of comparison suggests a contrast; cp. *ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν* 4. 17. 12 etc. At times the idea of contrast is suggested by *μέν* without following *δέ* 7. 9 γ. 3; 7. 239. 7; cp. *ὥς μὲν ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν* 8. 66. 5 etc. More peculiar is the writer's use of *ἐγώ* when he promises to tell something later (2. 38. 7; 2. 51. 2), or declines to tell what he knows (2. 65. 9; 2. 123. 14). c. In clauses balanced by *μὲν . . . δέ*, when the first clause contains a negative idea, the strong contrast is emphasized by introducing the second clause with *ἐγὼ δέ, σὺ δέ, ὁ δέ* etc., although there is no change in subj.; cp. 7. 6. 23; 7. 10 θ. 10; 7. 13. 3; 7. 125. 5; 7. 156. 3; 7. 163. 7; 7. 208. 10; 7. 218. 18; 7. 239. 13; 8. 40. 10 (more than thirty examples); in 2. 115. 24 ἀλλ' αὐτὰ ἐγὼ for ἐγὼ δέ. In 6. 16. 5 there is no negative in the first clause, but there is a contrast between *νέας μὲν* and *οἱ δέ* (cp. *αὐτοὶ δέ* in Homer). In 7. 224. 1 the subjects of the two clauses differ; also in 7. 223. 10, where, however, the use of *οἱ δέ* would be more in accordance w. the com. usage, and the general sense of the passage would be improved by a negative before *ἐφυλάσσετο* = *for they did not cling to* (cp. Aesch. *Eum.* 440) *the protection of the wall, but they* etc. For the use of the prons. before *δέ* in the apodosis see § 28. d. A Homeric repetition of the subj. by a pron. w. *γὰρ* is found in 2. 173. 19; 7. 10 θ. 14. e. Here may be mentioned H.'s use of the 2 sg. fut. in geographical descriptions for the indef. *one*; cp. 2. 29. 11, 17, 23, 24; 2. 30. 2.

2. **Genitive.** a. The 3 pers. *ἐο* only in 3. 135. 16 as indir. reflexive. b. *ἐμέο* and *σέο* are rare in possessive use; instead *μοῖ, σοῖ*, and the possess. adjs.; but cp. 6. 68. 5; 9. 89. 16.

3. **Dative.** a. *σοί* is emphatic, *τοῖ* unemphatic. In the Mss. *σοί* is at times enclitic; see 1. 109. 5; 1. 120. 32; 7. 10 α. 15; 8. 100. 34; with 7. 10 α cp. 1. 207. 8 and 3. 1. 24 (α has accent in

both). b. *σφιν* occurs occasionally in some Mss. (2. 81. 5; 2. 82. 5), but has been rejected in favor of *σφι*. c. For the possess. dat. see § 4. i. B. 1.

4. **Accusative.** a. *ε* only in an oracle 7. 220. 21. b. *σφέα* is rare outside of H., who uses it 22 times, of which 20 are in books i-v; cp. 1. 46. 17; 7. 50. 20; 8. 36. 4. It is never nom. and never reflex. *σφε* for *σφέα* in 3. 52. 18, 3. 53. 13, for *σφέας* in 7. 170. 4 (*s* has *σφέας*) has been rejected by the editors.

5. **Third Person.** The pure anaphoric prons. are *οι*, *μιν*, *σφέων*, *σφι*, *σφέας*, *σφέα* (*σφίσι* is reflex.; in 5. 103. 4; 6. 105. 9; 8. 68 β. 8, where all Mss. have an anaphoric *σφίσι*, most editors correct to *σφι*). *οι*, *μιν*, *σφι*, *σφέα* are never used directly after preps. (but *σὺν δέ οι* 6. 90. 3; 7. 57. 11, *σὺν δέ σφι* 6. 8. 2; 7. 10 θ. 8; 9. 11. 19), nor are *σφέων* and *σφέας* when anaphoric; *αὐτῷ* etc. instead. *αὐτοῦ* etc. are freq. in other anaphoric uses, often indistinguishable from *οι*, *μιν* etc. (cp. 7. 10 θ. 7, 8; 8. 40. 3, 14; 8. 108. 16, 18), though often more emphatic. *οι*, *μιν* etc. rarely refer to things of neuter gend., but *οι* is so used in 1. 183. 3, 4; 4. 34. 8; 6. 119. 14; *μιν* in 1. 93. 7; 1. 178. 12; 3. 111. 3 (cp. *αὐτό* in 1. 5); 6. 82. 3; 7. 143. 6; *σφέων* in 5. 58. 10; *σφι* in 3. 128. 7. *οι* of things not neut. in 1. 156. 8; 1. 181. 17; *μιν* in 1. 51. 11; 2. 175. 20; 4. 5. 17. *οι* is correlative in 2. 135. 10; 2. 172. 3; 7. 8 δ. 4; *σφέας* in 2. 144. 2; *σφέα* in 5. 92 η. 6. For a repeated relative, *οι* in 1. 40. 4; *σφι* in 1. 146. 7; 2. 39. 9.

## § 10. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1. **First and Second Person.** *ἐμεωντοῦ*, *-ῳ*, *-όν* 3. 142. 16; 6. 86 α. 16; 3. 155. 8; in 3. 142. 19 *αὐτῷ τέ μοι* in contrast to *τοῖσι ἀπ' ἐμέο*. *σεωντοῦ*, *-ῳ*, *-όν* 7. 16 α. 12; 7. 38. 15; 7. 157. 22; in 1. 124. 9 *σέο τε αὐτοῦ πέρι*. *ἡμέων αὐτῶν* etc. 4. 119. 18; 8. 109. 10, 19; *αὐτοῖσι ἡμῖν* in 5. 91. 12; *ὕμέων αὐτῶν* etc. 7. 135. 10; 7. 150. 12; 8. 140 α. 18. In the sing. the simple form is never direct

reflex., apart from the formula ἐγώ μοι δοκέω 2. 93. 28; 5. 80. 2; the plur. ἡμέων in 7. 236. 20. As indirect reflexives the simple forms are reg. in plur. and usual in sing., but cp. 3. 142. 16; 3. 145. 11.

2. **Third Person.** a. **Direct.** In sing. ἐωντοῦ, -ῶ etc. are reg.; αὐτήν μιν 2. 100. 16 (cp. 1. 24. 12). In gen. plur. ἐωντῶν most com.; σφέων αὐτῶν freq.; σφέων 7. 62. 8; 9. 54. 7. In dat. plur. σφίσι most com. (Mss. have σφὶ 1. 142. 15; 2. 42. 9); σφίσι αὐτοῖσι and ἐωντοῖς are also used. In acc. plur. σφέας αὐτούς most com.; ἐωντούς freq.; σφέας 4. 120. 7. b. **Indirect.** Most freq. οἱ, μιν, σφεῖς, σφέων, σφὶ and σφίσι, σφέας. σφέων, σφίσι, σφέας occur w. preps. μιν, as subj. of infin. w. ref. to subj. of prin. verb 2. 132. 11; possibly also 7. 143. 6; in same construct. ἐωντόν 1. 34. 2; 4. 9. 8; 6. 126. 9; in plur. σφέας 1. 4. 4, 9; 1. 5. 5; 2. 4. 13; 4. 7. 2; 4. 15. 13, 16; 4. 187. 12; 5. 9. 13; 5. 86. 17; but ἐωντούς 1. 134. 10; 1. 171. 24 (αὐτοὶ ἐωντούς); 2. 2. 2, 6; 3. 22. 23; 4. 94. 2; 5. 7. 6; 6. 137. 22; and σφέας αὐτούς 4. 78. 17; 5. 44. 2; 8. 94. 21; and αὐτούς 2. 107. 12; 5. 36. 17. For ἐωντοῦ, -ῶ etc. as indir. reflex. see 7. 3. 11; 7. 147. 3; 7. 209. 23; 8. 24. 4; 8. 61. 8; 8. 134. 12; in a gen. absol. clause only 9. 4. 8 (as subj. of gen. absol. 3. 27. 6; 9. 106. 11). σφέων αὐτῶν etc. are less freq. indirect; cp. 5. 57. 10. For αὐτοῦ, -ῶ, etc. as indir. reflex. see 7. 18. 3; 7. 101. 3; 7. 156. 12; 7. 206. 3; 7. 230. 3; 8. 40. 6; 8. 61. 11; 8. 65. 12; 8. 98. 9; 8. 103. 5; note 1. 165. 4; 2. 133. 6; 6. 111. 14 w. αὐτοῦ in attrib. position.

3. **Pronominal Adjectives.** ὅς occurs in 1. 205. 4 (?). σφέτερος is both direct and indirect; it is always plur.; in sing. ἐωντοῦ. ἐμός is more freq. dir. reflex. than ἐμεωντοῦ, but σεωντοῦ more freq. than σός. In plur. αὐτῶν is added to adj. (5. 98. 12), but simple adj. 4. 133. 9.

4. To emphasize a pron. without giving reflex. meaning αὐτός



is placed first; cp. 3. 72. 26; 1. 117. 12; 8. 102. 4; 7. 8 a. 6. In 1 sing. the Mss. vary between emphatic and unemphatic forms; αὐτῷ μοι 2. 10. 2; 4. 134. 12; 7. 28. 11, but ἐμοί 3. 142. 19; αὐτοῦ τε ἐμέο 7. 38. 13; αὐτὸν δὲ με 8. 101. 16. If αὐτός follows the pron. a word stands between 7. 39. 3.

5. Combinations like αὐτοὶ ἐωντῶν are freq. in 3 pers.; cp. 7. 10 a. 5; 7. 236. 20; 8. 16. 7; 8. 86. 9; no example in 1 pers., in 2 pers. only 9. 16. 17.

### § 11. INDEFINITE τῖς

1. τῖς means *every one* in exhortations and threats 7. 5. 13; 7. 237. 15; 8. 109. 21.

2. τῖς w. adjs. strengthening their meaning is freq.; it gen. follows. Cp. ἐκ πολλοῦ τεο χρόνου 2. 58. 8; πολλόν τι πληῆθος 2. 60. 3; οὐ πολλῷ τεψ w. compar. 1. 181. 2; 2. 48. 8; w. superl. 5. 92 ε. 14; πολλόν τι w. superl. 1. 192. 11; σμικρόν τι 2. 7. 7; 4. 130. 1; see also 1. 147. 5; 2. 129. 15; 4. 198. 2; 7. 42. 9; 7. 192. 8; 8. 15. 1; 8. 93. 9. With οὐδέν 4. 19. 3; 4. 118. 15. With πᾶς 8. 86. 9. With εἰς 8. 26. 4. Cp. also οὕτω δὴ τι w. adjs. 1. 163. 11; 1. 185. 10; 2. 11. 4; τοιούτος (τοιόσδε) δὴ τις 1. 178. 6; 1. 192. 20; 5. 92 ε. 12 etc.

3. Position. τῶν τις Δελφῶν, characteristic of Ionic, is the usual order in H.

### § 12. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

1. οὗτος, τοιούτος, οὕτω usually refer back, but forward in 1. 7. 2; 1. 125. 3; 1. 178. 6; 7. 3. 12; 7. 5. 7; 7. 175. 14; 8. 140 a. 2 etc.

2. ὅδε, τοιόσδε, τοσόσδε, ὧδε usually look forward, but cp. 1. 137. 2; 1. 141. 17; 1. 164. 2; 3. 48. 19; 4. 8. 1; 5. 83. 4 (cp. 6. 86 β. 13); 7. 62. 8; 7. 99. 17; 7. 230. 2; 8. 139. 2.

3. ἐξ αὐτῶν, ἐν αὐτοῖσι *therefrom, therein* for more usual οὗτος

1. 9. 2; 1. 89. 7; 7. 8 γ. 3; 7. 10 α. 15; 7. 10 η. 11; 7. 14. 8; 7. 50. 9; 8. 60. 19, 25; the sing. in 1. 207. 15; 2. 51. 17; 7. 46. 20.

### § 13. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

1. After *know*, *tell* a relat. clause often approaches in meaning an indirect question, esp. through the omission of the anteced. demonstr. (cp. 2. 121 β. 16; 3. 50. 12; 3. 68. 2; 5. 74. 5; 6. 124. 7; 6. 129. 3; 7. 26. 6), or the transference of the anteced. noun to the relat. clause (1. 56. 5; 4. 53. 17; 6. 132. 5). After *ask* τό is used in 3. 51. 2; 7. 37. 11; 9. 54. 9 (cp. ώς 7. 148. 10); after *discuss* 6. 37. 10; 8. 40. 6; 9. 71. 12 (ὅς; cp. 2. 134. 17).

2. ὅστις after a definite anteced. instead of ὅς is not infreq.; cp. 1. 7. 10; 2. 46. 13; 3. 70. 6; 4. 8. 4; 6. 13. 14; 7. 196. 11; 8. 26. 8.

3. **Attraction.** In 69 instances the acc. of ὅς is attracted, in 42 it is not. Of the 69 examples there are 30 of τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, so that, apart from this, attraction is omitted as often as it occurs. Subst. relat. clauses permit attraction more freq. than adj. clauses (cp. 7. 8 γ. 11; 8. 100. 22; 8. 105. 3; 3. 134. 31). The verb in clauses w. attracted relat. is reg. indic. The relat. is not attracted if an attrib. acc. accompanies it (cp. 2. 42. 5). a. An acc. of time is attracted in 1. 107. 2: βασιλεύσας . . . ἔτεα σὺν τοῖσι Σκίθαι ἦρξαν. b. A nom. becomes acc. in 1. 92. 21; 2. 8. 7; 2. 22. 7 (?); 5. 92 δ. 5; gen. for nom. 1. 78. 15. The four examples of the acc. are neut.; in form, therefore, the same as the nom. c. Attraction from dat. occurs only in the stereotyped temporal phrases ἀπ' ἧς, ἀπ' οὗ, ἐν ᾧ etc. d. Attraction of noun to relat. occurs in τὰς δὲ στήλας (nom. in a), τὰς ἴσθη . . . , αἱ μὲν πλέονες 2. 106. 1; cp. 3. 147. 2; 9. 88. 5. e. οὐδείς ὅστις οὐ 5. 97. 11. οὐδαμῶν Ἑλληνικῶν τῶν οὐ πολλὸν μέζω 7. 145. 19. ἀφθονοὶ ὅσοι γίνονται 4. 194. 5; cp. 2. 175. 4; 4. 28. 3. In this connection may be mentioned the

formal use of *ὥς ἕκαστος* = *each separately* after the manner of Thuc.; cp. 1. 114. 10; 6. 31. 5; 6. 79. 7; cp. 2. 82. 2: *τάδε ἄλλα ἐστὶ ἐξευρημένα . . . τῇ ἑκαστος ἡμέρῃ γινόμενος ὅτεοσι ἐγκυρήσει they have worked out what fortune will befall a man according to the day on which he is born.*

#### § 14. ADVERBS

1. The demonstr. adv. *ὥς* *so* is freq., and occurs in the foll. combinations: *ὥς δὲ καὶ* 7. 104. 16; 7. 106. 4; 7. 206. 7; 8. 126. 13 etc.; *ὥς δὲ δὴ καὶ* 3. 37. 3 (?); *ὥς δέ* 3. 13. 12; *ὥς γάρ* 9. 18. 11; *ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὥς* 1. 128. 3; 3. 152. 5; *μέντοι οὐδ' ὥς* 6. 76. 10; *ὥς δ' αὖτως* 7. 86. 9; 8. 21. 5 etc.; *ὡσαύτως* 7. 86. 3, 7; 7. 236. 21; 8. 50. 7 etc.; *ὥς δὲ παραπλησίως* 7. 119. 1.

2. For adv. use of *ὅμοια*, *ἐπίκοινα*, *παραπλήσια* see 1. 216. 2; 4. 99. 16; 6. 77. 8; 7. 118. 8; 7. 120. 9; 7. 141. 4.

#### § 15. TENSES

1. **Present.** a. **Historic.** For the ordinary use to give greater liveliness to the narrative see 1. 45. 19; 3. 78. 11; 3. 130. 6, 12, 15 etc. H. also often uses the annalistic pres. when giving a brief chronicle of past events, esp. *γίνεται*, *τελευτᾷ*, *τίκτει*, *γαμῇ*; cp. 3. 160. 12; 4. 78. 4, 6; 4. 149. 5; 4. 160. 1; 5. 27. 5; 5. 41. 3; 5. 92 β. 4, 6; 7. 61. 14 etc. b. Pres. in fut. sense often in oracles; cp. 7. 140; 8. 77. In the apod. of fut. condits. 1. 207. 15, 18; 3. 155. 17; 6. 86 a. 3; 6. 109. 29; 8. 102. 15; cp. 5. 43. 6; 6. 82. 12.

2. **Imperfect.** a. Iterative in *-σκον* freq.; cp. 7. 5. 15; 7. 33. 11; 7. 41. 2; 7. 106. 2; 7. 119. 16, 19; 7. 211. 12. b. Iterative w. *ἄν* 1. 196. 16, 22; 2. 109. 7; 3. 51. 12, 15; 7. 211. 13. *ἄν* w. forms in *-σκον* 2. 174. 5; 3. 119. 12; 4. 42. 16. c. Of attempt or intention in 1. 68. 26; 1. 69. 16; 1. 208. 6; 7. 20. 10 etc. d. With negative denoting resistance or inability 1. 76. 14;

5. 41. 16; 9. 55. 6; often in temporal clause of antecedence 7. 210. 3; 7. 211. 17; 7. 212. 12; 8. 4. 9; 8. 121. 1 etc., with associated causal meaning. e. With *αὐτίκα* etc. much more freq. than aor.; cp. 7. 1. 6; 7. 215. 2; 8. 108. 5; 8. 110. 5; 8. 128. 15. f. With *ἄρα* expressing the real state of things in contrast to what had been thought 3. 64. 20; 3. 65. 12; 3. 70. 4; 4. 64. 18; 8. 8. 7; 8. 111. 10 (pres. in 7. 35. 10; aor. in 7. 30. 7). g. In certain verbs the imperf. is preferred to the aor., as *λέγειν* (before a speech), *καλεῖν*, *κελεύειν*, *αἰτεῖν*, *δεῖσθαι*, *ἄγειν*, *πέμπειν*, *πλεῖν*, *πορεύεσθαι* etc.; cp. 1. 35. 6; 1. 120. 2; 3. 41. 8; 7. 148. 4; 7. 173. 5; 8. 64. 9; 8. 66. 4; 8. 70. 1; 8. 122. 4. h. In temporal sentences w. *until* the main verb is reg. imp. The negated aors. in 6. 45. 7, 7. 137. 8, 8. 8. 12 imply an extended action of the opposite kind. The participles carry the idea of extended action in 2. 143. 16; 6. 83. 2. Sometimes the sentences are elliptical, the extended action following the aor. being suggested by the context; cp. 1. 158. 8; 4. 160. 2; 4. 201. 10; 6. 24. 7. The aor. in 4. 196. 12 is gnomic. For the imperf. instead of the aor. in the *until* clause see 3.

3. **Aorist.** a. Iteratives in *-σκον* from aor. stems are found in 4. 78. 19; 9. 74. 6; combined w. *ἄν* in 4. 78. 22; 4. 130. 8. b. Gnomic aors. in 2. 20. 8; 3. 82. 15; 7. 172. 18. Particularly characteristic is the use w. *ὅν*, which, when the verb is a compd., is placed between the prep. and verb. See examples under *Tmesis*, § 7, and 1. 132. 13. c. Ingressive in 7. 3. 18; 7. 13. 9; 7. 39. 1; 7. 45. 4; 7. 182. 4; 8. 23. 10; 8. 85. 11 etc. d. In questions w. *οὐ*, suggesting immediate action, in 9. 48. 18: *τί δὲ οὐ . . . ἐμαχεσάμεθα*; *Why don't we fight?* e. Temporal clauses. a. In *until* clauses the subord. verb is reg. aor. Exceptions are due to the 'overlapping' of the time of the main and subord. actions, to the aoristic effect of the subord. clause due to the kind of verb or some accompanying phrase, or to some peculiarity in the structure

of the sentence; cp. for impf. 1. 158. 11; 1. 196. 21; 3. 48. 20; 4. 160. 3, 11; 9. 55. 6; 9. 94. 6 (pres. subj. or infin. 1. 202. 13; 2. 115. 25; 4. 42. 13; 4. 196. 12; 7. 171. 9); for pres. 1. 98. 3; 3. 104. 14; 4. 181. 19; 6. 75. 12; for plupf. 5. 51. 13; 9. 55. 6.  $\beta$ . In clauses w. *πρίν* before the aor. infin. is regular; the exceptions are due to the nature of the verb, as 7. 228. 3; 8. 3. 2; 8. 144. 9. In the main clause the aor. is usual, but for impf. of continuing action see 4. 134. 20; 4. 167. 7.  $\gamma$ . In clauses introduced by *after* the aor. is usual if the action of the clause is wholly antecedent. Many imperf. are due to the kind of verb, *κελεύω, πλέω* etc. (see 2. g) being much used in this tense; cp. 1. 11. 7; 1. 171. 8; 2. 29. 29; 2. 108. 16; 2. 140. 4; 7. 146. 11; 7. 188. 1. The imperf. is reg. when negated. The plupf. is found only 13 times w. *ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, ἐπείτε*; of these 5 are passives (8. 53. 14; 9. 84. 1 etc.), *ἀπίκατο* occurs 4 times (7. 175. 1; 8. 6. 2 etc.), *ἐγεγόνει* twice (8. 27. 1; 8. 129. 2), *οἰχώκει* in 7. 164. 13; *παρηβήκει* in 3. 53. 2. Of about 45 examples w. *ὥς* about 30 are passives; there are 10 cases of *ἐγεγόνει* of which 8 are expressions of time like *ὥς εὐφρόνη ἐγεγόνει* 8. 12. 1; *ἀπίκατο* is found three times, *οἰχώκει* twice; cp. also 8. 126. 11; 8. 129. 6.

4. Future. a. Indicative. a. A gnomic fut., descriptive of customs, is found in 1. 173. 21; 1. 198. 6; 1. 199. 20; 2. 39. 18; 2. 41. 10. With this cp. the 'Traveller's Future,' *ἦξεis ἐς πόλιν μεγάλην* 2. 29. 11, 17, 19, 23, 24; 2. 30. 2; 2. 97. 11 etc.  $\beta$ . *οὐ μὴ* w. fut. indic. in an emphatic negative is the reading of  $\beta$  in 3. 62. 17;  $\alpha$  has subj. (cp. 1. 199. 18; 7. 53. 11).  $\gamma$ . In delib. question 7. 234. 14; cp. *τὰς τέφ τρόπῃ περήσομεν* 3. 72. 7. Indirect cases in 1. 11. 22; 3. 72. 4; 3. 84. 2; 1. 98. 1; 1. 125. 1; the Mss. vary between fut. indic. and aor. subj. in 7. 213. 1; 8. 135. 13.  $\delta$ . *ὅπως* w. fut. in a demand 3. 142. 24. b. Optative. The Mss. agree in reading a fut. opt. only in 7. 226. 11 and 9. 38. 12 (*λέγων ὥς ἀπολάμβουτο συχνοῦς*).  $\alpha$  has *ἦξει* in 1. 127. 5. The

pres. opt. in 7. 6. 17 represents the pres. indic. of a prophecy. The pres. ῥνοῖατο in 4. 135. 12 represents a command of the direct form, put into the opt. through the influence of μέλλοι in the μέν clause. c. Infinitive. a. With *promise, swear, prophesy* etc., there is some variation between fut., and aor. or pres. ὑπισχνέσθαι w. fut. 3. 74. 12; in 7. 168. 5 pres. in β; in 7. 215. 1 aor. in B and β. ὑποδέκεσθαι w. fut. 5. 111. 20 (neg. μή); 6. 11. 15 (neg. οὐ); 4. 119. 5; 4. 133. 13; 4. 148. 7; 6. 62. 3; 7. 158. 21; 8. 29. 10; 8. 102. 5; 9. 12. 5; in 3. 69. 16 fut. in α, aor. in β; in 1. 24. 16 and 6. 2. 5 fut. only in P (all three κατεργάσσεσθαι; cp. 7. 215). ὑπιδύσαν in 7. 134. 14 has fut. in β, aor. in α. ὑποστήναι w. fut. 9. 94. 8. προῖπε w. fut. 1. 84. 4. ἐπαγγέλλεσθαι w. fut. 8. 142. 18. εὐχέσθαι w. fut. 2. 181. 13; 4. 76. 10 (= *vow*), but aor. in 1. 27. 16; 1. 31. 22 (= *pray for*). προλέγειν in 1. 53. 13 w. fut. (aor. in some Mss.). λόγιον w. aor. 8. 60 γ. 6. ἐκέχρηστο w. aor. 7. 220. 10; w. fut. 2. 139. 9; 2. 147. 17; 2. 151. 12; 3. 64. 16; 4. 156. 5; 5. 43. 7; 6. 76. 1; 7. 142. 7; 8. 51. 12. ἀνείλον w. fut. 9. 33. 8. προαγορεύειν w. fut. 1. 91. 16; 1. 74. 11. ἐπομνύναι etc. w. fut. 1. 29. 11; 1. 165. 14; 3. 74. 8 etc., but Mss. have ἐκδύσασθαι in 5. 106. 31. In laws, oaths, and agreements where the infin. is not directly dependent upon a verb of *swearing* or *promising* the pres. or aor. is used; cp. 1. 146. 16; 4. 201. 22; 7. 132. 9; 9. 26. 20. ἐλπίζειν etc. have fut. when *hope* of fut. action is expressed, but H. freq. uses these words of confident expectation, and consequently w. pres. or aor. ἐπίδοξος w. fut. 6. 12. 17; w. aor. 1. 89. 7. προσδέκεσθαι w. fut. infin. 7. 235. 18; 8. 130. 14 etc.; w. fut. partic. 1. 89. 8; ὥς w. fut. indic. 9. 48. 13. β. In 8. 86. 10 the Mss. agree in reading the aor. w. δοκεῖν; in 9. 109. 9 α has αἰτῆσαι, β αἰτήσεσθαι; in 8. 100. 10 after ἔφερέ οἱ ἡ γνώμη the Mss. have aor. With 9. 109 cp. 7. 38. 6. With δοκεῖν the aor. is hard to defend. In 8. 86 the pres. would suit the context better than the fut. After γνώμη in 8. 100 the aor. is possibly due to an idea

of *intention*; cp. 5. 118. 9; 6. 110. 4. γ. With ἐν νόῳ ἔχειν and other words of *intention* there are several examples of the fut., as well as of the aor. or pres.; cp. fut. in 1. 10. 9; 1. 86. 9; 8. 7. 10; 9. 93. 14; aor. in 7. 157. 11; pres. in 1. 27. 10; 3. 64. 8; 4. 125. 19 etc. ἐπέχειν w. fut. 1. 80. 24; w. pres. 1. 153. 20; 6. 96. 1. νοεῖσθαι w. fut. 7. 206. 7; w. pres. 1. 77. 14. διανοεῖσθαι w. fut. 7. 207. 2; w. pres. 9. 54. 8. ἐπινοεῖν w. fut. 3. 31. 7; 3. 134. 17; w. pres. 1. 27. 3; 3. 122. 8; w. aor. 2. 150. 12; 2. 152. 9; 5. 24. 7 etc. ἐπιβουλεύειν w. fut. 6. 137. 21. See also fut. w. παρασκευάζεσθαι 8. 97. 11, and even w. βούλομαι 4. 111. 15. δ. With μέλλω the fut. is most com. (c. 80 cases: c. 35 pres.), the aor. rare, γενέσθαι alone being found 1. 34. 5; 2. 39. 14; 7. 148. 10 (pres. in β) a form easily confused w. the pres. (in 4. 146. 7 some Mss. have καταχρήσασθαι; in 8. 40. 7 α has ποιήσασθαι). With μέλλω cp. ἀναβάλλεσθαι w. fut. 5. 49. 50; 6. 86 β. 12; in 9. 8. 2 β has pres., α aor.

#### § 16. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

Besides the use in exhortations and prohibitions (8. 65. 26; 8. 100. 26; 8. 109. 22; 8. 142. 20) may be noted: a. οὐ μή w. subj. in an emphatic negation 1. 199. 18; 3. 62. 17 (fut. indic. in β); 7. 53. 11. b. Deliberative questions 7. 101. 15 etc.; for indirect cases see 7. 213. 1; 8. 36. 4; 8. 101. 19 etc. In μαθήσεσθε ὁκοῖον ἄν τι ὑμῖν ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἐκβαίῃη (9. 11. 12) we have a relat. clause rather than a question (cp. § 13. 1); cp. μάθε ὅσα ἀγαθὰ ἀποβαλεῖς 1. 71. 16. c. μὴ οὐ w. subj. in an expression of doubt: ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον μὴ οὐ τοῦτο ἢ τὸ μαντήιον 5. 79. 12. d. ὅπως μὴ w. subj. in a warning 6. 85. 12.

#### § 17. OPTATIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

Besides the opt. in wishes (3. 65. 37; 6. 69. 33; 7. 11. 8; in relat. clause 5. 111. 16; introduced by ἀλλ' εἰ 7. 5. 10) and the ordinary potential opt. may be noted the following potential opta-

tives referring to the past: **a.** With pres. tense 1. 2. 6 (ἄησαν δ' ἄν οὔτοι Κρήτες *these were Cretans, I suppose*); 1. 70. 17; 2. 98. 7; 5. 59. 7; 5. 60. 5; 7. 184. 17; 7. 214. 11; 8. 136. 19. **b.** With aor. tense 2. 11. 20; 7. 180. 7; 9. 71. 19.

### § 18. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

In general the usage is as in Attic. For examples of *particular* conditions see 7. 103. 8; 8. 22. 9, 11; 8. 100. 28; of *general* 7. 3. 12; 7. 6. 22; 8. 115. 8 (imperf. indic. in 7. 83. 5); of *ideal* 7. 9 γ. 5; 7. 15. 15; 8. 108. 13; 8. 19. 3 (no ἄν in Mss.); of *unreal* 7. 47. 4; 7. 50. 16; 8. 93. 5; 9. 45. 6 (imperf. of past 8. 30. 5; 8. 103. 2; 8. 140 β. 6; for χρῆν in apod. see 7. 9 β. 10; 9. 60. 10); of *future* 7. 10 θ. 6; 8. 80. 10. The following points may be particularly noted.

**1. Omission of ἄν.** The foll. doubtful examples occur: εἰ μὴ ἀναβῇ (ἦν in β) 2. 13. 6; ἦν καὶ ἀποστέωσι (εἰ in α) 3. 15. 8; εἰ μὲν μεταμελήσῃ (fut. in β) 3. 36. 25; εἰ δὲ διαχρήσῃσθε (fut. in β) 6. 11. 10; εἰ δὲ ἀποδέξῃς (subj. in β) 7. 50. 8; εἰ νικηθῶσι 8. 49. 9 (ἦν in β); εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὴ ποιήσῃς (fut. P δ) 8. 62. 6; εἰ μὴ γένηται (ἦν in β) 8. 118. 13. The Mss. vary in each case. In three cases it is a question of an easily confused -σῃ or -σει; in four of ἦν μὲν or εἰ μὲν, ἦν μὴ or εἰ μὴ, ἦν νικ- or εἰ νικ-, i.e. a nasal follows the particle, rendering the confusion of εἰ and ἦν easy, to the ear at least. See next section.

**2. Negative οὐ.** εἰ δὲ ταῦτα οὐ ποιήσεις 1. 212. 13; εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν οὐ ποιήσουσι, οἱ δὲ πάντως διὰ μάχης ἐλεύσονται 6. 9. 20; cp. 7. 10 θ. 11; contrast εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὴ ποιήσῃς (-εις) 8. 62. 6. The meaning in these cases is *if you are determined not to do what is advised*. In 7. 16 γ. 15 οὐ negatives οἶά τε. In 6. 133. 10 the Mss. vary between ἦν μὴ οἱ δῶσι and ἦν μιν οὐ δῶσι (Stein μὲν οὐ). In 7. 9. 10 etc. οὐ after δεινὸν εἰ as freq.; cp. 1. 60. 14; 1. 129. 11; 5. 97. 14; 7. 46. 9; 9. 68. 2; 9. 100. 7.



3. **θέλει.** a. With an inanimate subject *θέλει* is used in fut. condits. of something that is going to happen beyond the control of human agencies; cp. *εἰ γὰρ ἐθελήσει ῥήξας ὑπερβῆναι ὁ ποταμὸς ταύτῃ, κίνδυνος πάσῃ Μέμφι κατακλυσθῆναί ἐστι* 2. 99. 14; cp. *ω. θεός* as subj. 2. 13. 18. The fut. *ἐθελήσει* is used in 1. 32. 13; 1. 109. 12; 2. 11. 15; 2. 13. 18; 2. 99. 14; the pres. *ἐθέλει* in 7. 10 δ. 7; 7. 16 γ. 6; 7. 49. 15; the opt. in 2. 14. 4 (possibly influenced by *ὡς εἶπον*). b. Strong determination is expressed by the 2 pers. *ἐθελήσεις* in 7. 10 θ. 11 (see 2); cp. in the 3 pers. *εἰ (ἄνθρωπος) ἐθέλοι κατεσπουδάσθαι αἰεὶ, λάθοι ἂν μανείς* 2. 173. 18. c. Simple futurity is expressed by the 1 pers. in *εἰ γὰρ ἐθελήσομεν ἐσδέξασθαι τοὺς πολεμίους ἐς τὴν χώραν* 1. 207. 14 and *γνοὺς ὅτι εἰ ἐθέλει σφι πᾶσαν τὴν ἀληθείην εἰπεῖν, αὐτὸς κινδυνεύσει ἀπολείσθαι* 9. 89. 5; cp. the impersonal 2 pers. in *εἰ θέλεις ψήφῳ μούνη βαλεῖν διατετρανεῖς* 3. 12. 6 ('Traveler's Future' instead of pres. gen.).

4. **Future Indicative.** See 7. 8 γ. 3; 7. 10 θ. 10; 7. 11. 11; 7. 16 γ. 13; 7. 50. 8; 7. 172. 14; 7. 226. 11; 7. 236. 15; 8. 3. 5; 8. 62. 3; 8. 108. 12; 8. 112. 6. Generally, if the verb is 2 pers., a warning is implied.

5. For *εἰ* clauses with *attempt* etc. see 3. 128. 13; 6. 52. 17; 8. 6. 6; 9. 14. 4.

### § 19. INDEFINITE RELATIVE CLAUSES

1. For subj. and opt. as in Attic see the *general* clauses in 7. 49. 16; 7. 104. 21; 8. 98. 5; 8. 115. 8, 15; the *future* in 8. 19. 9; 8. 93. 8; 9. 7. 13. Indic. in *particular* 8. 32. 12 etc.

2. **Omission of *ἄν*.** The four examples are *general* clauses: 1. 216. 4; 2. 85. 2 (cp. *ἄν* in the clause on which it depends); 4. 46. 11; 4. 66. 4 (*πίνουσι τῶν Σκυθίων τοῖσι ἄνδρες κτέ., τοῖσι δ' ἄν μὴ*; note *ἄν* in the *δέ* clause and the possibility of loss of *ἄν* before *ἄνδρες*).

3. Some indefinite relat. clauses apparently have a definite

antecedent; cp. ἐπεθύμησε μνημῖον ἐωντῆς καταλιπέσθαι ποίημα ποιησαμένη τοῦτο τὸ μὴ τυγχάνοι ἄλλῳ ἐξευρημένον . . . τοῦτο ἀναθεῖναι 2. 135. 13 = *what shall turn out not to have been discovered by another, that to set up as a memorial*. Note the negative, the mood, and the lack of the article w. τοῦτο, showing that ποίημα is appositive. Such relat. clauses are substantives, not adjectives. Instead of οὗτος Attic writers generally use τοιοῦτος ὅς (μή). Cp. 1. 32. 8; 4. 79. 12; 4. 95. 15; 4. 166. 5; 6. 125. 10; 7. 11. 20; 7. 102. 3. In τί σφεας ἀπαιρήσεται, τοῖσί γε μὴ ἐστι μὴδέν 1. 71. 15 the meaning is *what will you get from people who have nothing, like them?*

## § 20. TEMPORAL CLAUSES

1. **General.** For the most part, as in Attic, the subj. w. ἄν is used of pres. time, the opt. of past. In clauses of which the action precedes that of the main verb ἐπεάν is almost invariably used in pres. gen. (about 150 cases), ὅκως in past gen. (about 50 cases). Examples are: ἐπεάν w. subj. 7. 9 β. 3; 7. 10 α. 5; 7. 10 ε. 6; 7. 85. 9; 8. 104. 6 etc.; ἐπεῖτε ἄν w. subj. 1. 200. 3; 1. 202. 8; ἐπεῖτε w. opt. 2. 181. 7; εὔτε ἄν (contemp.) w. subj. 2. 63. 3; 6. 27. 1; εὔτε w. opt. 4. 78. 15 (antecedent, resumed w. ὅκως); ὁκότε w. opt. 2. 120. 10 (contemp.); 2. 181. 17 (anteced.); ὁσάκις ἄν w. subj. 1. 198. 2 (anteced.); ὅταν w. subj. 5. 16. 19 (strictly anteced., but w. emphasis upon the almost simultaneous result); ὅτε w. opt. 4. 78. 27 (anteced.); ὥς w. opt. 1. 17. 7 (anteced.); 7. 119. 18 (ἐγίνετο in α); in 1. 196. 17 ὥς is *modal* = *just as he used to go through with the sale of the handsomest, he would put up the ugliest*; ὅκως w. opt. 7. 6. 19; 7. 41. 2; 7. 128. 11; 8. 52. 4; 8. 90. 17; 8. 91. 6 etc. ἐς ὃ ἄν w. subj. 1. 93. 14; 3. 82. 21; 4. 30. 9; 4. 196. 12; in 3. 31. 11 ἄν is omitted; μέχρι οὗ w. opt. 2. 179. 7; πρὶν ἄν w. subj. 1. 140. 4; 1. 197. 9; 1. 198. 6; 3. 109. 6 (α omits ἄν); 4. 117. 5; 4. 196. 14. ἄν is reg.

omitted w. πρὶν ἢ 1. 136. 8 ; 7. 10 η. 10 and πρότερον ἢ 1. 199. 14 ; 4. 196. 15.

Two sentences (1. 132. 5 ; 4. 172. 15) have ὥς w. subj. without ἄν. Both are introduced by τῶν δὲ ὥς ἕκαστος and are not purely temporal. This is shown clearly in 1. 132 (τῶν δὲ ὥς ἕκαστω θύειν θέλῃ, καλεῖ τὸν θεόν) by the τόν θεόν ; the meaning is *according as he wishes to sacrifice to each of the gods in turn, he calls upon that god*. So τῶν δὲ ὥς ἕκαστός οἱ μυχθῇ, διδοῖ δῶρον (4. 172) = *according as each guest in turn has intercourse with her, he gives her a gift*. ὥς differs from *when* here in that it implies that the time of the action of the prin. verb corresponds in *order* to that of the subord. clause ; cp. *each man is assigned a number when he comes in with each man is assigned a number in accordance with when he comes in* (= the time of his arrival). The use of ὥς is similar in 1. 196. 5 : ὥς ἂν αἱ παρθένοι γινοῖατο γάμων ὠραῖαι, ταύτας ἐς ἓν χωρίον ἐσάγεσκον ἀλέας *according as the maidens in turn became marriageable they used to bring them together into one place* (cp. ταύτας w. τὸν θεόν in 1. 132). Here the ἄν is difficult ; perhaps we should read αὖ *in turn*, which, like ἕκαστος, would bring out the idea of ὥς as of *order* rather than simple time. With the first two cp. 6. 31. 5 : ὅπως δὲ λάβοι τινὰ τῶν νήσων, ὥς ἕκαστην αἰρέοντες οἱ βάρβαροι ἐσαγγέλευον τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, for which might have been written, without great change in meaning, τῶν δὲ ὥς ἕκαστην λάβοι κτέ.

In 1. 196. 21 the imperf. indic. is used in a gen. clause w. ἐς ὃ ; in 7. 23. 7 the aor. w. ἔως ; cp. 3. 104. 15 and 4. 181. 19, in which, however, the verb of the ἐς ὃ clause does not fix the end of the action of the prin. clause.

2. **Future.** The subjunctive is regular, but in 9. 58. 22 διωκτέοι εἰσι ἐς ὃ καταλαμφθέντες δώσουσι ἡμῖν δίκας. Here the end of the action of διωκτέοι lies properly in καταλαμφθέντες and δώσουσι tells what is going to happen then. Examples of fut. clauses are : ἐπεάν 7. 8 δ. 2 ; 7. 77. 2 ; 7. 146. 14 ; 8. 22. 13 etc. ; ἐπειδάν 8.

144. 28 (all Mss.; the Mss. vary in the conjunction in 1. 193. 18; 3. 21. 16; 4. 22. 11; 4. 61. 3); *ἐπεῖτε* 8. 22. 19 (no *ἄν*); *ὅταν* 7. 10 δ. 4; 5. 30. 29; 5. 93. 4 etc.; *ἄχρι οὗ* 1. 117. 18 (no *ἄν*); *ἔς ὃ ἄν* 2. 115. 25; 4. 43. 12; no *ἄν* in 8. 108. 25 (opt. in *a*); *ἕστ'* *ἄν* = *until* 7. 141. 10; 7. 158. 20; 8. 4. 8; = *as long as* 3. 53. 22; 4. 201. 12; 8. 61. 9; 8. 142. 19; 8. 143. 8; 8. 144. 19; *μέχρι* *until* 4. 119. 18 (no *ἄν*); *πρὶν* w. *ἄν* 1. 32. 39; 1. 159. 7; 5. 106. 32; without *ἄν* 4. 157. 11; 6. 82. 8; 7. 220. 22 (oracle); Mss. vary in use of *ἄν* in 1. 32. 25; 1. 82. 36; *πρὶν ἢ* reg. without *ἄν* 1. 19. 12; 4. 9. 8 (inf. in *a*); 6. 133. 11; 7. 8 β. 9; 9. 93. 26; 9. 117. 5; *πρότερον ἢ* without *ἄν* 7. 54. 8; 9. 86. 6; 9. 87. 5.

With regard to the omission of *ἄν* it is to be observed that in the case of *when* clauses there is but one example of omission (8. 22) out of a very large number of future and general clauses, and that in this case (*ἐπεῖτε ἀνεειχθῆ*) the following word begins w. *ἄν*. In *until* clauses *πρὶν ἢ* and *πρότερον ἢ* regularly omit *ἄν* whether future or general; with the other words the omission is so frequent in comparison with the total number of cases that there can be no question of inserting it.

3. **Conjunctions.** *ὥς*, *ἐπεῖτε*, and *ἐπεὶ* are very freq. *ἐπειδὴ* occurs about 35 times. *ὅπως* is freq. in past gen. clauses; in past partic. 7. 229. 11; 9. 66. 9; in fut. gen. 5. 63. 3 (opt. indirect); *ὅπως τε* in 2. 108. 16. *ὥσπερ* in 6. 41. 3 is not temporal; the meaning is "he got through the gulf *as he started* from Kardia" (*i.e.* with five ships), but, as he was passing the Chersonese the Phoenicians fell upon him and captured one ship; cp. Thuc. 8. 23. 1 *τέσσαρσι ναυσὶν ὥσπερ ὠρμητο* with *four ships as he started*. *ὅτε*, *ὅταν* about 50 times. *ὁκότε* in 2. 120. 10; 2. 181. 17. *εὔτε* in 2. 63. 3; 4. 78. 15; 6. 27. 1; 7. 193. 11; 7. 209. 8. *ἥμος* in 4. 28. 13 (w. correl. *τηνικαῦτα* in the season, in which). *ὥσας* in 1. 198. 2. *ἐν ᾧ* *while* 1. 164. 12; 7. 26. 1 etc. (15 cases); cp. *ἐν ὅσῳ* 1. 174. 12. *ὅσον* (without *χρόνον*) 1. 130. 5; 7. 161. 7.

$\alpha\chi\rho\iota$   $\sigma\tilde{\upsilon}$  *until* 1. 117. 18.  $\dot{\epsilon}\sigma\tau\epsilon$  (see under 2).  $\dot{\epsilon}\omega\varsigma$  = *until* 4. 42. 12; 7. 23. 7; 7. 100. 5; = *as long as* 1. 62. 7; 1. 173. 10 (Mss.  $\tau\acute{\epsilon}\omega\varsigma$ ); 2. 57. 6; 3. 25. 21; 3. 134. 12; 4. 165. 1 (Mss.  $\tau\acute{\epsilon}\omega\varsigma$ ); 9. 6. 2; 9. 23. 5; 9. 70. 7; 9. 102. 7.  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\chi\rho\iota$  = *until* 4. 119. 18; = *as long as* 4. 3. 15;  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\chi\rho\iota$   $\delta\sigma\sigma\upsilon$  *as long as* 8. 3. 9;  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\chi\rho\iota$   $\sigma\tilde{\upsilon}$  *until* 1. 187. 9; 2. 179. 7; 5. 28. 9; 7. 60. 11; 7. 225. 6; 8. 100. 2.  $\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma$   $\delta$  is most com. for *until*; about 60 cases. All Mss. have  $\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma$   $\sigma\tilde{\upsilon}$  in 4. 160. 11 (cp. 1. 3); 4. 181. 19; 4. 196. 12; 5. 51. 13; in seven other passages the Mss. vary.  $\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma$   $\sigma\tilde{\iota}$  is not used by other writers until we get to Appian, but  $\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma$   $\delta$  also is only Ionic or late (in Thuc. 5. 66  $\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma$   $\delta$  = *as far as*). It is impossible to reject  $\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma$   $\sigma\tilde{\upsilon}$  with certainty. As  $\dot{\epsilon}\omega\varsigma$   $\sigma\tilde{\upsilon}$  is found but once (2. 143. 11), there is more likelihood of post-classical influence upon the text, though the phrase cannot be considered especially strange in a writer who uses  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\chi\rho\iota$   $\sigma\tilde{\upsilon}$   $\alpha\gamma\omicron\rho\eta\varsigma$   $\delta\iota\alpha\lambda\upsilon\sigma\iota\omega\varsigma$  (3. 104. 7 etc.).

With the exception of  $\acute{\epsilon}\nu$   $\phi$  and  $\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma$   $\delta$  relative phrases are rare apart from a word of time, but cp.  $\acute{\epsilon}\xi$   $\sigma\tilde{\upsilon}$  2. 15. 19; 6. 109. 14;  $\acute{\epsilon}\xi$   $\delta\tau\epsilon\omicron$  3. 63. 8;  $\acute{\alpha}\pi'$   $\sigma\tilde{\upsilon}$  2. 44. 12;  $\acute{\epsilon}\xi$   $\delta\sigma\sigma\upsilon$  2. 98. 4.

### § 21. FINAL CLAUSES

1.  $\dot{\iota}\nu\alpha$ . After prim. tenses the opt. occurs once (2. 93. 21, a repeated action) in 38 cases; after sec. tenses the opt. occurs 23 times, the subj. 38, and in four cases there is change from one to the other; the subj. is used after a histor. pres.

2.  $\delta\kappa\omega\varsigma$ . After prim. tenses the subj. in 9. 78. 8; after sec. the opt. in 1. 17. 4; 2. 109. 9; 5. 96. 5; 5. 98. 4; 8. 35. 7; the subj. in 2. 100. 17; 2. 120. 8, 28; 2. 121  $\beta$ . 15; 9. 96. 9.  $\delta\kappa\omega\varsigma$   $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  after prim. tenses w. opt. in 1. 110. 16; after sec. w. subj. in 1. 22. 2, w. opt. in 1. 75. 18; 1. 99. 9; 8. 13. 9.

3.  $\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ . After prim. tenses the subj. 1. 1. 1; 1. 159. 21; 3. 140. 24; 4. 97. 20; 4. 187. 11; 5. 20. 19; 9. 111. 26; after sec. the opt. in 1. 185. 28; 5. 33. 5; 8. 16. 4; 8. 76. 18; 9. 51. 21, the

subj. in 1. 46. 17; 6. 49. 8; 9. 104. 3. In 8. 76. 13 *ὥς*, resumed by *ἵνα*, has the subj. after a sec. tense. *ὥς ἄν* after prim. tenses w. subj. in 1. 11. 11; 1. 36. 11; after sec. w. opt. in 1. 152. 5; 5. 37. 9; 7. 176. 24; 9. 22. 21; 9. 51. 16; w. subj. in 1. 5. 8; 1. 24. 12; 9. 7. 30; in 8. 7. 3 opt. in *α*, subj. in *β*.

4. *μή*. *a. Final*. After prim. tenses the subj. in 1. 41. 9; 9. 45. 5; after sec. the opt. in 4. 78. 24; 7. 107. 9; 8. 128. 20; opt. and subj. in 8. 6. 8; subj. in 1. 34. 16; 8. 130. 12. In four of these cases we have *φυλάσσω* (*φύλακα*) or *καταπλήξαι*. *μή* is also found in object clauses, cp. 7. 103. 14 (*ὅρα*), 7. 149. 6 (*ἐπιλέγεσθαι*), 7. 220. 2 (*κηδόμενος*) etc. *b. With fear*. Freq. The subj. is usual after sec. tenses, the opt. only in 3 out of 32 cases; cp. 7. 52. 3; 7. 163. 3; 7. 235. 14 (*οὐδὲν δεινοὶ ἔσσονται μή*); 8. 53. 6 (*οὐκ ἄν ἤλπισε μή*) etc. *μή οὐ* in 4. 97. 18; 6. 9. 5; 7. 163. 3; 9. 46. 18. In one case an independent *μή οὐ* clause, 5. 79. 12. Independent *ὅπως μή* in 6. 85. 12.

5. *Object Clauses*. *ὅπως* w. fut. indic. in 24 cases, prim. and sec. After sec. tenses the aor. opt. 7. 176. 25; 8. 71. 1, the pres. opt. 9. 117. 4; the subj. 2. 121 *a.* 14; 9. 102. 10. After histor. pres. the opt. 1. 63. 8, subj. 4. 148. 6, subj. and opt. 1. 117. 10. *ὅπως ἄν* w. opt. after sec. tenses 1. 91. 8; 2. 126. 8; 3. 44. 6; 5. 98. 22; w. subj. 1. 20. 6. *ὥς* w. fut. 3. 84. 2; 3. 159. 8; 7. 161. 6 (folls. *ὅπως*). *ὥς ἄν* w. subj. after a prim. tense 3. 85. 7. Independent *ὅπως* 3. 142. 24; *ὅπως μή* 6. 85. 12.

### § 22. *ἄν*.

For the use of *ἄν* in final clauses see § 21. 2, 3, 5; for its omission w. the subj. in conditional clauses § 18. 1, in relative clauses § 19. 2, in temporal clauses § 20. 1, 2. *ὅσοι ἔωσι*, without *ἄν*, is found on an inscription of Teos (Hoffmann, *Gr. D.* iii. n. 106. 4). Hippocrates omits *ἄν* reg. w. *πρότερον ἢ, πρὶν ἢ*; freq. w. *πρὶν, ἕως*, and in general relative clauses.

## § 23. INFINITIVE

1. **Imperative Use.** See 1. 32. 40; 3. 155. 27, 30; 6. 86 a. 24; 7. 159. 8 (*βοήθει α*); 7. 209. 24 etc. In 5. 105. 11 the infin. expresses a wish; cp. 9. 48. 24.

2. **Absolute Use.** *ἐκὼν εἶναι* *willingly at least* 7. 104. 13; 7. 164. 3; 8. 30. 8; 8. 116. 4; 9. 7 a. 12; 9. 53. 8, all negative sentences except 7. 164, where there is a contrast. *τὴν πρώτην εἶναι at least at first* 1. 153. 18. *ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν*, limiting the strength of an assertion, is found 16 times without *ὥς* (cp. 7. 3. 17; 8. 22. 17 etc.), and 9 times w. *ὥς* (cp. 8. 30. 5; 8. 66. 5), once w. participle *συμβαλλομένῳ* 4. 87. 14. *ὥς λόγῳ εἰπεῖν* 2. 15. 13; 2. 37. 14; 2. 53. 4 etc. only found in H., who does not use *ὥς ἔπος εἰπεῖν* and has *ὥς εἰπεῖν* only in 8. 115. 6. He also has *οὐ πολλῶ λόγῳ εἰπεῖν* 1. 61. 19 and *λόγῳ δὲ εἰπεῖν* 2. 21. 2; *τὸ δὲ σύμπαν εἰπεῖν* 2. 91. 1; 7. 143. 16 (Mss. *εἶναι*); *ἐνὶ δὲ ἔπει πάντα συλλαβόντα εἰπεῖν* 3. 82. 25. *ὥς εἰκάσαι* 1. 34. 2; 9. 32. 15. *ὥς εἶναι συμβάλλειν* 20. 1. 7; 4. 99. 21; cp. *ἐν πρὸς ἐν συμβάλλειν* 4. 50. 4. Also *ὥς μὲν ἐμὲ συμβαλλόμενον εὐρίσκειν* 7. 24. 1; *ὥς ἐμὲ κατανοεῖν* 2. 28. 18; *ὥς ἐμὲ εὖ μεμνησθαι* 2. 125. 19; *ὥς δηλώσαι* 2. 24. 6; 2. 25. 1.

3. **With *ὥς*.** In addition to the preceding examples there are found the following uses of *ὥς*, also in a limiting sense. a. *ὥς* = *ὥστε* 3. 146. 3; 4. 184. 14; 7. 24. 6 (w. indic. 1. 163. 11; 1. 199. 22; 2. 135. 22; 3. 130. 19; 7. 111. 22; 8. 99. 3). b. While in the preceding the *ὥς* clause expresses the exact degree in which the statement of the prin. clause is true, or the result that follows from the prin. statement, in the following examples the *ὥς* clause gives the point of view from which the prin. statement can be made: *τὸ ὦν δὴ ἀπὸ Ἡλίου πόλιος οὐκέτι πολλὸν χωρίον ὥς εἶναι Αἰγύπτου* 2. 8. 15 *not large considering that it was part of Egypt*; *καὶ γὰρ κάρτα πολλοὺς εἶναί σφεας καὶ ὀλίγους ὥς Σκυθίας εἶναι* 4. 81. 3 *few from the point of view of their being Scythians*; *μεγάλα*

ἐκτίησατο χρήματα ὡς ἂν εἶναι Ῥοδῶπιν 2. 135. 7 *large from the point of view of its being Rhodope's* (the ἂν and the acc. Ῥοδῶπιν are difficult; some omit ἂν, and some change to dat. or gen.). With this meaning of ὡς cp. τοῦ βίου εὖ ἤκοντι ὡς τὰ παρ' ἡμῶν 1. 30. 22 and ὡς ἐκ κακῶν ἐχάρη 8. 101. 2; the effect of the ὡς clause is very similar to ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν. The above rendering is preferable to *so far as it belonged to Egypt, so far as they were really Scythians* (Stein, Abicht), for, in the latter translation, the adjectives πολλόν, ὀλίγους are taken absolutely, and ὡς εἶναι limits the subject contrary to the usage in similar cases (see examples in Grünwald, *Inf. der Limitation*, p. 12).

4. With ὥστε. Before Sophocles and Herodotus there are few examples of finite moods in ὥστε clauses. In H. the various uses found in Attic prose are fully developed. Finite moods occur 55 times as compared w. 76 examples of the infin. (of which about 10 cases are in indirect discourse). The following points may be noted. a. The ὥστε clause is the object of *contrive* in 1. 9. 6; 1. 116. 10; 4. 46. 9; of *persuade* in 2. 173. 2; 4. 145. 21; 6. 5. 11; 7. 6. 3; of *decide* in 8. 57. 13; of *prevent* in 8. 57. 10; cp. 1. 98. 17; 3. 48. 2; 5. 105. 4. b. The ὥστε clause is the subj. of *it happened* in 1. 74. 8; 3. 14. 24; 3. 71. 8; 8. 15. 5; 8. 88. 2; 8. 90. 4; 8. 132. 17; 8. 141. 8. Cp. 5. 92 a. 8 where it explains τοῦτο; cp. 7. 9 β. 14. c. ὥστε means *on condition that* in 1. 82. 10; 3. 36. 24; 5. 65. 11; cp. 3. 15. 5. d. ἢ ὥστε after a compar. in 3. 14. 40; 8. 22. 13. e. οὕτω ὥστε in combination has become somewhat formal = *and so*, the force of οὕτω being practically lost; cp. 9. 37. 19. f. After a negat. prin. clause a fut. indic. is used in 7. 16 γ. 9, an imperf. indic. in 2. 120. 7. g. To express a probable action in the fut. or a possible action of any time the infin. is com. used, but we find the fut. indic. in 3. 12. 6; 3. 36. 24; 7. 16 γ. 9. In 3. 12 it alternates w. a potent. opt.; in 3. 36 w. an infin. The fut. infin. in 1. 189. 12 represents



a fut. indic. of the direct form; the infin. w.  $\alpha\upsilon$  in 3. 105. 8 a potent. indic. In clauses of practical independence we have the fut. indic. in 1. 155. 26; 8. 140 a. 16; the potent. opt. in 2. 16. 11; 2. 173. 16; the potent. indic. in 2. 22. 14; 2. 43. 17. h. There is no certain case in which the  $\omega\sigma\tau\epsilon$  clause is purely final. The meaning in 3. 15. 5 is *he would have got back Egypt to the extent of being its governor*, as opposed to the idea of becoming again its independent ruler; in 7. 130. 12 *for (the conquest of Thessaly) is merely a matter of letting the river on the land and so putting it all under water*; in 8. 19. 13 the  $\omega\sigma\tau\epsilon$  clause defines  $\omega\pi\eta\nu$  "the proper time"; in 8. 106. 19 the meaning is *it was the gods who brought you into my hands, and so you cannot find fault with the punishment that is to be inflicted*.

The examples with the infin. are: i. **Limiting Clauses.** a. Present or past fact: 1. 74. 8; 1. 98. 17; 1. 107. 5; 1. 212. 6; 2. 71. 7; 2. 126. 2; 2. 173. 2; 3. 23. 9; 3. 48. 2; 3. 71. 8; 4. 46. 9; 4. 145. 20; 4. 160. 13; 5. 105. 4; 6. 5. 11; 7. 6. 3; 7. 20. 6; 7. 117. 7; 8. 15. 5; 8. 27. 17; 8. 84. 12; 8. 88. 2; 8. 90. 4; 8. 132. 17; 8. 138. 8; 8. 141. 8; 8. 144. 22; 9. 37. 19; 9. 61. 14; 9. 70. 24; 9. 73. 14. b. Possible action or probable action in the future: 1. 9. 6; 1. 82. 10; 1. 116. 9; 1. 189. 12; 2. 158. 5; 3. 14. 40; 3. 15. 5; 3. 36. 28; 3. 105. 6; 4. 136. 19; 4. 198. 2; 5. 30. 16; 5. 65. 11; 5. 92 a. 7; 7. 9  $\beta$ . 14; 8. 19. 13; 8. 22. 13; 8. 57. 10, 13; 9. 13. 14; 9. 38. 5. ii. **Consecutive Clauses.** a. Present or past fact: 1. 17. 11; 2. 12. 5; 2. 79. 6; 2. 120. 18; 2. 141. 23; 3. 67. 4; 4. 50. 19; 6. 18. 6; 6. 126. 2; 7. 13. 9; 8. 52. 11; 8. 92. 8; 8. 96. 7; 8. 106. 10; 8. 113. 19; 9. 61. 4; 9. 94. 21; 9. 100. 10. b. Possible action or probable action in the future: 6. 109. 24; 7. 130. 12; 7. 175. 13; 8. 106. 19; 9. 60. 19.

5. With  $\epsilon\pi'\phi\tau\epsilon$ . Infin. in 1. 22. 13; 7. 154. 19, the latter w. preceding  $\epsilon\pi\iota\tau\omicron\upsilon\sigma\iota\delta\epsilon$ , which in 6. 108. 25 is followed loosely

by an infin. without ἐπ' ᾧ τε; cp. infin. in 9. 26. 20 after ἐπὶ λόγῳ τοῦδε without ἐπ' ᾧ τε, but depend. upon ἔταμον ὄρκιον. The fut. indic. follows ἐπ' ᾧ τε in 3. 83. 10 (ἐπὶ τούτῳ precedes); 5. 82. 13 (ἐπὶ τοιαύτῳ precedes); 6. 65. 3; 7. 153. 15; 7. 158. 22 (ἐπὶ λόγῳ τοῦδε precedes); 8. 4. 11. For ὥστε *on condition that* see 4. c.

6. **Final Consecutive Use.** a. With nouns. φόβος ἀκοῦσαι 6. 112. 15; ἡδονὴ ιδέσθαι 2. 137. 19. b. With adjectives. Besides δυνατός, ἄξιος etc., may be noted δίκαιος 1. 32. 48; ἀγαθός 1. 79. 14 etc.; ἄριστος 7. 161. 21; αἴτιος 2. 20. 6; 2. 26. 2; 3. 12. 8 (but τοῦ w. infin. 3. 12. 11); ἀξιόμαχος 7. 101. 12; 7. 138. 8; ἀξιονικότερος 7. 187. 16; κύριος 5. 93. 4; βαρὺς 4. 150. 11; φερέγγυος 5. 30. 16; 7. 49. 8; ἥσσω 3. 105. 9; ὀλίγος 6. 109. 2; 7. 207. 10; κοῖος τελείσαι (?) 3. 34. 15. c. With διδόναι, τάσσειν, πέμπειν etc. 7. 121. 10; 7. 163. 13 (fut. partic. in l. 11; cp. 9. 6. 7, 12; 9. 54. 7, 9); 7. 208. 2; 7. 236. 10; 8. 13. 3; 8. 107. 1; 8. 118. 4; 8. 127. 6; 8. 136. 8. d. εἶναι w. ἀποδεικνύναι, κατιστάναι, ποιεῖν etc. 1. 103. 5; 1. 114. 6; 1. 210. 8; 2. 6. 2; 2. 44. 14; 2. 121 a. 8; 4. 33. 15; 5. 25. 4; 5. 57. 10; 5. 58. 13; 5. 68. 15; 5. 94. 6; 5. 99. 11; 7. 129. 18; 7. 154. 10 (but cp. 1. 124. 15 etc.); 8. 134. 14 (but cp. 1. 96. 17) etc. e. Freer cases w. verbs: ὑπῆψαν τὴν ἀκρόπολιν καίεσθαι 1. 176. 7; ἄλλο τι ἐξευρήκασιν γενέσθαι 1. 196. 31; ποταμὸν ὀχετεῦσαι ῥεῖν 2. 99. 11; ζευξάμενος σειρηφόρον παρέλκειν 3. 102. 16; νόσος μιν κατέλαβε νοσῆσαι 3. 149. 5; χλαίνας ἐπείνυσθαι ποιοῦνσι 4. 64. 14; cp. 7. 25. 4; 7. 51. 6; 7. 211. 14; 8. 107. 8; 8. 121. 5.

7. **Object of verbs.** a. Among other expressions w. a depend. infin. may be mentioned γνώμη νικᾶν 1. 61. 15; καταδεικνύναι *set the fashion* 1. 171. 14; ἀπομνημονεύειν 5. 65. 19; παρὰ ἐν πάλαισμα δραμεῖν 9. 33. 11; εὐρίσκειν *obtain* 9. 26. 26; δέχεσθαι 3. 38. 19; συγγινώσκειν *be conscious of* 4. 126. 7; 5. 86. 7; acc. and infin. w. παντοῖος γίνεσθαι 3. 124. 6 (w. added δεόμενοι 7. 10 γ. 4; 9. 109. 11); ἀπολύειν *acquit* 2. 174. 10; καταδεῖν *condemn* 2. 174. 13. b. The

following take infin. or partic. ἀκούειν 7. 10 γ. 12; 7. 55. 13; 7. 128. 5; 8. 109. 8; 8. 136. 12 (partic. 7. 10 θ. 14); εἶδον w. partic. and infin. 1. 209. 18, 20; οἶδα 5. 106. 19 (partic. 4. 76. 27 etc.); γινώσκειν 7. 143. 15; 9. 71. 16; συγγινώσκειν 6. 92. 11; 6. 140. 9; πυνθάνεσθαι 7. 8 γ. 10; 7. 114. 6; 7. 121. 7; 8. 6. 4 etc.; περιορᾶν 7. 16 a. 6 etc.; πειρᾶσθαι 7. 176. 22; 8. 77. 4; 8. 89. 11 etc.; συγκυρεῖ 9. 90. 2 (partic. 8. 87. 16); ἀποχρᾶν 6. 137. 20; 8. 14. 4 (partic. 7. 148. 25); ἄρχεσθαι 8. 51. 2. c. Of impers. verbs note καταλαμβάνει 7. 38. 11; 7. 155. 2; 8. 55. 6; προέχει 9. 27. 23; ἐπιβάλλει 2. 180. 5; ἐκαλλιέρι 6. 76. 8 (cp. 9. 38. 5).

8. **With πρίν.** The prin. clause is affirm. except in 1. 71. 21; 1. 165. 15; 4. 9. 9. In 1. 71 πρίν means *before* and the negat. idea does not affect the prin. verb; in 1. 165 the sentence is in indir. discourse (yet this is the only case in which the infin. is used in a temporal clause of fut. time); in 4. 9 β has *μυχθῇ*. The tense of the infin. is aor. except in 6. 116. 3 (*ῆκειν*); 7. 228. 2 (*ἀποπεμφθέντας οἶχεσθαι*); 8. 3. 1 (*πέμπειν*); 8. 144. 29 (*παρεῖναι*); 3. 25. 15 (*διεληλυθέναι* w. plupf. in prin.). Examples are: πρίν 1. 46. 6; 1. 71. 21; 1. 76. 11; 2. 121 ε. 6; 6. 119. 4; 8. 144. 29 etc.; πρὶν ἢ 7. 3. 13; 7. 94. 3; 7. 226. 3; 8. 3. 1; 8. 12. 8; 8. 59. 2 etc.; πρότερον ἢ 1. 72. 2; 2. 11. 19; 7. 2. 4; 7. 150. 3; 7. 228. 2 etc. Clauses w. πρίν and πρὶν ἢ generally precede the prin., those w. πρότερον ἢ regularly follow. In 6. 108. 12 ἢ without πρίν or πρότερον after φθάνω (cp. 6. 91. 6 etc.).

9. **Articular Infinitive.** a. As subject 7. 18. 9; 7. 114. 8; 8. 88. 12 etc. b. As object 7. 10 δ. 5; 7. 28. 4; 7. 135. 16; gen. after φθονεῖν 7. 236. 7, αἷτιος 3. 12. 12 (cp. 1. 15); 4. 43. 26. c. W. ῥέεσθαι *save* τοῦ μή in 1. 86. 12, but infin. without art. 7. 11. 3; 7. 194. 14 (w. διαφυγών); 9. 12. 5 (w. σχήσειν); 2. 7. 10 (w. καταδεί); cp. τὸ μή w. ἔσχε 5. 101. 1, w. διάφορον 2. 7. 8. With οὐδεμία μηχανή we find τὸ μή (no οὐ) 1. 209. 21, but μὴ οὐ without art. 2. 181. 11; 3. 51. 6. d. Not infreq. is the use of the artic.

infin. in explanation of a noun or pron.; cp. 1. 86. 16; 1. 137. 2; 1. 204. 8; 2. 7. 8; 3. 132. 4; 7. 51. 15. e. With preps. 1. 134. 3 (*ἀντί*); 1. 136. 2 (*μετά*); 2. 80. 6 (*ἀντί*); 4. 79. 10 (*περί*); 6. 67. 9 (*μετά*); 7. 6. 4 (*ἐς*); 7. 10 ζ. 3 (*ἐν*). A peculiarity found in no other author is the omission of the art. after *ἀντί* in 1. 210. 8; 6. 32. 6; 7. 170. 14; in 1. 210 and 7. 170 in a contrast, *μέν . . . δέ*. f. In view of the constructions allowed w. *θαυμάζειν* and *ἀγασθαι* it is unnecessary to take the gens. in the following sentences as possessives dependent upon the artic. infin.: *Ἀρταβάζον θῶμα ἐποιεόμην τὸ καταρρωδῆσαι* 9. 58. 15; *τὸ εἰνοεῖν τε καὶ προορᾶν ἀγαμαί* σιο 9. 79. 2.

#### § 24. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**I. Principal Clauses. A. Statements.** 1. Finite moods with *ὅτι*, *ὥς*. The pres. and perf. indic. are more often changed to the opt. than retained, but the indic. is preferred for a general truth. A pres. is changed to the imperf. in 8. 50. 9; 8. 78. 2; 9. 5. 4; *ἔμελλον* occurs in 3. 1. 16; 3. 25. 6; 3. 146. 8; 7. 57. 4; 7. 161. 10; 8. 141. 10. The fut. opt. is used only in 7. 226. 11; 9. 38. 12 (Mss. variation in some other passages). An aor. indic. is retained about as often as it is changed to the opt. An imperf. indic. is usually retained, but is changed to the pres. opt. in 3. 87. 4; 9. 16. 33. For the opt. after a histor. pres. cp. 1. 70. 11; 3. 87. 4; 3. 140. 5; 6. 23. 7 etc. The direct form of a speech with a preceding *ὅτι* is found only in 2. 115. 13: *λέγων ὅτι ἐγὼ κτέ.* *ὥς* is rare after *φημί*; cp. 1. 24. 31; 3. 155. 18; 6. 70. 3; in 3. 87. 3 there is a change, after a parenthesis, from infin. to *ὥς*; in 3. 32. 14, after *φασί* with infin., a second clause with *ὥς* follows but the infin. is still retained. The introductory conjunction is frequently omitted before an opt. in long passages (cp. also 4. 135. 10). *ὁκως* for *ὅτι*, *ὥς* is found after negatives 7. 161. 5; 7. 237. 5 etc.

2. **Infinitive.** The infin. instead of a finite mood occurs after *ὅτι* in 1. 207. 4; after *ὥς* in 3. 32. 14; 4. 179. 16; after *πλὴν ὅτι* in 2. 100. 15 (cp. *ὥς ἀλούς* after *ἐπιστάσθω* in 1. 91. 13). In long passages the change from *ὥς, ὅτι* with indic. or opt. to the infin. is frequent. A characteristic construction is the use of the infin. instead of an independent clause after *ὥς λέγουσι, ὥς ἤκουσα* etc.: 1. 65. 20; 2. 8. 9; 3. 14. 45; 4. 5. 2; 5. 10. 3 (follows an independ. clause); 7. 171. 4; 7. 229. 15. Generally the *ὥς λέγουσι* introduces the sentence, but cp. 7. 229; 9. 85. 15. Note the resulting anacoluthon in 7. 184. 3. **B. Questions.** The pres. and perf. indic. are more often changed to the opt. than retained (cp. 7. 38. 8; 1. 119. 26; 6. 3. 4; but 8. 122. 2). The imperf. is retained 3. 27. 9. The aor. indic. is changed 1. 31. 4 (cp. 1. 30. 14); 1. 116. 14; 1. 119. 19 etc.; but retained 6. 3. 2; 1. 111. 10. A delib. subj. is more often retained; cp. 7. 213. 1; 8. 36. 4; but 8. 67. 12.

**II. Subordinate Clauses.** 1. **Finite Moods.** Examples of change to opt. are found in 8. 19. 6, 10; 7. 25. 6; 7. 226. 12 (fut. in *εἰ* clause); 8. 128. 20; but both indic. and subj. are more often retained: cp. 7. 136. 15; 7. 235. 10; 8. 41. 4; 8. 3. 5; 8. 112. 6; 8. 2. 8; 7. 168. 7. A pres. becomes imperf. in 4. 202. 6; 9. 106. 9. Past tenses are regularly kept except in 2. 121 ε. 19 (*ὅτε* clause) and 2. 160. 20 (*εἰ* clause). In temporal clauses a primary tense of the indic. becomes opt. only in 3. 27. 10; a sec. tense only in 2. 121 ε. 19. In 5. 63. 3 *ὅκως* with opt. represents *ἄν* w. subj. in a gen. clause. The subj. in temporal clauses of fut. time is never changed to the opt. In clauses of subsequence ('until' etc.) neither the indic. nor the subj. is changed to the opt.

2. **Infinitive.** Especially characteristic is the frequency of the use of the infin. in subord. clauses. Examples are: in temporal clauses w. *ὥς* *when* 6. 137. 9; 7. 148. 19; 7. 170. 9; 8. 94. 6, 10; 8. 118. 19 etc.; w. *ἐπεὶ* 4. 10. 6; 4. 33. 20; 5. 84. 7;

7. 150. 16; w. *ἐπειδή* 3. 26. 15; w. *ἐπεὶ* 1. 94. 22; 2. 42. 12; 2. 118. 9; 6. 84. 5; 6. 137. 6; 8. 135. 7; w. *ἕως* 4. 42. 13 (?); w. *ἔστε* 7. 171. 11; w. *ἐς ὃ* 1. 94. 32; 1. 202. 14; 2. 102. 6; 5. 85. 12; 5. 86. 14; w. *ἐν τῷ* 3. 105. 7; w. *πρὶν* 1. 165. 15; w. *ὅπως* 2. 140. 4; in causal clauses w. *ἐπεὶ* 8. 111. 12 (cp. 7. 3. 12); w. *διότι* 3. 55. 12; 3. 156. 10; in relative clauses 1. 94. 27; 2. 32. 38; 2. 172. 16; 4. 7. 14; 6. 137. 10; 7. 232. 4 etc.; w. *ὥς* 2. 140. 5; w. *ἐνθα* 3. 111. 10; 9. 41. 10; in condit. clauses 1. 129. 14; 2. 64. 9; 2. 172. 19; 3. 105. 6; 3. 108. 2; 7. 229. 15. In temporal clauses out of 111 cases the infin. is found in 46, of which 43 are original indicatives, while in 2. 140. 4 *φοιτᾶν* represents an opt. in a past gen. clause, in 1. 165. 15 *ἀναφανῆναι* w. *πρὶν ἢ* (Mss. have *ἀναφῆναι*) a subj., in 1. 202. 14 *ἀνίστασθαι* w. *ἐς ὃ* a subj. in pres. gen. (though cp. 4. 181. 19); note also the infin. w. *ἕως* in 4. 42. 12.

### § 25. PARTICIPLE

1. For the dat. of the partic. in temporal, local, etc. phrases see § 4. 3; with the dat. in 5. 49. 21 cp. 3. 91. 3; 9. 15. 14.

2. **Concessive:** *περ* for *καίπερ* in 3. 131. 6; 8. 11. 4; 8. 13. 3. *καίπερ* 1. 45. 8, etc. ? *καίτοι περ* 8. 53. 8 (*β* omits *τοι*).

3. **With ὥς.** Examples referring to the first person are 1. 40. 3; 2. 155. 3; 4. 84. 4 (indirect); 4. 134. 11; 7. 99. 2; 9. 42. 11. Examples expressing an assumption on the part of the writer are 2. 152. 19; 4. 101. 2; 4. 142. 3, 5 (speaker); 7. 49. 19; 7. 184. 7; 9. 29. 7, 9; 9. 41. 19. Pretended reasons are frequently indicated by *δῆθεν*: 3. 136. 11; 6. 1. 6; 6. 39. 6; 8. 5. 3; 9. 99. 14; in 3. 74. 17 the reason is real to the subject, not to the writer; cp. *δή* in 7. 17. 8; 7. 211. 4; 9. 59. 3. For *ὥς* with definitely known facts cp. 7. 22. 1. A common use is that in connection with an imperative to convey an assurance from the speaker: 7. 13. 11; 7. 143. 13; 7. 207. 9; 8. 144. 25; 9. 42.

19 (accus. absol.). *ὥς* with the partic. in indirect discourse in *ἐπιστάσθω Κροῖσος ὥς ἀλούς* 1. 91. 13; cp. 8. 7. 12; 9. 54. 5.

4. With *ὥστε*, *ἄτε*, *οἶα*. This use of *ὥστε* is not Attic. Like *ἄτε* and *οἶα* it introduces a real reason. *ὥστε* in 1. 73. 12, 20; 1. 127. 8; 2. 12. 10; 4. 136. 9; 5. 19. 5; 5. 35. 11; 5. 42. 4; 5. 101. 8; 6. 44. 15; 6. 52. 13; 6. 94. 2; 6. 136. 7; 7. 129. 2, 9; 8. 118. 8; 9. 37. 9, 16; 9. 49. 7; 9. 70. 8; 9. 76. 10. *ἄτε* in 7. 23. 11; 7. 87. 4; 7. 138. 7; 7. 176. 21; 8. 27. 3; 8. 69. 6; 8. 71. 9; 8. 74. 2; 8. 86. 4; 8. 89. 5; 8. 90. 10; 8. 105. 11; 8. 130. 10; *ἄτε* . . . *δῆθεν* in 9. 80. 15 ironically. *οἶα* in 7. 6. 1; 7. 18. 6; 8. 59. 4; 8. 90. 14, etc.

5. After Prepositions. Expressions of time like *μετὰ Σόλωνα οἰχόμενον* 1. 34. 1 are used rather freely. Besides the frequent *ἐπί* with the gen. (1. 134. 14, etc.) we have *μετά* 2. 147. 6; 7. 171. 5 etc.; *πρό* 5. 50. 12; 7. 149. 21; *περί* 8. 6. 3; *κατά* 2. 134. 9; *ὑπό* 1. 51. 5; *ἐπί* w. dat. *after* 1. 170. 11; 2. 22. 12; 8. 94. 18; *ἄμα* 3. 86. 1; 8. 23. 6; 8. 64. 3 etc. (aor. in 3. 86. 7).

6. Absolute Use. a. Genitive. Frequently a gen. absol. is used when agreement with a dependent word would have been possible, greater emphasis being thus given to the statement. This is often the case when the word with which the partic. could agree is an unemphatic pronoun (6. 85. 7; 6. 86. 6 etc.), but cp. 8. 69. 4, 6 etc. b. Accusative. Besides the ordinary impers. use (7. 107. 8; 7. 164. 13 etc.) note 2. 66. 15; 9. 42. 18 (*ἦδεσθε ὥς περιεσσομένους ἡμέας Ἑλλήνων*). c. An apparent nom. or accus. absol. frequently results from a loose partitive apposition, so loose at times that a gen. absol. would be expected, as in *ἵνα οἱ δυνώδεκα ἔτεα ἀντὶ ἐξ ἐτέων γένηται αἱ νύκτες ἡμέραι ποιεόμεναι* 2. 133. 22; cp. 1. 52. 4; 1. 67. 23; 2. 41. 15; 2. 48. 8; 3. 95. 4; 3. 99. 6; 4. 50. 19; 4. 71. 5; 6. 111. 13; 7. 157. 15. d. Other cases are explainable as natural anacolutha, as in 1. 134. 1; 2. 9. 4; 7. 184. 5; 8. 83. 4; 8. 124. 12 (partitive apposition sometimes aiding).

7. **Supplementary.** Besides the ordinary use with *ὄρᾶν*, *εὐρίσκειν* etc., *ἀποδεικνύειν* etc., and verbs expressing feelings, may be mentioned the following: a. *συγγινώσκειν* 5. 91. 12 etc.; *ἐνορᾶν* with fut. 1. 123. 4; 1. 170. 10; 5. 36. 12; 8. 140 β. 5 (dat.); *νομίζειν* 1. 171. 26 (?; infin. precedes); 2. 1. 7 (with *ὥς*); *λογίζεσθαι* 3. 65. 22; *καθηγεῖσθαι* 7. 183. 13; *προσδέκεσθαι* with fut. 1. 89. 8; *ἐπιτρέπειν* 9. 58. 21. b. *πειρᾶσθαι* 6. 5. 7; 7. 9 α. 5; 7. 139. 7 etc.; *πολλός εἰμι* 1. 98. 2; 9. 91. 1 (but cp. 7. 158. 2; 8. 59. 3); *παντοῖος γίνεταί* 7. 10 γ. 5; 9. 109. 11 (infin. 3. 124. 6); *ἐπείγεσθαι* 8. 68 β. 3 (cp. γ. 2); with *ἐλῶν* 9. 89. 12. c. *ἔρχομαι ἐρέων* etc. 1. 5. 11; 1. 122. 11; 1. 194. 2. etc; *ἡ ἀλέξων* 4. 82. 9; 5. 62. 4 (*αἰνέων* 1. 122. 11). d. *καταβαίνειν* 1. 90. 15; 1. 116. 22; 1. 118. 6; 9. 94. 6; *προβαίνειν* 5. 51. 12 (cp. τῷ λόγῳ διέβαινε 8. 62. 2); *ἐπικέσθαι* 7. 9. 3. e. *καταρκεῖν* 1. 32. 43; *ἀποχρᾶν* 7. 43. 5; 7. 148. 26; 7. 196. 10; *ἱκανός εἰμι* 7. 161. 11; *πληρῆς εἰμι* 7. 146. 14. f. *καταλαβεῖν* 1. 46. 7 (cp. 7. 230. 4); *φυλάττειν* 8. 9. 6; 9. 110. 6; *δέκεσθαι* 8. 28. 7; *ὑπερβάλλεσθαι* 9. 51. 3. g. *φθάνειν*, *λανθάνειν*, *τυγχάνειν* as usual 8. 5. 14; 7. 162. 5; 8. 103. 2 etc. (cp. *συγκυρεῖν* 8. 87. 16); *φθάνειν*, *λανθάνειν* in partic. 3. 71. 23; 5. 15. 8; 8. 75. 2; 8. 81. 2; 9. 46. 17. h. *συμβαίνειν*, *συμπίπτειν* etc. 1. 82. 4; 5. 82. 6; 7. 6. 4; 8. 88. 11; 9. 37. 28; 9. 101. 1, 7 (cp. l. 9). i. In 3. 53. 13 it is unnecessary to take *διαφορηθέντα* directly with *βούλεσθαι*.

8. **With ἔχω.** 1. 27. 19; 1. 28. 4; 1. 37. 8 etc.; passive 1. 83. 6; intrans. 3. 48. 3; 7. 143. 6.

9. **Periphrastic with εἶμι.** Frequent, cp. 1. 98. 27; 1. 146. 20; 9. 16. 5 etc.; generally to give emphasis to the predicate (which is not necessarily expressed by the participle). The rarer aorist in 1. 160. 16; 1. 170. 11; 2. 10. 12; 7. 194. 16.

10. **With ἄν.** Examples are rare. *ἄν γινόμενα* in 7. 15. 14 is in indirect discourse after *εὐρίσκω*. *παρασχόντες ἄν* 7. 168. 20 = *though we could have furnished*.



11. *μή οὐ* is sometimes found w. the partic. when the prin. verb is negatived : *οὐκὼν δίκαιον εἶναι ἰστάναι (ἀνδριάντα)* — *μή οὐκ ὑπερβαλλόμενον τοῖσι ἔργοις* 2. 110. 12 ; cp. 6. 9. 7 ; 6. 106. 14.

## PARTICLES

### § 26. *μέν*

a. *μέν*, without foll. *δέ*, suggesting that there may be other views, though unexpressed, as *ὡς μὲν ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν* 1. 131. 4 ; cp. 1. 71. 18 ; 1. 152. 11 ; 3. 146. 2 ; 6. 95. 14 ; 7. 24. 1 ; 7. 50. 12. b. *τοῦτο μὲν . . . τοῦτο δέ* very common (8. 76. 2, 5) ; rarely *τὸ μὲν . . . τὸ δέ* (in 1. 98. 17 *τὸ μὲν* is adverbial, *τὸ δέ* pronom. ; both pronom. in 3. 40. 9) ; more often *τὰ μὲν . . . τὰ δέ* 1. 173. 17 ; 3. 80. 16 ; 4. 108. 12 (all pronom.) ; cp. 6. 105. 10. c. *μέν* = *μήν*. *ἦ μὲν* 1. 196. 27 ; 4. 154. 13 ; 5. 93. 3. *οὐ μὲν οὐδέ* 2. 120. 17 ; 6. 45. 5 ; 8. 25. 6 ; 9. 7. 18 ; *μή μὲν* 1. 68. 11 ; 2. 118. 13 ; 3. 66. 13 ; 3. 99. 7 ; 5. 106. 31. *γὰρ μὲν* 6. 129. 22 ; 7. 103. 27 ; 7. 152. 12 ; 7. 234. 12. *ἀλλὰ . . . μὲν* 2. 29. 1 ; 4. 77. 8 ; 7. 103. 26. *καὶ . . . μὲν* 4. 45. 13 ; 6. 98. 5 ; 6. 103. 7 ; 6. 105. 10. d. *μὲν δὴ, μὲν νυν* freq. in summing up and passing to a new subject 1. 14. 1 ; 1. 32. 1 ; 6. 1. 1 ; 6. 22. 1 ; 7. 124. 1.

### § 27. *δέ*

a. For *δέ* answering to *τε, οὔτε* see § 30. 2. d. b. For *ἐν δὲ καί*, generally after *ἄλλος*, see 1. 74. 6 ; 1. 184. 4 ; 1. 192. 3 ; 2. 43. 8 ; 7. 238. 5 etc. c. For *δέ* in explanatory or causal sense = *γάρ* see 1. 74. 7 ; 3. 44. 4 ; 6. 74. 8 ; 7. 9 a. 3 ; 7. 134. 6. d. With second definition 7. 10 a. 7 ; 8. 54. 5 ; 8. 136. 5. e. Beginning a speech 8. 68 a. 4 ; 8. 137. 21 ; 8. 142. 3.

### § 28. *δέ* IN THE APODOSIS

1. *δέ* in the apodosis in Herodotus always follows a personal pronoun, the third person being expressed by *ὁ δέ*, or the demonstrative *οὗτος*,

2. *οὗτος δέ*: The most complete form of sentence in which *οὗτος δέ* occurs is a double period of the form *οσοι μὲν . . . οὔτοι μὲν · οσοι δὲ . . . οὔτοι δέ*, in which the demonstratives in the apodoses refer to different classes and are balanced by *μὲν . . . δέ* in the same manner as the relatives which introduce each period; cp. 2. 26. 5-8; 2. 42. 1-7; 2. 102. 10-16; 2. 174. 9-13. In 1. 196. 12-15 *οὔτοι μὲν* is omitted. The *μὲν*-period contains but one clause in 1. 171. 30; 5. 37. 10; 6. 16. 1; 9. 85. 12. In the following examples there is not a fully developed double period, but there is a contrast to the *οσοι δὲ . . . οὔτοι δέ* in what precedes: 2. 50. 9; 2. 61. 6; 2. 111. 21; 4. 66. 7; 4. 204. 2 (for contrast see 202); 6. 58. 20; 9. 63. 1-4. For *οὗτος μὲν* in first without *οὗτος δέ* in second apodosis see 3. 108. 5; cp. 3. 158. 7.

In 2. 39. 8-11 both apodoses are introduced by *οἱ δέ* instead of by *οὔτοι μὲν, οὔτοι δέ*; cp. 7. 188. 11 in which the second apodosis is divided and introduced by *τὰς μὲν . . . τὰς δὲ . . . αἱ δὲ . . . αἱ δὲ . . . αἱ δέ*.

The resumptive (epanaleptic) nature of the *δέ* in the above cases of *οὗτος δέ* is illustrated by the following passage: *ἡ μὲν πρότερον ἄρξασα . . . αὕτη μὲν ἀπεδέξατο χῶματα . . . ἡ δὲ διὴ δεύτερον γενομένη ταύτης βασιλεια . . . αὕτη δὲ κτέ.* 1. 184. 4-185. 3; cp. 1. 146. 13; 6. 54. 6.

3. *σὺν δέ, ὁ δέ* etc.: In the following double periods the subject of both apodoses is the same and the contrast lies entirely in the action; nevertheless we have the subject, marked off by an apodotic *δέ*, expressed in one of them, in the first if it is *ὁ δέ*, in the second if it is *σὺν δέ*: 1. 173. 10; 1. 191. 18; 2. 149. 22; 3. 49. 1; 3. 69. 10; 3. 133. 4; 4. 3. 15; 4. 65. 5; 4. 94. 11; 4. 123. 1; 4. 165. 1; 5. 73. 12; 6. 30. 1; 7. 159. 6; 8. 22. 8-13; 9. 6. 2; 9. 63. 5; 9. 70. 7. The examples with *σὺν δέ* (3. 69; 7. 159; 8. 22) are alternative commands; in the following the commands are expressed in indirect narrative and, with the shift from

the second to the third person, there is also a shift in the position of the expressed subject from the second apodosis to the first : 1. 13. 5 ; 3. 36. 25 ; 5. 1. 7 ; 6. 52. 28.

In 4. 61. 4-8 the *οἱ δέ* is found in the second apodosis, but in this case the verb of the first apodosis (containing, of course, its subject) precedes its protasis which contains the *μέν*. In 4. 126. 3-7 *σὺ δέ* occurs in both apodoses ; there is a contrast in the whole double period with what precedes.

In 9. 48. 21 the two apodoses have different subjects, the first *οἱ δέ*, the second *ἡμῖς δέ*. In 4. 68. 15 the first apodosis is introduced by *τοῦ δέ*, that is the particle is appended not to the subject but to another pronoun in the clause, illustrating the fact that the *δέ* simply sets off the apodosis in contrast to the protasis without emphasizing the pronoun to which it is appended. In a number of the sentences in this section the second protasis is introduced by *οὕτω δὴ, ἐνταῦθα δὴ* (1. 173 ; 4. 123 ; 9. 6 ; 9. 63 ; 9. 70).

4. The following examples are not double periods, though the protasis is frequently introduced by *δέ* and is strongly contrasted with the preceding. The protasis regularly contains a negative, so that the *δέ* of the apodosis introduces a strong contrast (cp. *ἀλλά* in similar use 9. 42. 11 ; 9. 48. 17) : 1. 112. 9 ; 1. 163. 14 ; 3. 37. 8 ; 3. 68. 19 ; 4. 99. 23 ; 4. 172. 24 ; 5. 40. 3 (no negative ; but cp. 5. 39. 11) ; 7. 51. 3 ; 8. 115. 9 ; 9. 60. 15. The examples in the preceding section which have *σὺ δέ* etc. in the second apodosis have a negative in the second protasis : see 3. 69 ; 4. 61 ; 4. 126 (essentially negative) ; 7. 159 ; 8. 22 ; 9. 48 (but note the indirect cases in 1. 13 ; 3. 36 ; 5. 1).

5. In 3. 108. 17 and 7. 103. 10 we have neither an epanaleptic *δέ* as in § 2, a double period as in 3, nor a strong contrast as in 4. In 7. 103 *β* omits *δέ* ; in 3. 108 it is to be observed that *αὐξόμενός τε δὴ* is most unusual in having no following *καί* (cp. some seventy examples of *τε δὴ* in Hammer). Stein has suggested

αὐξόμενος δέ, which would give a double period, though the first protasis has no μέν. For a series of events parallel to 3. 108, but connected by μέν . . . δέ . . . τε δὴ . . . καί see 7. 23. 15-18.

### § 29. οὐδέ, μηδέ

In Attic prose οὐδέ is used when the preceding clause is negative, otherwise καὶ οὐ. There are numerous cases in H. of οὐδέ when no negative precedes. Very often the two clauses connected are direct opposites, as αἶχοντο φεύγοντες οὐδὲ ὑπέμειναν 6. 96. 3; cp. w. οὐδέ 1. 71. 17; 1. 85. 14; 1. 199. 20; 3. 137. 16; 7. 43. 4; 7. 237. 9 (cp. καὶ οὐ in similar clause 8. 5. 6); in 7. 10 ε. 2, 8. 52. 7, 8. 135. 13 there is a contrast of ideas, though the clauses are not opposites. μηδέ is more com. in these cases than οὐδέ, especially in commands, as πάλιν χώρει μηδὲ ἔσιθι 5. 72. 19 (cp. 1. 32. 40; 3. 76. 8, 10; 5. 19. 7; 7. 173. 17; cp. in sentences of similar nature 1. 82. 13; 2. 173. 18; 4. 11. 17; 8. 74. 11; 9. 41. 17; but καὶ μή in 3. 71. 9; 3. 76. 2; 3. 85. 13); in final sentences 3. 134. 11; 4. 190. 4; 7. 206. 3; 8. 13. 10; in conditional sentences 7. 10 γ. 8; 8. 60. 8. Rarely is οὐδέ used in this way between nouns etc.; cp. σὺν γὰρ τῷ κοινῷ καὶ ἐμηδίσσαμεν οὐδὲ μούνοι ἡμεῖς 9. 87. 9; προθύμως οὐδ' ἔτι ἐνδοιαστῶς 7. 174. 4 (contrast ὑμέας εἰδέναι καὶ μὴ μούνον ἐμέ 3. 71. 8).

In 8. 142. 20 μηδέ is *not even* (Alexander being contrasted with Mardonius and Xerxes). In 9. 8. 7, 9. 18. 7 οὐδ' ἔχω εἰπεῖν *now I cannot say* is used without adversative meaning.

### § 30. τε

1. **Without a Correlative Particle.** a. Sometimes, but not often, τε connects separate words (1. 65. 26; 7. 8 a. 14; 7. 79. 5; 8. 116. 2; 8. 140 β. 13; 9. 11. 8; 9. 101. 10), or adds a third word to two connected by τε (7. 190. 2; 9. 80. 5) or τε . . . καί (7. 8 a. 8; 7. 202. 4; 8. 12. 12; 8. 144. 16). A fifth subst. is

added in 7. 9. 7. Rare is the addition of a more accurate definition by  $\tau\epsilon$ , as in 9. 57. 9. b. More frequently  $\tau\epsilon$  connects whole clauses or sentences. (1) It may connect two clauses of equal importance (cp. two participial clauses in 7. 38. 2; 7. 166. 6; 7. 205. 5; 8. 138. 13; 8. 141. 11; two infinitive clauses in 7. 120. 6; 8. 65. 8; two sentences in 7. 27. 3; 7. 29. 15; 7. 37. 10; 8. 6. 9; 8. 60. 17; 8. 61. 8), or add a third and newer idea to two more closely connected by  $\tau\epsilon$  (7. 128. 3; 8. 97. 7), or  $\kappa\alpha\iota$  (8. 86. 10; 9. 7. 17), or  $\tau\epsilon$  . . .  $\kappa\alpha\iota$  (7. 20. 15; 7. 116. 4; 8. 101. 2), or  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu$  . . .  $\delta\acute{\epsilon}$  (7. 203. 6), or  $\acute{\alpha}\mu\alpha \mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu$  . . .  $\acute{\alpha}\mu\alpha \delta\acute{\epsilon}$  (8. 113. 4; 9. 6. 12). A third and fourth member are added by  $\tau\epsilon$  in 7. 5. 16 (cp. 7. 145. 11). (2)  $\tau\epsilon$  adds quite a new thought to what precedes (7. 29. 14; 7. 83. 11; 7. 144. 14; 8. 56. 6; 8. 106. 16, 23). Sometimes it begins a new paragraph (3. 82. 17; 3. 88. 7; 7. 144. 1). Sometimes it adds the conclusion of what precedes (7. 149. 20; 8. 13. 9; 8. 81. 5); cp.  $\nu\acute{\upsilon}\nu \tau\epsilon$  in direct speech 1. 37. 9; 1. 111. 30; 8. 140 a. 4; 8. 143. 7. Rarely it adds an explanation of what precedes 2. 29. 27; 7. 110. 7; 9. 57. 9.

In 1. 146. 9, 2. 37. 13, 7. 9. 7 after several items have been enumerated  $\tau\epsilon$  winds up with  $\acute{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\alpha \tau\epsilon \pi\omicron\lambda\lambda\acute{\alpha}$ .

Particles or phrases added to  $\tau\epsilon$  in the above uses occur as follows:  $\pi\rho\acute{o}\varsigma \tau\epsilon \tau\acute{o}\upsilon\tau\omicron\upsilon\sigma\iota$  7. 191. 7;  $\xi\tau\iota \tau\epsilon$  7. 197. 10;  $\chi\omega\rho\acute{\iota}\varsigma \tau\epsilon$  3. 82. 29;  $\acute{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\omega\varsigma \tau\epsilon$  8. 142. 11;  $\acute{\alpha}\mu\alpha \tau\epsilon$  7. 83. 11.  $\tau\epsilon \alpha\upsilon$  3. 82. 17;  $\tau\epsilon \delta\eta$  7. 215. 8; 8. 103. 1;  $\sigma\acute{\upsilon}\tau\omega \tau\epsilon$  8. 111. 9; 8. 144. 18;  $\tau\epsilon \acute{\epsilon}\nu \tau\acute{o}\upsilon\tau\omicron\upsilon\sigma\iota$  1. 31. 17.

## 2. With a Correlative Particle, $\tau\epsilon$ . . . $\tau\epsilon$ , $\sigma\acute{\upsilon}\tau\epsilon$ . . . $\tau\epsilon$ , $\tau\epsilon$ . . . $\kappa\alpha\iota$ .

a.  $\tau\epsilon$  . . .  $\tau\epsilon$  generally join whole clauses: cp. 7. 10 a. 10; 7. 19. 3; 7. 35. 9; 8. 5. 12. Three equal members connected by three  $\tau\epsilon$ 's in 7. 102. 16; 7. 236. 18; four in 1. 16. 4; cp. 4. 53. 7; 2. 12. 2.  $\tau\epsilon$  . . .  $\tau\epsilon$  connect single words in 2. 65. 24; 3. 99. 4; 4. 28. 17; 5. 11. 8; 5. 42. 1; 7. 8 γ. 12; 7. 85. 11; 9. 3. 7; 9. 122. 11 (for the most part  $\eta\gamma \tau\epsilon$  . . .  $\eta\gamma \tau\epsilon$ ).  $\epsilon\acute{\iota}\tau\epsilon$  . . .  $\epsilon\acute{\iota}\tau\epsilon$  connect single words

in 6. 137. 3; 7. 167. 11 etc.; clauses in 6. 82. 8; 8. 36. 4 etc. The second *εἴτε* is followed by *καί* in 7. 205. 16; 8. 54. 6 etc.; by *δὴ* in 6. 134. 13. b. *οὔτε . . . τε*. The clauses may be contrasted (7. 11. 5; 7. 159. 1; 7. 208. 15; sometimes the second clause is just the affirmative form of the first 7. 37. 8; 8. 26. 12 etc.), or without contrast = *both not . . . and* (7. 96. 7; 8. 30. 7; 8. 116. 3). *οὔτε . . . οὐ . . . οὐ* etc. in 8. 98. 7 for rhetorical effect (cp. 1. 132. 4; 1. 138. 12). *οὔτε . . . οὔτε . . . τε* in 7. 115. 13; 7. 231. 3; 8. 20. 3; 8. 75. 17; 8. 108. 16 etc., the first two clauses being more closely connected (for striking separation of the *τε*-clause cp. 7. 158. 10; 8. 57. 8; 8. 100. 18). *οὔτε . . . οὔτε . . . τε . . . οὐδ'* in 7. 104. 11; cp. 8. 60. 29. c. *τε . . . καί* is exceedingly common; in about two thirds of the examples it connects words, not clauses. Often with numbers (cp. 7. 184. 7, 12, 27); *πολλοί τε καί* is also frequent (7. 18. 7; 7. 218. 13; 8. 61. 7; 8. 89. 3). *ἅμα τε . . . καί* in 1. 105. 15; 1. 153. 17; 2. 60. 2; 3. 135. 2; 5. 92 ζ. 12; 6. 111. 11; *ἅμα* in second member in 5. 85. 9; 8. 14. 6.

(1) Especially noteworthy are the cases in which the action of the second clause follows the first so closely that they are almost simultaneous; cp. 7. 12. 2; 7. 23. 18; 7. 217. 5; 7. 218. 5; 8. 37. 2; 8. 81. 2; 8. 90. 8; sometimes *ἅμα* is added; cp. 8. 5. 10; 8. 98. 1. Frequently one clause is really subordinate to the other; cp. 7. 166. 7; 7. 176. 27; 8. 74. 8. Sometimes there is a causal connection between the two clauses; cp. 7. 39. 1; 7. 194. 3; 7. 209. 21; 8. 69. 8; 8. 107. 10; hence sometimes *τε . . . καὶ οὕτω* (1. 13. 8), *τε . . . καὶ δὴ* (7. 38. 7; 9. 88. 6). The following have no particle to connect with what precedes other than the *τε*: 4. 181. 16; 4. 199. 7; 6. 41. 5; 6. 134. 14; 8. 56. 7; 8. 64. 3 (cp. 8. 65. 8); cp. *καί* alone in 1. 112. 1; 5. 28. 2; 8. 83. 9.

(2) (*ἄλλος*) *τε . . . καὶ δὴ καί* in 7. 23. 13; 7. 47. 11; 7. 153. 2; 8. 52. 9; 8. 79. 12; 8. 96. 7; 8. 105. 10 (cp. *καὶ δὴ καί* when only two things are in question in 6. 64. 6; 8. 41. 7 etc.). (*ἄλλος*)

τε . . . καί 7. 9. 3 ; 7. 147. 19 ; 8. 10. 1 ; 8. 17. 3 etc. (μάλιστα in second clause 6. 136. 3 ; 7. 171. 4). ἄλλως τε . . . καί is not used, but τά τε ἄλλα καί (1. 1. 5 ; 5. 62. 18 ; 9. 25. 11).

(3) τε . . . καὶ . . . τε generally connect clauses ; τε . . . καί . . . καί (with few exceptions ; cp. 7. 211. 7 ; 8. 99. 3) words ; for several καί's cp. 7. 158. 17 ; 8. 72. 3. A peculiar usage is that in which lists of words (generally proper names), all on equal basis, have τε καί inserted here and there ; cp. 7. 9. 7 ; 7. 66. 4 ; 7. 72. 5 ; 7. 123. 18 ; 7. 154. 11 ; 8. 66. 14 ; 8. 100. 28 ; 9. 31. 12.

(4) Added to τε . . . καί we have ὁμοίως (1. 140. 13), πρὸς (7. 154. 12), προσέτι (1. 41. 12), αὖτις (3. 88. 10), δεύτερα (5. 111. 15), ὕστερον (7. 108. 5), μάλιστα (7. 165. 10).

d. τε . . . δέ occurs in 1. 153. 20 ; 2. 126. 5 ; 5. 69. 9 (?) ; 9. 19. 11 (cp. 1. 108. 19 ; 6. 9. 17) ; more commonly τε . . . ἐν δὲ καί (2. 172. 7) or δὲ δὴ καί 1. 185. 6 ; 3. 38. 10 ; 3. 125. 3 ; 7. 224. 9 ; 8. 142. 7.

3. Position. τε generally comes between an artic. and its noun, but cp. 6. 128. 3 ; 6. 136. 9 ; 7. 203. 6 ; 8. 29. 7 ; 8. 41. 7. It is almost always placed between a prep. and art., but cp. 1. 86. 4 ; 3. 56. 3 ; 4. 45. 22 ; 6. 134. 14 ; 9. 107. 1. When the art. is lacking after a prep. τε commonly follows the noun, yet often the prep. (cp. 7. 14. 4 ; 8. 40. 12, but 7. 20. 15 ; 7. 96. 8 etc.). When a prep. belongs to two nouns but is not repeated, τε very often follows the prep. : 7. 9β. 2 ; 7. 42. 2 ; 7. 119. 10 ; 7. 123. 18 ; 7. 155. 9 ; 7. 184. 30 ; 8. 12. 9 ; 8. 64. 4 ; 8. 73. 13 ; 8. 97. 8 ; 8. 140a. 21. It directly follows a common article in 1. 172. 6 ; 2. 147. 2 ; 3. 54. 7 ; 3. 127. 8 ; 6. 129. 2 ; 9. 9. 1. Note particularly 2. 36. 6 ; 7. 106. 8 ; 7. 184. 25. Compare τε after a verb governing two nouns in 7. 24. 3 ; 7. 44. 8 ; 8. 42. 5 ; or as in 7. 83. 11 ; 7. 146. 13 ; 7. 174. 2. Even when a prep. is repeated τε not infrequently follows the noun ; cp. 7. 10a. 13 ; 7. 137. 11 ; 7. 212. 8 ; 8. 108. 20 ; 8. 115. 17 ; or when the art. is repeated

7. 40. 2; 7. 43. 4; 7. 55. 2; 8. 76. 7; 8. 85. 4 etc. More striking irregularities occur in 7. 2. 10; 7. 145. 15; 8. 113. 14 etc.

4. *τε γάρ . . . τε* is not common (cp. 7. 102. 16; 8. 29. 4); more common is *τε γάρ . . . καί* (7. 13. 5; 8. 31. 10 etc.). *τε δὴ . . . καί* (*δὴ καί*) is exceedingly frequent: 7. 6. 25; 8. 5. 12 etc.

5. *ὅσον τε* *about* is frequent in the earlier books (cp. 7. 100. 12; 8. 55. 10). *ὅκως τε* *as often as* (like Homeric *ἵνα τε* etc.) is found only in 2. 108. 16, but *ἐπείτε* some hundreds of times.

### § 31. γάρ

1. Examples of the original adverbial *γάρ* (as distinguished from the developed conjunctive use) are found occasionally in wishes (1. 27. 11) and answers (7. 46. 7); more frequently in questions (7. 21. 3). To the same use belong many cases of *καὶ γάρ* (*οὐδὲ γάρ*) and *ἀλλὰ γάρ*.

2. The *explanatory γάρ* (as distinguished from the *causal*) is particularly common after demonstrative pronouns and adverbs (cf. 7. 135. 3; 7. 147. 10; 8. 87. 5 etc.), after *σημείον δέ, σκέψασθε δέ, δηλώσω δέ* etc. (cp. 2. 9. 8; 2. 58. 7; 8. 120. 1. etc.), and after superlatives (7. 164. 12 etc.).

3. A parenthetical *γάρ*-clause is very common, either causal (cp. 8. 75. 12; 8. 76. 16; 8. 87. 8; 8. 109. 3; 8. 113. 9; 8. 128. 5), or explanatory (cp. 7. 70. 3; 7. 95. 7; 7. 117. 5; 7. 205. 8; 8. 85. 2).

4. Particularly characteristic is the thrusting forward of a *γάρ*-clause so as to precede instead of follow the principal statement which is explained. This use is common in introducing a new person, place, etc. (cp. 8. 5. 4; 8. 8. 4; 8. 101. 17 etc.), or at the beginning of a speech after an introductory vocative (cp. 1. 8. 10 etc.). In the principal clause we often have an epanaleptic demonstrative (cp. 7. 214. 13; 8. 5. 4; 8. 8. 2), an *ὦν* (1. 30. 10; 1. 69. 5; 8. 108. 23 etc.), or *νὺν* (1. 124. 5; 1. 85. 12; 4. 97. 11 etc.).



Rarely the principal clause is introduced by *δέ* (9. 61. 10; cp. Thuc. 4. 132), or *ἀλλά* (9. 93. 15; cp. *μ* 154), or *καί* (8. 109. 18).

Sometimes a noun or pronoun, which is common to both clauses, is so placed at the beginning of the sentence that by position it seems to belong to the principal rather than to the *γάρ*-clause, yet it takes its case-construction from the latter: cp. *τῶν δὲ πᾶν γὰρ ἦν τὸ πλῆθος μεταίτιον, οὐκ ἐδέκοντο τοὺς λόγους* 4. 200. 4; cp. 1. 24. 17; 1. 27. 20; 1. 114. 10; 1. 155. 15; 2. 101. 1; 4. 149. 1, 7; 5. 92 β. 6; 7. 142. 1; 7. 209. 4; 9. 109. 7. In *ταῦτά σφι ἡπίωτερα γὰρ ἐδόκει εἶναι* (7. 142. 1) the *position* of *σφι*, like the case of *τῶν δέ* in 4. 200, indicates that the preliminary words were felt as part of the *γάρ*-clause. In 4. 162. 15 and 8. 94. 14 with an initial *ταῦτα* that belongs only to the *γάρ*-clause, the *γάρ* has a similar late position (*τοῦτο ἐπὶ παντὶ γὰρ τῷ διδομένῳ ἔλεγε*). With the position of *σφι* in 7. 142 compare that of *οἱ* in 1. 27 and of *αὐτῷ* in 7. 209, as contrasted with that of *σφι* in 1. 191. 29. In most of the cases the position of *γάρ* is no later than is rendered necessary by the kind of connection (*τῶν δέ, τῇ δέ* etc.) with the preceding sentence; and the case-construction is no stranger than in *τοῖσι δὲ Ἑλλήσι ὡς ἐσήμηνε . . . συνήγαγον* 8. 11. 1. For similar constructions in Thuc. see 1. 72. 1; 1. 115. 4; 8. 30. 1.

5. As a result of the usages explained in 3 and 4 *γάρ* is a far more frequent particle in H. than in Attic. The ordinary causal conjunctions, *ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, ὅτι, ὥς*, are quite rare.

### § 32. ὦν

1. *ὦν* in its original meaning *in truth* is generally combined with particles or pronouns; but cp. 8. 109. 26. a. *γῶν at the very least* 1. 31. 4; 4. 76. 2 (?); *at any rate, certainly* 7. 104. 21. b. *γὰρ ὦν* 8. 128. 5; 8. 133. 7. c. *μὲν ὦν* very common in passing to a new subject, with following *δέ*. d. *οὔτε ὦν . . . οὔτε* or *οὔτε . . . οὔτε ὦν* 4. 96. 3; 7. 12. 9; 9. 18. 17. e. *εἴτε ὦν . . . εἴτε*

6. 137. 3; 8. 54. 6. f.  $\delta' \omega\upsilon$ , adding a certain fact to a statement put doubtfully 6. 82. 5; 7. 9  $\gamma$ . 7; 7. 35. 5; 7. 189. 14; with preceding  $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu$  3. 80. 4; 4. 5. 6; 7. 189. 14 (different effect in 7. 145. 8). g.  $\sigma\upsilon\kappa \omega\upsilon$  in a strong adversative sense is a peculiarity of H.; cp. 5. 96. 10; 6. 52. 12; 7. 15. 7; in the middle of the clause 3. 137. 13. At times a sentence introduced by  $\sigma\upsilon\kappa \omega\upsilon$  has the effect of a causal clause, the conclusion being added with or without connective; cp. 1. 11. 17; 1. 24. 10; 1. 59. 12; 2. 141. 8; 4. 11. 13 (w.  $\delta\eta$  in conclusion). The  $\sigma\upsilon\kappa \omega\upsilon$  clause may make an assumption, giving greater emphasis and liveliness than a conditional clause; cp. 4. 118. 10; 5. 92  $\eta$ . 33; 7. 10  $\beta$ . 7 (cp.  $\kappa\alpha\iota \delta\eta$  in l. 3).

2. The resumptive  $\omega\upsilon$  (cp. c above) lies between the use as a strengthening and an inferential particle. It is very common after  $\sigma\upsilon\tau\omicron\varsigma$  (8. 21. 9; 8. 55. 6), but also in other connections; see 8. 67. 1; 8. 100. 11. It is often used with  $\delta\eta$ , which commonly precedes (1. 8. 1; 1. 30. 1), but  $\omega\upsilon \delta\eta$  is preferred between art. and noun (7. 40. 12; 7. 142. 12); cp. also 1. 115. 13; 1. 209. 10; 6. 109. 18. For a resumptive  $\omega\upsilon$  in the apod. see 9. 26. 13; 9. 48. 21; esp. with a gnomic aor. in tmesis, see § 7. 1.

3. The inferential  $\omega\upsilon$  is common. Especially noteworthy is  $\nu\upsilon\upsilon \omega\upsilon$  introducing a demand in a polite form; cp. 1. 30. 13; 1. 36. 10; 3. 69. 8; 6. 97. 11; 7. 16  $\beta$ . 1; 7. 101. 8.

### § 33. $\delta\eta$

1. The original temporal meaning of  $\delta\eta$  is seen in  $\kappa\alpha\iota \delta\eta = \eta\delta\eta$  4. 102. 4; 7. 196. 5; 8. 94. 14; 9. 6. 5; cp.  $\kappa\alpha\iota \delta\eta \kappa\alpha\iota \epsilon\kappa\epsilon\iota\upsilon\omicron\varsigma$  then he too 7. 164. 15 and  $\kappa\alpha\iota \delta\eta \kappa\alpha\iota$  in an assumption 7. 10  $\beta$ . 3.

2. In its derived meaning = *you know*  $\delta\eta$  is used as follows:  
a. To emphasize single words.  $\epsilon\varsigma \delta\eta \tau\omicron \text{''}\text{A}\rho\gamma\omicron\varsigma$  7. 148. 19. Often w. pronouns; cp.  $\epsilon\mu\epsilon \delta\eta$  3. 155. 6; particularly w.  $\sigma\upsilon\tau\omicron\varsigma$  7. 43. 5. With adjectives 7. 20. 5; 7. 152. 16; 8. 124. 14. With adverbs,

particularly οὕτω, ἐνθα, ἐνθαῦτα, τότε, often with resumptive effect after a subord. clause or participial phrase; cp. 1. 5. 8; 3. 134. 2; 8. 23. 6; 8. 40. 13. Cp. οὕτω δὴ τι w. adjs. 1. 163. 11; 1. 185. 10 etc.; so ὥδε δὴ τι 3. 120. 13. With οἷος, ὅσος etc. = *such and such* etc. 1. 86. 28; 1. 160. 6 etc. b. With whole clauses 8. 51. 13; very often γὰρ δὴ, μὲν δὴ, καὶ δὴ, καὶ δὴ καί, τε δὴ . . . καί. In subord. clauses w. relat. (7. 8 β. 4); w. ὥς, ὅτι, διότι (9. 48. 13; 1. 44. 8; 1. 141. 13); in final clauses (8. 7. 5; 8. 76. 10); w. ὥστε (1. 185. 11); in conditions (7. 16 γ. 13; 8. 140 a. 7); w. ἐπεὶ etc. (8. 6. 2); w. εἴτε (8. 54. 6). With ἄτε, οἷα, ὥστε, ὥς and participle (6. 26. 9; 7. 211. 4; 8. 90. 10).

## SPECIAL WORKS ON THE SYNTAX OF HERODOTUS

[An asterisk denotes that the book was not obtainable.]

Bahr, P. — *De ὅκως conjunctionis apud Herodotum vi et usu*. Magdeburg, 1887.

\* Beyer — *De perfecti apud Herodotum usu syntactico*. Breslau, 1868.

Bohlmann, C. — *De attractionis usu et progressu, qualis fuerit in enuntiationibus relativis apud Herodotum, Antiphontem, Thucydidem, Andocidem, Lysiam*. Breslau, 1882.

Böttcher, H. — *Der Gebrauch der Casus bei Herodot*. Halberstadt, 1885.

Brackett, H. D. — *Temporal Clauses in Herodotus*. In the *Proceedings of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences*. July, 1905.

\* Brandt — *De modorum apud Herodotum usu*. Cöthen, 1873.

Broschmann, M. — *De γάρ particulae usu Herodoteo*. Leipzig, 1882.

Brown, L. D. — *A Study of the Case Constructions of Words of Time*. New Haven, 1904.

Cavallin, S. J. — *De futuro Herodoteo*. Lunds Univ. Årsskrift. Vol. xiv.

—— — *De modis atque temporibus orationis obliquae apud Herodotum*. Lund, 1877.

Diessl, A. — *Die Impersonalien bei Herodot.* Wien, 1899.

Ekedahl, E. — *De usu pronominum personalium et reflexivorum Herodoteo*. Lund, 1885.

Erxleben, R. — *De comparativi cum comparata re conjuncti usu Herodoteo*. Halle, 1884.

Gomperz, Th. — *Herodoteische Studien*. i, ii. Wien, 1883.

Hammer, B. — *De τὴ particulae usu Herodoteo, Thucydideo, Xenophonteo*. Leipzig, 1904.

Heikel, J. A. — *De participiorum apud Herodotum usu*. Helsingfors, 1884.

Heiligenstädt, R. — *De enuntiatorum finalium usu Herodoteo cum Homérico ex parte comparato*. Pars prior. Halle, 1883. Pars altera. Görlitz, 1892.

Heilmann, L. — *De infinitivi syntaxi Herodotea*. Giessen, 1879.

Helbing, R. — *Über den Gebrauch des echten und sociativen Dativs bei Herodot.* Karlsruhe, 1898.

—— — *Der Instrumentalis bei Herodot.* Karlsruhe, 1900.

—— — *Die Präpositionen bei Herodot und anderen Historikern*. Heft 16 in Schanz' Beiträge. Würzburg, 1904.

Hoffmann, V. — *De particularum nonnullarum apud Herodotum usu*. Halle, 1880.

—— — *Über den Gebrauch der Partikel ὅτι bei Herodot.* Schneidemühl, 1884.

Kallenberg, H. — *Commentatio critica in Herodotum*. Berlin, 1884.

—— — *Der Artikel bei Namen von Ländern, Städten, und Meeren in der griechischen Prosa*. *Philologus* xlix, p. 515.

—— — *Studien über den griechischen Artikel*. ii. Berlin, 1891.

— — Also numerous articles in the *Jahresberichte des philologischen Vereins zu Berlin*.

\* Karassek — *Der Infinitiv bei Herodot.* Saatz, 1883.

\* Kühne — *Die Präpositionen bei Herodot.* Rostock, 1883.

\* Lundberg — *De ratione Herodotea praepositionibus utendi a scriptoribus Atticis diversa.* Upsala, 1869.

May, O. — *De attractionis usu Herodoteo.* Breslau, 1878.

\* Melander — *De anacoluthis Herodoteis.* Lunds Univ. Årsskrift. Vol. v.

Miodonski, A. S. — *De enuntiatis subjecto carentibus apud Herodotum.* Cracow, 1891.

Nehmeyer, W. — *Syntaktische Bemerkungen zu Herodot* (Final- und Consecutivsätze). Darmstadt, 1895.

Reisert, K. — *Zur Attraktion der Relativsätze in der griechischen Prosa. Allgemeines. Herodot und Thucydides.* Neustadt, 1889.

Rodemeyer, K. T. — *Das praesens historicum bei Herodot und Thucydides.* Basel, 1889.

Rudloff, F. T. — *Observationes in orationem Herodoteam.* Halle, 1879.

Sagawe, K. — *Über den Gebrauch des Pronomens ἑαυτος bei Herodot.* Breslau, 1891.

— — *ὅς im Nachsatz bei Herodot.* Breslau, 1893.

Schaeffer — *Über den Gebrauch des Accusativs bei Herodot.* Gross-Strehlitz, 1884.

Schwidop, L. — *Zur Moduslehre im Sprachgebrauche des Herodot.* Königsberg, 1876.

Sharp, R. — *De infinitivo Herodoteo.* Leipzig, 1880.

Spormann, C. — *De ellipsis brachylogiaeque apud Herodotum et Thucydidem usu.* Halle, 1888.

Štourač, F. — *Über den Gebrauch des Genetivus bei Herodot.* Olmütz, 1888–1895.

Thomas, G. S. — *De particulae ὅς usu Herodoteo.* Leipzig, 1888.

\* Vayhinger — *Gebrauch der Tempora und Modi bei Herodot.* Heilbronn, 1880.

Walther, O. — *Über ως bei Herodot.* Hameln, 1887.

Wehmann, M. — *De ως particulae usu Herodoteo, Thucydideo, Xenophonteo.* Strassburg, 1891.

Zander, A. — *De imperfecti atque aoristi apud Herodotum usu.* Halle, 1882.

In Schanz' *Beiträge zur historischen Syntax der griechischen Sprache* the works of Sturm on πρίν, Weber on Final Clauses, Grünenwald on the Infinitive of Limitation, Dyroff on Reflexive Pronouns, and Fuchs on Temporal 'Until' Clauses have been specially referred to.

## ABBREVIATIONS

- B. = Babbitt's *Grammar of Attic and Ionic Greek*, 1902.  
G. = Goodwin's *Greek Grammar* (revised edition), 1892.  
GMT. = Goodwin's *Syntax of the Moods and Tenses of the Greek Verb*  
(enlarged edition), 1890.  
Gl. = Goodell's *School Grammar of Attic Greek*, 1902.  
GS. = Gildersleeve's *Syntax of Classical Greek* (first part), 1900.  
HA. = Hadley's *Greek Grammar* (revised by Allen), 1884.  
Kühn. = Kühner's *Ausführliche Grammatik, IIter Teil* (revised by  
Gerth), 1898-1904.  
Kr. Spr. = Krüger, *Griechische Sprachlehre*, Leipzig, 1875.  
S. = Smyth's *Greek Grammar*, 1908.  
Dial. = Introduction: Summary of the Dialect Forms.  
Syn. = Introduction: Syntactical Usage.







# ΗΡΟΔΟΤΟΥ

ΤΟΥ

ΛΑΙΚΑΡΝΗΣΣΕΟΣ ΙΣΤΟΡΙΩΝ ΕΒΔΟΜΗ

ΕΠΙΓΡΑΦΟΜΕΝΗ ΠΟΛΙΤΜΝΙΑ

- 1 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ ἀγγελίη ἀπίκετο περὶ τῆς μάχης τῆς ἐν Μαραθῶνι γενομένης παρὰ βασιλέα Δαρείον τὸν Ὑστάσπεος καὶ πρὶν μεγάλως κεχαραγμένον τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι διὰ τὴν ἐς Σάρδεις ἐσβολήν, καὶ δὴ καὶ τότε πολλῶ τε δεινότερα ἐποίει καὶ μᾶλλον ὥρμητο στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. καὶ αὐτίκα μὲν ἐπηγ-

## BOOK VII

PREPARATIONS FOR A SECOND  
EXPEDITION AGAINST GREECE

1. 1. ἀγγελίη: Dial. § 1. i. 1. — ἀπίκετο: Dial. § 2. 3. — 2. ἐν Μαραθῶνι: see 6. III ff. — 3. Ὑστάσπεος: Dial. § 1. i. 2. — κεχαραγμένον: *exasperated*. Cp. ὀξυνθείς 8. 138. 4. Darius, on being told that Sardis had been burned and who were the Athenians who had joined the Ionians in the invasion, shot an arrow toward the heavens and prayed, "O Zeus, grant that I may punish the Athenians!" Then he ordered an attendant to say to him every day

at dinner, "Master, remember the Athenians" (5. 105). — 4. τὴν ἐς Σάρδεις ἐσβολήν: the city put, as often, for the satrapy (Λυδία). Cp. δι' Ἀβδήρων 7. 126. 4. For an account of this invasion, made during the Ionian revolt (500-494 B.C.), see 5. 99 ff. — καὶ δὴ καί: introducing and emphasizing the apodosis, as 7. 164. 14. Cp. καὶ τότε δὴ Hom. η 262. — 5. πολλῶ τε δεινότερα ἐποίει: *acted still more angrily*, as 2. 121. ε 2, 3. 14. 23, 5. 41. 9. The middle is more common. Cp. 7. 35. 1. — μᾶλλον ὥρμητο: *was more determined*, with dependent inf, as often in Hdt. Note the force of the plpf. Cp. I. 14 and 7. 19. 1. — 6. ἐπηγγέλλετο

γέλλετο πέμπων ἀγγέλους κατὰ πόλιν ἐτοιμάζειν στρατιήν, πολλῶ πλέω ἐπιτάσσων ἐκάστοισι ἢ πρότερον παρείχον, καὶ νέας τε καὶ ἵππους καὶ σῖτον [καὶ πλοῖα]. τούτων δὲ περιαγγελλομένων ἢ Ἀσίῃ ἐδονεῖτο ἐπὶ τρία ἔτεα, καταλεγομένων τε τῶν ἀρίστων ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατευσομένων καὶ παρασκευαζομένων. τετάρτῳ δὲ ἔτει Αἰγύπτιοι ὑπὸ Καμβύσῳ δουλωθέντες ἀπέστησαν ἀπὸ Περσέων. ἐνθαῦτα δὴ καὶ μᾶλλον ὥρμητο καὶ ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρους στρατεύεσθαι. στελλομένου δὲ Δαρείου ἐπ' Αἴγυπτον καὶ Ἀθήνας τῶν παιδῶν αὐτοῦ στάσις ἐγένετο μεγάλη περὶ τῆς ἡγεμονίης, ὡς δεῖ μιν

πέμπων ἀγγέλους: pleonastic. Cp. δι' ἀγγέλων ἐπεκηρυκεῖτο 1. 69. 10, πέμπας . . . ἐπεκηρυκεῖτο 4. 80. 14. — 7. κατὰ πόλιν: distributive, *from city to city*. The Hellenic colonies on the coast of Asia Minor are esp. meant, though not exclusively, as ἢ Ἀσίῃ in 1. 10 proves. — 8. πλέω: *sc. στρατιήν*. — ἐκάστοισι: *sc. πολίταις*, const. acc. to sense after πόλιν. — 9. καὶ: correlates νέας τε καὶ . . . σῖτον with στρατιήν. — [καὶ πλοῖα]: wanting in the best Mss. If genuine, *transports* are meant, while νέας refers to ships of war (triremes). — 10. τούτων περιαγγελλομένων: *while these demands were being sent around*. — ἐδονεῖτο: *was in a whirl* = ἐκινεῖτο. Cp. Hom. P 55 τὸ δέ τε πνοιᾷ δονέουσιν, of a tree shaken by the wind. The word is poetic, Ionic, and

Hellenistic. — ἐπὶ τρία ἔτεα: *for three years*. ἐπὶ with the temporal, as with the local acc., as often (7. 20. 1, 7. 119. 8 etc.) = *per*. The years 489-487 are meant. — 13. ὑπὸ Καμβύσῳ: successor of Cyrus (529-521). Dial. § 3. i. 2. — 14. ἐνθαῦτα: Dial. § 2. 4. — καὶ μᾶλλον: *still more*. — καὶ ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρους: *against both alike*, καὶ as in 1. 52. 5, 7. 16. a 3.

DISPUTE OF DARIUS' SONS ABOUT THE SUCCESSION. HIS DEATH (CC. 2-4)

2. 1. στελλομένου: *on the point of setting out*. Cp. 7. 239. 2. — 3. περὶ τῆς ἡγεμονίης: *i.e.* as to who should be ruler (ἡγεμών). — ὡς δεῖ: clause of indir. disc., dependent on the claim implied in στάσις ἐγένετο. The indic. of dir. disc. is retained for vividness. — μιν:

ἀποδέξαντα βασιλέα κατὰ τὸν Περσέων νόμον οὕτω  
στρατεύεσθαι. ἦσαν γὰρ Δαρείῳ καὶ πρότερον ἢ βασι- 5  
λεῦσαι γεγονότες τρεῖς παῖδες ἐκ τῆς προτέρης γυναικός,  
Γωβρύεω θυγατρός, καὶ βασιλεύσαντι ἐξ Ἀτόσσης τῆς  
Κύρου ἕτεροι τέσσερες. τῶν μὲν δὴ προτέρων ἐπρέ-  
σβευε Ἀρτοβαζάνης, τῶν δὲ ἐπιγενομένων Ξέρξης.  
εἶοντες δὲ μητρὸς οὐ τῆς αὐτῆς ἐστασίαζον, ὁ μὲν 10  
Ἀρτοβαζάνης κατ' ὃ τι πρεσβύτατός τε εἴη παντὸς τοῦ  
γόνου καὶ ὅτι νομιζόμενον εἴη πρὸς πάντων ἀνθρώπων  
τὸν πρεσβύτατον τὴν ἀρχὴν ἔχειν, Ξέρξης δὲ ὡς Ἀτόσ-  
σης τε παῖς εἴη τῆς Κύρου θυγατρός καὶ ὅτι Κῦρος εἴη  
3 ὁ κτησάμενος τοῖσι Πέρσῃσι τὴν ἐλευθερίην. Δαρείου  
δὲ οὐκ ἀποδεικνυμένου κω γνώμην ἐτύγχανε κατὰ  
τῶντὸ τοῦτοισι καὶ Δημάρητος ὁ Ἀρίστωνος ἀναβε-  
βηκὼς ἐς Σοῦσα, ἐστερημένος τε τῆς ἐν Σπάρτῃ βασι-

*i.e.* Δαρείου. Dial. § 3. ii. 2.—  
4. ἀποδέξαντα: Dial. § 1. ii. 2.—  
οὕτω: *i.e.* ἀποδέξαντα βασιλέα. It  
introduces the apod., as 7. 150. 17,  
7. 158. 15.—5. ἦσαν γεγονότες:  
periphrastic form, as 7. 3. 13, 7.  
11. 10.—πρότερον ἢ: as in 7.  
150. 3 with inf., like πρίν. Cp.  
πρίν ἢ, 6. 22. 4.—βασιλεύσαι: in-  
gressive.—7. Γωβρύεω: one of  
the seven conspirators (3. 70) who  
slew the Pseudo-Smerdis, suc-  
cessor of Cambyses.—8. τέσσερες:  
Dial. § 1. ii. 2. The names were  
Xerxes, Achaemenes (7. 7. 6),  
Hystaspes (7. 64. 9), Masistes  
(7. 82. 6).—ἐπρέσβευε: = πρεσβύ-  
τατος ἦν.—11. κατ' ὃ τι . . . εἴη:

the cause assigned emphatically  
on another's authority. κατ' ὃ τι  
= Attic διότι. Dial. § 2. 3.—12.  
γόνου: *progeny*, as 2. 43. 7; poeti-  
cal.—ὅτι νομιζόμενον εἴη πρὸς πάν-  
των: *that it was customary with*  
*all men*; though πρὸς *c. gen.* really  
denotes agent here, as 7. 151. 10.  
—15. Πέρσῃσι: Dial. § 3. i. 2.

3. 2. κω: Dial. § 2. i.—κατὰ  
τῶντὸ τοῦτοισι: = κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν  
χρόνον τοῦτοισι. Cp. 7. 206. 9.  
For the dat., see S. 1500; HA.  
773 a. For τῶντὸ, see Dial. § 1.  
ii 8.—3. Δημάρητος: for the his-  
tory of Demaratus, see 6. 61–70.—  
4. Σοῦσα: seat of the Persian court;  
Ecbatana summer residence.—ἐσ-

ληίης καὶ φυγὴν ἐπιβαλὼν ἑωυτῷ ἐκ Λακεδαιμόνος. 5  
 οὗτος ὦνῆρ πυθόμενος τῶν Δαρείου παίδων τὴν διαφο-  
 ρήν, ἐλθὼν, ὡς ἡ φάτις μιν ἔχει, Ξέρξῃ συνεβούλευε  
 λέγειν πρὸς τοῖσι ἔλεγε ἔπεισι, ὡς αὐτὸς μὲν γένοιτο  
 Δαρείῳ ἤδη βασιλεύοντι καὶ ἔχοντι τὸ Περσέων κράτος,  
 Ἄρτοβαζάνης δὲ ἔτι ἰδιώτῃ ἑόντι Δαρείῳ· οὐκ ὦν οὔτε 10  
 οἰκὸς εἶη οὔτε δίκαιον ἄλλον τινὰ τὸ γέρας ἔχειν πρὸ  
 ἑωυτοῦ, ἐπεὶ γε καὶ ἐν Σπάρτῃ, ἔφη ὁ Δημάρητος ὑπο-  
 τιθέμενος, οὕτω νομίζεσθαι, ἦν οἱ μὲν προγεγονότες  
 ἔωσι πρὶν ἢ τὸν πατέρα σφέων βασιλεῦσαι, ὁ δὲ βασι-  
 λεύοντι ὀψίγονος ἐπιγένηται, τοῦ ἐπιγενομένου τὴν 15  
 ἔκδεξιν τῆς βασιληίης γίνεσθαι. χρησαμένου δὲ  
 Ξέρξεω τῇ Δημαρήτου ὑποθήκῃ γνοὺς ὁ Δαρεῖος ὡς  
 λέγοι δίκαια βασιλέα μιν ἀπέδεξε. δοκεῖν δέ μοι,

τερημένος . . . βασιληίης: by Cleomenes, who was king with him at Sparta.—5. φυγὴν ἐπιβαλὼν ἑωυτῷ: in chagrin at a public insult offered him (6. 67).—6. ὦνῆρ: ὁ ἄνῆρ.—παίδων τὴν διαφορὴν: note the unusual position of the attrib. gen., which thus acquires special emphasis.—7. ὡς ἡ φάτις μιν ἔχει: as the report is about him, as 7. 26. 17, 8. 94. 20. Cp. Pind. P 1. 96 ἔχθρὰ Φάλαριν κατέχει παντῇ φάτις. The reverse const. 9. 84. 8 ἔχει τινὰ φάτιν καὶ Διονυσσοφάνης.—8. πρὸς τοῖσι ἔλεγε ἔπεισι: = πρὸς τούτοις τοῖς ἔπεισι ἃ ἔλεγε.—10. Δαρείῳ: for repetition, cp. 6. 23. 15, 17.—ὦν: Attic οὖν.—11. οἰκός: Attic εἰκός, *fitting*.—εἶη: continuation

of the indir. disc.—τὸ γέρας: *i.e.* τὸ Περσέων κράτος. Often in Homer. Cp. τιμή 7. 8. a 12.—12. ἑωυτοῦ: Dial. 1. ii. 8.—ἐν Σπάρτῃ: such a custom at Sparta is not elsewhere mentioned.—ὑποτιθέμενος: by way of suggestion, as 7. 237. 10.—13. νομίζεσθαι: *it was customary*, as 7. 2. 11; grammatically dependent on ἔφη, though the opt. after ἐπεὶ was to be expected.—ἦν . . . ἔωσι: prot. of gen. cond. For the periphr. pf. see on 7. 2. 5.—15. ὀψίγονος ἐπιγένηται: note the pleonasm. The adj. is poetical.—τοῦ ἐπιγενομένου: pred. gen. of possession dependent on γίνεσθαι.—18. δοκεῖν δέ μοι: as it seems to

καὶ ἄνευ ταύτης τῆς ὑποθήκης βασιλεῦσαι ἂν Ξέρξης·  
 4 ἢ γὰρ Ἀτοσσα εἶχε τὸ πᾶν κράτος. ἀποδέξας δὲ βα-  
 σιλέα Πέρσῃσι Ξέρξην Δαρείως ὀρμάτο στρατεύεσθαι.  
 ἀλλὰ γὰρ μετὰ ταῦτά τε καὶ Αἰγύπτου ἀπόστασιν τῷ  
 ὑστέρω ἔτει παρασκευαζόμενον συνήνεικε αὐτὸν Δα-  
 ρεῖον, βασιλεύσαντα τὰ πάντα ἕξ τε καὶ τριήκοντα 5  
 ἔτεα, ἀποθανεῖν, οὐδέ οἱ ἐξεγένετο οὔτε τοὺς ἀπεστεῶτας  
 Αἰγυπτίους οὔτε Ἀθηναίους τιμωρήσασθαι. ἀποθα-  
 νόντος δὲ Δαρείου ἡ βασιληὶ ἄνεχώρησε ἐς τὸν παῖδα  
 5 τὸν ἐκείνου Ξέρξην. ὁ τοῖνυν Ξέρξης ἐπὶ μὲν τὴν

*me*, absol. inf. (S. 2012 d; HA. 956), on which depends βασιλεῦσαι ἂν. Some editions read δοκεῖ, with a few Mss.—20. Ἀτοσσα . . . κράτος: compare the influence of Amestris over Xerxes (9. 109) and of Parysatis over Darius II (Xen. *Anab.* 1. 1. 1). Darius I had six wives: the daughter of Gobryas (7. 2); Atossa and Artystone, daughters of Cyrus (3. 88); Parmys, a daughter of Smerdis (3. 88); Phaedyne, a daughter of Otanes (3. 88); Phratagune, the daughter of Artanes (7. 224).

4. 2. ὀρμάτο στρατεύεσθαι: note the impf. as compared with plpf. in 7. 1. 5.—3. ἀλλὰ γάρ: elliptical, *at enim*. The thought is to be supplied from the context. *But* (he did not carry it out), *for*.—μετὰ ταῦτα: *i.e.* after the disputes about the succession.—

Αἰγύπτου ἀπόστασιν: 486 B.C.—

4. συνήνεικε: *it chanced*, as 6. 22.

14. Att. συνέβη. Dial. § 4. 7.

—5. τὰ πάντα: *in all*. Formulaic addition with numbers, as 1.

214. 13, 2. 159. 11, 4. 7. 3.—τε καὶ: with numbers, as 7. 184. 7,

12, 26; rare in Attic.—6. οὐδέ: in Attic καὶ οὐ, since the preceding clause is affirmative.—οἱ

ἐξεγένετο: *was it allowed him, contingit*.—τοὺς ἀπεστεῶτας: Dial.

§ 1. i. 2.—8. ἀνεχώρησε: *reverted, rediit*, as ἀναβαίνειν 1. 109.

13, 7. 205. 6. ἀνα- always of rightful succession. Cp. 1. 7. 1

ἢ ἡγεμονίη περιήλθε *the kingship came round*, of passing into different hands.

XERXES PERSUADED TO MAKE THE  
 EXPEDITION AGAINST GREECE  
 (CC. 5-7)

5. 1. τοῖνυν: *now*, continua-

Ἑλλάδα οὐδαμῶς πρόθυμος ἦν κατ' ἀρχὰς στρατεύεσθαι, ἐπὶ δὲ Αἴγυπτον ἐποιεῖτο στρατιῆς ἄγερσιν. παρεὼν δὲ καὶ δυνάμενος παρ' αὐτῷ μέγιστον Περσέων Μαρδόνιος ὁ Γωβρύεω, ὃς ἦν Ξέρξῃ μὲν ἀνεψιός, Δαρείῳ δὲ ἀδελφεῆς παῖς, τοιούτου λόγου εἶχετο, λέγων· Δέσποτα, οὐκ οἰκός ἐστι Ἀθηναίους ἐργασαμένους πολλὰ δὴ κακὰ Πέρσας μὴ οὐ δοῦναι δίκην τῶν ἐποίησαν. ἀλλ' εἰ τὸ μὲν νῦν ταῦτα πρήσσοις τά περ ἐν χερσὶ ἔχεις· ἡμερώσας δὲ Αἴγυπτον τὴν ἐξυβρίσασαν<sup>10</sup> στρατηλάτει ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας, ἵνα λόγος τέ σε ἔχῃ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων ἀγαθὸς καὶ τις ὕστερον φυλάσσηται ἐπὶ γῇν

tive. — 2. κατ' ἀρχὰς: *at first*, as 3. 159. 10, 5. 92. ζ 4. — 3. ἐποιεῖτο στρατιῆς ἄγερσιν: periphrasis for ἡγείρετο στρατιήν. ἄγερσις, also 7. 48. 9, is Herodotean. Cp. ἐπάγερσιν 7. 19. 12. — 4. δυνάμενος παρ' αὐτῷ μέγιστον: *multum valens apud eum*. Cp. 9. 9. 4. — 5. Μαρδόνιος: see 6. 43. — 6. τοιούτου: = τοιούδε, referring to what follows. Hdt. is not consistent in this usage. — εἶχετο: *held to*, i.e. kept rehearsing, as 7. 6. 11. — 7. Δέσποτα: at Athens so used by slaves to masters or by mortals to gods. — 8. πολλὰ δὴ κακὰ: cp. Aesch. *Pers.* 236 στρατὸς τοιοῦτος ἔρξας πολλὰ δὴ Μήδους κακὰ. — μὴ οὐ: double neg. on account of the preceding οὐ. S. 2747; HA. 1034. — τῶν: rel. for τούτων ᾧ, gen. of cause. — 9. εἰ . . . πρήσσοις: a wish that carries an

exhortation. This use of simple εἰ is poetical. S. 1815; HA. 870 b. Cp. Hom. O 571, Π 559. — ἐν χερσὶ ἔχεις: as I. 35. 1, 7. 47. 5. — 10. ἡμερώσας . . . ἐξυβρίσασαν: figure from the taming of animals. Cp. Cic. *de Off.* 1. 26. 90 *ferocitate exsultantes domitoribus tradere*. ἡμερώσας = Att. δουλῶσας. — 11. στρατηλάτει: Att. στρατεύου. — ἵνα . . . ἀγαθός: as 9. 78. 9. Cp. Hom. a 95 ἵνα μιν κλέος ἐσθλὸν ἐν ἀνθρώποισιν ἔχῃσιν, Eur. *Med.* 420 οὐκέτι δυσκέλαδος φάμα γυναικας ἔξει. See on 7. 3. 6. — πρὸς ἀνθρώπων: practically agent const. See on 7. 2. 12. — 12. καὶ τις . . . στρατεύεσθαι: for the thought, cp. 9. 78. 9, 9. 116. 12 and Hom. © 515 ἵνα τις στυγέῃσι καὶ ἄλλος Τρῶσιν ἐφ' ἵπποδάμοισι φέρειν πολὺδακρυν Ἄρηα. — τις: practically = ἕκαστος, 7. 8. 8 3, 7. 237. 14, and freq. in

τὴν σὴν στρατεύεσθαι. οὗτος μὲν οἱ ὁ λόγος ἦν τιμω-  
 ρός, τοῦδε δὲ τοῦ λόγου παρενθήκην ποιέσκετο τήνδε,  
 ὡς ἡ Εὐρώπη περικαλλὴς χώρα καὶ δένδρεα παντοῖα 15  
 φέρει τὰ ἡμερα, ἀρετὴν τε ἄκρη, βασιλεῖ τε μούνῳ  
 6 θνητῶν ἀξίῃ ἐκτῆσθαι. ταῦτα ἔλεγε οἷα νεωτέρων  
 ἔργων ἐπιθυμητῆς εἶναι καὶ θέλων αὐτὸς τῆς Ἑλλάδος  
 ὑπαρχος εἶναι. χρόνῳ δὲ κατεργάσατό τε καὶ ἀνέπεισε  
 Ξέρξην ὥστε ποιεῖν ταῦτα· συνέλαβε γὰρ καὶ ἄλλα οἱ  
 σύμμαχα γενόμενα ἐς τὸ πείθεσθαι Ξέρξην. τοῦτο μὲν 5  
 ἀπὸ τῆς Θεσσαλίας παρὰ τῶν Ἀλευαδέων ἀπιγμένοι  
 ἄγγελοι ἐπεκαλέοντο βασιλέα πᾶσαν προθυμίην παρε-  
 χόμενοι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα (οἱ δὲ Ἀλευάδαι οὗτοι ἦσαν

Hom. — 13. οὗτος μὲν οἱ ὁ λόγος :  
 οἱ dat. of possession, *this speech*  
*of his*. — τιμωρός : *for vengeance*.

— 14. τοῦδε : referring to the  
 same thing as οὗτος. Some Mss.  
 have τούτου. — παρενθήκην : as I.  
 186. 2, 6. 19. 4, 7. 171. 3. It is  
 pred. acc., to which the obj. acc.  
 is assimilated in gender. — 16. τὰ  
 ἡμερα : *i.e.* fruit trees. — ἀρετὴν :  
 acc. of specification ; refers to fer-  
 tility. — ἄκρη : *excellent*, as 5. 112.  
 3, 5. 124. 3, 7. 111. 6. — 17. ἐκτῆ-  
 σθαι : = Attic *κεκτῆσθαι*.

6. 1. οἷα : *because of*, with ptc.  
 as αἶτε 7. 23. 11, ὥστε 7. 129. 2. S.  
 2085 ; HA. 977. The idiom is  
 post-Homeric. — νεωτέρων ἔργων  
*ἐπιθυμητῆς* : *rerum novarum cu-*  
*pidus*. Cp. 7. 52. 10. — 3. ὑπαρχος  
 = *σατράπης*, which Hdt. does not  
 use, though he has *σατραπήν* (I.

192. 9, 3. 89. 2). — χρόνῳ δέ : *but in*  
*time, postremo autem*. — κατεργά-  
 σατό τε καὶ ἀνέπεισε : *worked upon*  
*and persuaded*. Sometimes κατε-  
 γάζεσθαι alone has this fig. sense of  
*bring over*, as 9. 108. 3. — 4. ὥστε :  
 pleonastic, but freq. after *πείθω* in  
 Hdt. and Thuc. — συνέλαβε : *co-*  
*operated*. ἄλλα is subj., οἱ obj.  
 — 5. σύμμαχα γενόμενα : *proving*  
*auxiliary*. Notice the personifica-  
 tion in the sent. — τοῦτο μὲν, τοῦτο  
 δέ (9) : = τὸ μὲν, τὸ δέ, as often  
 in Hdt. Note the asyndeton. —

7. πᾶσαν προθυμίην παρεχόμενοι :  
*displaying all zeal*. Cp. Thuc. 4.  
 85. 15 *pân tò próthumon παρεχόμε-*  
*νοι*. — 8. ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα : construe  
 with ἐπεκαλέοντο. — οἱ δὲ Ἀλευάδαι  
 . . . βασιλεῖς : this princely family,  
 descended from an ancient king  
 of the land, Ἀλεύας (7. 130. 13, 9.



Θεσσαλίας βασιλεῖς), τοῦτο δὲ Πεισιστρατιδῶν οἱ ἀναβιβηκότες ἐς Σοῦσα, τῶν τε αὐτῶν λόγων ἐχόμενοι τῶν 10 καὶ Ἀλευάδαι, καὶ δὴ τι πρὸς τούτοισι ἔτι πλέον προσωρέγοντό οἱ. ἔχοντες Ὀνομάκριτον, ἄνδρα Ἀθηναῖον χρησμολόγον τε καὶ διαθέτην χρησμῶν τῶν Μουσαίου, ἀνεβιβήκεσαν, τὴν ἔχθρην προκαταλυσάμενοι· ἐξή- λάσθη γὰρ ὑπὸ Ἰππάρχου τοῦ Πεισιστράτου ὁ Ὀνο- 15

58. 4), and tracing their pedigree from Heracles, dwelt at Larissa. They exercised a predominant influence in Thessaly, and some member of the family was generally the federal leader (τάγος). Hdt. 9. 1. 5. calls them Θεσσαλίας ἡγούμενοι. With Persian aid they now hoped for and did attain absolute sovereignty, which they retained until their prerogatives were again restricted by the Spartan king Leotychides (470 B.C.). βασιλεῖς is here used, as often in Hdt., of all members of the royal house. They were patrons of the poets, e.g. Simonides and Pindar. — 9. Πεισιστρατιδῶν: i.e. Hippias and his sons, who had hoped, with the aid of Darius, to return to power at Athens. Cp. 5. 62, 90-96, 6. 94, 6. 107. — οἱ ἀναβιβηκότες: sc. ἐπεκαλέοντο. — 10. τῶν καὶ Ἀλευάδαι: as also the Aleuadae. The καί in comparisons, esp. rel. clauses, emphasizes the mutual relation of the things compared. — 11. καὶ δὴ τι κτί.: transition from

ptc. const. (ἐχόμενοι) to finite verb.

— προσωρέγοντό οἱ: were urgent with him. The verb, synonymous with προσεφέρετο (27) and προσκεῖσθαι (1. 123. 2), occurs only here. — 12. Ὀνομάκριτον: a poet of some note and a member of the commission of four (Onomacritus, Conchylus, Zopyrus, Orpheus of Croton) appointed by Peisistratus for the arrangement and recension of the disordered Homeric poems (Cramer, *Anecd. Par.* 1. 6). —

13. χρησμολόγον . . . χρησμῶν: expounder and arranger of oracles. Hdt. seems to indicate by χρησμολόγος, not simply expounder but also seer (μάντις) and composer of oracles (χρησμοφδός). Besides the oracles of Musaeus here mentioned, he collected and published Ὀρφέως χρησμοί (Suidas s.v. Ὀρφεύς), and the state oracles preserved on the Acropolis are to be traced to him. — 14. τὴν ἔχθρην: their hostility; the explanation follows in the γὰρ clause. — 15. Ἰππάρχου: of the three sons of Peisis-

μ' κριτος ἐξ Ἀθηνέων, ἐπ' αὐτοφάρῳ ἄλους ὑπὸ Λάσου τοῦ Ἑρμιονέος ἐμποιέων ἐς τὰ Μουσαίου χρησμὸν ὡς αἱ ἐπὶ Δήμῳ ἐπικείμεναι νῆσοι ἀφανιζοίαιτο κατὰ τῆς θαλάσσης. διὸ ἐξήλασέ μιν ὁ Ἴππαρχος, πρότερον χρεώμενος τὰ μάλιστα. τότε δὲ συναναβὰς ὅκως<sup>20</sup> ἀπίκουτο ἐς ὄψιν τὴν βασιλέως, λεγόντων τῶν Πεισιστρατιδέων περὶ αὐτοῦ σεμνοῦς λόγους κατέλεγε τῶν χρησμῶν· εἰ μὲν τι ἐνέοι σφάλμα φέρον τῷ βαρβάρῳ, τῶν μὲν ἔλεγε οὐδέν, ὁ δὲ τὰ εὐτυχέστατα ἐκλεγόμενος ἔλεγε, τὸν τε Ἑλλήσποντον ὡς ζευχθῆναι χρεὸν εἶη ὑπ'<sup>25</sup>

tratus the esp. supporter of art and letters and the patron of poets like Lasos, Anacreon, and Simonides. — 16. ἐπ' αὐτοφάρῳ ἄλους: as 6. 72. 5, 6. 137. 22, though here not the immediate detection, but the irrefragable proofs of the forgery are meant. — Λάσου: of Hermione in Argolis, lyric and esp. dithyrambic poet, and teacher of Pindar. — 17. ἐς τὰ Μουσαίου: sc. ἔπη. — 18. ἀφανιζοίαιτο: Dial. § 4. 3. "Prophetic" present, found esp. in oracles. Paus. 8. 33. 4 mentions the subsidence of Chryse adjacent to Lemnos, a region whose volcanic conditions made it esp. liable to upheaval or subsidence. Some such actual subsidence Onomacritus' interpolation seems to have referred to. — 19. διὸ: as 7. 8. a 16. — ἐξήλασέ μιν: the incident is a proof at once of the zeal of Hipparchus and of the interest of

literary men in the matter of the purity of the texts. — 20. χρεώμενος τὰ μάλιστα: sc. αὐτῷ. τὰ μάλιστα, as 7. 37. 10, and ἐς τὰ μάλιστα (6. 63. 12) = simple μάλιστα (6. 65. 5). — ὅκως: as 7. 41. 2 = Att. ὁπότε. — 22. σεμνοῦς: *reverential*, a term applied esp. to gods or things divine. — τῶν χρησμῶν: partitive. — 23. ἐνέοι: epic opt., only here, = ἐνείη. Dial. § 4. 5. — σφάλμα φέρον: *bringing*, i.e. betokening, *misfortune*. Cp. 8. 137. 16 ὡς εἶη τέρας καὶ φέροι μέγα τι. — 24. τῶν μὲν: dem. μὲν resumptive of the preceding. — ὁ δέ: Homeric repetition of the subj., freq. in Hdt. but rare in Att. prose. Cp. Xen. *Anab.* 4. 2. 6; Thuc. 1. 87. 2. — 25. τὸν τε Ἑλλήσποντον . . . τὴν τε Ἰλίσιν: appos. to τὰ εὐτυχέστατα, the first being explained by ὡς . . . Πέρσῃ, the second by ἐξηγούμενος. — χρεὸν

ἀνδρὸς Πέρσῃ, τὴν τε ἔλασιν ἐξηγεόμενος. οὗτός τε δὴ χρησμοδέων προσεφέρετο, καὶ οἱ τε Πεισιστρατίδαι καὶ οἱ Ἀλευάδαι γνώμας ἀποδεικνύμενοι. ὥς δὲ ἀνεγνώσθη Ξέρξης στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἐνθαῦτα δευτέρῳ μὲν ἔτει μετὰ τὸν θάνατον τὸν Δαρείου πρῶτα στρατιὴν ποιεῖται ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀπεστεῶτας. τούτους μὲν νυν καταστρεψάμενος καὶ Αἴγυπτον πᾶσαν πολλὸν δουλοτέρην ποιήσας ἢ ἐπὶ Δαρείου ἦν, ἐπιτρέπει Ἀχαιμένει, ἀδελφεῷ μὲν ἑωυτοῦ, Δαρείου δὲ παιδί. Ἀχαιμένεα μὲν νυν ἐπιτροπεύοντα Αἰγύπτου χρόνῳ μετέπειτα ἐφόνευσε 8 Ἰνάρως ὁ Ψαμμητίχου ἀνὴρ Λίβυς. Ξέρξης δὲ μετὰ Αἰγύπτου ἄλωσιν ὥς ἔμελλε εἰς χεῖρας ἄξεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα τὸ ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας, σύλλογον ἐπὶ κλητον

εἴη: *it was fated*. Cp. 7. 17. 9, 8. 141. 4. — 26. *ἔλασιν*: Att. *στρατεῖαν*. — *ἐξηγεόμενος*: *recounting*, i.e. foretelling and explaining. — 27. *προσεφέρετο*: see on *προσώρεγοντο* in 11. — 28. *ἀποδεικνύμενοι*: sc. *προσεφέροντο*.

7. 1. *ἀνεγνώσθη*: regularly in Hdt. = *ἀνεπίσθη*. — 3. *δευτέρῳ ἔτει*: 484 B.C. — *πρῶτα*: in Att. usually *πρῶτον*. — 4. *μὲν νυν*: as 7. 8. β 5. Common formula of transition in Hdt. = *μὲν δὴ*. — 5. *πολλόν*: Att. form *πολύ*. — *δουλοτέρην*: seems to occur only here. — 6. *ἐπιτρέπει*: Dial. § 1. ii. 1. — *Ἀχαιμένει*: the two appositives indicate that he was full brother of Xerxes. See on 7.2.8. — 8. *ἐπιτροπεύοντα Αἰγύπτου*: in Hdt. this

verb rarely takes acc., regularly in Att. — *μετέπειτα*: Att. *ἔπειτα*. — 9. *Ἰνάρως*: King of the Libyans, effected the revolt of Egypt from the Persians, being assisted by an Athenian fleet of two hundred ships. The war lasted 460–455. Achaemenes was killed in battle at Papremis.

#### COUNCIL OF STATE. SPEECH OF XERXES

8. 2. *εἰς χεῖρας ἄξεσθαι*: as 4. 79. 3. The const. is not Attic. Cp. *ἐν χερσὶ ἔχεις*, 7. 5. 10. — *τὸ στράτευμα*: *expedition*, as often in Hdt. 1. 6. 11, 3. 48. 1, 3. 49. 4, 8. 112. 16, 9. 33. 23. — 3. *σύλλογον ἐπὶ κλητον*: *called meeting* = Att. *σύγκλητος ἐκκλησία* (Soph. *Ant.*

Περσέων τῶν ἀρίστων ἐποιεῖτο, ἵνα γνώμας τε πύθηταί σφειων καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν πᾶσι εἴπῃ τὰ θέλει. ὥς δὲ συνε-  
 α λέχθησαν, ἔλεξε Ξέρξης τάδε. Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, οὐτ' αὐτὸς κατηγήσομαι νόμον τόνδε ἐν ὑμῖν τιθεὶς παραδε-  
 ξάμενός τε αὐτῷ χρήσομαι. ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι τῶν πρεσβυτέρων, οὐδαμὰ κω ἡτρεμίσαμεν, ἐπεῖτε παρελάβομεν τὴν ἡγεμονίην τήνδε παρὰ Μήδων, Κύρου 5  
 κατελόντος Ἀστυάγεα. ἀλλὰ θεὸς τε οὕτω ἄγει καὶ αὐτοῖσι ἡμῖν πολλὰ ἐπέπονσι συμφέρεται ἐπὶ τὸ ἄμει-  
 νον. τὰ μὲν νυν Κῦρός τε καὶ Καμβύσης πατήρ τε ἐμὸς Δαρεῖος κατεργάσαντο καὶ προσεκτήσαντο ἔθνεα, ἐπισταμένοισι εὖ οὐκ ἂν τις λέγοι. ἐγὼ δὲ ἐπεῖτε παρέ- 10  
 λαβον τὸν θρόνον τοῦτον, ἐφρόντιζον ὅπως μὴ λείψομαι τῶν πρότερον γενομένων ἐν τιμῇ τῇδε μηδὲ ἐλάσσω

160). ἐπὶ κλητος elsewhere applied to persons, as 7. 203. 1, 8. 101. 5, 9. 42. 8.—4. τῶν ἀρίστων: esp. the royal princes, the "Seven," the satraps and commandants in the provinces.—5. σφειων: Att. αὐτῶν.—συνελέχθησαν: in Hdt. more common than συνελέγησαν, in Att. the reverse.

a. 1. οὔτε . . . τε: common correlation in Hdt. = οὐκ . . . ἀλλά.—2. κατηγήσομαι τιθεὶς: *lead the way in introducing*. νόμον τιθεῖναι, of a law proposed by a law-giver; νόμον τίθεσθαι of one decreed by the people. The custom in question is indirectly communicated in what follows.—4. οὐδαμὰ κω: = Att. οὐπόποτε.

—ἡτρεμίσαμεν: aor. ingressive. —ἐπεῖτε: Att. ἐπεί.—5. Κύρου κατελόντος Ἀστυάγεα: Cyrus overthrew Astyages, King of the Medes, at Pasargadae 559 B.C.—6. θεὸς οὕτω ἄγει: cp. Xen. *Anab.* 6. 3. 18 ὁ θεὸς ἴσως ἄγει οὕτως.—7. πολλὰ ἐπέπονσι: *engaged in many undertakings*. The verb is poetical. Cp. Hom. ξ 195; Aesch. *Pers.* 552.—συμφέρεται: *it happens*. Cp. συνήνκει 7. 4. 4. Att. uses the active.—8. τά: rel., with ἔθνεα.—9. κατεργάσαντο: = ἐδουλώσαντο, as 7. 211. 4.—11. τὸν θρόνον: so freq. in tragedy, but in plur.—ὅπως μὴ λείψομαι: more vivid than the more usual aor. subjv. Cp. 7. 18. 20.—12. τιμῇ: βασιλείᾳ.—

προσκτήσομαι δύναμιν Πέρσησι · φροντίζων δὲ εὐρίσκω  
 ἅμα μὲν κῦδος ἡμῖν προσγινόμενον χώραν τε τῆς νῦν  
 ἐκτίμεθα οὐκ ἐλάσσονα οὐδὲ φλαυροτέρην παμφορ- 15  
 τέρην τε, ἅμα δὲ τιμωρίην τε καὶ τίσιν γινομένην. διὸ  
 ὑμέας νῦν ἐγὼ συνέλεξα, ἵνα τὸ νοέω πρήσσειν ὑπερ-  
 βθέωμαι ὑμῖν. μέλλω ζεύξας τὸν Ἑλλησποντον ἐλᾶν  
 στρατὸν διὰ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἵνα Ἀθη-  
 ναίους τιμωρήσωμαι ὅσα δὴ πεποιήκασι Πέρσας τε καὶ  
 πατέρα τὸν ἐμόν. ὠρᾶτε μὲν νυν καὶ Δαρεῖον ἰθύοντα  
 στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν τετε- 5  
 λεύτηκε καὶ οὐκ ἐξεγένετό οἱ τιμωρήσασθαι · ἐγὼ δὲ  
 ὑπὲρ τε ἐκείνου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων οὐ πρότερον  
 παύσομαι πρὶν ἢ ἔλω τε καὶ πυρώσω τὰς Ἀθήνας, οἳ  
 γε ἐμὲ καὶ πατέρα τὸν ἐμόν ὑπήρξαν ἄδικα ποιέοντες.  
 πρῶτα μὲν ἐς Σάρδις ἐλθόντες ἅμα Ἀρισταγόρῃ τῷ 10  
 Μιλησίῳ, δούλῳ δὲ ἡμετέρῳ, [ἀπικόμενοι] ἐνέπρησαν

14. κῦδος: epic word for *τιμή*.  
 — προσγινόμενον, (16) γινομένην:  
 note the pres., indicating the self-  
 assurance of Xerxes. — τῆς: rel.  
 dependent on the following compar-  
 atives. — 15. ἐκτίμεθα: Att. *κεκ-*  
*τήμεθα*. — 17. ὑπερθέωμαι: *set be-*  
*fore* for deliberation, as 7. 18. 22.  
 The Att. term is *ἀνακοινοῦσθαι*.

β 1. ἐλᾶν στρατὸν: Att. *εἰλάν-*  
*νειν* intr. — 3. ὅσα δὴ: we should  
 expect *τούτων ὅσα* or *ὅσων*. *δὴ*  
 stresses the idea of number. —  
 4. ἰθύοντα: Att. *ὀρμώμενον*. —  
 6. καὶ οὐκ ἐξεγένετό οἱ. Cp. οὐδέ οἱ  
 ἐξεγένετο 7. 4. 6. — 8. πρὶν ἢ: =

Att. *πρὶν ἂν*, which Hdt. also uses.  
 — πυρώσω: = *ἐμπρήσω*. Cp. 8.  
 102. 17; Eur. *Phoen.* 575. — οἳ:  
 construction acc. to sense. See on  
*ἐκάστοισι* 7. 1. 8. — 9. ὑπήρξαν . . .  
*ποιέοντες*: *began to do*. Cp. 6. 133.  
 3. — 10. πρῶτα μὲν: note the asyn-  
 deton. — ἅμα Ἀρισταγόρῃ: son-  
 in-law of Histiaeus, tyrant of Mile-  
 tus, and governor in his absence;  
 active instigator of revolt among  
 the Ionian cities (5. 30 ff.). He  
 was the soul and organizer of,  
 though not a participator in, this  
 expedition. Cp. 5. 99. — 11. δούλῳ  
 δέ: second appos. designation,

τά τε ἄλσεα καὶ τὰ ἱρά· δεύτερα δὲ ἡμέας οἶα ἔρξαν  
 ἐς τὴν σφετέρην ἀποβάντας, ὅτε Δατίς τε καὶ Ἄρτα-  
 γφρένης ἐστρατήγεον, ἐπίστασθέ κου πάντες. τούτων  
 μέντοι εἵνεκα ἀνάρτημαι ἐπ' αὐτοὺς στρατεύεσθαι,  
 ἀγαθὰ δὲ ἐν αὐτοῖσι τοσάδε ἀνευρίσκω λογιζόμενος·  
 εἰ τούτους τε καὶ τοὺς τούτοισι πλησιοχώρους κατα-  
 στρεψόμεθα, οἱ Πέλοπος τοῦ Φρυγὸς νέμονται χώραν, 5  
 γῆν τὴν Περσίδα ἀποδέξομεν τῷ Διὸς αἰθέρι ὁμουρέου-  
 σαν. οὐ γὰρ δὴ χώραν γε οὐδεμίαν κατόψεται ἥλιος  
 ὁμουρον ἐοῦσαν τῇ ἡμετέρῃ, ἀλλὰ σφεας πάσας ἐγὼ  
 ἅμα ὑμῖν μίαν χώραν θήσω, διὰ πάσης διεξελθὼν τῆς  
 Εὐρώπης. πυνθάνομαι γὰρ ὧδε ἔχειν, οὔτε τινὰ πόλιν 10  
 ἀνδρῶν οὐδεμίαν οὔτε ἔθνος οὐδὲν ἀνθρώπων ὑπολεί-  
 πεσθαι, τὸ ἡμῖν οἷόν τε ἔσται ἐλθεῖν ἐς μάχην, τούτων  
 τῶν κατέλεξα ὑπεξαραιρημένων. οὕτω οἱ τε ἡμῖν αἴτιοι

regularly with δέ. — [ἀπικόμενοι] : see App. — 12. *δεύτερα* : *secondly* ; freq. in Hdt., hardly in Att. without art. — *ἡμέας* : before οἶα for emphasis. — οἶα : exclam. rel. — ἔρξαν : as 5. 65. 22 ; poet. for ἔδρασαν.

γ 2. μέντοι : with the intensive force of μέν δή. — ἀνάρτημαι : c. inf. = παρεσκεύασμαι. — 3. ἐν αὐτοῖσι : therein, i.e. the expedition against Hellas. — 4. εἰ . . . καταστρεψόμεθα . . . ἀποδέξομεν : for cond., see S. 2328 ; GMT. 447. — 6. τῷ Διὸς αἰθέρι : = οὐρανῷ. Cp. I. 131. 7 τὸν κύκλον πάντα τοῦ οὐρανοῦ Δία καλέοντες (sc. οἱ Πέρσαι), and Hom. β 412 Ζεῦ αἰθέρι ναίων. Acc. to the conception of

the ancients οὐρανός was a hemisphere covering the earth, so that the circumference of the two coincided. — ὁμουρέουσιν : not Att. = ὁμορον οὔσαν. — 8. σφεας : of cities, as 7. 108. 10, of ships, 7. 194. 18, 7. 195. 4 ; μιν still more freq. of things in Hdt. — 10. τινὰ οὐδεμίαν : any at all. Cp. τι οὐδέν 8. 20. 2. — 11. ἀνδρῶν, ἀνθρώπων : for stylistic effect, without distinction. — 12. ἡμῖν : governed by ἐλθεῖν ἐς μάχην = μάχεσθαι. — 13. ὑπεξαραιρημένων : removed out of our way. — ἡμῖν αἴτιοι : cp. Hom. A 152 οὐ γὰρ ἐγὼ Τρώων ἔνεκ' ἥλυθον αἰχμητῶν Δεῦρο μαχηςόμενος, ἐπεὶ οὐ τί μοι αἰτιοί εἰσιν.

δ' ἐξουσι δούλιον ζυγὸν οἳ τε ἀναίτιοι. ὑμεῖς δ' ἂν μοι  
 τάδε ποιέοντες χαρίζοισθε. ἐπεὰν ὑμῖν σημήνῳ τὸν  
 χρόνον ἐς τὸν ἥκειν δεῖ, προθύμως πάντα τινὰ ὑμέων  
 χρήσει παρῆναι· ὃς ἂν δὲ ἔχων ἤκη παρεσκευασμένον  
 στρατὸν κάλλιστα, δώσω οἱ δῶρα τὰ τιμιώτατα νομί- 5  
 ζεται εἶναι ἐν ἡμετέρῳ. ποιητέα μὲν νυν ταῦτά ἐστι  
 οὕτω· ἵνα δὲ μὴ ἰδιοβουλεῖν ὑμῖν δοκέω, τίθημι τὸ  
 πρῆγμα ἐς μέσον, γνώμην κελεύων ὑμέων τὸν βουλό-  
 9 μενον ἀποφαίνεσθαι. ταῦτα εἶπας ἐπαύετο. μετ' αὐτὸν  
 δὲ Μαρδόνιος ἔλεγε· ὦ δέσποτα, οὐ μόνον εἰς τῶν  
 γενομένων Περσέων ἄριστος, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν ἐσομένων,  
 ὃς τά τε ἄλλα λέγων ἐπῖκεο ἄριστα καὶ ἀληθέστατα  
 καὶ Ἰωνας τοὺς ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ κατοικημένους οὐκ ἐάσεις 5  
 καταγελάσαι ἡμῖν ἔοντας ἀναξίους. καὶ γὰρ δεινὸν ἂν  
 εἶη πρῆγμα, εἰ Σάκας μὲν καὶ Ἰνδοὺς καὶ Αἰθιοπὰς τε

— 14. δούλιον ζυγόν: cp. Aesch. *Pers.* 50 ζυγὸν ἀμφιβαλεῖν δούλιον Ἑλλάδι. — οἳ τε ἀναίτιοι: rhetorical addition, merely for the sake of contrast. Cp. 6. 67. 13, 8. 68. γ 5.

δ 4. χρήσει: Att. χρήσεται. — ὃς ἂν δέ: unusual order, as I. 138. 5. Cp. ὃς ἂν μὲν 3. 72. 25. — 5. οἳ: Homeric for αὐτῶ or τούτῳ. — δῶρα τὰ τιμιώτατα: cp. Xen. *Anab.* I. 2. 27. — 6. ἐν ἡμετέρῳ: as I. 35. 18; blending of two idioms, ἐν ἡμῶν and ἐν ἡμετέρῳ (οἴκῳ). — 7. ἰδιοβουλεῖν: = ἰδία βουλευεῖν. — 8. ἐς μέσον: *before you*. Cp. 6. 129. 7, 6. 130. 2. — 9. εἶπας: Att. εἰπών.

#### SPEECH OF MARDONIUS IN FAVOR OF THE EXPEDITION

9. 2. εἰς: Dial. § 4. 5. — τῶν γενομένων: including, as opp. to τῶν ἐσομένων, also those now living. — 4. ἐπῖκεο: sc. αὐτῶν, *hit the mark* (lit. *came at*; cp. the slang phrase, *got there*). — 5. καί: strictly we should have καὶ ὅτι after λέγων. — 5. Ἰωνας: written also Ἰάονας or Ἰάνας, common designation in the Orient for all Hellenes. — κατοικημένους: for κατοικοῦντας. — 6. καταγελάσαι: in Hdt. oftener with dat. for regular gen. — ἀναξίους: sc. τοῦ καταγελάσαι ἡμῖν. — 7. Σάκας: powerful nomadic tribes in the

καὶ Ἀσσυρίους ἄλλα τε ἔθνεα πολλὰ καὶ μεγάλα  
 ἀδικήσαντα Πέρσας οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ δύναμιν προσκτᾶσθαι  
 βουλόμενοι, καταστρεψάμενοι δούλους ἔχομεν, Ἑλλήνας<sup>10</sup>  
 δὲ ὑπάρξαντας ἀδικίης οὐ τιμωρησόμεθα. τί δέισαντες ;  
 κοίην πλήθεος συστροφὴν ; κοίην δὲ χρημάτων δύνα-  
 α μιν ; τῶν ἐπιστάμεθα μὲν τὴν μάχην, ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ  
 τὴν δύναμιν ἐοῦσαν ἀσθενέα· ἔχομεν δὲ αὐτῶν παῖδας  
 καταστρεψάμενοι, τούτους οἱ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρῃ κατοικη-  
 μένοι Ἰωνές τε καὶ Αἰολεῖς καὶ Δωριεῖς καλέονται.  
 ἐπειρήθην δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἤδη ἐπελαύνων ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας<sup>5</sup>  
 τούτους ὑπὸ πατρὸς τοῦ σοῦ κελευσθείς, καί μοι μέχρι  
 Μακεδονίης ἐλάσαντι καὶ ὀλίγον ἀπολιπόντι ἐς αὐτὰς  
 β Ἀθήνας ἀπικέσθαι οὐδεὶς ἠντιώθη ἐς μάχην. καίτοι

northeast of Baktrianā. — 10. κατα-  
 στρεψάμενοι ἔχομεν: periphr. pf.  
 esp. common in Hdt. and tragedy,  
 but occurring even in Att. prose.  
 S. 1963; GMT. 47; GS. 295. Cp.  
 Dem. Phil. 1.6 πάντα κατέστραπται  
 καὶ ἔχει. — 11. ὑπάρξαντας ἀδικίης:  
*began wrongdoing*, as 4. 1. 6. —  
 οὐ τιμωρησόμεθα: in *ei*-clauses  
 after verbs of emotion οὐ some-  
 times occurs for more common μή.  
 S. 2701; GMT. 386. — τί δέισαν-  
 τες; κτί.: rhetorical questions ex-  
 pressing energy and vividness. —  
 12. πλήθεος συστροφὴν: *multitudi-  
 nous mass*. Cp. Aesch. Pers. 235  
 ἀνδροπλήθεια στρατοῦ. — χρημά-  
 των δύναμις: as Thuc. 1. 25. 17.  
 One is reminded of Eng. slang,  
 "a power of money." Cp. δύναμις  
 ἀνδρῶν 5. 100. 8, 5. 113. 3, 7. 153.

13. It is characteristic of the Per-  
 sian to think victory dependent  
 alone on men and money.

α 1. ἐπιστάμεθα μὲν . . . ἐπι-  
 στάμεθα δέ: note the anaphora, as  
 7. 18. 9, 10. — μάχην: *manner of  
 fighting*, as 7. 85. 8. — 2. ἔχομεν  
 δέ: Homeric coördination, *for*,  
 since the clause gives the basis  
 for the preceding assertion. —  
 παῖδας: *descendants*, as 3. 19. 8. —  
 3. τούτους οἱ: as 7. 111. 6. —  
 5. ἐπειρήθην ἐπελαύνων: *πειρώμαι*  
 with suppl. ptc. freq. in Hdt. and  
 occurring even in Att. S. 2102;  
 GMT. 896, 897. — 7. ὀλίγον ἀπολι-  
 πόντι: more freq. ὀλίγου δεήσαντι,  
 as 7. 10. γ 3. Cp. Thuc. 7. 70. 24  
 βραχὺ γὰρ ἀπέλιπον ξυναμφοτέρα  
 διακόσαι γενέσθαι. — 8. ἠντιώθη:  
 Att. ἠναντιώθη.



[γε] ἐώθασι Ἕλληνες, ὥς πυνθάνομαι, ἀβουλότατα πολέμους ἴστασθαι ὑπὸ τε ἀγνωμοσύνης καὶ σκαιότητος. ἐπεὰν γὰρ ἀλλήλοισι πόλεμον προείπωσι, ἐξερύοντες τὸ κάλλιστον χωρίον καὶ λειότατον, ἐς τοῦτο 5 κατιόντες μάχονται, ὥστε σὺν κακῷ μεγάλῳ οἱ νικῶντες ἀπαλλάσσονται· περὶ δὲ τῶν ἐσσομένων οὐδὲ λέγω ἀρχήν, ἐξώλεις γὰρ δὴ γίνονται. τοὺς χρῆν, ἐόντας ὁμογλώσσους, κήρυξί τε διαχρεωμένους καὶ ἀγγέλοισι καταλαμβάνειν τὰς διαφορὰς καὶ παντὶ μᾶλλον ἢ 10 μάχησι· εἰ δὲ πάντως ἔδει πολεμεῖν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἐξευρίσκειν χρῆν τῇ ἐκάτεροί εἰσι δυσχειρωτότατοι καὶ ταύτῃ πειρᾶν. τρόπῳ τοίνυν οὐ χρηστῷ Ἕλληνες διαχρεώμενοι ἐμέο ἐλάσαντος μέχρι Μακεδονίης οὐκ ἦλθον γ ἐς τοῦτου λόγον ὥστε μάχεσθαι. σοὶ δὲ δὴ μέλλει τις, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἀντιώσεσθαι πόλεμον προφέρων, ἄγοντι καὶ πλῆθος τὸ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας καὶ νέας τὰς ἀπάσας; ὥς μὲν ἐγὼ δοκέω, οὐκ ἐς τοῦτο θράσεος ἀνήκει τὰ Ἑλλη-

β 3. πολέμους ἴστασθαι: *to wage wars*, as 7. 175. 3, 7. 236. 19. Cp. Hom. ι 54 *στησάμενοι δ' ἐμάχοντο μάχην*. — 7. τῶν ἐσσομένων: τῶν ἡττωμένων. — οὐδὲ ἀρχήν: *ne omnino quidem*. ἀρχήν originally adv. acc. — 8. τοὺς χρῆν: for χρῆν with inf. see GMT. 415 ff. τοὺς is rel. — 10. καταλαμβάνειν: *to settle*. — 12. ἐκάτεροι: subj. in dependent clause instead of subj. acc. of ἐξευρίσκειν as we should expect. The sense of the passage is, then, *that each should discover where he is hardest to subdue*.

— 13. πειρᾶν: *sc. ἀλλήλων*. Cp. Hom. Φ 580 οὐκ ἔθελεν φεύγειν πρὶν πειρήσαιτ' Ἀχιλλῆος. Hdt. uses both act. and mid. in this sense. — 15. ἐς τοῦτου λόγον ὥστε μάχεσθαι: *to a thought* (lit. 'mention') of this, namely *to fight*.

γ 2. πόλεμον προφέρων: Att. ἐπιφέρων. Cp. *bellum inferre*. — ἄγοντι . . . ἀπάσας: the attributives ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας and ἀπάσας, belonging to both objects, are distributed, for the sake of balance, one to each clause. — 4. ἐς τοῦτο θράσεος: gen. of degree. —

νων πρήγματα · εἰ δὲ ἄρα ἐγὼ τε ψευσθείην γνώμη καὶ 5  
ἐκεῖνοι ἐπαερθέντες ἀβουλίῃ ἔλθοιεν ἡμῖν ἐς μάχην,  
μάθοιεν ἂν ὥς εἰμεν ἀνθρώπων ἀριστοὶ τὰ πολέμια.  
ἔστω δ' ὦν μηδὲν ἀπείρητον · αὐτόματον γὰρ οὐδέν,  
ἀλλ' ἀπὸ πείρης πάντα ἀνθρώποισι φιλεῖ γίνεσθαι.

10 Μαρδόνιος μὲν τοσαῦτα ἐπιλεήνας τὴν Ξέρξεω γνώ-  
μην ἐπέπαντο · σιωπῶτων δὲ τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων καὶ  
οὐ τολμώντων γνώμην ἀποδείκνυσθαι ἀντίην τῇ προ-  
κειμένῃ, Ἀρτάβανος ὁ Ὑστάσπεος, πάτρως ἑὼν Ξέρξῃ,  
α τῷ δὴ καὶ πίσυνος ἑὼν ἔλεγε τάδε · Ὁ βασιλεῦ, μὴ  
λεχθειςέων μὲν γνωμέων ἀντιέων ἀλλήλησι οὐκ ἔστι  
τὴν ἀμείνω αἰρεόμενον ἐλέσθαι, ἀλλὰ δεῖ τῇ εἰρημέῃ  
χρηῆσθαι, λεχθειςέων δὲ ἔστι, ὥσπερ τὸν χρυσὸν τὸν  
ἀκήρατον αὐτὸν μὲν ἐπ' ἑωντοῦ οὐ διαγινώσκομεν, ἐπεὰν 5  
δὲ παρατρίψωμεν ἄλλῳ χρυσῷ, διαγινώσκομεν τὸν  
ἀμείνω. ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ πατρὶ τῷ σῷ, ἀδελφεῷ δὲ ἐμῷ,

5. εἰ δὲ ἄρα: *but if indeed*. — ψευ-  
σθείην γνώμη: for more usual gen.  
Cp. 8. 40. 8. — 6. ἡμῖν: const. same  
as with μάχεσθαι. — 7. εἰμεν: Dial.  
§ 4. 5. — 8. δ' ὦν: *at any rate*. —  
9. φιλεῖ: *is wont*, lit. *loves*, attribut-  
ing will or choice, as often in Hdt.,  
to inanimate things. Cp. ἐθέλει  
7. 50. 21.

#### ARTABANUS OPPOSES THE EXPE- DITION

10. 1. ἐπιλεήνας: *smoothed over*,  
*i.e.* made more acceptable. The  
simple verb in exactly this sense 8.  
142. 21. — 3. ἀντίην: for ἐναντίην.

— 5. τῷ . . . ἑὼν: *upon which*  
*indeed also being reliant*. ἔλεγε  
pred. also to rel. clause.

α 3. αἰρεόμενον ἐλέσθαι: note  
the picturesque fullness of expres-  
sion. — 4. ἔστι: *sc.* τὴν ἀμείνω  
ἐλέσθαι. — 5. αὐτὸν ἐπ' ἑωντοῦ:  
*itself by itself*, common juxtapo-  
sition for emphasis. — ἐπεὰν δὲ  
. . . χρυσῷ: *sc.* ἐν βασάνῳ, *when*  
*we rub it* (on the touchstone) *be-*  
*side other gold*. The βᾶσανος, or  
λίθος Λυδῆς, when rubbed with  
fine gold, showed a red mark, with  
adulterated gold a dark streak. —  
7. ἀδελφεῷ δέ: see on 7. 8. β 11.

Δαρείῳ ἡγόρευον μὴ στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ Σκύθας, ἄνδρας οὐδαμῶθι γῆς ἄστν νέμοντας· ὁ δὲ ἐλπίζων Σκύθας τοὺς νομάδας καταστρέψεσθαι ἐμοί τε οὐκ ἐπειθέτο, 10 στρατευσάμενός τε πολλοὺς καὶ ἀγαθοὺς τῆς στρατιῆς ἀποβαλὼν ἀπῆλθε. σὺν δέ, ὦ βασιλεῦ, μέλλεις ἐπ' ἄνδρας στρατεύεσθαι πολλὸν ἔτι ἀμείνονας ἢ Σκύθας, οἱ κατὰ θάλασσαν τε ἄριστοι καὶ κατὰ γῆν λέγονται εἶναι. τὸ δὲ αὐτοῖσι ἔνεστι δεινόν, ἐμὲ σοὶ δίκαιόν 15 βέστι φράζειν. ζεύξας φῆς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἔλᾶν στρατὸν διὰ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. καὶ δὴ καὶ συνήνεκε ἦτοι κατὰ γῆν ἢ καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐσσωθῆναι, ἢ καὶ κατ' ἀμφότερα· οἱ γὰρ ἄνδρες λέγονται εἶναι αἰκμοι, πάρεστι δὲ καὶ σταθμώσασθαι, εἰ στρατιὴν γε 5 τοσαύτην σὺν Δάτι καὶ Ἀρταφρένι ἐλθοῦσαν ἐς τὴν Ἀττικὴν χώραν μῦνοι Ἀθηναῖοι διέφθειραν. οὐκ ὦν ἀμφοτέρῃ σφί ἐχώρησε· ἀλλ' ἦν τῇσι νηυσὶ ἐμβάλωσι καὶ νικήσαντες ναυμαχίῃ πλέωσι ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ ἔπειτα λύσωσι τὴν γέφυραν, τοῦτο δὴ, βασιλεῦ, 10 γ γίνεται δεινόν. ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδεμιῇ σοφίῃ οἰκνίῃ αὐτὸς ταῦτα συμβάλλομαι, ἀλλ' οἷόν κοτε ἡμέας ὀλίγου

— 9. οὐδαμῶθι γῆς: for const., see HA. 757. — 10. ἐμοί τε οὐκ . . . τε: οὐκ to be construed closely with ἐπειθέτο (*disobeyed*); the usual order is οὕτε . . . τε. — 15. αὐτοῖσι: cp. 7. 8. γ 2.

β 2. καὶ δὴ καὶ συνήνεκε: *and supposing now it has actually happened*. — 5. πάρεστι: = ἔξεστι. — σταθμώσασθαι: *to weigh, i.e. to decide*. — εἰ γε: *since indeed*.

— 7. οὐκ ὦν . . . ἐχώρησε: *suppose then they did not succeed on both (land and sea)*. The tense as in συνήνεκε. — 8. ἀλλ' ἦν τῇσι νηυσὶ ἐμβάλωσι: *but if they attack our ships*. Note change of const. of supposed case stated as a fact to regular supposition.

γ 2. ἀλλ' οἷόν κοτε: supply ἀλλὰ (συμβάλλομαι τοιούτῳ πάθει) οἷόν κοτε. — ὀλίγου ἰδέσθαι: cp.

ἐδέησε καταλαβεῖν πάθος, ὅτε πατήρ σὸς ζεύξας Βόσπορον τὸν Θρήκιον, γεφυρώσας δὲ ποταμὸν Ἰστρον διέβη ἐπὶ Σκύθας. τότε παντοῖοι ἐγένοντο Σκύθαι δεό-  
μενοι Ἰώνων λῦσαι τὸν πόρον, τοῖσι ἐπετέτραπτο ἡ φυλακὴ τῶν γεφυρέων τοῦ Ἰστροῦ. καὶ τότε γε Ἰστιαῖος ὁ Μιλήτου τύραννος εἰ ἐπέσπετο τῶν ἄλλων τυράννων τῇ γνώμῃ μηδὲ ἡντιώθη, διέργαστο ἂν τὰ Περσέων πρήγματα. καίτοι καὶ λόγῳ ἀκοῦσαι δεινόν, <sup>10</sup> ἐπ' ἀνδρί γε ἐνὶ πάντα τὰ βασιλέος πρήγματα γεγενῆ-  
σθαι. σὺ δὲ μὴ βούλεο ἐς κίνδυνον μηδένα τοιοῦτον ἀπικέσθαι μηδεμιᾶς ἀνάγκης ἐούσης, ἀλλὰ ἐμοὶ πείθεο· νῦν μὲν τὸν σύλλογον τόνδε διάλυσον· αὐτὶς δέ, ὅταν τοι δοκῇ, προσκεψάμενος ἐπὶ σεωντοῦ προαγόρευε τά τοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ἄριστα. τὸ γὰρ εὖ βουλευέσθαι κέρδος <sup>5</sup> μέγιστον εὐρίσκω ἐόν· εἰ γὰρ καὶ ἐναντιωθῆναί τι θέλει, βεβούλευται μὲν οὐδὲν ἥσσον εὖ, ἔσσωται δὲ ὑπὸ τῆς τύχης τὸ βούλευμα· ὁ δὲ βουλευσάμενος αἰσχυρῶς, εἴ οἱ ἡ τύχη ἐπίσποιτο, εὖρημα εὖρηκε, ἥσσον δὲ <sup>ε</sup> οὐδέν οἱ κακῶς βεβούλευται. ὁρᾷς τὰ ὑπερέχοντα ζῶα

ὀλίγον ἀπολιπόντι 7. 9. α 8. — 3. *ὅτε πατήρ σὸς κτί.*: the expedition of Darius against the Scythians occurred 515 B.C. — 5. *παντοῖοι ἐγένοντο δεόμενοι*: *used every means in begging*. Cp. *παντοίῃ ἐγίνετο μὴ ἀποδημῆσαι* 3. 124. 6; *παντοῖοι τελέθοντες* Hom. ρ 486. On the matter, see 4. 136 ff. — 8. *Ἰστιαῖος*: note the emphatic position before *εἰ*. — 9. *διέργαστο*: as 7. 224. 3. *διεργάζεσθαι* = *διαφθείρειν*.

Cp. *διαχρᾶσθαι* I. 24. 12; *καταχρᾶσθαι* I. 82. 42. — II. *ἐπ' ἀνδρί γε ἐνὶ . . . γεγενῆσθαι*: *were in the power of one man*.

8 3. *αὐτὶς*: Att. *αὐθὺς*, *later*. — 4. *ἐπὶ σεωντοῦ*: see on α. 5. — 7. *θέλει*: *is inclined*, i.e. *is likely* (= *μέλλει*). — 9. *εὖρημα εὖρηκε*: *figura etymologica*, as 8. 109. 10.

ε 1. *τὰ ὑπερέχοντα ζῶα*: *over-towering* (i.e. *haughty*) *creatures*,

ὥς κεραυνοὶ ὁ θεὸς οὐδὲ ἐὰ φαντάζεσθαι, τὰ δὲ σμικρὰ οὐδέν μιν κνίζει· ὁρᾷς δὲ ὡς ἐς οἰκήματα τὰ μέγιστα αἰεὶ καὶ δένδρεα τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀποσκήπτει τὰ βέλεα. φιλεῖ γὰρ ὁ θεὸς τὰ ὑπερέχοντα πάντα κολουεῖν. οὕτω δὲ καὶ στρατὸς πολλὸς ὑπὸ ὀλίγου διαφθείρεται κατὰ τοιόνδε· ἐπεὶ σφί ὁ θεὸς φθονήσας φόβον ἐμβάλλῃ ἢ βροντὴν, δι' ὧν ἐφθάρησαν ἀναξίως ἑωυτῶν. οὐ γὰρ ἐὰ φρονεῖν μέγα ὁ θεὸς ἄλλον ἢ ἑωυτόν. ἐπειχθῆναι μὲν νυν πᾶν πρῆγμα τίκτει σφάλματα, ἐκ τῶν ζημίαι μεγάλαι φιλέουσι γίνεσθαι· ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐπισχεῖν ἔνεστι ἀγαθὰ, εἰ μὴ παραντίκα δοκέοντα εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἀνὰ χρόνον ἐξεύηροι τις ἂν. σοὶ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα, ὦ βασιλεῦ, συμβουλεύω· σὺν δέ, ὦ παῖ Γωβρύεω [Μαρδόνιε], παῦσαι λέγων λόγους ματαίους περὶ Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἔόντων ἀξίων φλαύρως ἀκούειν. Ἕλληνας γὰρ διαβάλλων ἐπαίρεις αὐτὸν βασιλέα στρατεῦεσθαι· αὐτοῦ δὲ τούτου εἵνεκα δοκεῖς

proleptic. — 2. φαντάζεσθαι: *se ostentare*. — 3. κνίζει: *sting*, i.e. *vex*. Cp. 7. 12. 2. — 4. τὰ τοιαῦτα: i.e. τὰ μέγιστα. — ἀποσκήπτει: cp. 4. 79. 8 ἐς ταύτην ὁ θεὸς ἐνέσκηψε βέλος. — 5. φιλεῖ γὰρ . . . κολουεῖν: for the thought, cp. Hes. *W. and D.* 6 ῥεῖα δ' ἀρίζηλον μινύθει καὶ ἄδηλον ἀέξει, Hor. *Carm.* 1. 34. 12 *valet ima summis mutare et insignem attenuat deus, obscura promens*. — 6. κατὰ τοιόνδε: = ὥδε πως. — 7. σφί: *sc.* στρατιώταις, from στρατός. — φόβον: *panic*, as 7. 43. 10, 8. 38. 1. — 8. βροντὴν: here *thunderstorm*. Cp. 8. 37. 15

ἐν τούτῳ ἐκ μὲν τοῦ οὐρανοῦ κεραυνοὶ αὐτοῖσι ἐνέπιπτον, and Hom. © 75-77. — δι' ὧν ἐφθάρησαν: *tnesis*; *gnomic aor.* Syn. § 7. 1.

§ 1. ἐπειχθῆναι πᾶν πρῆγμα: subj. of τίκτει. The verb = σπεῦσαι, opp. to ἐπισχεῖν. — μὲν νυν: see on 7. 7. 4. — 4. ἀλλ' . . . ἐξεύηροι τις ἂν: note change from ptc. to finite verb, and cp. 7. 6. 11. — ἀνὰ χρόνον: as 7. 153. 7, = χρόνῳ 7. 6. 3.

η 3. ματαίους: *vain*, i.e. contemptuous. Cp. 7. 15. 5. — 3. φλαύρως ἀκούειν: pass. of φ. λέγειν. — 4. αὐτόν: *in person*, as below, θ 3.

μοι πᾶσαν προθυμίην ἐκτείειν. μή νυν οὕτω γένηται. διαβολή γάρ ἐστι δεινότατον, ἐν τῇ δύο μὲν εἰσι οἱ ἀδικέοντες, εἰς δὲ ὁ ἀδικέομενος. ὁ μὲν γὰρ διαβάλλων ἀδικεῖ οὐ παρεόντος κατηγορέων, ὁ δὲ ἀδικεῖ ἀναπειθόμενος πρὶν ἢ ἀτρεκέως ἐκμάθῃ· ὁ δὲ δὴ ἀπεὼν τοῦ<sup>10</sup> λόγου τάδε ἐν αὐτοῖσι ἀδικεῖται, διαβληθεὶς τε ὑπὸ τοῦ  
 0 ἑτέρου καὶ νομισθεὶς πρὸς τοῦ ἑτέρου κακὸς εἶναι. ἀλλ' εἰ δὴ δεῖ γε πάντως ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους στρατεύεσθαι, φέρε, βασιλεὺς μὲν αὐτὸς ἐν ἡθεσι τοῖσι Περσέων μενέτω, ἡμέων δὲ ἀμφοτέρων παραβαλλομένων τὰ τέκνα στρατηλάτει αὐτὸς σὺ ἐπιλεξάμενός τε ἄνδρας τοὺς<sup>5</sup> ἐθέλεις καὶ λαβὼν στρατιὴν ὁκόσῃν τινὰ βούλει. καὶ ἣν μὲν τῇ σὺ λέγεις ἀναβαίνει βασιλεῖ τὰ πρήγματα, κτεινέσθων οἱ ἐμοὶ παῖδες, πρὸς δὲ αὐτοῖσι καὶ ἐγώ· ἣν δὲ τῇ ἐγὼ προλέγω, οἱ σοὶ ταῦτα πασχόντων, σὺν δέ σφι καὶ σύ, ἣν ἀπονοστήσης. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν ὑποδύ<sup>10</sup> νειν οὐκ ἐθέλησεις, σὺ δὲ πάντως στράτευμα ἀνάξεις

— 6. πᾶσαν προθυμίην ἐκτείνειν: unusual combination, after the analogy of the proverbial πάντα κάλῳν ἐκτείνειν (Plato *Prot.* 338), *stretch all sail*. Cp. 7. 6. 7 πᾶσαν προθυμίην παρεχόμενοι. — μή νυν: *ne igitur*; not Attic. — 10. πρὶν ἢ: see on 7. 8. β 8. — ἀτρεκέως: = σαφῶς, intensifying the idea of ἐκ in ἐκμάθῃ. — 11. τάδε: cognate acc. — 12. νομισθεὶς πρὸς τοῦ ἑτέρου: see on 7. 2. 11.

0 2. εἰ δὴ: *if indeed*. — 3. ἐν ἡθεσι: *in sedibus*. — 4. παραβαλλομένων: *staking (venturing at*

*play)*. Cp. Hom. I 322 αἰὲν ἐμὴν ψυχὴν παραβαλλόμενος, Thuc. 2. 44. 15 οἱ ἂν μὴ καὶ παῖδας ἐκ τοῦ ὁμοίου παραβαλλόμενοι κινδυνεύουσιν. — 6. τινά: *about, fere*. — 7. ἀναβαίνει: *eueniant* = ἀποβαίνειν 7. 234. 4, 8. 4. 4, 8. 68. β 2. — 10. ἀπονοστήσης: cp. Thuc. 7. 87. 26. Freq. in Hom. and Hdt. — 10. εἰ δὲ . . . οὐκ ἐθέλησεις: οὐ belongs to the single word, not to the prot. as a whole, S. 2696; GMT. 384. The cond. is minatory, S. 2328; GMT. 447. — 11. σὺ δέ: Homeric repetition of the subj. See on

ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀκούσεσθαι τινὰ φημι τῶν αὐτοῦ τῆδε ὑπολειπομένων Μαρδόνιον, μέγα τι κακὸν ἐξεργασάμενον Πέρσας, ὑπὸ κυνῶν τε καὶ ὀρνίθων διαφορεόμενον ἢ κου ἐν γῇ τῇ Ἀθηναίων ἢ σέ γε ἐν τῇ Λακεδαιμονίων, <sup>15</sup> εἰ μὴ ἄρα καὶ πρότερον κατ' ὁδόν, γνόντα ἐπ' οἷους ἄνδρας ἀναγινώσκεις στρατεύεσθαι βασιλέα.

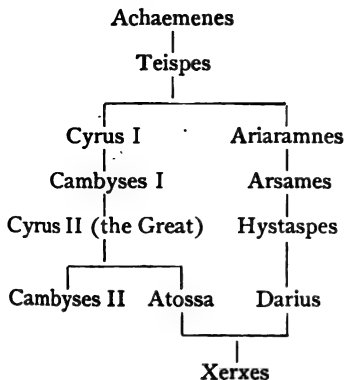
- 11 Ἀρτάβανος μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεξε, Ξέρξης δὲ θυμωθεὶς ἀμείβεται τοισίδε· Ἀρτάβανε, πατρὸς εἰς τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφεός· τοῦτό σε ῥύσεται μηδένα ἄξιον μισθὸν λαβεῖν ἐπέων ματαίων. καὶ τοι ταύτην τὴν ἀτιμίην προστίθῃμι ἐόντι κακῷ τε καὶ ἀθύμῳ, μήτε συστρατεύ- <sup>5</sup> εσθαι ἔμοιγε ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα αὐτοῦ τε μένειν ἅμα τῇσι γυναιξί· ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ ἄνευ σέο ὅσα περ εἶπα ἐπιτελέα ποιήσω. μὴ γὰρ εἶην ἐκ Δαρείου τοῦ Ὑστάσπεος τοῦ Ἀρσάμεος τοῦ Ἀριαράμνεω τοῦ Τείσπεος τοῦ Κύρου τοῦ Καμβύσεω τοῦ Τείσπεος τοῦ Ἀχαιμένεος <sup>10</sup>

ὁ δέ 7. 6. 24.—12. αὐτοῦ τῆδε: *right here*, as αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ 7. 42. 10, = Attic αὐτοῦ.—13. ἐξεργασάμενον: circumstantial ptc., as γνόντα (16), while διαφορεόμενον is supplementary.—14. ὑπὸ κυνῶν τε καὶ ὀρνίθων: an Hellenic sentiment, since the Persians esteemed that one happy whose body was soonest consumed by dogs and birds, Hdt. 1. 140.—15. σέ γε: Homeric repetition of the subj. with renewed apostrophe.—16. εἰ μὴ ἄρα: *nisi forte*.—γνόντα: *expertum*.—ἐπ' οἷους ἄνδρας κτλ.: the speaker returns to the main idea (a 13 f.).

#### ANGRY RETORT OF XERXES

11. 3. μηδένα: the neg. because ῥύσεται has the force of a verb of hindering.—4. καί: loosely tacking on the following clause, where in English the force must be “still.”—7. ἐπιτελέα ποιήσω: freq. Herodotean periphrasis for ἐπιτελῶ.—8. μὴ γὰρ εἶην ἐκ . . . γεγονώς: “for let me not have sprung from—.” Xerxes mingles here his ancestors of both paternal and maternal lines, as inscriptions show. Teispes, as ancestor in both lines, occurs twice. The genealogy is as follows;

γεγονώς, μὴ τιμωρησάμενος Ἀθηναίους, εὖ ἐπιστάμενος  
 ὅτι εἰ ἡμεῖς ἡσυχίην ἄξομεν, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐκείνοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ  
 μάλα στρατεύσονται ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν, εἰ χρή σταθμώ-  
 σασθαι τοῖσι ὑπαργμένοισι ἐξ ἐκείνων, οἱ Σάρδις τε  
 ἐνέπρησαν καὶ ἤλασαν ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην. οὐκ ὦν ἐξανα-<sup>15</sup>  
 χωρεῖν οὐδετέροισι δυνατῶς ἔχει, ἀλλὰ ποιεῖν ἢ παθεῖν  
 πρόκειται ἀγών, ἵνα ἡ τάδε πάντα ὑπὸ Ἑλλησι ἢ  
 ἐκείνα πάντα ὑπὸ Πέρσῃσι γένηται· τὸ γὰρ μέσον  
 οὐδὲν τῆς ἑχθρῆς ἐστί. καλὸν ὦν προπεπονθότας  
 ἡμέας τιμωρεῖν ἤδη γίνεται, ἵνα καὶ τὸ δεινὸν τὸ πείσο-<sup>20</sup>  
 μαι τοῦτο μάθω, ἐλάσας ἐπ' ἄνδρας τούτους, τοὺς γε



—12. εἰ . . . ἄξομεν: *monitory cond.* — ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐκείνοι: *yet will not they (sc. ἡσυχίην ἄξουσιν).* ἀλλὰ thus freq. in speeches. So in Homer (A 82 etc.). Cp. Xen. *Anab.* 2. 5. 19. — καὶ μάλα: *even very much, i.e. then especially.* — 14. τοῖσι ὑπαργμένοισι ἐξ ἐκείνων: *by what has been begun by them.*

The const. ἐκ = ὑπό c. pass. belongs mainly to Ionic and poetry (esp. tragedy), but is found sporadically in prose (Thuc., Xen.). — Σάρδις τε . . . Ἀσίην: reversing the natural order, as freq. in Homer (η 77). — 16. δυνατῶς ἔχει: *δυνατόν ἐστι.* — 17. πρόκειται ἀγών: *the contest is before us, i.e. the question is.* Cp. Hom. χ 65 νῦν ὑμῖν παράκειται ἐναντίον ἡ μάχεσθαι ἢ φεύγειν, Eur. Med. 235 κἂν τῷδ' ἀγὼν μέγιστος ἢ κακὸν λαβεῖν ἢ χρηστόν. — 18. τὸ γὰρ μέσον τῆς ἑχθρῆς: *middle ground of our enmity.* — 19. καλόν: pred. with γίνεται. — 20. τὸ δεινὸν . . . τοῦτο: *epanaleptic dem. with scornful reference to 7. 10. β 10.* — 21. ἄνδρας τούτους: note omission of the art. τούτους gets from position and context the force of τοιούτους. Cp. 2. 135. 13, 7. 102. 3. — τοὺς γε: *whom*



καὶ Πέλοψ ὁ Φρύξ, ἐὼν πατέρων τῶν ἐμῶν δούλος, κατεστρέψατο οὕτω ὥς καὶ ἐς τόδε αὐτοὶ τε ὠνθρωποι καὶ ἡ γῇ αὐτῶν ἐπάνυμοι τοῦ καταστρεψαμένου καλέονται.

- 12 Ταῦτα μὲν ἐπὶ τοσοῦτο ἐλέγετο, μετὰ δὲ εὐφρόνη τε ἐγίνετο καὶ Ξέρξην ἔκνιζε ἡ Ἀρταβάνου γνώμη· νυκτὶ δὲ βουλὴν διδοὺς πάγχυ εὕρισκέ οἱ οὐ πρῆγμα εἶναι στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. δεδογμένων δέ οἱ αὖτις τούτων κατύπνωσε, καὶ δὴ κου ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ εἶδε, ὅψιν τοιήνδε, ὥς λέγεται ὑπὸ Περσέων· ἐδόκει ὁ Ξέρξης

certainly. — 22. ὁ Φρύξ: as 7. 8. γ 5: more strictly ὁ Λυδός: but the confusion is common, esp. among the poets. — πατέρων τῶν ἐμῶν δούλος: claim based on the mythic descent of the Achæmenidae from Perseus and Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus and niece of Ninus, which latter extended the Assyrian kingdom to the west coast of Asia Minor, and so over Phrygia and Lydia. Hence the Persian dynasty regarded itself as rightful heir of the Assyrian kingdom. — 23. ὥς: = ὥστε. — καὶ ἐς τόδε: even to this time. Cp. 7. 38. 12 ἐς τόδε ἡλικίης. — 24. Note the dactylic close, and cp. the complete hexameter 7. 178. 9.

#### XERXES' DREAMS AND CHANGE OF PLAN (CC. 12-15)

12. 1. εὐφρόνη: the kindly time, i.e. night, esp. in the poets and

Hdt. Cp. 7. 56. 3, 7. 188. 7, 8. 6. 9, 8. 12. 1, 8. 14. 12, 9. 37. 19, 9. 39. 4. Freq. also in Hippocrates. Is it a euphemism, or is night regarded really as "the kindly time" in hot climates? — τε . . . καὶ: note the paratactic arrangement, where the first clause should be subord. — 2. νυκτὶ δὲ βουλὴν διδοὺς: leaving counsel to the night. Cp. the proverb ἐν νυκτὶ βουλή, and the advice to Themistocles (Plut. Them. 26) νυκτὶ φωνήν, νυκτὶ βουλήν, νυκτὶ τὴν νίκην δίδου. καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα κοιμηθεὶς ὁ Θ. ὄναρ ἔδοξεν ἰδεῖν κτέ. — 3. πάγχυ . . . εἶναι: he found that it was not at all a matter for him. πάγχυ (= πάνυ) emphatically separated from οὐ . . . εἶναι. εὕρισκε with the inf. is rare. For the idiom πρῆγμα εἶναι, cp. 7. 130. 9. — 5. καὶ δὴ κου: and now perhaps. Hdt. does not vouch for

ἄνδρα οἱ ἐπιστάντα μέγαν τε καὶ εὐειδέα εἰπεῖν· Μετὰ δὴ βουλευέαι, ὧ Πέρσα, στράτευμα μὴ ἄγειν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, προείπας ἀλίζειν Πέρσας στρατόν; οὔτε ὧν μεταβουλευόμενος ποιεῖς εὖ, οὔτε ὁ συγγνωσόμενός τοι 10 πᾶρα· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ τῆς ἡμέρης ἐβουλευόσω ποιεῖν, 13 ταύτην ἴθι τῶν ὁδῶν. τὸν μὲν ταῦτα εἰπόντα ἐδόκει ὁ Ξέρξης ἀποπτᾶσθαι, ἡμέρης δὲ ἐπιλαμψάσης ὀνείρου μὲν τούτου λόγον οὐδένα ἐποιεῖτο, ὁ δὲ Περσέων συναλίσας τοὺς καὶ πρότερον συνέλεξε, ἔλεγέ σφι τάδε· Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, συγγνώμην μοι ἔχετε ὅτι ἀγχίστροφα 5 βουλευόμαι· φρενῶν τε γὰρ ἐς τὰ ἐμεινωτοῦ πρῶτα οὐκῶ ἀνήκω, καὶ οἱ παρηγορεόμενοι ἐκείνα ποιεῖν οὐδένα χρόνον μεο ἀπέχονται. ἀκούσαντι μέντοι μοι τῆς Ἀρταβάνου γνώμης παραντίκα μὲν ἢ νεότης ἐπέζεσε, ὥστε ἀεικέστερα ἀπορρῦσαι ἔπεα ἐς ἄνδρα πρε- 10

the story. — 7. ἄνδρα οἱ ἐπιστάντα: note the similarity to the dream that appeared to Agamemnon in Hom. B 20 ff. Cp. also Hom. ζ 21 ff. — μετὰ δὴ βουλευέαι . . . μὴ ἄγειν: *with change of plan then you determine not to lead*. μετὰ δὴ βουλευέαι is tmesis, for μετὰ has this force elsewhere only in composition. δὴ in indignant question, as 7. 17. 7. — 10. ὁ συγγνωσόμενος: *who will agree, consent*. — 11. πᾶρα: usually taken as = *πάρεστι*, as 1. 42. 4. Cp. μέτα = *μέτεστι* 7. 157. 12, ἐνι = *ἐνεστι* 7. 112. 6. Stein and others take πᾶρα = *πάρειμι*. — 12. τῶν ὁδῶν: part. gen. with ταύτην.

13. 2. ἀποπτᾶσθαι: cp. Hom. B 71 ὡς ὁ μὲν εἰπὼν ὥχετ' ἀποπτᾶμένος. — ἐπιλαμψάσης: = Att. ὑποφύειν. — ὀνείρου μὲν τούτου: note the omission of the article, as with τῇδε 7. 8. α 12. — 3. λόγον οὐδένα ἐποιεῖτο: *took no account*, freq. in Hdt. — 5. ἀγχίστροφα βουλευόμαι: *make a sudden change of plan*. Cp. Thuc. 2. 53. 3 ἀγχίστροφον τὴν μεταβολήν. ἀγχίστροφα is cognate acc. — 6. φρενῶν τε . . . ἀνήκω: *I am not yet come to my own prime of mental power*. Note φρενῶν outside of the regular attrib. position. — 9. ἐπέζεσε: *boiled over*. Cp. Ar Thesm. 467 οὐ θαυμάσιόν ἐστ' οὐδ' ἐπιζεῖν τὴν χαλὴν. —

σβύτερον ἢ χρεόν· νῦν μέντοι συγγνοὺς χρήσομαι τῇ ἐκείνου γνώμῃ. ὥς ὦν μεταδεδογμένον μοι μὴ στρα-  
 14 τεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἥσυχοι ἔστε. Πέρσαι μὲν ὥς ἤκουσαν ταῦτα, κεχαρηκότες προσεκύνεον· νυκτὸς δὲ γενομένης αὐτὶς τῶντ' ὄνειρον τῷ Ξέρξῃ κατυπνω-  
 μένῳ ἔλεγε ἐπιστάν· ὦ παῖ Δαρείου, καὶ δὴ φαίνεαι ἐν Πέρσῃσι τε ἀπειπάμενος τὴν στρατηλασίην καὶ τὰς  
 ἐμὰ ἔπεα ἐν οὐδενὶ ποιόμενος λόγῳ ὥς παρ' οὐδενὸς ἀκούσας. εὖ νυν τόδ' ἴσθι, ἣν περ μὴ αὐτίκα στρα-  
 τηλατῆς, τάδε τοι ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀνασχήσει· ὥς καὶ μέγας καὶ πολλὸς ἐγένεο ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ, οὕτω καὶ ταπεινὸς  
 15 ὀπίσω κατὰ τάχος ἔσειαι. Ξέρξης μὲν περιδεὴς γενόμενος τῇ ᾧσι ἀνά τε ἔδραμε ἐκ τῆς κοίτης καὶ πέμπει ἄγγελον [ἐπὶ] Ἀρτάβανον καλέοντα. ἀπικομένῳ δέ οἱ ἔλεγε Ξέρξης τάδε· Ἀρτάβανε, ἐγὼ τὸ παραντὶκα μὲν οὐκ ἐφρόνεον εἶπας ἐς σέ μάταια ἔπεα χρηστῆς εἵνεκα  
 συμβουλῆς· μετὰ μέντοι οὐ πολλὸν χρόνον μετέγων,

11. συγγνοὺς: *having come to the same mind with him.* — 12. ὥς ὦν μεταδεδογμένον: acc. abs. S. 2076; GMT. 851. — μὴ στρατεύεσθαι: see on 7. 12. 8.

14. 2. προσεκύνεον: *did obeisance to*, lit. 'kissed the earth before.' — 4. καὶ δὴ: *really then.* δὴ as in 7. 12. 8. — φαίνεαι ἀπειπάμενος: *you have openly renounced.* The const. as φανερός εἰ c. ptc. — 6. ἐν οὐδενὶ ποιόμενος λόγῳ: cp. λόγον οὐδένα ἐποιεῖτο 7. 13. 2. — παρ' οὐδενός: *from a nobody.* — 7. νυν: *igitur*, as in 7. 10. η 6. —

8. ἀνασχήσει: *will spring*, as 5. 106. 14. Cp. ἀναβλαστάνειν 3. 62. 18. — μέγας καὶ πολλός: Stein points out a probable parody of this passage in Ar. *Aves* 488 οὕτω δ' ἴσχυέ τε καὶ μέγας ἦν τότε καὶ πολὺς, as also allusions in vv. 552, 1127, 1130, 1145 of the same play to Hdt. 1. 179. 5, 1. 179. 12, 2. 127. 7, 2. 136. 24 respectively.

15. 2. ἀνά τε ἔδραμε: by the tmesis emphasis is put upon the prep. 3. καλέοντα: fut. — 4. τὸ παραντὶκα: *for the moment.* — 5. ἐφρόνεον: = ἐσωφρόνεον. — εἶπας ἔ

ἐγνων δὲ ταῦτά μοι ποιητέα ἔοντα τὰ σὺ ὑπεθήκω.  
οὐκ ὦν δυνατός τοί εἰμι ταῦτα βουλόμενος ποιεῖν·  
τετραμμένῳ γὰρ δὴ καὶ μετεγνῶκότη ἐπιφοιτέον ὄνειρον  
φαντάζεται μοι, οὐδαμῶς συνέπαινον ἔδον ποιεῖν με<sup>10</sup>  
ταῦτα· νῦν δὲ καὶ διαπειλήσαν οἴχεται. εἰ ὦν θεός  
ἐστί ὁ ἐπιπέμπων καὶ οἱ πάντως ἐν ἡδονῇ ἐστί γενέσθαι  
στρατηλασίην ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἐπιπτήσεται καὶ σοὶ  
τῶντὸ τοῦτο ὄνειρον, ὁμοίως καὶ ἐμοὶ ἐντελλόμενον.  
εὐρίσκω δὲ ὧδε ἂν γινόμενα ταῦτα, εἰ λάβοις τὴν ἐμὴν<sup>15</sup>  
σκευὴν πᾶσαν καὶ ἐνδὺς μετὰ τοῦτο ἰζοιο ἐς τὸν ἐμὸν  
θρόνον καὶ ἔπειτα ἐν κοίτῃ τῇ ἐμῇ κατυπνώσειας.  
16 Ξέρξης μὲν ταῦτά οἱ ἔλεγε, Ἀρτάβανος δὲ οὐ τῷ  
πρώτῳ οἱ κελεύσματι πειθόμενος, οἶα οὐκ ἀξιούμενος

σέ: rare const. Cp. 6. 69. 3, 6. 86.  
δ 3, 8. 26. 13.—7. ὑπεθήκω: as  
freq. in Hdt., for ὑπέθου.—8. ὦν:  
*however*.—10. φαντάζεται: = φαί-  
νεται.—συνέπαινον ἔδον: *consent-*  
*ing*, with dependent inf. clause.—  
12. ἐν ἡδονῇ ἐστί: as 4. 139. 8 =  
φίλον ἐστίν (1. 87. 21). Cp. Thuc.  
1. 99. 6, 3. 9. 4; Eur. *I. T.* 494.  
Hdt. has also πρὸς ἡδονὴν οἱ εἶναι  
3. 126. 13.—13. ἐπιπτήσεται: cp.  
ἀποπτάσθαι 7. 13. 1.—14. τοῦτο:  
note the dem. in attrib. position.  
HA. 673 c.—ὁμοίως καί: *like as*.  
—15. ὧδε: looks backward as  
well as forward in Hdt.—ἂν γινόμε-  
να: supplem. ptc. in indir. disc.  
after εὐρίσκω. S. 2113; GMT. 904.  
—τὴν ἐμὴν σκευὴν πᾶσαν: *my*  
*full dress*, which consisted of  
purple mantle, tunic and trousers,

saffron-colored shoes, upright tiara,  
with fillet of blue and white, golden  
girdle with pendent bejeweled  
short sword, gold earrings, collar,  
and bracelets. Note the rhetori-  
cal repetition of the poss. pron.

#### ARTABANUS' PHILOSOPHY OF DREAMS

16. 1. τῷ πρώτῳ οἱ κελεύσματι:  
for Att. τῷ πρώτῳ κελεύσματι  
αὐτοῦ, though the dat. implies *for*  
*him* as well as *of him*. This  
const. of dat. of pers. pron. as  
possessive is also Homeric.—2.  
οἶα: see on 7. 6. 2.—ἀξιούμενος:  
mid. = Att. ἀξιῶν, *deeming himself*  
*worthy*. Cp. 1. 199. 5. To seat  
oneself on the king's throne was  
deemed high treason and punish-  
able with death (Curtius 8. 4).

σβύτερον ἢ χρεόν· νῦν μέντοι συγγνοὺς χρήσομαι τῇ  
 ἐκείνου γνώμῃ. ὥς ὢν μεταδεδογμένον μοι μὴ στρα-  
 14 τεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἥσυχοι ἔστε. Πέρσαι μὲν  
 ὥς ἤκουσαν ταῦτα, κεχαρηκότες προσεκύνουν· νυκτὸς  
 δὲ γενομένης αὐτὶς τῶντ' ὄνειρον τῷ Ξέρξῃ κατυπνω-  
 μένῳ ἔλεγε ἐπιστάν· ὦ παῖ Δαρείου, καὶ δὴ φαίνεαι  
 ἐν Πέρσῃσί τε ἀπειπάμενος τὴν στρατηλασίην καὶ τὰς  
 ἐμὰ ἔπεα ἐν οὐδενὶ ποιούμενος λόγῳ ὥς παρ' οὐδενὸς  
 ἀκούσας. εὖ νυν τόδ' ἴσθι, ἣν περ μὴ αὐτίκα στρα-  
 τηλατῆς, τάδε τοι ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀνασχήσει· ὥς καὶ μέγας  
 καὶ πολλὸς ἐγένεο ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ, οὕτω καὶ ταπεινὸς  
 15 ὀπίσω κατὰ τάχος ἔσσει. Ξέρξης μὲν περιδεὴς γενό-  
 μενος τῇ ὄψι ἀνά τε ἔδραμε ἐκ τῆς κοίτης καὶ πέμπει  
 ἄγγελον [ἐπὶ] Ἀρτάβανον καλέοντα. ἀπικομένῳ δέ οἱ  
 ἔλεγε Ξέρξης τάδε· Ἀρτάβανε, ἐγὼ τὸ παραντίκα μὲν  
 οὐκ ἐφρόνεον εἰπας ἐς σὲ μάταια ἔπεα χρηστῆς εἵνεκα  
 συμβουλῆς· μετὰ μέντοι οὐ πολλὸν χρόνον μετέγνων,

11. συγγνοὺς: *having come to the same mind with him*. — 12. ὥς ὢν μεταδεδογμένον: acc. abs. S. 2076; GMT. 851. — μὴ στρατεύεσθαι: see on 7. 12. 8.

14. 2. προσεκύνουν: *did obeisance to*, lit. 'kissed the earth before.' — 4. καὶ δὴ: *really then*. δὴ as in 7. 12. 8. — φαίνεαι ἀπειπάμενος: *you have openly renounced*. The const. as φανερός εἰ c. ptc. — 6. ἐν οὐδενὶ ποιούμενος λόγῳ: cp. λόγον οὐδένα ἐποιεῖτο 7. 13. 2. — παρ' οὐδενός: *from a nobody*. — 7. νυν: *igitur*, as in 7. 10. η 6. —

8. ἀνασχήσει: *will spring*, as 5. 106. 14. Cp. ἀναβλαστάνειν 3. 62. 18. — μέγας καὶ πολλός: Stein points out a probable parody of this passage in Ar. *Aves* 488 οὕτω δ' ἰσχυέ τε καὶ μέγας ἦν τότε καὶ πολὺς, as also allusions in vv. 552, 1127, 1130, 1145 of the same play to Hdt. 1. 179. 5, 1. 179. 12, 2. 127. 7, 2. 136. 24 respectively.

15. 2. ἀνά τε ἔδραμε: by the tmesis emphasis is put upon the prep. 3. καλέοντα: fut. — 4. τὰ παραντίκα: *for the moment*. — 5. ἐφρόνεον: = ἐσωφρόνεον. — εἰπας ἐς

ἐγνων δὲ ταῦτά μοι ποιητέα ἔοντα τὰ σὺν ὑπεθήκῳ.  
οὐκ ὦν δυνατός τοί εἰμι ταῦτα βουλόμενος ποιεῖν·  
τετραμμένῳ γὰρ δὴ καὶ μετεγνῶκότη ἐπιφοιτέον ὄνειρον  
φαντάζεται μοι, οὐδαμῶς συνέπαινον ἔδον ποιεῖν με<sup>10</sup>  
ταῦτα· νῦν δὲ καὶ διαπειλήσαν οἴχεται. εἰ ὦν θεός  
ἔστι ὁ ἐπιπέμπων καὶ οἱ πάντως ἐν ἡδονῇ ἔστι γενέσθαι  
στρατηλασίην ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἐπιπτήσεται καὶ σοὶ  
τῶντὸ τοῦτο ὄνειρον, ὁμοίως καὶ ἐμοὶ ἐντελλόμενον.  
εὐρίσκω δὲ ὧδε ἂν γινόμενα ταῦτα, εἰ λάβοις τὴν ἐμὴν<sup>15</sup>  
σκευὴν πᾶσαν καὶ ἐνδὺς μετὰ τοῦτο ἰζοιο ἐς τὸν ἐμὸν  
θρόνον καὶ ἔπειτα ἐν κοίτῃ τῇ ἐμῇ κατυπνώσειας.  
16 Ξέρξης μὲν ταῦτά οἱ ἔλεγε, Ἀρτάβανος δὲ οὐ τῷ  
πρώτῳ οἱ κελεύσματι πειθόμενος, οἷα οὐκ ἀξιούμενος

σί: rare const. Cp. 6. 69. 3, 6. 86.  
δ 3, 8. 26. 13.—7. ὑπεθήκῳ: as  
freq. in Hdt., for ὑπέθου.—8. ὦν:  
*howeuer*.—10. φαντάζεται: = φαί-  
νεται.—συνέπαινον ἔδον: *consent-*  
*ing*, with dependent inf. clause.—  
12. ἐν ἡδονῇ ἔστι: as 4. 139. 8 =  
φίλον ἔστιν (1. 87. 21). Cp. Thuc.  
1. 99. 6, 3. 9. 4; Eur. *I. T.* 494.  
Hdt. has also πρὸς ἡδονὴν οἱ εἶναι  
3. 126. 13.—13. ἐπιπτήσεται: cp.  
ἀποπτάσθαι 7. 13. 1.—14. τοῦτο:  
note the dem. in attrib. position.  
HA. 673 c.—ὁμοίως καὶ: *like as*.  
—15. ὧδε: looks backward as  
well as forward in Hdt.—ἂν γινό-  
μενα: supplem. ptc. in indir. disc.  
after εὐρίσκω. S. 2113; GMT. 904.  
—τὴν ἐμὴν σκευὴν πᾶσαν: *my*  
*full dress*, which consisted of  
purple mantle, tunic and trousers,

saffron-colored shoes, upright tiara,  
with fillet of blue and white, golden  
girdle with pendent bejeweled  
short sword, gold earrings, collar,  
and bracelets. Note the rhetori-  
cal repetition of the poss. pron.

#### ARTABANUS' PHILOSOPHY OF DREAMS

16. 1. τῷ πρώτῳ οἱ κελεύσματι:  
for Att. τῷ πρώτῳ κελεύσματι  
αὐτοῦ, though the dat. implies *for*  
*him* as well as *of him*. This  
const. of dat. of pers. pron. as  
possessive is also Homeric.—2.  
οἷα: see on 7. 6. 2.—ἀξιούμενος:  
mid. = Att. ἀξιῶν, *deeming himself*  
*worthy*. Cp. 1. 199. 5. To seat  
oneself on the king's throne was  
deemed high treason and punish-  
able with death (Curtius 8. 4).

ἐς τὸν βασιλῆιον θρόνον ἵζεσθαι, τέλος ὡς ἠναγκάζεται α εἶπας τάδε ἐποίει τὸ κελευόμενον· Ἴσον ἐκείνο, ᾧ βασιλεῦ, παρ' ἐμοὶ κέκριται, φρονεῖν τε εὖ καὶ τῷ λέγοντι χρηστὰ ἐθέλειν πείθεσθαι· τὰ σέ καὶ ἀμφότερα περιήκοντα ἀνθρώπων κακῶν ὁμιλίας σφάλλουσι, κατὰ περ τὴν πάντων χρησιμωτάτην ἀνθρώποισι θάλασσαν πνεύ- 5 ματὰ φασὶ ἀνέμων ἐμπίπτοντα οὐ περιορᾶν φύσι τῇ ἐωυτῆς χρῆσθαι. ἐμέ δὲ ἀκούσαντα πρὸς σέο κακῶς οὐ τοσοῦτο ἔδακε λύπη, ὅσον γνωμῶν δύο προκειμένων Πέρσῃσι, τῆς μὲν ὕβριν αὐξανούσης, τῆς δὲ καταπαυούσης καὶ λεγούσης ὡς κακὸν εἶη διδάσκειν τὴν 10 ψυχὴν πλεόν τι δίζησθαι αἰεὶ ἔχειν τοῦ παρεόντος, τοιούτων προκειμένων γνωμῶν ὅτι τὴν σφαλερωτέρην β σεωντῷ τε καὶ Πέρσῃσι ἀναιρέο. νῦν ὦν, ἐπειδὴ τέ

α 1. Ἴσον: pred. to ἐκείνο, which looks to the following inf. clauses. — 2. παρ' ἐμοὶ: *meo iudicio*. — κέκριται: *it has been decided, it is judged*. — φρονεῖν τε . . . πείθεσθαι: for the maxim, cp. Hes. *Op.* 293; *Soph. Ant.* 720. — 3. τὰ ἀμφότερα: *both of which*. The rel. is obj. of περιήκοντα, and this agrees with σέ, which is obj. of σφάλλουσι. — περιήκοντα: *having attained*. Cp. 6. 86. α 10 τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα φαμέν τά τε ἄλλα πάντα περιήκειν τὰ πρῶτα. — 4. ἀνθρώπων κακῶν ὁμιλίας σφάλλουσι: cp. Aesch. *Pers.* 753 ταῦτά τοι κακοῖς ὁμιλῶν ἀνδράσιν διδάσκεται θούριος Ξέρξης, I Corinth. 15. 33 φθειρουνσιν ἤθη χρῆσθ' ὁμιλίας κακαί.

— κατὰ περ: = καθάπερ (ὥσπερ). — 5. πάντων . . . θάλασσαν: for the thought, cp. Solon, *frg.* 12 ἐξ ἀνέμων δὲ θάλασσα ταρασσεται· ἦν δέ τις αὐτὴν μὴ κινή, πάντων ἐστὶ δικαιοτάτη. — 6. οὐ περιορᾶν . . . χρῆσθαι: S. 2141; GMT. 903, 6. — 7. ἀκούσαντα κακῶς: pass. of κακῶς λέγειν. Cp. φλαυρῶς ἀκούειν 7. 10. η 3. — πρὸς σέο: see on 7. 2. 12. — 10. διδάσκειν . . . δίζησθαι . . . ἔχειν: three infs. dependent one on the other in the order of their occurrence. δίζησθαι = Att. ζητεῖν. — 12. τοιούτων . . . γνωμῶν: epanalepsis, or resumption, for the sake of clearness. — ὅτι: connect with ὅσον, *as because*. — 13. ἀναιρέο: unusual for the simple verb.

τραψαι ἐπὶ τὴν ἀμείνω, φῆς τοι μετιέντι τὸν ἐπ' Ἑλληνας  
 στόλον ἐπιφοιτᾶν ὄνειρον θεοῦ τινος πομπῇ, οὐκ ἐώντά  
 σε καταλύειν τὸν στόλον. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ ταῦτά ἐστι, ὦ  
 παῖ, θεΐα· ἐνύπνια γὰρ τὰ ἐς ἀνθρώπους πεπλανημένα 5  
 τοιαῦτά ἐστι οἷά σε ἐγὼ διδάξω, ἔτεσι σέο πολλοῖσι  
 πρεσβύτερος ἐών· πεπλανῆσθαι αὐται μάλιστα ἐώθασι  
 αἱ ὄψεις τῶν ὄνειράτων, τά τις ἡμέρης φροντίζει· ἡμεῖς  
 δὲ τὰς πρὸ τοῦ ἡμέρας ταύτην τὴν στρατηλασίην καὶ  
 γτὸ κάρτα εἶχομεν μετὰ χεῖρας. εἰ δὲ ἄρα μὴ ἐστι  
 τοῦτο τοιοῦτο οἷον ἐγὼ διαιρέω, ἀλλὰ τι τοῦ θείου μετέ-  
 χον, σὺ πᾶν αὐτὸ συλλαβὼν εἴρηκας· φανήτω γὰρ δὴ  
 καὶ ἐμοί, ὥς καὶ σοί, διακελευόμενον. φανῆναι δὲ  
 οὐδὲν μᾶλλον μοι ὀφείλει ἔχοντι τὴν σὴν ἐσθῆτα ἢ οὐ 5  
 καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν, οὐδέ τι μᾶλλον ἐν κοίτῃ τῇ σῇ ἀναπαυο-  
 μένῳ ἢ οὐ καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐμῇ, εἴ πέρ γε καὶ ἄλλως ἐθέλει

β 2. μετιέντι: conative. S. 1878; GMT. 25; GS. 192.—  
 3. θεοῦ πομπῇ: as Hom. Z 171, ε 32. Cp. θεΐη πομπῇ 1. 62. 15.—  
 οὐκ ἐώντα: *forbidding*. ὄνει-  
 ρον is here masc., though it was  
 neuter in 7. 15. 9. Cp. similar  
 change 1. 34. 4, 1. 39. 4.—4. οὐδὲ  
 ταῦτα . . . θεΐα: referring to θεοῦ  
 τινος πομπῇ.—5. πεπλανημένα:  
 gnomic pf. GMT. 154, 155; GS.  
 257.—7. αὐται: assimilated to the  
 gender of ὄψεις, though anteced.  
 of τά, *the thoughts which one has  
 by day, these are especially wont to  
 visit men in visions of dreams*.  
 Cp. Attius apud Cic. *de div.* 1. 45.  
 —9. πρὸ τοῦ: = τοῦτον, original

dem. sense.—καὶ τὸ κάρτα: =  
 καὶ πάνν.—10. μετὰ χεῖρας: rare  
 for ἐν χερσὶ (7. 5. 10). Also in  
 Thuc. 1. 138. 14; Xen. *Ages.* 2. 14.

γ 2. διαιρέω: *explain*, as 7.  
 103. 6; so mid. 7. 47. 3, 7. 50.  
 2.—3. συλλαβόν: *succinctly*. Cp.  
 3. 82. 24, and Eur. *Erechth.* frg.  
 20, 5 πολλὰ συλλαβὼν ἐρῶ.—  
 5. ἢ οὐ: so freq. after μᾶλλον in  
 neg. sent. (esp. οὐδὲν μᾶλλον) for  
 emphasis. Lit. *It ought no more  
 (just as little) to appear to me  
 when I have your garments, than  
 it ought not (to appear) when I  
 have my own*. Cp. 4. 118. 15,  
 5. 94. 14.—7. εἴ πέρ γε καὶ ἄλλως:  
*if indeed even at all*. Cp. εἰ ἄλλως



φανῆναι. οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐς τοσοῦτό γε εὐηθείης ἀνῆκει  
 τοῦτο, ὃ τι δὴ κοτέ ἐστι τὸ ἐπιφαινόμενόν τοι ἐν τῷ  
 ὕπνῳ, ὥστε δόξει ἐμὲ ὁρῶν σὲ εἶναι, τῇ σῇ ἐσθῆτι τεκ-  
 10 μαιρόμενον. εἰ δὲ ἐμὲ μὲν ἐν οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ποιήσεται  
 οὐδὲ ἀξιώσει ἐπιφανῆναι, οὔτε ἦν τὴν ἐμὴν ἐσθῆτα ἔχω  
 οὔτε ἦν τὴν σῇν, σὲ δὲ ἐπιφοιτήσει, τοῦτο ἤδη μαθητέον  
 ἔσται· εἰ γὰρ δὴ ἐπιφοιτήσει γε συνεχέως, φαίην ἂν  
 καὶ αὐτὸς θεῖον εἶναι. εἰ δέ τοι οὕτω δεδόκηται γίνεσθαι 15  
 καὶ οὐκ οἶά τε αὐτὸ παρατρέψαι, ἀλλ' ἤδη δεῖ ἐμὲ ἐν  
 κοίτῃ τῇ σῇ κατυπνῶσαι, φέρε, τούτων ἐξ ἐμέο ἐπιτε-  
 λεομένων φανήτω καὶ ἐμοί. μέχρι δὲ τούτου τῇ πα-  
 17 ρεούσῃ γνώμῃ χρῆσθαι. τοσαῦτα εἰπας Ἀρτάβανος,  
 ἐλπίζων Ξέρξην ἀποδέξειν λέγοντα οὐδέν, ἐποίει τὸ  
 κελευόμενον· ἐνδὺς δὲ τὴν Ξέρξεω ἐσθῆτα καὶ ἰζόμενος  
 ἐς τὸν βασιλῆιον θρόνον ὡς μετὰ ταῦτα κοῖτον ἐποιεῖτο,  
 ἦλθέ οἱ κατυπνωμένῳ τῶντ' ὄνειρον τὸ καὶ παρὰ Ξέρξην 5  
 ἐφοίτα, ὑπερστὰν δὲ τοῦ Ἀρταβάνου εἶπε τάδε· Ἄρα  
 σὺ δὴ κείνος εἰς ὃ ἀποσπεύδων Ξέρξην στρατεύεσθαι  
 ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ὡς δὴ κηδόμενος αὐτοῦ; ἀλλ' οὔτε ἐς

8. 30. 8.—8. ἐς τοσοῦτό γε εὐη-  
 θέιης: cp. ἐς τοῦτο 7. 9. γ 3.—  
 9. ὃ τι δὴ κοτέ ἐστι: *qualecunque*  
*est*.—11. εἰ: *whether*, hence οὐδενὶ  
 is allowable. GMT. 667, 5.—ἐν  
 οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ποιήσεται: as 7. 14. 5.  
 Cp. 7. 13. 2.—13. σὲ δὲ ἐπιφοιτή-  
 σει: note acc. here, dat. above.—  
 16. οὐκ οἶά τε: = *adynata*, i.e. οὐ be-  
 longs to the single word, not to the  
 prot.—17. φέρε: *well*, like Hom.  
 ἄγε.—ἐξ ἐμέο: see on 7. 11. 15.

THE DREAM VISITS ARTABANUS;  
 HE ASSENTS TO THE EXPEDI-  
 TION (CC. 17, 18)

17. 2. Ξέρξην . . . οὐδέν: *to*  
*show that Xerxes says nothing*,  
*i.e. is wrong*.—τὸ κελευόμενον:  
*impf. ptc. implying repetition*.—  
 4. κοῖτον ἐποίειτο: = *ἐκοιμάτο*.—  
 6. ὑπερστὰν: as Hom. B 20 στή  
 δ' ἄρ' ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς.—ἄρα σὺ  
 δὴ: *are you then*.—8. ὡς δὴ: *as*

τὸ μετέπειτα οὔτε ἐς τὸ παραντίκα νῦν καταπροῖξαι  
 ἀποτράπων τὸ χρεὼν γενέσθαι, Ξέρξην δὲ τὰ δεῖ ἀνη-  
 18 κουστέοντα παθεῖν, αὐτῷ ἐκείνῳ δεδήλωται. ταῦτά τε  
 δὴ ἐδόκει Ἀρτάβανος τὸ ὄνειρον ἀπειλεῖν καὶ θερμοῖσι  
 σιδηρίοισι ἐκκαίειν αὐτοῦ μέλλειν τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.  
 καὶ ὃς ἀμβώσας μέγα ἀναθρώσκει καὶ παριζόμενος  
 Ξέρξῃ, ὡς τὴν ὄψιν οἱ τοῦ ἐνυπνίου διεξῆλθε ἀπηγεό-  
 5 μενος, δεύτερά οἱ λέγει τάδε· Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ βασιλεῦ, οἶα  
 ἄνθρωπος ἰδὼν ἤδη πολλά τε καὶ μεγάλα πεσόντα  
 πρήγματα ὑπὸ ἡσσόνων, οὐκ ἔων σε τὰ πάντα τῇ  
 ἡλικίῃ εἴκειν, ἐπιστάμενος ὡς κακὸν εἴη τὸ πολλῶν  
 ἐπιθυμεῖν, μεμνημένος μὲν τὸν ἐπὶ Μασσαγέτας Κύρου 10  
 στόλον ὡς ἔπρηξε, μεμνημένος δὲ καὶ τὸν ἐπ' Αἰθίοπας  
 τὸν Καμβύσειω, συστρατευόμενος δὲ καὶ Δαρείῳ ἐπὶ  
 Σκύθας. ἐπιστάμενος ταῦτα γνώμην εἶχον ἀτρεμίζοντά  
 σε μακαριστὸν εἶναι πρὸς πάντων ἀνθρώπων. ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 δαιμονίη τις γίνεται ὁρμή, καὶ Ἕλληνας, ὡς οἴκε, φθορή 15  
 τις καταλαμβάνει θεήλατος, ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ αὐτὸς τρέπο-

*though*, ironical. — 9. νῦν: pleonastic after τὸ παραντίκα. — καταπροῖξαι: *get off free*. Colloquial form of threat. Only in fut. and with neg. Freq. in Hdt., not in Att. prose. — 10. τὸ χρεὼν γενέσθαι: *what is fated to be*.

18. 4. καὶ ὃς: dem. (= καὶ οὗτος), as freq. in Hom. and found in Xen. and Plato. — ἀμβώσας: for ἀναβώσας. — 6. δεύτερα: = ἔπειτα. Cp. ἐνθαῦτα in 21 below. — οἶα ἄνθρωπος ἰδὼν: as a

man who has seen. — 8. ὑπὸ ἡσσόνων: agent const. on account of pass. force of πεσόντα. — 10. τὸν ἐπὶ Μασσαγέτας . . . στόλον: proleptic acc. This expedition against the Massagetae occurred 529 B.C. — 11. τὸν ἐπ' Αἰθίοπας: cp. 3. 25 ff. — 12. συστρατευόμενος: the impf. ptc. is descriptive. For the matter, cp. 4. 1-4, 4. 83-144. — 14. πρὸς πάντων: see on 7. 2. 12. — 15. καὶ Ἕλληνας . . . θεήλατος: note the Sophoclean irony. θεήλατος is a

μαι καὶ τὴν γνώμην μετατίθεμαι, σὺ δὲ σήμηνον μὲν Πέρσησι τὰ ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ πεμπόμενα, χρῆσθαι δὲ κέλευε τοῖσι ἐκ σέο πρώτοισι προειρημένοισι ἐς τὴν παρασκευήν, ποίει δὲ οὕτω ὅκως τοῦ θεοῦ παραδιδόντος τῶν σῶν ἐνδεήσει μηδέν. τούτων λεχθέντων, ἐνθαῦτα ἐπαερθέντες τῇ ὄψι, ὥς ἡμέρη ἐγένετο τάχιστα, Ξέρξης τε ὑπερετίθετο ταῦτα Πέρσησι, καὶ Ἀρτάβανος, ὃς πρότερον ἀποσπεύδων μῦνος ἐφαίνετο, τότε ἐπισπεύδων φανερός ἦν.

- 19 Ὁρμημένῳ δὲ Ξέρξῃ στρατηλατεῖν μετὰ ταῦτα τρίτῃ ὄψι ἐν τῷ ὕπνῳ ἐγένετο, τὴν οἱ μάγοι ἔκριναν ἀκούσαντες φέρειν τε ἐπὶ πᾶσαν γῆν δουλεύσειν τέ οἱ πάντας ἀνθρώπους. ἡ δὲ ὄψις ἦν ἡδε· ἐδόκει ὁ Ξέρξης ἐστεφανῶσθαι ἐλαίης θαλλῷ, ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ἐλαίης τοὺς 5 κλάδους γῆν πᾶσαν ἐπισχεῖν, μετὰ δὲ ἀφανισθῆναι περὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ κείμενον τὸν στέφανον. κρινάντων δὲ ταύτῃ τῶν μάγων Περσέων τε τῶν συλλεχθέντων αὐ-

poetical term. — 20. ὅκως . . . τῶν σῶν ἐνδεήσει μηδέν: *that on thy part nothing shall be lacking*. Object clause after verb of effect. GMT. 339. Cp. 7. 8. a 11. — 22. ὑπερετίθετο: see on 7. 8. a 18. — 23. ἀποσπεύδων . . . ἐπισπεύδων: note the paronomasia. — 24. ἐφαίνετο, φανερός ἦν: for variety.

XERXES HAS A THIRD DREAM.  
EXTRAORDINARY PREPARATIONS FOR THE EXPEDITION  
(CC. 19-21)

19. 2. οἱ μάγοι: here = *οἱ νεῖ-  
μαῖοι* I. 107. 8, a special class

of the Magi. — ἔκριναν: *interpreted*. Cp. 1. 120. 3. — 3. φέρειν τε ἐπὶ πᾶσαν γῆν: *pertain to the whole world*. φέρειν ἐς is more common. Cp. 6. 19. 3. — 5. ἐστεφανῶσθαι . . . κείμενον τὸν στέφανον: a quasi-κύκλος or variety of chiasm. See Hermog. 171. For Greek readers the reference would be to the sacred olive tree on the Acropolis at Athens (8. 55), whose destruction was followed by a speedy reversal of Xerxes' fortunes. — 8. Περσέων τε τῶν συλλεχθέντων: dependent on πᾶς ἀνὴρ, with change of const. from gen. abs.

τίκα πᾶς ἀνὴρ ἐς τὴν ἀρχὴν τὴν ἐνωτοῦ ἀπελάσας εἶχε  
 προθυμίην πᾶσαν ἐπὶ τοῖσι εἰρημένοισι, θέλων αὐτὸς 10  
 ἕκαστος τὰ προκείμενα δῶρα λαβεῖν, καὶ Ξέρξης τοῦ  
 στρατοῦ οὕτω ἐπάγερσιν ποιεῖται, χώρον πάντα ἐρευνῶν  
 20 τῆς ἡπείρου. ἀπὸ γὰρ Αἰγύπτου ἀλώσιος ἐπὶ μὲν  
 τέσσερα ἔτα πλήρεα παραρτεῖτο στρατιήν τε καὶ τὰ  
 πρόσφορα τῇ στρατιῇ, πέμπτω δὲ ἔτει ἀνομένῳ ἐστρα-  
 τηλάτει χειρὶ μεγάλῃ πλήθεος. στόλων γὰρ τῶν ἡμεῖς  
 ἴδμεν πολλῶ δὴ μέγιστος οὗτος ἐγένετο, ὥστε μῖτε τὸν 5  
 Δαρείου τὸν ἐπὶ Σκύθας παρὰ τοῦτον μηδὲνα φαίνεσθαι  
 μήτε τὸν Σκυθικόν, ὅτε Σκύθαι Κιμμερίους διώκοντες ἐς  
 τὴν Μηδικὴν χώραν ἐσβαλόντες σχεδὸν πάντα τὰ ἄνω  
 τῆς Ἀσίας καταστρεψάμενοι ἐνέμοντο, τῶν εἵνεκεν  
 ὕστερον Δαρείος ἐτιμωρεῖτο, μήτε κατὰ τὰ λεγόμενα τὸν 10  
 Ἀτρειδέων ἐς Ἴλιον μήτε τὸν Μυσῶν τε καὶ Τευκρῶν

— 9. εἶχε προθυμίην πᾶσαν . . .  
 εἰρημένοισι: const. of ἐπὶ (for the  
 accomplishment of) as σπουδάζειν  
 ἐπὶ τινι. Cp. 7. 146. 13. — 12. οὕτω:  
 here looks forward. Cp. ὥδε 7.  
 15. 15. — ἐπάγερσιν ποιεῖται: cp.  
 ἐποιεῖτο στρατῆς ἄγερσιν 7. 5. 3.

20. 1. ἐπὶ μὲν τέσσερα ἔτα: 484-  
 481 B.C. — 2. παραρτεῖτο: = Att.  
 παρεσκευάζετο. — 4. χειρὶ μεγάλῃ  
 πλήθεος: with a very great body  
 of troops, i.e. a band great in mul-  
 titude. χεῖρ, like manus in Lat.  
 Cp. 7. 157. 14; Thuc. 3. 96. 12.  
 — τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν: favorite expres-  
 sion of Hdt. — 5. τὸν Δαρείου τὸν ἐπὶ  
 Σκύθας: cp. 7. 18. 12. — 6. παρὰ:  
 in comparison with. — μηδὲνα: of

no importance. Cp. 7. 14. 5. —  
 7. ὅτε Σκύθαι Κιμμερίους κτέ.: the  
 Cimmerians were driven by the  
 Scythians from their seats north  
 of the Euxine and passed south-  
 easterly into Asia, in the middle  
 of the seventh cent. B.C. — 8. τὰ  
 ἄνω τῆς Ἀσίας: *upper Asia*, i.e.  
 the territory from the Tigris to the  
 Indus, ἢ κάτω Ἀσία, *lower Asia*,  
 being the territory from the Tigris  
 to the coast. — 9. τῶν εἵνεκεν: un-  
 usual for the simple gen. of cause  
 with τιμωρεῖσθαι. — 10. ἐτιμωρεῖτο:  
 conative impf. — κατὰ τὰ λεγόμενα:  
*according to the tradition*, as con-  
 tained in the "Catalogue of the  
 Ships" (Hom. B). — 11. Μυσῶν

τὸν πρὸ τῶν Τρωικῶν γενόμενον, οἱ διαβάντες ἐς τὴν  
 Εὐρώπην κατὰ Βόσπορον τοὺς τε Θρηῆκας κατεστρέ-  
 ψαντο πάντας καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἴόνιον πόντον κατέβη-  
 σαν μέχρι τε Πηγνείου ποταμοῦ τὸ πρὸς μεσαμβρίας 15  
 21 ἦλθαν. αὐταὶ αἱ πᾶσαι οὐδ' ἕτεραι πρὸς ταύτησι  
 γενόμεναι στρατηλασίαι μῆς τῆσδε οὐκ ἄξιαί. τί  
 γὰρ οὐκ ἤγαγε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας ἔθνος ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα  
 Ξέρξης; κοῖον δὲ πινόμενόν μιν ὕδωρ οὐκ ἐπέλιπε,  
 πλὴν τῶν μεγάλων ποταμῶν; οἱ μὲν γὰρ νέας παρ- 5  
 εἶχοντο, οἱ δὲ ἐς πεζὸν ἐτετάχατο, τοῖσι δὲ ἵππος  
 προστετέακτο, τοῖσι δὲ ἵππαγωγὰ πλοῖα ἅμα στρατευο-  
 μένοισι, τοῖσι δὲ ἐς τὰς γεφύρας μακρὰς νέας παρέχειν,  
 22 τοῖσι δὲ σιτὰ τε καὶ νέας. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν, ὥς προσ-  
 πταισάντων τῶν πρώτων περιπλεόντων περὶ τὸν Ἄθων,  
 προετοιμάζετο ἐκ τριῶν ἐτέων κου μάλιστα ἐς τὸν  
 Ἄθων. ἐν γὰρ Ἐλαιούντι τῆς Χερσονήσου ὄρμεον

τε καὶ Τευκρῶν: tribes of Asia Minor.—12. πρὸ τῶν Τρωικῶν: before the Trojan war.—15. τὸ πρὸς μεσαμβρίας: southward, strictly adv. acc. *the part toward the south*. Cp. τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ 7. 126. 5.

21. 1. οὐδ': = καὶ οὐ, anticipation of the following οὐκ. Cp. 7. 101. 9-11, 4. 28. 19.—2. ἄξιαί: sc. εἰσι, *comparable to*.—τί γὰρ κτέ.: for the rhet. questions, cp. 7. 9. 12.—4. μιν: Ξέρξην.—6. ἐς πεζὸν ἐτετάχατο: were assigned to the infantry. Dial. § 4. 3.—7. ἅμα στρατευόμενοι:

while taking part in the expedition at the same time.—8. τοῖσι δὲ κτέ.: sc. προστετέακτο.

#### THE CANAL AT ATHOS (CC. 22-25)

22. 1. τοῦτο μὲν: cp. 7. 6. 6. There is no corresponding τοῦτο δέ, and τοῦτο μὲν is reiterated in ταῦτα μὲν 7. 25. 1.—2. τῶν πρώτων περιπλεόντων: the expedition of Mardonius. See 6. 44.—3. προετοιμάζετο: sc. Ξέρξης.—ἐκ τριῶν . . . μάλιστα: for (lit. *since*) about three years. ἐκ denotes the starting point.—ἐς τὸν Ἄθων: against Athos.—4. τῆς Χερσονήσου: cho-

τριήρεις, ἐνθεύτεν δὲ ὀρμώμενοι ὤρυσσον ὑπὸ μαστίγων 5  
 παντοδαποὶ τῆς στρατιῆς, διάδοχοι δ' ἐφοίτων· ὤρυσ-  
 σον δὲ καὶ οἱ περὶ τὸν Ἄθων κατοικημένοι. Βουβάρης  
 δὲ ὁ Μεγαβάζου καὶ Ἀρταχαΐης ὁ Ἀρταίου ἄνδρες  
 Πέρσαι ἐπεστάτεον τοῦ ἔργου. ὁ γὰρ Ἄθως ἐστὶ ὄρος  
 μέγα τε καὶ ὀνομαστόν, ἐς θάλασσαν κατῆκον, οἰκη- 10  
 μένον ὑπὸ ἀνθρώπων. τῇ δὲ τελευτᾷ ἐς τὴν ἡπειρον τὸ  
 ὄρος, χερσονησοειδὲς τέ ἐστι καὶ ἰσθμὸς ὡς δυνώδεκα  
 σταδίων· πεδίον δὲ τοῦτο καὶ κολωνοὶ οὐ μεγάλοι ἐκ  
 θαλάσσης τῆς Ἀκανθίων ἐπὶ θάλασσαν τὴν ἀντίον  
 Τορώνης. ἐν δὲ τῷ ἰσθμῷ τούτῳ, ἐς τὸν τελευτᾷ ὁ 15  
 Ἄθως, Σάνη πόλις Ἑλλὰς οἰκηται, αἱ δὲ ἐντὸς Σάνης,  
 ἔσω δὲ τοῦ Ἄθω οἰκημένοι, τὰς τότε ὁ Πέρσης νησιώ-  
 τιδας ἀντὶ ἡπειρωτῶν ὥρμητο ποιεῖν· εἰσὶ δὲ αἶδε,  
 23 Δῖον, Ὀλόφυξος, Ἀκρόθων, Θύσσοι, Κλεωναί. πόλιες  
 μὲν αὗται αἱ τὸν Ἄθων νέμονται, ὤρυσσον δὲ ὦδε·  
 δασάμενοι τὸν χῶρον οἱ βάρβαροι κατὰ ἔθνεα, κατὰ  
 Σάνην πόλιν σχοινοτενὲς ποιησάμενοι, ἐπεῖτε ἐγίνετο

rographic gen., or descriptive gen. of place, freq. in Hdt.—5. ὑπὸ μαστίγων: cp. 7. 56. 2, 7. 103. 23, 7. 223. 14; Xen. *Anab.* 3. 4. 25.—6. παντοδαποὶ τῆς στρατιῆς: = παντοδαποὶ στρατιῶται.—7. Βουβάρης: cp. 8. 136. 5.—8. Ἀρταχαΐης: see 7. 117.—9. ἐπεστάτεον: = ἐπέεσσαν, only here in Hdt.—Ἄθως: 6400 feet in height, and displaying in its flora every variety of climate from tropical at the base to frigid at the summit.—13. τοῦτο: i.e. this district.—ἐκ

θαλάσσης . . . Τορώνης: i.e. from the Strymonic gulf on the east to the Singitic on the west.—16. Ἑλλὰς: used adj. freq. in Hdt., as in the poets and even in Thuc.—οἰκηται: = κεῖται.—αἱ δὲ: sc. εἰσι others.—ἐντὸς . . . Ἄθω: i.e. between Sane to the north and Athos to the south. The standpoint is between the two.

23. 3. κατὰ ἔθνεα: nation by nation.—4. σχοινοτενὲς ποιησάμενοι: having drawn a straight line. For adj. as subst., cp. 6. 133. 15.

βαθέα ἢ διώρυξ, οἱ μὲν κατώτατα ἐστεῶτες ὠρυσσον, 5  
 ἕτεροι δὲ παρεδίδουσαν τὸν αἰεὶ ἐξορυσσόμενον χοῦν  
 ἄλλοισι κατύπερθε ἐστεῶσι ἐπὶ βάθρων, οἱ δ' αὖ ἐκ-  
 δεκόμενοι ἐτέροισι, ἕως ἀπίκοντο ἐς τοὺς ἀνωτάτω· οὗτοι  
 δὲ ἐξεφόρεόν τε καὶ ἐξέβαλλον. τοῖσι μὲν νυν ἄλλοισι  
 πλὴν Φοινίκων καταρρηγνύμενοι οἱ κρημνοὶ τοῦ ὀρύγ- 10  
 ματος πόνον διπλήσιον παρείχον· ἅτε γὰρ τοῦ τε  
 ἄνω στόματος καὶ τοῦ κάτω τὰ αὐτὰ μέτρα ποιεομένων  
 ἔμελλέ σφι τοιοῦτο ἀποβήσεσθαι. οἱ δὲ Φοίνικες  
 σοφίην ἔν τε τοῖσι ἄλλοισι ἔργοισι ἀποδείκνυνται καὶ  
 δὴ καὶ ἐν ἐκείνῳ· ἀπολαχόντες γὰρ μόριον ὅσον αὐτοῖσι 15  
 ἐπέβαλλε, ὠρυσσον τὸ μὲν ἄνω στόμα τῆς διώρυχος  
 ποιέοντες διπλήσιον ἢ ὅσον ἔδει αὐτὴν τὴν διώρυχα  
 γενέσθαι, προβαίνοντος δὲ τοῦ ἔργου συνήγον αἰεὶ·  
 κάτω τε δὴ ἐγίνετο καὶ ἐξισούτο τοῖσι ἄλλοισι τὸ ἔργον.  
 ἐνθαῦτα δὲ λειμών ἐστι, ἵνα σφι ἀγορὴ τε ἐγίνετο καὶ 20  
 πρητήριον· σῖτος δέ σφι πολλὸς ἐφοίτα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας  
 24 ἀղηλεσμένος. ὥς μὲν ἐμὲ συμβαλλόμενον εὕρισκειν

— 6. αἰεὶ: in attrib. position regularly for the moment, at the time.

— 7. ἐπὶ βάθρων: upon scaffolds, on steps placed against or cut in the wall. — 8. ἀπίκοντο: sc. οἱ παραδιδόντες. — 10. οἱ κρημνοί: i.e. the perpendicular walls of the canal — 11. ἅτε: as ὡς 7. 22. 1. — 12. μέτρα: obj. of ποιεομένων (sc. αὐτῶν) and governing τοῦ στόματος. — 13. ἔμελλε: it was going, was likely. — 14. καὶ δὴ καί: cor-rel. to τε, as 7. 153. 3. — 15. ὅσον αὐτοῖσι ἐπέβαλλε: as much as was

went to fall to them. — 17. διπλήσιον ἢ: construed like a comparative. — 19. κάτω τε: . . . καὶ ἐξισούτο: Homeric parataxis = κατὼ τε δὴ γινόμενον ἐξισούτο κτέ. — 21. πρητήριον: bazaar, not elsewhere till Plut. — 22. ἀղηλεσμένος: note the emphatic position of the ptc.

24. 1. ὥς μὲν ἐμὲ . . . εὕρισκειν: abs. inf. S. 2012 d; GMT. 782. Cp. 7. 173. 22, 7. 229. 17. μὲν, with unexpressed correlative clause, leaves room for other opinions.

μεγαλοφροσύνης εἵνεκεν αὐτὸ Ξέρξης ὀρύσσειν ἐκέλευε, ἐθέλων τε δύναμιν ἀποδείκνυσθαι καὶ μνημόσυνα λιπέσθαι· παρεὼν γὰρ μηδένα πόνον λαβόντας τὸν ἰσθμὸν τὰς νέας διειρύσαι, ὀρύσσειν ἐκέλευε διώρυχα· 5 τῇ θαλάσῃ εὖρος ὥς δύο τριήρεας πλεῖν ὁμοῦ· ἐλαστρομένας. τοῖσι δὲ αὐτοῖσι τοῦτοισι τοῖσι περ καὶ τὸ ὄρυγμα, προσετέτακτο καὶ τὸν Στρυμόνα ποταμὸν  
25 ζεύξαντας γεφυρῶσαι. ταῦτα μὲν νυν οὕτω ἐποίει, παρεσκευάζετο δὲ καὶ ὄπλα ἐς τὰς γεφύρας βύβλινά τε καὶ λευκολίνου, ἐπιτάξας Φοίνιξί τε καὶ Αἰγυπτίοισι, καὶ σιτία τῇ στρατιῇ καταβάλλειν, ἵνα μὴ λιμῆναι ἡ στρατιὴ μηδὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἐλαυνόμενα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. 5 ἀναπυθόμενος δὲ τοὺς χῶρους καταβάλλειν ἐκέλευε ἵνα

Cp. 7. 50. 11. With συμβαλλόμενον cp. *conicere*. — 2. αὐτό: i.e. τὸ ὄρυγμα. — 3. ἐθέλων τε: note the position of τε with the governing verb instead of with δύναμιν, where it belongs. — μνημόσυνα (Att. μνημεῖα): poetic pl. referring to a single action, as in 2. 148. 1, 6. 109. 11. — 4. τὸν ἰσθμὸν τὰς νέας διειρύσαι: the first acc. dependent on δια-, the second on the verb proper. Hdt. may have had in mind the ship transfer at the isthmus of Corinth, where lighter vessels were conveyed across the isthmus on rollers over an artificial roadway. — 6. τῇ θαλάσῃ: for the sea. — εὖρος: in width, defined by the result clause following, as if οὕτως εὐρέαν were written. Exactly this

const. 2. 158. 5 εὖρος δὲ ὠρύχθη ὥστε τριήρεας δύο πλεῖν ὁμοῦ ἐλαστρομένας. — ὥς: = ὥστε as freq. in Hdt. — ἐλαστρομένας: = ἐλαυνόμενας. — 8. τὸν Στρυμόνα: which empties into the gulf of Strymon, north of Athos. — 9. ζεύξαντας: by joining (yoking) the opposite banks by means of boats. The acc. instead of dat. because of the inf. γεφυρῶσαι.

25. 2. ὄπλα: ropes or cables. Hom. φ 390 mentions a rope of Egyptian papyrus. — βύβλινά τε καὶ λευκολίνου: note the coördination of adj. and gen. of material, as in 7. 34. 3. — 4. καὶ σιτία . . . καταβάλλειν: parallel with ὄπλα as obj. of παρεσκευάζετο. — λιμῆναι: = πεινῶν. Cp. 6. 28. 7. — 6. ἵνα:



ἐπιτηδεότατον εἶη, ἄλλον ἄλλη ἀγινέοντας ὁλκάσι τε καὶ πορθμηίοισι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίνης πανταχόθεν. τὸν δὲ ὦν πλείστον ἐς Λευκὴν ἀκτὴν καλεομένην τῆς Θρήκης ἀγίνεον, οἱ δὲ ἐς Τυρόδιζαν τὴν Περινθίων, οἱ δὲ ἐς 10 Δορίσκον, οἱ δὲ ἐς Ἡϊόνα τὴν ἐπὶ Στρυμόνι, οἱ δὲ ἐς Μακεδονίην διατεταγμένοι.

- 26 Ἐν ᾧ δὲ οὗτοι τὸν προκείμενον πόνον ἐργάζοντο, ἐν τούτῳ ὁ πεζὸς ἅπας συλλελεγμένος ἅμα Ξέρξῃ ἐπορεύετο ἐς Σάρδις, ἐκ Κριτάλλων ὁρμηθεὶς τῶν ἐν Καππαδοκίῃ· ἐνθαῦτα γὰρ εἶρητο συλλέγεσθαι πάντα τὸν κατ' ἡπειρον μέλλοντα ἅμα αὐτῷ Ξέρξῃ πορεύεσθαι 5 στρατόν. ὃς μὲν νυν τῶν ὑπάρχων στρατὸν κάλλιστα ἐσταλμένον ἀγαγὼν τὰ προκείμενα παρὰ βασιλέος ἔλαβε δῶρα, οὐκ ἔχω φράσαι· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀρχὴν ἐς κρίσιν τούτου πέρι ἐλθόντας οἶδα. οἱ δὲ ἐπεῖτε δια-

wherever. — 7. ἄλλον: sc. σῖτον.

— ἀγινέοντας: Att. ἄγοντας, the acc. agreeing with the implied subj. (αὐτούς) of καταβάλλειν.

8. δὲ ὦν: at any rate. — 9. πλείστον: sc. σῖτον. — Λευκὴν ἀκτὴν

τῆς Θρήκης: the promontory on the Propontis is thus distinguished from that of like name in Euboea. — 10. Τυρόδιζαν: not otherwise known. Doriscus, Eion, and Therma in Macedonia were the next halting places of the army to the west (cp. c. 58, 113, 127). —

11. Ἡϊόνα τὴν ἐπὶ Στρυμόνι: as 8. 118. 3; Thuc. 1. 98. 1, 4. 50. 5, to distinguish from Ἡϊών in Chalcidice. It was a colony from Athens

and the harbor of the (later) Amphipolis. — 12. διατεταγμένοι: assigned to different posts.

#### MARCH TO CELAENAE. WEALTH OF PYTHIUS (CC. 26-29)

26. 3. ἐκ Κριτάλλων: site not definitely known, but at any rate somewhere on the royal road to Susa east of the Halys. — 4. ἐνθαῦτα: εἰς Κρίταλλα. — 6. τῶν ὑπάρχων: see on 7. 6. 3. — 7. τὰ προκείμενα... δῶρα: see 7. 8. δ 5, 7. 19. 11. — 8. οὐδὲ ἀρχὴν: see on 7. 9. β 7. — 9. κρίσιν: certamen, as 5. 5. 3. Cp. κρίνεσθαι 3. 120. 11. — ἐλθόντας: sc. τοὺς ὑπάρχους. Supplem. ptc. in indir. discourse.

βάντες τὸν Ἄλυν ποταμὸν ὠμίλησαν τῇ Φρυγίῃ, δι' 10  
 αὐτῆς πορευόμενοι παρεγένοντο ἐς Κελαινάς, ἵνα πηγαὶ  
 ἀναδιδούσι Μαιάνδρου ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐτέρου οὐκ ἐλάσ-  
 σονος ἢ Μαιάνδρου, τῷ οὐνομα τυγχάνει ἐδὸν Καταρ-  
 ρήκτης, ὃς ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς ἀγορῆς τῆς Κελαινέων  
 ἀνατέλλων ἐς τὸν Μαίανδρον ἐκδιδοί· ἐν τῇ καὶ ὁ τοῦ 15  
 Σιληνοῦ Μαρσύεω ἀσκὸς [ἐν τῇ πόλει] ἀνακρέμαται,  
 τὸν ὑπὸ Φρυγῶν λόγος ἔχει ὑπὸ Ἀπόλλωνος ἐκδαρέντα  
 27 ἀνακρεμάσθηναι. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει ὑποκατήμενος  
 Πύθιος ὁ Ἄττος ἀνὴρ Λυδὸς ἐξείνισε τὴν βασιλείας  
 στρατιὴν πᾶσαν ξεινίοισι μεγίστοισι καὶ αὐτὸν Ξέρξην,  
 χρήματά τε ἐπαγγέλλετο βουλόμενος ἐς τὸν πόλεμον  
 παρέχειν. ἐπαγγελλομένου δὲ χρήματα Πυθίου εἶρετο 5

S. 2106; GMT. 904.—10. ὠμίη-  
 σαν: *reached*; of place, as 7. 214.  
 11; usually of meeting with per-  
 sons. The usage is poetical. Cp.  
 Pind. *O.* 12. ἰ9 ὀμλέων παρ' οἰ-  
 κείαις ἀρούραις.—11. ἐς Κελαι-  
 νάς: where Xerxes is said on  
 his return march to have built  
 a palace. Cp. Xen. *Anab.* 1.  
 2. 8.—13. Καταρρήκτης: doubt-  
 less so called from its falls; Mar-  
 syas in Xen. *Anab.* 1. 2. 8.—  
 15. ἀνατέλλων (= ἀναδιδούς): as 4.  
 52. 4.—16. Σιληνοῦ: the name of  
 the father of Satyr used as a gen-  
 eral term for Satyr.—ἀσκός: Xen.  
 uses δέρμα (*Anab.* 1. 2. 8).—[ἐν  
 τῇ πόλει]: see App.—17. τὸν . . .  
 λόγος ἔχει: = ὃς λέγεται, hence  
 ὑπὸ c. gen.

27. 1. ὑποκατήμενος: *i.e.* to  
 wait for the king. Elsewhere of  
 awaiting an enemy, as 8. 40. 9.—  
 2. Πύθιος ὁ Ἄττος: possibly the  
 son of that unfortunate son of Croe-  
 sus whose tragic fate is told by  
 Hdt. 1. 34–45. The great wealth  
 of Pythius lends color to this con-  
 jecture, for in Cyrus' time it was  
 not yet the custom to deprive con-  
 quered houses of their private pos-  
 sessions. But it is difficult to  
 suppose that so interesting a fact  
 could have escaped mention either  
 by Hdt. or by any other ancient  
 writer. In Plutarch (*Moral.* 263 f.)  
 Pythius is owner of gold mines.—  
 4. χρήματά τε . . . παρέχειν: βου-  
 λόμενος may be construed as inten-  
 sifying ἐπαγγέλλετο, *offered of his*

Ξέρξης Περσέων τοὺς παρεόντας τίς τε ἐὼν ἀνδρῶν Πύθιος καὶ κόσα χρήματα ἐκτημένους ἐπαγγέλλοιτο ταῦτα. οἱ δὲ εἶπαν· ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὗτός ἐστι ὃς τοι τὸν πατέρα Δαρεῖον ἐδωρήσατο τῇ πλατανίστῃ τῇ χρυσῇ καὶ τῇ ἀμπέλῳ· ὃς καὶ νῦν ἐστι πρῶτος ἀνθρώπων 10  
 28 πλούτῳ τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν μετὰ σέ. θωμάσας δὲ τῶν ἐπέων τὸ τελευταῖον Ξέρξης αὐτὸς δεύτερα εἶρετο. Πύθιον ὁκόσα οἱ εἶη χρήματα. ὁ δὲ εἶπε· ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὔτε σε ἀποκρύψω οὔτε σκήψομαι τὸ μὴ εἰδέναι τὴν ἐμευτοῦ οὐσίην, ἀλλ' ἐπιστάμενός τοι ἀτρεκέως κατα- 5  
 λέξω. ἐπεῖτε γὰρ τάχιστα σε ἐπυθόμην ἐπὶ θάλασσαν καταβαίνοντα τὴν Ἑλληνίδα, βουλόμενός τοι δοῦναι ἐς τὸν πόλεμον χρήματα ἐξέμαθον, καὶ εὖρον λογιζόμενος ἀργυρίου μὲν δύο χιλιάδας εἰσάσας μοι ταλάντων, χρυσίου δὲ τετρακοσίας μυριάδας στατήρων Δαρεικῶν, 10  
 ἐπιδεοῦσας ἑπτὰ χιλιάδων. καὶ τούτοισί σε ἐγὼ δω-

*own free will* (cp. 7. 29. 4, 5); or we might render, *he offered money wishing to furnish it for the war*. Cp. 7. 28. 7. The same const. 6. 139. 9. — 6. τίς τε ἐὼν ἀνδρῶν: cp. Hom. α 170 τίς πόθεν εἰς ἀνδρῶν. — 8. τοι: poss. pron. Cp. οἱ 7. 16. 2. — 9. τῇ πλατανίστῃ . . . καὶ τῇ ἀμπέλῳ: works of Theodorus of Samos, of the time of Croesus, famous for their artistic excellence and for the costly precious stones, esp. for the grapes of smaragdus. Xen. quotes a depreciatory remark of Antiochus of Arcadia, ambassador to Artaxerxes Mnemon (*Hellen.* 7. 1. 38) τὴν

ὑμνουμένην ἂν χουσὴν πλάτανον οὐχ ἱκανὴν εἶναι ἔφη τέττιγι σκιὰν παρέχειν. They were melted down by Antigonus (Diod. 19. 47), but their fame lived on even in the traditions of the middle ages.

28. 2. αὐτὸς δεύτερα εἶρετο: Pythius had presumably been questioned before by the courtiers. — 4. οὔτε σε ἀποκρύψω: sc. τὴν ἐμευτοῦ οὐσίην. Note the chiasmic arrangement of the whole sent. — 5. ἀτρεκέως καταλέξω: Homeric reminiscence. — 6. θάλασσαν τὴν Ἑλληνίδα: i.e. the Aegean. — 8-11. The whole wealth of Pythius was, then, about \$24,000,000.

ρέομαι· αὐτῷ δέ μοι ἀπὸ ἀνδραπόδων τε καὶ γεωπεδίων  
 29 ἀρκέων ἐστὶ βίος. ὁ μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεγε, Ξέρξης δὲ  
 ἡσθεὶς τοῖσι εἰρημένοισι εἶπε· Ξεῖνε Λυδέ, ἐγὼ ἐπεῖτε  
 ἐξῆλθον τὴν Περσίδα χώραν, οὐδενὶ ἀνδρὶ συνέμιξα ἐς  
 τόδε ὅστις ἠθέλησε ξείνια προθεῖναι στρατῷ τῷ ἐμῷ,  
 οὐδὲ ὅστις ἐς ὄψιν τὴν ἐμὴν καταστάς αὐτεπάγγελτος 5  
 ἐς τὸν πόλεμον ἐμοὶ ἠθέλησε συμβαλέσθαι χρήματα,  
 ἔξω σέο. σὺ δὲ καὶ ἐξείνισας μεγάλως στρατὸν τὸν ἐμὸν  
 καὶ χρήματα μεγάλα ἐπαγγέλλεαι. σοὶ ὦν ἐγὼ ἀντὶ  
 αὐτῶν γέρεα τοιάδε δίδωμι· ξεῖνόν τέ σε ποιέομαι ἐμὸν  
 καὶ τὰς τετρακοσίας μυριάδας τοι τῶν στατήρων ἀπο- 10  
 πλήσω παρ' ἐμεωντοῦ δούς τὰς ἑπτὰ χιλιάδας, ἵνα μὴ  
 τοι ἐπιδεεῖς ἔωσι αἱ τετρακόσiai μυριάδες ἑπτὰ χιλιά-  
 δων, ἀλλὰ ἥ τοι ἀπαρτιλογίῃ ὑπ' ἐμέο πεπληρωμένη.  
 ἔκτησό τε αὐτὸς τά περ αὐτὸς ἐκτήσω, ἐπίστασό τε εἶναι  
 αἰεὶ τοιοῦτος· οὐ γάρ τοι ταῦτα ποιέοντι οὔτε ἐς τὸ 15  
 παρεὸν οὔτε ἐς χρόνον μεταμελήσει.

— 12. γεωπεδίων: diminutive of γεώπεδον, only here. — 13. βίος: = βίωτος, as freq. in Hdt. and the poets.

29. 3. ἐξῆλθον τὴν Περσίδα χώραν: rare const. for ἐκ c. gen. as 5. 104. 10 ἐξεληόντα τὸ αἶστυ. Cp. 7. 58. 3 ἔξω τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον πλέων, 5. 103. 9 ἐκπλώσαντες ἔξω τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, Liv. 1. 29 *egressis urbem*. — ἀνδρὶ συνέμιξα: cp. 7. 153. 3 συμμίζοντες Γέλωνι. — ἐς τόδε: see on 7. 11. 24. — 4. ξείνια προθεῖναι: for the enormous expense involved, see 7.

118—120. — 5. αὐτεπάγγελτος . . . ἠθέλησε: see on 7. 27. 3. — 7. σέο. σό: epanastrophe. — 11. παρ' ἐμεωντοῦ δούς: cp. 2. 129. 9, 8. 5. 3. — 13. ἀπαρτιλογίη: a round sum. Cp. Bekk. *Anecd.* 416 ἀπαρτιλογία, ἀντὶ τοῦ ἀπηρτισμένος καὶ πλήρης ἀριθμός. — 14. ἔκτησο . . . ἐκτήσω: note repetition and contrast of tenses. See on 7. 19. 5. — ἐπίστασο εἶναι τοιοῦτος: for inf., see GMT. 915, 2(a). — 16. ἐς χρόνον: *in posterum*. Cp. 9. 89. 18 οὐ γάρ ὑμῖν ἐς χρόνον ταῦτα ποιέουσι μεταμελήσει.

- 30 Ταῦτα δὲ εἶπας καὶ ἐπιτελέα ποιήσας ἐπορεύετο αἰεὶ  
τὸ πρόσω. Ἄνανα δὲ καλεομένην Φρυγῶν πόλιν παρα-  
μειβόμενος καὶ λίμνην ἐκ τῆς ἅλης γίνονται, ἀπῖκετο ἐς  
Κολοσσὰς πόλιν μεγάλην Φρυγίης· ἐν τῇ Λύκος ποτα-  
μὸς ἐς χάσμα γῆς ἐσβάλλων ἀφανίζεται· ἔπειτα διὰ 5  
σταδίων ὡς πέντε μάλιστα κη ἀναφαινόμενος ἐκδιδοῖ  
καὶ οὗτος ἐς τὸν Μαίανδρον. ἐκ δὲ Κολοσσέων ὁ  
στρατὸς ὁρμώμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς οὖρους τῶν Φρυγῶν καὶ  
Λυδῶν ἀπῖκετο ἐς Κύνδραρα πόλιν, ἔνθα στήλη κατα-  
πεπηγυῖα, σταθείσα δὲ ὑπὸ Κροίσου, καταμηνύει διὰ 10  
31 γραμματῶν τοὺς οὖρους. ὡς δὲ ἐκ τῆς Φρυγίης ἐσέ-  
βαλε ἐς τὴν Λυδίην, σχιζομένης τῆς ὁδοῦ καὶ τῆς μὲν  
ἐς ἀριστερὴν ἐπὶ Καρίης φερούσης, τῆς δὲ ἐς δεξιὴν ἐς  
Σάρδις, τῇ καὶ πορευομένῳ διαβῆναι τὸν Μαίανδρον  
ποταμὸν πᾶσα ἀνάγκη γίνεται καὶ ἰέναι παρὰ Καλ- 5  
λάττηβον πόλιν, ἐν τῇ ἄνδρες δημοεργοὶ μέλι ἐκ μυρί-

ADVANCE TO SARDIS. HERALDS  
SENT TO GREECE (CC. 30-32)

30. 1. ἐπιτελέα ποιήσας: cp.  
7. 11. 7. — 2. τὸ πρόσω = ἐς τὸ  
πρόσω 7. 223. 15. — 3. ἐκ τῆς ἅλης  
γίνονται: still true of this lake.  
γίνονται = pass. of ποιεῖω. — 5. ἐς  
χάσμα γῆς ἐσβάλλων . . . ἀναφαινό-  
μενος: cp. 6. 76. 5 ἐς χάσμα ἀφανὲς  
ἐκδιδοῦσαν ἀναφαίνεσθαι ἐν Ἄργει.  
— διὰ: *through*, i.e. after an inter-  
val of. Cp. 6. 118. 13. — 6. μέλι-  
στά κη: cp. *κου μάλιστα* 7. 22.  
3. — 7. καὶ οὗτος: as well as the  
Καταρρήκτης 7. 26. 15. — ἐκ δι

Κολοσσίων: cp. Xen. *Anab.* 1. 2. 6.  
St. Paul's Epistle was addressed  
to the Christians of this city. In  
that region the river Tschuruksu  
still falls into a deep chasm. —  
8. οὖρους: Att. ὄρους. — 9. Κύν-  
δραρα: otherwise unknown. —  
καταπεπηγυῖα, σταθείσα δέ: note  
difference of tenses: *standing*  
*fixed, set up*. For force of δέ, see  
on 7. 8. β 11.

31. 3. ἐς ἀριστερὴν: sc. *χεῖρα*.  
— ἐπὶ Καρίης: *toward Caria*. —  
5. Καλλάττηβον: site unknown. —  
6. ἄνδρες δημοεργοὶ . . . ποιοῦσι:  
apparently a kind of sirup made

κης τε καὶ πυροῦ ποιέουσι, ταύτην ἰὼν ὁ Ξέρξης τὴν ὁδὸν εὔρε πλατάνιστον, τὴν κάλλεος εἵνεκα δωρησάμενος κόσμῳ χρυσῷ καὶ μελεδωνῷ ἀθανάτῳ ἀνδρὶ ἐπιτρέψας δευτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ ἀπύκετο ἐς τῶν Λυδῶν τὸ 10  
32 ἄστυ. ἀπικόμενος δὲ ἐς Σάρδεις πρῶτα μὲν ἀπέπεμπε κήρυκας ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα αἰτήσοντας γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ καὶ προερέοντας δεῖπνα βασιλεῖ παρασκευάζειν· πλὴν οὔτε ἐς Ἀθήνας οὔτε ἐς Λακεδαίμονα ἀπέπεμπε ἐπὶ γῆς αἰτησιν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ πάντῃ. τῶνδε δὲ εἵνεκα τὸ δευτέ- 5  
ρον ἀπέπεμπε ἐπὶ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ· ὅσοι πρότερον οὐκ ἔδοσαν Δαρείῳ πέμψαντι, τούτους πάγχυ ἐδόκει τότε δέισαντας δώσειν· βουλόμενος ὦν αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἐκμαθεῖν ἀκριβέως ἔπεμπε.

33 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα παρεσκευάζετο ὡς ἐλὼν ἐς Ἀβυδον. οἱ δὲ ἐν τούτῳ τὸν Ἑλλησποντον ἐξεύγνυσαν ἐκ τῆς

by confectioners (δημοεργοί) from the sap, as from the sap of the palm tree 1. 193. 28. Cp. 4. 194. 3 πολλῷ δ' ἔτι πλέον [*sc.* μέλι] λέγεται δημοεργοὺς ἄνδρας ποιεῖν. — 7. ταύτην ἰὼν: referring to τῆς δὲ ἐς δεξιὴν ἐς Σάρδεις (3). — 8. κάλλεος εἵνεκα: modern travelers have found plane trees of wonderful size and beauty in that region. — 9. μελεδωνῷ ἀθανάτῳ: as *perpetual curator*, i.e. whose place at death was to be taken forthwith by another appointee. μελεδωνός = Att. ἐπιμελητής.

32. 1. πρῶτα μὲν: correl. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα 33. 1. — 2. αἰτήσοντας γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ: i.e. as tokens of

submission. Cp. Arist. *Rhet.* 2. 23 τὸ δίδόναι γῆν καὶ ὕδωρ δουλεῖν ἐστίν. — 4. οὔτε ἐς Ἀθήνας κτέ.: because before they threw his messengers into a pit or a well and told them to get earth and water (7. 133). — ἐπὶ γῆς αἰτησιν: cp. αἰτήσοντας γῆν 7. 133. 2. — 5. τῇ ἄλλῃ: elsewhere as 2. 116. 8, 3. 61. 15. Note the Herodotean, un-Attic, use of the article. Without art. 2. 79. 5, 6. 48. 3. — 6. πρότερον: 6. 48.

THE BRIDGES OVER THE HELLES-PONT (CC. 33-36)

33. 2. οἱ δέ: i.e. the Phoenicians and Egyptians to whom this task had been assigned (7. 25. 3, 7.

Ἀσίης ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην. ἔστι δὲ τῆς Χερσονήσου τῆς ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ, Σηστοῦ τε πόλις μεταξύ καὶ Μαδύτου, ἀκτὴ παχέα ἐς θάλασσαν κατήκουσα Ἀβύδῳ κατ-  
 5  
 αντίον, ἔνθα μετὰ ταῦτα, χρόνῳ ὕστερον οὐ πολλῶ, ἐπὶ Ξανθίππου τοῦ Ἀρίφρονος στρατηγοῦ Ἀθηναίων, Ἀρταύκτην ἄνδρα Πέρσῃ λαβόντες Σηστοῦ ὑπαρχον ζῶντα πρὸς σανίδα διεπασσάλευσαν, ὅς καὶ ἐς τοῦ Πρωτεσίλεω τὸ ἱρὸν ἐς Ἐλαιούντα ἀγινεόμενος γυναι-  
 10  
 34 κας ἀθέμιστα [ἔργα] ἔρδεσκε. ἐς ταύτην ὦν τὴν ἀκτὴν ἐξ Ἀβύδου ὁρμώμενοι ἐγεφύρουν τοῖσι προσέκειτο, τὴν μὲν λευκολίνου Φοίνικες, τὴν δὲ βυβλίην Αἰγύπτιοι. ἔστι δὲ ἑπτὰ στάδιοι ἐξ Ἀβύδου ἐς τὴν

34. 3). — 3. τῆς Χερσονήσου: part. chorographic gen. or descriptive gen. of place. S. 1311. — 4. μεταξύ: between its two dependent gens. — 5. ἀκτὴ παχέα: a hilly, wooded projection flanked on either side by the bays of Sestus and Koila. — Ἀβύδῳ καταντίον: the prep. elsewhere with gen. 6. 103. 17, 6. 118. 11, 8. 52. 2. Cp. ὑπεναντία with dat. 7. 39. 9, with gen. 7. 153. 22. — 6. χρόνῳ ὕστερον: after the victory at Mycale 478 B.C. See 9. 116–120. — 9. διεπασσάλευσαν: sc. οἱ Ἕλληνες, i.e. nailed with outspread hands and feet. — 10. Πρωτεσίλεω: who first leaped from the Achaean ships upon Trojan soil, as an offering to the Greek cause. Hom. B 698–702. His tomb and sanctuary were at Elaius on the Thracian Chersonese (9. 116. 6).

See Wordsworth's *Laodamia*. — 11. ἔρδεσκε: poetic and Ionic verb = ἐποίει.

34. 2. τοῖσι προσέκειτο: to whom the task was assigned (= pass. of προστίθημι). Cp. 7. 39. 17 τοῖσι προσετίετακτο. — 3. τὴν μὲν, τὴν δέ: sc. γέφυραν from the verb. — λευκολίνου, βυβλίην: coördination as in 7. 25. 2. — 4. ἔστι δὲ ἑπτὰ στάδιοι: note the sing. verb (σχῆμα Πινδαρικόν), with which a general subj. (the interval) is felt, defined by ἑπτὰ στάδιοι. Cp. 1. 26. 6 ἔστι δὲ μεταξύ τῆς τε παλαιῆς πόλιος . . . καὶ τοῦ νηοῦ ἑπτὰ στάδιοι. S. 961; HA. 605. At 4. 85. 18, as here, Hdt. gives the width of the Hellespont between Sestos and Abydos at seven stades, and indeed this narrowest part was called by the ancients τὸ ἑπταστάδιον

ἀπαντίον. καὶ δὴ ἐξευγμένου τοῦ πόρου ἐπιγενόμενος 5  
 χειμῶν μέγας συνέκοψέ τε ἐκείνα πάντα καὶ διέλυσε.  
 35 ὥς δ' ἐπύθετο Ξέρξης, δεινὰ ποιούμενος τὸν Ἑλλήσπον-  
 τον ἐκέλευσε τριηκοσίας ἐπικέσθαι μάστιγι πληγὰς  
 καὶ κατεῖναι ἐς τὸ πέλαγος πεδέων ζεύγος. ἤδη δὲ  
 ἤκουσα ὥς καὶ στιγέας ἅμα τούτοισι ἀπέπεμψε στίζον-  
 τας τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον. ἐνετέλλετο δὲ ὦν ῥαπίζοντας 5  
 λέγειν βάρβαρά τε καὶ ἀτάσθαλα. ὦν πικρὸν ὕδωρ,  
 δεσπότης τοι δίκην ἐπιτιθεῖ τήνδε, ὅτι μιν ἡδίκησας  
 οὐδὲν πρὸς ἐκείνου ἄδικον παθόν. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν  
 Ξέρξης διαβήσεταιί σε, ἦν τε σύ γε βούλη ἦν τε μή·  
 σοὶ δὲ κατὰ δίκην ἄρα οὐδεὶς ἀνθρώπων θύει ὥς ἐόντι 10

(Strabo, p. 125, 591). Recent measurements make it ten stades, a difference which is to be ascribed to changes in the conformation of the shore line in the lapse of centuries.

35. 1. δεινὰ ποιούμενος: see on 7. 1. 5. — 2. ἐπικέσθαι μάστιγι: *to come down with the lash* = *μαστιγιῶσαι*, and so taking acc. of person (Ἑλλήσποντον) and cognate (πληγὰς). — 3. πέλαγος: of the Hellespont, as 7. 54. 13. — πεδέων ζεύγος: *pair of fetters*, as 3. 130. 13. Hdt. seems to take the matter literally, while Aeschylus regards the fetters as symbolizing the bridges. Cp. *Pers.* 747 f. *πέδαις σφυρηλάτοις | περιβαλὼν πολλὴν κέλευθον ἤνυσεν πολλῶ στρατῷ*. — ἤδη: *etiam*, as 7. 55. 13. — 4. στιγέας: the Hellespont was

to be branded as a rebellious or runaway slave. Cp. 7. 233. 16. With the punishments here inflicted by Xerxes, cp. Cyrus' punishment of the river Gyndes for the drowning of one of his sacred horses (1. 189).

— 5. δὲ ὦν: *at any rate, i.e.* however it may have been about the branding. Cp. 7. 9. γ7. — 6. ἀτάσθαλα: *i.e.* ὑβριστικά, for Xerxes' conduct impressed Hdt. not as childish, but as impious and insolent toward the "sacred Hellespont." — ὦ πικρὸν ὕδωρ: expressing the Iranian feeling for the salt water of the sea as compared with water that was sweet and fresh. — 8. πρὸς ἐκείνου: see on 7. 2. 12. — ἄδικον παθόν: *pass.* of ἄδικον ποιεῖν. — 10. ἄρα: *then (i.e. as your conduct shows)*. Cp. 7. 130. 8, 8. 8. 7. — θύει: as to other



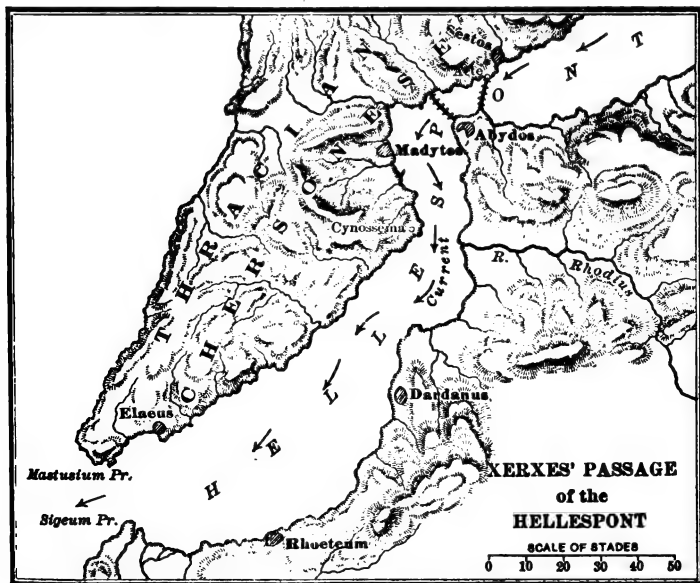
καὶ θολερῷ καὶ ἄλμυρῷ ποταμῷ. τὴν τε δὴ θάλασσαν  
 ἐνετέλλετο τούτοις ζημιῶν καὶ τῶν ἐπεστεῶτων τῇ  
 36 ζεύξι τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου ἀποταμεῖν τὰς κεφαλὰς. καὶ  
 οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ἐποίουν τοῖσι προσέκειτο αὕτη ἡ ἄχαρις  
 τιμή, τὰς δὲ ἄλλοι ἀρχιτέκτονες ἐξεύγνυσαν· ἐξεύγνυ-  
 σαν δὲ ὧδε· πεντηκοντέρους καὶ τριήρεας συνθέντες,  
 ὑπὸ μὲν τὴν πρὸς τοῦ Εὐξείνου Πόντου ἐξήκοντά τε καὶ 5  
 τριηκοσίας, ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἐτέρην τεσσερεσκαίδεκα καὶ  
 τριηκοσίας, τοῦ μὲν Πόντου ἐπικαρσίας, τοῦ δὲ Ἑλλησ-  
 πόντου κατὰ ῥόον, ἵνα ἀνακωχέῃ τὸν τόνον τῶν  
 ὄπλων· συνθέντες δὲ ἀγκύρας κατήκαν περιμήκεας,  
 τὰς μὲν πρὸς τοῦ Πόντου τῆς ἐτέρης τῶν ἀνέμων 10  
 εἵνεκεν τῶν ἔσωθεν ἐκπνεόντων, τῆς δὲ ἐτέρης πρὸς

streams. Cp. 7. 113. 10.—11. ποταμῷ: so called on account of its strong current. Cp. Hom. B 845 Ἑλλησπόντος ἀγάρροος.—12. τῶν ἐπεστεῶτων τῇ ζεύξι: dat. here, gen. with the same verb 7. 22. 9, 7. 117. 3.

36. 2. τοῖσι προσέκειτο: cp. 7. 34. 2.—3. τὰς δὲ: sc. γεφύρας.—ἐξεύγνυσαν· ἐξεύγνυσαν: note the epanastrophe.—4. συνθέντες: i.e. placing in line, doubtless with intervals between the vessels.—5. ὑπὸ μὲν τὴν: sc. γέφυραν, the boats being regarded as the supports for the real bridge, the shore-cables.—7. τοῦ μὲν Πόντου (i.e. τοῦ Εὐξείνου, 5): dependent on ἐπικαρσίας, at an angle with, as τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου depends on κατὰ ῥόον,

down stream, i.e. parallel with.—8. ἵνα ἀνακωχέῃ . . . ὄπλων: that it might relieve the tautness of the cables. The subj. of the verb is implied in the ptc. clause πεντηκοντέρους . . . συνθέντες, i.e. ἡ σύνθεσις τῶν πεντηκοντέρων καὶ τριηρέων οἱ τὸ ὧδε συνθεῖναι. τὸν τόνον τῶν ὄπλων = τὰ τεταμένα ὄπλα.—9. συνθέντες δὲ: resumes from line 4.—10. τῆς ἐτέρης: sc. γεφύρας, dependent on τὰς μὲν and defined by πρὸς τοῦ Πόντου. The statement to be quite exact needed to mention a double row of anchors, since every ship must have been anchored, of course, at both ends.—11. ἔσωθεν: i.e. from the Propontis and the Euxine.—τῆς δὲ ἐτέρης: short

ἐσπέρης τε καὶ τοῦ Αἰγαίου ζεφύρου τε καὶ νότου  
εἵνεκα. διέκπloon δὲ ὑπόφανσιν κατέλιπον τῶν πεντη-  
κοντέρων καὶ τριηρέων, ἵνα καὶ ἐς τὸν Πόντον ἔχῃ ὁ



βουλόμενος πλεῖν πλοίοισι λεπτοῖσι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου<sup>15</sup>  
ἔξω. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσαντες κατέτεινον ἐκ γῆς στρε-

for τὰς δὲ τῆς ἐτέρης. — 12. ζεφύ-  
ρον τε καὶ νότου εἵνεκα: the direc-  
tion of the Hellespont is here  
northeast and southwest; but it  
is difficult to see why winds from  
both quarters should be mentioned  
only in connection with the second  
bridge. Hence most editors emend  
εἴρου of the Mss. to ζεφύρου. See

HERODOTUS — 9

App. — 13. διέκπloon δὲ ὑπόφανσιν  
κατέλιπον: as a passage through  
they left an opening below. ὑπό-  
φανσιν, which is found only here,  
governs the gens. These open-  
ings were for the passage of small  
craft, with masts down, of course,  
since the cables and upper  
framework must remain intact. —

βλοῦντες ὄνοισι ξυλίνουσι τὰ ὄπλα, οὐκέτι χωρὶς ἐκάτερα τάξαντες, ἀλλὰ δύο μὲν λευκολίνου δασάμενοι ἐς ἐκατέρην, τέσσερα δὲ τῶν βυβλίνων. παχύτης μὲν ἡ αὐτὴ καὶ καλλονή, κατὰ λόγον δὲ ἦν ἐμβριθέστερα τὰ λίνεα, 20 τοῦ τάλαντον ὃ πῆχυς εἴλκε. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγεφυρώθη ὁ πόρος, κορμούς ξύλων καταπρίσαντες καὶ ποιήσαντες ἴσους τῆς σχεδίας τῷ εὖρει κόσμῳ ἐτίθεσαν κατύπερθε τῶν ὀπλων τοῦ τόνου, θέντες δὲ ἐπεξῆς ἐνθαῦτα αὐτὶς ἐπεξεύγνουν. ποιήσαντες δὲ ταῦτα ὕλην ἐπεφόρησαν, 25 κόσμῳ δὲ θέντες καὶ τὴν ὕλην γῆν ἐπεφόρησαν, κατανάξαντες δὲ καὶ τὴν γῆν φραγμὸν παρείρυσαν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, ἵνα μὴ φοβῆται τὰ ὑποζύγια τὴν θάλασσαν 37 ὑπερορῶντα [καὶ οἱ ἵπποι]. ὥς δὲ τά τε τῶν γεφυρέων κατεσκεύαστο καὶ τὰ περὶ τὸν Ἄθων, οἳ τε χυτοὶ περὶ τὰ στόματα τῆς διώρυχος, οἳ τῆς ῥηχίης εἵνεκεν ἐποιήθησαν, ἵνα μὴ πίμπληται τὰ στόματα τοῦ ὀρύγματος, καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ διώρυξ παντελέως πεποιτμένη ἀγγέλλετο, 5

17. ὄνοισι ξυλίνουσι: *windlasses*. — οὐκέτι . . . τάξαντες: *no longer arranging each kind* (of cable) *separately*, as before (c. 34). Now each bridge is to have six immense cables, two of white flax and four of papyrus. — 20. καλλονή: as 3. 106. 12, rarer form for κάλλος. — κατὰ λόγον: *in proportion*. — 21. τοῦ: *of which*, referring to τοῦ λευκολίνου ὀπλου implied in τὰ λίνεα, *const. ad sensum*. — τάλαντον: prob. the commercial (Aeginetan) talent, about 82 lbs., not the Attic of about 58 lbs. —

24. τῶν ὀπλων τοῦ τόνου: = τῶν ὀπλων τεταμένων. — θέντες δὲ ἐπεξῆς: *repeating κόσμῳ ἐτίθεσαν*. — 25. ἐπεξεύγνουν: *fastened them on*, i.e. prob. with cross beams (cp. 2. 96. 8). — 26. ὕλην: *boards*, or possibly *brushwood*. — 29. ὑπερορῶντα: *looking over at*. See. App.

#### ECLIPSE OF THE SUN

37. 2. τὰ περὶ τὸν Ἄθων: *the works at Athos*, in appos. to which follows οἳ τε χυτοὶ . . . ἡ διώρυξ. — χυτοὶ: *breakwaters*. Cp. χῶμα, 3. 60. 12. — 5. πεποιτμένη ἀγγέλ-

ἐνθαῦτα χειμερίτας ἅμα τῷ ἔاري παρεσκευασμένος ὁ στρατὸς ἐκ τῶν Σαρδίων ὀρμάτο ἐλὼν ἐς Ἄβυδον. ὀρμημένῳ δέ οἱ ὁ ἥλιος ἐκλιπὼν τὴν ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ ἑδρὴν ἀφανὴς ἦν οὐτ' ἐπινεφέλων ἐόντων ἀ' θρίης τε τὰ μάλιστα, ἀντὶ ἡμέρης τε νύξ ἐγένετο. ἰδόντι δὲ καὶ 10 μαθόντι τοῦτο τῷ Ξέρξῃ ἐπιμελὲς ἐγένετο, καὶ εἶρετο τοὺς μάγους τὸ θέλοι προφαίνειν τὸ φάσμα. οἱ δὲ ἔφραζον ὡς Ἑλλησι προδεικνύει ὁ θεὸς ἐκλειψιν τῶν πολίων, λέγοντες ἥλιον εἶναι Ἑλλήνων προδέκτορα, σελήνην δὲ σφέων. ταῦτα πυθόμενος ὁ Ξέρξης περὶ 15 38 χαρὴς ἐὼν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν ἔλασιν. ὡς δ' ἐξήλαυνε τὴν στρατιήν, Πύθιος ὁ Λυδὸς καταρρωδήσας τὸ ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ φάσμα ἐπαερθεῖς τε τοῖσι δωρήμασι ἐλθὼν παρὰ Ξέρξην ἔλεγε τάδε· ὦ δέσποτα, χρήσας ἄν τι

λετο: here, as in 6. 69. 23, the ptc. construed with ἀγγέλλω as with a verb of perceiving. πεποιημένη should strictly be neut. in agreement with τὰ περὶ τὸν Ἄθων, but by a slight anacoluthon is construed with the nearest appositive ἡ διῶρυξ. — 6. ἐνθαῦτα: begins the leading clause. — ἅμα τῷ ἔاري: 480 B.C. — 8. τὴν ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ: for ἐν c. dat., by attraction after ἐκλιπὼν, which is usually intr. in this sense. — 9. οὐτε . . . τε: see on 8. a 2. — ἀθρίης: temporal gen. *in clear weather*, or *sc. ἐούσης*. — 10. ἰδόντι δὲ καὶ μαθόντι: note the pleonasm. — 12. τὸ θέλοι προφαίνειν: *what it wants to portend*, attributing will or choice to

something inanimate (τὸ φάσμα) as often in Hdt. τό (rel.) for ὁ τι or τί, as freq. in Hdt. — 13. ὁ θεός: i.e. ὁ ἥλιος. — 14. προδέκτορα: *foreshower*, only here. Compare the soothsayers' assurance to the soldiers of Alexander alarmed at an eclipse of the moon in Quint. Curt. 4. 10. 1, *solem Graecorum, lunam esse Persarum*; *quoties illa deficiat, ruinam stragemque illis gentibus portendi*.

#### PETITION AND PUNISHMENT OF PYTHIUS (CC. 38, 39)

38. 2. τὸ ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ φάσμα: ἐκ for ἐν to indicate the place *from which* the phenomenon appeared. — 4. τι σέο . . . τυχεῖν: cognate

σέο βουλοίμην τυχεῖν, τὸ σοὶ μὲν ἐλαφρὸν τυγχάνει, 5  
 ἔον ὑπουργῆσαι, ἐμοὶ δὲ μέγα γινόμενον. Ξέρξης δὲ  
 πᾶν μᾶλλον δοκέων μιν χρῆσιν ἢ τὸ ἐδεήθη, ἔφη τε  
 ὑπουργήσῃ καὶ δὴ ἀγορεύειν ἐκέλευε ὅτεο δέοιτο. ὁ  
 δὲ ἐπείτε ταῦτα ἤκουσε, ἔλεγε θαρσύνσας τάδε· ὦ δέ-  
 σποτα, τυγχάνουσί μοι παῖδες ἔοντες πέντε, καὶ σφεας 10  
 καταλαμβάνει πάντας ἅμα σοὶ στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα. σὺ δέ, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐμὲ ἐς τόδε ἡλικίης  
 ἤκοντα οἰκτεῖρας τῶν μοι παίδων ἓνα παράλυσον τῆς  
 στρατιῆς τὸν πρεσβύτατον, ἵνα αὐτοῦ τε ἐμέο καὶ τῶν  
 χρημάτων ἢ μελεδωνός. τοὺς δὲ τέσσερας ἄγε ἅμα 15  
 39 σεωντῶ καὶ πρήξας τὰ νοεῖς νοστήσειας ὀπίσω. κάρτα  
 τε ἐθυμώθη ὁ Ξέρξης καὶ ἀμείβετο τοισίδε· ὦ κακὲ  
 ἄνθρωπε, σὺ ἐτόλμησας ἐμέο στρατευσόμενου αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ  
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ ἄγοντος παῖδας ἐμούς καὶ ἀδελφεοὺς  
 καὶ οἰκηίους καὶ φίλους μνήσασθαι περὶ σέο παιδός, 5  
 ἔων ἐμὸς δούλος, τὸν χρῆν πανοικίῃ αὐτῇ γυναικὶ συνέ-  
 πεσθαι; εὖ νῦν τόδ' ἐξεπίστασο, ὥς ἐν τοῖσι ὥσιν τῶν  
 ἀνθρώπων οἰκεῖ ὁ θυμός, ὃς χρηστὰ μὲν ἀκούσας τέρ-  
 ψιος ἐμπιπλεῖ τὸ σῶμα, ὑπεναντία δὲ τούτοισι ἀκούσας

acc. and gen. of source. — 5. τὸ σοὶ . . . γινόμενον: the rel. is subj. of τυγχάνει, the inf. being explanatory and the ptc. γινόμενον conditional. Cp. Theog. 14 σοὶ μὲν τοῦτο, θεά, σμικρόν, ἐμοὶ δὲ μέγα. — 7. τὸ ἐδεήθη: cogn. acc.; usually gen., as just below. — 11. καταλαμβάνει: it chances. Cp. 7. 155. 2. — 12. ἐς τόδε ἡλικίης: to this time of life. Cp. ἐς τόδε 7. 11. 24. — 13. τῶν

μοι παίδων: the dat. is poss., as τοι 7. 27. 8.

39. 5. περὶ σέο παιδός: about a son of yours, for περὶ παιδός σέο, to contrast emphatically with ἐμέο. The usual emphatic order σέο περὶ παιδός is avoided on account of μνήσασθαι. — 6. πανοικίῃ: adv. as 8. 106. 12, 9. 109. 8. — αὐτῇ γυναικί: wife and all. S. 1525; HA. 774. — 9. ὑπεναντία τούτοισι: for

ἀνοιδεῖ. ὅτε μὲν νυν χρηστὰ ποιήσας ἕτερα τοιαῦτα <sup>10</sup>  
 ἐπηγγέλλεο, εὐεργεσίῃσι βασιλέα οὐ καυχήσεται ὑπερ-  
 βαλέσθαι. ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἐς τὸ ἀναιδέστερον ἐτράπεο, τὴν  
 μὲν ἀξίην οὐ λάμψαι, ἐλάσσω δὲ τῆς ἀξίης. σὲ μὲν  
 γὰρ καὶ τοὺς τέσσερας τῶν παίδων ῥύεται τὰ ξείνια.  
 τοῦ δὲ ἐνός, τοῦ περιέχειαι μάλιστα, τῇ ψυχῇ ζημιώσεται. <sup>15</sup>  
 ὥς δὲ ταῦτα ὑπεκρίνατο, αὐτίκα ἐκέλευε τοῖσι προσετέ-  
 τακτο ταῦτα πρήσσειν, τῶν Πυθίου παίδων ἐξευρόντας  
 τὸν πρεσβύτατον μέσον διαταμεῖν, διαταμόντας δὲ τὰ  
 ἡμίτομα διαθεῖναι τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ δεξιὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ, τὸ δ' ἐπ'  
<sup>40</sup>ἀριστερά, καὶ ταύτῃ διεξιέναι τὸν στρατόν. ποιησάν-  
 των δὲ τούτων τούτο, μετὰ ταῦτα διεξῆγε ὁ στρατός.  
 ἡγέοντο δὲ πρῶτοι μὲν οἱ σκευοφόροι τε καὶ τὰ ὑποζύ-  
 για, μετὰ δὲ τούτους στρατὸς παντοίων ἐθνέων ἀναμίξ,  
 οὐ διακεκριμένοι. τῇ δὲ ὑπερημίσεις ἦσαν, ἐνθαῦτα <sup>5</sup>  
 διελέλειπτο, καὶ οὐ συνέμισγον οὔτοι βασιλεῖ. προη-  
 γέοντο μὲν δὴ ἱππῶται χίλιοι ἐκ Περσέων πάντων ἀπο-  
 λελεγμένοι. μετὰ δὲ αἰχμοφόροι χίλιοι, καὶ οὔτοι ἐκ

dat. see on 7. 33. 5. — 10. ἀνοιδεῖ:  
*sc.* χόλψ. Cp. Hom. I 646 οἰδάνεται  
 κραδίη χόλψ. — ἕτερα τοιαῦτα: *i.e.*  
 χρηστά. — 12. ἐς τὸ . . . ἐτράπεο:  
 cp. 7. 16. β 2. — 13. λάμψαι:  
 Dial. § 4. 8. — 14. τὰ ξείνια: cp.  
 7. 27. 2. — 15. ζημιώσεται: fut. mid.  
 with pass. force. Cp. Darius'  
 similar conduct on a like request,  
 4. 84. — 18. διαταμεῖν, διαταμό-  
 ντας δέ: epanalepsis or repetition  
 emphasizing the immediate suc-  
 cession of events. Cp. 7. 43. 7,  
 7. 56. 2, 7. 60. 12.

#### ORDER OF MARCH (CC. 40, 41)

40. 3. πρῶτοι: pleonastic after  
 ἡγέοντο. — 4. στρατός: *sc.* διεξῆγε.  
 — ἀναμίξ, οὐ διακεκριμένοι: *i.e.* the  
 several nations formed separate  
 corps, but these marched without  
 any regular order. Such juxtapo-  
 sition of positive and negative ex-  
 pressions is frequent in Hdt. Cp.  
 4. 161. 2 *χωλός τε ἔων καὶ οὐκ ἀρτί-*  
*πους*. — 6. διελέλειπτο: *an inter-*  
*val was left*, impersonal, as 7. 41.  
 14. Cp. 6. 112. 1. — 7. ἱππῶται:

πάντων ἀπολελεγμένοι, τὰς λόγχας κάτω ἐς τὴν γῆν  
 τρέψαντες· μετὰ δὲ ἱροὶ Νησαῖοι καλεόμενοι ἵπποι <sup>10</sup>  
 δέκα, κεκοσμημένοι ὡς κάλλιστα. Νησαῖοι δὲ καλέ-  
 ονται ἵπποι ἐπὶ τοῦδε· ἔστι πεδίον μέγα τῆς Μηδικῆς  
 τῷ οὐνομά ἐστι Νήσαιον· τοὺς ὧν δὴ ἵππους τοὺς  
 μεγάλους φέρει τὸ πεδίον τοῦτο. ὅπισθε δὲ τούτων  
 τῶν δέκα ἵππων ἄρμα Διὸς ἱρὸν ἐπετέτακτο, τὸ ἵπποι <sup>15</sup>  
 μὲν εἶλκον λευκοὶ ὀκτώ, ὅπισθε δὲ αὐτῶν ἵππων εἶπετο  
 πεζῇ ἡνίοχος ἐχόμενος τῶν χαλινῶν· οὐδεὶς γὰρ δὴ  
 ἐπὶ τοῦτον τὸν θρόνον ἀνθρώπων ἀναβαίνει. τούτον δὲ  
 ὅπισθε αὐτὸς Ξέρξης ἐπ' ἄρματος ἵππων Νησαίων·  
 παρεβεβήκει δὲ οἱ ἡνίοχος τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Πατιράμφης, <sup>20</sup>  
 Ὅτάνεω παῖς ἀνδρὸς Πέρσεω.

- 41 Ἐξήλασε μὲν οὕτω ἐκ Σαρδίων Ξέρξης, μετεκ-  
 βαίνεσκε δέ, ὅκως μιν λόγος αἰρέοι, ἐκ τοῦ ἄρματος

Att. ἱππεῖς. — 9. κάτω: as a sign of especial respect. Cp. 3. 128. 18. — 10. ἱροί: *i.e.* sacred to Mithra. Νησαῖοι: mentioned also 3. 106. 8, 9. 20. 5; famous for size, speed, and endurance. The Νήσαιον πεδίον was, perhaps, the *Nizaya* mentioned in the inscription of Behistun, which was prob. in southwestern Media, for in that region were royal stables where the most excellent horses were raised (Strabo 525; Diod. 17. 110; Arr. *Anab.* 7. 13), and where still on the plains great herds graze. But nothing is certain about the locality, and the name was applied to several other quarters. — 12. ἐπὶ

τοῦδε: as 7. 83. 4, more freq. in Hdt. with verbs of naming than ἀπό (cp. 7. 74. 7), which is the Attic const. — 15. Διὸς: Ahuramazda. — 18. θρόνον: for δίφρον, *chariot-seat*. Cp. Hom. ζ 48 Ἡὼς εὐθρονος. — 20. παρεβεβήκει οἱ (lit. 'had mounted') *stood beside him*. Cp. Hom. Λ 522 Ἐκτορι παραββάς. Usually distinction is made between the warrior (παραβάτης) and charioteer (ἡνίοχος). Cp. Pollux 1. 141 ἐπιβεβήκασιν δὲ τοῦ ἄρματῆος δίφρον ἡνίοχος καὶ παραβάτης.

41. 1. μετεκβαίνεσκε: iterative impfs. in σκ regularly omit augment. — 2. ὅκως μιν λόγος αἰρέοι:

ἐς ἀρμάμαξαν. αὐτοῦ δὲ ὀπισθε αἰχμοφόροι Περσέων  
 οἱ ἄριστοί τε καὶ γενναιότατοι χίλιοι, κατὰ νόμον τὰς  
 λόγχας ἔχοντες, μετὰ δὲ ἵππος ἄλλη χιλίῃ ἐκ Περσέων 5  
 ἀπολελεγμένη, μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἵππον ἐκ τῶν λοιπῶν Περ-  
 σέων ἀπολελεγμένοι μύριοι. οὗτος πεζὸς ἦν· καὶ τού-  
 των χίλιοι μὲν ἐπὶ τοῖσι δόρασι ἀντὶ τῶν σαυρωτήρων  
 ῥοιὰς εἶχον χρυσέας καὶ πέριξ συνέκληον τοὺς ἄλλους,  
 οἱ δὲ εἰνακισχίλιοι ἐντὸς τούτων ἔοντες ἀργυρέας ῥοιὰς 10  
 εἶχον. εἶχον δὲ χρυσέας ῥοιὰς καὶ οἱ ἐς τὴν γῆν τρά-  
 ποντες τὰς λόγχας, καὶ μῆλα οἱ ἄγχιστα ἐπόμενοι  
 Ξέρξῃ. τοῖσι δὲ μυρίοισι ἐπετέτακτο ἵππος Περσέων  
 μυρίῃ. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἵππον διελέλειπτο καὶ δύο σταδίους,  
 42 καὶ ἔπειτα ὁ λοιπὸς ὄμιλος ἦε ἀναμίξ. ἐποιεῖτο δὲ  
 τὴν ὁδὸν ἐκ τῆς Λυδίας ὁ στρατὸς ἐπὶ τε ποταμὸν  
 Κάϊκον καὶ γῆν τὴν Μυσίην, ἀπὸ δὲ Καϊκου ὁρμώμενος,  
 Κάνης ὄρος ἔχων ἐν ἀριστερῇ, διὰ τοῦ Ἀταρνέος ἐς

*as often as reason persuaded him, i.e. whenever there was ground for it. ὅπως with iterative opt. as 7. 6. 20. — 3. ἀρμάμαξαν: a covered traveling carriage. — αὐτοῦ δὲ ὀπι- σθε: cp. 7. 40. 18. Quasi-preposi- tions have much freedom of position. — 4. κατὰ νόμον: i.e. ἄνω in contrast with κάτω (7. 40. 9). — 7. μύριοι: the so-called ἀθάνατοι (7. 83. 4). — 8. σαυρω- τήρων: spikes on the butt end of spears. Homer's term is οὐρίαχος, Att. στύραξ. — 11. εἶχον. εἶχον δέ: note the epanastrophe. — καὶ οἱ . . . τράποντες: cp. 7. 40. 9. The*

pres. ptc. here indicates the custom. — 12. μῆλα: (*sc.* χρυσᾶ) hence called μηλοφόροι. Cp. Athen. 12. 514 ἐπὶ τῶν στυράκων μῆλα χρυσᾶ ἔχοντες. — 14. διελέλειπτο: cp. 7. 40. 6. — καὶ δύο: καί, *vel*, thus often with numerals — 15. ὄμιλος: Ionic and poetical, though freq. in Thuc.

MARCH TO ILIUM AND ABYDUS  
 (CC. 42, 43)

42. 2. ποταμὸν Κάϊκον: re- verse of Attic order. — 4. Κάνης ὄρος: rare gen. for Κάνη ὄρος. S. 1322; HA. 729 g. — διὰ τοῦ



Καρήνην πόλιν. ἀπὸ δὲ ταύτης διὰ Θήβης πεδίου<sup>5</sup>  
 ἐπορεύετο, Ἀτραμύττειόν τε πόλιν καὶ Ἄντανδρον τὴν  
 Πελασγίδα παραμβέβηκεν. τὴν Ἰδην δὲ λαβὼν ἐς  
 ἀριστερὴν χεῖρα ἦε ἐς τὴν Ἰλιάδα γῆν. καὶ πρῶτα  
 μὲν οἱ ὑπὸ τῇ Ἰδῇ νύκτα ἀναμείναντι βρονταί τε καὶ  
 πρηστῆρες ἐπεσπίπτουσι καὶ τινα αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ συχρὸν<sup>10</sup>  
 43 ὄμιλον διέφθειραν. ἀπικομένου δὲ τοῦ στρατοῦ ἐπὶ  
 ποταμὸν Σκάμανδρον, ὃς πρῶτος ποταμῶν, ἐπέιτε ἐκ  
 Σαρδίων ὀρμηθέντες ἐπεχείρησαν τῇ ὁδῷ, ἐπέλιπε τὸ  
 ρεῖθρον οὐδ' ἀπέχρησε τῇ στρατιῇ τε καὶ τοῖσι κτήνεσι  
 πινόμενος, ἐπὶ τοῦτον δὴ τὸν ποταμὸν ὡς ἀπίκετο Ξέρ-<sup>5</sup>  
 ξης, ἐς τὸ Πριάμου Πέργαμον ἀνέβη ἡμερον ἔχων  
 θεήσασθαι. θεησάμενος δὲ καὶ πυθόμενος ἐκείνων  
 ἕκαστα τῇ Ἀθηναίῃ τῇ Ἰλιάδι ἔθυσσε βούς χιλίας, χοὰς  
 δὲ οἱ μάγοι τοῖσι ἥρωσι ἐχέαντο. ταῦτα δὲ ποιησαμέ-  
 νοις νυκτὸς φόβος ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐνέπεσε. ἅμα<sup>10</sup>

Ἄταρνός ἐς Καρήνην: cities of Mysia. — 5. διὰ Θήβης: near the Adramyttian Gulf, birthplace of Andromache. Hom. Z 397. — 6. Ἄντανδρον: cp. Verg. *Aen.* 3. 6. — 7. τὴν Ἰδην . . . χεῖρα: i.e. along the eastern side of Gargaron, the highest peak of the ridge of Ida. Cp. Xen. *Anab.* 7. 8. 7, where the Ten Thousand take the same course in the opposite direction. — 9. βρονταί: see on 7. 10. 8. Cp. Hom. Θ 75 f. αὐτὸς δ' ἐξ Ἰδης μεγάλ' ἔκτυπε, δαίόμενον δὲ | ἦκε σέλας μετὰ λαὸν Ἀχαιῶν. — 10. πρηστῆρες: Att. κεραυνοί.

43. 3. ἐπέλιπε τὸ ρεῖθρον: sc. τὴν στρατιήν. Cp. 7. 21. 4. τὸ ρεῖθρον acc. of specification. — 5. ἐπὶ τοῦτον . . . Ξέρξης: resumption of first clause with changed order, subject, and construction. — 6. ἐς τὸ Πριάμου Πέργαμον: i.e. the citadel of Troy (Hom. Πέργαμος ἄκρη) on Hissarlik. — 7. ἐκείνων ἕκαστα: i.e. the legends of Troy. — 8. τῇ Ἀθηναίῃ: cp. Hom. Z 297 ff. For other notices of the continuance of this cult, see Xen. *Hellen.* 1. 1. 4; Arr. *Anab.* 1. 11. 7. — χοὰς . . . τοῖσι ἥρωσι: i.e. libations to those who fell at Troy. — 10. φόβος: as

ἡμέρῃ δὲ ἐπορεύετο ἐνθεῦτεν, ἐν ἀριστερῇ μὲν ἀπέργων  
 'Ροίτειον πόλιν καὶ 'Οφρύνειον καὶ Δάρδανον, ἣ περ δὴ  
 'Αβύδω ὁμουρός ἐστι, ἐν δεξιῇ δὲ Γέργιθας Τευκρούς.  
 44 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγένετο ἐν 'Αβύδω, ἠθέλησε Ξέρξης ιδέσθαι  
 πάντα τὸν στρατόν. καὶ προεπεποίητο γὰρ ἐπὶ κολω-  
 νοῦ ἐπίτηδες αἰτῶ ταύτῃ προξέδρη λίθου λευκοῦ  
 (ἐποίησαν δὲ 'Αβυδηνοὶ ἐντειλαμένου πρότερον βασι-  
 λέος), ἐνθαῦτα ὡς ἴζετο, κατορῶν ἐπὶ τῆς ἡμόνος ἐθηεῖτο  
 καὶ τὸν πεζὸν καὶ τὰς νέας, θηεόμενος δὲ ἡμέρῃ τῶν  
 νεῶν ἀμιλλαν γινομένην ιδέσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένετό τε  
 καὶ ἐνίκων Φοίνικες Σιδώνιοι, ἦσθη τε τῇ ἀμίλλῃ καὶ  
 45 τῇ στρατιῇ. ὥς δὲ ὦρα πάντα μὲν τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον  
 ὑπὸ τῶν νεῶν ἀποκεκρυμμένον, πάσας δὲ τὰς ἀκτὰς  
 καὶ τὰ 'Αβυδηνῶν πεδία ἐπίπλεα ἀνθρώπων, ἐνθαῦτα ὁ  
 Ξέρξης ἐωυτὸν ἐμακάρισε, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἐδάκρυσε.  
 46 μαθὼν δέ μιν Ἀρτάβανος ὁ πάτρως, ὃς τὸ πρῶτον

7. 10. ε 7. — 11. ἀπέργων: *keeping*,  
 as 7. 110. 3; commonly used of  
 boundary mountains, rivers, etc. —  
 12. 'Ροίτειον κτέ.: cities on the  
 Hellespont. — 13. Γέργιθας Τευ-  
 κρούς: the people of Γέργις (or  
 Γέργιθος or Γέργιθα) are called  
 Τευκροί because they claimed de-  
 scent from the Trojans. Cp. 5.  
 122. 8 εἰλε δὲ Γέργιθας τοὺς ὑπο-  
 λαιβθέντας τῶν ἀρχαίων Τευκρῶν.

XERXES REVIEWS THE HOST  
 WITH CONFLICTING EMOTIONS  
 (CC. 44, 45)

44. 2. ἐπὶ κολωνοῦ: doubtless

the hill Mal-tepe on the promontory  
 of Nagara. — 3. ἐπίτηδες αἰτῶ: *ex-  
 pressly for him*. — ταύτῃ: repeat-  
 ing and emphasizing ἐπὶ κολωνοῦ,  
 unless Abresch's conjecture αὐ-  
 τοῦ be adopted, αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ,  
*right there*. — προξέδρη: elsewhere  
 προεδρία. Cp. Darius viewing the  
 crossing of the Bosphorus (4. 88)  
 and Xerxes at the battle of Sala-  
 mis (8. 90). — λίθου λευκοῦ: *i.e.*  
 of marble. Gen. of material. —  
 5. ἐπὶ τῆς ἡμόνος: ἡμῶν = αἰγιαλός.  
 — 6. ἡμέρῃ: = ἐπεθύμησε, as 3.  
 123. 2, 6. 120. 4. — 9. τῇ στρατιῇ:  
 the fleet, as 7. 97. 5.

γνώμην ἀπεδέξατο ἐλευθέρως οὐ συμβουλευὼν Ξέρξῃ  
στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, οὗτος ὦν ἡρ φρασθεὶς  
Ξέρξῃν δακρύσαντα εἶρετο τάδε· ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὡς  
πολλὸν ἀλλήλων κεχωρισμένα ἐργάσω· νῦν τε καὶ 5  
ὀλίγῳ πρότερον· μακαρίσας γὰρ σεωντὸν δακρύεις. ὁ  
δὲ εἶπε· Ἐσῆλθε γάρ με λογισάμενον κατοικτεῖραι ὡς  
βραχὺς εἴη ὁ πᾶς ἀνθρώπινος βίος, εἰ τούτων γε ἔοντων  
τοσούτων οὐδεὶς ἐς ἑκατοστὸν ἔτος περιέσται. ὁ δὲ  
ἀμείβετο λέγων· Ἔτερα τούτου παρὰ τὴν ζόην πεπόν- 10  
θαμεν οἰκτροτέρα. ἐν γὰρ οὕτῳ βραχεὶ βίῳ οὐδεὶς  
οὕτῳ ἄνθρωπος ἐὼν εὐδαίμων πέφυκε, οὔτε τούτων οὔτε  
τῶν ἄλλων, τῷ οὐ παραστήσεται πολλάκις καὶ οὐκὶ  
ἅπαξ τεθνάναι βούλεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ζῶειν. αἱ τε γὰρ  
συμφοραὶ προσπίπτουσιν καὶ αἱ νοῦσοι συνταράσσουσιν 15  
καὶ βραχὺν ἔοντα μακρὸν δοκεῖν εἶναι ποιεῖν  
τὸν βίον. οὕτῳ ὁ μὲν θάνατος μοχθηρῆς ἐούσης τῆς

CONVERSATION BETWEEN XERXES  
AND ARTABANUS (CC. 46-52)

46. 3. οὗτος ὦν ἡρ φρασθεὶς: resuming μαθὼν δέ μιν Ἀ. — 4. ὡς πολλὸν . . . πρότερον: *how different from one another were your acts just now and a little before*. — 7. ἐσῆλθε γάρ με: *for it came upon me, i.e. into my mind*. With the whole sent. cp. Eur. *Med.* 931 εἰσῆλθε μ' οἶκτος εἰ γενήσεται τάδε. — 7. ὡς βραχὺς εἴη κτέ.: dependent on λογισάμενον. — 9. οὐδεὶς: after εἰ, see on 7. 9. 11. — 10. τούτου: depends on the comparative.

— παρὰ τὴν ζόην: *in the course of life*. Cp. 1. 32. 18 παρὰ τὰ ἑβδομήκοντα ἔτη. — πεπόνθαμεν: gnomic perfect. — 12. οὕτῳ: emphatically separated from εὐδαίμων. — 13. παραστήσεται: *will occur*, lit. 'stand by.' Cp. ἐπῆλθε above. — πολλάκις καὶ οὐκ ἅπαξ: for juxtaposition, see on 7. 40. 4. — 14. τεθνάναι βούλεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ζῶειν: cp. 1. 31. 17. For similar sentiments, cp. Theog. 425; Bacchyl. frg. 3; Soph. *O.C.* 1225; *O.T.* 1186; *Aj.* 125; Plato, *Axioch.* 366 ff.; Cic. *Tusc.* 1. 48. — 17. οὕτῳ ὁ μὲν θάνατος κτέ.: cp.

ζῆς καταφυγὴ αἰρετωτάτῃ τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ γέγονε, ὁ δὲ  
 θεὸς γλυκὺν γεύσας τὸν αἰῶνα φθονερὸς ἐν αὐτῷ εὐρί-  
 47 σκεται ἑὼν. Ξέρξης δὲ ἀμείβετο λέγων· Ἀρτάβανε,  
 βιοτῆς μὲν νυν ἀνθρωπηΐης πέρι, εὐούσης τοιαύτης,  
 οἴην περ σὺ διαιρέαι εἶναι, παυσώμεθα, μηδὲ κακῶν  
 μεμνώμεθα χρηστὰ ἔχοντες πρήγματα ἐν χερσὶ·  
 φράσον δέ μοι τόδε· εἴ τοι ἡ ὄψις τοῦ ἐνυπνίου μὴ 5  
 ἐναργῆς οὕτω ἐφάνη, εἶχες ἂν τὴν ἀρχαίην γνώμην,  
 οὐκ ἑὼν με στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἣ μετέστης  
 ἂν; φέρε τοῦτό μοι ἀτρεκέως εἰπέ. ὁ δὲ ἀμείβετο  
 λέγων· ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὄψις μὲν ἡ ἐπιφανεῖσα τοῦ ὀνείρου,  
 ὡς βουλόμεθα ἀμφότεροι, τελευτήσῃ· ἐγὼ δ' ἔτι καὶ 10  
 ἐς τόδε δείματός εἰμι ὑπόπλεος οὐδ' ἐντὸς ἐμεωντοῦ,  
 ἄλλα τε πολλὰ ἐπιλεγόμενος καὶ δὴ καὶ ὀρῶν τοι δύο  
 48 τὰ μέγιστα πάντων ἑόντα πολεμιώτατα. Ξέρξης δὲ  
 πρὸς ταῦτα ἀμείβετο τοισίδε· Δαιμόνιε ἀνδρῶν, κοῖα

Aesch. frg. 343 ὡς οὐ δικαίως θάνα-  
 τον ἔχθουσι βροτοί | ὅσπερ μέγι-  
 στον ῥῦμα τῶν πολλῶν κακῶν. —  
 19. γλυκὺν γεύσας τὸν αἰῶνα: *havi-*  
*ng given a taste of the sweetness*  
*of life* (life as sweet). For the  
 sentiment of the passage, cp. I. 32.  
 50 πολλοῖσι γὰρ δὴ ὑποδέξας ὄλβον  
 ὁ θεὸς προρρίζους ἀνέτρεψε, and  
 Plut. *Mor.* 1107 τοῖς εὐδοκμεῖν  
 δοκοῦσι δέλεαρ ἐστὶ λύπης τὸ  
 ἡδὺ γενομένοις ὧν στερηθῶνται. —  
 ἐν αὐτῷ: *therein*.

47. 3. διαιρέαι: see on 7. 16.  
 γ 2. — 4. μεμνώμεθα: as if from  
 μένομαι, as Hom. ξ 168. Cp.

μέμνεο 5. 105. 13. — χρηστὰ . . .  
 ἐν χερσὶ: *when matters are pros-*  
*perous*. — 7. μετέστης: *sc.* τῆς  
 γνώμης = μετέγνωσ (7. 15. 6), as  
 I. 118. 10. — 11. ἐντὸς ἐμεωντοῦ: *at*  
*myself, compos mentis*. Cp. I. 119.  
 25 ἰδὼν δὲ οὔτε ἐξεπλάγη, ἐντὸς τε  
 ἑωντοῦ γίνεται. — 12. ἐπιλεγόμενος:  
*considering*, freq. in Hdt. — καὶ δὴ  
 καὶ: after ἄλλα adds something  
 with esp. emphasis. Cp. 7. 23. 14,  
 7. 153. 3. — δύο τὰ μέγιστα: note  
 the order, as 7. 129. 10, 7. 149. 15.

48. 2. δαιμόνιε ἀνδρῶν: as 4.  
 126. 3. Cp. Hom. ξ 443 δαιμόνιε  
 ξείνων. — κοῖα ταῦτα λέγεις: short

ταῦτα λέγεις εἶναι δύο μοι πολεμιώτατα ; κότεραί τοι ὁ  
 πεζὸς μεμπτὸς κατὰ τὸ πλήθος ἐστι, καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν  
 στράτευμα φαίνεται πολλαπλήσιον ἔσσεσθαι τοῦ ἡμετέ-  
 5 ρου, ἢ τὸ ναυτικὸν τὸ ἡμέτερον λείψεσθαι τοῦ ἐκείνων,  
 ἢ καὶ συναμφότερα ταῦτα ; εἰ γάρ τοι ταύτῃ φαίνεται  
 ἐνδεέστερα εἶναι τὰ ἡμέτερα πρήγματα, στρατοῦ ἂν  
 ἄλλου τις τὴν ταχίστην ἄγερσιν ποιεοίτο. ὁ δ' ἀμεί-  
 49 βετο λέγων· Ὡ βασιλεῦ, οὔτε στρατὸν τοῦτον, ὅστις  
 γε σύνεσιν ἔχει, μέμφοιτ' ἂν οὔτε τῶν νεῶν τὸ πλήθος.  
 ἦν τε πλέονας συλλέξῃς, τὰ δύο τοι τὰ λέγω πολλῶ ἔτι  
 πολεμιώτερα γίνεται. τὰ δὲ δύο ταῦτά ἐστι γῆ τε καὶ  
 θάλασσα. οὔτε γὰρ τῆς θαλάσσης ἐστὶ λιμὴν τοσοῦ-  
 5 τος οὐδαμόθι, ὥς ἐγὼ εἰκάζω, ὅστις ἐγειρομένου χειμῶ-  
 νος δεξάμενός σεο τοῦτο τὸ ναυτικὸν φερέγγυος ἔσται  
 διασῶσαι τὰς νέας. καίτοι οὐκ ἓνα αὐτὸν δεῖ εἶναι  
 [τὸν λιμένα], ἀλλὰ παρὰ πᾶσαν τὴν ἡπείρου παρ' ἣν  
 δὴ κομίζεαι. οὐκ ὦν δὴ ἐόντων τοι λιμένων ὑποδεξίων, 10  
 μάθε ὅτι αἱ συμφοραὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἄρχουσι καὶ οὐκ

for κοιά ἐστι ταῦτα ἃ λέγεις. S. 2647; HA. 1012 a. — 3. κότερα: *utrum*. — 4. μεμπτὸς κατὰ τὸ πλήθος: cp. I. 77. 3 μεμψθεὶς κατὰ τὸ πλήθος τὸ ἐωυτοῦ στράτευμα. — 5. πολλαπλήσιον: construed as comparative. Cp. 7. 23. 17. — 6. λείψεσθαι τοῦ ἐκείνων: cp. Hom. Ψ 522 τόσσον δὴ Μενέλαος ἀμύμονος Ἀντιλόχοιο λείπετο. — 8. τὰ ἡμέτερα πρήγματα: = δύναμις. — 9. τὴν ταχίστην: sc. ὁδόν. — ἄγερσιν ποιεοίτο: see on 7. 5. 5.

49. I. στρατὸν τοῦτον: the dem.

when deictic freq. omits the art. in Hdt. — 5. οὔτε: correl. in changed form at 14. — 7. φερέγγυος ἔσται: *will be sure* (lit. 'security for'). Cp. 5. 30. 16; Thuc. 8. 68. Ionic and tragic term. The fear was justified later (7. 188, 8. 12, 13). — 8. ἓνα αὐτόν: *one only*. Cp. 7. 130. 4. — 10. ὦν δὴ: cp. 7. 40. 13. — ὑποδεξίων: only here, = ὑποδέκεσθαι δυναμένων. — 11. ὅτι αἱ συμφοραὶ . . . τῶν συμφορέων: cp. Solon's remark to Croesus, I. 32. 22 πᾶν ἐστὶ ἄνθρωπος συμφορή. —

ἄνθρωποι τῶν συμφορέων. καὶ δὴ τῶν δύο τοι τοῦ  
 ἑτέρου εἰρημένου τὸ ἕτερον ἔρχομαι ἐρέων. γῆ δὴ  
 πολεμίῃ τῇδε τοι κατίσταται· εἰ θέλει τοι μηδὲν ἀντί-  
 ξοον καταστῆναι, τοσούτῳ τοι γίνεται πολεμιωτέρῃ<sup>15</sup>  
 ὅσῳ ἂν προβαίνῃς ἑκατέρω, τὸ πρόσω αἰεὶ κλεπτό-  
 μενος· εὐπρηξίης δὲ οὐκ ἔστι ἀνθρώποισι οὐδεμία  
 πληθώρα. καὶ δὴ τοι, ὥς οὐδενὸς ἐναντιούμενον, λέγω τὴν  
 χώραν πλέονα ἐν πλέονι χρόνῳ γινομένην λιμὸν τέξε-  
 σθαι. ἀνὴρ δὲ οὕτω ἂν εἴη ἄριστος, εἰ βουλευόμενος<sup>20</sup>  
 μὲν ἀρρωδέοι, πᾶν ἐπιλεγόμενος πείσεσθαι χρήμα, ἐν  
 50 δὲ τῷ ἔργῳ θρασὺς εἴη. ἀμείβεται Ξέρξης τοισίδε·  
 Ἀρτάβανε, οἰκότως μὲν σύ γε τούτων ἕκαστα διαιρέαι,  
 ἀτὰρ μήτε πάντα φοβεό μήτε πᾶν ὁμοίως ἐπιλέγεο. εἰ  
 γὰρ δὴ βούλοιο ἐπὶ τῷ αἰεὶ ἐπεσφερομένῳ πρήγματι τὸ  
 πᾶν ὁμοίως ἐπιλέγεσθαι, ποιήσεις ἂν οὐδαμὰ οὐδέν·<sup>5</sup>

12. καὶ δὴ: *and now*. Cp. ὦν δὴ just above. — 13. ἔρχομαι ἐρέων: *I am going to say*. Cp. 2. 40. 4, 3. 80. 25, 7. 102. 9. — 14. θέλει: cp. 7. 10. δ 7. — ἀντίξοον: Att. ἐναντίον. — 15. πολεμιωτέρῃ: cp. Aesch. *Pers.* 792 αὐτὴ γὰρ ἡ γῆ ξύμμαχος κείνοις πέλει . . . κτείνουσα λιμῷ τοὺς ὑπερπόλλους ἄγαν. — 16. τὸ πρόσω αἰεὶ κλεπτόμι-  
 νος: *always beguiled on, i.e.* while getting past difficulties not observing that the situation becomes always more perilous. — 17. εὐπρηξίης δὲ . . . πληθώρα: *there is no satiety of well being to mortals*. Cp. Aesch. *Agam.* 1330 τὸ μὲν εὖ πράσσειν ἀκόρεστον ἔφν πᾶσι βρο-

τοῖσιν. — 18. πληθώρα: term borrowed from medicine. — ὥς: *supposing that*. — τὴν χώραν . . . τέξεσθαι: *i.e.* the distance from his base of supplies in Asia becoming even greater, famine will ensue. — 20. οὕτω: explained in the following εἰ clause. — εἰ βουλευόμενος κτέ.: cp. Sall. *Cat.* 1. 6 *prius quam incipias consullo et ubi consulueris mature facto opus est*.

50. 1. ἀμείβεται Ξέρξης: with verbs of saying when the subj. follows asyndeton is the rule in Hdt. and Xen. — 4. ἐπὶ τῷ αἰεὶ ἐπεσφερομένῳ πρήγματι: *upon each matter that further occurs*. On αἰεὶ, see 7. 23. 6. — τὸ πᾶν: used ap-

κρέσσον δὲ πάντα θαρσέοντα ἡμῖν τῶν δεινῶν πά-  
 σχειν μᾶλλον ἢ πᾶν χρήμα προδευμαίνοντα μηδαμὰ  
 μηδὲν παθεῖν. εἰ δὲ ἐρίζων πρὸς πᾶν τὸ λεγόμενον μὴ  
 τὸ βέβαιον ἀποδέξεις, σφάλλεσθαι ὀφείλεις ἐν αὐτοῖσι  
 ὁμοίως καὶ ὁ ὑπεναντία τούτοις λέξας. τοῦτο μὲν νυν <sup>10</sup>  
 ἐπ' ἴσης ἔχει· εἰδέναι δὲ ἄνθρωπον ἔοντα κῶς χρὴ τὸ  
 βέβαιον; δοκέω μὲν οὐδαμῶς. τοῖσι τοίνυν βουλομέ-  
 νοις ποιεῖν ὥς τὸ ἐπίπαν φιλεῖ γίνεσθαι τὰ κέρδεα,  
 τοῖσι δὲ ἐπιλεγομένοις τε πάντα καὶ ὀκνέουσι οὐ μάλα  
 ἐθέλει. ὁρᾷς τὰ Περσέων πρήγματα ἐς ὃ δυνάμιος <sup>15</sup>  
 προκεχώρηκε. εἰ τοίνυν ἐκεῖνοι οἱ πρὸ ἐμέο γεγνημένοι  
 βασιλεῖς γνώμησι ἐχρέωντο ὁμοίῃσι καὶ σύ, ἢ μὴ  
 χρεώμενοι γνώμησι τοιαύτησι ἄλλους συμβούλους  
 εἶχον τοιούτους, οὐκ ἂν κοτε εἶδες αὐτὰ ἐς τοῦτο προελ-  
 θόντα· νῦν δὲ κινδύνους ἀναρριπτεύοντες ἐς τοῦτό σφρα <sup>20</sup>  
 προηγάζοντο. μεγάλα γὰρ πρήγματα μεγάλοις κιν-

parently for variety, and not as  
 differing in force from πᾶν (3). —  
 6. πάντα θαρσέοντα: *having all*  
*confidence*. πάντα is cogn. acc. —  
 7. μᾶλλον: pleonastic after κρέσ-  
 σον. — 8. εἰ δὲ . . . ἀποδέξεις: the  
 cond. is monitory. S. 2328; GMT.  
 447. — ἐρίζων πρὸς: *quarreling*  
*with, objecting to*. — 9. ἐν αὐτοῖσι:  
*therein, i.e. in your objections (ἐρί-*  
*ζων)*. — 10. ὁμοίως καί: see on 7. 15.  
 14. — 11. ἐπ' ἴσης ἔχει: *sc. μοίρης,*  
*is of like part, i.e. amounts to one*  
*and the same thing*. Cp. 1. 74. 7.  
 — εἰδέναι . . . κῶς χρὴ: periphras-  
 is for dubitative subjv. — 12. δο-

κέω μὲν: with unexpressed correl.  
 clause; see on 7. 24. 1. — 13. ὥς  
 τὸ ἐπίπαν: *in general*, as 7. 157.  
 23. Cp. ὥς ἐπίπαν 2. 68. 23; τὸ  
 ἐπίπαν 6. 46. 13. — 14. οὐ μάλα  
 ἐθέλει: *it is not very likely, sc. γίνε-*  
*σθαι τὰ κέρδεα*. ἐθέλει for variety  
 after φιλεῖ. — 15. ἐς ὃ δυνάμιος:  
 gen. of degree. — 19. προελθόντα:  
 suppl. ptc. in indir. disc. S. 2112 b;  
 GMT. 904. — 20. κινδύνους ἀναρ-  
 ριπτεύοντες: *risking dangers*. The  
 phrase is after the analogy of  
 κύβον ἀναρριπτεῖν, *to cast the*  
*dice*. Cp. Thuc. 4. 85. 13 κίνδυνον  
 τοσόνδε ἀνερρίψαμεν. — σφρα: for

δύνοισι ἐθέλει καταρῖσθαι. ἡμεῖς τοίνυν ὁμοιούμενοι  
ἐκείνοισι ὥρην τε τοῦ ἔτεος καλλίστην πορευόμεθα καὶ  
καταστρεψάμενοι πᾶσαν τὴν Εὐρώπην νοστήσομεν  
ὀπίσω, οὔτε λιμῶ ἐντυχόντες οὐδαμόθι οὔτε ἄλλο ἄχαρι 25  
οὐδὲν παθόντες. τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ αὐτοὶ πολλὴν φορβὴν  
φερόμενοι πορευόμεθα, τοῦτο δέ, τῶν ἂν κου ἐπιβέωμεν  
γῆν καὶ ἔθνος, τούτων τὸν σῆτον ἔχομεν· ἐπ' ἀροτῆρας  
51 δὲ καὶ οὐ νομάδας στρατευόμεθα ἄνδρας. λέγει Ἀρτά-  
βανος μετὰ ταῦτα· ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐπεῖτε ἀρρωδεῖν οὐδὲν  
ἔᾱς πρῆγμα, σὺ δέ μεο συμβουλίην ἐνδεξαι· ἀναγ-  
καίως γὰρ ἔχει περὶ πολλῶν πρηγμάτων πλέονα λόγον  
ἐκτεῖναι. Κῦρος ὁ Καμβύσεω Ἰωνίην πᾶσαν πλὴν 5  
Ἀθηναίων κατεστρέψατο δασμοφόρον εἶναι Πέρσῃσι.  
τούτους ὦν τοὺς ἄνδρας συμβουλεύω τοι μηδεμὴ  
μηχανῇ ἄγειν ἐπὶ τοὺς πατέρας· καὶ γὰρ ἄνευ τούτων  
οἰοί τέ εἰμεν τῶν ἐχθρῶν κατυπέρτεροι γίνεσθαι. ἥ γάρ  
σφεας, ἣν ἔπωνται, δεῖ ἀδικωτάτους γίνεσθαι καταδου- 10  
λουμένους τὴν μητρόπολιν, ἥ δικαιοτάτους συνελευθε-

variety after αὐτά. — 22. καταρῖ-  
σθαι: *to be won*. Cp. Thuc. I. 121.  
17 ὃ δ' ἐκείνοι ἐπιστήμῃ προὔχουσι  
καθαίρετόν ἡμῖν ἐστι μελέτη. —  
— 23. ὥρην: the acc. as 2. 2. 12. —  
Cp. 7. 125. 3, 7. 151. 6, 7. 181. 4,  
7. 203. 6. — 27. ἐπιβέωμεν γῆν:  
rare acc. for gen. after Homeric  
precedent. Hom. Ξ 226, ε 50.  
Cp. Soph. *Al.* 144 λειμῶν' ἐπι-  
βάντα. For form, see Dial. § 1.  
1. 2. — 29. οὐ νομάδας: like the  
Scythians 7. 10. α 10.

51. 3. σὺ δέ: δέ in apod., as

freq. in Hom. and Hdt. Cp. 7.  
103. 10, 7. 153. 15. Syn. § 2. 8.  
3. — ἀναγκαίως ἔχει: = ἀναγκαῖόν  
ἐστίν. — 4. πλέονα λόγον ἐκτεῖναι:  
*to make a very long argument*  
= *μηκύνειν λόγον* 2. 35. 2. Cp.  
Soph. *Trach.* 679 μεῖζον' ἐκτενῶ  
λόγον. — 5. πλὴν Ἀθηναίων: reck-  
oned, as mother city, ethnograph-  
ically with Ionia. — 6. δασμοφόρον  
εἶναι: explan. inf. after κατεστρέ-  
ψατο. — 8. τοὺς πατέρας: as 8.  
22. 6. Cp. 7. 9. α 2, where the  
Ionians are called παῖδες of the



ροῦντας. ἀδικώτατοι μὲν νυν γινόμενοι οὐδὲν κέρδος μέγα ἡμῖν προσβάλλουσι, δικαιοτάτοι δὲ γινόμενοι οἰοί τε δηλήσασθαι μεγάλως τὴν σὴν στρατιὴν γίνονται. ἐς θυμὸν ὦν βάλεο καὶ τὸ παλαιὸν ἔπος ὡς εὖ<sup>15</sup> εἴρηται, τὸ μὴ ἅμα ἀρχῇ πᾶν τέλος καταφαίνεσθαι. 52 ἀμείβεται πρὸς ταῦτα Ξέρξης· Ἀρτάβανε, τῶν ἀπεφώνω γνωμέων σφάλλεαι κατὰ ταύτην δὴ μάλιστα, ὃς Ἴωνας φοβέαι μὴ μεταβάλωσι, τῶν ἔχομεν γνώμα μέγιστον, τῶν σύ τε μάρτυς γίνεαι καὶ οἱ συστρατευσάμενοι Δαρείῳ ἄλλοι ἐπὶ Σκύθας, ὅτι ἐπὶ τούτοις ἡ<sup>5</sup> πᾶσα Περσικὴ στρατιὴ ἐγένετο διαφθεῖραι καὶ περιποιῆσαι· οἱ δὲ δικαιοσύνην καὶ πιστότητα ἐνέδωκαν, ἄχαρι δὲ οὐδέν. πάρεξ δὲ τούτου, ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρῃ καταλιπόντας τέκνα τε καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ χρήματα οὐδ' ἐπιλέγεσθαι χρή νεώτερόν τι ποιήσιν. οὕτω μὴδὲ τοῦτο<sup>10</sup> φοβεό, ἀλλὰ θυμὸν ἔχων ἀγαθὸν σῶζε οἶκόν τε τὸν ἐμὸν καὶ τυραννίδα τὴν ἐμήν· σοὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ μούνῳ ἐκ πάντων σκῆπτρα τὰ ἐμὰ ἐπιτρέπω.

Athenians. — 14. δηλήσασθαι . . . τὴν σὴν στρατιήν: as at Mycale (9. 103 f.). — 15. ἐς θυμὸν βάλεο: cp. Hom. A 296 ἐνὶ φρεσὶ βάλλεο σῆσιν. — 16. τὸ . . . καταφαίνεσθαι: explanatory of τὸ παλαιὸν ἔπος. The art. belongs to the whole clause.

52. 3. μεταβάλωσι: *change position*, i.e. revolt, as 8. 22. 18. — γνώμα: like γνώρισμα = τεκμήριον, *token* or *proof*. The γνώμα is explained in the ὅτι clause. — 4. τῶν: both rels. stand for τῶν Ἰόνων. Or the second τῶν

may stand for *πρηγμάτων* implied in γνώμα. — 5. ὅτι . . . περιποιῆσαι: pers. const. with explanatory inf., where the Eng. const. takes the noun (στρατιή) as obj. of the inf. For ἐπὶ τούτοις see on 7. 10. γ 11. — 7. ἐνέδωκαν: *exhibited*. Cp. ἐνδιδόναι μαλακὸν οὐδέν 3. 51. 9, 3. 105. 11. — 9. ἐπιλέγεσθαι: with dependent inf. as 7. 49. 21. — 10. νεώτερόν τι ποιήσιν: stock expression for political innovation or revolution. — 13. σκῆπτρα: plur. as in tragedy.

53 Ταῦτα εἶπας καὶ Ἀρτάβανον ἀποστείλας ἐς Σοῦσα δεύτερα μετεπέμψατο Ξέρξης Περσέων τοὺς δοκιμωτάτους· ἐπεὶ δέ οἱ παρήσαν, ἔλεγέ σφι τάδε· ὦ Πέρσαι, τῶνδ' ἐγὼ ὑμέων χρήζων συνέλεξα, ἄνδρας τε γίνεσθαι ἀγαθοὺς καὶ μὴ καταισχύνειν τὰ πρόσθε ἐργασμένα· Πέρσῃσι, ἔοντα μεγάλα τε καὶ πολλοῦ ἄξια, ἀλλ' εἰς τε ἕκαστος καὶ οἱ σύμπαντες προθυμίην ἔχωμεν· ξυνὸν γὰρ πᾶσι τοῦτο ἀγαθὸν σπεύδεται. τῶνδε δὲ εἵνεκα προαγορεύω ἀντέχεσθαι τοῦ πολέμου ἐντεταμένως· ὥς γὰρ ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι, ἐπ' ἄνδρας στρατευόμεθα ἀγα-  
10 θούς, τῶν ἣν κρατήσωμεν, οὐ μὴ τις ἡμῖν ἄλλος στρα-  
τὸς ἀντιστῇ κοτε ἀνθρώπων. νῦν δὲ διαβαίνωμεν ἐπεν-  
ξάμενοι τοῖσι θεοῖσι οἱ Περσίδα γῆν λελόγχασι.

54 Ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέρην παρεσκευάζοντο ἐς τὴν διά-  
βασιν, τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίῃ ἀνέμενον τὸν ἥλιον ἐθέλοντες

XERXES EXHORTS THE PERSIANS;  
AFTER WHICH SACRIFICES ARE  
OFFERED AND THE BRIDGE IS  
CROSSED (CC. 53-55).

53. 2. δεύτερα: as 7. 18. 6. —  
4. χρήζων: with gen. of person  
and thing, as freq. δίδομαι. Cp.  
8. 144. 29 τῶν ἐκείνος ἡμέων προσ-  
εδεῖτο. τῶνδε is carried out in the  
inf. clauses. — 6. ἀλλ' . . . ἔχωμεν:  
transition from inf. to independent  
const. for more direct appeal. —  
7. ξυνὸν γὰρ . . . σπεύδεται: for  
as a good common to all, this is  
striven for. τοῦτο refers to ἄν-  
δρας τε γίνεσθαι . . . Πέρσῃσι  
above. Or perhaps the purposed

subjugation of Greece is the com-  
mon good. ξυνόν is Ionic and  
poetic. — 9. ἐντεταμένως: as 4. 14.  
12, 8. 128. 2. — 11. οὐ μὴ . . .  
ἀντιστῇ: strong denial. S. 2755;  
GMT. 295. — 13. οἱ . . . λελόγ-  
χασι: to whose lot Persia has  
fallen. Such allotment of cities  
or countries to special deities was  
an idea prevalent among the  
Greeks from the earliest times. Cp.  
Hom. O 190; Aesch. Suppl. 704;  
Thuc. 2.74. 9; Plato Critias 109 b;  
Theocr. 7. 103. The proof for a  
similar conception among the Per-  
sians seems to be meager (inscrip-  
tions at Persepolis).

54. 2. τὸν ἥλιον . . . ἀνίσχοντα:

ιδέσθαι ἀνίσχοντα, θυμῆματά τε παντοῖα ἐπὶ τῶν γεφυρέων καταγίζοντες καὶ μυρσίῃσι στορνύντες τὴν ὁδόν. ὥς δ' ἐπανέτελλε ὁ ἥλιος, σπένδων ἐκ χρυσῆς 5 φιάλης Ξέρξης ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν εὔχετο πρὸς τὸν ἥλιον μηδεμίαν οἱ συντυχίην τοιαύτην γενέσθαι, ἥ μιν παύσει καταστρέψασθαι τὴν Εὐρώπην πρότερον ἢ ἐπὶ τέρμασι τοῖσι ἐκείνης γένηται. εὐξάμενος δὲ ἐσέβαλε τὴν φιάλην ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ χρύσειον κρητῆρα καὶ 10 Περσικὸν ξίφος, τὸν ἀκινάκην καλέουσι. ταῦτα οὐκ ἔχω ἀτρεκέως διακρίναι οὔτε εἰ τῷ ἡλίῳ ἀνατιθεῖς κατῆκε ἐς τὸ πέλαγος οὔτε εἰ μετεμέλησέ οἱ τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον μαστιγώσαντι καὶ ἀντὶ τούτων τὴν θάλασσαν ἔδωρεῖτο. 55 ὥς δὲ ταῦτά οἱ ἐπεποιήτο, διέβαινον κατὰ μὲν τὴν ἐτέρην τῶν γεφυρέων τὴν πρὸς τοῦ Πόντου ὁ πεζός τε καὶ ἡ

the Persians were sun-worshippers, hence the sacred moment of sunrise was awaited for the ceremonies introductory to the crossing. So the choice of king was connected with the sunrise, 3. 84. 15. — 4. μυρσίῃσι . . . τὴν ὁδόν: as was done at Susa when the news came that Xerxes had reached Athens (8. 99. 3). στορνυμι poetic by-form occurring in Hom. ρ 32. — 5. σπένδων: since the Persians did not use wine libations (1. 132. 4), Xerxes was prob. following here the custom of the region. — 6. εὔχετο πρὸς τὸν ἥλιον: for the usual dat. — 7. παύσει καταστρέψασθαι: const. of verbs of hindering (S. 2038; GMT. 807),

instead of usual suppl. ptc. (S. 2098; GMT. 879). For difference in meaning, see S. 2140; GMT. 903. 5. Cp. 5. 67. 4 βαψφδοὺς ἔπαυσε ἐν Σικυῶνι ἀγωνίζεσθαι. — 8. πρότερον ἢ . . . γένηται: as πρὶν ἢ, followed by subjv. without ἄν in Hdt. See on 7. 8. β 8. The necessary preceding negative is contained in μηδεμίαν. — τέρμασι: poetic term = ὁροις. — 11. ἀκινάκην: a short Persian cavalry sword. — 14. τὴν θάλασσαν ἔδωρεῖτο: as 1. 54. 4 Δελφοὺς δωρεῖται. Cp. 5. 37. 4 τῷ Δαρείῳ Μυτιλήνην ἔδωρήσατο. The Attic const. is δωρεῖσθαι τινί τι.

55. 2. πρὸς τοῦ . . . πρὸς τό: variety without distinction. —

ἵππος ἅπασα, κατὰ δὲ τὴν πρὸς τὸ Αἰγαῖον τὰ ὑποζύγια  
καὶ ἡ θεραπῆή. ἡγέοντο δὲ πρῶτα μὲν οἱ μύριοι  
Πέρσαι, ἑστεφανωμένοι πάντες, μετὰ δὲ τούτους ὁ σύμ- 5  
μικτος στρατὸς παντοίων ἐθνέων. ταύτην μὲν τὴν  
ἡμέρην οὗτοι, τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίῃ πρῶτοι μὲν οἱ τε ἱππῶται  
καὶ οἱ τὰς λόγχας κάτω τράποντες· ἑστεφάνωντο δὲ  
καὶ οὗτοι. μετὰ δὲ οἱ τε ἵπποι οἱ ἱροὶ καὶ τὸ ἄρμα τὸ  
ἱρόν, ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτός τε Ξέρξης καὶ οἱ αἰχμοφόροι καὶ 10  
οἱ ἱππῶται οἱ χίλιοι, ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ὁ ἄλλος στρατός.  
καὶ αἱ νέες ἅμα ἀνήγοντο ἐς τὴν ἀπεναντίον. ἤδη δὲ  
ἤκουσα καὶ ὕστατον διαβῆναι βασιλέα πάντων.

56 Ξέρξης δὲ ἐπέιτε διέβη ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, ἐθηεῖτο τὸν  
στρατὸν ὑπὸ μαστίγων διαβαίνοντα. διέβη δὲ ὁ στρα-  
τὸς αὐτοῦ ἐν ἑπτὰ ἡμέρησι καὶ ἐν ἑπτὰ εὐφρόνησι,  
ἐλινύσας οὐδένα χρόνον. ἐνθαῦτα λέγεται Ξέρξεω ἤδη  
διαβεβηκότος τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἄνδρα εἰπεῖν Ἑλλη- 5  
σπόντιον· ὦ Ζεῦ, τί δὴ ἀνδρὶ εἰδόμενος Πέρση καὶ  
οὐνομα ἀντὶ Διὸς Ξέρξην θέμενος ἀνάστατον τὴν Ἑλ-

4. ἡ θεραπῆή: *body of servants, retinue*; abstract for concrete. — ἡγέοντο δὲ πρῶτα: see on 7. 40. 3. — οἱ μύριοι: 7. 41. 7. — 7. οὗτοι: *sc.* διέβησαν. — 9. ἱπποὶ οἱ ἱροὶ: cp. 7. 40. 10. — 11. ἱππῶται οἱ χίλιοι: cp. 7. 40. 7. — 12. ἐς τὴν ἀπεναντίον: *sc.* ἀκτὴν. — ἤδη: *etiam*, used here, as several times elsewhere, to introduce a variant tradition (2. 175. 25, 7. 35. 3, 9. 84. 3, 9. 95. 3). Cp. Arr. *Anab.* 6. 28. 1 ἤδη δὲ τινες καὶ τοιάδε ἀνέγραφαν.

XERXES THE ZEUS OF THE PER-  
SIANS

56. 2. ὑπὸ μαστίγων: cp. 7. 22. 5. — 4. ἐλινύσας: Ionic and poetic verb = παυσάμενος. — λέγεται: impersonal *c. acc. et inf.* The stress is on the remark, not the person. — 6. εἰδόμενος: epic term, as 6. 69. 5. — 7. ἀντὶ Διὸς Ξέρξην: cp. Gorgias (apud Long. *De Subl.* 1. 3), Ξέρξης ὁ τῶν Περσῶν Ζεὺς. — ἀνάστατον: *laid waste*; of cities, *destroyed*; of

λάδα θέλεις ποιῆσαι, ἄγων πάντας ἀνθρώπους ; καὶ γὰρ ἄνευ τούτων ἐξῆν τοι ποιεῖν ταῦτα.

- 57 Ὡς δὲ διέβησαν πάντες, ἐς ὁδὸν ὀρμημένοισι τέρας σφί ἐφάνη μέγα, τὸ Ξέρξης ἐν οὐδενὶ λόγῳ ἐποιήσατο καίπερ εὐσύμβλητον εἶν· ἵππος γὰρ ἔτεκε λαγόν. εὐσύμβλητον ὦν τῇδε τοῦτο ἐγένετο, ὅτι ἔμελλε μὲν ἔλαιν στρατιὴν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα Ξέρξης ἀγαυρότατα καὶ 5 μεγαλοπρεπέστατα, ὀπίσω δὲ περὶ ἑωυτοῦ τρέχων ἦξειν ἐς τὸν αὐτὸν χώρον. ἐγένετο δὲ καὶ ἕτερον αὐτῷ τέρας εἶντι ἐν Σάρδισι· ἡμίονος γὰρ ἔτεκε ἡμίονον διξὰ ἔχουσαν αἰδοῖα, τὰ μὲν ἔρσενος, τὰ δὲ θηλέης· κατῷ 58 περθε δὲ ἦν τὰ τοῦ ἔρσενος. τῶν ἀμφοτέρων λόγον οὐδένα ποιησάμενος τὸ πρόσω ἐπορεύετο, σὺν δέ οἱ ὁ πεζὸς στρατός. ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς ἔξω τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον πλέων παρὰ γῆν ἐκομίζετο, τὰ ἔμπαλιν πρήσσω τῷ πεζοῦ. ὁ μὲν γὰρ πρὸς ἐσπέρην ἔπλει, ἐπὶ Σαρπη-5

people, *driven out*, as 7. 118. 4. —

8. πάντας ἀνθρώπους: cp. 7. 157. 8.

MARCH FROM THE HELLESPONT  
TO DORISCUS. PRODIGIES (CC.  
57, 58)

57. 2. ἐν . . . ἐποιήσατο: cp.  
7. 14. 6. — 4. εὐσύμβλητον: cp.  
Aesch. *Prom.* 801 ἡδ' οὐκέτ' εὐξύμ-  
βλητος ἢ χρησμοφδία. — 5. ἀγα-  
ρότατα: cp. Hes. *Theog.* 832  
ταῦρος ἀγαυρός. — 6. ὀπίσω: with  
ἦξειν. — περὶ ἑωυτοῦ τρέχων: as  
8. 102. 13, 8. 140. 21. Cp. τρέχων  
περὶ τῆς ψυχῆς 9. 37. 9; Hom.  
X 161. A Greek proverb was

λαγὼς τὸν περὶ τῶν κρεῶν [*sc.*  
δρόμον] τρέχει. — 8. διξὰ: Att.  
δισσά. — 9. τὰ μὲν κτί.: the portent  
signified that he went forth like a  
man, but fled home like a woman.

58. 3. ἔξω . . . πλέων: *sailing*  
*out of the Hellespont*. For const.  
see on 7. 29. 3. — 4. τὰ ἔμπαλιν:  
*in the reverse direction*, governing  
the gen. as 2. 19. 11. Regularly  
adv. in Hdt. — πρήσσω: *sc.* κέ-  
λευθον (as found in Hom.), *mak-*  
*ing its way*. — 5. πρὸς ἐσπέρην  
ἔπλει: the course was first *west-*  
*ward* (through the Hellespont),  
then northward. — ἐπὶ Σαρπηδονίης

δονίης ἄκρης ποιέμενος τὴν ἄπιξιν, ἐς τὴν αὐτῷ  
 προείρητο ἀπικομένῳ περιμένειν· ὁ δὲ κατ' ἡπειρον  
 στρατὸς πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ ἡλίου ἀνατολὰς ἐποιεῖτο τὴν  
 ὁδὸν διὰ τῆς Χερσονήσου, ἐν δεξιῇ μὲν ἔχων τὸν  
 Ἑλλης τάφον τῆς Ἀθάμαντος, ἐν ἀριστερῇ δὲ Καρδίην<sup>10</sup>  
 πόλιν, διὰ μέσης δὲ πορευόμενος πόλιος τῇ οὐνομα  
 τυγχάνει ἐὼν Ἀγορῇ. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ κάμπτων τὸν κόλπον  
 τὸν Μέλανα καλεόμενον καὶ Μέλανα ποταμόν, οὐκ ἀντι-  
 σχόντα τότε τῇ στρατιῇ τὸ ρεῖθρον ἀλλ' ἐπιλιπόντα,  
 τοῦτον τὸν ποταμόν διαβάς, ἐπ' οὗ καὶ ὁ κόλπος οὗτος<sup>15</sup>  
 τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ἔχει, ἥτε πρὸς ἐσπέρην, Αἰνόν τε πόλιν  
 Αἰολίδα καὶ Στεντοριδα λίμνην παρεξιών, ἐς ὃ ἀπίκητο  
 59 ἐς Δορίσκον. ὁ δὲ Δορίσκος ἐστὶ τῆς Θρήκης αἰγιαλός  
 τε καὶ πεδίου μέγα, διὰ δὲ αὐτοῦ ρεῖ ποταμὸς μέγας  
 Ἑβρος· ἐν τῷ τείχός τε ἐδέδμητο βασιλῆιον τοῦτο τὸ  
 δὴ Δορίσκος κέκληται, καὶ Περσέων φρουρὴ ἐν αὐτῷ

ἄκρης: now Cape Paxi, the north-west limit of the gulf of Melas. —

6. ποιέμενος τὴν ἄπιξιν: = ἀπικνεῖσθαι. Cp. Dem. 5. 8 τὴν τότε ἄπιξιν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐποιήσατο. — 8. πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ ἡλίου ἀνατολὰς: as I. 201. 4, 3. 98. 5, 4. 44. 8, after the analogy of the Homeric πρὸς ἡῷ τ' ἡελίον τε (M 239, ν 240). Cp. πρὸς ἡῷ τε καὶ ἡλίον ἀνατέλλοντα I. 204. 3. — 9. τὸν Ἑλλης τάφον: near Pactye on the Chersonese. According to tradition, Helle was drowned near by in the strait that was named for her. — 12. Ἀγορῇ: near the mouth of the Melas, and so-called prob.

because, situated on the boundary between the Chersonese and Thrace, it became a neutral market. — 13. οὐκ ἀντισχόντα . . . ἀλλ' ἐπιλιπόντα: cp. 7. 43. 3. τὸ ρεῖθρον acc. of specification. — 15. τοῦτον τὸν ποταμόν: takes up Μέλανα ποταμόν. — ἐπ' οὗ: see on 7. 40. 12. — 17. Στεντοριδα λίμνην: near the mouth of the Hebrus. — ἐς δ: *un-til*, Herodotean const. GMT. 616.

COUNTING OF THE HOST (CC.  
 59, 60)

59. 3. τοῦτο τὸ . . . κέκληται: explanatory of τείχος βασιλῆιον.  
 — 4. ἐν αὐτῷ: note transition to

κατεστήκει ὑπὸ Δαρείου ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ χρόνου ἐπείτε  
ἐπὶ Σκύθας ἐστρατεύετο. ἔδοξε ὦν τῷ Ξέρξῃ ὁ χῶρος  
εἶναι ἐπιτήδεος ἐνδιατάξαι τε καὶ ἐξαριθμῆσαι τὸν στρα-  
τόν, καὶ ἐποίει ταῦτα. τὰς μὲν δὴ νέας τὰς πάσας ἀπι-  
κομένας ἐς Δορίσκον οἱ ναύαρχοι κελεύσαντος Ξέρξεω  
ἐς τὸν αἰγιαλὸν τὸν προσεχέα Δορίσκῳ ἐκόμισαν, ἐν<sup>10</sup>  
τῷ Σάλῃ τε Σαμοθρηκίῃ πεπόλισται πόλις καὶ Ζώνη,  
τελευταίῃ δὲ αὐτοῦ Σέρρειον ἄκρῃ ὀνομαστή. ὁ δὲ  
χῶρος οὗτος τὸ παλαιὸν ἦν Κικόνων. ἐς τοῦτον τὸν  
αἰγιαλὸν κατασχόντες τὰς νέας ἀνέψυχον ἀνελκύσαντες.  
ὁ δὲ ἐν τῷ Δορίσκῳ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον τῆς στρατιῆς<sup>15</sup>  
60 ἀριθμὸν ἐποιεῖτο. ὅσον μὲν νυν ἕκαστοι παρῆχον  
πλήθος ἐς ἀριθμὸν, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν τὸ ἀτρεκές (οὐ γὰρ  
λέγεται πρὸς οὐδαμῶν ἀνθρώπων), σύμπαντος δὲ τοῦ  
στρατοῦ τοῦ πεζοῦ τὸ πλήθος ἐφάνη ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ  
ἐκατὸν μυριάδες. ἐξηρίθμησαν δὲ τόνδε τὸν τρόπον·<sup>5</sup>  
συναγαγόντες ἐς ἓνα χῶρον μυριάδα ἀνθρώπων καὶ  
συννάξαντες ταύτην ὡς μάλιστα εἶχον περιέγραψαν  
ἔξωθεν κύκλον· περιγράψαντες δὲ καὶ ἀπέντες τοὺς

personal pronoun. Cp. αὐτοῦ be-  
low (12). S. 2517; HA. 1005. —  
5. ἐπείτε: *cum*, as 9. 26. 8; usually  
ὅτε. — 8. ἐποίει ταῦτα: *proceeded*  
*to do this*. Cp. 7. 100. 4, 7. 128. 10.  
— 11. Σαμοθρηκίῃ: Samothrace  
had several walled towns, on the  
opp. Thracian coast. Cp. 7. 108. 7.  
— 12. τελευταίῃ δὲ αὐτοῦ: *sc. ἐστίν*,  
*at the end of it*. — ὀνομαστή: on  
account of the legend of Orpheus,  
said to have been torn to pieces

here by Thracian women. — 13. τὸ  
παλαιόν: cp. Hom. B 846, i 39.  
— 14. ἀνέψυχον: *refreshed*, the  
ships being personified. Cp. Xen.  
*Hellen.* 1. 5. 10.

60. 3. πρὸς οὐδαμῶν: see on  
2. 12. — 4. ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ ἐκα-  
τὸν μυριάδες: Ctesias (*Pers.* 22)  
gives the total of the foot at  
800,000; Aelian (*V.H.* 13. 3) and  
Nepos (*Them.* 2), at 700,000. —  
5. τόνδε τὸν τρόπον: cp. τούτῳ τῷ

μυρίους αίμασιήν περιέβαλον κατὰ τὸν κύκλον, ὕψος ἀνήκουσαν ἀνδρὶ ἐς τὸν ὀμφαλόν. ταύτην δὲ ποιήσαντες 10 ἄλλους ἐσεβίβαζον ἐς τὸ περιοικοδομημένον, μέχρι οὗ πάντας τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐξηρίθμησαν. ἀριθμήσαντες δὲ κατὰ ἔθνεα διέτασσον.

61 Οἱ δὲ στρατευόμενοι οἶδε ᾗσαν, Πέρσαι μὲν ὧδε ἔσκευασμένοι· περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον τιάρας καλεομένους, πῖλους ἀπαγέας, περὶ δὲ τὸ σῶμα κιθῶνας χειριδωτοὺς ποικίλους, λεπίδος σιδηρῆς ὅψιν ἰχθυοειδούς, περὶ δὲ τὰ σκέλεα ἀναξυρίδας, ἀντὶ δὲ ἀσπίδων 5 γέρρα· ὑπὸ δὲ φαρετρῶνες ἐκρέμαντο· αἰχμὰς δὲ

τρόπῳ below (12). — 9. κατὰ τὸν κύκλον: *along the circle* which they had drawn. — 11. μέχρι οὗ: in Hdt. = simple μέχρι.

#### CATALOGUE AND EQUIPMENT OF ARMY AND FLEET (CC. 61-99). FOOT FORCE (CC. 61-83)

The following enumeration and description is, with the list of νομοί or tax districts (3. 90 ff.) instituted by Darius, the most important source of ethnographical knowledge of ancient Asia. It includes 61 tribes in 4 groups: 1. from the Tigris to the Indus (cc. 61-68); 2. southern tribes (cc. 69-71); 3. from Asia Minor and Armenia (cc. 72-80); 4. from the coast and islands of the eastern Mediterranean (fleet, cc. 89-95). Herodotus does not give his authority, but it is fair to suppose that he had access to the official

lists made by the royal scribes (γραμματισταί, cp. 7. 100. 5).

#### PERSIANS

61. 2. τιάρας, πῖλους ἀπαγέας: *turbans, soft* (lit. 'unstiffened') *felt hats*. These were round caps, falling forward at the top. The king alone wore the stiff, upright tiara (Xen. *Anab.* 2. 5. 23). ὁ τιάρας, as 1. 132. 7, generally ἡ τιάρα. — 3. περὶ τὸ σῶμα: note change for variety from dat. (περὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι). — κιθῶνας χειριδωτοὺς: the adj. only here. As Hdt. distinguishes κιθῶν from θώρηξ (9. 22. 12), possibly some words like ὑπὸ δὲ θώρηκας πεποιημένους have been lost from the text before λεπίδος. — 4. λεπίδος σιδηρῆς ὅψιν ἰχθυοειδούς: *of iron scales fish-like in appearance*. Gen. of material and acc. of specification. — 6. ὑπὸ δέ: the shield when not



βραχέας εἶχον, τόξα δὲ μεγάλα, οἷστοὺς δὲ καλαμίνους, πρὸς δὲ ἐγχειρίδια παρὰ τὸν δεξιὸν μηρὸν παραιωρεόμενα ἐκ τῆς ζώνης. καὶ ἄρχοντα παρείχοντο Ὀτάνεα τὸν Ἀμήςτριος, πατέρα τῆς Ξέρξεω γυναικός. ἐκαλέοντο δὲ πάλαι ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων Κηφῆνες, ὑπὸ μέντοι σφέων αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν περιοίκων Ἀρταῖοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ Περσεὺς ὁ Δανάης τε καὶ Διὸς ἀπίκετο παρὰ Κηφέα τὸν Βήλου καὶ ἔσχε αὐτοῦ τὴν θυγατέρα Ἀνδρομέδην, γίνεται αὐτῷ παῖς τῷ οὖνομα ἔθετο Πέρσην, τοῦτον δὲ αὐτοῦ καταλείπει. ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἄπαις ἔων ὁ Κηφεὺς ἔρσηνος γόνου. ἐπὶ τούτου δὴ τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ἔσχον. 62 Μῆδοι δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν ταύτην ἐσταλμένοι ἐστρατεύοντο. Μηδικὴ γὰρ αὕτη ἡ σκευὴ ἐστὶ καὶ οὐ Περσικὴ. οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι ἄρχοντα μὲν παρείχοντο Τιγράνην ἄνδρα Ἀχαιμενίδην, ἐκαλέοντο δὲ πάλαι πρὸς πάντων Ἄριοι, ἀπι-

in use hung over the back and covered the quiver. — 8. ἐγχειρίδια: = ἀκινάκαι 7. 54. 11. — παρὰ τὸν δεξιὸν μηρόν: confirmed by the monuments; contrary to the Greek custom. — 11. Κηφῆνες: likeness of name caused Πέρσης, tribal father of the Persians, to be regarded as the son of Περσεύς, and Πέρσης being maternal grandson of Κηφεύς led to the identification of the Πέρσαι with the Κηφῆνες, so named from Κηφεύς. The latter was really a mythical appellation of a people once dominant in Asia Minor. — 12. Ἀρταῖοι: prob. only a *nomen appellativum* from *arta* (Skt. *ṛta*), *high, mighty*. Cp.

Ἀρταξέρξης, Ἀρταφρένης, Ἀρτάβατος. For a fabulous Persian district Ἀρταία, see Steph. s. v. — 13. Περσεὺς ὁ Δανάης κτέ.: for the genealogy cp. 7. 150. 6-9. — 14. ἔσχε: sc. γυναῖκα, ingressive. — 16. ἄπαις ἔρσηνος γόνου: *childless of male issue*, as 7. 205. 4. For gen. with ἄπαις, see S. 1428; HA. 753 c. The expression is Herodotean and poetic.

#### MEDES

62. 1. τὴν αὐτὴν ταύτην: sc. στολήν. Cp. 7. 72. 6, 7. 84. 2. — 3. Τιγράνην: son of Artabanus. He fell as leader of the Persians at Mycale (9. 96, 9. 102). — 4. Ἄριοι:

κομένης δὲ Μηδείης τῆς Κολχίδος ἐξ Ἀθηνέων ἐς τοὺς 5  
 Ἀρίους τούτους μετέβαλον καὶ οὗτοι τὸ οὖνομα. αὐτοὶ  
 περὶ σφέων ὧδε λέγουσι Μῆδοι. Κίσσιοι δὲ στρατευό-  
 μνοι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα κατὰ περ Πέρσαι ἐσκευάδατο, ἀντὶ  
 δὲ τῶν πύλων μιτρηφόροι ἦσαν. Κισσίων δὲ ἦρχε  
 Ἀνάφης ὁ Ὀτάνεω. Ὑρκάνιοι δὲ κατὰ περ Πέρσαι 10  
 ἐσεσάχατο, ἡγεμόνα παρεχόμενοι Μεγάπανον τὸν Βα-  
 63 βυλῶνος ὕστερον τούτων ἐπιτροπεύσαντα. Ἀσσύριοι  
 δὲ στρατευόμενοι περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον χάλκεά  
 τε κράνεα καὶ πεπλεγμένα τρόπον τινὰ βάρβαρον οὐκ  
 εὐαπήγητον, ἀσπίδας δὲ καὶ αἰχμὰς καὶ ἐγχειρίδια  
 παραπλήσια τῇσι Αἰγυπτίῃσι εἶχον, πρὸς δὲ ῥόπαλα 5

prob. to be distinguished from the tribe mentioned 7. 66. 1. It means the *worthy, noble* (Skt. *ārya*), and was an appellation assumed by all Irano-Median peoples. In comparative philology it is applied to all Indo-European cognate nations. — 5. **Μηδείης κτί**: after her flight from Corinth, Medea bore to Aegeus at Athens a son named Medus; afterwards detected in a plot against Theseus she fled to Asia with this son, who became the eponymous hero of the Medes. Pausan. 2. 3. 8. — 7. **ὧδε**: here looks backward. — **Κίσσιοι**: from Kissia, later called Susiana. — 8. **τὰ ἄλλα**: cognate acc. — **ἐσκευάδατο**: Dial. § 4. 3. — 9. **μιτρηφόροι ἦσαν**: where we should expect **μίτρας ἐφόρου**. — 10. **Ὑρκάνιοι**: on the south-

east coast of the Caspian Sea. —

11. **ἐσεσάχατο**: *were equipped*, as 7. 70. 9, 7. 73. 7, 7. 86. 4. —

12. **ἐπιτροπεύσαντα**: with gen., as 7. 7. 8; with acc. 7. 78. 9.

#### ASSYRIANS

63. 2. **χάλκεα κράνεα**: helmets of bronze or iron, quite similar to the Homeric, are seen in the monuments and found in ruins. —

3. **πεπλεγμένα**: prob. **ἐξ ἱμάντων** is implied. Cp. 7. 85. 7. — **τρόπον**

**τινὰ βάρβαρον**: adv. acc. Cp. 7. 89. 5. — **οὐκ εὐαπήγητον**: *not easy to describe*. Herodotean and late Greek. Dial. § 2. 3. — 5. **τῇσι**

**Αἰγυπτίῃσι**: agrees in gender with first two nouns. — **ῥόπαλα ξύλων τετυλωμένα σιδήρῳ**: *clubs of wood knobbed with iron*, i.e. embossed with large-headed iron nails. —

ξύλων τετυλωμένα σιδήρῳ καὶ λινέους θώρηκας. οὗτοι δὲ ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων καλέονται Σύριοι, ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων Ἀσσύριοι ἐκλήθησαν. [τούτων δὲ μεταξὺ Χαλδαῖοι.] ἦρχε δὲ σφεων Ὀτάσπης ὁ Ἀρταχαιέω.  
 64 Βάκριοι δὲ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ἀγχοτάτῳ τῶν Μηδικῶν ἔχοντες ἐστρατεύοντο, τόξα δὲ καλάμινα ἐπιχώρια καὶ αἰχμὰς βραχέας. Σάκαι δὲ οἱ Σκύθαι περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κυρβασίας ἐς ὅξυ ἀπηγμένους ὀρθὰς εἶχον πεπηγυίας, ἀναξυρίδας δὲ ἐνεδεδύκεσαν, τόξα δὲ 5 ἐπιχώρια καὶ ἐγχειρίδια, πρὸς δὲ καὶ ἀξίνας σαγάρεις εἶχον. τούτους δὲ ἑόντας Σκύθας Ἀμυργίους Σάκας ἐκάλεον· οἱ γὰρ Πέρσαι πάντας τοὺς Σκύθας καλέουσι Σάκας. Βακτρίων δὲ καὶ Σακέων ἦρχε Ὑστάσπης  
 65 ὁ Δαρείου τε καὶ Ἀτόσσης τῆς Κύρου. Ἴνδοι δὲ εἴματα μὲν ἐνδεδυκότες ἀπὸ ξύλων πεποιημένα, τόξα δὲ καλάμινα εἶχον καὶ οἷστοὺς καλαμίνους· ἐπὶ δὲ σίδηρος ἦν· ἐσταλμένοι μὲν δὴ ἦσαν οὕτω Ἴνδοί, προστετάχατο δὲ συστρατευόμενοι Φαρναζάθρη τῷ 5

6. λινέους θώρηκας: as already in Homer (B 529, 830). — 8. [τούτων κτῆ]: see App.

TRIBES NORTHEAST AND EAST OF MEDIA AND PERSIA (CC. 64–68)

64. 1. τῶν Μηδικῶν: sc. *τιαρῶν*, dependent on ἀγχοτάτῳ (= ὁμοιότατα). — 2. τόξα καλάμινα: i.e. of bamboo. — 4. κυρβασίας: = *τιάρας*. — ἐς ὅξυ ἀπηγμένους: *running to a point*, as 2. 28. 7. — 6. ἀξίνας σαγάρεις: the first as explanation of the foreign term *σαγάρεις*, *bat-*

*tle-axes*. — 7. Σκύθας Ἀμυργίους: Amyrgian Scythians. Amyrgion was a plain in the country of the Sacians.

65. 1. Ἴνδοι: sc. *ἐστρατεύοντο*, general name for all peoples east of the Indus. — 2. ἀπὸ ξύλων: short for ἀπ' ἐρίων ἀπὸ ξύλου (3. 47. 12), i.e. cotton (cp. *baumwolle*). Cp. 3. 106. 11 ff. — 3. ἐπὶ δὲ σίδηρος ἦν: and thereon was iron, i.e. the reed arrows had iron points. — 5. προστετάχατο συστρατευόμενοι: had been assigned to serve with.

- 66 Ἄρταβάτew. Ἄριοι δὲ τόξοισι μὲν ἐσκευασμένοι ἦσαν Μηδικοῖσι, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα κατὰ περ Βάκτριαι. Ἀρίων δὲ ἦρχε Σισάμνης ὁ Ὑδάρνεος. Πάρθοι δὲ καὶ Χοράσμιοι καὶ Σόγδοι τε καὶ Γανδάριοι καὶ Δαδίκαι τὴν αὐτὴν σκευὴν ἔχοντες τὴν καὶ Βάκτριοι ἐστρατεύοντο. τούτων δὲ ἦρχον οἶδε, Πάρθων μὲν καὶ Χορασμίων Ἀρτάβαζος ὁ Φαρνάκεος, Σόγδων δὲ Ἀζάνης ὁ Ἀρταίου, Γανδαρίων 5
- 67 δὲ καὶ Δαδικέων Ἀρτύφιος ὁ Ἀρταβάνου. Κάσπιοι δὲ σισύρνas τε ἐνδεδυκότες καὶ τόξα ἐπιχώρια καλάμυνα ἔχοντες καὶ ἀκινάκας ἐστρατεύοντο. οὗτοι μὲν οὕτω ἐσκευάδατο, ἡγεμόνα παρεχόμενοι Ἀριόμαρδον τὸν Ἀρτυφίου ἀδελφεόν, Σαράγγαι δὲ εἴματα μὲν βεβαμ- 5
- μένα ἔχοντες ἐνέπρεπον, πέδιλα δὲ ἐς γόνυ ἀνατείνοντα εἶχον, τόξα δὲ καὶ αἰχμὰς Μηδικάς. Σαραγγέων δὲ ἦρχε Φερενδάτης ὁ Μεγαβάζου. Πάκτυες δὲ σισυρνοφόροι τε ἦσαν καὶ τόξα ἐπιχώρια εἶχον καὶ ἐγχειρίδια. Πάκτυες δὲ ἄρχοντα παρείχοντο Ἀρταύτην τὸν Ἰθα- 10
- 68 μίτρεω. Οὗτιοι δὲ καὶ Μύκοι τε καὶ Παρικάνιοι ἐσκευασμένοι ἦσαν κατὰ περ Πάκτυες. τούτων δὲ ἦρχον οἶδε, Οὐτίων μὲν καὶ Μύκων Ἀρσαμένης ὁ Δαρείου,
- 69 Παρικανίων δὲ Σιρομίτρης ὁ Οἰοβάζου. Ἀράβιοι δὲ

66. 1. Ἄριοι: prob. inexact for Ἄρειοι. See on 7. 62. 4. They dwelt southwest of Bactriana.—6. Ἀρτάβαζος: acc. to Hdt., the most clear sighted of the Persian generals (8. 126 ff., 9. 41, 9. 66, 9. 89). He conducted later, as satrap of Dascyleum, the negotiations with Pausanias (Thuc. 1. 129).

67. 2. σισύρνas: *garments of sheepskin*. Cp. schol. on Plato, *Eryx*. 400 τὸ ἐκ τῶν κωδίων ραπτόμενον ἀμπερόνιον. Cp. 4. 109. 11. —6. ἔχοντες ἐνέπρεπον: as 7. 83. 10. Cp. the Homeric μεταπρέπειν.—ἀνατείνοντα: intr. in Hdt. and late Greek.—8. Πάκτυες: in northeastern India, on the Indus (modern Afghanistan).

ζειράς ὑπεζωμένοι ἦσαν, τόξα δὲ παλίντονα εἶχον πρὸς  
 δεξιὰ, μακρά. Αἰθίοπες δὲ παρδαλέας τε καὶ λεοντέας  
 ἐναμμένοι, τόξα δὲ εἶχον ἐκ φοίνικος σπάθης πεποιη-  
 μένα, μακρά, τετραπηχέων οὐκ ἐλάσσω, ἐπὶ δὲ καλα-  
 5 μίνους οἷστοὺς σμικροὺς, ἀντὶ δὲ σιδήρου ἐπὴν λίθος  
 ὀξὺς πεποιημένος, τῷ καὶ τὰς σφρηγίδας γλύφουσι.  
 πρὸς δὲ αἰχμὰς εἶχον, ἐπὶ δὲ κέρας δορκάδος ἐπὴν ὀξὺ  
 πεποιημένον τρόπον λόγχης· εἶχον δὲ καὶ ῥόπαλα  
 τυλωτά. τοῦ δὲ σώματος τὸ μὲν ἡμισυ ἐξηλείφοντο <sup>10</sup>  
 γύψω ἰόντες ἐς μάχην, τὸ δὲ ἡμισυ μίλτω. Ἀραβίων  
 δὲ καὶ Αἰθιοπῶν τῶν ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου οἰκημένων ἦρχε  
 Ἀρσάμης ὁ Δαρείου τε καὶ Ἀρτυστῶννης τῆς Κύρου  
 θυγατρός, τὴν μάλιστα στέρξας τῶν γυναικῶν Δαρείος  
 70 εἰκὼ χρυσῇ σφυρήλατον ἐποίησατο. τῶν μὲν δὴ  
 ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου Αἰθιοπῶν καὶ Ἀραβίων ἦρχε Ἀρσάμης,  
 οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ ἡλίου ἀνατολέων Αἰθίοπες (διξοὶ γὰρ δὴ

## ARABIANS

69. 2. ζειράς: *long cloaks*, acc. retained with pass. — τόξα παλίντονα: *back-stretched bows*. They consisted of two half-moon-shaped pieces or horns held together in the middle by a cylindrical bar. In stringing the bow, the ends were drawn in the direction opposite to the natural bend. — πρὸς δεξιὰ: *on the right side*. Usually they were carried at the left side. — 4. ἐκ φοίνικος σπάθης πεποιημένα: *made out of a strip of palm*, hardened in the fire (Strabo, p. 822). — 7. τὰς σφρηγίδας: here,

as 3. 41. 5, 3. 128. 6, *seal stones, seals*; 3. 41. 10 and freq. *seal rings*. — 9. ῥόπαλα τυλωτά: see on 7. 63. 5. — 14. τῇν: construed with στέρξας. — τῶν γυναικῶν: six in all (3. 88, 7. 2, 7. 224), of whom Atossa was most influential. — 15. εἰκὼ: (*sc. αὐτῆς*) poetical form. — ἐποίησατο: *had made*. Causative middle. S. 1725; HA. 815.

## ETHIOPIANS

70. 1. τῶν ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου Αἰθιοπῶν: Homer (a 23 f.) divides the Ethiopians into Eastern and Western. Hdt. keeps this division,

ἐστρατεύοντο) προστετάχατο τοῖσι Ἰνδοῖσι, διαλλάσσοντες εἶδος μὲν οὐδὲν τοῖσι ἑτέροισι, φωνὴν δὲ καὶ 5  
 τρίχωμα μῦνον· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ ἡλίου Αἰθίοπες ἰθὺ-  
 τριχῆς εἰσι, οἱ δ' ἐκ τῆς Λιβύης οὐλότατον τρίχωμα  
 ἔχουσι πάντων ἀνθρώπων. οὗτοι δὲ οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας  
 Αἰθίοπες τὰ μὲν πλέω κατὰ περ Ἰνδοὶ ἐσεσάχατο, προ-  
 μετωπίδια δὲ ἵππων εἶχον ἐπὶ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι σύν τε 10  
 τοῖσι ὥσὶ ἐκδεδαρμένα καὶ τῇ λοφιῇ· καὶ ἀντὶ μὲν  
 λόφου ἢ λοφιῇ κατέχρη, τὰ δὲ ὦτα τῶν ἵππων ὀρθὰ  
 πεπηγότα εἶχον· προβλήματα δὲ ἀντ' ἀσπίδων ἐποίε-  
 11 ποντο γεράνων δοράς. Λίβυες δὲ σκευὴν μὲν σκυτίνην  
 ἦσαν ἔχοντες, ἀκοντίοισι δὲ ἐπικαύτοισι χρεώμενοι.  
 12 ἄρχοντα δὲ παρείχοντο Μασσάγην τὸν Ὁαρίζου. Πα-  
 φλαγόνες δὲ ἐστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα  
 πεπλεγμένα ἔχοντες, ἀσπίδας δὲ σμικρὰς αἰχμὰς τε οὐ  
 μεγάλας, πρὸς δὲ ἀκόντια καὶ ἐγχειρίδια, περὶ δὲ τοὺς  
 πόδας πέδιλα ἐπιχώρια ἐς μέσσην κνήμην ἀνατείνοντα. 5  
 Λίγυες δὲ καὶ Ματιηνοὶ καὶ Μαριανδυνοὶ τε καὶ Σύριοι  
 τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχοντες Παφλαγόσι ἐστρατεύοντο. οἱ δὲ  
 Σύριοι οὗτοι ὑπὸ Περσέων Καππαδόκαι καλέονται.

designating the Western Ethiopians, however, as "those beyond Egypt," or "those from Libya." A remnant of the Eastern or Asiatic Ethiopians is to be found in the black Brahûi of Beloochistan.—4. *προστετάχατο*: cp. 7. 65.—*διαλλάσσοντες*: with dat.; gen. is more usual.—5. *φωνήν*: *language*.—9. *προμετωπίδια*: *skin of the forehead*.—12. *κατέχρη*:

*sufficed*, as I. 164. 3, 4. 118. 15 = ἀπέχρη I. 66. 5.—13. *προβλήματα* . . . *γεράνων δοράς*: cp. 4. 175. 6 ἐς τὸν πόλεμον στρουθῶν καταγαίων δοράς φορέουσι προβλήματα.

## LIBYANS

71. 1. The tribes between Egypt and Cyrene.—2. *ἐπικαύτοισι*: *i.e.* burnt on the surface and thereby hardened.

Παφλαγόνων μὲν νυν καὶ Ματιηνῶν Δῶτος ὁ Μεγασίδρου ἦρχε, Μαριανδυνῶν δὲ καὶ Λιγύων καὶ Συρίων 10  
 73 Γωβρύης ὁ Δαρείου τε καὶ Ἀρτυστῶνης. Φρύγες δὲ ἀγχοτάτω τῆς Παφλαγονικῆς σκευὴν εἶχον, ὀλίγον παραλλάσσοντες. οἱ δὲ Φρύγες, ὡς Μακεδόνες λέγουσι, ἐκαλέοντο Βρίγες χρόνον ὅσον Εὐρωπῆιοι ἐόντες σύνοικοι ἦσαν Μακεδόσι, μεταβάντες δὲ ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἅμα 5  
 τῇ χώρῃ καὶ τὸ οὖνομα μετέβαλον ἐς Φρύγας. Ἀρμένιοι δὲ κατὰ περ Φρύγες ἐσεσάχατο, ἐόντες Φρυγῶν ἄποικοι. τούτων συναμφοτέρων ἦρχε Ἀρτόχμης, Δα-  
 74 ρεῖον ἔχων θυγατέρα. Λυδοὶ δὲ ἀγχοτάτω τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν εἶχον ὅπλα. οἱ δὲ Λυδοὶ Μήρονες ἐκαλέοντο τὸ πάλαι, ἐπὶ δὲ Λυδοῦ τοῦ Ἄττος ἔσχον τὴν ἐπωνυμίην, μεταβαλόντες τὸ οὖνομα. Μυσοὶ δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι εἶχον κράνεα ἐπιχώρια, ἀσπίδας δὲ σμικράς, 5

TRIBES OF ASIA MINOR AND  
VICINITY (CC. 72-77)

73. 2. ἀγχοτάτω: see on 7. 64. 1. — 3. παραλλάσσοντες: cp. διαλλάσσοντες 7. 70. 4. — 4. Βρίγες (or Βρύγες): Macedonian dialectic form = Φρύγες. — Εὐρωπῆιοι ἐόντες: Stein holds that Hdt. reverses here the direction of tribal movement; that the Φρύγες were originally Asiatic, and migrated (perhaps with the Mysians and Teucrians) from Asia Minor to Thrace and Macedonia, whence they were later again driven across the Hellespont by tribes from the north (Macedonians and Thra-

cians). But in support of Hdt.'s view see Hirt, *Die Indogermanen* i. 132 f. — 6. ἐς Φρύγας: see App. — 7. Φρυγῶν ἄποικοι: cp. Eudoxus *apud Steph. Byz.* Ἀρμένιοι δὲ τὸ μὲν γένος ἐκ Φρυγίας καὶ τῇ φωνῇ πολλὰ φρυγίζουσι. Acc. to Stein's view, the relationship is reversed here.

74. 2. Μήρονες: Homer calls the ancient inhabitants of Lydia Maeonians (B 866 *Μήρονας* . . . ὑπὸ Τρώλφ γεγαῶτας). Cp. Strabo 10. 4. 5. Later the name *Μηρονίη* was restricted to a small part of Lydia, the valley of the upper Hermus. — 3. ἐπὶ δὲ Λυδοῦ . . . τὴν ἐπωνυμίην: cp. 1. 7. 8 οἱ δὲ

ἀκοντίοισι δὲ ἐχρέωντο ἐπικαύτοισι. οὗτοι δὲ εἰσι  
 Λυδῶν ἄποικοι, ἀπ' Ὀλύμπου δὲ ὄρεος καλέονται Ὀλυμ-  
 πιηνοί. Λυδῶν δὲ καὶ Μυσῶν ἦρχε Ἀρταφρένης ὁ  
 Ἀρταφρένεος, ὃς ἐς Μαραθῶνα ἐσέβαλε ἅμα Δάτι.  
 75 Θρηῆκες δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ἄλωπεκέας ἔχοντες  
 ἐστρατεύοντο, περὶ δὲ τὸ σῶμα κιθῶνας, ἐπὶ δὲ ζειράς  
 περιβεβλημένοι ποικίλας, περὶ δὲ τοὺς πόδας τε καὶ  
 τὰς κνήμας πέδιλα νεβρῶν, πρὸς δὲ ἀκόντιά τε καὶ  
 πέλτας καὶ ἐγχειρίδια σμικρά. οὗτοι δὲ διαβάντες μὲν  
 ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἐκλήθησαν Βιθυνοί, τὸ δὲ πρότερον  
 ἐκαλέοντο, ὡς αὐτοὶ λέγουσι, Στρυμόνιοι, οἰκέοντες ἐπὶ  
 Στρυμόνι. ἐξαναστῆναι δὲ φασὶ ἐξ ἡθέων ὑπὸ Τευκρῶν  
 τε καὶ Μυσῶν. Θρηκῶν δὲ τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ ἦρχε  
 76 Βασσάκης ὁ Ἀρταβάνου . . . ἀσπίδας δὲ ὠμοβοῦνας  
 εἶχον σμικράς, καὶ προβόλους δύο λυκιοεργέας ἕκαστος  
 εἶχε, ἐπὶ δὲ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα χάλκεα. πρὸς δὲ  
 τοῖσι κράνεσι ὦτά τε καὶ κέρεια προσῆν βοὸς χάλκεα,  
 ἐπήσαν δὲ καὶ λόφοι. τὰς δὲ κνήμας ῥάκεσι φοινι-

πρότερον Ἀγρωνος βασιλεύσαντες  
 ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἦσαν ἀπόγονοι  
 Λυδοῦ τοῦ Ἀττος, ἀπ' ὅτεο ὁ  
 δῆμος Λυδῶν ἐκλήθη ὁ πᾶς οὗτος.  
 For ἐπὶ *c. gen.* see on 7. 40. 12. —  
 6. ἐπικαύτοισι: see on 7. 71. 2.  
 — 7. Λυδῶν ἄποικοι: at 1. 171.  
 28 the two peoples are called, per-  
 haps more correctly, κασίγνητοι.

75. 1. Θρηῆκες: *sc.* οἱ ἐν τῇ  
 Ἀσίῃ, as 9 below shows. — ἄλω-  
 πεκέας: for same costume among  
 the European Thracians, see Xen.

*Anab.* 7. 4. 4. — 2. περὶ τὸ σῶμα:  
 for variety after ἐπὶ *c. dat.* Cp.  
 7. 61. — ζειράς: see on 7. 69. 2.  
 — 4. πέδιλα νεβρῶν: *faunskin*  
*sandals.* — 6. ἐκλήθησαν: *ingres-*  
*sive.* — 8. ἐξ ἡθέων: cp. 7. 10. θ 3.  
 — ὑπὸ Τευκρῶν: cp. 7. 20. 11.

76. 2. εἶχον: the name of the  
 nation has been lost. Most edi-  
 tors, since Wesseling, supply Χά-  
 λυβες; Stein Πισίδαι; Sitzler Καύ-  
 νιοι. — προβόλους: *hunting spears.*  
 Cp. προβόλαιον 7. 148. 16. — λυ-



κέοισι κατελίχατο. ἐν τούτοισι τοῖσι ἀνδράσι Ἄρεός  
 77 ἐστὶ χρηστήριον. Καβηλεῖς δὲ οἱ Μήονες, Λασόνιοι  
 δὲ καλεόμενοι, τὴν αὐτὴν Κίλιξι εἶχον σκευήν, τὴν ἐγώ,  
 ἐπεὰν κατὰ τὴν Κιλικῶν τάξιν διεξιὼν γένωμαι, τότε  
 σημανέω. Μιλύαι δὲ αἰχμὰς τε βραχέας εἶχον καὶ  
 εἵματα ἐνεπεπορπέατο· εἶχον δὲ αὐτῶν τόξα μετεξέτεροις  
 Λύκια, περὶ δὲ τῇσι κεφαλῇσι ἐκ διφθερέων πεποιη-  
 μένας κυνέας. τούτων πάντων ἦρχε Βάδρης ὁ Ὑστά-  
 78 νεος. Μόσχοι δὲ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κυνέας  
 ξυλῖνας εἶχον, ἀσπίδας δὲ καὶ αἰχμὰς σμικρὰς· λόγχαι  
 δὲ ἐπῆσαν μεγάλαι. Τιβαρηνοὶ δὲ καὶ Μάκρωνες καὶ  
 Μοσσύνοικοι κατὰ περ Μόσχοι ἐσκευασμένοι ἐστρα-  
 τεύοντο. τούτους δὲ συνέτασσον ἄρχοντες οἶδε, Μό-  
 σχους μὲν καὶ Τιβαρηνοὺς Ἀριόμαρδος ὁ Δαρείου τε  
 παῖς καὶ Πάρμνος τῆς Σμέρδιος τοῦ Κύρου, Μάκρωνας  
 δὲ καὶ Μοσσυνοίκους Ἀρταύκτης ὁ Χοράσμιος, ὃς  
 79 Σηιστὸν τὴν ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ ἐπετρόπευε. Μᾶρες δὲ  
 ἐπὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα ἐπιχώρια πλεκτὰ εἶχον,  
 ἀσπίδας δὲ δερματῖνας σμικρὰς καὶ ἀκόντια. Κόλχοι  
 δὲ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα ξύλινα, ἀσπίδας  
 δὲ ὠμοβοτῖνας σμικρὰς αἰχμὰς τε βραχέας, πρὸς δὲ καὶ  
 5 μαχαίρας εἶχον. Μαρώων δὲ καὶ Κόλχων ἦρχε Φαραν-  
 δάτης ὁ Τεάσπιος. Ἀλαρόδιοι δὲ καὶ Σάσπειρες κατὰ  
 περ Κόλχοι ὠπλισμένοι ἐστρατεύοντο. τούτων δὲ Μα-  
 80 σίστιος ὁ Σιρομίτρεω ἦρχε. τὰ δὲ νησιωτικὰ ἔθνηα τὰ

κιοεργίας: of Lycian workmanship.  
 Cp. τόξα Λύκια 7. 77. 5. — 6. κα-  
 τελίχατο: cp. κατελίσσοντες 7.  
 181. 10.

77. 1. οἱ Μήονες: explanatory  
 of Καβηλεῖς and designating the  
 aborigines, whom Strabo calls by  
 the more general name Λυδοί.

ἐκ τῆς Ἐρυθρῆς θαλάσσης ἐπόμενα, νήσων δὲ ἐν τῇσι τοὺς ἀνασπάστους καλεομένους κατοικίζει βασιλεὺς, ἀγχοτάτω τῶν Μηδικῶν εἶχον ἐσθῆτά τε καὶ ὄπλα. τούτων δὲ τῶν νησιωτέων ἦρχε Μαρδόντης ὁ Βαγαίου, 5 ὃς ἐν Μυκάλῃ στρατηγέων δευτέρῳ ἔτει τούτων ἐτελεύτησε ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.

- 81 Ταῦτα ἦν τὰ κατ' ἡπειρον στρατευόμενά τε ἔθνεα καὶ τεταγμένα ἐς τὸν πεζόν. τούτου ὦν τοῦ στρατοῦ ἦρχον μὲν οὗτοι οἱ περ εἰρέαται καὶ οἱ διατάξαντες καὶ ἐξαριθμήσαντες οὗτοι ἦσαν καὶ χιλιάρχας τε καὶ μυριάρχας ἀποδέξαντες, ἑκατοντάρχας δὲ καὶ δεκάρχας οἱ μυριάρ- 5 χαι. τελέων δὲ καὶ ἐθνέων ἦσαν ἄλλοι σημάντορες.
- 82 ἦσαν μὲν δὴ οὗτοι οἱ περ εἰρέαται ἄρχοντες, ἐστρατήγεον δὲ τούτων τε καὶ τοῦ σύμπαντος στρατοῦ τοῦ πεζοῦ Μαρδονίος τε ὁ Γωβρύεω καὶ Τριτανταίχμης ὁ Ἀρταβάνου τοῦ γνώμην θεμένου μὴ στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ Σμερδομένης ὁ Ὀτάνεω, Δαρείου ἀμ- 5

#### TRIBES OF THE PERSIAN GULF

80. 2. ἐκ τῆς Ἐρυθρῆς θαλάσσης: = ἡ νοτιή θάλασσα, *i.e.* the Indian Ocean with the Arabian and Persian gulfs. Here the Persian Gulf is esp. meant. — νήσων δ: resumes νησιωτικά (= ἐκ νήσων) of the islands, namely. Cp. Θέρμη δέ 7. 121. 4. — 3. τοὺς ἀνασπάστους: *i.e.* those transplanted to other regions. — 6. δευτέρῳ ἔτει τούτων: in the year after these events, *i.e.* 479 B.C. (9. 102). δευτέρῳ as comparative governs gen. Cp. 6. 46. 1.

#### CHIEF COMMANDERS. THE IMMORTALS (CC. 81-83)

81. 2. τεταγμένα ἐς τὸν πεζόν: cp. 7. 21. 6. — 5. οἱ μυριάρχαι: *sc.* ἦσαν οἱ ἀποδέξαντες. — 6. τελέων: larger military divisions = τάξεων, as 7. 87. 4, 7. 211. 18. — ἄλλοι σημάντορες: different commanders, poetical term.

82. 4. τοῦ γνώμην θεμένου: see 7. 10. — 5. καὶ Σμερδομένης ὁ Ὀτάνεω: there is no mention elsewhere of Otanes as brother of Darius, though Artabanus was. The difficulty would be removed by as-

- φότεροι οὔτοι ἀδελφεῶν παῖδες, Ξέρξη δὲ ἐγίνοντο ἀνεψιοί, καὶ Μασίστης ὁ Δαρείου τε καὶ Ἀτόσσης παῖς καὶ Γέργις ὁ Ἀριαίου καὶ Μεγάβυζος ὁ Ζωπύρου.
- 83 οὔτοι ἦσαν στρατηγοὶ τοῦ σύμπαντος πεζοῦ χωρὶς τῶν μυρίων. τῶν δὲ μυρίων τούτων Περσέων τῶν ἀπολελεγμένων ἐστρατήγει μὲν Ὑδάρνης ὁ Ὑδάρνεος, ἐκαλέοντο δὲ ἀθάνατοι οἱ Πέρσαι οὔτοι ἐπὶ τοῦδε· εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἐξέλιπε τὸν ἀριθμὸν ἢ θανάτῳ βιηθεὶς ἢ νόσῳ, ἄλλος ἄνθρωπος ἀραίρητο, καὶ ἐγίνοντο οὐδαμὰ οὔτε πλείονες μυρίων οὔτε ἐλάσσονες. κόσμον δὲ πλείστον παρείχοντο διὰ πάντων Πέρσαι καὶ αὐτοὶ ἄριστοι ἦσαν. σκευὴν μὲν τοιαύτην εἶχον ἢ περ εἴρηται, χωρὶς δὲ χρυσόν τε πολλὸν καὶ ἄφθονον ἔχοντες ἐνέπρεπον. ἄρμαμάξας τε ἅμα ἤγοντο, ἐν δὲ παλλακὰς καὶ θεραπήϊν πολλήν τε καὶ εὖ ἐσκευασμένην. σῖτα δὲ σφι, χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτέων, κάμηλοί τε καὶ ὑποζύγια ἦγον.
- 84 Ἴππευεὶ δὲ ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνεα· πλὴν οὐ πάντα παρείχετο ἵππον, ἀλλὰ τοσάδε μούνα, Πέρσαι μὲν τὴν αὐτὴν

suming that the words belong after ἀνέψιοι.—6. ἀδελφεῶν παῖδες: Mar-donius was a sister's son.—8. Ζω-πύρου: who won Babylon for Darius. See 3. 153 ff.

83. 2. τούτων: in attrib. position, S. 1181; HA. 673 c.—τῶν ἀπολελεγμένων: *select*.—4. ἐπὶ τοῦδε: see on 7. 40. 11.—ἐξέλιπε: indic. for opt. in gen. cond. GMT. 467.—6. ἀραίρητο: *was chosen* already. Dial. § 4. 2.—8. διὰ πάντων: *above all*. Cp. 6. 63. 15 ἄνθρωπος εὐδοκίμων διὰ πάντων, and

1. 25. 6, 8. 37. 13, 8. 69. 6, 8. 142. 8. The const. is Homeric. Cp. M 104 ὁ δ' ἔπρεπε καὶ διὰ πάντων.—10. πολλὸν καὶ ἄφθονον: *abundant and rich*. Cp. Hes. *W. and D.* 118; Xen. *Anab.* 5. 6. 25.—ἔχον-tes ἐνέπρεπον: as 7. 67. 5.

#### CAVALRY (CC. 84–88)

84. 1. ταῦτα: here looks forward.—πλὴν: as 7. 32. 3.—παρείχετο: impf. after pres.; the one is general, the other refers to the specific case.—2. τὴν αὐ-

ἔσκευασμένοι καὶ ὁ πεζὸς αὐτῶν· πλὴν ἐπὶ τῇσι  
 κεφαλῇσι εἶχον μετεξέτεροι αὐτῶν καὶ χάλκεα καὶ σι-  
 85 δήρεα ἐξεληλαμένα ποιήματα. εἰσὶ δέ τινες νομάδες  
 ἄνθρωποι, Σαγάρτιοι καλεόμενοι, ἔθνος μὲν Περσικὸν  
 καὶ φωνῇ, σκευὴν δὲ μεταξὺ ἔχουσι πεποιημένην τῆς  
 τε Περσικῆς καὶ τῆς Πακτυϊκῆς· οἱ παρείχοντο μὲν  
 ἵππον ὀκτακισχίλιν, ὅπλα δὲ οὐ νομίζουσι ἔχειν οὔτε  
 χάλκεα οὔτε σιδήρεα ἔξω ἐγχειριδίων, χρέωνται δὲ σει-  
 ρῇσι πεπλεγμένῃσι ἐξ ἱμάντων. ταύτησι πίσυνοι ἔρ-  
 χονται ἐς πόλεμον· ἡ δὲ μάχη τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν  
 ἦδε· ἐπεὰν συμμίσγωσι τοῖσι πολεμίοισι, βάλλουσι  
 τὰς σειρὰς ἐπ' ἄκρῳ βρόχους ἐχούσας· ὅτεο δ' ἂν 10  
 τύχη, ἣν τε ἵππου ἣν τε ἀνθρώπου, ἐπ' ἐωυτὸν ἔλκει· οἱ  
 δὲ ἐν ἔρκεσι ἐμπαλασσόμενοι διαφθείρονται. τούτων  
 μὲν αὕτη ἡ μάχη, καὶ ἐπετετάχατο ἐς τοὺς Πέρσας.  
 86 Μῆδοι δὲ τήν περ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ εἶχον σκευήν, καὶ Κίσσιοι

τήν: *sc.* σκευήν. — 3. ἔσκευασμέ-  
 νοι: agreeing with Πέρσαι, where  
 ἔσκευασμένην (ἵππον) was to be  
 expected. — 5. ἐξεληλαμένα ποιή-  
 ματα: *beaten works*. Cp. εἰκὼ  
 σφυρήλατον 7. 69. 15. A kind of  
 helmet is meant, instead of *τιάρας*  
 (7. 61. 2).

85. 2. ἔθνος . . . καὶ φωνῇ: note  
 combination of acc. of specifica-  
 tion and dat. of manner with Περ-  
 σικόν. — 3. μεταξὺ τῆς τε . . .  
 Πακτυϊκῆς: the prep. phrase as adv.  
 modifier to πεποιημένην. Cp. 2.  
 42. 18 φωνὴν μεταξὺ ἀμφοτέρων  
 νομίζοντες. — 5. οὐ νομίζουσι: *are*

*not wont*. — 6. σειρῇσι: *lassos*.  
 — 7. πίσυνοι: poetical and He-  
 rodotean; in Attic prose only in  
 Thuc. Cp. 7. 10. 5. — 8. ἡ μάχη:  
 as 7. 9. α 1. — 10. ἐπ' ἄκρῳ: *at*  
*the end*. — 11. τύχη: *sc.* ὁ βάλλ-  
 ων, transition to more vivid sing.  
 — οἱ ἐν ἔρκεσι ἐμπαλασσόμενοι:  
*those entangled in the toils*. The  
 rare verb as in Thuc. 7. 84. 15.  
 ἔρκος is a poetical term. — 13. ἐπε-  
 τετάχατο ἐς τοὺς Πέρσας: cp. 7.  
 81. 2.

86. 1. Μῆδοι: on the Median  
 and Kissian armor, see 7. 62.  
 — εἶχον: common to both princi-

ὡσαύτως. Ἴνδοι δὲ σκευὴ μὲν ἐσεσάχατο τῇ αὐτῇ καὶ  
 ἐν τῷ πεζῷ, ἥλαυνον δὲ κέλητας καὶ ἄρματα · ὑπὸ δὲ  
 τοῖσι ἄρμασι ὑπῆσαν ἵπποι καὶ ὄνοι ἄγριοι. Βάκ-  
 τριοι δὲ ἐσκευάδατο ὡσαύτως καὶ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ, καὶ 5  
 Κάσπιοι ὁμοίως. Λίβυες δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ κατὰ περ ἐν τῷ  
 πεζῷ. ἥλαυνον δὲ καὶ οὗτοι πάντες ἄρματα. ὥς δ'  
 αὐτῶς Κάσπιοι καὶ Παρικάνιοι ἐσεσάχατο ὁμοίως καὶ  
 ἐν τῷ πεζῷ. Ἀράβιοι δὲ σκευὴν μὲν εἶχον τὴν αὐτὴν  
 καὶ ἐν τῷ πεζῷ, ἥλαυνον δὲ πάντες καμήλους ταχυτήτα 10  
 87 οὐ λειπομένας ἵππων. ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνηα μούνα ἱππεύει,  
 ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς ἵππου ἐγένετο ὀκτὼ μυριάδες, πάρεξ  
 τῶν καμήλων καὶ τῶν ἀρμάτων. οἱ μὲν νυν ἄλλοι  
 ἱππεῖς ἐτετάχατο κατὰ τέλεα, Ἀράβιοι δὲ ἔσχατοι  
 ἐπετετάχατο. ἅτε γὰρ τῶν ἵππων οὐτι ἀνεχομένων 5  
 τὰς καμήλους ὕστεροι ἐτετάχατο, ἵνα μὴ φοβέοιτο  
 88 τὸ ἱππικόν. ἱππαρχοὶ δὲ ἦσαν Ἀρμαμίθρης τε καὶ  
 Τίθαιος Δάτιος παῖδες. ὁ δὲ τρίτος σφι συνίππαρ-  
 χος Φαρνούχης κατελέλειπτο ἐν Σάρδισι νοσέων. ὥς  
 γὰρ ὀρμῶντο ἐκ Σαρδίων, ἐπὶ συμφορὴν περιέπεσε  
 ἀνεθέλητον. ἐλαύνοντι γάρ οἱ ὑπὸ τοὺς πόδας τοῦ 5

pal and rel. clause; — 2. ἐσεσά-  
 χατο: as 7. 62. 11. — 3. ὑπὸ . . .  
 ὑπῆσαν: were yoked to the chariots.  
 The yoke was regarded as part of  
 the chariot. Cp. Hom. ζ 73 ἡμιό-  
 νους θ' ὑπαγον ζεύξαν θ' ὑπ'  
 ἀπήνη. — 7. ὥς δ' αὐτῶς: separa-  
 tion as in Homer. — 10. καμή-  
 λους . . . ἵππων: cp. 3. 102. 19  
 κάμηλοι ἵππων οὐκ ἦσσονες ἐς ταχυ-  
 τῆτα. For λείπεσθαι c. gen., to be

inferior to, cp. 7. 8. a 12, 7. 48. 6.

87. 1. ταῦτα . . . ἱππεύει: cp. 7.  
 84. 1. — 4. τέλεα: cp. 7. 81. 6. —  
 5. ἅτε: cp. 7. 6. 1, 7. 23. 11. — 6. ἵνα  
 μὴ φοβέοιτο τὸ ἱππικόν: compare  
 the device of Cyrus to frighten  
 the horses of Croesus' army 1. 80.

88. 2. σφι συνίππαρχος: dat.  
 dependent on συν. The noun  
 only here. — 4. ἐπὶ συμφορὴν πε-  
 ριέπεσε ἀνεθέλητον: unusual const.

ἵππου ὑπέδραμε κύων, καὶ ὁ ἵππος οὐ προῖδὼν ἐφοβήθη  
 τε καὶ στὰς ὀρθὸς ἀπεσεύσατο τὸν Φαρνούχεια, πεσὼν  
 δὲ αἱμά τε ἡμεῖ καὶ ἐς φθίσιν περιήλθε ἡ νοῦσος. τὸν  
 δὲ ἵππον αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχὰς ἐποίησαν ὡς ἐκέλευε· ἀπα-  
 γαγόντες οἱ οἰκέται ἐς τὸν χῶρον ἐν τῷ περ κατέβαλε 10  
 τὸν δεσπότην, ἐν τοῖσι γούνασι ἀπέταμον τὰ σκέλεα.  
 Φαρνούχης μὲν οὕτω παρελύθη τῆς ἡγεμονίης.

89 Τῶν δὲ τριηρέων ἀριθμὸς μὲν ἐγένετο ἑπτὰ καὶ  
 διηκόσιαι καὶ χίλιαι, παρείχοντο δὲ αὐτὰς οἶδε, Φοίνικες  
 μὲν σὺν Σύροισι τοῖσι ἐν τῇ Παλαιστίνῃ τριηκοσίας,  
 ὧδε ἐσκευασμένοι· περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κυνέας  
 εἶχον ἀγχοτάτῳ πεποιημένας τρόπον τὸν Ἑλληνικόν, 5  
 ἐνδεδυκότες δὲ θώρηκας λινέους, ἀσπίδας δὲ ἵτυς οὐκ  
 ἐχούσας εἶχον καὶ ἀκόντια. οὗτοι δὲ οἱ Φοίνικες τὸ  
 παλαιὸν οἴκεον, ὡς αὐτοὶ λέγουσι, ἐπὶ τῇ Ἐρυθρῇ θα-  
 λάσσῃ, ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ὑπερβάντες τῆς Συρίας οἰκεῖν τὸ  
 παρὰ θάλασσαν. τῆς δὲ Συρίας τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον καὶ 10  
 τὸ μέχρι Αἰγύπτου πᾶν Παλαιστίνῃ καλεῖται. Αἰγύπ-  
 τιοι δὲ νέας παρείχοντο διηκοσίας. οὗτοι δὲ εἶχον  
 περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα χηλεντά, ἀσπίδας δὲ  
 κοίλας, τὰς ἵτυς μεγάλας ἐχούσας, καὶ δόρατά τε ναύ-

for dat. or dat. with ἐν. ἀνεθέλη-  
 τον as 7. 133. 9 = ἄχαρις 7. 190.  
 11. — 8. φθίσιν: *consumption*. —  
 9. αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχὰς: as 7. 148.  
 6, 7. 220. 12.

#### THE FLEET (CC. 89-98)

89. 1. ἑπτὰ καὶ διηκόσιαι καὶ  
 χίλιαι: cp. Aesch. *Pers.* 344 f. —  
 5. ἀγχοτάτῳ; *very nearly*, modi-

fying the adv. acc. τρόπον τὸν  
 Ἑλληνικόν. — 6. ἐνδεδυκότες θώρη-  
 κας λινέους: sc. ἦσαν. Cp. 7. 63.  
 6. — 7. ἐχούσας εἶχον: note the  
 parechesis. — 8. ἐπὶ τῇ Ἐρυθρῇ  
 θαλάσῃ: the Persian Gulf. —  
 9. τῆς Συρίας: dependent on τὸ  
 παρὰ θάλασσαν. — 13. χηλεντά:  
 = πλεκτά 7. 79. 2. — 14. μεγάλας:  
 pred. to τὰς ἵτυς. — δόρατα ναύ.

μαχα καὶ τύκους μεγάλους. τὸ δὲ πλήθος αὐτῶν θωρη-<sup>15</sup>  
 90 κοφόροι ἦσαν, μαχαίρας δὲ μεγάλας εἶχον. οὗτοι μὲν  
 οὕτω ἐστάλατο, Κύπριοι δὲ παρείχοντο νέας πεντήκοντα  
 καὶ ἑκατόν, ἐσκευασμένοι ὧδε. τὰς μὲν κεφαλὰς εἰλί-  
 χατο μίτρησι οἱ βασιλεῖς αὐτῶν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι εἶχον  
 κιθῶνας, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα κατὰ περ Ἑλλήνες. τούτων δὲ<sup>5</sup>  
 τοσάδε ἔθνεά εἰσι, οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ Σαλαμῖνος καὶ Ἀθηνέων,  
 οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ Ἀρκαδίας, οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ Κύθνου, οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ  
 Φοινίκης, οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ Αἰθιοπίας, ὥς αὐτοὶ Κύπριοι  
 91 λέγουσι. Κίλικες δὲ ἑκατόν παρείχοντο νέας. οὗτοι  
 δ' αὖ περὶ μὲν τῇσι κεφαλῇσι κράνεα ἐπιχώρια,  
 λαισῆιά τε εἶχον ἀντ' ἀσπίδων, ὠμοβοέης πεποιημένα,  
 καὶ κιθῶνας εἰρινέους ἐνδεδυκότες· δύο δὲ ἀκόντια  
 ἕκαστος καὶ ξίφος εἶχον, ἀγχοτάτω τῇσι Αἰγυπτίησι<sup>5</sup>  
 μαχαίρησι πεποιημένα. οὗτοι μὲν τὸ παλαιὸν Ἑπα-  
 χαιοὶ ἐκαλέοντο, ἐπὶ δὲ Κίλικος τοῦ Ἀγήνορος ἀνδρὸς

μαχα: cp. Hom. O 389 ξυστὰ νάυ-  
 μαχα. — 15. τύκους: *battle axes*, in  
 this sense only here.

90. 4. μίτρησι: *turbans*. Cp.  
 7. 62. 9. — οἱ βασιλεῖς: there were  
 nine chief cities in Cyprus each  
 with its own king. — 6. ἔθνεά εἰσι:  
 plural verb, as freq. in Hom. and  
 Xen. — ἀπὸ Σαλαμῖνος καὶ Ἀθη-  
 νέων: the Cyprian Salamis was  
 said to have been founded by Teu-  
 cer when banished by his father  
 on his return from Troy. The  
 island of Salamis, with its Aeacid  
 heroes, was regarded as belonging  
 to Athens. — 7. ἀπὸ Ἀρκαδίας:

according to tradition, Arcadians  
 from Tegea, led by Agapenor, on  
 the return from Troy settled at  
 Paphos. Inscriptions show strik-  
 ing similarities between the Ar-  
 cadian and Cyprian dialects. —  
 8. ἀπὸ Αἰθιοπίας: doubtful what  
 this means. Hdt. states in 2. 182.  
 13 that Amasis captured Cyprus,  
 but says nothing of a colony.

91. 3. ὠμοβοέης: *sc. δορῆς*. —  
 5. ἀγχοτάτω πεποιημένα: = ὁμοιω-  
 μένα, hence with dat., though  
 ἀγχοτάτω elsewhere takes gen.  
 The plur. after ξίφος because a  
 plural idea is in mind. — 7. ἐπὶ δὲ

Φοίνικος ἔσχον τὴν ἐπωνυμίην. Πάμφυλοι δὲ τριήκοντα παρείχοντο νέας Ἑλληνικοῖσι ὅπλοισι ἔσκευασμένοι. οἱ δὲ Πάμφυλοι οὗτοι εἰσὶ τῶν ἐκ Τροίης 10  
 92 ἀποσκεδασθέντων ἅμα Ἀμφιλόχῳ καὶ Κάλχαντι. Λύκιοι δὲ παρείχοντο νέας πεντήκοντα, θωρηκοφόροι τε ἔοντες καὶ κνημιδοφόροι, εἶχον δὲ τόξα κρανείνα καὶ ὀϊστοὺς καλαμίνους ἀπτέρους καὶ ἀκόντια, ἐπὶ δὲ αἰγὸς δέρματα περὶ τοὺς ὤμους αἰωρεόμενα, περὶ δὲ τῇσι 5  
 κεφαλῇσι πῖλους πτεροῖσι περιεστεφανωμένους· ἐγχειρίδια δὲ καὶ δρέπανα εἶχον. Λύκιοι δὲ Τερμίλαι ἐκαλέοντο ἐκ Κρήτης γεγονότες, ἐπὶ δὲ Λύκου τοῦ Πανδίωνος  
 93 ἀνδρὸς Ἀθηναίου ἔσχον τὴν ἐπωνυμίην. Δωριεῖς δὲ οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίης τριήκοντα παρείχοντο νέας, ἔχοντές τε Ἑλληνικὰ ὅπλα καὶ γεγονότες ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου. Κᾶρες δὲ ἐβδομήκοντα παρείχοντο νέας, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα κατὰ περ Ἑλληνες ἔσταλμένοι, εἶχον δὲ καὶ δρέπανα 5  
 καὶ ἐγχειρίδια. οὗτοι δὲ οἵτινες πρότερον ἐκαλέοντο, ἐν τοῖσι πρώτοισι τῶν λόγων εἴρηται. Ἴωνες δὲ ἑκατὸν  
 94 νέας παρείχοντο, ἔσκευασμένοι ὡς Ἑλληνες. Ἴωνες δὲ ὅσον μὲν χρόνον ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ οἴκεον τὴν νῦν καλεο-

Κίλικος: see on 7. 40. 12. — 10. τῶν . . . ἅμα Ἀμφιλόχῳ: cp. Strabo, p. 668. A second colony founded by Amphilochus is mentioned by Hdt. 3. 91. 2.

92. 5. αἰωρεόμενα: cp. παραιωρούμενα 7. 61. 8. — 7. δρέπανα: i.e. sickle-shaped swords. — 8. Πανδίωνος: son and successor of Cerops.

93. 1. Δωριεῖς οἱ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίης:

the Dorian pentapolis or league of five Dorian colonies on the coast of Asia Minor (1. 144). ἐκ for ἐν by a kind of attraction, *the point whence*. Cp. 7. 37. 8. — 6. οἵτινες πρότερον ἐκαλέοντο: *as they were called formerly*, i.e. Leleges (1. 171. 6).

94. 1. Ἴωνες: i.e. the Ionian dodekapolis on the coast of Asia Minor (1. 145). — 2. τὴν νῦν κα-



μένην Ἀχαιίην καὶ πρὶν ἢ Δαναόν τε καὶ Εὐρύθον ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Πελοπόννησον, ὡς Ἕλληνες λέγουσι, ἐκαλέοντο Πελασγοὶ Αἰγιαλεῖς, ἐπὶ δὲ Ἴωνος τοῦ Εὐρύθου Ἴωνες. νησιῶται δὲ ἑπτακαίδεκα παρείχοντο νέας, ὠπλισμένοι ὡς Ἕλληνες. καὶ τοῦτο Πελασγικὸν ἔθνος, ὕστερον δὲ Ἴωνικὸν ἐκλήθη κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον καὶ οἱ δυωδεκαπόλεις Ἴωνες οἱ ἀπ' Ἀθηνέων. Αἰολεῖς δὲ ἐξήκοντα νέας παρείχοντο, ἐσκευασμένοι τε ὡς Ἕλληνες, καὶ τὸ πάλαι καλεόμενοι Πελασγοί, ὡς Ἑλλήνων λόγος. Ἑλλησπόντιοι δὲ πλὴν Ἀβυδηνῶν (Ἀβυδηνοῖσι γὰρ προστετάκτο ἐκ βασιλέος κατὰ χώραν μένουσι φύλα-

σκομένην Ἀχαιίην: the district on the north coast of the Peloponnese was called Αἰγιαλία, before the Ionians were driven out by the Achaeans (I. 145); hence the designation below Πελασγοὶ Αἰγιαλεῖς. — 3. Δαναόν: father of the Danaids. — Εὐρύθον: acc. to tradition, Xuthus, the son of Hellen, driven from Thessaly by his brothers Aeolus and Dorus, fled to Attica and marrying Creusa, daughter of Erechtheus, became the father of Ion and Achaëus, the progenitors of the Ionians and the Achaeans. Expelled then from Attica by the sons of Erechtheus, Xuthus fled to Aegialus, where his son Ion, marrying the daughter of King Selinus, became king of the Aegiales, who were then called Αἰγιαλεῖς Ἴωνες (Pausan. 7. 1). — 5. Πελασγοὶ Αἰγια-

λεῖς: the autochthonous inhabitants of the Peloponnese were all considered Pelasgian by Hdt.

95. 1. νησιῶται: i.e. inhabitants of the islands of the Aegean, esp. of the Cyclades. For those that held to the Greeks, see 8. 46. — ἑπτακαίδεκα: Diod. 11. 3 says fifty. — 2. τοῦτο: for οὗτοι, assimilated to ἔθνος. — 3. κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον καί: on the same ground as. — 4. οἱ δυωδεκαπόλεις Ἴωνες: see on 7. 94. 1. — οἱ ἀπ' Ἀθηνέων: driven by the Achaeans from the Peloponnese they betook themselves first to Athens, then to Asia Minor and the islands. Athens was regarded as μητρόπολις of the Ionian colonies (I. 147. 7). — Αἰολεῖς: also a dodekapolis (I. 149). — 6. τὸ πάλαι: cp. τὸ παλαιόν 7. 91. 6. — 8. ἐκ βασιλέος: for ἐκ see on 7. 11. 14. — μένουσι φύλακας

κας εἶναι τῶν γεφυρέων) οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου  
 στρατευόμενοι παρείχοντο μὲν ἑκατὸν νέας, ἔσκενα- 10  
 σμένοι δὲ ἦσαν ὡς Ἑλληνες. οὗτοι δὲ Ἰώνων καὶ  
 96 Δωριέων ἄποικοι. ἐπεβάτευον δὲ ἐπὶ πασέων τῶν νεῶν  
 Πέρσαι καὶ Μῆδοι καὶ Σάκαι. τούτων δὲ ἄριστα  
 πλεούσας παρείχοντο νέας Φοίνικες καὶ Φοινίκων Σι-  
 δώνιοι. τούτοισι πᾶσι καὶ τοῖσι ἐς τὸν πεζὸν τεταγμέ-  
 νοις αὐτῶν ἐπῆσαν ἐκάστοις ἐπιχώριοι ἡγεμόνες, τῶν 5  
 ἐγώ, οὐ γὰρ ἀναγκαίη ἐξέργομαι ἐς ἱστορίας λόγον, οὐ  
 παραμέμνημαι. οὔτε γὰρ ἔθνεος ἐκάστου ἐπάξιοι ἦσαν  
 οἱ ἡγεμόνες, ἔν τε ἔθνει ἐκάστῳ ὅσαι περ πόλεις τοσοῦ-  
 τοι καὶ ἡγεμόνες ἦσαν. εἶποντο δὲ ὡς οὐ στρατηγοὶ  
 ἀλλ' ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατευόμενοι δοῦλοι, ἐπεὶ στρα- 10  
 τηγοὶ τε οἱ τὸ πᾶν ἔχοντες κράτος καὶ ἄρχοντες τῶν  
 ἐθνέων ἐκάστων, ὅσοι αὐτῶν ἦσαν Πέρσαι, εἰρέαται  
 97 μοι. τοῦ δὲ ναυτικοῦ ἐστρατήγεον οἶδε, Ἀριαβίγνης  
 τε ὁ Δαρείου καὶ Πρηξάσπης ὁ Ἀσπαθίνεω καὶ Μεγά-  
 βαζος ὁ Μεγαβάτεω καὶ Ἀχαιμένης ὁ Δαρείου, τῆς μὲν  
 Ἰάδος τε καὶ Καρικῆς στρατιῆς Ἀριαβίγνης ὁ Δαρείου

εἶναι: the ptc. agreeing with Ἀβυ-  
 δηνοῖσι, while φύλακας is acc. on  
 account of the inf. — 9. οἱ δὲ λοι-  
 ποί: resumption after parenthesis.  
 — τοῦ Πόντου: i.e. the Helles-  
 pont, though referring to the whole  
 region from the Aegean to the  
 Euxine (Hellespont, Propontis,  
 and Bosphorus).

96. 1. ἐπεβάτευον: cp. 7. 184. 8.  
 — 2. τούτων: as τούτοις below,  
 referring to the peoples. — 6. ἀναγ-

καίη ἐξέργομαι: as 7. 139. 1 =  
 ἐξαναγκάζομαι. — ἐς ἱστορίας λό-  
 γον: for the historical narrative.  
 — 7. ἐπάξιοι: i.e. of mention. —  
 9. ὡς οὐ: for οὐκ ὡς, prob. to  
 avoid δὲ οὐ. — 10. δοῦλοι: subjects.  
 — ἐπεὶ: connecting with τῶν . . .  
 οὐ παραμέμνημαι.

97. 1. οἶδε: see App. — Ἀρια-  
 βίγνης: fell at Salamis (8. 89). —  
 — 2. Μεγάβαζος: see 5. 32. —  
 3. Ἀχαιμένης: see 3. 12. — 4. στρα-

τε παῖς καὶ τῆς Γωβρύεω θυγατρός· Αἰγυπτίων δὲ 5  
 ἐστρατήγει Ἀχαιμένης, Ξέρξεω ἐὼν ἀπ' ἀμφοτέρων  
 ἀδελφεός, τῆς δὲ ἄλλης στρατιῆς ἐστρατήγεον οἱ δύο.  
 τριηκόντεροι δὲ καὶ πεντηκόντεροι καὶ κέρκουροι καὶ  
 ἵππαγωγὰ πλοῖα σμικρὰ συνελθόντα ἐς τὸν ἀριθμὸν  
 98 ἐφάνη τρισχίλια. τῶν δὲ ἐπιπλεόντων μετὰ γε τοὺς  
 στρατηγούς οἶδε ἦσαν οἱ ὀνομαστότατοι, Σιδώνιος  
 Τετράμνηστος Ἀνύσου, καὶ Τύριος Ματτὴν Σιρώμου,  
 καὶ Ἀράδιος Μέρβαλος Ἀγβάλου, καὶ Κίλιξ Συέννεσις  
 Ὡρομέδοντος, καὶ Λύκιος Κυβερνίσκος Σίκα, καὶ Κύν- 5  
 πριοι Γόργος τε ὁ Χέρσιος καὶ Τιμῶναξ ὁ Τιμαγόρεω,  
 καὶ Καρῶν Ἰστιαῖός τε ὁ Τύμνεω καὶ Πίγρης ὁ Ὑσσελ-  
 99 δώμου καὶ Δαμασίθυμος ὁ Κανδαύλεω. τῶν μὲν νυν  
 ἄλλων οὐ παραμέμνημαι ταξιάρχων ὥς οὐκ ἀναγκαζό-  
 μενος, Ἀρτεμισίης δέ, τῆς μάλιστα θῶμα ποιέομαι ἐπὶ  
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατευσαμένης γυναικός, ἣτις ἀποθα-  
 νόντος τοῦ ἀνδρὸς αὐτὴ τε ἔχουσα τὴν τυραννίδα καὶ 5  
 παίδος ὑπάρχοντος νεηνίῳ ὑπὸ λήματός τε καὶ ἀν-

τιῆς: *fleet*, 7. 44. 9. — 6. ἀπ' ἀμφο-  
 τέρων: *i.e.* ἀπὸ πατρὸς καὶ μητρός.  
 — 7. οἱ δύο: *i.e.* the other two  
 (Prexaspes and Megabazus).

98. 2. οἱ ὀνομαστότατοι: vas-  
 sal princes, who were ἐπιχώριοι  
 ἡγεμόνες. — 3. Ματτὴν Σιρώμου:  
 the father (Phoen. Hīrōm, Hiram)  
 reigned at Tyre till 532 B.C. —  
 4. Ἀράδιος: from a Phoenician  
 town, Aradus. — Συέννεσις: ap-  
 parently the title of the rulers  
 of Cilicia. Cp. 1. 74. 16; Xen.  
*Anab.* 1. 2. 12. — 6. Γόργος: prince

of the Cyprian Salamis. Cp. 5.  
 104, 115. — 7. Ἰστιαῖος ὁ Τύμνεω:  
 mentioned also 5. 37. 3. — 8. Δα-  
 μασίθυμος: prince of the Carian  
 city of Kalynda (8. 87. 12).

#### ARTEMISIA

99. 2. οὐ παραμέμνημαι: note  
 the intrusion of this non-attributive  
 element, as not infreq. in Hdt.  
 — 3. θῶμα ποιέομαι: periphrasis  
 for θαυμάζω. Cp. ἐποιήσατο ὄργην  
 7. 105. 2. — 6. παίδος ὑπάρχοντος:  
 prob. Pisindelis, by whose son,

δρηίης, ἐστρατεύετο, οὐδεμιῆς ἐούσης οἱ ἀναγκαίης. οὖνομα μὲν δὴ ἦν αὐτῇ Ἀρτεμισίη, θυγάτηρ δὲ ἦν Λυγδάμιος, γένος δὲ ἐξ Ἀλικαρνησοῦ τὰ πρὸς πατρός, τὰ μητρόθεν δὲ Κρήσσα. ἡγεμόνευε δὲ Ἀλικαρ-<sup>10</sup> νησσέων τε καὶ Κώων καὶ Νισυρίων τε καὶ Καλυδνίων, πέντε νέας παρεχομένη. καὶ συναπάσης τῆς στρατιῆς, μετὰ γε τὰς Σιδωνίων, νέας εὐδοξοτάτας παρείχετο, πάντων δὲ τῶν συμμάχων γνώμας ἀρίστας βασιλεῖ ἀπεδέξατο. τῶν δὲ κατέλεξα πολλίων ἡγεμονεύειν αὐτήν,<sup>15</sup> τὸ ἔθνος ἀποφαίνω πᾶν ἐὼν Δωρικόν, Ἀλικαρνησσίας μὲν Τροιζηνίους, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους Ἐπιδαυρίους.

<sup>100</sup> Ἐς μὲν τοσόνδε ὁ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς εἶρηται. Ξέρξης δὲ ἐπεὶ ἡριθμήθη τε καὶ διετάχθη ὁ στρατός, ἐπεθύμησε αὐτὸς σφεας διεξελάσας θεήσασθαι. μετὰ δὲ ἐποίει ταῦτα, καὶ διεξελαύνων ἐπὶ ἄρματος παρὰ ἔθνος ἐν ἑκάστον ἐπυνθάνετο, καὶ ἀπέγραφον οἱ γραμματισταί,<sup>5</sup> ἕως ἐξ ἐσχάτων ἐς ἔσχατα ἀπίκετο καὶ τῆς ἵππου καὶ τοῦ πεζοῦ. ὥς δὲ ταῦτά οἱ ἐπεποίητο, τῶν νεῶν κατελκυσθεισέων ἐς θάλασσαν, ἐνθαῦτα ὁ Ξέρξης μετεκβὰς ἐκ τοῦ ἄρματος ἐς νέα Σιδωνίην ἵζετο ὑπὸ σκηνῇ χρυσῇ καὶ παρέπλει παρὰ τὰς πύρας τῶν νεῶν, ἐπει-<sup>10</sup>

Lygdamis, Herodotus was later banished from Halicarnassus. —

9. τὰ πρὸς πατρός: *on the father's*

*side*. — 14. γνώμας ἀρίστας βασι-

λεῖ ἀπεδέξατο: see 8. 68, 69, 101—

103. Hdt. is fond of characteriza-

tions of women. Besides Artemi-

sia, his most notable woman, see

for Gorgo of Sparta 5. 51, 7. 239;

Nitocris 1. 185—187; Tomiris 1.

205—214; Amestris 9. 109—113. —

16. ἀποφαίνω: *I declare*.

#### REVIEW OF THE HOST

100. 5. ἀπέγραφον οἱ γραμματισταί: *the (royal) scribes made lists*. To these lists Hdt. prob. had access. — 9. νέα Σιδωνίην: the Sidonian ships were regarded as the best in the fleet. Cp. 7. 44.

ρωτῶν τε ἐκάστας ὁμοίως καὶ τὸν πεζὸν καὶ ἀπογραφόμενος. τὰς δὲ νέας οἱ ναύαρχοι ἀναγαγόντες ὅσον τε τέσσερα πλέθρα ἀπὸ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ἀνεκώχουν, τὰς πρῶρας ἐς γῆν τρέψαντες πάντες μετωπηδὸν καὶ ἐξοπλίσαντες τοὺς ἐπιβάτας ὥς ἐς πόλεμον. ὁ δ' ἐντὸς<sup>15</sup> τῶν πρῶρέων πλέων ἐθηεῖτο καὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ.

- 101 Ὡς δὲ καὶ ταύτας διεξέπλωσε καὶ ἐξέβη ἐκ τῆς νεός, μετεπέμψατο Δημάρητον τὸν Ἀρίστωνος συστρατευόμενον αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καλέσας δ' αὐτὸν εἶρετο τάδε· Δημάρητε, νῦν μοί σε ἡδύ τι ἐστὶ εἰρέεσθαι τὰ θέλω. σὺ εἷς Ἕλλην τε, καὶ ὥς ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι σέο<sup>5</sup> τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τῶν ἐμοὶ ἐς λόγους ἀπικνεομένων, πόλιος οὐτ' ἐλαχίστης οὐτ' ἀσθενεστάτης. νῦν ὦν μοι τόδε φράσον, εἰ Ἕλληνες ὑπομενέουσιν χεῖρας ἐμοὶ ἀνταειρόμενοι. οὐ γάρ, ὥς ἐγὼ δοκέω, οὐδ' εἰ πάντες Ἕλληνες καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ οἱ πρὸς ἐσπέρης<sup>10</sup> οἰκέοντες ἄνθρωποι συλληχθείησαν, οὐκ ἀξιόμαχοί εἰσι ἐμὲ ἐπιόντα ὑπομεῖναι, μὴ ἔοντες ἄρθμιοι. θέλω μέντοι καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ σέο, ὁκοῖόν τι λέγεις περὶ αὐτῶν, πυθέσθαι.

8, 7. 96. 2, 7. 99. 13, 7. 128. 10. —

11. ἀπογραφόμενος: *having a record made*. S. 1725; HA. 815; GS. 150. — 15. ἐντός: unusual for μεταξύ.

XERXES TALKS WITH DEMARATUS  
(CC. 101-104)

101. 2. Δημάρητον: see 7. 3. 2 and 6. 61-70. — 4. ἡδύ τι ἐστὶ: cp. ἐν ἡδονῇ ἐστι 7. 15. 12; ἡδονή (ἐστι) 7. 160. 12. — 7. ἐλαχίστης: absolute superl. *very small*. Note

the litotes. — 8. νῦν ὦν: *now then*, continuative, as 7. 16. β 1. — ὑπομενέουσιν: *will dare*, with suppl. ptc., as 7. 209. 18, for inf.; rare const. reappearing in late writers. — 9. οὐδ' εἰ . . . συλληχθείησαν, οὐκ ἀξιόμαχοί εἰσι: mixed condition. Note the heaping of the negatives for emphasis. ἀξιόμαχοι with inf. as 7. 138. 8. — 12. ὑπομεῖναι: with acc. *to withstand*. — 13. τὸ ἀπὸ σέο: *thy view*, explained

ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἰρώτα, ὁ δὲ ὑπολαβὼν ἔφη· βασιλεῦ, κότερα ἀληθείῃ χρήσωμαι πρὸς σέ ἢ ἡδονῇ; ὁ δέ μιν<sup>15</sup> ἀληθείῃ χρήσασθαι ἐκέλευε, φὰς οὐδέν οἱ ἀηδέστερον<sup>102</sup> ἔσεσθαι ἢ πρότερον ἦν. ὡς δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσε Δημάρητος, ἔλεγε τάδε· Βασιλεῦ, ἐπειδὴ ἀληθείῃ διαχρήσασθαι πάντως κελεύεις ταῦτα λέγοντα τὰ μὴ ψευδόμενός τις ὕστερον ὑπὸ σέο ἀλώσεται, τῇ Ἑλλάδι πενίῃ μὲν αἰεὶ κοτε σύντροφός ἐστι, ἀρετὴ δὲ ἔπακτός<sup>5</sup> ἐστι, ἀπὸ τε σοφίης κατεργασμένη καὶ νόμου ἰσχυροῦ· τῇ διαχρεωμένη ἢ Ἑλλὰς τήν τε πενίην ἀπαμύνεται καὶ τὴν δεσποσύνην. αἰνέω μὲν νυν πάντας Ἕλληνας τοὺς περὶ ἐκείνους τοὺς Δωρικοὺς χώρους οἰκημένους, ἔρχομαι δὲ λέξων οὐ περὶ πάντων τούσδε τοὺς λόγους, ἀλλὰ<sup>10</sup> περὶ Λακεδαιμονίων μούνων, πρῶτα μὲν ὅτι οὐκ ἔστι ὅπως κοτὲ σοὺς δέξονται λόγους δουλοσύνην φέροντας τῇ Ἑλλάδι, αὐτὶς δὲ ὡς ἀντιώσσονται τοι ἐς μάχην καὶ ἦν οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πάντες τὰ σὰ φρονέωσι. ἀριθμοῦ δὲ πέρι μὴ πύθῃ ὅσοι τινὲς ἐόντες ταῦτα ποιεῖν οἰοί<sup>15</sup>

by ὁκοῖόν τι. Cp. I. 159. 7, 4. 139. 12, 9. 7. a 11. — 15. ἡδονῇ: sc. χρήσωμαι = πρὸς ἡδονὴν λέξω. — 17. ἔσεσθαι: sc. αὐτόν. Such omission of subj. of inf. freq. in Hom., e.g. θ 520.

102. 3. τὰ μὴ ψευδόμενός τις . . . ἀλώσεται: the ptc. is suppl. μὴ because the rel. clause has the force of result aimed at. GMT. 576. — 5. αἰεὶ κοτε: forever and ever; freq. in Thuc. and tragedy. — σύντροφος: bred with, innate = ἔδῃμος. The term is medical. Cp. Thuc. 2. 50. 4. τῶν ξυντρό-

φων (νοσημάτων). — ἔπακτος: imported, acquired. For the thought, cp. Eur. frg. 642 πενία δὲ σοφίαν ἔλαχε διὰ τὸ δυστυχές, and Theocr. 21. 1 ἃ πενία, Διόφαντε, μόνα τὰς τέχνας ἐγείρει, Αὐτὰ τῷ μόχθῳ διδάσκαλος, Plaut. Stich. 1. 3. 24 *paupertas omnes artes perdocet*. — 6. ἀπὸ σοφίης: from (by means of) common sense. — 9. ἔρχομαι λέξων: see on 7. 49. 14. — 13. ὡς: for variety after ὅτι. — 14. τὰ σὰ φρονέωσι: take your side, as 2. 162. 27, 8. 34. 9, 8. 75. 11, 9. 99. 6.

εἰσι· ἦν τε γὰρ τύχῳσι ἐξεστρατευμένοι χίλιοι, οὗτοι  
 μαχήσονταιί τοι, ἦν τε ἐλάσσονες τούτων, ἦν τε καὶ  
 103 πλέονες. ταῦτα ἀκούσας Ξέρξης γελάσας ἔφη· Δη-  
 μάρητε, οἶον ἐφθέγξω ἔπος, ἄνδρας χιλίους στρατιῇ  
 τοσῆδε μαχήσεσθαι. ἄγε, εἰπέ μοι, σὺ φῆς τούτων  
 τῶν ἀνδρῶν βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς γενέσθαι. σὺ ὦν ἐβελήσεις  
 αὐτίκα μάλα πρὸς ἄνδρας δέκα μάχεσθαι; καίτοι εἰ τὸς  
 πολιτικὸν ὑμῖν πᾶν ἐστι τοιοῦτο οἶον σὺ διαιρεῖς, σέ γε  
 τὸν κείνων βασιλέα πρέπει πρὸς τὸ διπλήσιον ἀντιτάσ-  
 σεσθαι κατὰ νόμους τοὺς ὑμετέρους. εἰ γὰρ κείνων  
 ἕκαστος δέκα ἀνδρῶν τῆς στρατιῆς τῆς ἐμῆς ἀντάξιός  
 ἐστι, σέ δέ γε δίζημαι εἴκοσι εἶναι ἀντάξιον· καὶ οὕτω  
 μὲν ὀρθοῖτ' ἂν ὁ λόγος ὁ παρὰ σέο εἰρημένος. εἰ δέ  
 τοιοῦτοί τε ἔόντες καὶ μεγάθεα τοσοῦτοι, ὅσοι σὺ τε  
 καὶ οἱ παρ' ἐμὲ φοιτῶσι Ἑλλήνων ἐς λόγους, αὐχεῖτε  
 τοσοῦτο, ὅρα μὴ μάτην κόμπος ὁ λόγος οὗτος εἰρημένος  
 ᾗ. ἐπεὶ φέρε ἴδω παντὶ τῷ οἰκότι· κῶς ἂν δυναίαιο  
 15 χίλιοι ἢ καὶ μύριοι ἢ καὶ πεντακισμύριοι, ἔόντες γε

103. 2. οἶον ἐφθέγξω ἔπος: cp.  
 the Homeric ποῖόν σε ἔπος φύγεν  
 ἕρκος ὀδόντων (Δ 350, α 64).—  
 5. αὐτίκα μάλα: in prose μάλα is  
 reg. postpos. with αὐτίκα. — τὸ  
 πολιτικόν: = οἱ πολῖται, abstract  
 for concrete. Cp. τὸ ἱππικόν 7.  
 87. 7. — 6. διαιρεῖς: cp. 7. 16. γ 2.  
 — 7. τὸ διπλήσιον: alluding to the  
 double portion of kings at meals  
 (6. 57). — 10. σέ δέ: for δέ in  
 apod., see on 7. 51. 3. — δίζημαι:  
*require*. — 11. ὀρθοῖτ' ἂν: = ὀρθὸς  
 ἂν εἶη (2. 17. 6). — παρὰ σέο: παρὰ

*c. gen.* as 6. 54. 2. The const. is  
 personal and almost restricted to  
 verbs of *giving* and *saying*. —  
 12. μεγάθεα: as τὰ μεγάθεα and  
 μέγαθος in Hdt., acc. of specifi-  
 cation. — 13. αὐχεῖτε: poetic term.  
 Cp. 2. 160. 2; Thuc. 2. 39. 18. —  
 14. μάτην κόμπος: *vain boasting*.  
 Cp. Eur. *Ion*. 275 τί δαὶ τόδ'; ἀρ'  
 ἀληθὲς ἢ μάτην λόγος; Rare const.  
 of adv. qualifying noun, as 6. 30.  
 14. — 15. φέρε ἴδω: *let me see*.  
 GMT. 257; GS. 374. — παντὶ τῷ  
 οἰκότι: *in all probability*. τὸ οἰκός

ἐλεύθεροι πάντες ὁμοίως καὶ μὴ ὑπ' ἐνὸς ἀρχόμενοι, στρατῷ τοσῶδε ἀντιστῆναι; ἐπεὶ τοι πλέονες περὶ ἓνα ἕκαστον γινόμεθα ἢ χίλιοι, ἐόντων ἐκείνων πέντε χιλιάδων. ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἐνὸς ἀρχόμενοι κατὰ τρόπον τὸν 20 ἡμέτερον γενοιάτ' ἂν δειμαίνοντες τοῦτον καὶ παρὰ τὴν ἑωυτῶν φύσιν ἀμείνονες καὶ ἴοιεν ἀναγκαζόμενοι μάλιστα εἰς πλέονας ἐλάσσονες ἐόντες. ἀνειμένοι δὲ εἰς τὸ ἐλεύθερον οὐκ ἂν ποιεόιεν τούτων οὐδέτερα. δοκέω δὲ ἔγωγε καὶ ἀνισωθέντας πλήθει χαλεπῶς ἂν Ἑλληνας 25 Πέρσῃσι μούνοισι μάχεσθαι. ἀλλὰ παρ' ἡμῖν τοῦτό ἐστι τὸ σὺ λέγεις, ἔστι γε μὲν οὐ πολλὸν ἀλλὰ σπάνιον. εἰσὶ γὰρ Περσέων τῶν ἐμῶν αἰχμοφόρων οἱ ἐβελήσουσι Ἑλλήνων ἀνδράσι τρισὶ ὁμοῦ μάχεσθαι. τῶν σὺ ἐὼν 104 ἄπειρος πολλὰ φλυηρεῖς. πρὸς ταῦτα Δημάρητος λέγει. ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἀρχῆθεν ἠπιστάμην ὅτι ἀληθεῖη χρεώμενος οὐ φίλα τοι ἐρέω. σὺ δὲ ἐπεὶ ἠνάγκασας λέγειν τῶν λόγων τοὺς ἀληθεστάτους, ἔλεγον τὰ κατήκοντα Σπαρτιήτησι. καίτοι ὡς ἐγὼ τυγχάνω τὰ νῦν τάδε ἐστοργῶς 5 ἐκείνους, αὐτὸς μάλιστα ἐξεπίσται, οἷ με τιμὴν τε καὶ

as 7. 239. 7. — 18. *περὶ ἓνα ἕκαστον*: as if each Spartan were to fight singly. Acc. to the enumeration in cc. 185, 186 Xerxes' host numbered 5,283,220 men; but half were non-combatants. — 21. *δειμαίνοντες*: Ionic and poetic; in Attic prose only in Plato. — *παρὰ τὴν ἑωυτῶν φύσιν*: contrary to their own nature, instead of gen. or ἤ. S. 1073; H.A. 648. — 24. *οὐδέτερα*: neut. pl. treated as sing., as often. Cp.

δεύτερα 7. 53. 2. — 26. *τοῦτό ἐστι τὸ σὺ λέγεις*: referring to 7. 102. 16 f. — 27. *ἔστι γε μὲν*: *it is, however*.

104. 3. *τῶν λόγων τοὺς ἀληθεστάτους*: for the force of the part. gen. cp. 7. 108. 13 *τῷ δικαιωτάτῳ τῶν λόγων*. — 4. *τὰ κατήκοντα Σπαρτιήτησι*: *what belongs to, is characteristic of, the Spartans*. Cp. 8. 40. 7, 8. 102. 3. — 5. *τὰ νῦν τάδε*: *as to these present matters*. — *ἐστοργῶς ἐκείνους*: ironical. — 6. *οἷ*



γέρεια ἀπελῶμενοι πατρῶα ἀπολὼν τε καὶ φυγάδα πεποιήκασι, πατὴρ δὲ σὸς ὑποδεξάμενος βίον τέ μοι καὶ οἶκον ἔδωκε. οὐκ ὦν οἶκός ἐστι ἄνδρα τὸν σῶφρονα εὐνοίην φαινομένην διωθεῖσθαι, ἀλλὰ στέργειν μάλιστα. 10 ἐγὼ δὲ οὔτε δέκα ἀνδράσι ὑπίσχομαι οἷός τε εἶναι μάχεσθαι οὔτε δυοῖσι, ἐκὼν τε εἶναι οὐδ' ἂν μουννομαχέοιμι. εἰ δὲ ἀναγκαίῃ εἴη ἢ μέγας τις ὁ ἐποτρύνων ἀγών, μαχοίμην ἂν πάντων ἡδιστα ἐνὶ τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν οἱ Ἑλλήνων ἕκαστός φησι τριῶν ἄξιος εἶναι. ὥς δὲ καὶ 15 Λακεδαιμόνιοι κατὰ μὲν ἓνα μαχόμενοι οὐδαμῶν εἰσι κακίονες ἀνδρῶν, ἀλείς δὲ ἄριστοι ἀνδρῶν ἀπάντων. ἐλεύθεροι γὰρ ἔόντες οὐ πάντα ἐλεύθεροί εἰσι· ἔπεστι γάρ σφι δεσπότης νόμος, τὸν ὑποδειμαίνουσι πολλῶ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἢ οἱ σοὶ σέ. ποιέουσιν γὼν τὰ ἂν ἐκεῖνος 20 ἀνώγη· ἀνώγει δὲ τῶντ' αἰεὶ οὐκ ἔων φεύγειν οὐδὲν πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων ἐκ μάχης, ἀλλὰ μένοντας ἐν τῇ τάξι ἐπικρατεῖν ἢ ἀπόλλυσθαι. σοὶ δὲ εἰ φαίνομαι ταῦτα λέγων φλυηρεῖν, τᾶλλα σιγᾶν θέλω τὸ λοιπόν· νῦν δὲ

με . . . πεποιήκασι: see 6. 61-70. — 8. βίον τέ μοι καὶ οἶκον ἔδωκε: cp. 6. 70. 12. — 10. εὐνοίην φαινομένην: *good will manifested*. — 11. ὑπίσχομαι: *profiteor*, as 2. 28. 3. — 12. δυοῖσι: Dial. § 3. i. 1. — ἐκὼν εἶναι: *willingly*. S. 2012 c; HA. 956 a. This abs. inf. in Attic writers only in negative sentences, as here. — 15. ἕκαστός φησι: the verb takes the number of the nearer appos. distributive. — ὥς δὲ καί: as καὶ (οὐδ', μηδ') ὥς, freq. in Hdt. The simple demonstrative ὥς

= οὕτως once in Hdt. (9. 18. 11) and once in Thuc. (3. 37. 26); freq. in Hom. and other poets, but rare in Attic prose and poetry. — 18. ἔπεστι γάρ σφι δεσπότης νόμος: cp. Pindar's νόμον πάντων βασιλέα quoted by Hdt. 3. 38. 22. — 21. ἀνώγη· ἀνώγει: note the epianastrophe. — οὐδὲν πλῆθος: object of φεύγειν. — 22. ἀλλά: sc. κελεύων. — μένοντας . . . ἀπόλλυσθαι: compare the example of Leonidas 7. 220. 4, and the conduct of Amompharetus 9. 53 ff.

ἀναγκασθεὶς ἔλεξα. γένοιτο μέντοι κατὰ νόον τοι, 25  
 βασιλεῦ.

- 105 Ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἀμείψατο, Ξέρξης δὲ ἐς γέλωτά τε  
 ἔτρεψε καὶ οὐκ ἐποίησατο ὀργὴν οὐδεμίαν, ἀλλ' ἠπίως  
 αὐτὸν ἀπεπέμψατο. τούτῳ δὲ ἐς λόγους ἐλθὼν Ξέρξης  
 καὶ ὑπαρχον ἐν τῷ Δορίσκῳ τούτῳ καταστήσας Μασκά-  
 μην τὸν Μεγαδόστω, τὸν δὲ ὑπὸ Δαρείου σταθέντα 5  
 καταπαύσας, ἐξήλαυνε τὸν στρατὸν διὰ τῆς Θρήκης  
 106 ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. κατέλιπε δὲ ἄνδρα τοιόνδε Μασκά-  
 μην γενόμενον, τῷ μούνῳ Ξέρξης δῶρα πέμπεσκε ὥς  
 ἀριστεύοντι πάντων ὅσους αὐτὸς κατέστησε ἢ Δαρείος  
 ὑπάρχους, πέμπεσκε δὲ ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος· ὥς δὲ καὶ Ἄρτο-  
 ξέρξης ὁ Ξέρξεω τοῖσι Μασκαμείοισι ἐκγόνοισι. κατ- 5  
 ἔστασαν γὰρ ἔτι πρότερον ταύτης τῆς ἐλάσιος ὑπαρχοι  
 ἐν τῇ Θρήκῃ καὶ τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου πανταχῇ. οὗτοι  
 ὦν πάντες, οἳ τε ἐκ Θρήκης καὶ τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου,  
 πλὴν τοῦ ἐν Δορίσκῳ ὑπὸ Ἑλλήνων ὕστερον ταύτης τῆς  
 στρατηλασίης ἐξαιρέθησαν· τὸν δὲ ἐν Δορίσκῳ Μα- 10

MASCAMES AND BOGES (CC. 105-  
 107)

105. 1. ἐς γέλωτα ἔτρεψε: sc. τὸ  
 πρήγμα. Cp. Thuc. 6. 35. 6; Ar.  
*Vesp.* 1260. — 2. ἐποίησατο ὀργήν:  
 periphrasis for ὠργίσθη. Cp. 7.  
 99. 3. — 4. τῷ Δορίσκῳ τούτῳ:  
 where the review of the army and  
 the just reported conversation oc-  
 curred; last mentioned 7. 59.

106. 1. ἄνδρα τοιόνδε: ex-  
 plained by the following consec-  
 utive clause τῷ . . . πέμπεσκε, such a

man that to him (lit. to whom). —

2. μούνῳ: on the reading, see App.

— δῶρα πέμπεσκε κτέ.: cp. 3. 160.

9 δῶρά οἱ (sc. Ζωπύρῳ) ἀνὰ πᾶν

ἔτος ἐδίδου ταῦτα τὰ Πέρσῃσι

ἔστι τιμώματα. — 4. ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος:

yearly. ἀνὰ distrib. only with

πᾶς and ἕκαστος and numerals. —

5. Μασκαμείοισι: such patronymic

adjs. are poetical. — 7. τοῦ Ἑλλησ-

πόντου πανταχῇ: cp. 7. 126. 6

οὐδαμόθι τῆς Εὐρώπης. Ἑλλήσπον-

τος stands for the region about, as

Πόντος 7. 95. 9. — 10. ἐξαιρέθη-

σκάμην οὐδ' αἰεὶ κω ἐδυνάσθησαν ἐξελεῖν, πολλῶν πειρησαμένων. διὰ τοῦτο δέ οἱ τὰ δῶρα πέμπεται παρὰ  
 107 τοῦ βασιλεύοντος αἰεὶ ἐν Πέρσῃσι. τῶν δὲ ἐξαιρεθέντων ὑπὸ Ἑλλήνων οὐδένα βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης ἐνόμισε εἶναι ἄνδρα ἀγαθὸν εἰ μὴ Βόγην μῦνον τὸν ἐξ Ἱόνος. τοῦτον δὲ αἰνέων οὐκ ἐπαύετο καὶ τοὺς περιεόντας αὐτοῦ ἐν Πέρσῃσι παῖδας ἐτίμα μάλιστα, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄξιός αἶνον μεγάλου ἐγένετο Βόγης· ὃς ἐπειδὴ ἐπολιορκεῖτο ὑπὸ Ἀθηναίων καὶ Κίμωνος τοῦ Μιλτιάδεω, παρεὼν αὐτῷ ὑπόσπονδον ἐξελεῖν καὶ νοστήσαι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, οὐκ ἠθέλησε, μὴ δειλίῃ δόξειε περιεῖναι βασιλεῖ, ἀλλὰ διεκαρτέρει ἐς τὸ ἔσχατον. ὥς δ' οὐδὲν  
 10 ἔτι φορβῆς ἐνὴν ἐν τῷ τείχει, συννήσας πυρὴν μεγάλην ἔσφαξε τὰ τέκνα καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὰς παλλακὰς καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας καὶ ἔπειτα ἐσέβαλε ἐς τὸ πῦρ, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τὸν χρυσὸν ἅπαντα τὸν ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεος καὶ τὸν ἄργυρον ἔσπειρε ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχεος ἐς τὸν Στρυμόνα,  
 15 ποιήσας δὲ ταῦτα ἑωυτὸν ἐσέβαλε ἐς τὸ πῦρ. οὕτω

σαν: e.g. the commandant at Ses-  
 tos 478 B.C. (9. 118), at Eion 476  
 (7. 107). — 11. ἐδυνάσθησαν: Ionic  
 aor. = ἐδυνήθησαν. — πειρησαμέ-  
 νων: Hdt. like Homer uses the  
 aor. mid. form of this verb as well as  
 aor. pass. The aor. pass. is almost  
 exclusively used by Attic writers  
 except Thuc., who prefers aor. mid.

107. 3. Βόγην: called Βούτης  
 by Plut. (*Cim.* 7), Βοῆς by  
 Pausan. (8. 8. 9). — Ἱόνος: on  
 the Strymon. See on 7. 25. 11. —

5. αὐτοῦ ἐν Πέρσῃσι: *there among  
 the Persians.* Cp. αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ  
 στρατοπέδῳ 6. 72. 6. The const.  
 is esp. freq. in Hom. — 6. αἶνον:  
 poetical word = ἔπαινος. — ἐπο-  
 λιορκεῖτο: 470 B.C. — 11. φορβῆς:  
*food* for men in Hdt.; *fodder*  
 for horses and asses in Hom. —  
 12. ἔσφαξε τὰ τέκνα κτί.: note the  
 effect of the circumstantial details.  
 See Plut. *Cim.* 7. — 15. ἔσπειρε:  
*sowed*, i.e. scattered broadcast, to  
 render recovery more difficult.

μὲν οὗτος δικαίως αἰνεῖται ἔτι καὶ ἐς τὸδε ὑπὸ Περσέων.  
 108 Ξέρξης δὲ ἐκ τοῦ Δορίσκου ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα,  
 τοὺς δὲ αἰεὶ γινομένους ἐμποδὼν συστρατεύεσθαι ἡνάγκαι.  
 ἐδεδούλωτο γάρ, ὥς καὶ πρότερόν μοι δεδήλωται,  
 ἢ μέχρι Θεσσαλίας πᾶσα καὶ ἦν ὑπὸ βασιλέα δασμο-  
 φόρος, Μεγαβάζου τε καταστρεψαμένου καὶ ὕστερον 5  
 Μαρδονίου. παραμείβετο δὲ πορευόμενος ἐκ Δορίσκου  
 πρῶτα μὲν τὰ Σαμοθρήκια τείχεα, τῶν ἐσχάτη πεπό-  
 λισται πρὸς ἐσπέρης πόλις τῇ οὐνομά ἐστι Μεσαμβρία.  
 ἔχεται δὲ ταύτης Θασίων πόλις Στρώμη, διὰ δὲ σφεν  
 τοῦ μέσου Λίσου ποταμὸς διαρρεῖ, ὃς τότε οὐκ ἀντέσχε 10  
 τὸ ὕδωρ παρέχων τῷ Ξέρξει στρατῷ ἀλλ' ἐπέλιπε. ἢ  
 δὲ χώρα αὕτη πάλαι μὲν ἐκαλεῖτο Γαλλαϊκή, νῦν δὲ  
 Βριαντική· ἔστι μέντοι τῷ δικαιοτάτῳ τῶν λόγων καὶ  
 109 αὕτη Κικόνων. διαβὰς δὲ τοῦ Λίσου ποταμοῦ τὸ  
 ρεῖθρον ἀπεξηρασμένον πόλιος Ἑλληνίδας τάσδε παρα-  
 μείβετο, Μαρώνειαν, Δίκαιαν, Ἀβδηρα. ταύτας τε δὴ  
 παρεξῆε καὶ κατὰ ταύτας λίμνας ὀνομαστάς τάσδε,  
 Μαρωνείης μὲν μεταξὺ καὶ Στρώμης κειμένην Ἴσμα- 5

MARCH THROUGH THRACE FROM  
 DORISCUS TO ACANTHUS (CC.  
 108-116)

108. 3. πρότερον: 5. 1 ff., 6.  
 44 f. — 4. ἦν ὑπὸ βασιλέα δασμο-  
 φόρος: for more usual dat. the idea  
 being "had been brought as tribu-  
 taries under the king." — 5. Μεγα-  
 βάζου: cp. 4. 143 f., 5. 1 ff. —  
 7. τὰ Σαμοθρήκια τείχεα: see on  
 7. 59. 11. — 8. Μεσαμβρία: to be

distinguished from Mesambria on  
 the Pontus (6. 33. 11). — 9. ἔχε-  
 ται ταύτης: *is next to, borders on,*  
*this.* — 10. οὐκ ἀντέσχε: cp. 7.  
 43. 3, 7. 58. 14. — 13. καὶ αὕτη:  
 as well as Doriscus (7. 59. 15).

109. 1. τὸ ρεῖθρον ἀπεξηρασμέ-  
 νον: *i.e.* which had been drunk  
 dry by Xerxes' army. — 3. ταύτας:  
*sc. τὰς πόλεις.* — 4. λίμνας . . .  
 τάσδε: *sc. παρεξῆε.* — 5. μεταξὺ:  
 for position, cp. 7. 33. 4. — Ἴσμα-

- ρίδα, κατὰ δὲ Δίκαιαν Βιστονίδα, ἐς τὴν ποταμοὶ δύο ἐσιεῖσι τὸ ὕδωρ, Τραυὸς τε καὶ Κόμψατος. κατὰ δὲ Ἀβδηρα λίμνην μὲν οὐδεμίαν ἐοῦσαν ὀνομαστήν παραμείψατο Ξέρξης, ποταμὸν δὲ Νέστον ῥέοντα ἐς θάλασσαν. μετὰ δὲ ταύτας τὰς χώρας ἰὼν τὰς ἡπειρώτιδας πόλιν παρῆε, τῶν ἐν μιῇ λίμνῃ ἐοῦσα τυγχάνει ὥσεί τριήκοντα σταδίων μάλιστά κη τὴν περίοδον, ἰχθυώδης τε καὶ κάρτα ἀλμυρή· ταύτην τὰ ὑποζύγια μούνα ἀρδόμενα ἀνεξήρηνε. τῇ δὲ πόλει ταύτῃ οὐνομά ἐστι
- 110 Πίστυρος. ταύτας μὲν δὴ τὰς πόλιν τὰς παραθαλασσίας τε καὶ Ἑλληνίδας ἐξ εὐωνύμου χειρὸς ἀπέργων παρεξῆε, ἔθνεα δὲ Θρηκῶν δι' ὧν τῆς χώρας ὁδὸν ἐποιεῖτο τοσάδε, Παῖτοι, Κίκονες, Βίστονες, Σαπαῖοι, Δερσαῖοι, Ἡδωνοί, Σάτραι. τούτων οἱ μὲν παρὰ θάλασσαν κατοικημένοι ἐν τῇσι νηυσὶ εἶποντο· οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν τὴν μεσόγαιαν οἰκέοντες καταλεχθέντες τε ὑπ' ἐμέο, πλὴν Σατρέων οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες πεζῇ ἀναγκαζόμενοι
- 111 εἶποντο. Σάτραι δὲ οὐδενός κω ἀνθρώπων ὑπήκοοι ἐγένοντο, ὅσον ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν, ἀλλὰ διατελέουσι τὸ μέχρι

ρίδα: named from the Ciconian town Ismarus mentioned Hom. i. 40.—7. ἐσιεῖσι τὸ ὕδωρ: = ἐσβάλλει τὸ ὕδωρ, only here.—9. ποταμόν: sc. διέβη from παραμείψατο.—10. τὰς ἡπειρώτιδας πόλιν: i.e. the coast towns opposite Samothrace and Thasos, as shown by the repetition in 7. 110. 1 πόλιν τὰς παραθαλασσίας.—11. ἐν: at or near.—ὥσεί . . . μάλιστά κη: cp. ὡς . . . μάλιστά κη 7. 30. 6.

ὥσεί, about, only here in Hdt. Cp. Xen. *Hell.* i. 2. 9.—14. ἀρδόμενα: being watered.

110. 2. ἀπέργων: see on 7. 43. 11.—3. δι' ὧν τῆς χώρας: limiting gen. between prep. and its case, as freq. in Hdt.—6. οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν . . . οἰκέοντες: part. gen. between art. and ptc., as not infreq. in Hdt. and Thuc. Cp. 7. 129. 3.—8. οἱ ἄλλοι: part. appos. to οἱ . . . οἰκέοντες.

111. 2. τὸ μέχρι ἐμέο: up to my

ἑμέο αἰεὶ ἔόντες ἐλεύθεροι μῦνοι Θρηκῶν · οἰκέουσὶ τε γὰρ ὄρεα ὑψηλά, ἰδῆσί τε παντοίησι καὶ χιόνι συνηρηφέα, καὶ εἰσὶ τὰ πολέμια ἄκροι, οὔτοι οἱ τοῦ Διονύσου τὸ μαντήϊόν εἰσι ἐκτεμένον. τὸ δὲ μαντήϊον τοῦτο ἔστι μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων τῶν ὑψηλοτάτων, Βησσοὶ δὲ τῶν Σατρείων εἰσὶ οἱ προφητεύοντες τοῦ ἱεροῦ, πρόμαντις δὲ ἡ χρέωσα κατὰ περ ἐν Δελφοῖσι, καὶ οὐδὲν ποικιλώτερον.

10

- 112 Παραμειψάμενος δὲ ὁ Ξέρξης τὴν εἰρημένην δεύτερα τούτων παραμείβετο τείχεα τὰ Πιέρων, τῶν ἐνὶ Φάγρης ἐστὶ οὐνομα καὶ ἐτέρῳ Πέργαμος. ταύτη μὲν δὴ παρ' αὐτὰ τὰ τείχεα τὴν ὁδὸν ἐποιεῖτο, ἐκ δεξιῆς χειρὸς τὸ Πάγγαιον ὄρος ἀπέργων, ἐὼν μέγα τε καὶ ὑψηλόν, ἐν 5 τῷ χρύσεά τε καὶ ἀργύρεα ἐνὶ μέταλλα, τὰ νέμονται

time, as 7. 115. 15. Cp. τὸ πρὸς μεσαμβρίης 7. 20. 15. — 4. ἰδῆσι: forests. The term is freq. used as prop. name for forest-covered mountains, e.g. Mt. Ida in the Troad. — συνηρηφέα: thickly covered (lit. roofed). Cp. 1. 110. 12 ὑψηλή τε καὶ ἰδῆσι συνηρηφής. — 5. ἄκροι: see on 7. 5. 18. — τοῦ Διονύσου τὸ μαντήϊον: the art. (τό) points to the oracle as well known. Cp. Eur. *Hec.* 1267; *Rhes.* 972; Suet. *Aug.* 94; Paus. 9. 30. 9. — 8. οἱ προφητεύοντες τοῦ ἱεροῦ: i.e. those out of whom was chosen the προφήτης, who interpreted the signs or dreams sent by the deity, or arranged and expounded the ecstatic utterances

of the πρόμαντις. — πρόμαντις ἡ χρέωσα: cp. 7. 141. 11. χρῆν = *oraculum edere*, χρῆσθαι = *oraculum consulere*. — 9. οὐδὲν ποικιλώτερον: either of the manner of the oracle, *nothing more artificial* or unusual; or of the content of the oracle, *nothing more enigmatical*.

112. 1. τὴν εἰρημένην: sc. χώρην. — δεύτερα τούτων: for const., see on 7. 80. 6. — 2. τείχεα: *castella*. — Πιέρων: driven from their original seats in Pieria they had settled (in the 7th cent.) at the foot of Mt. Pangaeus, east of the Strymon. Cp. Thuc. 2. 99. 10. But the name Pieria still clung esp. to the old haunt of the muses. —

- 113 Πιέρές τε καὶ Ὀδόμαντοι καὶ μάλιστα Σάτραι. ὑπεροικέοντας δὲ τὸ Πάγγαιον πρὸς βορέῳ ἀνέμον Παίονας Δόβηράς τε καὶ Παιόπлас παρεξιὼν ἦε πρὸς ἐσπέρην, ἐς ὃ ἀπίκητο ἐπὶ ποταμόν τε Στρυμόνα καὶ πόλιν Ἡίονα, τῆς ἔτι ζωὸς ἐὼν ἦρχε Βόγης, τοῦ περ ὀλίγῳ πρότερον 5 τούτων λόγον ἐποιεόμην. ἡ δὲ γῆ αὕτη ἡ περὶ τὸ Πάγγαιον ὄρος καλεῖται Φυλλίς, κατατείνουσα τὰ μὲν πρὸς ἐσπέρην ἐπὶ ποταμόν Ἀγγίτην ἐκδιδόντα ἐς τὸν Στρυμόνα, τὰ δὲ πρὸς μεσαμβρίην τείνουσα ἐς αὐτὸν τὸν Στρυμόνα. ἐς τὸν οἱ Μάγοι ἐκαλλιέροντο σφάζοντες 10
- 114 ἵππους λευκοὺς. φαρμακεύσαντες δὲ ταῦτα ἐς τὸν ποταμόν καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ πρὸς τούτοις ἐν Ἑννέα ὁδοῖσι τῇσι Ἡδωνῶν ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ τὰς γεφύρας, τὸν Στρυμόνα εὐρόντες ἐξευγμένον. Ἑννέα δὲ ὁδοὺς πυνθανόμενοι τὸν χῶρον τούτον καλεῖσθαι τοσοῦτους ἐν αὐτῷ 5 παῖδάς τε καὶ παρθένους ἀνδρῶν τῶν ἐπιχωρίων ζώοντας κατῴρυσσον. Περσικὸν δὲ τὸ ζώοντας κατορύσσειν, ἐπεὶ καὶ Ἀμηστριν τὴν Ξέρξῳ γυναῖκα πυνθάνομαι

7. Ὀδόμαντοι: a Thracian people between the Strymon and Nestus.

113. 1. ὑπεροικέοντας: with acc., elsewhere with gen.—4. ἐς ὃ: until. GMT. 616.—Ἡίονα: see on 7. 25. 11, 7. 107. 4.—5. πρότερον τούτων: cp. δεύτερα τούτων 7. 112. 1.—6. λόγον ἐποιεόμην: = ἔλεγον.—7. τὰ μὲν πρὸς ἐσπέρην: see on 7. 20. 15.—10. ἐς τόν: with σφάζοντες, i.e. slaughtering so that the blood flowed into the river.—ἐκαλλιέροντο: = ἐθύοντο, 6. 82. 9, 7. 167. 6. The act. καλλιερεῖν,

used impers. = καλὰ γίνεσθαι, sc. ἱρά.

114. 1. φαρμακεύσαντες . . . ποταμόν: having performed these magic rites to propitiate the river. For the const., cp. ἐς τόν 7. 113. 10.—2. ἐν Ἑννέα ὁδοῖσι: where in 437 B.C. the Athenians planted the colony of Amphipolis.—3. τὸν Στρυμόνα . . . ἐξευγμένον: cp. 7. 24. 8.—7. Περσικὸν . . . κατορύσσειν: cp. 3. 35. 20, where Cambyses buries alive twelve noble Persians head downward.—8. Ἀμηστριν:

γῆράσασαν δις ἐπὶ Περσέων παῖδας, ἐόντων ἐπιφανέων ἀνδρῶν, ὑπὲρ ἐωντῆς τῷ ὑπὸ γῆν λεγομένῳ εἶναι 10  
 115 θεῷ ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι κατορύσσουσιν. ὥς δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ Στρυμόνος ἐπορεύετο ὁ στρατός, ἐνθαῦτα πρὸς ἡλίου δυσμέων ἐστὶ αἰγιαλὸς ἐν τῷ οἰκημένην Ἀργίλον πόλιν Ἑλλάδα παρεξῆεν· αὕτη δὲ καὶ ἡ κατύπερθε ταύτης καλεῖται Βισαλτίη. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ κόλπον τὸν ἐπὶ Πο- 5  
 σιδιῆι ἐξ ἀριστερῆς χειρὸς ἔχων ἦε διὰ Συλέος πεδίου καλεομένου, Στάγειρον πόλιν Ἑλλάδα παραμειβόμενος, καὶ ἀπῆκετο ἐς Ἀκανθον, ἅμα ἀγόμενος τούτων ἕκαστον τῶν ἐθνέων καὶ τῶν περὶ τὸ Πάγγαιον ὄρος οἰκούντων, ὁμοίως καὶ τῶν πρότερον κατέλεξα, τοὺς μὲν παρὰ 10  
 θάλασσαν ἔχων οἰκημένους ἐν νηυσὶ στρατευομένους, τοὺς δ' ὑπὲρ θαλάσσης πεζῇ ἐπομένους. τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν ταύτην, τῇ βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης τὸν στρατὸν ἤλασε, οὔτε

cp. Ctes. *Exc. Pers.* 42. See also 9. 112. — 10. τῷ ὑπὸ γῆν λεγομένῳ εἶναι θεῷ: *i.e.* Ahriman (Angramainjus), god of the spirits of darkness, the antithesis of Ormuzd (Aburamazda), god of the world of light. — 11. ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι κατορύσσουσιν: *by burying tried to requite* (inf. impf.), *i.e.* for the old age granted her (γῆράσασαν).

115. 3. ἐν τῷ . . . παρεξῆεν: short for ἐν τῷ κεῖται Ἀργίλος, πόλις Ἑλλάς, ἣν παρεξῆεν. Argilus, like Stagirus and Acanthus, a colony of the Andrians. — 4. αὕτη: *sc.* ἡ γῆ. — 5. Βισαλτίη: cp. 8. 116. 2. — ἐπὶ Ποσιδηίου: *near Posideium*. This seems to have

been a promontory on the Strymonian Gulf. — 6. ἐξ ἀριστερῆς χειρὸς ἔχων: cp. ἐξ εὐωνύμου χειρὸς ἀπέργων 7. 110. 2. — διὰ Συλέος πεδίου: in Chalcidice. Syleus represented in Greek mythology as son of Poseidon and slain by Hercules for mistreatment of strangers. — 7. Στάγειρον: birthplace of Aristotle. — 8. Ἀκανθον: a chief station, as also on the expedition of Mardonius (6. 44. 10). — ἅμα ἀγόμενος: as if Ξέρξης were subject. — 10. ὁμοίως καί: *in like manner as*. Cp. 7. 15. 14, 7. 50. 10. — τῶν: = τούτων ᾧ. — τοὺς μὲν . . . στρατευομένους: cp. 7. 110. — 11. ἔχων: intruded into obj. clause.



συγχέουσι Θρηῆκες οὐτ' ἐπισπείρουσι, σέβονται τε μεγά-  
 116 λως τὸ μέχρι ἐμέο. ὥς δὲ ἄρα ἐς τὴν Ἀκανθὸν ἀπύκετο,  
 ξεινίην τε ὃ Ξέρξης τοῖσι Ἀκανθίοισι προεῖπε καὶ  
 ἐδωρήσατό σφεας ἐσθῆτι Μηδικῇ ἐπαίνει τε, ὁρῶν  
 καὶ αὐτοὺς προθύμους ἔοντας ἐς τὸν πόλεμον καὶ τὸ  
 117 ὄρυγμα ἀκούων. ἐν Ἀκάνθῳ δὲ ἔοντας Ξέρξεω συνή-  
 νεικε ὑπὸ νούσου ἀποθανεῖν τὸν ἐπεστεῶτα τῆς διώρυχος  
 Ἀρταχαίην, δόκιμον ἔοντα παρὰ Ξέρξῃ καὶ γένος Ἀχαι-  
 μενίδην, μεγάλῃ τε μέγιστον ἔοντα Περσέων (ἀπὸ γὰρ  
 πέντε πηχέων βασιλῆων ἀπέλειπε τέσσερας δακτύλους) ;  
 φωνέοντά τε μέγιστον ἀνθρώπων, ὥστε Ξέρξῃν συμφο-  
 ρὴν ποιησάμενον μεγάλην ἐξενεῖκαί τε αὐτὸν κάλλιστα  
 καὶ θάψαι· ἐτυμβοχόει δὲ πᾶσα ἡ στρατιή. τούτῳ δὲ  
 τῷ Ἀρταχαίῃ θύουσι Ἀκάνθιοι ἐκ θεοπροπίου ὥς ἥρωι,

— 14. *συγχέουσι*: *obliterate*, as 4.  
 127. 11, 7. 225. 16, 8. 71. 7. This  
 road, still used in 185 B.C., is called  
*vetus via regia* Liv. 39. 27. — 15. τὸ  
 μέχρι ἐμέο: cp. 7. 111. 2.

116. 2. *ξεινίην προεῖπε*: *made  
 proclamation of guest friendship*.  
 Cp. 7. 29. 9, 8. 120. 3. — 3. *ἐσθῆτι  
 Μηδικῇ*: the official dress of those  
 highest in honor, to wear which  
 was a privilege conferred only by  
 the king. Cp. 3. 84. 5. It is the  
*στολή Περσική* of Xen. *Anab.* 1. 2.  
 27. — 4. τὸ ὄρυγμα ἀκούων: *hear-  
 ing of the canal*. The accus. as in  
 Hom. α 287 εἰ μὲν κεν πατὴρ βίον-  
 τον καὶ νόστον ἀκούσῃς, and Aesch.  
*Prom.* 288 τὰς προσερούσας τύχας  
 ἀκούσατε.

#### DEATH OF ARTACHAEES

117. 1. *συνήνεικε*: cp. 7. 4. 4.  
 — 2. τὸν ἐπεστεῶτα τῆς διώρυχος:  
 for gen. cp. 7. 22. 9 ἐπεστάτεον τοῦ  
 ἔργου. In Att. only dative, as 7. 35.  
 12. — 3. Ἀρταχαίην: cp. 7. 22. 8.  
 — 4. μεγάλῃ μέγιστον: cp. 7. 128.  
 2, and πλήθει πολλὰς 6. 44. 12.  
 — ἀπὸ γὰρ . . . δακτύλους: *i.e.*  
 about 8 ft. 2 in. (Rawlinson). Cp.  
 1. 60. 17 μέγας ἀπὸ τεσσέρων  
 πηχέων ἀπολείπουσα τρεῖς δακτύ-  
 λους. — 6. φωνέοντα μέγιστον: as  
 4. 141. 2. Cp. ἀμβώσας μέγα 7.  
 18. 4. — 7. ἐξενεῖκαί: technical term  
 for funeral procession. — 8. ἐτυμ-  
 βοχέει: only here and Hom. Φ 323.  
 — 9. ἐκ θεοπροπίου: Epic and

118 ἐπονομάζοντες τὸ οὖνομα. βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ Ξέρξης ἀπολομένου Ἀρταχαιέω ἐποιεῖτο συμφορὴν· οἱ δὲ ὑποδεκόμενοι Ἑλλήνων τὴν στρατιὴν καὶ δειπνίζοντες Ξέρξην ἐς πᾶν κακοῦ ἀπίκατο, οὕτω ὥστε ἀνάστατοι ἐκ τῶν οἰκῶν ἐγίνοντο, ὅκον γε Θασίοισι ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐν τῇ 5 ἡπείρῳ πολίων τῶν σφετέρων δεξαμένοισι τὴν Ξέρξεω στρατιὴν καὶ δειπνίσασι Ἀντίπατρος ὁ Ὀργέος ἀραιρημένος, τῶν ἀστῶν ἀνὴρ δόκιμος ὅμοια τῷ μάλιστα, ἀπέδεξε ἐς τὸ δείπνον τετρακόσια τάλαντα ἀργυρίου 119 τετελεσμένα. ὥς δὲ παραπλησίως καὶ ἐν τῇσι ἁλλησι πόλισι οἱ ἐπεστεῶτες ἀπεδείκνυσαν τὸν λόγον. τὸ γὰρ δείπνον τοιόνδε τι ἐγένετο, οἷα ἐκ πολλοῦ χρόνου προειρημένον καὶ περὶ πολλοῦ ποιεομένων. τοῦτο μὲν, ὥς ἐπύθοντο τάχιστα τῶν κηρύκων τῶν περιαγγελλόντων, 5 δασάμενοι σίτον ἐν τῇσι πόλισι οἱ ἀστοὶ ἄλευρά τε καὶ ἄλφита ἐποίεον πάντες ἐπὶ μῆνας συχνοὺς· τοῦτο δὲ

Herodotean. — 10. ἐπονομάζοντες: *calling thereby, invoking.*

HOW THE ARMY OF XERXES WAS  
FED (CC. 118-120)

118. 4. ἐς πᾶν κακοῦ: *to the extremity of ill fortune*, as 9. 118.

1. Cp. 8. 52. 7 ἐς τὸ ἔσχατον κακοῦ ἀπιγμένοι. — οὕτω ὥστε . . . ἐγίνοντο: for indic., see S. 2274; GMT. 601. — ἀνάστατοι: cp. 7. 56.

7.—5. ὅκον γε: *quando quidem.* — Θασίοισι: depends on ἀπέδεξε.

—7. ἀραιρημένος: *sc. δέξασθαι . . . καὶ δειπνίσαι.* — 8. ὅμοια: adv., esp. freq. in Hdt. and Thuc. — τῷ μά-

λιστα: *sc. δοκίμῳ.* Cp. 7. 141. 4. —

9. ἀπέδεξε: *i.e.* on rendering his account. Cp. 7. 119. 2. — τετρακόσια τάλαντα: the annual revenue of the Thasians was only 200 to 300 talents (6. 46). — 10. τετελεσμένα: *expended.*

119. 3. οἷα: see on 7. 6. 2. —

4. ποιεομένων: *sc. αὐτῶν.* Note coördination of ptcs. in different cases. — τοῦτο μὲν . . . τοῦτο δὲ . . . τοῦτο δέ: this anaphora is freq. in Hdt. — 6. δασάμενοι σίτον: *i.e.* the corn purchased by the state was distributed among the citizens to be ground. — 7. ἐπὶ μῆνας συχ-

κτῆνεα ἐσίτευον ἐξευρίσκοντες τιμῆς τὰ κάλλιστα, ἔτρε-  
 φόν τε ὄρνιθας χερσαίους καὶ λιμναίους ἐν τε οἰκήμασι  
 καὶ λάκκοισι, ἐς ὑποδοχὰς τοῦ στρατοῦ· τοῦτο δὲ<sup>10</sup>  
 χρύσεά τε καὶ ἀργύρεα ποτήριά τε καὶ κρητῆρας ἐποι-  
 έοντο καὶ τᾶλλα ὅσα ἐπὶ τράπεζαν τιθέαται πάντα.  
 ταῦτα μὲν αὐτῷ τε βασιλεῖ καὶ τοῖσι ὁμοσίτοισι μετ'  
 ἐκείνους ἐπεποιήτο, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ στρατιῇ τὰ ἐς φορβὴν  
 μῶνα τασσόμενα. ὅκως δὲ ἀπίκοιτο ἡ στρατιή, σκηνῇ<sup>15</sup>  
 μὲν ἔσκε πεπηγυῖα ἐτοιμή ἐς τὴν αὐτὸς σταθμὸν ποιέ-  
 σκετο Ξέρξης, ἡ δὲ ἄλλῃ στρατιῇ ἔσκε ὑπαίθριος.  
 ὥς δὲ δεῖπνον γίνοιτο ὥρῃ, οἱ μὲν δεκόμενοι ἔχεσκον  
 πόνον, οἱ δὲ ὅκως πλησθέντες νύκτα αὐτοῦ ἀγάγοιεν, τῇ  
 ὑστεραίῃ τὴν τε σκηνὴν ἀνασπᾶσαντες καὶ τὰ ἐπιπλα<sup>20</sup>  
 πάντα λαβόντες οὕτω ἀπελαύνεσκον, λέγοντες οὐδὲν  
 120 ἀλλὰ φερόμενοι. ἔνθα δὴ Μεγακρέοντος ἀνδρὸς Ἀβδη-  
 ρίτew ἔπος εὔ εἰρημένον ἐγένετο, ὃς συνεβούλευσε Ἀβ-  
 δηρίτῃσι πανδημεὶ αὐτοὺς καὶ γυναῖκας, ἐλθόντας ἐς τὰ  
 σφέτερα ἱρὰ ἵζεσθαι ἱκέτας τῶν θεῶν παραιτερομένους  
 καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν σφι ἀπαμύνειν τῶν ἐπιόντων κακῶν τὰς  
 ἡμίσεα, τῶν τε παροιχομένων ἔχειν σφι μεγάλην χάριν,

νοῦς: see on 7. 1. 10. — 8. τιμῆς: *at a (high) price*. — 13. ὁμοσίτοις: only here in Hdt. = ὁμοτραπέζοις (3. 132. 3). Cp. ὁμοσιτῆσαι 1. 146. 17. — 15. ὅκως ἀπίκοιτο: for ὅκως with iterative opt., see 7. 6. 21. — 16. ἔσκε πεπηγυῖα: periphr. plpf. with iterative force. For ἔσκε see Syn. § 15. 2 a. — ἐς τὴν αὐτὸς σταθμὸν ποίεσκετο: *in which he himself took up his*

*quarters*. The accus. on account of implied antecedent motion. — 17. ἔσκε: for reading, see App. — 18. ὥς: with iter. opt., as 1. 17. 7, rare for ὅκως. — 20. σκηνὴν ἀνασπᾶσαντες: for Attic σκηνὴν ἀνελόντες (διαλύσαντες).

120. 3. πανδημεὶ: *en masse*, explained by αὐτοὺς καὶ γυναῖκας. — 5. τὰ ἡμίσεα: takes gender and number of limiting gen. — 6. τῶν

ὅτι βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης οὐ δις ἐκάστης ἡμέρης ἐνόμισε σίτον αἰρεῖσθαι· παρέχειν γὰρ ἂν Ἀβδηρίτησι, εἰ καὶ ἄριστον προεῖρητο ὅμοια τῷ δείπνῳ παρασκευάζειν, ἢ μὴ ὑπομένειν Ξέρξην ἐπιόντα ἢ καταμείναντας κάκιστα 10 πάντων ἀνθρώπων διατριβῆναι.

- 121 Οἱ μὲν δὴ πιεζόμενοι ὅμως τὸ ἐπιτασσόμενον ἐπετέλεον, Ξέρξης δὲ ἐκ τῆς Ἀκάνθου ἐντειλάμενος τοῖσι στρατηγοῖσι τὸν ναυτικὸν στρατὸν ὑπομένειν ἐν Θέρμῃ ἀπῆκε ἀπ' ἐωντοῦ πορεύεσθαι τὰς νέας, Θέρμῃ δὲ τῇ ἐν τῷ Θερμαίῳ κόλπῳ οἰκημένῃ, ἀπ' ἧς καὶ ὁ κόλπος οὗτος 5 τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ἔχει· ταύτῃ γὰρ ἐπυνθάνετο συντομώτατον εἶναι. μέχρι μὲν γὰρ Ἀκάνθου ὧδε τεταγμένος ὁ στρατὸς ἐκ Δορίσκου τὴν ὁδὸν ἐποιεῖτο· τρεῖς μοίρας ὁ Ξέρξης δασάμενος πάντα τὸν πεζὸν [στρατόν], μίαν αὐτέων ἔταξε παρὰ θάλασσαν ἰέναι ὁμοῦ τῷ ναυτικῷ· 10 ταύτης μὲν δὴ ἐστρατήγεον Μαρδόνιός τε καὶ Μασίσσης, ἐτέρῃ δὲ τεταγμένη ἦε τοῦ στρατοῦ τριτημορίς τὴν μεσόγαίαν, τῆς ἐστρατήγεον Τριτανταίχμης τε καὶ Γέργις. ἡ δὲ τρίτῃ τῶν μοιρέων, μετ' ἧς ἐπορεύετο

τε παροχομένων . . . χάριν: *and to be very grateful to them for the past*. — 7. ἐνόμισε: *had been wont*. — 8. παρέχειν ἂν: *inf. of impers. verb, it would remain*. Cp. 8. 8. 8, 8. 30. 7. — 11. διατριβῆναι: = ἀπολίσθαι. Cp. Thuc. 8. 78. 10, 8. 87. 14.

THE FLEET SAILS TO THERMA  
(CC. 121-123)

121. 3. στρατόν: *subj. of ὑπομένειν*. — 4. ἀπῆκε πορεύεσθαι:

*epexeg. inf., dismissed to proceed*. — Θέρμῃ δέ: *Therma namely*. See on 7. 80. 2. — 6. ταύτῃ: *by that way, i.e. straight to Therma*. — συντομώτατον εἶναι: *was the shortest cut across*. — 8. τρεῖς μοίρας . . . τὸν πεζόν: *obj. and cognate accus.* S. 1626; HA. 725 b. Cp. 2. 147. 8 *δυσώδεκα μοίρας δασάμενοι Αἴγυπτον πᾶσαν*. — 9. [στρατόν]: *for reading, see App.* — 13. τὴν μεσόγαίαν: *cognate acc., as τὸ μέσον below*.

αὐτὸς Ξέρξης, ἦε μὲν τὸ μέσον αὐτέων, στρατηγούς δὲ 15  
παρείχετο Σμερδομένεά τε καὶ Μεγάβυζον.

- 122 Ὁ μὲν νυν ναυτικὸς στρατὸς ὡς ἀπείθη ὑπὸ Ξέρξεω  
καὶ διεξέπλωσε τὴν διώρυχα τὴν ἐν τῷ Ἐθρῷ γενομένην,  
διέχουσιν δὲ ἐς κόλπον ἐν τῷ Ἀσσοῦ πόλις καὶ  
Πίλωρος καὶ Σίγγος καὶ Σάρπη οἰκούνται, ἐνθεῦτεν, ὡς  
καὶ ἐκ τούτων τῶν πολίων στρατιὴν παρέλαβε, ἔπλει 5  
ἀπιέμενος ἐς τὸν Θερμαῖον κόλπον, κάμπτων δὲ Ἀμπελον  
τὴν Τορωναίην ἄκρην παραμείβετο Ἑλληνίδας τάσδε  
πόλεις, ἐκ τῶν νέας τε καὶ στρατιὴν παρελάμβανε, Τορώ-  
νην, Γαληψόν, Σερμύλην, Μηκύβερναν, Ὀλυνθον. ἡ μὲν  
123 νυν χώρα αὕτη Σιθωνίη καλεῖται. ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς στρα-  
τὸς ὁ Ξέρξεω συντάμνων ἀπ' Ἀμπέλου ἄκρης ἐπὶ  
Καναστραῖον ἄκρην, τὸ δὴ πάσης τῆς Παλλήνης ἀνέχει  
μάλιστα, ἐνθεῦτεν νέας τε καὶ στρατιὴν παρελάμβανε  
ἐκ Ποτιδαίης καὶ Ἀφύτιος καὶ Νέης πόλιος καὶ Αἰγῆς 5  
καὶ Θεράμβω καὶ Σκιώνης καὶ Μένδης καὶ Σάνης.

122. 1. ὡς ἀπείθη: referring to  
7. 121. 4. — 2. τὴν διώρυχα: see  
7. 22. — 3. διέχουσιν: *reaching*.  
— κόλπον: the *Singiticus Sinus*,  
on the west coast of which lay  
the towns mentioned. — 6. ἀπιέμε-  
νος: *let go*, i.e. when it had got  
off from these places. — κάμπτων:  
*rounding*. Cp. 7. 193. 3. — Ἀμπε-  
λον: the southern promontory of  
Sithone. — 7. παραμείβετο: with-  
out stopping, as shown by 7. 123. 2.  
— 8. Τορώνην: cp. 7. 22. 15; Thuc.  
4. 110 ff. — 9. Ὀλυνθον: the most  
important of the Greek colonies

on the Macedonian and Thracian  
coast, sixty stades north of Poti-  
daea. Cp. also 8. 127. — 10. Σιθω-  
νίη: between Athos and Pallene.

123. 2. συντάμνων: sc. τὴν  
ὁδόν, *cutting across*. Cp. 7. 121.  
7. — 3. τό: referring loosely to  
ἄκρην. — ἀνέχει: *juts out*. — 5. Πο-  
τιδαίης: a Corinthian colony. Cp.  
8. 126. — 6. Θεράμβω: nom. Θεράμ-  
βως. Cp. Ἐθρῶς, Ἐθρῶ. S. 237;  
HA. 161. — Σκιώνης καὶ Μένδης  
καὶ Σάνης: on the western side of  
Pallene; the other towns lay on  
the eastern side. Scione was, after

αὐται γάρ εἰσι αἱ τὴν νῦν Παλλήνην, πρότερον δὲ  
 Φλέγρην καλεομένην νεμόμεναι. παραπλέων δὲ καὶ  
 ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἔπλει ἐς τὸ προειρημένον, παραλαμ-  
 βάνων στρατιὴν καὶ ἐκ τῶν προσεχέων πολίων τῇ <sup>10</sup>  
 Παλλήνῃ, ὁμουρεουσέων δὲ τῷ Θερμαίῳ κόλπῳ, τῇσι  
 οὐνόματά ἐστι τάδε, Λίπαξος, Κώμβρεια, Λισαί, Γίγω-  
 νος, Κάμψα, Σμίλα, Αἰνεία. ἡ δὲ τούτων χώρα Κροσ-  
 σαίη ἔτι καὶ ἐς τόδε καλεῖται. ἀπὸ δὲ Αἰνείης, ἐς τὴν  
 ἐτελεύτων καταλέγων τὰς πόλεις, ἀπὸ ταύτης ἤδη <sup>15</sup>  
 αὐτόν τε τὸν Θερμαῖον κόλπον ἐγίνετο τῷ ναυτικῷ  
 στρατῷ ὁ πλόος καὶ γῆν τὴν Μυγδονίην, πλέων δὲ  
 ἀπίκετο ἔς τε τὴν προειρημένην Θέρμην καὶ Σίνδον τε  
 πόλιν καὶ Χαλέστρην ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀξιον ποταμόν, ὃς οὐρίζει  
 χώραν τὴν Μυγδονίην τε καὶ Βοττιαίδα, τῆς ἔχουσι τὸ <sup>20</sup>

Potidaea, the most important town  
 of Pallene. Cp. 8. 128; Thuc. 4.  
 120 ff. This Sane is to be distin-  
 guished from that mentioned 7. 22.  
 16.—8. *Φλέγρην καλεομένην*: i.e.  
 the scene of the mythical battles  
 of the giants with the gods. *Φλέ-  
 γρη*, *Fireland*, doubtless so-called  
 with reference to the volcanic na-  
 ture of the region (*φλέγειν*). Cp.  
*τὰ Φλεγραῖα πεδία* about Cumae in  
 Campania.—9. *ἐς τὸ προειρημέ-  
 νον*: to the appointed place, i.e.  
 Therma (7. 121. 3). Cp. 18 be-  
 low.—10. *προσεχέων τῇ Παλλήνῃ*:  
*adjacent to Pallene*. Cp. 9. 28.  
 11.—12. *Λισαί*: this is the read-  
 ing of the Mss., for which prob.  
 should be substituted either *Αἷσα*,

from the tribute lists, or *Αἷσα*.  
 Cp. Steph. Byz. s.v. *Αἷσα*, πόλις  
*Θράκης προσεχὴς τῇ Παλλήνῃ*.  
 See Stein.—14. *ἐς τόδε*: = *ἐς*  
*τόνδε τὸν χρόνον*.—15. *ἐτελεύτων*  
*καταλέγων*: const. of ptc. as with  
*παύεσθαι* and *λήγειν*.—*ἀπὸ ταύ-  
 της ἤδη*: from this point on. Cp.  
 6. 76. 6.—17. *γῆν τὴν Μυγδο-  
 νίην*: the district in eastern Macedo-  
 nia between the Axios and  
 Lake Bolbe (Thuc. 1. 58. 15),  
 so called after its former inhabit-  
 ants.—20. *Βοττιαίδα*: on the  
 right bank of the lower Axios,  
 so called from its former inhabit-  
 ants (*Βοττιαῖοι*), who driven out  
 by the Macedonians had found  
 new seats in Chalcidice (8. 127. 4;

παρὰ θάλασσαν, στεινὸν χωρίον, πόλεις Ἰχναί τε καὶ Πέλλα.

- 124 Ὁ μὲν δὴ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς αὐτοῦ περὶ Ἄξιον ποταμὸν καὶ πόλιν Θέρμην καὶ τὰς μεταξὺ πόλιας τούτων περιμένων βασιλέα ἐστρατοπεδεύετο, Ξέρξης δὲ καὶ ὁ πεζὸς στρατὸς ἐπορεύετο ἐκ τῆς Ἀκάνθου τὴν μεσόγαιαν τάμνων τῆς ὁδοῦ, βουλόμενος ἐς τὴν Θέρμην ἀπικέσθαι. ἐπορεύετο δὲ διὰ τῆς Παιονικῆς καὶ Κρηστωνικῆς ἐπὶ ποταμὸν Ἐχρίδωρον, ὃς ἐκ Κρηστωναίων ἀρξάμενος ῥεῖ διὰ Μυγδονίης χώρας καὶ ἐξιεί παρὰ τὸ
- 125 ἔλος τὸ ἐπ' Ἀξίῳ ποταμῷ. πορευομένῳ δὲ ταύτην λέοντες οἱ ἐπεθήκαντο τῇσι σιτοφόροισι καμήλοισι· καταφοιτέοντες γὰρ οἱ λέοντες τὰς νύκτας καὶ λείποντες

Thuc. 2. 99. 14). — 21. **στεινὸν χωρίον**: a wedge-shaped district of Bottiaea between the lower Axios and the united Lydias and Haliacmon. — 22. **Πέλλα**: an old city of the Bottiaeans, and from the time of Philip, father of Alexander, who was brought up there, a residence of the Macedonian kings.

#### MARCH TO THERMA (CC. 124-126)

124. 1. **αὐτοῦ περὶ Ἄξιον**: cp. 7. 107. 5. — 2. **τὰς μεταξὺ πόλιας τούτων**: note the irregular position of τούτων. — 4. **τὴν μεσόγαιαν τάμνων τῆς ὁδοῦ**: *taking the course through the interior*, as 9. 89. 21. Cp. the Homeric const. *τέμνειν θάλασσαν*. The addition of *τῆς ὁδοῦ* prob. after the analogy of τὰ

**σύντομα τῆς ὁδοῦ** (I. 185. 32, 4. 136. 10). We should expect simply *τὴν μεσόγαιαν* or *τὴν μέσσην ὁδόν*. Cp. 4. 12. 11 *ἐς μεσόγαιαν τῆς ὁδοῦ τραφθέντες* and 5. 83. 10 *ιδρύσαντο τῆς σφετέρης χώρας ἐς τὴν μεσόγαιαν*. — 6. **Παιονικῆς**: the land of the Sirio-Paeonians on the Strymon. West of these dwelt the Crestonaeans about the headwaters of the Echeidorus. — 7. **ἐκ Κρηστωναίων ἀρξάμενος**: cp. 7. 127. 4.

125. 2. **οἱ**: dat. of disadvantage. S. 1481; HA. 767. — **ἐπεθήκαντο**: 1st aor. freq. in Hdt. for Att. *ἐπέθεντο*. — **σιτοφόροις**: freq. in Hdt.; elsewhere only in late writers. — 3. **καταφοιτέοντες**: Herodotean word. — **τὰς νύκτας**:

τὰ σφέτερα ἤθεα ἄλλον μὲν οὐδενὸς ἄπτοντο οὔτε ὑπο-  
 ζυγίου οὔτε ἀνθρώπου, οἱ δὲ τὰς καμήλους ἐκεραΐζουσιν 5  
 μούνας. θωμάζω δὲ τὸ αἷτιον, ὃ τι κοτὲ ἦν τῶν ἄλλων  
 τὸ ἀναγκάζον ἀπεχομένους τοὺς λέοντας τῇσι καμή-  
 λοισι ἐπιτίθεσθαι, τὸ μήτε πρότερον ὁπώπεσαν θηρίον  
 126 μῆτ' ἐπεπειρέατο αὐτοῦ. εἰσὶ δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ χωρία  
 καὶ λέοντες πολλοὶ καὶ βόες ἄγριοι, τῶν τὰ κέρα ὑπερ-  
 μεγάθεά ἐστι τὰ ἐς Ἑλληνας φοιτέοντα. οὖρος δὲ  
 τοῖσι λέουσιν ἐστι ὃ τε δι' Ἀβδήρων ῥέων ποταμὸς  
 Νέστος καὶ ὁ δι' Ἀκαρνανίης ῥέων Ἀχελῷος· οὔτε γὰρ 5  
 τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ τοῦ Νέστου οὐδαμόθι πάσης τῆς ἔμ-  
 προσθε Εὐρώπης ἴδοι τις ἂν λέοντα, οὔτε πρὸς ἐσπέρης  
 τοῦ Ἀχελῷου ἐν τῇ ἐπιλοίπῳ ἡπείρῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ μεταξὺ  
 127 τούτων τῶν ποταμῶν γίνονται. ὥς δὲ ἐς τὴν Θέρμην  
 ἀπῆκετο ὁ Ξέρξης, ἵδρυσεν αὐτοῦ τὴν στρατιήν. ἐπέσχε  
 δὲ ὁ στρατὸς αὐτοῦ στρατοπεδευόμενος τὴν παρὰ θά-  
 λασσαν χώραν τοσὴνδε, ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ Θέρμης πόλιος  
 καὶ τῆς Μυγδονίης μέχρι Λυδίας τε ποταμοῦ καὶ  
 Ἀλιάκμονος, οἱ οὐρίζουσι γῆν τὴν Βοττιαίδα τε καὶ  
 Μακεδονίδα, ἐς τῶντ' ῥεῖθρον τὸ ὕδωρ συμμίσγοντες.

acc. of time, as 7. 50. 23, 7. 181. 4.

— 5. οἱ δέ: see on 7. 6. 24. —

ἐκεραΐζον: Homeric word, freq. in Hdt. — 6. τῶν ἄλλων: note the emphatic separation from ἀπεχομένους.

— 8. τὸ: the rel. takes gender and number of the appos. noun which it attracts into its own clause — *an animal, which*. — μῆτε: in rel. clause with indef. antecedent. S. 2705 g; GMT. 520. — 9. αὐτοῦ:

transition to personal pron., as 7. 59. 12. S. 2517; HA. 1005.

126. 3. φοιτέοντα: *i.e.* in trade, as 3. 115. 13. — 6. τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ: see on 7. 20. 15. — τῆς ἔμπροσθε Εὐρώπης: Hdt.'s point of view being Asia.

ENCAMPMENT AT THERMA; TEMPE  
 (CC. 127-130)

127. 7. συμμίσγοντες: the re-



ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο μὲν δὴ ἐν τούτοισι τοῖσι χωρίοισι οἱ βάρβαροι, τῶν δὲ καταλεχθέντων τούτων ποταμῶν ἐκ Κρηστωναίων ῥέων Ἐχειδωρος μῦνος οὐκ ἀντέχρησε<sup>10</sup> τῇ στρατιῇ πινόμενος ἀλλ' ἐπέλιπε.

- 128 Ξέρξης δὲ ὄρων ἐκ τῆς Θέρμης ὄρεα τὰ Θεσσαλικά, τὸν τε Ὀλυμπον καὶ τὴν Ὀσσαν, μεγάθει τε ὑπερμήκεα ἔοντα, διὰ μέσου τε αὐτῶν αὐλῶνα στεινὸν πυνθανόμενος εἶναι, δι' οὗ ῥεῖ ὁ Πηνειός, ἀκούων τε ταύτῃ εἶναι ὁδὸν ἐς Θεσσαλὴν φέρουσιν, ἐπεθύμησε πλώσας θεήσασθαι τὴν ἐκβολὴν τοῦ Πηνειοῦ, ὅτι τὴν ἄνω ὁδὸν ἔμελλε ἔλάν διὰ Μακεδόνων τῶν κατύπερθε οἰκημένων ἐς Περραιβοὺς παρὰ Γόννον πόλιν· ταύτῃ γὰρ ἀσφαλέστατον ἐπυνθάνετο εἶναι. ὥς δὲ ἐπεθύμησε, καὶ

gion is alluvial. Later the Lydias had a separate mouth (cp. Scylax 66); now it unites with the Axios. — 9. τούτων: for position cp. 7. 15. 14. S. 1181; HA. 673 c. — 10. οὐκ ἀντέχρησε . . . ἀλλ' ἐπέλιπε: cp. 7. 58. 14.

128. 2. μεγάθει ὑπερμήκεα: cp. 7. 117. 4. — 3. διὰ μέσου τε: note the correlation with the preceding clause, as if αὐλῶνα στεινὸν ἔοντα were to follow. — αὐλῶνα στεινόν: the Vale of Tempe. Cp. 7. 173. 6 ff. — 6. τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν: three ways led from lower Macedonia to Thessaly. (1) along the narrow strip of coast by the east foot of Olympus to the mouth of the Peneus, then up the gorge of this river to Gonnus (pass of Tempe);

(2) through the depression between Olympus and the Pierian mountains to the headwaters of the Titaresius or Europus and the land of the Perrhaebians (pass of Petra); (3) up the Haliacmon, then turning S.E., through a saddle of the Cambunian mts. (pass of Volustana, now Volutza), to the upper Titaresius. Cp. Liv. 42. 53. This last is the route called here τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν. Another division of the army prob. went by the Petra pass. (Stein.) — 7. διὰ Μακεδόνων τῶν κατύπερθε οἰκημένων: i.e. through the district of Elimia west of Olympus and about the upper Haliacmon. — 8. ἐς Περραιβοὺς: south of Elimia and west of Olympus. — παρὰ Γόννον: on

ἐποίει ταῦτα· ἐσβὰς ἐς Σιδωνίην νέα, ἐς τὴν περ ἐσέ 10  
 βαينه αἰεὶ ὅκως τι ἐθέλοι τοιοῦτο ποιῆσαι, ἀνέδεξε  
 σημήιον καὶ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι ἀνάγεσθαι, καταλιπὼν αὐτοῦ  
 τὸν πεζὸν στρατόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπύκετο καὶ ἐθεήσατο  
 Ξέρξης τὴν ἐκβολὴν τοῦ Πηνειοῦ, ἐν θώματι μεγάλῳ  
 ἐνέσχετο, καλέσας δὲ τοὺς κατηγεμόνας τῆς ὁδοῦ εἶρετο 15  
 εἰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἔστι παρατρέψαντα ἐτέρῃ ἐς θάλασσαν  
 129 ἐξαγαγεῖν. τὴν δὲ Θεσσαλὴν λόγος ἐστὶ τὸ παλαιὸν  
 εἶναι λίμνην, ὥστε γε συγκεκλημένην πάντοθεν ὑπερ-  
 μήκεσι ὄρεσι. τὰ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ ἔχοντα  
 τό τε Πήλιον ὄρος καὶ ἡ Ὕσσα ἀποκλήει συμμίσγοντα  
 τὰς ὑπωρέας ἀλλήλοισι, τὰ δὲ πρὸς βορέῳ ἀνέμους 5  
 Ὀλυμπος, τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρην Πίνδος, τὰ δὲ πρὸς  
 μεσαμβρίην τε καὶ ἀνεμον νότον ἡ Ὀθρυς· τὸ μέσον  
 δὲ τούτων τῶν λεχθέντων ὀρέων ἡ Θεσσαλίη ἐστὶ  
 ἐούσα κοίλη. ὥστε ὦν ποταμῶν ἐς αὐτὴν καὶ ἄλλων  
 συχνῶν ἐσβαλλόντων, πέντε δὲ τῶν δοκίμων μάλιστα 10

the Peneus at the entrance to the pass of Tempe. — 10. ἐς Σιδωνίην νέα: see on 7. 100. 9. — 14. ἐν θώματι μεγάλῳ ἐνέσχετο: cp. 8. 135. 11, 9. 37. 20. ἐνέσχετο intr., to be rendered passively. The idiom is freq. in Homer. — 15. τοὺς κατηγεμόνας: as 7. 197. 2, for Attic simple ἡγεμόνας. Cp. οἱ κατηγεόμενοι 7. 130. 1. — εἶρετο: for the answer, see 7. 130.

129. 2. εἶναι: impf. inf. — ὥστε: as 9 with ptc., because of. See on οἷα 7. 6. 2. — 3. αὐτῆς: part. gen. in attrib. position

because of another modifier. S. 1181; HA. 673 c. — 4. ἀποκλήει: sing. because Πήλιον and Ὕσσα are thought of as a unit (*the range of* —). — συμμίσγοντα: neuter agreeing with the natural rather than the gram. gender. — 6. πρὸς μεσαμβρίην τε καὶ ἀνεμον νότον: note the superabundance, as 7. 201. 8. — 8. ἐστὶ ἐούσα: parechesis, as 3. 108. 4. 7. 176. 10. Cp. 7. 89. 7. — 10. τῶν δοκίμων μάλιστα τάνδε: of these five the Apidanus (cp. 7. 196. 12) and the Enipeus after their union were called by the an-

τῶνδε, Πηνειοῦ καὶ Ἀπιδανοῦ καὶ Ὀνοχώνου καὶ Ἐνι-  
πέος καὶ Παμίσου, οἱ μὲν νυν ἐς τὸ πεδῖον τοῦτο  
συλλεγόμεσι ἐκ τῶν ὁρέων τῶν περικληρόντων τὴν  
Θεσσαλίην ὀνομαζόμενοι δι' ἐνὸς αὐλῶνος καὶ τούτου  
στεينوῦ ἔκροον ἔχουσι ἐς θάλασσαν, προσυμμίσγοντες <sup>15</sup>  
τὸ ὕδωρ πάντες ἐς τῷντό. ἐπεὰν δὲ συμμιχθέωσι  
τάχιστα, ἐνθεῦτεν ἤδη ὁ Πηνειὸς τῷ οὐνόματι κατακρα-  
τέων ἀωνύμους τοὺς ἄλλους εἶναι ποιεῖ. τὸ δὲ παλαιὸν  
λέγεται, οὐκ ἐόντος κω τοῦ αὐλῶνος καὶ διεκρόου τούτου,  
τοὺς ποταμοὺς τούτους καὶ πρὸς τοῖσι ποταμοῖσι τού- <sup>20</sup>  
τοις τὴν Βοιβηίδα λίμνην οὔτε ὀνομάζεσθαι κατὰ περ  
νῦν, ρεῖν τε οὐδὲν ἦσσαν ἢ νῦν, ρέοντας δὲ ποιεῖν τὴν  
Θεσσαλίην πᾶσαν πέλαγος. αὐτοὶ μὲν νυν Θεσσαλοὶ  
φασὶ Ποσειδέωνα ποιῆσαι τὸν αὐλῶνα δι' οὗ ρεῖ ὁ  
Πηνειός, οἰκότα λέγοντες. ὅστις γὰρ νομίζει Ποσει- <sup>25</sup>  
δέωνα τὴν γῆν σείειν καὶ τὰ διεστεῶτα ὑπὸ σεισμοῦ

cients sometimes Apidanus, some-  
times, as nowadays, Enipeus; the  
Onochonus (cp. 7. 196. 9) and the  
Pamisus seem to have been small  
tributaries of the Peneus. One  
misses in this enumeration the  
larger tributary Europus (or Tita-  
resius).—12. οἱ μὲν νυν: renews  
after the gen. abs. the subj. con-  
tained therein (πέντε οἱ δόκιμοι).  
14. ὀνομαζόμενοι: *with names of  
their own*, i.e. before they were  
all absorbed in the Peneus.—  
15. ἔκροον: prob. coined by Hdt.,  
afterwards in Arist. and later  
writers.—προσυμμίσγοντες . . . ἐξ

τῷντό: cp. 7. 127. 7. The verb  
only here.—17. ἐνθεῦτεν ἤδη:  
*right from that point*. Cp. 6.  
76. 6.—19. διεκρόου: only here.  
—21. οὔτε ὀνομάζεσθαι: i.e. before  
the cleft was made at the pass of  
Tempe neither the rivers nor Lake  
Boibe had separate names, the  
lake not even a separate existence,  
for all Thessaly was then a great  
lake.—25. οἰκότα λέγοντες: *say-  
ing what is likely*.—26. τὴν γῆν  
σεῖειν: hence the Homeric epi-  
thets ἐνοσίχθων, ἐννοσίγαιος, σει-  
σίχθων. In Thessaly Poseidon  
was worshipped as Πετραῖος.—τὰ

τοῦ θεοῦ τούτου ἔργα εἶναι, καὶ ἂν ἐκείνο ἰδὼν φαίη  
Ποσειδέωνα ποιῆσαι· ἔστι γὰρ σεισμοῦ ἔργον, ὥς ἐμοὶ  
ἐφαίνετο εἶναι, ἢ διάστασις τῶν ὀρέων.

- 130 Οἱ δὲ κατηγεόμενοι εἰρομένου Ξέρξῃ εἰ ἔστι ἄλλη  
ἔξοδος ἐς θάλασσαν τῷ Πηνειῷ, ἐξεπιστάμενοι ἀτρε-  
κέως εἶπον· Βασιλεῦ, ποταμῷ τούτῳ οὐκ ἔστι ἄλλη  
ἐξήλυσις ἐς θάλασσαν κατήκουσα, ἀλλ' ἦδε αὐτή·  
ὄρεσι γὰρ περιεστεφάνωται πᾶσα Θεσσαλίη. Ξέρξην  
δὲ λέγεται εἰπεῖν πρὸς ταῦτα· Σοφοὶ ἄνδρες εἰσὶ Θεσ-  
σαλοί. ταῦτ' ἄρα πρὸ πολλοῦ ἐφυλάξαντο γνωσι-  
μαχέοντες καὶ τᾶλλα καὶ ὅτι χώραν ἄρα εἶχον εὐαίρετόν  
τε καὶ ταχυάλωτον· τὸν γὰρ ποταμὸν πρῆγμα ἂν ἦν  
μῶνον ἐπεῖναί σφεων ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, χῶματι ἐκ τοῦ  
αὐλῶνος ἐκβ. βάσαντα καὶ παρατρέψαντα δι' ὧν νῦν  
ρεῖ ρεῖθρων, ὥστε Θεσσαλίην πᾶσαν ἔξω τῶν ὀρέων

διεστέατα: *the chasms cleft*, neut. pl., concrete for abstract (ἡ διάστασις, 29). — 29. ἐφαίνετο: impf. of the time when Hdt. saw it.

130. 1. οἱ κατηγεόμενοι: cp. 7. 128. 15. — 3. ποταμῷ τούτῳ: for omission of art. with deictic dem., cp. 7. 49. 1. — 4. ἐξήλυσις: = ἔξοδος. Herodotean word. Cp. 3. 117. 15, 5. 101. 9. — αὐτή: *itself*, i.e. alone. — 6. λέγεται εἰπεῖν: see on 7. 56. 4. — 7. ταῦτ' ἄρα . . . ἐφυλάξαντο: *for this then long ago they took precautions*. ταῦτα adv. acc. S. 1610; HA. 719 c; Kr. Spr. 46. 3. 4. But for the appositional τᾶλλα καὶ ὅτι κτέ, this acc. might be explained as cognate. For ἄρα,

see on 7. 35. 11. — γνωσιμαχέοντες: lit. *recognizing their own strength*, and consequently *submitting* without resistance. The fundamental meaning here adopted will suit all three Herodotean passages (cp. 3. 25. 18, 8. 29. 3). See on 8. 29. 3. Editors generally adopt the other ancient interpretation, "change one's opinion," "come to a better view," which fits all three passages, if the etymology be admissible. — 9. ταχυάλωτον: only here. — πρῆγμα ἂν ἦν μῶνον: *it would have been necessary only*. See on 7. 12. 3. — 11. παρατρέψαντα δι' ὧν νῦν ρεῖ ρεῖθρων: for π. τὰ ρεῖθρα δι' ὧν νῦν ρεῖ, the antecedent being

ὑπόβρυχα γενέσθαι. ταῦτα δὲ ἔχοντα ἔλεγε ἐς τοὺς Ἀλεύεω παῖδας, ὅτι πρῶτοι Ἑλλήνων ἔοντες Θεσσαλοὶ ἔδοσαν ἑωπτοὺς βασιλεῖ, δοκέων ὁ Ξέρξης ἀπὸ παντός<sup>15</sup> σφεας τοῦ ἔθνεος ἐπαγγέλλεσθαι φιλίην. εἶπας δὲ ταῦτα καὶ θεησάμενος ἀπέπλει ἐς τὴν Θέρμην.

- 131 Ὁ μὲν δὴ περὶ Πιερὶν διέτριβε ἡμέρας συχνάς· τὸ γὰρ δὴ ὄρος τὸ Μακεδονικὸν ἔκειρε τῆς στρατιῆς τρίτη-  
μορίς, ἵνα ταύτῃ διεξίῃ ἅπανσα ἡ στρατιὴ ἐς Περραι-  
βοὺς· οἱ δὲ δὴ κήρυκες οἱ ἀποπεμφθέντες ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα  
ἐπὶ γῆς αἴτησιν ἀπίκατο οἱ μὲν κεινοί, οἱ δὲ φέροντες<sup>5</sup>  
132 γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ. τῶν δὲ δόντων ταῦτα ἐγένοντο οἶδε,  
Θεσσαλοὶ, Δόλοπες, Ἐνιῆνες, Περραιβοί, Λοκροί, Μάγ-  
νητες, Μηλιεῖς, Ἀχαιοὶ οἱ Φθιώται καὶ Θηβαῖοι καὶ οἱ  
ἄλλοι Βοιωτοὶ πλὴν Θεσπιέων τε καὶ Πλαταιέων. ἐπὶ  
τούτοισι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔταμον ὄρκιον οἱ τῷ βαρβάρῳ<sup>5</sup>  
πόλεμον ἀειράμενοι. τὸ δὲ ὄρκιον ὧδε εἶχε, ὅσοι τῷ

attracted into the rel. clause and assimilated. — 13. ὑπόβρυχα: meta-  
plastic accus., as Hom. ε 319. For  
the usual form, cp. ὑποβρύχιον 1.  
189. 10. — ἔχοντα ἐς: referring  
to. Cp. 7. 143. 6, 7. 152. 13. —  
15. δοκέων ὁ Ξέρξης: the subj.  
added for clearness.

#### RECEPTION OF XERXES' HERALDS (CC. 131-133)

131. 1. Πιερὶν: named from  
its earlier inhabitants (see on 7.  
112. 2); it lay along the coast be-  
tween the Haliacmon and the  
Peneus. — 2. ὄρος τὸ Μακεδονι-

κόν: i.e. the range on the pass of  
Petra or on the pass of Volustana.  
— ἔκειρε: cleared of trees. — 4. οἱ  
δὲ κήρυκες: cp. 7. 32. — 5. ἐπὶ γῆς  
αἴτησιν: see on 7. 32. 2. — κεινοί:  
empty-handed. Cp. Hom. B 298  
αἰσχρόν τοι δηρόν τε μένιν κενόν  
τε νέεσθαι.

132. 2. Περραιβοί: cp. 128. 8.  
— 3. Ἀχαιοὶ οἱ Φθιώται: i.e. Pthi-  
otis in Southern Thessaly, which  
was called also Ἀχαιίη (7. 173. 4).  
— 4. ἐπὶ τούτοισι: against these,  
of hostile intent. Cp. 6. 74. 5, 6.  
88. 2, 7. 148. 2. — 5. ἔταμον ὄρκιον:  
as 4. 201. 12. Homeric idiom. Cp.

Πέρσῃ ἔδοσαν σφέας αὐτοὺς Ἕλληνες ἔοντες, μὴ ἀναγκασθέντες καταστάντων σφι εἰ τῶν πρηγμάτων, τούτους  
 133 δεκατεῦσαι τῷ ἐν Δελφοῖσι θεῷ. τὸ μὲν δὴ ὄρκιον ὧδε  
 εἶχε τοῖσι Ἕλλησι· ἐς δὲ Ἀθήνας καὶ Σπάρτην οὐκ  
 ἀπέπεμψε Ξέρξης ἐπὶ γῆς αἴτησιν κήρυκας τῶνδε  
 εἵνεκα· πρότερον Δαρείου πέμψαντος ἐπ' αὐτὸ τοῦτο οἱ  
 μὲν αὐτῶν τοὺς αἰτέοντας ἐς τὸ βάραθρον, οἱ δ' ἐς  
 φρέαρ ἐσβαλόντες ἐκέλευον γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ ἐκ τούτων  
 φέρειν παρὰ βασιλέα. τούτων μὲν εἵνεκα οὐκ ἔπεμψε  
 Ξέρξης τοὺς αἰτήσοντας. ὃ τι δὲ τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι  
 ταῦτα ποιήσασι τοὺς κήρυκας συνήνεικε ἀνεθέλῃτον  
 γενέσθαι, οὐκ ἔχω εἶπαι, πλὴν ὅτι σφέων ἡ χώρα καὶ ἡ  
 πόλις ἐδῆώθη. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο οὐ διὰ ταύτην τὴν αἰτίην  
 134 δοκέω γενέσθαι. τοῖσι δὲ ὦν Λακεδαιμονίοισι μῆνις  
 κατέσκηψε Ταλθυβίου τοῦ Ἀγαμέμνονος κήρυκος. ἐν  
 γὰρ Σπάρτῃ ἐστὶ Ταλθυβίου ἱρόν, εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἀπόγονοι

*foedus icere.*—8. καταστάντων σφι εἰ τῶν πρηγμάτων: explanatory of μὴ ἀναγκασθέντες, *when matters had been well established for them*, as 6. 105. 11. Cp. 7. 158. 13.—τούτους δεκατεῦσαι . . . θεῷ: *to make these pay a tithe to the god at Delphi*, as usually taken and as the words literally mean; or *to dedicate these to the god at Delphi*, as Stein and Sitzler, since a tithe would be a light punishment for traitors.

133. 1. ὧδε: here looking backward, though just above (7. 132. 6) forward.—4. πρότερον: cp. 6. 48. 4.—οἱ μὲν: the Athenians.—

5. ἐς τὸ βάραθρον: a pit at Athens into which condemned criminals were thrown.—9. συνήνεικε: see on 7. 4. 3.—ἀνεθέλῃτον: see on 7. 88. 5.—10. οὐκ ἔχω εἶπαι: Pausanias (3. 12. 7) says that Miltiades had been responsible for the act and that the blood-guiltiness pursued him and his house.

SPERTHIAS AND BULIS (CC. 134–137)

134. 1. δὲ ὦν: see on 7. 9. γ 7.—2. κατέσκηψε: rare with dat. Cp. 7. 137. 7.—Ταλθυβίου: Homeric herald. Cp. Hom. A 320.—

Ταλθυβίου Ταλθυβιάδαι καλεόμενοι, τοῖσι αἱ κηρυκῆαι αἱ ἐκ Σπάρτης πᾶσαι γέρας δέδονται. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τοῖσι Σπαρτιήτησι καλλιερῆσαι θυομένοισι οὐκ ἐδύνατο. τοῦτο δ' ἐπὶ χρόνον συχνὸν ἦν σφι. ἀχθομένων δὲ καὶ συμφορῇ χρεωμένων Λακεδαιμονίων, ἀλλῆς τε πολλάκις συλλεγομένης καὶ κήρυγμα τοιόνδε ποιεομένων, εἴ τις βούλοιο Λακεδαιμονίων πρὸ τῆς Σπάρτης ἀπο-<sup>10</sup> θνήσκειν, Σπερθίης τε ὁ Ἀνηρίστου καὶ Βούλις ὁ Νικόλεω, ἄνδρες Σπαρτιῆται φύσι τε γεγονότες εὖ καὶ χρήμασι ἀνήκοντες ἐς τὰ πρῶτα, ἐβελονταὶ ὑπέδυσαν ποιηὴν τεῖσαι Ξέρξῃ τῶν Δαρείου κηρύκων τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἀπολομένων. οὕτω Σπαρτιῆται τούτους ὥς<sup>15</sup>  
 135 ἀποθανεομένους ἐς Μῆδους ἀπέπεμψαν, αὕτη τε ἡ τόλμα τούτων τῶν ἀνδρῶν θώματος ἀξίη καὶ τάδε πρὸς τούτοις τὰ ἔπεα. πορευόμενοι γὰρ ἐς Σοῦσα ἀπικνέονται παρὰ Ὑδάρνεα. ὁ δὲ Ὑδάρνης ἦν μὲν γένος Πέρσης, στρατηγὸς δὲ τῶν παραθαλασσίων ἀνθρώπων<sup>5</sup> τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ· ὃς σφεας ξείνια προθέμενος ἰστία,

5. αἱ ἐκ Σπάρτης: *i.e.* those on matters of state or worship. — γέρας δέδονται: on inherited offices and occupations at Sparta, see 6. 60. — μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα: *i.e.* after the killing of the heralds. — 6. καλλιερῆσαι: *impers. to get favorable omens.* — 7. ἐπὶ χρόνον: see on 7. 1. 10. — 8. συμφορῇ χρεωμένων: as 7. 141. 1. Cp. 7. 117. 6. While the omens continued unfavorable, public business dependent thereon had to be suspended. — ἀλλῆς: Doric word = Attic ἐκκλησία. —

12. φύσι γεγονότες εὖ: *by family well born.* The position of εὖ is to avoid hiatus. Cp. 3. 69. 4. — 13. χρήμασι ἀνήκοντες ἐς τὰ πρῶτα: *in property belonging to the first.* Cp. ἀνῆκω 7. 9. γ 4. 7. 13. 7.

135. 4. Ὑδάρνια: prob. the Hydarnes mentioned 7. 83. 3 and 7. 211. 4 as leader of the ἀθάνατοι, and son of the Hydarnes who was one of the seven conspirators (3. 70). — 6. σφεας ἰστία: *entertained them.* — ξείνια προθέμενος: cp. 7.

ξεινίζων δὲ εἵρετο [λέγων] τάδε· Ἄνδρες Λακεδαι-  
 μόνιοι, τί δὴ φεύγετε βασιλεῖ φίλοι γενέσθαι; ὁρᾶτε  
 γὰρ ὡς ἐπίσταται βασιλεὺς ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τιμᾶν, ἐς  
 ἐμέ τε καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ πρήγματα ἀποβλέποντες. οὕτω δὲ καὶ 10  
 ὑμεῖς εἰ δοίητε ὑμέας αὐτοὺς βασιλεῖ (δεδοξώσθε γὰρ  
 πρὸς αὐτοῦ ἄνδρες εἶναι ἀγαθοί), ἕκαστος ἂν ὑμέων  
 ἄρχοι γῆς Ἑλλάδος δόντος βασιλέος. πρὸς ταῦτα  
 ὑπεκρίναντο τάδε· Ὑδαρνες, οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου γίνεται ἡ  
 συμβουλή ἢ ἐς ἡμέας τείνουσα. τοῦ μὲν γὰρ πεπειρη- 15  
 μένος συμβουλευεῖς, τοῦ δὲ ἄπειρος ἔων· τὸ μὲν γὰρ  
 δοῦλος εἶναι ἐξεπίσται, ἐλευθερίας δὲ οὐκ ἔπειρήθης,  
 οὐτ' εἰ ἔστι γλυκὺ οὐτ' εἰ μῆ. εἰ γὰρ αὐτῆς πειρήσαιο,  
 οὐκ ἂν δόρασι συμβουλευοῖς ἡμῖν περὶ αὐτῆς μάχεσθαι,  
 136 ἀλλὰ καὶ πελέκεσι. ταῦτα μὲν Ὑδάρνεα ἀμεύψαντο·  
 ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ὡς ἀνέβησαν ἐς Σοῦσα καὶ βασιλεῖ ἐς ὅσιν  
 ἦλθον, πρῶτα μὲν τῶν δορυφόρων κελεύοντων καὶ ἀνάγ-  
 κην σφί προσφερόντων προσκυνεῖν βασιλέα προσπί-  
 πτοντας οὐκ ἔφασαν ὠθεόμενοι πρὸς αὐτῶν ἐπὶ κεφαλὴν 5

29. 4. — 8. τί δῆ: *Why, pray?* —

11. ὑμεῖς εἰ δοίητε: note emphatic  
 position of the pron. — δεδοξώσθε:  
 as 9. 48. 19. Herodotean word  
 = Att. δοξάζω. Fut. pf. denotes  
 certainty. GMT. 79. — 12. πρὸς  
 αὐτοῦ: see on 7. 2. 12. — ἕκα-  
 στος: shows that by ὑμέων all the  
 Spartans are meant. — 13. ἄρχοι  
 γῆς Ἑλλάδος: compare the prom-  
 ises of Cyrus to the Greeks, Xen.  
*Anab.* 1. 7. 6, 7. — 14. οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου  
 . . . τείνουσα: the advice as per-  
 taining to us is unequal, i.e. one-

sided. — 17. ἐπειρήθης, πειρήσαιο:  
 note aor. pass. and aor. mid. with  
 same force.

136. 1. ταῦτα μὲν Ὑδάρνεα ἀμεί-  
 ψαντο: cognate and personal acc.,  
 as 2. 173. 21, 3. 52. 23; usually  
 acc. of pers. and dat. of thing  
 (7. 161. 3). — 2. βασιλεῖ ἐς ὅσιν  
 ἦλθον: dat. of interest, practically  
 possession. Cp. 7. 146. 12. —  
 4. προσκυνεῖν βασιλέα προσπίπ-  
 τοντας: to do obeisance to the king by  
 falling down before him. — 5. οὐκ  
 ἔφασαν . . . οὐδαμᾶ: they said that



ποιήσιν ταῦτα οὐδαμά· οὔτε γὰρ σφίσι ἐν νόμῳ εἶναι  
 ἄνθρωπον προσκυνεῖν οὔτε κατὰ ταῦτα ἤκειν· ὥς δὲ  
 ἀπεμαχέσαντο τοῦτο, δεύτερά σφι λέγουσι τάδε καὶ  
 λόγου τοιοῦδε ἐχόμενα· Ὡ βασιλεῦ Μήδων, ἔπεμψαν  
 ἡμέας Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἀντὶ τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἀπολομένων<sup>10</sup>  
 κηρύκων ποιητὴν ἐκείνων τείνοντας, λέγουσι δὲ αὐτοῖσι  
 ταῦτα Ξέρξης ὑπὸ μεγαλοφροσύνης οὐκ ἔφη ὅμοιος  
 ἔσεσθαι Λακεδαιμονίοισι· κείνους μὲν γὰρ συγχέαι τὰ  
 πάντων ἀνθρώπων νόμιμα ἀποκτείναντας κήρυκας, αὐτὸς  
 δὲ τὰ ἐκείνοισι ἐπιπλήσσει ταῦτα οὐ ποιήσιν, οὐδὲ<sup>15</sup>  
 ἀνταποκτείνας ἐκείνους ἀπολύσειν Λακεδαιμονίους τῆς  
 137 αἰτίας. οὕτω ἡ Ταλθυβίου μῆνις καὶ ταῦτα ποιησάντων  
 Σπαρτιητέων ἐπαύσατο τὸ παραντίκα, καίπερ ἀπονοστή-  
 σάντων ἐς Σπάρτην Σπερθιέῳ τε καὶ Βούλιος. χρόνῳ  
 δὲ μετέπειτα πολλῶ ἐπηγέρθη κατὰ τὸν Πελοποννησιῶν  
 καὶ Ἀθηναίων πόλεμον, ὥς λέγουσι Λακεδαιμόνιοι.<sup>5</sup>  
 τοῦτό μοι ἐν τοῖσι θεϊότατον φαίνεται γενέσθαι. ὅτι  
 μὲν γὰρ κατέσκηψε ἐς ἀγγέλους ἡ Ταλθυβίου μῆνις  
 οὐδὲ ἐπαύσατο πρὶν ἢ ἐξῆλθε, τὸ δίκαιον οὕτω ἔφερε·  
 τὸ δὲ συμπεσεῖν ἐς τοὺς παῖδας τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων

*even if they were thrust head  
 downwards they would not do this.*  
*Cp. Verg. Aen. i. 116 pronus vol-*  
*vitur in caput.* — 7. κατὰ ταῦτα:  
*for this purpose.* — 8. σφι λέγουσι:  
*repeated in 11 (λέγουσι δὲ αὐ-*  
*τοῖσι) and dependent on ἔφη (12).*  
 — 9. λόγου τοιοῦδε ἐχόμενα: *things*  
*of such purport.* Cp. 7. 5. 8. —  
 12. μεγαλοφροσύνης: *for other in-*  
*stances of X.'s magnanimity, cp.*

7. 27–29, 7. 146, 147. — 15. τὰ  
 ἐκείνοισι ἐπιπλήσσει: *what he cen-*  
*sures in those.*

137. 1. καί: connects οὕτω and  
 genitive absolute. — 6. ἐν τοῖσι  
 θεϊότατον: *among the most divine.*  
 S. 1089; HA. 652. The idiom  
 occurs ten times in Thuc. —  
 9. συμπεσεῖν: substituted for va-  
 riety for κατασκήψαι, hence with  
 ἐς c. acc.; otherwise c. dat. — ἐς

τῶν ἀναβάντων πρὸς βασιλέα διὰ τὴν μῆνιν, ἐς Νικόλαν<sup>10</sup>  
 τε τὸν Βούλιος καὶ ἐς Ἀνήριττον τὸν Σπερθίεω, ὃς εἶλε  
 Ἀλιέας τοὺς ἐκ Τίρυνθος ὀλκάδι καταπλώσας πλήρει  
 ἀνδρῶν, δῆλον ὦν μοι ὅτι θεῖον ἐγένετο τὸ πρῆγμα [ἐκ  
 τῆς μῆνιος]. οἱ πεμφθέντες ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων ἄγγε-  
 λοι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην, προδοθέντες δὲ ὑπὸ Σιτάλκεω τοῦ<sup>15</sup>  
 Τήρεω Θρηκῶν βασιλέος καὶ Νυμφοδώρου τοῦ Πυθέω  
 ἀνδρὸς Ἀβδηρίτεω, ἤλωσαν κατὰ Βισάνθην τὴν ἐν  
 Ἑλλησπόντῳ, καὶ ἀπαχθέντες ἐς τὴν Ἀττικὴν ἀπέθανον  
 ὑπὸ Ἀθηναίων, μετὰ δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ Ἀριστέας ὁ Ἀδει-  
 μάντου Κορώθιος ἀνὴρ.

20

Ταῦτα μὲν νυν πολλοῖσι ἔτεσι ὕστερον ἐγένετο τοῦ  
 βασιλέος στόλου, ἐπάνειμι δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν πρότερον λόγον.  
<sup>138</sup> ἡ δὲ στρατηλασίῃ ἡ βασιλέος οὐνομα μὲν εἶχε ὡς ἐπ'  
 Ἀθήνας ἐλαύνει, κατίετο δὲ ἐς πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα.  
 πυνθανόμενοι δὲ ταῦτα πρὸ πολλοῦ οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκ ἐν  
 ὁμοίῳ πάντες ἐποιέοντο. οἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν δόντες γῆν

τοὺς παῖδας: *i.e.* as an example  
 of the law that children suffer for  
 their father's crimes. Cp. 7. 197.  
 21.—12. Ἀλιέας: Halieis, a town  
 in Argolis near Hermione, had  
 been colonized from Tiryns.—  
 13. δῆλον ὦν μοι: *sc.* ἐστίν. Ana-  
 coluthon, owing to length of sent.,  
 τὸ πρῆγμα resuming τὸ συμπε-  
 σαίν.—[ἐκ τῆς μῆνιος]: see App.  
 —14. οἱ πεμφθέντες: 430 B.C.—  
 15. Σιτάλκεω: an ally of the Athe-  
 nians.—16. Νυμφοδώρου: brother-  
 in-law of Sitalces and proxenus of  
 the Athenians.—17. Βισάνθην τὴν

ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ: more exactly on  
 the Propontis, the Hellespont be-  
 ing loosely used for the whole re-  
 gion. See on 7. 95. 9.—19. Ἀρι-  
 στέας: Ἀριστεύς in Thuc. 2. 67. 1.

DREAD OF THE PERSIAN: ATHENS  
 THE SAVIOR OF GREECE (CC.  
 138, 139)

138. 3. πρὸ πολλοῦ: cp. 7. 130.  
 7.—οὐκ ἐν ὁμοίῳ πάντες ἐποιέοντο:  
*did not all regard it in like man-*  
*ner*, as 8. 109. 16. For the verb  
 in this sense in the middle voice,  
 cp. 7. 14. 6, 7. 117. 7, 7. 181. 8.

τε καὶ ὕδωρ τῷ Πέρσῃ εἶχον θάρσος ὥς οὐδὲν πεισόμενοι ἄχαρι πρὸς τοῦ βαρβάρου· οἱ δὲ οὐ δόντες ἐν δέϊματι μεγάλῳ κατέστασαν, ἅτε οὔτε νεῶν ἐουσέων ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἀριθμὸν ἀξιομάχων δέκεσθαι τὸν ἐπιόντα, οὔτε βουλομένων τῶν πολλῶν ἀντάπτεσθαι τοῦ πολέμου, 139 μῆδιζόντων δὲ προθύμως. ἐνθαῦτα ἀναγκαίῃ ἐξέργομαι γνῶμην ἀποδέξασθαι ἐπίφθονον μὲν πρὸς τῶν πλεόνων ἀνθρώπων, ὅμως δέ, τῇ γέ μοι φαίνεται εἶναι ἀληθές, οὐκ ἐπισχίσω. εἰ Ἀθηναῖοι καταρρωδήσαντες τὸν ἐπιόντα κίνδυνον ἐξέλιπον τὴν σφετέρην, ἥ καὶ μὴ 5 ἐκλιπόντες ἀλλὰ μέιναντες ἔδοσαν σφέας αὐτοὺς Ξέρῃ, κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν οὐδαμοὶ ἂν ἐπειρῶντο ἀντιούμενοι βασιλεῖ. εἰ τοίνυν κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν μῆδεῖς ἡντιοῦτο Ξέρῃ, κατὰ γε ἂν τὴν ἡπειρον τοιάδε ἐγώετο. εἰ καὶ πολλοὶ τειχέων κιθῶνες ἦσαν ἐληλαμένοι διὰ τοῦ Ἴσθ- 10 μοῦ Πελοποννησίοισι, προδοθέντες ἂν Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὑπὸ τῶν συμμάχων οὐκ ἐκόντων ἀλλ' ὑπ' ἀναγκαίης,

— 5. οὐδὲν πεισόμενοι ἄχαρι: cp. 7. 50. 25. — 8. ἀριθμόν: acc. of spec. Cp. ἐς τὸν ἀριθμόν 7. 97. 9. — ἀξιομάχων: cp. 7. 101. 11, 7. 157. 16.

139. 1. ἀναγκαίῃ ἐξέργομαι: as 7. 96. 6. — 2. ἐπίφθονον . . . ἀνθρώπων: *invidious in the eyes of most of the Greeks*. This was perhaps written by Hdt. about the time of the opening of the Peloponnesian War when so many Greek states were arrayed against Athens. — 4. οὐκ ἐπισχίσω: *sc. γνῶμην ἀποδέξασθαι*. — καταρρωδήσαντες: cp. 7. 38. 2. — 5. ἐξέλιπον τὴν σφετέ-

ρην: cp. 7. 143. 17. — 7. ἐπειρῶντο ἀντιούμενοι: suppl. ptc., as 7. 148. 8, 7. 172. 19. — 10. τειχέων κιθῶνες: poetic for *τείχη*. As the coat protects the body, so the walls the city. Cp. 1. 181. 1 τὸ τεῖχος θώρηξ ἐστὶ, Xen. *Sympos.* 4. 38 πάνυ μὲν ἀλεινοὶ χιτῶνες οἱ τοῖχοί μοι δοκοῦσι εἶναι, Demades, *apud Athen.* 3. 99. 9, (τὸ τεῖχος) ἐσθῆτα τῆς πόλεως. Cp. also *λάινον χιτῶνα* Hom. *Γ* 57. — διὰ τοῦ Ἴσθμοῦ: a wall was hastily built across after the battle of Thermopylae (8. 71). — 11. προδοθέντες: *deserted*. —

κατὰ πόλιν ἀλισκομένων ὑπὸ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ τοῦ βαρβάρου, ἐμουνώθησαν, μουνωθέντες δὲ ἂν καὶ ἀποδεξάμενοι ἔργα μεγάλα ἀπέθανον γενναίως. ἡ ταῦτα ἂν <sup>15</sup> ἔπαθον, ἡ πρὸ τοῦ ὀρώντες ἂν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Ἑλλήνας μηδίζοντας ὁμολογίῃ ἂν ἐχρήσαντο πρὸς Ξέρξην. καὶ οὕτω ἂν ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρα ἢ Ἑλλάς ἐγίνετο ὑπὸ Πέρσῃσι. τὴν γὰρ ὠφελίην τὴν τῶν τειχέων τῶν διὰ τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ ἐληλαμένων οὐ δύναμαι πυθέσθαι ἥτις ἂν ἦν <sup>20</sup> βασιλέος ἐπικρατέοντος τῆς θαλάσσης. νῦν δὲ Ἀθηναίους ἂν τις λέγων σωτήρας γενέσθαι τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐκ ἂν ἀμαρτάνοι τὸ ἀληθές· οὗτοι γὰρ ἐπὶ ὁκότερα τῶν πρηγμάτων ἐτράποντο, ταῦτα ῥέψειν ἔμελλε· ἐλόμενοι δὲ τὴν Ἑλλάδα περιεῖναι ἐλευθέρην, τοῦτο τὸ <sup>25</sup> Ἑλληνικὸν πᾶν τὸ λοιπὸν, ὅσον μὴ ἐμῇδισε, αὐτοὶ οὗτοι ἦσαν οἱ ἐπεγείραντες καὶ βασιλέα μετὰ γε θεοὺς ἀνωσάμενοι. οὐδέ σφεας χρηστήρια φοβερὰ ἐλθόντα ἐκ Δελφῶν καὶ ἐς δαίμα βαλόντα ἔπεισε ἐκλιπεῖν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀλλὰ καταμείναντες ἀνέσχοντο τὸν ἐπιόντα <sup>30</sup> ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν δέξασθαι.

13. κατὰ πόλιν: *city after city*. —

14. καὶ: *even* = *καίπερ*. — 16. πρὸ τοῦ: *cp.* 7. 16. β 9. — 17. ἂν: *note repetition of ἂν, as 23 below*.

— 18. ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρα: *in both cases, i.e. whether they died nobly or came to terms*. — 19. τὴν ὠφελίην: *prolepsis*. — 21. νῦν δέ: *cp.* 7. 50. 20. — 23. ἀμαρτάνοι τὸ ἀληθές: *note the rare const. of the acc.* —

ἐπὶ ὁκότερα τῶν πρηγμάτων: *i.e. to whichever side, Greek or Persian*.

— 24. ταῦτα ῥέψειν ἔμελλε: *that was going to (weigh down) preponderate*. — 26. μή: *because the rel. clause is conditional*. — 27. οὗτοι . . . οἱ ἐπεγείραντες: *for art. and ptc. as pred., cp.* 7. 2. 12, 7. 10. η 7. — 29. ἐς δαίμα βαλόντα: *poetical form of expression for δαίμα ἐνέβαλον αὐτοῖς*. — 30. ἀνέσχοντο: *= sustinuerunt, they endured; here construed with infinitive, usually with participle*.

— 24. ταῦτα ῥέψειν ἔμελλε: *that was going to (weigh down) preponderate*. — 26. μή: *because the rel. clause is conditional*. — 27. οὗτοι . . . οἱ ἐπεγείραντες: *for art. and ptc. as pred., cp.* 7. 2. 12, 7. 10. η 7. — 29. ἐς δαίμα βαλόντα: *poetical form of expression for δαίμα ἐνέβαλον αὐτοῖς*. — 30. ἀνέσχοντο: *= sustinuerunt, they endured; here construed with infinitive, usually with participle*.

— 27. οὗτοι . . . οἱ ἐπεγείραντες: *for art. and ptc. as pred., cp.* 7. 2. 12, 7. 10. η 7. — 29. ἐς δαίμα βαλόντα: *poetical form of expression for δαίμα ἐνέβαλον αὐτοῖς*. — 30. ἀνέσχοντο: *= sustinuerunt, they endured; here construed with infinitive, usually with participle*.

— 29. ἐς δαίμα βαλόντα: *poetical form of expression for δαίμα ἐνέβαλον αὐτοῖς*. — 30. ἀνέσχοντο: *= sustinuerunt, they endured; here construed with infinitive, usually with participle*.

— 30. ἀνέσχοντο: *= sustinuerunt, they endured; here construed with infinitive, usually with participle*.

— 30. ἀνέσχοντο: *= sustinuerunt, they endured; here construed with infinitive, usually with participle*.

— 30. ἀνέσχοντο: *= sustinuerunt, they endured; here construed with infinitive, usually with participle*.

- 140 Πέμψαντες γὰρ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐς Δελφοὺς θεοπρόπους χρηστηριάζεσθαι ἦσαν ἔτοιμοι· καὶ σφι ποιήσασι περὶ τὸ ἱρὸν τὰ νομιζόμενα, ὥς ἐς τὸ μέγαρον ἐσελθόντες ἴζοντο, χρῆ ἡ Πυθίη, τῇ οὐνομα ἦν Ἀριστονίκη, τάδε·

5

ὦ μέλεοι, τί κάθησθε; λιπὼν φεῦγ' ἔσχατα γαίης  
 Δώματα καὶ πόλιος τροχοειδέος ἄκρα κάρηνα.  
 Οὔτε γὰρ ἡ κεφαλὴ μένει ἔμπεδον οὔτε τὸ σῶμα,  
 Οὔτε πόδες νέατοι οὔτ' ὦν χέρες, οὔτε τι μέσσης  
 Λείπεται, ἀλλ' ἄζηλα πέλει· κατὰ γάρ μιν ἐρείπει 10  
 Πῦρ τε καὶ ὄξυς Ἄρης, Συριηγενὲς ἄρμα διώκων.

ORACLES: THE WOODEN WALL; THEMISTOCLES' INTERPRETATION. HIS BUILDING OF THE FLEET (CC. 140-144)

140. 1. *πέμψαντες*: about 482 B.C., as may be inferred from 7. 145.—2. *χρηστηριάζεσθαι* = *χρησθαι τῷ χρηστηρίῳ* 7. 141. 6.—3. *τὸ ἱρὸν*: the whole sacred precinct including the temple and all that belonged thereto; *νηός* the temple itself; *τὸ μέγαρον* the inner shrine (or *ἄδυτον* 17). In the *ἄδυτον* of the temple at Delphi was a golden statue of Apollo and back in the shadowy recess the tripod of the Pythia over a deep fissure in the rock.—*τὰ νομιζόμενα*: *i.e.* the customary preparatory purifications and sacrifices.—4. *ἡ Πυθίη*: the Pythian priestess who uttered from the tripod the oracles which

were taken down by the *προφῆται* and promulgated in hexameter. See on 7. 111. 8.—6. *λιπὼν*: connect with *δώματα . . . κάρηνα*. The address is through the *θεοπρόποι* to the people at Athens.—*ἔσχατα γαίης*: as Hes. *Theog.* 731. For the terminal acc., see S. 1588; H.A. 722.—7. *τροχοειδέος*: referring to the circular city wall (called *κύκλος* 1. 98. 21).—*ἄκρα κάρηνα*: = *Ἀκρόπολις*. Cp. Hom. B 869 *Μυκάλῃς αἰπεινὰ κάρηνα*.—8. *μένει ἔμπεδον*: as Hom. E 527, P 434.—9. *πόδες νέατοι*: *the feet below*. So in Hom. B 824, of a mountain, *πόδα νεάτοιν Ἴδης*.—*οὔτ' ὦν*: *nor yet*. Cp. Hom. β 200.—*μέσσης*: *sc. τῆς πόλιος*.—10. *ἄζηλα*: = *ἄδηλα, unseen, i.e. annihilated*.—*μιν*: *i.e. τὴν πόλιν*.—11. *ὄξυς Ἄρης*: as often in Homer; here referring to Xerxes.—*Συριηγενὲς ἄρμα*

Πολλὰ δὲ κἄλλ' ἀπολεῖ πυργώματα, κοῦ τὸ σὸν οἶον·  
 Πολλοὺς δ' ἀθανάτων νηοὺς μαλερῷ πυρὶ δώσει,  
 Οἷ που νῦν ἰδρῶτι ρεούμενοι ἐστήκασι,  
 Δείματι παλλόμενοι, κατὰ δ' ἀκροτάτοις ὀρόφοισι 15  
 Αἷμα μέλαν κέχυται, προῖδὸν κακότητος ἀνάγκας.  
 Ἄλλ' ἵτον ἐξ ἀδύτοιο, κακοῖς δ' ἐπικίδνατε θυμόν.

141 ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ τῶν Ἀθηναίων θεοπρόποι συμ-  
 φορῇ τῇ μεγίστῃ ἐχρέωντο. προβάλλουσι δὲ σφέας  
 αὐτοὺς ὑπὸ τοῦ κακοῦ τοῦ κεχρησμένου Τίμων ὁ Ἀν-  
 δροβούλου, τῶν Δελφῶν ἀνὴρ δόκιμος ὅμοια τῷ μάλι-  
 στα, συνεβούλευέ σφι ἱκετηρίας λαβοῦσι δεύτερα αὐτὶς 5  
 ἐλθόντας χρῆσθαι τῷ χρηστηρίῳ ὡς ἰκέτας. πειθομέ-

διώκων: *driving a Syrian chariot*.  
 Cp. Aesch. *Pers.* 85 Σύριον ἄρμα  
 διώκων. The term Syrian in both  
 Hdt. and Aesch. means no more  
 than Asiatic. — 14. ἰδρῶτι ρεούμε-  
 νοι: what is usually said of statues  
 of the gods here applied to their  
 temples. For the portent, cp. schol.  
 ὅταν μέλλῃ τι συμβαίνειν χαλε-  
 πόν, εἴωθε τὰ ἀγάλματα ἰδρῶν. —  
 15. δείματι παλλόμενοι: *quivering*  
*with fear*, as *hymn to Demeter* 294.  
 — ὀρόφοισι: dat. with κατακέχυται,  
 as Hom. Γ 10, Υ 282, for more usual  
 gen. With the passage, cp. Hom.  
 υ 354 αἷματι δ' ἐρράδαται τοῖχοι  
 καλαί τε μεσόδμοι *sprinkled with*  
*blood are the walls and the fair*  
*compartments*. — 16. προῖδόν: =  
 προφαῖνον. The blood, thought  
 of here as endowed with life, sees  
 the approach of *unavoidable evil*

(κακότητος ἀνάγκας). — 17. Ἄλλ'  
 ἵτον: the Pythia addresses now  
 directly the θεοπρόποι, evidently  
 two in number. — κακοῖς δ' ἐπικίδ-  
 νάτε θυμόν: "brood on the ills that  
 await you" (Rawl.), lit. *spread*  
*your soul over your ills*.

141. 1. συμφορῇ . . . ἐχρέωντο:  
 because the utter destruction of  
 the city was foretold. For the  
 expression, cp. 7. 134. 8. — 2. προ-  
 βάλλουσι σφέας αὐτοὺς: *giving*  
*themselves up for lost*, from the  
 habit of casting one's self upon  
 the ground in despair. — 4. ὅμοια  
 τῷ μάλιστα: see on 7. 118. 7. —  
 5. ἱκετηρίας: i.e. the olive branches  
 carried by suppliants. — δεύτερα  
 αὐτὶς: also 4. 76. 3, like Homer.  
 — 6. ἐλθόντας χρῆσθαι: the inf.  
 attracts the ptc. into the acc. —  
 χρῆσθαι τῷ χρηστηρίῳ: = χρηστη-

νοισι δὲ ταῦτα τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι καὶ λέγουσι· Ὡναξ,  
 χρῆσον ἡμῖν ἄμεινόν τι περὶ τῆς πατρίδος, αἰδεσθεὶς  
 τὰς ἱκετηρίας τάσδε τὰς τοι ἤκομεν φέροντες· ἢ οὐ τοι  
 ἄπιμεν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδύτου, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ τῇδε μενέομεν ἔστ' ἂν <sup>10</sup>  
 καὶ τελευτήσωμεν, ταῦτα δὲ λέγουσι ἢ πρόμαντις χρῆ  
 δεύτερα τάδε·

Οὐ δύναται Παλλὰς Δί' Ὀλύμπιον ἐξιλάσασθαι,  
 Λισσομένη πολλοῖσι λόγοις καὶ μῆτιδι πυκνῇ.  
 Σοὶ δὲ τόδ' αὖτις ἔπος ἐρέω, ἀδάμαντι πελάσσας· <sup>15</sup>  
 Τῶν ἄλλων γὰρ ἀλίσκομένων ὅσα Κέκροπος οὔρος  
 Ἐντὸς ἔχει κευθμῶν τε Κιθαιρῶνος ζαθέοιο,  
 Τεῖχος Τριτογενεῖ ξύλινον διδοῖ εὐρύοπα Ζεὺς  
 Μοῦνον ἀπόρθητον τελέθειν, τὸ σὲ τέκνα τ' ὀνήσει.  
 Μηδὲ σύ γ' ἱπποσύνην τε μένειν καὶ πεζὸν ἰόντα <sup>20</sup>  
 Πολλὸν ἀπ' ἡπίρου στρατὸν ἥσυχος, ἀλλ' ὑποχωρεῖν

ριάζεσθαι 7. 140. 2. — 8. χρῆσον: for act. and mid. see on 7. 111. 9. — 9. τοι: for thee, dat. of interest. — οὐ τοι: τοι strictly perhaps ethical dat. — 10. αὐτοῦ τῇδε: see on 7. 10. θ 12. — 11. ταῦτα δὲ λέγουσι: repeats beginning of sentence (7). Cp. 7. 136. 8, 11. — ἢ πρόμαντις: as 7. 111. 9. Cp. 7. 140. 4. — 13. Παλλὰς: as πολιοῦχος or patron goddess of Athens. — 15. ἀδάμαντι πελάσσας: bringing it nigh to (i.e. making it firm as) adamant. The meaning is the same as the Homeric formula τὸ δὲ καὶ τετελεσμένον ἔσται, i.e. this second answer is unchangeable. The

ptc. is masc. because Apollo speaks. — 16. Κέκροπος οὔρος: the Acropolis, reputed to have been first settled by Cecrops. — 17. κευθμῶν Κιθαιρῶνος: the Vale of Cithaeron, this mountain being on the natural boundary between Attica and Boeotia. — 18. Τριτογενεῖ: for the usual Τριτογενεῖα, also Hom. hymn 28. 4; Ar. Eq. 1189. — εὐρύοπα: wide-voiced, far-sounding. — 20. ἱπποσύνην: cavalry, poetical; abstract for concrete, as κελουσιμόσυνης 1. 157. 8, σίτησιν 3. 23. 5, παχύτης 4. 23. 15, χρησιμοσύνης 9. 33. 22. — μένειν: await; inf. for imv., as 7. 159. 8, esp. freq. in Hom.

Νῶτον ἐπιστρέψας · ἔτι τοί ποτε κἀντίος ἔσση.

\*Ὡ θεΐη Σαλαμῖς, ἀπολεῖς δὲ σὺ τέκνα γυναικῶν

\*Ἡ που σκιδναμένης Δημήτερος ἢ συνιούσης.

142 Ταῦτά σφι ἡπιώτερα γὰρ τῶν προτέρων καὶ ἦν καὶ ἐδόκει εἶναι, συγγραψάμενοι ἀπαλλάσσοντο ἐς τὰς Ἀθήνας. ὥς δὲ ἀπελθόντες οἱ θεοπρόποι ἀπήγγελλον ἐς τὸν δῆμον, γινῶμαι καὶ ἄλλαι πολλαὶ γίνονται διζη- μένων τὸ μαντήιον καὶ αἶδε συνεστηκυῖαι μάλιστα · 5 τῶν πρεσβυτέρων ἔλεγον μετεξέτεροι δοκεῖν σφίσι τὸν θεὸν τὴν ἀκρόπολιν χρῆσαι περιέσεσθαι · ἡ γὰρ ἀκρό- πολις τὸ πάλαι τῶν Ἀθηνέων ῥηχῶ ἐπέφρακτο. οἱ μὲν δὲ [κατὰ τὸν φραγμὸν] συνεβάλλοντο τοῦτο τὸ ξύλι- νον τείχος εἶναι, οἱ δ' αὖ ἔλεγον τὰς νέας σημαίνειν τὸν 10 θεόν, καὶ ταύτας παραρτεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον τὰ ἄλλα ἀπέν- τας. τοὺς ὦν δὴ τὰς νέας λέγοντας εἶναι τὸ ξύλινον τείχος ἔσφαλλε τὰ δύο τὰ τελευταῖα ῥηθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς Πυθίης,

— 22. τοί: *look you*, particle of asseveration. This line gives some encouragement to the Athenians.

— κἀντίος: = καὶ ἀντίος. — 23. ἀπολεῖς δέ: common position of δέ in invocations in poetry. Cp. 1. 32. 3, 8. 68. a. 4. — 24. ἡ που κτέ.: *either perchance when the corn is scattered or gathered in*, i.e. at seed-time or harvest. The battle of Salamis occurred on Sept. 28th about the time of the autumn sowing. — Δημήτερος: by metonymy for σίτος.

142. 1. γάρ: = ἐπεὶ, as the for-clause anticipates its logical

position. Cp. 7. 44. 2. — 4. ἐς τὸν δῆμον: *unto the people*; const. with verbs of saying. Cp. εἶπε ἐς πάντας 8. 26. 13. — διζημένων τὸ μαντήιον: *seeking the meaning of the oracle*. — 5. συνεστηκυῖαι: *conflicting*. Cp. 7. 225. 5. — 6. μετεξέτεροι: Ion. for ἐνιοι. — 8. τὸ πάλαι: cp. τὸ παλαιόν, 7. 59. 13, 7. 89. 8. — ῥηχῶ: *by a thorn hedge*. — 9. [κατὰ τὸν φραγμὸν]: on reading see App. — συνεβάλλοντο: *conspicibant*. — 11. παραρτεῖσθαι: = παρασκευάζεσθαι, as 7. 20. 2. — 12. ὦν δὲ: *indeed*. — 13. ἔσφαλλε:



\*Ω θεΐη Σαλαμίς, ἀπολείς δὲ σὺ τέκνα γυναικῶν

15

\*Ἡ που σκιδναμένης Δημήτερος ἥ συνιούσης.

κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ ἔπεα συνεχέοντο αἱ γινῶμαι τῶν φαμέ-  
νων τὰς νέας τὸ ξύλινον τείχος εἶναι· οἱ γὰρ χρησμο-  
λόγοι ταύτη ταῦτα ἐλάμβανον, ὥς ἀμφὶ Σαλαμῖνα δεῖ  
143 σφεας ἐσσωθῆναι ναυμαχίην παρασκευασαμένους. ἦν  
δὲ τῶν τις Ἀθηναίων ἀνὴρ ἐς πρώτους νεωστὶ παριών,  
τῷ οὐνομα μὲν ἦν Θεμιστοκλῆς, παῖς δὲ Νεοκλέος  
ἐκαλεῖτο. οὗτος ὠνὴρ οὐκ ἔφη πᾶν ὀρθῶς τοὺς χρησ-  
μολόγους συμβάλλεσθαι, λέγων τοιάδε, εἰ ἐς Ἀθη-

*staggered, misled.* — 17. κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ ἔπεα: *in view of these verses.* — συνεχέοντο: *were obscured, i.e. made doubtful, confundebantur;* for if the wooden wall meant the fleet, how could safety be promised when these two verses portended defeat at Salamis (line 20)? — 18. χρησμολόγοι: *see on 7. 6. 12.* — 19. ταύτη: *prospective, looking to the ὥς clause.* — ἐλάμβανον: *took, i.e. understood, elsewhere in Hdt. with νόω or φρενί.* — ὥς δεῖ: *see on 7. 2. 3.* — 20. παρασκευασαμένους: *conditional.*

143. 2. τῶν τις Ἀθηναίων: *tis* regularly so intrudes in Hdt., whereas in Attic Greek only the addition of some other attrib. word with the noun makes this possible. — ἐς πρώτους νεωστὶ παριών: *ptc. impf., who had only lately been coming to the front.* Cp. 7. 134. 13. Themistocles belonged to the

Lycomidai, a family old, though not of the highest rank, that was settled in Phlya. But his mother was un-Attic (Plut. *Them.* 1), and he attained citizenship prob. through the enfranchisement made by Cleisthenes. As archon in 493 (Dion. Hal. *Arch.* 6. 34) he began the construction of the harbor of Piraeus; with Aristides he led the center at Marathon (Plut. *Aristid.* 5); in the war with Aegina he put through the decree that the income from the Laureian silver mines should be spent upon the fleet (7. 144); since the ostracism of his rival Aristides in 482 (8. 79) he was as στρατηγός the first man in the state. — 4. ἐκαλεῖτο: *so freq. where the father's name is mentioned.* Cp. 6. 88. 4. — ὠνὴρ: *crasis for ὁ ἀνὴρ.* — 5. ἐς Ἀθηναίους εἶχε: *see on 7. 130. 13.* But possibly εἶχε εἰρημένον is periphras-

ναίους εἶχε τὸ ἔπος εἰρημένον ἐόντως, οὐκ ἂν οὕτω μιν  
δοκεῖν ἡπίως χρησθῆναι, ἀλλὰ ὧδε ᾧ σχετλή Σαλα-  
μῖς, ἀντὶ τοῦ ᾧ θείῃ Σαλαμῖς, εἴ πέρ γε ἔμελλον οἱ  
οἰκήτορες ἀμφ' αὐτῇ τελευτήσκειν. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐς τοὺς  
πολεμίους τῷ θεῷ εἰρῆσθαι τὸ χρηστήριον συλλαμ-<sup>10</sup>  
βάνοντι κατὰ τὸ ὀρθόν, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐς Ἀθηναίους. παρα-  
σκευάζεσθαι ὧν αὐτοὺς ὡς ναυμαχήσοντας συνεβούλευε,  
ὡς τούτου ἐόντος τοῦ ξυλίνου τείχεος. ταύτῃ Θεμιστο-  
κλέος ἀποφαινομένου Ἀθηναῖοι ταῦτα σφίσι ἔγνωσαν  
αἰρετώτερα εἶναι μᾶλλον ἢ τὰ τῶν χρησμολόγων, οἱ<sup>15</sup>  
οὐκ ἔων ναυμαχίην ἀρτεῖσθαι, τὸ δὲ σύμπαν εἶπαι οὐδὲ  
χεῖρας ἀνταείρεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐκλιπόντας χώρην τὴν Ἀττι-  
<sup>144</sup>κὴν ἄλλην τινὰ οἰκίζειν. ἐτέρῃ τε Θεμιστοκλεῖ γνῶμη  
ἔμπροσθε ταύτης ἐς καιρὸν ἡρίστευσε, ὅτε Ἀθηναίοισι

sis for εἶρητο (Stein). — 6. ἐόντως: belongs to εἶχε. — μιν: = ἐωντόν subj. of δοκεῖν. — 8. τοῦ: substantives the whole phrase. Cp. 7. 51. 16. — 9. ἀμφ' αὐτῇ: about it, hence for it. ἀμφί c. dat., freq. in Hdt., Hom. and other poets, not in Att. prose. — ἀλλὰ γὰρ κτί.: should properly be substantiating or causal clause for the apod. παρασκευάζεσθαι κτέ., but the return to direct discourse in the second sent. causes an anacoluthon. We may render, *But in truth the oracle*, etc. — 10. συλλαμβάνοντι: in the sense of ἐλάμβανον 7. 142. 19. For dat. of observer, see S. 1497; HA. 771 b. — 11. κατὰ τὸ ὀρθόν: = ὀρθῶς. —

14. ἔγνωσαν: *judged*. — 15. μᾶλλον: pleonastic after αἰρετώτερα. Cp. 7. 50. 6. — 16. οὐκ ἔων: *vegetant*. — ἀρτεῖσθαι: Ion. for παρασκευάζεσθαι (11). — τὸ σύμπαν εἶπαι: *to speak it in a word, in short*. S. 2012 a; HA. 956. — 17. ἀλλὰ ἐκλιπόντας κτί.: *sc. ἐκέλευον* from οὐκ ἔων. See on 7. 104. 22.

144. 1. Θεμιστοκλεῖ: dat. of interest, as belonging to the whole sent., rather than poss. gen. with γνῶμη. — 2. ἔμπροσθε ταύτης: *i.e.* in the Aeginetan war which began 491 B.C. — ἐς καιρὸν: *opportunately*. Cp. ἐς δέον, l. 11. — ἡρίστευσε: = ἐνίκησε. — Ἀθηναίοισι: construed with the gen. abs., though really

γενομένων χρημάτων μεγάλων ἐν τῷ κοινῷ, τὰ ἐκ τῶν  
 μετάλλων σφί προσήλθε τῶν ἀπὸ Λαυρείου, ἔμελλον  
 λάξεσθαι ὀρχηδὸν· ἕκαστος δέκα δραχμάς· τότε Θεμι- 5  
 στοκλῆς ἀνέγνωσε Ἀθηναίους τῆς διαιρέσιος ταύτης  
 παυσαμένους νέας τούτων τῶν χρημάτων ποιήσασθαι  
 διηκοσίας ἐς τὸν πόλεμον, τὸν πρὸς Αἰγινήτας λέγων.  
 οὗτος γὰρ ὁ πόλεμος συστάς ἔσωσε τότε τὴν Ἑλλάδα,  
 ἀναγκάσας θαλασσίους γενέσθαι Ἀθηναίους. αἱ δὲ ἐς 10  
 τὸ μὲν ἐποιήθησαν, οὐκ ἐχρήσθησαν, ἐς δέον δὲ οὕτω  
 τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐγένοντο. αὐταί τε δὴ αἱ νέες τοῖσι Ἀθη-  
 ναίοισι προποιοιθῆσαι ὑπῆρχον, ἐτέρας τε ἔδει προσ-  
 ναυπηγεῖσθαι. ἔδοξέ τέ σφί μετὰ τὸ χρηστήριον  
 βουλευομένοισι ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα τὸν βάρβαρον 15  
 δέκεσθαι τῇσι νηυσὶ πανδημεῖ τῷ θεῷ πειθομένους,  
 ἅμα Ἑλλήνων τοῖσι βουλομένοισι.

subj. of ἔμελλον. — 3. ἐν τῷ κοινῷ: *in the public treasury*. — 4. τῶν ἀπὸ Λαυρείου: for τῶν ἐν by attraction of prep. These silver mines, which extended from coast to coast just back of Sunium, belonged to the state, but were farmed out to private individuals for one twenty-fourth of the income, besides a special sum for any fresh mine. — 5. ὀρχηδόν: *viridium*, only here. — 6. ἀνέγνωσε: *ἔπεισε*. — 7. τούτων τῶν χρημάτων: gen. of price. — 8. διηκοσίας: as the Athenian citizens at that time, acc. to Hdt. (5. 97), numbered 30,000, the sum that would accrue in this way, about 50 talents, was

far too small to build 200 ships. Other authors give the number of new ships at 100 (Nep. *Themist.* 2; Polyæn. 1. 30). Athens had seventy ships before this decree (6. 89. 9, 6. 132. 3) and at Salamis the number was 200 (8. 61. 9). — 9. συστάς: *having arisen*. Cp. 8. 142. 20 ἔστ' ἂν ὁ πόλεμος ὅδε συνεστήκη. — 11. ἐχρήσθησαν: this pass. is rare. — 12. ἐγένοντο: = ἐποιήθησαν, this pass. being rare. — 13. ὑπῆρχον: *were ready*. — ἔδει: doubtless so decreed when preparations for war were made. Reserve ships seem actually to have been built, for the losses at Artemisium had been made good before Salamis,

145 Τὰ μὲν δὴ χρηστήρια ταῖτα τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι ἐγγόνει· συλλεγομένων δὲ ἐς τὸν τὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων τῶν περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα τὰ ἀμείνω φρονεόντων καὶ διδόντων σφίσι λόγον καὶ πίστιν, ἐνθαῦτα ἐδόκει βουλευομένοισι αὐτοῖσι πρῶτον μὲν χρημάτων πάντων καταλλάσσεσθαι 5 τὰς τε ἔχθρας καὶ τοὺς κατ' ἀλλήλους ἐόντας πολέμους· ἦσαν δὲ πρὸς τινὰς καὶ ἄλλους ἐγκεχρημένοι, ὁ δὲ ὢν μέγιστος Ἀθηναίοισι τε καὶ Αἰγινήτησι. μετὰ δὲ πύθανόμενοι Ξέρξην σὺν τῷ στρατῷ εἶναι ἐν Σάρδισι ἐβουλεύσαντο κατασκόπους πέμπειν ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην τῶν 10 βασιλέως πρηγμάτων, ἐς Ἄργος τε ἀγγέλους ὁμαιχμίην συνθησομένους πρὸς τὸν Πέρσην, καὶ ἐς Σικελίην ἄλλους πέμπειν παρὰ Γέλωνα τὸν Δεινομένεος, ἔς τε Κέρκυραν κελεύσοντας βοηθεῖν τῇ Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐς Κρήτην ἄλλους, φρονήσαντες εἴ κως ἐν τε γένοιτο τὸ 15 Ἑλληνικὸν καὶ εἰ συγκύψαντες τὸν τὸν πρήσσοιεν πάντες,

FEDERAL CONGRESS; ALL FEUDS RENOUNCED; SPIES SENT TO SARDIS; MAGNANIMITY OF XERXES (CC. 145-147).

145. 2. ἐς τὸν τὸν: *i.e.* at the Isthmus as a central point where all routes came together, by sea and land.—τῶν . . . φρονεόντων: *who had the better mind about Hellas*, opp. to *μηδίξειν*. Cp. 7. 172. 7.—3. διδόντων . . . πίστιν: *taking counsel with and giving pledges to one another*. σφίσι = ἀλλήλοις. S. 1231; HA. 686 b.—4. βουλευομένοισι: repeats and explains διδόντων σφίσι λόγον,

as 6. 138. 16.—5. πρῶτον πάντων: *primum omnium*.—καταλλάσσεσθαι τὰς ἔχθρας: cp. καταλυσάμενοι τὰς ἔχθρας 7. 146. 2.—6. κατ': *among or against*.—7. ἦσαν . . . ἐγκεχρημένοι: *they had been hard pressed in some other wars also*. The passage is obscure. Among emendations proposed are ἐγκεκρημένοι (*concocted, stirred up, i.e. wars*) and ἐγκεχειρημένοι (*taken in hand*).—11. ὁμαιχμίην: *spear-alliance*, old term for *συμμαχία*. Cp. 8. 140. a 22; Thuc. 1. 18. 25.—15. εἴ κως: *if haply*. S. 2354; HA. 507; GMT. 489.—16. συγκύψαντες: *bending forward to*

ὡς δεινῶν ἐπιόντων ὁμοίως πᾶσι Ἑλλήσι. τὰ δὲ  
 Γέλωνος πρήγματα μεγάλα ἐλέγετο εἶναι, οὐδαμῶν  
 146 Ἑλληνικῶν τῶν οὐ πολλὸν μέζω. ὡς δὲ ταῦτά σφι  
 ἔδοξε, καταλυσάμενοι τὰς ἔχθρας πρῶτα μὲν κατασκό-  
 πους πέμπουσι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην ἄνδρας τρεῖς. οἱ δὲ ἀπι-  
 κόμενοί τε ἐς Σάρδεις καὶ καταμαθόντες τὴν βασιλέως  
 στρατιήν, ὡς ἐπαῖστοι ἐγένοντο, βασανισθέντες ὑπὸ  
 τῶν στρατηγῶν τοῦ πεζοῦ στρατοῦ ἀπήγοντο ὡς ἀπο-  
 λεόμενοι. καὶ τοῖσι μὲν κατεκέκριτο θάνατος, Ξέρξης  
 δὲ ὡς ἐπύθετο ταῦτα, μεμφθεὶς τῶν στρατηγῶν τὴν  
 γνώμην πέμπει τῶν τινὰς δορυφόρων, ἐντειλάμενος, ἥν  
 καταλάβωσι τοὺς κατασκόπους ζῶντας, ἄγειν παρ' ἑω-  
 10 τόν. ὡς δὲ ἔτι περιέοντας αὐτοὺς κατέλαβον καὶ ἦγον  
 ἐς ὅψιν τὴν βασιλέως, τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν πυθόμενος ἐπ' οἷσι  
 ἦλθον, ἐκέλευσέ σφεας τοὺς δορυφόρους περιάγοντας  
 ἐπιδείκνυσθαι πάντα τε τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν καὶ τὴν  
 ἵππον, ἐπεὰν δὲ ταῦτα θεόμενοι ἔωσι πλήρεις, ἀποπέμ-  
 15

*gether, i.e. in concert.* — 18. οὐδα-  
 μῶν . . . μέζω: *far greater than*  
*all other Hellenic powers*, οὐδα-  
 μῶν τῶν οὐ (from οὐδαμὰ ἃ οὐ), for  
 οὐδαμῶν ὅτεων οὐ (= πάντων) a  
 case of inverse attraction, οὐδαμὰ  
 being assimilated to case of rel.  
 S. 2534 a; HA. 1003 a. The  
 double neg. equiv. to affirmative.

146. 2. πρῶτα μὲν: *correl. is*  
*δεύτερα* 7. 148. 4. — 4. καταμαθόν-  
 tes: *having carefully observed.* —  
 5. ἐπαῖστοι ἐγένοντο: *as* 8. 128.  
 9. — 7. τοῖσι μὲν κατεκέκριτο θά-  
 νατος: *dat. in Hdt. more freq.*

*than gen. with comps. of κατά.* —  
 8. μεμφθεὶς: *more freq. in Hdt.*  
*than I aor. mid., which is the usual*  
*Att. form.* — 9. τῶν τινὰς δορυφό-  
 ρων: *for position of τινὰς, cp. 7.*  
 143. 2. — 10. ζῶντας, περιέοντας:  
*note variety.* — 12. τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν: (lit.  
 'the next thing') *then.* — ἐπ' οἷσι:  
*for what purpose?* S. 1689, 2 c;  
 HA. 799, 2 c. — 14. ἐπιδείκνυσθαι  
 κτί.: *so Scipio did with the spies*  
*of Hannibal (Liv. 30. 29; Polyb.*  
 15. 5). — 15. θεόμενοι ἔωσι πλή-  
 ρεις: *ptc. with εἶναι πλήρεις as with*  
*ἐμπιπλάναι θεόμενοι, Dial. § 4. 10.*

147 πειν ἐς τὴν ἂν αὐτοὶ ἐθέλωσι χώραν ἄσινέας. ἐπιλέγων δὲ τὸν λόγον τόνδε ταῦτα ἐνετέλλετο, ὥς εἰ μὲν ἀπώλονται οἱ κατάσκοποι, οὐτ' ἂν τὰ ἐωντοῦ πρήγματα προεπύθοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐόντα λόγου μέζω, οὐτ' ἂν τι τοὺς πολεμίους μέγα ἐσίναντο ἄνδρας τρεῖς ἀπολέσαν-<sup>5</sup>τες· νοστησάντων δὲ τούτων ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα δοκεῖν ἔφη ἀκούσαντας τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὰ ἐωντοῦ πρήγματα πρὸ τοῦ στόλου τοῦ γινομένου παραδώσειν σφέας τὴν ἰδίην ἐλευθερίην, καὶ οὕτω οὐδὲ δεήσειν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς στρατηλατέοντας πρήγματα ἔχειν. οἴκε δὲ αὐτοῦ αὕτη<sup>10</sup> ἡ γνώμη τῇδε ἄλλη· ἐὼν γὰρ ἐν Ἀβύδῳ ὁ Ξέρξης εἶδε πλοῖα ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου σιταγωγὰ διεκπλέοντα τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ἔς τε Αἶγινα καὶ Πελοπόννησον κομιζόμενα. οἱ μὲν δὴ πάρεδροι αὐτοῦ ὥς ἐπύθοντο πολέμια εἶναι τὰ πλοῖα, ἔτοιμοι ἦσαν αἰρεῖν αὐτά, ἐσβλέποντες ἐς τὸν<sup>15</sup> βασιλέα ὁκότε παραγγελεῖ. ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης ἔρreto αὐτοὺς ὁκη πλέοιεν· οἱ δὲ εἶπαν· Ἐς τοὺς σους πολεμίους, ᾧ δέσποτα, σῖτον ἄγοντες. ὁ δὲ ὑπολαβὼν ἔφη· Οὐκ ὦν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πλέομεν ἔνθα περ καὶ οὗτοι, τοῖσί τε ἄλλοισι ἐξηρτυμένοι καὶ σίτῳ; τί δῆτα ἀδικέουσι οὗτοι<sup>20</sup> ἡμῖν σιτία παρακομίζοντες;

147. 1. ἐπιλέγων: *saying besides, adding*. — 4. λόγου μέζω: = μέζω ἢ ὥστε λέγειν, *too great to be told*. — 8. τοῦ γινομένου: *that was in progress*. — σφέας: reiterating τοὺς Ἕλληνας and emphasizing τὴν ἰ. ἐ. — 10. — οἴκε: *Dial. § 4*. 1. — 12. ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου: the north-west coast of the Euxine, was noted anciently, as nowadays, for the

production and export of grain (4. 17). This was Athens' chief source of supply. — 15. ἐσβλέποντες . . . ὁκότε παραγγελεῖ: *cp. Hom. v 385 πατέρα προσεδέρκετο δέγμενος ὅππότε χεῖρας ἐφήσει*. — 16. εἶrreto αὐτούς: *asked about them, i.e. the sailors*. *Cp. 7. 100 11, and see on 7. 116. 5.* — 19. ἐκεῖ: = ἐκεῖσε. — 21. ἡμῖν σιτία παρα-

148 Οἱ μὲν νυν κατάσκοποι οὕτω θεσάμενοί τε καὶ ἀποπεμφθέντες ἐνόστησαν ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, οἱ δὲ συνωμόται Ἑλλήνων ἐπὶ τῷ Πέρσῃ μετὰ τὴν ἀπόπεμψιν τῶν κατασκόπων δεύτερα ἔπεμπον ἐς Ἄργος ἀγγέλους. Ἄργεῖοι δὲ λέγουσι τὰ κατ' ἑωυτοὺς γενέσθαι ὧδε· πν-<sup>5</sup> θέσθαι γὰρ αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχὰς τὰ ἐκ τοῦ βαρβάρου ἐγειρόμενα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, πυθόμενοι δὲ καὶ μαθόντες ὥς σφεας οἱ Ἕλληνες πειρήσονται παραλαμβάνοντες ἐπὶ τὸν Πέρσῃ, πέμψαι θεοπρόπους ἐς Δελφοὺς τὸν θεὸν ἐπειρησομένους, ὥς σφι μέλλει ἄριστον ποιέουσι<sup>10</sup> γίνεσθαι· νεωστὶ γὰρ σφέων τεθνάναι ἑξακισχιλίους ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ Κλεομένεος τοῦ Ἀναξανδρίδew, τῶν δὴ εἵνεκα πέμπειν. τὴν δὲ Πυθίην ἐπειρωτῶσι αὐτοῖσι ἀνελεῖν τάδε·

κομίζοντες: *bringing along provisions for us*; assuming that of course Greece would be conquered.

NEGOTIATIONS WITH ARGOS; ARGIVE ALLIANCE WITH PERSIA (CC. 148-152)

148. 2. συνωμόται . . . ἐπὶ τῷ Πέρσῃ: const. with noun same as with the verb in 7. 235. 19 συνομοσάντων ἐπὶ σοί. — 3. μετὰ τὴν ἀπόπεμψιν δεύτερα: answering to πρῶτα μὲν 7. 146. 2. — 5 τὰ κατ' ἑωυτοὺς: *matters with themselves*. — 6. γάρ: expegetic, introducing the statement promised in ὧδε. — αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχὰς: cp. 7. 88. 9. — 7. ἐγειρόμενα: figurative, as 7. 220. 12 περὶ τοῦ πολέμου τούτου αὐτίκα

κατ' ἀρχὰς ἐγειρομένου. — 8. πειρήσονται παραλαμβάνοντες: suppl. ptc. See on 7. 139. 7. — 10. ὥς ποιέουσι: *how acting*. As here ὥς for ὅκως, so in Hdt. freq. ὅς for ὅστις in such dependent clauses. — 11. νεωστὶ: *i.e.* in the battle at Tiryns about 494. See 6. 75-82. — 12. ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ Κλεομένεος: the whole thus joined to the part esp. when this is the leader, as 6. 140. 12, 7. 107. 7. The reverse order in 6. 108. 8. Cp. Hom. T 63 Ἑκτορι μὲν καὶ Τρωσὶ τὸ κέρδιον. — 13. τῶν δὴ εἵνεκα πέμπειν: *and just on this account did they send, i.e.* they had had recourse to the oracle, since after the recent heavy defeat it seemed dangerous to go into a new

Ἐχθρὲ περικτιόνεσσι, φίλ' ἀθανάτοισι θεοῖσι, 15  
 Εἵσω τὸν προβόλαιον ἔχων πεφυλαγμένος ἦσο  
 Καὶ κεφαλὴν πεφύλαξο · κάρη δὲ τὸ σῶμα σαώσσει.

ταῦτα μὲν τὴν Πυθίην χρῆσαι πρότερον, μετὰ δὲ ὡς  
 ἔλθειν τοὺς ἀγγέλους ἐς δὴ τὸ Ἄργος, ἐπελθεῖν ἐπὶ τὸ  
 βουλευτήριον καὶ λέγειν τὰ ἐντεταλμένα. τοὺς δὲ πρὸς 20  
 τὰ λεγόμενα ὑποκρίνασθαι ὡς ἔτοιμοί εἰσι Ἀργεῖοι  
 ποιεῖν ταῦτα τριήκοντά ἔτεα εἰρήνην σπεισάμενοι Λακε-  
 δαιμονίοισι καὶ ἡγεόμενοι κατὰ τὸ ἥμισυ πάσης τῆς  
 συμμαχίης · καίτοι κατὰ γε τὸ δίκαιον γίνεσθαι τὴν  
 ἡγεμονίην ἐωυτῶν, ἀλλ' ὅμως σφι ἀποχρᾶν κατὰ τὸ 25  
 149 ἥμισυ ἡγεομένοισι. ταῦτα μὲν λέγουσι τὴν βουλὴν  
 ὑποκρίνασθαι, καίπερ ἀπαγορεύοντός σφι τοῦ χρηστη-

war. — 15. περικτιόνεσσι: Epic form = περιόικοις. — 16. εἵσω . . . ἦσο: *keeping the spear within* (i.e. holding it back), *sit on guard*. The idea was that they should not take part in the war. For τὸν προβόλαιον, cp. 7. 76. 2. — 17. καὶ . . . σαώσσει: *guard the head, for the head will save the body*. κεφαλὴ, as also κάρη, referring to the ruling class of citizens, σῶμα to the masses; or perhaps, as some interpret it, κεφαλὴ and κάρη may refer to the acropolis. — 18. ὡς ἔλθειν: the inf. in the dependent clause by attraction. S. 2631; HA. 947; GMT. 755. — 19. ἐς δὴ τὸ Ἄργος: *to the aforesaid Argos*. — ἐπελθεῖν: the regular word for appearing before an assembly. Cp.

5. 97. 5. — 20. τοὺς δέ: i.e. τοὺς βουλευτάς for τὸ βουλευτήριον. — 22. τριήκοντα ἔτεα: *for thirty years*. Cp Thuc. 5. 47. 1 σπονδὰς ἐποίησαντο ἑκατὸν Ἀθηναῖοι ἔτη. — σπεισάμενοι, ἡγεόμενοι: conditional. — 23. κατὰ τὸ ἥμισυ: *by half*. — πάσης τῆς συμμαχίης: i.e. of the Pelop. states, dependent on ἡγεόμενοι. — 24. κατὰ γε τὸ δίκαιον . . . ἐωυτῶν: the Argive claim of the hegemony was based on the fact that in the Trojan war the supreme command was held by Agamemnon, king of Argos (Mycenae), and that Temenos, the eldest of the three Heraclidae, chose Argos as his portion of the Peloponnese. — 26. ἡγεομένοισι: ptc. for the usual inf. with ἀποχρᾶν.



ρίου μὴ ποιέισθαι τὴν πρὸς τοὺς Ἑλληνας συμμαχίην. σπουδὴν δὲ ἔχειν σπονδὰς γενέσθαι τριηκοντοετίδας, καίπερ τὸ χρηστήριον φοβεομένοισι, ἵνα δὴ σφι οἱ 5 παῖδες ἀνδρωθῶσι ἐν τούτοισι τοῖσι ἔτεσι. μὴ δὲ σπονδέων ἐουσέων ἐπιλέγεσθαι, ἣν ἄρα σφέας καταλάβῃ πρὸς τῷ γεγονότι κακῷ ἄλλο πταῖσμα πρὸς τὸν Πέρσῃν, μὴ τὸ λοιπὸν ἔωσι Λακεδαιμονίων ὑπήκοοι. τῶν δὲ ἀγγέλων τοὺς ἀπὸ τῆς Σπάρτης πρὸς τὰ ῥηθέντα 10 ἐκ τῆς βουλῆς ἀμεύσασθαι τοισίδε, περὶ μὲν σπονδέων ἀνοίσειν ἐς τοὺς πλέονας, περὶ δὲ ἡγεμονίης αὐτοῖσι ἐντετάλθαι ὑποκρίνασθαι, καὶ δὴ λέγειν σφίσι μὲν εἶναι δύο βασιλέας, Ἀργείοισι δὲ ἓνα· οὐκ ὦν δυνατόν εἶναι τῶν ἐκ Σπάρτης οὐδέτερον παῦσαι τῆς ἡγεμονίης, μετὰ 15 δὲ δύο τῶν σφετέρων ὁμόψηφον τὸν Ἀργεῖον εἶναι κωλύειν οὐδέν. οὕτω δὴ οἱ Ἀργεῖοί φασι οὐκ ἀνασχέσθαι

149. 3. μὴ ποιέισθαι: redundant neg. after verb of negative meaning. S. 2740; HA. 1029. — 4. σπουδὴν ἔχειν: = σπουδὴν ποιέισθαι, *were eager*, elsewhere *were in haste*. — 5. φοβεομένοισι: dat. because σφίσι is implied with γενέσθαι. — ἵνα δὴ: *in order forsooth*. — 6. μὴ δέ: conditional. μὴ δέ, as οὐ δέ usually separated by the word negated; as here, 5. 35. 22. — 7. ἐπιλέγεσθαι . . . μὴ: *were apprehensive lest*. Cp. 3. 65. 14. — ἣν ἄρα: *if perchance*. — 8. πταῖσμα πρὸς τὸν Πέρσῃν: *a disaster against the Persian*. The const. after the analogy of πταίνει πρὸς. Cp. 6. 45. 9 *προσπταίσας πρὸς τοὺς*

Βρύγους. — 11. ἐκ τῆς βουλῆς: for prep., see on 7. 11. 15. — 12. ἀνοίσειν ἐς τοὺς πλέονας: *would refer it to the assembly*, by which matters of peace and war were decided. οἱ πλέονες (Att. τὸ πλῆθος) = *ἄλῃα*. — 13. καὶ δὴ λέγειν: *and in fact did say*, impf. inf. — 15. οὐδέτερον: for ἕτερον on account of preceding neg. Cp. 7. 11. 16. — μετὰ δὲ . . . ὁμόψηφον: *have an equal vote with* (each of) *their two*. In the field each general had an equal vote, so that the Argive would be one against two. But the Spartan envoys purposely ignore the law already in force forbidding both kings to take part in an expedition

τῶν Σπαρτιητέων τὴν πλεονεξίην, ἀλλ' ἐλέσθαι μᾶλλον  
 ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἄρχεσθαι ἢ τι ὑπεῖξαι Λακεδαιμο-  
 νίοισι, προειπεῖν τε τοῖσι ἀγγέλοισι πρὸ δύντος ἡλίου 20  
 ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι ἐκ τῆς Ἀργείων χώρας, εἰ δὲ μὴ,  
 150 περιέψεσθαι ὡς πολεμίους. αὐτοὶ μὲν Ἀργεῖοι το-  
 σαῦτα τούτων πέρι λέγουσι· ἔστι δὲ ἄλλος λόγος λεγό-  
 μενος ἀνὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὡς Ξέρξης ἔπεμψε κήρυκα ἐς  
 Ἄργος πρότερον ἢ περ ὀρμῆσαι στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα. ἐλθόντα δὲ τοῦτον λέγεται εἰπεῖν· Ἄνδρες 5  
 Ἀργεῖοι, βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης τάδε ὑμῖν λέγει· Ἡμεῖς  
 νομίζομεν Πέρσῃν εἶναι ἀπ' οὗ ἡμεῖς γεγόναμεν, παῖδα  
 Περσέος τοῦ Δαναΐης, γεγονότα ἐκ τῆς Κηφέας θυγατρὸς  
 Ἀνδρομέδης. οὕτω ἂν ὦν εἶημεν ὑμέτεροι ἀπόγονοι.  
 οὔτε ὦν ἡμέας οἶκός ἐπὶ τοὺς ἡμετέρους προγόνους 10  
 στρατεύεσθαι, οὔτε ὑμέας ἄλλοισι τιμωρέοντας ἡμῖν  
 ἀντιξόους γίνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ παρ' ὑμῖν αὐτοῖσι ἡσυχίην  
 ἔχοντας κατῆσθαι. ἦν γὰρ ἐμοὶ γένηται κατὰ νόον,  
 οὐδαμὸς μέζονας ὑμέων ἄξω. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντας Ἀρ-  
 γεῖους λέγεται πρῆγμα ποιήσασθαι, καὶ παραχρῆμα 15  
 μὲν οὐδὲν ἐπαγγελλομένους μεταίτεῖν, ἐπεὶ δὲ σφεας

(5. 75). — 20. πρὸ δύντος ἡλίου:  
 for const., see GMT. 829 b. —  
 22. περιέψεσθαι: fut. mid. with  
 pass. force, as 2. 115. 27. Cp. 7.  
 39. 15.

150. 2. ἔστι . . . λεγόμενος:  
*there is another story told*, as 7.  
 167. 1 and freq. — 4. πρότερον ἢ:  
 see on 7. 2. 5. — 5. τοῦτον λέγεται  
 εἰπεῖν: see on 7. 56. 4. — 7. νομί-  
 ζομεν Πέρσῃν κτί.: see on 7. 61.

11. Cp. 6. 53, 54. — 14. ἄξω:  
*habebo*. Cp. 1. 107. 12, 2. 172. 4,  
 and Soph. *O.T.* 775 ἡγόμην δ'  
 ἀνὴρ ἀστῶν μέγιστος. — 15. πρῆγμα  
 ποιήσασθαι: *made it a matter of*  
*importance*. Cp. 6. 63. 9. —  
 16. οὐδὲν ἐπαγγελλομένους μεταί-  
 τεῖν: *offered nothing and de-*  
*manded nothing in return*. The  
 neg. belongs to the ptc. as well  
 as the verb. Cp. 5. 39. 2. — ἐπεὶ

παραλαμβάνειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, οὕτω δὲ ἐπισταμένους  
 ὅτι οὐ μεταδώσουσι τῆς ἀρχῆς Λακεδαιμόνιοι μεταίτειν,  
 151 ἵνα ἐπὶ προφάσιος ἡσυχίην ἄγωσι. συμπεσεῖν δὲ τού-  
 τοις καὶ τόνδε τὸν λόγον λέγουσί τινες Ἑλλήνων,  
 πολλοῖσι ἔτεσι ὕστερον γενόμενον τούτων· τυχεῖν ἐν  
 Σούσοις τοῖσι Μεμνονίοις ἔοντας ἑτέρου πρήγματος  
 εἵνεκα ἀγγέλους Ἀθηναίων, Καλλίην τε τὸν Ἴππονίκου<sup>5</sup>  
 καὶ τοὺς μετὰ τούτου ἀναβάνας, Ἀργείους δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν  
 τοῦτον χρόνον πέμψαντας καὶ τούτους ἐς Σοῦσα ἀγγέ-  
 λους εἰρωτᾶν Ἀρτοξέρξην τὸν Ξέρξω εἰ σφί ἐτι  
 ἐμμένει τὴν πρὸς Ξέρξην φιλίην συνεκεράσαντο, ἣ  
 νομιζοῖατο πρὸς αὐτοῦ εἶναι πολέμιοι. βασιλέα δὲ<sup>10</sup>  
 Ἀρτοξέρξην μάλιστα ἐμμένειν φάναι καὶ οὐδεμίαν νο-  
 152 μίζειν πόλιν Ἀργεος φιλιωτέρην. εἰ μὲν νυν Ξέρξης

δέ σφας παραλαμβάνειν: *but when they tried to win them over*. For inf., see on 7. 148. 18. — 18. τῆς ἀρχῆς: common to μεταδώσουσι and μεταίτειν. — 19. ἐπὶ προφάσιος: elsewhere ἐπὶ προφάσει

151. 1. συμπεσεῖν: *coincided*, as 6. 18. 6. — 2. λόγον: *event*. Cp. German (colloquial) *Geschichte*. — 3. ἐν Σούσοις τοῖσι Μεμνονίοις: so-called as founded by Memnon, son of Eos, and king of the eastern Ethiopians, who aided the Trojans against the Greeks. — 4. ἑτέρου πρήγματος εἵνεκα: Hdt. does not state, and possibly did not know, what this was. — 5. Καλλίην: of a noble family, the richest Athenian of his time, and brother-in-

law of Cimon. Cp. 6. 121. 4. — 6. τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον χρόνον: S. 1181; HA. 673 c. This position of the dem. is freq. in Hdt. when αὐτός is the attrib. — 7. καὶ τούτους: *these also*. Cp. 6. 51. 3 ἐὼν βασιλεὺς καὶ οὗτος. — 8. Ἀρτοξέρξην: reigned 465–425 B.C. — 9. ἐμμένει: *sc. ἡ φιλία*, which is incorporated into the rel. clause. — τὴν . . . συνεκεράσαντο: *the close friendship which they had made with X*. Cp. 4. 152. 21 Ὁθραίοις ἐς Σαμίους ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ ἔργου πρῶτα φιλίας μεγάλας συνεκρήθησαν. — 10. νομιζοῖατο: note change of mood from ἐμμένει. GMT. 670 a. Cp. 7. 208. 3, 7. 233. 8, 10. — πρὸς αὐτοῦ: see on 7. 2. 12.

τε ἀπέπεμψε ταῦτα λέγοντα κήρυκα ἐς Ἄργος καὶ Ἀργείων ἄγγελοι ἀναβάντες ἐς Σούσα ἐπειρώτων Ἀρτοξέρξην περὶ φιλήης, οὐκ ἔχω ἀτρεκέως εἰπεῖν, οὐδέ τινα γνώμην περὶ αὐτῶν ἀποφαίνομαι ἄλλην γε ἢ τὴν περὶ αὐτοὶ Ἀργεῖοι λέγουσι. ἐπίσταμαι δὲ τοσούτο ὅτι εἰ πάντες ἄνθρωποι τὰ οἰκῆια κακὰ ἐς μέσον συνενεΐκαιεν ἀλλάξασθαι βουλόμενοι τοῖσι πλησίοισι, ἐγκύψαντες ἂν ἐς τὰ τῶν πέλας κακὰ ἀσπασίως ἕκαστοι αὐτῶν ἀποφεροῖατο ὀπίσω τὰ ἐσηνείκαντο. οὕτω οὐδ' Ἀργεῖοις αἰσχίστα πεποίηται. ἐγὼ δὲ ὀφείλω λέγειν τὰ λεγόμενα, πείθεσθαι γε μὲν οὐ παντάπασιν ὀφείλω, καί μοι τοῦτο τὸ ἔπος ἐχέτω ἐς πάντα λόγον· ἐπεὶ καὶ ταῦτα λέγεται, ὥς ἄρα Ἀργεῖοι ἦσαν οἱ ἐπικαλεσάμενοι τὸν Πέρσην ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἐπειδὴ σφί πρὸς Λακεδαι-

152. 7. τὰ οἰκῆια κακὰ: *their own misdeeds, i.e. guilt.* — 8. τοῖσι πλησίοισι: = τοῖς πέλας (9). — ἐγκύψαντες: *examining closely, lit. 'bending down and peeping into.'* — 9. ἀσπασίως . . . ἐσηνείκαντο: *they would gladly carry back what they had brought, i.e. would think the others' guilt greater than their own. And so it would be with the guilt of the Argives. Moral: Don't judge others, for we are all apt to think our neighbor's faults worse than our own; we see the mote in his eye, not the beam in our own.* — 10. οὕτω . . . πεποίηται: *not so shameful, e.g. as those done by the Thebans or Thessalians.* — 12. πείθεσθαι γε μὲν . . .

ὀφείλω: *to believe, however, I am not altogether bound.* For γε μὲν cp. 7. 103. 27. Hdt. expresses himself in this chapter with mildness as to the conduct of the Argives, trying to hide his opinion of their guilt. But at 8. 73. 16 he speaks bluntly of the Argives and others his real view, ἐκ τοῦ μέσου κατήμενοι ἐμῇδιζον *in being neutral they were medizing.* — καί μοι . . . λόγον: *and let this word hold for every story in my work.* τοῦτο τὸ ἔπος, *i.e. the remark in l. 12, recurs essentially elsewhere 2. 123. 2, 4. 195. 7.* — 13. ταῦτα: *prospective, for τὰδε.* — 14. ὥς ἄρα: *that namely.* — 15. ἐπειδὴ σφί . . . ἐστήκει: *since the war had gone ill*

μονίους κακῶς ἡ αἰχμὴ ἐστήκει, πᾶν δὲ βουλόμενοί σφι εἶναι πρὸ τῆς παρεούσης λύπης.

- 153 Τὰ μὲν περὶ Ἀργείων εἴρηται· ἐς δὲ τὴν Σικελίην ἄλλοι τε ἀπίκατο ἄγγελοι ἀπὸ τῶν συμμάχων συμμίζοντες Γελωνι καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων Σύαγρος. τοῦ δὲ Γέλωνος τούτου πρόγονος, οἰκῆτῳ ὁ ἐν Γέλῃ, ἦν ἐκ νήσου Τήλου τῆς ἐπὶ Τριοπίῳ κειμένης· ὃς κτιζομένης Γέλῃς ὑπὸ Δινδίων τε τῶν ἐκ Ρόδου καὶ Ἀντιφύμου οὐκ ἐλείφθη. ἀνὰ χρόνον δὲ αὐτοῦ οἱ ἀπόγονοι γενόμενοι ἱροφάνται τῶν χθονίων θεῶν διετελέον ἔοντες, Τηλίνεω ἑνὸς τεο τῶν προγόνων κτησαμένου τρόπῳ τοιῶδε· ἐς Μακτώριον πόλιν τὴν ὑπὲρ Γέλῃς οἰκημένην<sup>10</sup> ἔφυγον ἄνδρες Γελῶν στάσι ἐσσωθέντες. τούτους ὦν ὁ Τηλίνης κατήγαγε ἐς Γέλῃν, ἔχων οὐδεμίαν ἀνδρῶν δύναμιν ἀλλὰ ἱρὰ τούτων τῶν θεῶν. ὅθεν δὲ αὐτὰ

*for them against the Lacedaemonians.*—16. αἰχμὴ: poetical, = πόλεμος or μάχη, as 5. 94. 5. With ἡ αἰχμὴ ἐστήκει, cp. the Homeric φύλοπις αἰνὴ ἔστηκε (Σ 171). See on 7. 9. β 2.—πᾶν δὴ: *anything whatever.*—17. πρὸ: *before, in preference to.* Cp. 6. 12. 17.—λύπης: *sad plight, i.e.* their humiliating condition due to the defeat by the Spartans (7. 148. 12).

GELON OF SYRACUSE; ANCESTRY AND RISE OF GELON (CC. 153–156)

153. 2. συμμίζοντες: *for a conference with.* Cp. 7. 29. 3.—3. καὶ δὴ καὶ: correl. to τε, as 7. 23. 14.

See on 7. 47. 13.—4. οἰκῆτῳ: *settler.*—5. Τριοπίῳ: promontory south of Halicarnassus, on which Cnidus was situated, and where the league of Dorian cities held their national festivals.—κτιζομένης Γέλῃς: 690 B.C.—7. ἀνὰ χρόνον: *in time,* as 7. 10. ζ 4.—8. ἱροφάνται: who performed the secret rites and mysteries and displayed the sacred vessels and statues to the initiated (ἱρὰ φαίνειν).—τῶν χθονίων θεῶν: Demeter and Persephone.—9. τῶν προγόνων: *i.e.* of Gelon.—κτησαμένου: *sc.* τὴν ἱροφαντίην.—12. κατήγαγε: *re-duxerat*, regular word for *bring back from exile.*—13. ὅθεν δὲ αὐτὰ

ἔλαβε ἢ αὐτὸς ἐκτήσατο, τοῦτο δὲ οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν. τοῦ-  
 τοισι δ' ὦν πίσυνος ἐὼν κατήγαγε, ἐπ' ᾧ τε οἱ ἀπό-<sup>15</sup>  
 γονοὶ αὐτοῦ ἱροφάνται τῶν θεῶν ἔσονται. θῶμά μοι  
 ὦν καὶ τοῦτο γέγονε πρὸς τὰ πυνθάνομαι, κατεργάσα-  
 σθαι Τηλίνην ἔργον τοσοῦτο· τὰ τοιαῦτα γὰρ ἔργα οὐ  
 πρὸς [τοῦ] ἅπαντος ἀνδρὸς νενόμικα γίνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ  
 πρὸς ψυχῆς τε ἀγαθῆς καὶ ῥώμης ἀνδρηΐης· ὁ δὲ <sup>20</sup>  
 λέγεται πρὸς τῆς Σικελίης τῶν οἰκητόρων τὰ ὑπεναντία  
 τούτων πεφυκέναι θηλυδρίης τε καὶ μαλακώτερος ἀνήρ.  
<sup>154</sup> οὕτω μὲν νυν ἐκτήσατο τοῦτο τὸ γέρας· Κλεάνδρου δὲ  
 τοῦ Παντάρεος τελευτήσαντος τὸν βίον, ὃς ἐτυράννευσε  
 μὲν Γέλως ἐπὶ ἔτεα, ἀπέθανε δὲ ὑπὸ Σαβύλλου ἀνδρὸς  
 Γελώου, ἐνθαῦτα ἀναλαμβάνει τὴν μουναρχίην Ἴππο-  
 κράτης, Κλεάνδρου ἐὼν ἀδελφεός. ἔχοντος δὲ Ἴππο-<sup>5</sup>  
 κράτεος τὴν τυραννίδα ὁ Γέλων, ἐὼν Τηλίνεω τοῦ  
 ἱροφάντεω ἀπόγονος, πολλῶν μετ' ἄλλων καὶ Αἰνι-  
 σιδήμου τοῦ Παταΐκου [ὃς] ἦν δορυφόρος Ἴπποκρά-

ἔλαβε ἢ αὐτὸς ἐκτήσατο: *whence*  
*he received them* (from others)  
 or (whether) *he himself acquired*  
*them, i.e. by direct inspiration.*  
 After ἢ sc. εἰ from ὅθεν. — 15. δ' ὦν:  
 see on 7. 9. γ 7. — ἐπ' ᾧ τε . . .  
 ἔσονται: fut. indic. for more com-  
 mon inf.; see S. 2279; GMT. 610,  
 2. Cp. 7. 158. 23. — 17. καὶ τοῦτο:  
 explained by κατεργάσασθαι κτέ. —  
 19. οὐ πρὸς [τοῦ] ἅπαντος ἀνδρὸς  
 . . . γίνεσθαι: *not apt to proceed*  
*from just any man.* πρὸς might  
 be = ὑπό and γίνεσθαι = ποιῆσθαι,  
 but ἀλλὰ . . . ἀνδρηΐης is against

this. For the text, see App. —

21. πρὸς . . . τῶν οἰκητόρων: the  
 adnominal, as usual, before the  
 governing gen. — 22. μαλακώτε-  
 ρος: *rather weak.* S. 1082 d;  
 HA. 649 b.

154. 1. τοῦτο τὸ γέρας: *i.e. τὴν*  
*ἱροφαντίην.* — 3. ἐπὶ ἔτεα: 505–  
 498 B.C. — 7. πολλῶν μετ' ἄλλων:  
 prep. between noun and its attri-  
 bute, as rarely in prose. Cp. 7.  
 15. 5. — 8. [ὃς]: if this reading  
 of the Mss. is correct, something  
 has fallen out before it. Stein's  
 suggestion <νιέ>ος would relieve

τεος. μετὰ δὲ οὐ πολλὸν χρόνον δι' ἀρετὴν ἀπεδέχθη  
 πάσης τῆς ἵππου εἶναι ἵππαρχος· πολιορκέοντος γὰρ 10  
 Ἴπποκράτεος Καλλιπολίτας τε καὶ Ναξίους καὶ Ζαγ-  
 κλαίους τε καὶ Λεοντίνους καὶ πρὸς Συρηκοσίους τε καὶ  
 τῶν βαρβάρων συχνοὺς ἀνὴρ ἐφαίνετο ἐν τούτοισι τοῖσι  
 πολέμοισι ἔων ὁ Γέλων λαμπρότατος. τῶν δὲ εἶπον  
 πολίων τούτων πλὴν Συρηκουσέων οὐδεμία ἀπέφυγε 15  
 δουλοσύνην πρὸς Ἴπποκράτεος. Συρηκοσίους δὲ Κο-  
 ρίνθιοί τε καὶ Κερκυραῖοι ἐρρύσαντο μάχῃ ἐσσωθέντας  
 ἐπὶ ποταμῷ Ἐλώρῳ· ἐρρύσαντο δὲ οὗτοι ἐπὶ τοισίδε  
 καταλλάξαντες, ἐπ' ᾧ τε Ἴπποκράτει Καμάριναν Συρη-  
 κοσίους παραδοῦναι· Συρηκοσίων δὲ ἦν Καμάρινα τὸ 20  
 35 ἀρχαῖον. ὥς δὲ καὶ Ἴπποκράτεια τυραννεύσαντα ἴσα  
 ἔτα τῷ ἀδελφεῷ Κλεάνδρῳ κατέλαβε ἀποθανεῖν πρὸς  
 πόλιν Ὑβλην, στρατευσάμενον ἐπὶ τοὺς Σικελούς, οὕτω  
 δὴ ὁ Γέλων τῷ λόγῳ τιμωρέων τοῖσι Ἴπποκράτεος  
 παισὶ Εὐκλείδῃ τε καὶ Κλεάνδρῳ, οὐ βουλομένων τῶν 5  
 πολιητέων κατηκόων ἔτι εἶναι, τῷ ἔργῳ, ὥς ἐπεκράτησε  
 μάχῃ τῶν Γελώνων, ἦρχε αὐτὸς ἀποστερήσας τοὺς Ἴππο-

- the difficulty, giving the same sense as is obtained by bracketing ὅς. See App. — 12. καὶ πρὸς: and furthermore. — 15. τούτων: epanaleptic dem. after the attracted rel. — ἀπέφυγε: the Mss. reading is πέφενγε, which can hardly be correct. Some read πεφεύγει. — 16. πρὸς Ἴπποκράτεος: agent const. on account of pass. idea in δουλοσύνην (= τὸ δουλωθῆναι). Cp. 6. 45. 5 οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ αὐτοὶ δουλοσύνην

διέφυγον πρὸς Περσέων. — 18. ἐπὶ τοισίδε . . ., ἐπ' ᾧ τε: the plur. (τοισίδε) though referring to a single condition, as 5. 82. 13. For const., see GMT. 610, 1. — 20. Καμάρινα: founded by a colony from Syracuse, 598 B.C.

155. 1. τυραννεύσαντα: 498–491 B.C. — 2. κατέλαβε: cp. 7. 38. 11. — 3. Ὑβλη: uncertain whether the Hybla just south of Aetna or that between Syracuse and Gela.

κράτεος παίδας. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὸ εὖρημα τοὺς γαμό-  
 ρους καλεομένους τῶν Συρηκοσίων ἐκπεσόντας ὑπὸ τε  
 τοῦ δήμου καὶ τῶν σφετέρων δούλων, καλεομένων δὲ <sup>10</sup>  
 Κυλλυρίων, ὁ Γέλων καταγαγὼν τοὺτους ἐκ Κασμένης  
 πόλιος ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας ἔσχε καὶ ταύτας· ὁ γὰρ  
 δῆμος ὁ τῶν Συρηκοσίων ἐπιόντι Γέλωνι παραδιδοῖ τὴν  
<sup>156</sup> πόλιν καὶ ἐωντόν. ὁ δὲ ἐπεῖτε παρέλαβε τὰς Συρηκού-  
 σας, Γέλῃς μὲν ἐπικρατέων λόγον ἐλάσσω ἐποιεῖτο,  
 ἐπιτρέψας αὐτὴν Ἰέρωνι ἀδελφεῷ ἐωντοῦ, ὁ δὲ τὰς  
 Συρηκούσας ἐκράτυνε, καὶ ἦσάν οἱ πάντα αἱ Συρήκου-  
 σαι. αἱ δὲ παραντικά ἀνά τ' ἔδραμον καὶ ἀνέβλαστον· <sup>5</sup>

—8. εὖρημα: cp. 7. 10. δ 9. —  
 τοὺς γαμόρους: Doric for γεωμό-  
 ρους, *land owners*, so-called also  
 in Samos. These were the resi-  
 dent ruling class, consisting of the  
 descendants of the first settlers  
 and immigrants who had received  
 the right to acquire land (ἐγκτη-  
 σις), *i.e.* full citizenship. To their  
 estates were attached rent-paying  
 peasants (δούλοι), prob. the re-  
 mains of the earliest Sicilian pop-  
 ulation, which already under the  
 Sicels had been reduced to such  
 vassalage. Their probably Sicel  
 name varies between Κυλλύριοι  
 (Κυλλύριοι), Κυλλικύριοι, Καλλικύ-  
 ριοι. In the city there was, be-  
 sides, a large number of metic  
 artisans and tradesmen, mostly na-  
 tive and earlier Phoenician settlers  
 —these forming the δῆμος (Stein).  
 —11. τοὺτους: repeats τοὺς γαμό-

ρους. —Κασμένης: founded from  
 Syracuse 645 B.C. Cp. Thuc. 6. 5.  
 7. —12. ἔσχε: acquired. Gelon  
 ruled from 485–478 B.C.

#### NEGOTIATIONS WITH GELON (CC. 156–162)

156. 2. ἐπικρατέων: suppl. ptc.  
 depending on λόγον ἐλάσσω ἐποι-  
 εῖτο. Cp. 9. 111. 18 μεγάλα μὲν  
 ποίεομαι ἀξιούμενος θυγατρὸς τῆς  
 σῆς. —3. ἐπιτρέψας: 484 B.C. —  
 ὁ δὲ: see on 7. 6. 24. —4. ἐκρά-  
 τυνε: cp. 1. 13. 2, 1. 100. 2.  
 The word occurs also in Thuc.,  
 but is mostly poetical. —ἦσάν οἱ  
 πάντα αἱ Συρήκουσαι: *Syracuse*  
*was everything to him*. Cp. 3. 157.  
 20 πάντα δὴ ἦν τοῖσι Βαβυλωνίοισι  
 Ζώπυρος. —5. ἀνά τ' ἔδραμον καὶ  
 ἀνέβλαστον: Cp. 1. 66. 4, 8. 55.  
 10. Both verbs are fig. used  
 and come prob. from some Epic



τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ Καμαριναίους ἅπαντας ἐς τὰς Συρη-  
 κούσας ἀγαγὼν πολιήτας ἐποίησε, Καμαρίνης δὲ τὸ  
 ἄστυ κατέσκαψε, τοῦτο δὲ Γελῶν ὑπερhmίσεας τῶν  
 ἀστῶν τῶντὸ τοῖσι Καμαριναίοισι ἐποίησε. Μεγαρέας  
 τε τοὺς ἐν Σικελίῃ, ὡς πολιορκεόμενοι ἐς ὁμολογίην<sup>10</sup>  
 προσεχώρησαν, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν παχέας, ἀειραμένους τε  
 πόλεμον αὐτῷ καὶ προσδοκῶντας ἀπολεῖσθαι διὰ τοῦτο,  
 ἀγαγὼν ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας πολιήτας ἐποίησε. τὸν δὲ  
 δῆμον τῶν Μεγαρέων, οὐκ ἔοντα μεταίτιον τοῦ πολέμου  
 τούτου οὐδὲ προσδεκόμενον κακὸν οὐδὲν πείσεσθαι,<sup>15</sup>  
 ἀγαγὼν καὶ τούτους ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας ἀπέδοτο ἐπ'  
 ἐξαγωγῇ ἐκ Σικελίης. τῶντὸ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ Εὐβοέας  
 τοὺς ἐν Σικελίῃ ἐποίησε διακρίνας. ἐποίει δὲ ταῦτα  
 τούτους ἀμφοτέρους νομίσας δῆμον εἶναι συνοίκημα  
 157 ἀχαριτώτατον. τοιοῦτῳ μὲν τρόπῳ τύραννος ἐγεγόνει  
 μέγας ὁ Γέλων· τότε δ' ὡς οἱ ἄγγελοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 ἀπίκατο ἐς τὰς Συρηκούσας, ἐλθόντες αὐτῷ ἐς λόγους

verse. — 6. τοῦτο μὲν: cp. 7. 6. 5.  
 — 7. Καμαρίνης τὸ ἄστυ: the gen.  
 so regularly with ἄστυ. Const.  
 chiefly poetical. S. 1322; HA.  
 729 g. The lower city, not the  
 citadel, is meant. — 8. τῶν ἀστῶν:  
*his own townsmen*. — 9. τῶντὸ  
 τοῖσι Καμαριναίοισι: for dat., see  
 S. 1500; HA. 773 a. — Μεγαρέας:  
 called also Ὑβλαίους. The town  
 was a little north of Syracuse. —  
 11. τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν παχέας: part.  
 appos. to Μεγαρέας. For position  
 of part. gen., which repeats Μεγα-  
 ρέας, see on 7. 129. 3. οἱ παχεῖς

*the fat*, i.e. *rich*, the aristocrats. —  
 12. αὐτῷ: with ἀειρ. πόλεμον =  
*πολεμήσαντας*. — 16. καὶ τούτους:  
 as 7. 151. 7. — ἐπ' ἐξαγωγῇ: *for*  
*deportation*. — 18. διακρίνας: sc.  
 τὸν δῆμον ἀπὸ τῶν παχέων. —  
 19. συνοίκημα ἀχαριτώτατον: *a*  
*most unpleasant fellowship* (ab-  
 stract for concrete), for the com-  
 mons were only metics without  
 fixed homes and rights.

157. 2. ὡς οἱ ἄγγελοι . . . ἀπί-  
 κατο: Timaeus (*apud Polyb.* 12.  
 26 b) states that it was Gelon who  
 sent envoys to the council on the

ἔλεγον τάδε · Ἐπεμψαν ἡμέας Λακεδαιμόνιοί τε καὶ  
 Ἀθηναῖοι καὶ οἱ τούτων σύμμαχοι παραλαμφομένους 5  
 σε πρὸς τὸν βάρβαρον · τὸν γὰρ ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα πάντως κου πυνθάνεαι, ὅτι Πέρσης ἀνὴρ μέλλει  
 ζεύξας τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ ἐπάγων πάντα τὸν ἥϊον  
 στρατὸν ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας στρατηλατήσειν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλ-  
 λάδα, πρόσχημα μὲν ποιεόμενος ὥς ἐπ' Ἀθήνας ἐλαύ- 10  
 νει, ἐν νόῳ δὲ ἔχων πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα ὑπ' ἑωυτῷ  
 ποιήσασθαι. σὺ δὲ δυνάμιός τε (γὰρ) ἦκεις μεγάλως  
 καὶ μοῖρά τοι τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐκ ἐλαχίστη μέτα ἄρχοντί  
 γε Σικελίης, βοήθει τε τοῖσι ἐλευθεροῦσι τὴν Ἑλλάδα  
 καὶ συνελυθέρου. ἀλλῆς μὲν γὰρ γενομένη πᾶσα ἡ 15  
 Ἑλλὰς χεῖρ μεγάλη συνάγεται, καὶ ἀξιομαχοὶ γινόμεθα  
 τοῖσι ἐπιούσι · ἦν δὲ ἡμέων οἱ μὲν καταπροδιδῶσι, οἱ  
 δὲ μὴ θέλωσι τιμωρεῖν, τὸ δὲ ὑγιαῖνον τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἧ  
 ὀλίγον, τοῦτο δὲ ἤδη δεινὸν γίνεται μὴ πέσῃ πᾶσα ἡ  
 Ἑλλάς. μὴ γὰρ ἐλπίσης, ἦν ἡμέας καταστρέφεται 20

Isthmus, offering, for the chief command, to assist with his whole force by land or sea. — 4. **τε καὶ Ἀθηναῖοι**: on the reading, see App. — 5. **παραλαμφομένους**: Attic παραλημφομένους. Sense as in 7. 148. 8, 7. 168. 2, 7. 169. 1. — 6. **τὸν ἐπιόντα**: proleptic. — 7. **πάντως κου**: *haud dubie*. Cp. 3. 73. 7 πάντως κου μέμνησθε. — 8. **πάντα τὸν ἥϊον στρατὸν**: cp. 7. 56. 8 πάντας ἀνθρώπους. — 10. **πρόσχημα**: cp. 7. 138. 1. — 11. **πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα**: including of course the colonies. — 12. **δυνάμιος γὰρ ἦκεις μεγάλως**:

*since thou hast attained to great power*. For the gen. of condition or degree, see S. 1441; HA. 757 a. — 13. **μέτα**: = *μέτεστι*. — 15. **ἀλλῆς γὰρ . . . Ἑλλάς**: the natural const. would be gen. abs., but the *union of Hellas* put forward as the main idea takes rather the relation of subj. with *χεῖρ μεγάλη συνάγεται* as pred. — 16. **χεῖρ**: see on 7. 20. 4. — 18. **τὸ ὑγιαῖνον τῆς Ἑλλάδος**: *the sound part of Hellas, i.e. the Greeks who will unite against the foe*. — 19. **τοῦτο δέ**: for *δέ* in apodosis, see on 7. 51. 3. — **δεινὸν**

ὁ Πέρσης μάχῃ κρατήσας, ὥς οὐκ ἤξει παρὰ σέ γε, ἀλλὰ πρὸ τούτου φύλαξαι· βοηθέων γὰρ ἡμῖν σεωυτῶ τιμωρεῖς· τῷ δὲ εὖ βουλευθέντι πρήγματι  
 158 τελευτῇ ὥς τὸ ἐπίπαν χρηστὴ ἐθέλει ἐπιγίνεσθαι. οἱ μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεγον, Γέλων δὲ πολλὸς ἐνέκειτο λέγων τοιάδε· Ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, λόγον ἔχοντες πλεονέκτην ἐτολμήσατε ἐμὲ σύμμαχον ἐπὶ τὸν βάρβαρον παρακαλέοντες ἔλθειν. αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐμέο πρότερον δεηθέντος 5 βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεπάψασθαι, ὅτε μοι πρὸς Καρχηδονίους νεῖκος συνῆπτο, ἐπισκῆπτοντός τε τὸν Δωριέος τοῦ Ἀναξανδρίδew πρὸς Ἐγεσταίων φόνον ἐκπρήξασθαι, ὑποτείνοντός τε τὰ ἐμπόρια συνελευθεροῦν

γίνεται: as 7. 10. β 11. For obj. clause depending thereon, see S. 2224; HA. 887.—21. ὥς οὐκ ἤξει: rare const. for inf. after ἐλπίζω.—22. πρὸ τούτου: = πρότερον.—βοηθέων . . . τιμωρεῖς: chiasitic.—24. ὥς τὸ ἐπίπαν: see on 7. 50. 12.

158. 2. πολλὸς ἐνέκειτο: sc. αὐτοῖς, *attacked them with vehemence*. Cp. Thuc. 4. 22. 4 Κλέων . . . πολὺς ἐνέκειτο, and Sall. Jug. 84 *multus atque ferox instare*.—3. πλεονέκτην: *selfish*.—6. βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεπάψασθαι: *that you join in attacking a barbarian army*.—7. νεῖκος: rather poetical term freq. in Hom. and Hdt.—7. ἐπισκῆπτοντός: sc. ὑμῖν *laying upon you*.—τὸν Δωριέος . . . φόνον ἐκπρήξασθαι: Dorieus, disappointed in his expectation of suc-

ceeding to the throne at Sparta through the incapacity of his elder brother Cleomenes, led an expedition first to Libya, afterwards to Sicily, where he was slain by the Egestaeans (5. 42-46).—8. ἐκπρήξασθαι: *avenge*. Cp. 7. 169. 7.—9. ὑποτείνοντός: = ὑπισχνουμένου, as Thuc. 8. 48. 4.—τὰ ἐμπόρια: the immediate reference is doubtless to the ports of western Sicily, but further also to the trade with the Iberian and Libyan coasts which was monopolized by the Carthaginians and Phoenicians. Gelon's plan was to unite all Hellenic states in the effort to win naval and commercial supremacy from the Phoenicians in the western Mediterranean, a plan later cherished by Alcibiades. This conflict fell later to, and was won by,

ἀπ' ὧν ὑμῖν μεγάλαι ὠφελίαι τε καὶ ἐπαυρέσεις γεγό-  
 νασι, οὔτε ἐμέο εἵνεκα ἔλθετε βοηθήσοντες οὔτε τὸν  
 Δωριέος φόνον ἐκπρηξόμενοι, τό τε κατ' ὑμέας τάδε  
 ἅπαντα ὑπὸ βαρβάροισι νέμεται. ἀλλὰ εὖ γὰρ ἡμῖν  
 καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ἄμεινον κατέστη. νῦν δὲ ἐπειδὴ περιελήλυθε  
 ὁ πόλεμος καὶ ἀπῖκται ἐς ὑμέας, οὕτω δὴ Γέλωνος<sup>15</sup>  
 μνήστis γέγονε. ἀτιμίας δὲ πρὸς ὑμέων κυρήσας οὐκ  
 ὁμοίωσομαι ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἔτοιμός εἰμι βοηθεῖν παρεχόμενος  
 διηκοσίας τε τριήρεας καὶ δισμυρίους ὀπλίτας καὶ δις-  
 χιλίην ἵππον καὶ δισχιλίους τοξότας καὶ δισχιλίους  
 σφενδονήτας καὶ δισχιλίους ἵπποδρόμους ψιλούς·<sup>20</sup>  
 σιτόν τε ἀπάσῃ τῇ Ἑλλήνων στρατιῇ, ἔστ' ἂν δια-  
 πολεμήσωμεν, ὑποδέκομαι παρέξιν. ἐπὶ δὲ λόγῳ  
 τοιῷδε τάδε ὑπίσχομαι, ἐπ' ᾧ στρατηγός τε καὶ ἡγεμὼν  
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔσομαι πρὸς τὸν βάρβαρον· ἐπ' ἄλλῳ  
 δὲ λόγῳ οὗτ' ἂν αὐτὸς ἔλθοιμι οὗτ' ἂν ἄλλους πέμψαιμι.<sup>25</sup>  
<sup>159</sup> ταῦτα ἀκούσας οὔτε ἡνέσχετο ὁ Σύαγρος εἶπέ τε τάδε·  
 Ἦ κε μέγ' οἰμώξειε ὁ Πελοπίδης Ἀγαμέμνων. πυθό-

the Romans. (Stein.) — 10. ἐπαυ-  
 ρείσεις: *gains*. Cp. Thuc. 2. 53. 6.  
 — 12. τὸ κατ' ὑμέας: *as far as  
 you are concerned*. Cp. 5. 109. 11.  
 — 13. ὑπὸ βαρβάροισι νέμεται: *are  
 under the power of the barbari-  
 ans*. Cp. 7. 11. 18. — ἀλλὰ γάρ:  
 see on 7. 4. 2. — 14. ἐπὶ τὸ ἄμεινον:  
 as 7. 8. α 7. — 16. ἀτιμίας κυρήσας:  
 = ἀτιμασθεῖς, *scorned*, hence πρὸς  
 ὑμέων (cp. 8 above). — 20. ἵππο-  
 δρόμους ψιλούς: prob. light infan-  
 try placed between the horsemen  
 and keeping pace with them, like

those described by Caesar among  
 the Germans, *B.G.* 1. 48, or the  
 Boeotian ἄμῃποι of Thuc. 5. 57.  
 12; Xen. *Hellen.* 7. 5. 23. The  
 term occurs only here. — 21. δια-  
 πολεμήσωμεν: note the force of  
 δια-. — 23. ἐπ' ᾧ: see on 7. 153.  
 15.

159. 2. ἦ κε μέγ' οἰμώξειε  
 . . . Ἀγαμέμνων: imitation of Nes-  
 tor's exclamation, Hom. *H* 125 ἦ  
 κε μέγ' οἰμώξειε γέρον ἱππηλάτα  
 Πηλεΐδης. The part. κε not else-  
 where in Hdt. — ὁ Πελοπίδης Ἀγα-

μενος Σπαρτιήτας τὴν ἡγεμονίην ἀπαραιρῆσθαι ὑπὸ  
 Γέλωνός τε καὶ Συρηκοσίων. ἀλλὰ τούτου μὲν τοῦ  
 λόγου μηκέτι μνησθῆς, ὅκως τὴν ἡγεμονίην τοι παρα- 5  
 δώσομεν. ἀλλ' εἰ μὲν βούλει βοηθεῖν τῇ Ἑλλάδι, ἴσθι  
 ἀρξόμενος ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων· εἰ δ' ἄρα μὴ δικαιοῖς  
 160 ἄρχεσθαι, σὺ δὲ μὴ βοηθεῖν. πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Γέλων,  
 ἐπειδὴ ὥρα ἀπεστραμμένους τοὺς λόγους τοῦ Σνάγρου,  
 τὸν τελευταῖόν σφι τόνδε ἐξέφαινε λόγον· Ὡς ξεῖνε  
 Σπαρτιήτα, ὀνείδεα κατιόντα ἀνθρώπῳ φιλεῖ ἐπανάγειν  
 τὸν θυμόν. σὺ μέντοι ἀποδεξάμενος ὑβρίσματα ἐν τῷ 5  
 λόγῳ οὗ με πείσεις ἀσχήμονα ἐν τῇ ἀμοιβῇ γενέσθαι.  
 ὅκου δὲ ὑμεῖς οὕτω περιέχεσθε τῆς ἡγεμονίης, οἶκος καὶ  
 ἐμὲ μᾶλλον ὑμέων περιέχεσθαι, στρατιῆς τε ἔοντα πολ-  
 λαπλησίης ἡγεμόνα καὶ νεῶν πολλὸν πλεόνων. ἀλλ'  
 ἐπεῖτε ὑμῖν ὁ λόγος οὕτω προσάντης κατίσταται, ἡμεῖς 10  
 τι ὑπείξομεν τοῦ ἀρχαίου λόγου. εἰ τοῦ μὲν πεζοῦ  
 ὑμεῖς ἡγέοισθε, τοῦ δὲ ναυτικοῦ ἐγώ· εἰ δὲ ὑμῖν ἡδονὴ

μένων: from whom the Spartans derive their claim to the chief command of Greek forces, as it were by inheritance. — 3. ἀπαραιρῆσθαι: Ion. for ἀφρηῆσθαι. — 5. ὅκως: = ὥς, a const. mainly Herodotean. The clause is explanatory of τούτου τ. λ. — 7. ἀρξόμενος: with pass. force. — δικαιοῖς: Ionic and poetic word used also by Thuc. — 8. σὺ δέ: see on 7. 10. θ 11. — βοηθεῖν: inf. for imv., as 7. 141. 20.

160. 2. ὥρα: see Dial. § 4. 1. — ἀπεστραμμένους: *aversos*, *hostile*.

Cp. προσάντης (10). — 3. σφι τόνδε: both in the attrib. position since the noun has another modifier. — 4. κατιόντα: sc. ἐς τὸν θυμόν from the following ἐπανάγειν τὸν θυμόν. For the sentiment of the passage, cp. 7. 39. 7-9. — φιλεῖ: cp. 7. 9. γ 9. — 5. ἀποδεξάμενος: from ἀποδείκνυμι. — 6. ἀσχήμονα: *unseemly*. — 7. ὅκου: *quoniam*. Cp. 7. 118. 4. — περιέχεσθε: as 7. 39. 15. — 10. προσάντης: *adversus*, *irksome*. — 11. τοῦ ἀρχαίου λόγου: *the former proposal*. — 12. τοῦ δέ: for δέ in apod., cp. 7. 159. 8.

τοῦ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἡγεμονεύειν, τοῦ πεζοῦ ἐγὼ θέλω.  
καὶ ἡ τούτοισι ὑμέας χρεόν ἐστι ἀρκεῖσθαι ἢ ἀπίνειν  
161 συμμάχων τοσῶνδε ἐρήμους. Γέλων μὲν δὴ ταῦτα  
προετίνειτο, φθάσας δὲ ὁ Ἀθηναίων ἄγγελος τὸν Λακε-  
δαιμονίων ἀμείβετό μιν τοισίδε· ὦ βασιλεῦ Συρηκο-  
σίῳν, οὐκ ἡγεμόνος δεομένη ἡ Ἑλλὰς ἀπέπεμψε ἡμέας  
πρὸς σέ, ἀλλὰ στρατιῆς. σὺ δὲ ὅκως μὲν στρατιήν 5  
πέμψεις μὴ ἡγεόμενος τῆς Ἑλλάδος, οὐ προφαίνεις, ὥς  
δὲ στρατηγήσεις αὐτῆς, γλίχεται. ὅσον μὲν νυν παντὸς  
τοῦ Ἑλλήνων στρατοῦ ἐδέου ἡγεῖσθαι, ἐξήρκει ἡμῖν  
τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι ἡσυχίην ἄγειν, ἐπισταμένοισι ὥς ὁ  
Λάκων ἱκανὸς τοι ἐμελλε ἔσεσθαι καὶ ὑπὲρ ἀμφοτέρων 10  
ἀπολογόμενος· ἐπεῖτε δὲ ἀπάσης ἀπελαυνόμενος δέεαι  
τῆς ναυτικῆς ἄρχειν, οὕτω ἔχει τοι· οὐδ' ἦν ὁ Λάκων  
ἐπιῆ τοι ἄρχειν αὐτῆς, ἡμεῖς ἐπήσομεν. ἡμετέρη γάρ  
ἐστι αὕτη γε μὴ αὐτῶν βουλομένων Λακεδαιμονίων.  
τούτοισι μὲν ὦν ἡγεῖσθαι βουλομένοισι οὐκ ἀντιτείνω- 15  
μεν, ἀλλῶ δὲ παρήσομεν οὐδενὶ ναυαρχεῖν. μάτην γὰρ  
ἂν ᾧδε πάραλον Ἑλλήνων στρατὸν πλείστον εἴημεν  
ἐκτημένοι, εἰ Συρηκοσίοισι ἐόντες Ἀθηναῖοι συγχωρή-  
σομεν τῆς ἡγεμονίης, ἀρχαιότατον μὲν ἔθνος παρεχό-

161. 2. προετίνειτο: = ὑπ-  
ωχνεῖτο. Cp. ὑποτείνειν 7. 158. 9.  
— 5. ὅκως: cp. 7. 159. 5. — 6. ὥς  
στρατηγήσεις: rare const. for sim-  
ple inf. with γλίχεται. — 7. ὅσον  
μὲν νυν: sc. χρόνον. — 8. ἡμῖν τοῖσι  
Ἀθηναίοισι: an appositive to a  
pers. pron. takes art. — 11. ἀπο-  
λογόμενος: suppl. ptc. with ἱκα-  
νὸς ἔσεσθαι, for the more usual

inf. — 12. οὕτω ἔχει τοι: *thus it  
is, look you*, ethical dat., as 6. 1. 9.  
— 13. ἐπιῆ: *concedat*. See Dial.  
§ 2. 3. — 16. παρήσομεν: = ἐπήσο-  
μεν in 13. — 17. πάραλον: = ναυτι-  
κόν, not elsewhere connected with  
στρατός. — 18. εἰ . . . συγχωρή-  
σομεν: note the monitory fut. cond.  
with less vivid fut. apod. συγχω-  
ρήσομεν with gen. = παραχωρήσο-

μενοι, μῦνοι δὲ ἔόντες οὐ μετανάσται Ἑλλήνων· τῶν 20  
καὶ Ὅμηρος ὁ ἐποποιὸς ἄνδρα ἄριστον ἔφησε ἐς Ἴλιον  
ἀπικέσθαι τάξαι τε καὶ διακοσμήσαι στρατόν. οὕτω  
162 οὐκ ὄνειδος οὐδὲν ἡμῖν ἐστι λέγειν ταῦτα. ἀμείβεται  
Γέλων τοισίδε· Ξεῖνε Ἀθηναῖε, ὑμεῖς οἴκατε τοὺς μὲν  
ἄρχοντας ἔχειν, τοὺς δὲ ἀρξομένους οὐκ ἔξειν. ἐπεὶ  
τοῖνυν οὐδὲν ὑπνέοντες ἔχειν τὸ πᾶν ἐθέλετε, οὐκ ἂν  
φθάνοιτε τὴν ταχίστην ὀπίσω ἀπαλλασσόμενοι καὶ 5  
ἀγγέλλοντες τῇ Ἑλλάδι ὅτι ἐκ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ τὸ ἔαρ  
αὐτῇ ἐξαπαίρηται. [οὗτος δὲ ὁ νόος τοῦ ῥήματος, τὸ  
ἐθέλει λέγειν· δηλα γὰρ ὡς ἐν τῷ ἐνιαυτῷ ἐστι τὸ ἔαρ  
δοκιμώτατον, τῆς δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατιῆς τὴν ἐωυτοῦ  
στρατιήν. στερισκομένην ὦν τὴν Ἑλλάδα τῆς ἐωυτοῦ 10

μεν, prob. only here. — 20. οὐ μετανάσται: = αὐτόχθονες. The word is Homeric. On this claim of the Athenians, cp. Thuc. 1. 2. 19 τὴν Ἀττικὴν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ πλείστον διὰ τὸ λεπτόγειον ἀστασίαστον οὖσαν ἄνθρωποι ὥκουν οἱ αὐτοὶ αἰεὶ, *Attica being on account of the thinness of its soil from the earliest period undisturbed by faction was always inhabited by the same people*. Cp. also Thuc. 2. 36; Isoc. *Panegy.* 24. — 21. Ὅμηρος . . . στρατόν: cp. Hom. B 552 ff. The reference is to Menestheus. — ἄριστον . . . τάξαι: for const. see S. 2002; HA. 952.

162. 1. ἀμείβεται: see on 7. 50. 1. — 2. οἴκατε: *you are like*, see Dial. § 4. 1. — 3. ἀρξομένους: with pass. force, as 7. 159. 7. — 4. ὑπ-

νέοντες: cp. ἐπιτῇ 7. 161. 13, παρήσομεν 7. 161. 16. — οὐκ ἂν φθάνοιτε . . . ἀπαλλασσόμενοι: *you could not be too soon in taking the quickest way back*. S. 2096 e; GMT. 894. — 6. ἐκ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ . . . ἐξαπαίρηται: the same figure was applied by Pericles in a funeral oration to the youth who had fallen in war — prob. the Samian war. Cp. Arist. *Rhet.* 1. 7, 3. 10. Stein thinks both Pericles and Herodotus prob. borrowed it from some earlier poet. — 7. ἐξαπαίρηται: see Dial. § 4. 2. — 7-12. [οὗτος . . . εἶη]: the passage is bracketed by several editors as an unnecessary explanation and unworthy of Hdt. See App. — 8. γὰρ: see on 7. 148. 6. — 9. τὴν ἐωυτοῦ στρατιήν: *sc. εἶναι*, transition to indir. disc. —

συμμαχίης εἵκαζε ὥς εἰ τὸ ἔαρ ἐκ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ ἐξαραιρημένον εἶη.]

- 163 Οἱ μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄγγελοι τοσαῦτα τῷ Γέλωνι χρηματισάμενοι ἀπέπλεον· Γέλων δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα δέισας μὲν περὶ τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι μὴ οὐ δύνωνται τὸν βάρβαρον ὑπερβαλέσθαι, δεινὸν δὲ καὶ οὐκ ἀνασχετὸν ποιησάμενος ἐλθὼν ἐς Πελοπόννησον ἄρχεσθαι ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων, ἐὼν Σικελίης τύραννος, ταύτην μὲν τὴν ὁδὸν ἡμέλησε, ὃ δὲ ἄλλης εἶχετο· ἐπεῖτε γὰρ τάχιστα ἐπύθετο τὸν Πέρσῃ διαβεβηκότα τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, πέμπει πεντηκοντέροισι τρισὶ Κάδμον τὸν Σκύθῳ ἀνδρᾷ Κῶν ἐς Δελφούς, ἔχοντα χρήματα πολλὰ καὶ φίλους λόγους, караδοκῆσοντα τὴν μάχην τῇ πεσεῖται, καὶ ἣν μὲν ὁ βάρβαρος νικᾷ, τά τε χρήματα αὐτῷ δίδόναι καὶ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ τῶν ἄρχει ὁ Γέλων, ἣν δὲ 164 οἱ Ἑλλήνες, ὁπίσω ἀπάγειν. ὁ δὲ Κάδμος οὗτος πρό-

11. εἵκαζε ὥς εἰ: *represented by a simile, as if*. The usual const. is εἵκαζειν τί τι.

GELON SENDS CADMUS TO DELPHI  
(CC. 163-164)

163. 2. πρὸς ταῦτα: *in view of this*. — 6. τὴν ὁδὸν ἡμέλησε: rare const. found also in Eur. *Ion*. 439. — 7. ὃ δέ: see on 7. 6. 24. — 9. Σκύθῳ: doubtless the tyrant of Zancle, who being expelled by the Samians took refuge at the Persian court, where he died in advanced years (6. 23-24). He seems to have been made by Darius tyrant of Cos, but to have

abdicated in favor of his son Cadmus. The latter in time also abdicated his authority (7. 164) and emigrated with a number of Coan families to Sicily, where with the help of Anaxilaus of Rhegium he recovered the old mother city of Zancle. — 10. ἐς Δελφούς: the oracle seems at that time to have favored submission to Persia. Cp. 7. 140, 7. 169, 7. 220. — 11. φίλους λόγους: *i.e.* to Xerxes, in case he was victorious. — τῇ πεσεῖται: the figure is taken from throwing dice. — 13. τῶν ἄρχει ὁ Γέλων: *for those over whom Gelon holds sway*.



τερον τούτων παραδεξάμενος παρὰ πατρὸς τυραννίδα Κώων εὖ βεβηκυῖαν, ἐκὼν τε εἶναι καὶ δεινοῦ ἐπιόντος οὐδενὸς ἀλλὰ ἀπὸ δικαιοσύνης ἐς μέσον Κώοισι κατα-  
θεῖς τὴν ἀρχὴν οἶχετο ἐς Σικελίην, ἔνθα μετὰ Σαμίων 5  
ἔσχε τε καὶ κατοίκησε πόλιν Ζάγκλην τὴν ἐς Μεσ-  
σήνην μεταβαλοῦσαν τὸ οὖνομα. τοῦτον δὴ ὁ Γέλων  
τὸν Κάδμον καὶ τοιούτῳ τρόπῳ ἀπικόμενον διὰ δικαιο-  
σύνην, τὴν οἱ αὐτὸς ἄλλην συνήδει ἐοῦσαν, ἔπεμπε· ὃς  
ἐπὶ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι δικαίοισι τοῖσι ἐξ ἑωυτοῦ ἐργασμέ- 10  
νοισι καὶ τόδε οὐκ ἐλάχιστον τούτων ἐλίπετο· κρατή-  
σας γὰρ μεγάλων χρημάτων τῶν οἱ Γέλων ἐπετράπετο,  
παρεὼν κατασχέσθαι οὐκ ἠθέλησε, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες  
ἐπεκράτησαν τῇ ναυμαχίᾳ καὶ Ξέρξης οἰχώκει ἀπελεύ-  
νων, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐκείνος ἀπίκετο ἐς τὴν Σικελίην ἅπαντα 15

164. 3. εὖ βεβηκυῖαν: *well established*. Cp. Archil. frg. 58 οἱ θεοὶ πολλάκις ἀνατρέπουσι καὶ μάλ' εὖ βεβηκότας ὑπτίους κλίνουσι. — ἐκὼν τε εἶναι: see on 7. 104. 12. — 4. ἀπὸ δικαιοσύνης: he was prob. still more influenced by longing for his mother city Zancle. — ἐς μέσον Κώοισι καταθεῖς τὴν ἀρχήν: *putting the government back into the hands of the Coans*. — 6. ἔσχε: ingressive. S. 1925 a; HA. 841; GS. 241. — κατοίκησε: *settled again* (about 490 B.C.). The prime mover in this matter seems to have been Anaxilaus, tyrant of Rhegium, acc. to Thuc. 6. 4. 36, who does not even mention Cadmus. The latter was prob. soon

displaced by Anaxilaus, who is elsewhere (Diod. 11. 48, 11. 66) mentioned alone as tyrant of Mes-sene. — 9. τὴν οἱ αὐτὸς ἄλλην συν-  
ῆδει τοῦσαν: *which he himself knew to be his otherwise, i.e. from personal knowledge of him in Sicily*. For suppl. ptc. with συνήδει, see GMT. 904; S. 2108 a. — 10. ἐπὶ τοῖσι . . . δικαίοισι: = *πρὸς c. dat.*, a construction esp. freq. among poets. — ἐξ ἑωυτοῦ: for const., see on 7. 11. 14. — 11. τόδε . . . ἐλίπετο: *left this not the least of them* (sc. τῶν δικαίων). The const. *δικαίον ἐλίπετο* as *ἐλίπετο μνημόσυνον, etc.* — 13. παρεὼν: acc. abs. — 14. οἰχώ-  
κει: Ionic plpf. of οἰχώμαι. — 15. καὶ δὴ καὶ: as 7. 1. 4.

165 τὰ χρήματα ἄγων. λέγεται δὲ καὶ τάδε ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν  
 Σικελίῃ οἰκημένων, ὡς ὅμως καὶ μέλλων ἄρχεσθαι ὑπὸ  
 Λακεδαιμονίων ὁ Γέλων ἐβोधήθησε ἂν τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι,  
 εἰ μὴ ὑπὸ Θήρωνος τοῦ Αἰνησιδήμου Ἀκραγαντίνων  
 μονάρχου ἐξελασθεὶς ἐξ Ἰμέρης Τήριλλος ὁ Κρινίπ- 5  
 που, τύραννος ἐὼν Ἰμέρης, ἐπῆγε ὑπ' αὐτὸν τὸν χρόνον  
 τοῦτον Φοινίκων καὶ Λιβύων καὶ Ἰβήρων καὶ Λιγύων  
 καὶ Ἑλισύκων καὶ Σαρδονίων καὶ Κυρνίων τριήκοντα  
 μυριάδας καὶ στρατηγὸν αὐτῶν Ἀμίλκαν τὸν Ἄννωνος,  
 Καρχηδονίων ἐόντα βασιλέα, κατὰ ξεινίην τε τὴν 10  
 ἑωυτοῦ ὁ Τήριλλος ἀναγνώσας καὶ μάλιστα διὰ τὴν  
 Ἀναξίλειω τοῦ Κρητίνεω προθυμίην, ὃς Ῥηγίου ἐὼν

THE CARTHAGINIANS DEFEATED  
 BY GELON (CC. 165-167)

165. 2. ὅμως καὶ μέλλων: *even though he was to be*. ὅμως, which usually follows the concessive ptc., sometimes with καί (= καίπερ) precedes for esp. emphasis. Cp. 5. 63. 9. — 4. Θήρωνος: tyrant of Agrigentum (488-473 B.C.), of the ancient family of the Emmenidae, which being related to the Aegidae of Thera traced descent from Cadmus of Thebes. His second wife was daughter of Gelon's brother Polyzelus, and his daughter Damarate was the wife of Gelon. — 7. Φοινίκων: Carthaginians. — Ἰβήρων: Spaniards. — Λιγύων: *Ligurians*, of northwest Italy. — 8. Ἑλισύκων: *Elisycans*, of Gallia Narbonensis. — Κυρνίων: *Corsi-*

*cans*. — 10. βασιλέα: the kings, prob. two in number, were chosen for life from the noblest and richest families. Arist. *Pol.* 2. 11 compares them with the Spartan kings, but distinguishes the βασιλεῖς (Sufetes) from the στρατηγοί. Acc. to Ephorus (frg. 111; cp. Diod. 11. 1. 20), the simultaneous attack upon the Greeks by the barbarians from the east and south had been prearranged. It was to the interest of the Carthaginians, of course, to check the naval and commercial advance of the Hellenes in the western Mediterranean. (See on 7. 158. 9.) — κατὰ ξεινίην τε τὴν ἑωυτοῦ: *on account of his own guest-friendship, i.e. with Hamilcar*. — 11. ὁ Τήριλλος: repeated for the sake of clearness from l. 5. — ἀναγνώσας: = *πίσας*.

τύραννος, τὰ ἐωντοῦ τέκνα δούς ὁμήρους Ἀμίλκα ἐπῆγε  
 ἐπὶ τὴν Σικελίην τιμωρέων τῷ πενθερῷ. Τηρίλλου γὰρ  
 εἶχε θυγατέρα Ἀναξίλεως, τῇ οὖνομα ἦν Κυδίππη.<sup>15</sup>  
 οὕτω δὴ οὐκ οἶόν τε γενόμενον βοηθεῖν τὸν Γέλωνα  
 τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι ἀποπέμπειν ἐς Δελφούς τὰ χρήματα.  
 166 πρὸς δὲ καὶ τάδε λέγουσι, ὡς συνέβη τῆς αὐτῆς ἡμέρης  
 ἐν τε τῇ Σικελίᾳ Γέλωνα καὶ Θήρωνα νικᾶν Ἀμίλκαν  
 τὸν Καρχηδόνιον καὶ ἐν Σαλαμῖνι τοὺς Ἑλληνας τὸν  
 Πέρσην. τὸν δὲ Ἀμίλκαν, Καρχηδόνιον ἑόντα πρὸς  
 πατρός, μητρόθεν δὲ Συρηκόσιον, βασιλεύσαντά τε κατ'<sup>5</sup>  
 ἀνδραγαθίην Καρχηδονίων, ὡς ἡ συμβολή τε ἐγένετο  
 καὶ ὡς ἐσσοῦτο τῇ μάχῃ, ἀφανισθῆναι πυνθάνομαι.  
 οὔτε γὰρ ζῶντα οὔτε ἀποθανόντα φανῆναι οὐδαμοῦ  
 167 γῆς. τὸ πᾶν γὰρ ἐπεξελθεῖν διζήμενον Γέλωνα. ἔστι  
 δὲ ὑπ' αὐτῶν Καρχηδονίων ὁδε λόγος λεγόμενος, οἰκότε  
 χρεωμένων, ὡς οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι [ἐν τῇ  
 Σικελίᾳ] ἐμάχοντο ἐξ ἡοῦς ἀρξάμενοι μέχρι δειλῆς  
 ὀψίης (ἐπὶ τοσοῦτο γὰρ λέγεται ἐλκύσαι τὴν σύστασιν),<sup>5</sup>  
 ὁ δὲ Ἀμίλκας ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ μένων ἐν τῷ στρατο-

— 15. εἶχε: *sc.* γυναῖκα. — 16. οὕτω  
 δὴ κτέ.: *indir. disc. dependent on*  
*λέγεται* (1).

166. 1. πρὸς δέ: *adv.* — τῆς  
 αὐτῆς ἡμέρας: *Diod., II. 24, says*  
*on the same day as the battle of*  
*Thermopylae. Aristotle expresses*  
*himself in general terms, Poet. 23*  
*κατὰ τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους ἢ τ' ἐν*  
*Σαλαμῖνι ἐγένετο ναυμαχία καὶ ἡ*  
*ἐν Σικελίᾳ Καρχηδονίων.* — 8. οὐδα-  
 μοῦ γῆς: *S. 1439 a; HA. 757. —*

9. τὸ πᾶν . . . Γέλωνα: *for Gelon*  
*went everywhere in his search for*  
*him.* *Cp. 4. 9. 2 Ἡρακλῆα διζη-*  
*σθαι, πάντα δὲ τὰ τῆς χώρας ἐπεξελ-*  
*θόντα τέλος ἀπικέσθαι κτέ.* *For*  
*τὸ πᾶν, see on 7. 50. 4.*

167. 2. οἰκότε: *sc. λόγῳ, which*  
*is expressed 3. III. 4. — 3. [ἐν τῇ*  
*Σικελίᾳ]: unnecessary and omitted*  
*by some Mss. See App. — 4. δει-*  
*λης ὀψίης: sunset, as Thuc. 3. 74. 5.*  
 — 5. ἐλκύσαι: *dragged on, intr. —*

πέδῳ [ἐθύετο καὶ] ἐκαλλιερεῖτο ἐπὶ πυρῆς μεγάλης σώματα ὅλα καταγίζων, ἰδὼν δὲ τροπὴν τῶν ἑωυτοῦ γινομένην, ὡς ἔτυχε ἐπισπένδων τοῖσι ἱροῖσι, ὥσε ἑω- τὸν ἐς τὸ πῦρ· οὕτω δὴ κατακαυθέντα ἀφανισθῆναι.<sup>10</sup> ἀφανισθέντι δὲ Ἀμίλκα τρόπῳ εἴτε τοιούτῳ ὡς Φοῖνικες λέγουσι, εἴτε ἐτέρῳ, [ὡς Καρχηδόνιοι καὶ Συρηκόσιοι], τοῦτο μὲν οἱ θύουσι, τοῦτο δὲ μνήματα ἐποίησαν ἐν πάσῃσι τῇσι πόλεσι τῶν ἀποικίδων, ἐν αὐτῇ τε μέγιστον Καρχηδόνι. τὰ μὲν ἀπὸ Σικελίης τοσαῦτα.

15

168 Κερκυραῖοι δὲ τάδε ὑποκρινάμενοι τοῖσι ἀγγέλοισι τοιάδε ἐποίησαν· καὶ γὰρ τούτους παρελάβανον οἱ αὐτοὶ οἷ περ ἐς Σικελίην ἀπίκατο, λέγοντες τοὺς αὐτοὺς λόγους τοὺς καὶ πρὸς Γέλωνα ἔλεγον. οἱ δὲ παραντίκα

7. [ἐθύετο καὶ] ἐκαλλιερεῖτο: both words can hardly be correct. See App. and see on 7. 113. 10.— 8. σώματα ὅλα: whole burnt offerings were originally the rule with Phoenicians, as with Jews; later, as with the Greeks, this was unusual.— 10. ἀφανισθῆναι. ἀφανισθέντι δέ: note the epanalepsis (*repetition*), a favorite figure with Hdt. Acc. to Diod. 11. 22, Hamilcar was slain by Gelon's cavalry at the outset.— 12. [ὡς Καρχηδόνιοι καὶ Συρηκόσιοι]: doubtless an interpolation of some one who overlooked the fact that the Carthaginians were the Phoenicians, and that the Syracusans did not know how he died—as is clear from the conclusion of the preced-

ing chapter. See App.— 13. τοῦτο μὲν, τοῦτο δέ: see on 7. 6. 6.— οἱ: reiteration of the indir. obj. already expressed (Ἀμίλκα). Cp. 7. 147. 8.— θύουσι: this statement presupposes hero-worship, which was unknown among the Phoenicians. Hence Movers' conjecture is probable, that we have here to do with a confusion of the name of A-milkar with Melkarth the Tyro-Carthaginian deity, with whose cult self-immolation by fire was intimately connected.— 15. ἀπὸ Σικελίης: *terminus ex quo*.

#### DOUBLE DEALING OF THE CORCYRAEANS

168. 2. παρελάβανον: sc. συμμάχους, conative impf., as in 18 be-

μὲν ὑπίσχοντο πέμψειν τε καὶ ἀμυνεῖν, φράζοντες ὥς οὐ 5  
 σφι περισπότη ἐστὶ ἡ Ἑλλὰς ἀπολλυμένη· ἦν γὰρ  
 σφαλῇ, σφεῖς γε οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ δουλεύσουσι τῇ πρώτῃ  
 τῶν ἡμερέων· ἀλλὰ τιμωρητέον εἶη ἐς τὸ δυνατώτατον.  
 ὑπεκρίναντο μὲν οὕτω εὐπρόσωπα· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔδει βοηθεῖν,  
 ἄλλα νοέοντες ἐπλήρωσαν νέας ἐξήκοντα, μόγις δὲ 10  
 ἀναχθέντες προσέμιξαν τῇ Πελοποννήσῳ, καὶ περὶ  
 Πύλον καὶ Ταΐναρον γῆς τῆς Λακεδαιμονίων ἀνεκώ-  
 χευον τὰς νέας, παραδοκέοντες καὶ οὗτοι τὸν πόλεμον  
 τῇ πεσεῖται, ἀελπτεύοντες μὲν τοὺς Ἑλληνας ὑπερβα-  
 λείσθαι, δοκίοντες δὲ τὸν Πέρσῃν κατακρατήσαντα 15  
 πολλὸν ἄρξειν πάσης τῆς Ἑλλάδος. ἐποίεον ὦν ἐπίτη-  
 δες, ἵνα ἔχωσι πρὸς τὸν Πέρσῃν λέγειν τοιάδε· ὦ  
 βασιλεῦ, ἡμεῖς παραλαμβανόντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἡμέας  
 ἐς τὸν πόλεμον τοῦτον, ἔχοντες δύναμιν οὐκ ἐλαχίστην  
 οὐδὲ νέας ἐλαχίστας παρασχόντες ἂν ἀλλὰ πλείστας 20  
 μετὰ γε Ἀθηναίους, οὐκ ἠθελήσαμεν τοι ἀντιοῦσθαι

low, and 7. 169. 1.— 5. ὥς οὐ . . . ἀπολλυμένη: *that they must not permit Hellas to perish*. For const. of *περισπᾶν* with suppl. ptc., see S. 2103; GMT. 885.— 6. ἦν γὰρ . . . τῶν ἡμερέων: *for if it fail, they themselves will surely be slaves the very first day*.— 7. σφεῖς: indir. reflex. in emphatic position.— οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ: with this elliptical expression supply some plural word like *ποιούσι*. Cp. *nihil aliud quam*.— 8. τῶν ἡμερέων: the part. gen., of which Hdt. is very fond, adds emphasis. Cp. 7. 104. 3.— ἐς τὸ

δυνατώτατον: *to the limit of their power*. Cp. ἐς δύναμιν.— 9. εὐπρόσωπα: *fair-faced, specious*, Attic εὐπρεπῇ.— 12. γῆς τῆς Λακεδαιμονίων: for gen., see on 7. 33. 3.— 13. καὶ οὗτοι: *these too*, as well as Gelon (7. 163. 11).— 14. τῇ πεσεῖται: see on 7. 163. 11.— ἀελπτεύοντες: cp. Hom. H 310.— 16. ἐπίτηδες: *consulto*, as 7. 44. 3.— 19. δύναμιν οὐκ ἐλαχίστην: for the sea power of Corcyra, cp. Thuc. 1. 14, 1. 33.— 20. παρασχόντες ἂν: *could have furnished*. GMT. 215.— 21. μετὰ γε: cp. 7. 139. 27.—

οὐδ' τι ἀποθύμιον ποιῆσαι. τοιαῦτα λέγοντες ἤλπιζον πλεον τι τῶν ἄλλων οἴσεσθαι· τά περ ἂν καὶ ἐγένετο, ὥς· ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ. πρὸς δὲ τοὺς Ἑλληνας σφί σκῆψις ἐπεποιήτο, τῇ περ δὴ καὶ ἐχρήσαντο· αἰτιωμένων γὰρ 25 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὅτι οὐκ ἐβοήθειον, ἔφασαν πληρῶσαι μὲν ἐξήκοντα τριήρεας, ὑπὸ δὲ ἐτησιέων ἀνέμων ὑπερβαλεῖν Μαλέην οὐκ οἰοί τε γενέσθαι· οὕτω οὐκ ἀπικέσθαι ἐς Σαλαμίνα καὶ οὐδεμῇ κακότητι λειφθῆναι τῆς ναυμαχίης. οὗτοι μὲν οὕτω διεκρούσαντο τοὺς Ἑλληνας. 30

169 Κρήτες δέ, ἐπεῖτε σφέας παρελάβανον οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις ταχθέντες Ἑλλήνων, ἐποίησαν τοιόνδε· πέμψαντες κοινῇ θεοπρόπους ἐς Δελφοὺς τὸν θεὸν ἐπειρώτων εἶσφι ἄμεινον τιμωρέουσι γίνεται τῇ Ἑλλάδι. ἡ δὲ Πυθίη ὑπεκρίνατο· ὦ νήπιοι, ἐπιμέμφεσθε ὅσα ὑμῖν 5

22. ἀποθύμιον: Homeric, as Ξ 261. — 23. πλεον τι . . . οἴσεσθαι: *will get something more than the rest*. Cp. 7. 213. 4. — 24. σφί σκῆψις ἐπεποιήτο: *an excuse had been prepared by them*. — 27. ὑπὸ ἐτησιέων ἀνέμων: *owing to the Etesian winds, i.e. the northeast winds which blow from the coast of Thrace over the whole archipelago, for about 40 days from the rising of the dog star, which would cover the date of the battle of Salamis (Sept. 28). Modern travelers testify that these winds are especially strong about Cape Malea (now Angelo).* — ὑπερβαλεῖν: *to get by, double*, as Thuc. 8. 104. 20. Cp. τὸν Ἀθων περιέβαλλον

6. 44. 10. — 29. λειφθῆναι τῆς ναυμαχίης: *had been left out of the sea fight*. Cp. 7. 153. 7. — 30. διεκρούσαντο: *eluded*.

#### THE CRETANS REFUSE AID (CC. 169-171)

169. 1. ἐπὶ τούτοις: *for this purpose*. Cp. 7. 146. 12, 7. 156. 16. — 3. κοινῇ: *i.e. the several independent states on the island united in a common embassy*. — 5. ἐπιμέμφεσθε . . . δακρύματα: *do you find fault with the tears which Minos, in consequence of your aid to Menelaus, sent upon you, in anger, because* — (ὅτι κτέ.). Instead of a direct answer, the god makes ironical reference to the

ἐκ τῶν Μενέλεω τιμωρημάτων Μίνως ἔπεμψε μηνίων  
 δακρύματα, ὅτι οἱ μὲν οὐ συνεξεπρήξαντο αὐτῷ τὸν ἐν  
 Καμικῷ θάνατον γενόμενον, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐκείνοισι τὴν ἐκ  
 Σπάρτης ἀρπασθεῖσαν ὑπ' ἀνδρὸς βαρβάρου γυναικα.  
 ταῦτα οἱ Κρήτες ὥς ἀπενειχθέντα ἤκουσαν, ἔσχοντο <sup>10</sup>  
 170 τῆς τιμωρίας. λέγεται γὰρ Μίνων κατὰ ζήτησιν Δαιδά-  
 λου ἀπικόμενον ἐς Σικανίην τὴν νῦν Σικελίην καλεο-  
 μένην ἀποθανεῖν βιαίῳ θανάτῳ. ἀνὰ δὲ χρόνον Κρήτας  
 θεοῦ σφέας ἐποτρύναντος, πάντας πλὴν Πολιχνιτέων τε  
 καὶ Πραισίων, ἀπικομένους στόλῳ μεγάλῳ ἐς Σικανίην <sup>5</sup>

past. — 6. Μενέλεω τιμωρημάτων: const. with verbal noun the same as with τιμωρεῖν. Note the poetic pl. of excellence. — Μίνως . . . δακρύματα: an iambic verse, preserving perhaps meter, dialect, and form of the oracle. — μηνίων: (= ὀργιζόμενος) esp. of the wrath of gods and heroes. — 7. οἱ μὲν: i.e. Menelaus and his followers. — συνεξεπρήξαντο: helped to avenge. Cp. ἐκπρήξασθαι 7. 158. 8. — τὸν ἐν Καμικῷ θάνατον γενόμενον: either the ptc. or modifier may stand outside of the attrib. order in such const. Cp. 9 below. Camicus was near Akragas in Sicily. θάνατον (= φόνον), sc. Μίνω. — 10. ταῦτα κτί.: striking order, ταῦτα first, as connecting with the preceding, then οἱ Κρήτες, as common subject. Cp. 1. 66. 14, 1. 158. 5, 1. 160. 1. — ἔσχοντο: = ἀπέσχοντο, as 7. 237. 14.

170. 2. Σικανίην: so called

after the aboriginal Σικανοί, who, some 300 years before the Hellenic colonization, had been driven back into the southern and western parts of the island by the immigrant Σικελοί. See Thuc. 6. 2. — 3. ἀποθανεῖν βιαίῳ θανάτῳ: at the palace of his host, the Sicanian king, Cocalus, whose daughters, when Minos demanded that Daedalus should be given up, through love for the latter's art slew Minos in the bath. The legend was the subject of Sophocles' lost play Καμίκιοι. — ἀνὰ δὲ χρόνον: cp. 7. 10. ζ 4, 7. 153. 7. Another tradition has it that it was the followers of Minos who met the fate described in what follows (Diod. 4. 79). — 4. πλὴν Πολιχνιτέων τε καὶ Πραισίων: the inhabitants of Polichne (in the south of Crete) and of Praesus (in the eastern part) were prob. pre-Hellenic and so not concerned about avenging Minos. —

πολιορκεῖν ἐπ' ἔτεα πέντε πόλιν Καμικόν, τὴν κατ' ἐμέ  
 Ἀκραγαντῖνοι ἐνέμοντο. τέλος δὲ οὐ δυναμένους οὔτε  
 ἐλεῖν οὔτε παραμένειν λιμῶ συνεστεῶτας, ἀπολιπόντας  
 οἴχεσθαι. ὥς δὲ κατὰ Ἰηπυγίην γενέσθαι πλείοντας,  
 ὑπολαβόντα σφέας χειμῶνα μέγαν ἐκβαλεῖν ἐς τὴν 10  
 γῆν· συναραχθέντων δὲ τῶν πλοίων (οὐδεμίαν γάρ  
 σφι ἔτι κομιδὴν ἐς Κρήτην φαίνεσθαι), ἐνθαῦτα Ἑτρίην  
 πόλιν κτίσαντας καταμεῖναι τε καὶ μεταβαλόντας ἀντὶ  
 μὲν Κρητῶν γενέσθαι Ἰήπυγας Μεσσαπίους, ἀντὶ δὲ  
 εἶναι νησιώτας ἡπειρώτας. ἀπὸ δὲ Ἑτρίης πόλιος τὰς 15  
 ἄλλας οἰκίσαι, τὰς δὲ Ταραντῖνοι χρόνῳ ὕστερον πολλῶ  
 ἐξανιστάντες προσέπταισαν μεγάλως, ὥστε φόνος Ἑλ-  
 ληνικὸς μέγιστος οὗτος δὴ ἐγένετο πάντων τῶν ἡμεῖς  
 ἴδμεν, αὐτῶν τε Ταραντίνων καὶ Ῥηγίνων, οἱ ὑπὸ Μικύ-  
 θου τοῦ Χοίρου ἀναγκαζόμενοι τῶν ἀστῶν καὶ ἀπικό- 20  
 μενοι τιμωροὶ Ταραντῖνοισι ἀπέθανον τρισχίλιοι οὕτω·

6. ἐπ' ἔτεα πέντε: see on 7. 1. 10.  
 — κατ' ἐμέ: *in my time*. Cp. τὸ  
 κατ' ἐμέ 5. 58. 16. — 8. λιμῶ συν-  
 στεῶτας: *hard pressed by fam-*  
*ine*. Cp. 9. 89. 24 λιμῶ ὀυστάντας  
 καὶ καμάτῳ. — 9. ὥς δὲ . . . γενέ-  
 σθαι: for inf. by attraction in  
 indir. disc., see on 7. 148. 19.  
 — κατὰ Ἰηπυγίην: Calabria, in  
 southeastern Italy. — 10. ὑπολα-  
 βόντα σφέας: *catching them up*;  
 often of storm winds. Cp. 6.  
 27. 6 of pestilence. — 12. κομιδὴν:  
*conveyance, i.e. safe return*. —  
 Ἑτρίην: now Oria, between Ta-  
 rentum and Brundisium (Strabo,  
 p. 282). — 13. μεταβαλόντας: *sc.*

τὸ ὄνομα. Cp. 7. 164. 7. — 14. ἀντὶ  
 εἶναι: without art., as 1. 210. 7,  
 6. 32. 6, a const. not found in  
 Attic. The articular inf. occurs  
 some thirty-two times in Hdt. —  
 16. τὰς δὲ: construed with the  
 nearer ptc. — 17. ἐξανιστάντες:  
 conative. — προσέπταισαν: the de-  
 feat occurred 473 B.C. — φόνος Ἑλ-  
 ληνικὸς . . . ἴδμεν: cp. Thuc. 7.  
 85. 17 πλείστος γὰρ δὴ φόνος οὗτος  
 καὶ οὐδενὸς ἐλάσσω τῶν ἐν τῷ Σι-  
 κελικῷ πολέμῳ τούτῳ ἐγένετο. —  
 18. τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν: cp. 7. 20. 4.  
 — 19. οἱ: referring only to Ῥηγί-  
 νων. — 20. τῶν ἀστῶν: part. gen.  
 with οἱ. — 21. οὕτω: unusual posi-



αὐτῶν δὲ Ταραντίνων οὐκ ἐπὴν ἀριθμός. ὁ δὲ Μίκυθος, οἰκέτης ἐὼν Ἀναξίλειω, ἐπίτροπος Ῥηγίου κατελέλειπτο, οὗτος ὃς περ ἐκπεσὼν ἐκ Ῥηγίου καὶ Τεγέην τὴν Ἀρκάδων οἰκήσας ἀνέθηκε ἐν Ὀλυμπίῃ τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀνδρι- 25  
 171 άντας. ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν κατὰ Ῥηγίους τε καὶ Ταραντίνους τοῦ λόγου μοι παρενθήκη γέγονε. ἐς δὲ τὴν Κρήτην ἐρμημθεῖσαν, ὡς λέγουσι Πραῖσιοι, ἐσοικίζεσθαι ἄλλους τε ἀνθρώπους καὶ μάλιστα Ἕλληνας, τρίτῃ δὲ γενεῇ μετὰ Μίνων τελευτήσαντα γενέσθαι τὰ Τρωικά, 5  
 ἐν τοῖσι οὐ φλαυροτάτους φαίνεσθαι ἔοντας Κρήτας τιμωροὺς Μενέλεω. ἀντὶ τούτων δέ σφι ἀπονοστήσασι ἐκ Τροίης λιμόν τε καὶ λοιμόν γενέσθαι καὶ αὐτοῖσι

tion at end for emphasis, as 7. 223.

4. — 22. οὐκ ἐπὴν ἀριθμός: *no numbering was possible*, as 7. 191.

3. — 23. ἐπίτροπος: cp. 7. 7. 7. A sort of regency for the minor heirs seems to be meant. — 24. ἐκπεσὼν ἐκ Ῥηγίου: acc. to Diod. (11. 48, 11. 66) Miccythus, after nine years' regency (476-467), having been prosecuted by the heirs and honorably acquitted, declined further guardianship and withdrew to Tegea. — 25. οἰκήσας: *settled in*, as 6. 33. 11. — τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀνδριάντας: dedicated in fulfillment of a vow for the recovery of a son. Fifteen are mentioned by Pausanias as still standing at Olympia in his time (about 150 A.D.); others had been taken to Rome by Nero. Cp. Paus. 5. 26. 4. — Fragments of two

of the inscribed bases of these were discovered in the excavations.

171. 1. τὰ κατὰ Ῥηγίους: *matters pertaining to the Rheginians*. — 2. παρενθήκη: *a digression*, as 6. 19. 4. — 3. ἐσοικίζεσθαι ἄλλους: return to indir. disc. — 4. τρίτῃ γενεῇ: Idomeneus, the Cretan leader in the Trojan War, was grandson of Minos. Hom. N 451. — 5. μετὰ Μίνων τελευτήσαντα: for const., cp. πρὸ δύντος ἡλίου 7. 149. 21. GMT. 829 b. — 6. ἐν τοῖσι . . . φαίνεσθαι: for inf. in rel. clause in indir. disc., see on 7. 170. 9. — 7. Μενέλεω: dat. after τιμωροὺς just as after τιμωρεῖν. — 8. λιμόν τε καὶ λοιμόν γενέσθαι: See Verg. *Aen.* 3. 137-139. For the formulaic phrase, cp. Hes. *W.* and *D.* 242 f.

καὶ τοῖσι προβάτοισι, ἔστε τὸ δεύτερον ἐρημωθείσης Κρήτης μετὰ τῶν ὑπολοίπων τρίτους αὐτὴν νῦν νέμε-<sup>10</sup>σθαι Κρήτας. ἡ μὲν δὴ Πυθίη ὑπομνήσασα ταῦτα ἔσχε βουλομένους τιμωρεῖν τοῖσι Ἕλλησι.

- 172 Θεσσαλοὶ δὲ ὑπὸ ἀναγκαίης τὸ πρῶτον ἐμήδισαν, ὡς διέδεξαν, ὅτι οὗ σφι ἦνδανε τὰ οἱ Ἀλενάδαι ἐμχα-  
νῶντο. ἐπεῖτε γὰρ ἐπύθοντο τάχιστα μέλλοντα δια-  
βαίνειν τὸν Πέρσην ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, πέμπουσι ἐς τὸν  
Ἰσθμὸν ἀγγέλους. ἐν δὲ τῷ Ἰσθμῷ ἦσαν ἀλισμένοι 5  
πρόβουλοι τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἀραιρημένοι ἀπὸ τῶν πολίων  
τῶν τὰ ἀμείνω φρονεουσέων περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ἀπικό-  
μενοι δὲ ἐπὶ τούτους τῶν Θεσσαλῶν οἱ ἄγγελοι ἔλεγον·  
Ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, δεῖ φυλάσσεσθαι τὴν ἐσβολὴν τὴν  
Ὀλυμπικὴν, ἵνα Θεσσαλίῃ τε καὶ ἡ σύμπασα ἡ Ἑλλὰς<sup>10</sup>  
ἐν σκέπῃ τοῦ πολέμου. ἡμεῖς μὲν νυν ἑτοιμοὶ εἰμεν

τοῖσιν δ' οὐρανόθεν μέγ' ἐπήγαγε  
πῆμα Κρονίων,  
λιμὸν ὁμοῦ καὶ λοιμόν· ἀποφθινύ-  
θουσι δὲ λαοί.

- 9. ἔστε . . . νέμεσθαι: inf. in dependent clause in indir. disc., as 7. 170. 9. — ἐρημωθείσης Κρήτης: gen. abs. for esp. emphasis, though αὐτὴν occurs just after. — 10. τρίτους . . . Κρήτας: a third population of Cretans now occupy it. — 12. ἔσχε: = ἀπέσχε.

#### THE THESSALIANS AND THE PASS OF TEMPE (CC. 172-174)

172. 1. ὑπὸ ἀναγκαίης: *inviti*. — ὡς διέδεξαν, ὅτι: as they clearly showed, in that. — 2. οἱ

Ἀλενάδαι: see on 7. 6. 8. —

3. ἐπεῖτε τάχιστα: *cum primum*.

— 5. ἀλισμένοι: cp. 7. 145. 2. ἀλί-  
ζειν = ἀθροίζειν. Xen. (*Anab.* 2. 4.

3, 6. 3. 3; συναλίζειν *Cyrop.* 1. 2.

15, 1. 4. 14) alone of Attic classic

writers uses the word. — 6. ἀραιρη-

μένοι: see on 7. 83. 6. — 7. τῶν τὰ

ἀμείνω φρονεουσέων: cp. 7. 145. 3.

— 9. φυλάσσεσθαι: *be guarded*.

Cp. 7. 223. 10. The pass was that

of Tempe. — 10. ἡ: sing. though

there are two subjs., doubtless be-

cause the second subj. includes

the first. — 11. ἐν σκέπῃ τοῦ πολέ-

μου: *under cover from the war*,

as 7. 215. 8. Cp. ἐν σκέπῃ τοῦ

φόβου I. 143. 1; Hom. ζ 210

συμφυλάσσειν, πέμπειν δὲ χρὴ καὶ ὑμέας στρατιὴν πολλήν, ὥς εἰ μὴ πέμψετε, ἐπίστασθε ἡμέας ὁμολογήσειν τῷ Πέρσῃ· οὐ γάρ τοι προκατημένους τοσοῦτο πρὸ τῆς ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος μούνους πρὸ ὑμέων δεῖ ἀπο-<sup>15</sup> λέσθαι. βοηθεῖν δὲ οὐ βουλόμενοι ἀναγκαίην ἡμῖν οὐδεμίαν οἰοί τέ ἐστε προσφέρειν· οὐδαμὰ γὰρ ἀδυνασίης ἀνάγκη κρέσσων ἔφν. ἡμεῖς δὲ πειρησόμεθα αὐτοὶ τινα σωτηρίην μηχανώμενοι. ταῦτα ἔλεγον οἱ  
 173 Θεσσαλοὶ οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες πρὸς ταῦτα ἐβουλεύσαντο ἐς Θεσσαλίην πέμπειν κατὰ θάλασσαν πεζὸν στρατὸν φυλάξοντα τὴν ἐσβολήν. ὥς δὲ συνελέχθη ὁ στρατός, ἔπλει δι' Εὐρύππου. ἀπικόμενος δὲ τῆς Ἀχαιῆς ἐς Ἄλωνα, ἀποβὰς ἐπορεύετο ἐς Θεσσαλίην, τὰς νέας αὐτοῦ<sup>5</sup> καταλιπὼν, καὶ ἀπίκητο ἐς τὰ Τέμπεα ἐς τὴν ἐσβολήν ἣ περ ἀπὸ Μακεδονίης τῆς κάτω ἐς Θεσσαλίην φέρει παρὰ ποταμὸν Πηνειόν, μεταξὺ δὲ Ὀλύμπου τε ὄρεος ἑόντα καὶ τῆς Ὀσσης. ἐνθαῦτα ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατὰ μυρίους ἐπλῖται συλλεγόντες, καὶ σφι<sup>10</sup>

ἐπὶ σκέπας ἔστ' ἀνέμοιο. — 13. εἰ μὴ πέμψετε: minatory condition. — ἐπίστασθε ἡμέας ὁμολογήσειν: *understand that we shall make terms*. This const. with ἐπίστασθε is freq. in Hdt., rare in Attic. — 16. οὐ βουλόμενοι: though the ptc. is conditional, the neg is οὐ, because it belongs to the single word. See on 7. 10. θ 10. — ἀναγκαίην: *compulsion*, i.e. alone to oppose the enemy. Cp. the oath 7. 132.6. — 17. οὐδαμὰ γὰρ... ἔφν: *for never is compulsion stronger*

*than inability*. Cp. 8. 111. 17; *Theog.* 140. — 18. ἔφν: gnomic. — πειρησόμεθα μηχανώμενοι: suppl. ptc., as 7. 139. 8, 7. 148. 9.

173. 4. Ἀχαιῆς: in Southern Thessaly, called also Phthiotis. Cp. 7. 132. 3. — 5. Ἄλωνα: on the west shore of the Pagasaeon Gulf. Homer (B 682) mentions it among the cities of Achilles. — 7. Μακεδονίης τῆς κάτω: *lower Macedonia*. κάτω, along the coast, as against ἄνω (24), in the interior. — 10. κατὰ μυρίους: *about*

προσῆν ἡ Θεσσαλῶν ἵππος. ἐστρατήγει δὲ Λακεδαι-  
 μονίων μὲν Εὐαίνετος ὁ Καρήνου ἐκ τῶν πολεμάρχων  
 ἀραιρημένος, γένεος μέντοι ἐὼν οὐ τοῦ βασιλῆιου, Ἀθη-  
 ναίων δὲ Θεμιστοκλῆς ὁ Νεοκλέος. ἔμειναν δὲ ὀλίγας  
 ἡμέρας ἐνθαῦτα· ἀπικόμενοι γὰρ ἄγγελοι παρὰ Ἀλεξ-  
 15 ἀνδρὸν τοῦ Ἀμύντεω ἀνδρὸς Μακεδόνος συνεβούλευον  
 σφι ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι μὴδὲ μένοντας ἐν τῇ ἐσβολῇ  
 καταπατηθῆναι ὑπὸ τοῦ στρατοῦ τοῦ ἐπιόντος, σημαί-  
 νοντες τὸ πλήθός τε τῆς στρατιῆς καὶ τὰς νέας. ὥς δὲ  
 οὗτοί σφι ταῦτα συνεβούλευον (χρηστὰ γὰρ ἐδόκεον 20  
 συμβουλεύειν, καὶ σφι εὖνοος ἐφαίνετο ἐὼν ὁ Μακεδών),  
 ἐπείθοντο. δοκεῖν δέ μοι, ἄρρωδίῃ ἦν τὸ πείθον, ὥς  
 ἐπύθοντο καὶ ἄλλην ἐοῦσαν ἐσβολὴν ἐς Θεσσαλοῦς  
 κατὰ τὴν ἄνω Μακεδονίην διὰ Περραιβῶν κατὰ Γόννον  
 πόλιν, τῇ περ δὴ καὶ ἐσέβαλε ἡ στρατιὴ ἡ Ξέρξεω. 25  
 καταβάντες δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπὶ τὰς νέας ὀπίσω ἐπο-  
 174 ρεύοντο ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμόν. αὕτη ἐγένετο ἡ ἐς Θεσσαλίην  
 στρατιή, βασιλέος τε μέλλοντος διαβαίνειν ἐς τὴν

10,000. — 12. ἐκ τῶν πολεμάρχων  
 ἀραιρημένος: *chosen from the pole-  
 marches*, or six commanders of  
 divisions (μόραι) of the Spartan  
 army, the chief command belong-  
 ing regularly to one of the two  
 kings (6. 56). — 15. Ἀλεξάνδρου:  
 king of Macedon and public guest-  
 friend (πρόξενος) of the Athenians.  
 He was sent by Mardonius to  
 Athens after the retreat of Xerxes  
 (8. 136) to persuade the Athenians  
 to an alliance with the Persians  
 (8. 140). He it was, too, who

warned the Athenians of Mardo-  
 nius' purpose to give battle the  
 next day at Plataea (9. 45). —  
 22. δοκεῖν δέ μοι: *abs. inf.* Cp.  
 7. 24. 1. — ἄρρωδίῃ ἦν τὸ πεί-  
 θον: *it was dread that persuaded  
 them.* Cp. ὀρρωδία Thuc. 2. 88. 3,  
 2. 89. 3. — 23. ἄλλην ἐοῦσαν ἐσβο-  
 λήν: for the three routes from  
 Macedonia into Thessaly, see on  
 7. 128. 6. — 24. κατὰ Γόννον:  
 west of Tempe. Cp. 7. 128. 8. —  
 25. τῇ περ δὴ καί: *by which very  
 route, indeed.* Cp. 7. 168. 25.

Εὐρώπην ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας καὶ ἑόντος ἤδη ἐν Ἀβύδῳ. Θεσσαλοὶ δὲ ἐρημωθέντες συμμάχων οὕτω δὴ ἐμήδισαν προθύμως οὐδ' ἐτι ἐνδοιαστώσ, ὥστε ἐν τοῖσι πρήγμασι 5 ἐφαίνοντο βασιλεῖ ἄνδρες ἑόντες χρησιμώτατοι.

- 175 Οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐπεῖτε ἀπικάτο ἐς τὸν Ἰσθμόν, ἐβουλεύοντο πρὸς τὰ λεχθέντα ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου τῇ τε στήσονται τὸν πόλεμον καὶ ἐν οἰοισι χώροισι. ἡ νικῶσα δὲ γνώμη ἐγένετο τὴν ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι ἐσβολὴν φυλάξαι· στεινότερῃ γὰρ ἐφαίνετο εἶσα τῆς ἐς Θεσσαλίην 5 καὶ ἅμα μία ἀγχοτέρῃ τε τῆς ἑωυτῶν. τὴν δὲ ἀτραπὸν, δι' ἣν ἤλωσαν οἱ ἀλόντες Ἑλλήνων ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι, οὐδὲ ᾗδεσαν εἶσαν πρότερον ἢ περ ἀπικόμενοι ἐς Θερμοπύλας ἐπύθοντο Τρηχινίων. ταύτην ὦν ἐβουλεύσαντο φυλάσσουντες τὴν ἐσβολὴν μὴ παριέναι ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα 10 τὸν βάρβαρον, τὸν δὲ ναυτικὸν στρατὸν πλεῖν γῆς τῆς Ἰστιαιώτιδος ἐπὶ Ἀρτεμίσιον. ταῦτα γὰρ ἀγχοῦ τε ἀλλήλων ἐστὶ ὥστε πυνθάνεσθαι τὰ κατὰ ἑκατέρους

THE GREEKS AT ARTEMISIUM AND THERMOPYLAE. ORACLE OF THE WINDS (CC. 175-178)

175. 2. ἐξ: see on 7. 11. 14.— στήσονται τὸν πόλεμον: see on 7. 9. β 2.— 3. ἡ νικῶσα γνώμη: *the opinion that prevailed*. Cp. 6. 101. 10.— 5. τῆς ἐς Θεσσαλίην: *sc. φερούσης ἐσβολῆς*.— 6. καὶ ἅμα μία ἀγχοτέρῃ τε τῆς ἑωυτῶν: *and at once single and nearer to their own land*. μία, whereas in Thessaly there were two ways. ἀγχοτέρῃ, from (poetical) ἀγχοῦ

(ἀγχι), only here.— 7. δι' ἣν ἤλωσαν οἱ ἀλόντες Ἑλλήνων: note the alliteration. For the abundance, ἤλωσαν οἱ ἀλόντες, see on 7. 10. α 3.— 8. πρότερον ἢ: cp. 7. 2. 5, 7. 150. 4.— 10. μὴ παριέναι: *not to let by*.— 11. γῆς τῆς Ἰστιαιώτιδος: chorographic or part. gen. of place. This Histiaeotis was in northern Euboea, not in Thessaly.— 12. ταῦτα: Θερμόπυλαι and Ἀρτεμίσιον.— 13. ὥστε πυνθάνεσθαι τὰ κατὰ ἑκατέρους ἑόντα: *so that they could learn what was happening about either division, i.e. the*

176 ἑόντα, οἳ τε χώροι οὕτω ἔχουσι· τοῦτο μὲν, τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον, ἐκ τοῦ πελάγεος τοῦ Θρηκίου ἐξ εὐρέος συνάγεται ἐς στεινὸν ἑόντα τὸν πόρον τὸν μεταξὺ νήσου τε Σκιάθου καὶ ἡπείρου Μαγνησίας· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ στεινοῦ τῆς Εὐβοίης ἤδη τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον δέκεται αἰγιαλός, ἐν δὲ 5 Ἀρτέμιδος ἱρόν. ἡ δὲ αὖ διὰ Τρηχίνος ἔσοδος ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐστὶ τῇ στεινοτάτῃ ἡμίπλευρον. οὐ μέντοι κατὰ τοῦτό γε ὅτι τὸ στεινότατον τῆς χώρας τῆς ἄλλης, ἀλλ' ἔμπροσθὲ τε Θερμοπυλέων καὶ ὀπισθε, κατὰ τε Ἀλπη-

force at Thermopylae could hear about that at Artemisium, and *vice versa*. — 14. οὕτω: looks forward.

176. 1. τοῦτο μὲν: the correlative δὲ αὖ in 6. Cp. 3. 106. 3, 3. 107.

1. — τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον: without construction, placed as a kind of heading or summary of what follows. Cp. Dem. Phil. 1. 28 χρήματα τοῖνυν· ἔστι μὲν ἡ τροφή κτέ. — 2. ἐκ τοῦ πελάγεος: (coming) from the open sea, i.e. in the direction of. — τοῦ Θρηκίου: i.e. the northern Aegean. — ἐξ εὐρέος: sc. πόρου from ἐς στεινὸν πόρον. — συνάγεται: it narrows. The subj. is easily supplied from the context (πέλαγος or πόρος). — 4. ἐκ δὲ τοῦ στεινοῦ: sc. πόρου, from the narrow passage. — 5. τῆς Εὐβοίης: chorographic gen. with τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον, which is subj. of δέκεται (receives you; cp. ὑποδέκεται 15). — τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον: with part. gen. of place the governing noun is usually without art., 'the (above men-

tioned) A.' The region, which is without a town, gets its name from the shrine of Artemis. — 5. αἰγιαλός: a coast district, appos. to τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον. — ἐν δέ: adv. — 6. διὰ Τρηχίνος: the district, as 7. 203. 15, about the head of the Malian Gulf; usually the city (7. 199. 1, 7. 201. 7). — ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα: when a noun has several modifiers, one of these is in attrib. position, the rest may be outside. Central Greece, excluding Thessaly, is meant. — 7. τῇ στεινοτάτῃ: sc. ἐστίν. — κατὰ τοῦτό γε: at this point. — 8. τὸ στεινότατον . . . τῆς ἄλλης: lit. the narrowest point of the rest of the region, where English idiom requires "of the whole region." S. 1272; HA. 705. Cp. Shaks. *Midsummer N. D.* v. 1, "This is the greatest error of all the rest." — 9. κατὰ τε Ἀλπηνοῦς κτέ: more definitely explaining ἔμπροσθε . . . καὶ ὀπισθε. The distance between the two narrowest points was about

νούς, ὅπισθε ἑόντας, ἐοῦσα ἀμαξιτὸς μούνη, καὶ ἔμ-  
 προσθε κατὰ Φοῖνικα ποταμὸν ἀγχού Ἀνθήλης πόλιος,  
 ἄλλη ἀμαξιτὸς μούνη. τῶν δὲ Θερμοπυλέων τὸ μὲν  
 πρὸς ἐσπέρης ὄρος ἄβατόν τε καὶ ἀπόκρημνον, ὑψηλόν,  
 ἀνατεῖνον ἐς τὴν Οὔτην· τὸ δὲ πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ τῆς ὁδοῦ  
 θάλασσα ὑποδέκεται καὶ τενάγεια. ἔστι δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐσόδῳ<sup>15</sup>  
 ταύτῃ θερμὰ λουτρά, τὰ Χύτρον καλέουσι οἱ ἐπιχώριοι,  
 καὶ βωμὸς ἱδρυταὶ Ἡρακλέος ἐπ' αὐτοῖσι. ἐδέδμητο

fifteen stadia (7. 200. 5). — 10. **ὅπισθε**: *i.e.* looking westward from the defile. — **ἐοῦσα ἀμαξιτός**: appos. to τὸ στενότατον, the ptc. agreeing with the pred. — 12. **τῶν δὲ Θερμοπυλέων τὸ μὲν πρὸς ἐσπέρης**: *to the west of Thermopylae*. Cp. 14 and see on 7. 20. 15. The designation is inexact, since Hdt. writes as if the coast ran north and south, instead of east and west, as it does here. — 15. **θάλασσα . . . καὶ τενάγεια**: *hysteron proteron*. The locality is now greatly changed, the coast line being now some four miles eastward, and the marshes formed esp. by the alluvium of the Sperchius occupying the intervening space. The other streams now empty into the Sperchius, which enters the gulf more to the south, and about eight miles distant from its old mouth. In the dry season one may cross the marsh avoiding the Pass, where the road still runs. — 16. **θερμὰ λουτρά**: "The warm waters — whence the

name Thermopylae — break out in bold springs at the base of the cliff. — There are two main springs and several smaller ones. The water is quite warm [104° Fahrenheit] and has an unpleasantly strong odor of sulphur; the precipitation is such that now, for several hundred feet, the strip of coast over which the water makes its way to the marsh is covered with a porous stone crust. The Pass must, of course, in this way be constantly widening; but the actually narrowest point is just south (more exactly east) of the springs and out of the petrification area. . . . The Pass, outside of the part covered by the stone crust from the springs, is grown up in green bush, and to the beautiful wall of Oeta cling oaks, myrtles, firs, and pines" (Ross, *Königsreisen*, 1. 90). — **Χύτρον**: "Caldrons," the basins for collecting the water for the baths, which is hot and salt. — 17. **βωμὸς ἱδρυταὶ Ἡρακλέος**:

δὲ τεῖχος κατὰ ταύτας τὰς ἐσβολάς, καὶ τό γε παλαιὸν  
 πύλαι ἐπήσαν. ἔδειμαν δὲ Φωκεῖς τὸ τεῖχος δέισαντες,  
 ἐπεὶ Θεσσαλοὶ ἦλθον ἐκ Θεσπρωτῶν οἰκήσοντας γῆν 20  
 τὴν Αἰολίδα, τὴν περ νῦν ἐκτέαται. ἄτε δὴ πειρωμένων  
 τῶν Θεσσαλῶν καταστρέφεισθαι σφεας, τοῦτο προεφ-  
 λάξαντο οἱ Φωκεῖς καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ τὸ θερμὸν τότε ἐπήκαν  
 ἐπὶ τὴν ἔσοδον, ὥς ἂν χαραδρωθεῖη ὁ χῶρος, πᾶν  
 μηχανώμενοι ὅπως μὴ σφί ἐσβάλοιεν οἱ Θεσσαλοὶ ἐς 25  
 τὴν χώραν. τὸ μὲν νυν τεῖχος τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ παλαιού  
 τε ἐδέδμητο καὶ τὸ πλεον αὐτοῦ ἤδη ὑπὸ χρόνου ἔκειτο·  
 τοῖσι δὲ αὐτῖς ὀρθώσασι ἔδοξε ταύτῃ ἀπαμύνειν ἀπὸ  
 τῆς Ἑλλάδος τὸν βάρβαρον. κώμη δὲ ἐστὶ ἀγχοτάτω  
 τῆς ὁδοῦ, Ἀλπηνοὶ οὖνομα· ἐκ ταύτης δὲ ἐπισιτιεῖσθαι 30  
 177 ἐλογίζοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες. οἱ μὲν νυν χῶροι οὗτοι τοῖσι  
 Ἕλλησι εἶναι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπιτήδεοι· ἅπαντα γὰρ προ-  
 σκεψάμενοι καὶ ἐπιλογισθέντες ὅτι οὔτε πλήθει ἔξουσι

hot baths in general were regarded as sacred to Heracles, according to the myth that they were prepared for his refreshment by Athena (or Hephaestus). Besides, on Mt. Oeta, near by, as tradition had it, was erected the pyre on which Heracles ended his sufferings. See Soph. *Trachinians*.—18. τὰς ἐσβολάς: pl. as I. 185. 31; only the eastern pass is meant.—20. ἐκ Θεσπρωτῶν: name of people for country, as freq. Thesprotia was in Epirus, whence the Thessalians crossed over Pindus, drove out the Aeolians, and occupied the land

hitherto called Aeolis, but henceforth Thessaly. The dispossessed Aeolians migrated into Boeotia. Acc. to Thuc. I. 12, this happened sixty years after the Trojan War.—21. ἐκτέαται: see Dial. § 4. 3.—22. τοῦτο: sc. τὸ καταστρέφεισθαι.—24. ὥς ἂν χαραδρωθεῖη: might be cut into gullies. For ὥς ἂν with opt., found chiefly in Hom. and Hdt., see GMT. 329, I b.—26. ἐκ παλαιού: of old.—27. ἔκειτο: lay in ruins = συνεπεπτώκει.—28. τοῖσι: sc. τοῖς Ἕλλησι.—αὐτῖς ὀρθώσασι: postquam erexissent.

177. I. οἱ μὲν χῶροι οὗτοι: i.e.



χρήσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι οὔτε ἵππῳ, ταύτῃ σφί ἔδοξε  
δέκεσθαι τὸν ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ὥς δὲ ἐπύθοντο 5  
τὸν Πέρσῃ ἐόντα ἐν Πιερίῃ, διαλυθέντες ἐκ τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ  
ἐστρατεύοντο αὐτῶν οἱ μὲν ἐς Θερμοπύλας πεζῇ, ἄλλοι  
δὲ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐπ' Ἀρτεμίσιον.

- 178 Οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἕλληνες κατὰ τάχος ἐβοήθεον διαταχ-  
θέντες, Δελφοὶ δ' ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἐχρηστηριάζοντο  
τῷ θεῷ ὑπὲρ ἑωυτῶν καὶ τῆς Ἑλλάδος καταρρωδηκότες,  
καὶ σφί ἐχρήσθη ἀνέμοισι εὐχεσθαι· μεγάλους γὰρ  
τούτους ἔσεσθαι τῇ Ἑλλάδι συμμαχούς. Δελφοὶ δὲ 5  
δεξάμενοι τὸ μαντήιον πρῶτα μὲν Ἑλλήνων τοῖσι βου-  
λομένοισι εἶναι ἐλευθέροισι ἐξήγγειλαν τὰ χρησθέντα  
αὐτοῖσι, καὶ σφί δεινῶς καταρρωδέουσι τὸν βάρβαρον  
ἐξαγγείλαντες χάριν ἀθάνατον κατέθεντο· μετὰ δὲ  
ταῦτα οἱ Δελφοὶ τοῖσι ἀνέμοισι βωμόν τε ἀπέδεξαν ἐν 10

Artemisium and Thermopylae.—

4. σφί ἔδοξε: where ἐβουλεύσαντο was to be expected after προσκεψάμενοι καὶ ἐπιλογισθέντες. Such changes of const. are esp. freq. with δοκεῖ.—6. ἐν Πιερίῃ: see on 7. 131. 1.—διαλυθέντες ἐκ τοῦ Ἰσθμοῦ: for const. cp. 8. 56. 8.

178. 1. διαταχθέντες: in two divisions, i.e. the one going to Thermopylae, the other to Artemisium.—2. ἐχρηστηριάζοντο: cp. 7. 140. 2.—4. σφί ἐχρήσθη ἀνέμοισι εὐχεσθαι: acc. to Clemens Alex. *Strom.* p. 753, the oracle was ὦ Δελφοὶ λίσσεσθ' ἀνέμους καὶ λωῖον ἔσται. For a similar oracle to the Athenians, cp. 7. 189.—

9. ἐξαγγείλαντες . . . κατέθεντο: a complete hexameter, prob. unintentional, but which Stein thinks due to a reminiscence from some poetic account of the event, perhaps a dedicatory inscription. Cp. 7. 225. 3; also 7. 169. 6 (iambic).—κατέθεντο: laid up for themselves.—10. ἐν Θυίῃ: the locality is unknown. The heroine of this name was the legendary first priestess of Dionysus, and gave her name to the Thyiades or women who worshiped the god on Parnassus. The connection of her name with θύελλα (storm-wind) naturally suggested the placing of an altar of the winds in her τέμενος.—

Θυίῃ, τῇ περ τῆς Κηφισοῦ θυγατρὸς Θυίης τὸ τέμενός ἐστι, ἐπ' ἧς καὶ ὁ χῶρος οὗτος τὴν ἐπωνυμίην ἔχει, καὶ θυσίῃσί σφεας μετῆσαν. Δελφοὶ μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὸ χρηστήριον ἔτι καὶ νῦν τοὺς ἀνέμους ἱλάσκονται

- 179 Ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς Ξέρξεω στρατὸς ὀρμώμενος ἐκ Θέρμης πόλιος παρέβαλε νηυσὶ τῇσι ἄριστα πλεούσῃσι δέκα ἰθὺ Σκιαθου, ἐνθα ἦσαν προφυλάσσουσai νέες τρεῖς Ἑλληνίδες, Τροιζηνίη τε καὶ Αἰγιναίη καὶ Ἀττική. προῖδόντες δὲ οὗτοι τὰς νέας τῶν βαρβάρων ἐς φυγὴν 5
- 180 ὤρμησαν. τὴν μὲν δὴ Τροιζηνίην, τῆς ἦρχε Πηρξίνος, αὐτίκα αἰρέουσι ἐπισπόμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι· καὶ ἔπειτα τῶν ἐπιβατέων αὐτῆς τὸν καλλιστεύοντα ἀγαγόντες ἐπὶ τὴν πρῶρην τῆς νεὸς ἔσφαξαν, διαδέξιον ποιέόμενοι τὸν εἶλον τῶν Ἑλλήνων πρῶτον καὶ κάλλιστον. τῷ δὲ 5 σφαγιασθέντι τούτῳ οὖνομα ἦν Λέων· τάχα δ' ἂν τι

12. ἐπ' ἧς: see on 7. 40. 12.  
— 13. μετῆσαν: *approached*.

FIRST SEA FIGHT. THE HELLENIC FLEET AT CHALCIS; THE PERSIAN AT SEPIAS (CC. 179-183)

179. 1. ναυτικὸς στρατός: here really the van (ten ships) of the fleet (7. 183). — 2. παρέβαλε: like διαβάλλειν, *crossed*. — ἄριστα πλεούσῃσι: Sidonian fast sailers, acc. to 8. 92. 4. Cp. 7. 96. 3. — 3. ἰθὺ: *straight for*. — 5. προῖδόντες οὗτοι: *i.e.* the Greeks on the three ships.

180. 4. διαδέξιον . . . κάλλιστον: *making it a good omen for themselves that the first of the Greeks whom they took was also*

*very handsome*. διαδέξιος, only here, an intensified δεξιός = αἰσιος. For the form, cp. ὑποδέξιος 7. 49. 10. For the force, cp. Hom. B 353 ἀστράπτων ἐπιδέξι' ἐναίσιμα σήματα φαίνων, *lightening on the right, giving a lucky omen*. — 6. τάχα δ' ἂν τι . . . ἐπαύροιο: *and perhaps he had his name also in some degree to thank for it, i.e.* the name (Λέων), indicating preëminence, as well as his beauty, marked him as a fit sacrifice. For similar play upon a name, cp. 6. 50. 14. The aor. opt. with ἂν to express a supposition as to the past, as 9. 71. 19; oftener the pres. opt., as 7. 184. 17.

- 181 καὶ τοῦ οὐνόματος ἐπαύροιο. ἡ δὲ Αἰγιναίη, τῆς ἐτρηιάρχει Ἀσωνίδης, καὶ τινὰ σφι θόρυβον παρέσχε Πυθῶ τοῦ Ἰσχενοῦ ἐπιβατεύοντος, ἀνδρὸς ἀρίστου γενομένου ταύτην τὴν ἡμέρην· ὃς ἐπειδὴ ἡ νηὺς ἡλίσκετο ἐς τοῦτο ἀντεῖχε μαχόμενος ἐς ὃ κατεκρεουργήθη 5 ἅπας. ὥς δὲ πεσὼν οὐκ ἀπέθανε ἀλλ' ἦν ἔμπνοος, οἱ Πέρσαι, οἳ περ ἐπεβάτευον ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, δι' ἀρετὴν τὴν ἐκείνου περιποιήσαί μιν περὶ πλείστου ἐποιήσαντο, σμύρνησί τε ἰώμενοι τὰ ἔλκεα καὶ σινδόνης βυσσίνης τελαμῶσι κατελίσσοντες· καὶ μιν, ὥς ὀπίσω ἀπίκοντο 10 ἐς τὸ ἐωπτῶν στρατόπεδον, ἐπεδείκνυσαν ἐκπαγλεόμενοι πάσῃ τῇ στρατιῇ, περιέποντες εὖ· τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους τοὺς 182 ἔλαβον ἐν τῇ νηὶ ταύτῃ περιεῖπον ὥς ἀνδράποδα. αἱ μὲν δὴ δύο τῶν νεῶν οὕτω ἐχειρώθησαν· ἡ δὲ τρίτη, τῆς ἐτρηιάρχει Φόρμος ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖος, φεύγουσα ἐξοκέλλει ἐς τὰς ἐκβολὰς τοῦ Πηνειοῦ, καὶ τοῦ μὲν σκάφους ἐκράτησαν οἱ βάρβαροι, τῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν οὐ. 5 ὥς γὰρ δὴ τάχιστα ἐπώκειλαν τὴν νέα οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, ἀποθορόντες κατὰ Θεσσαλίην πορευόμενοι ἐκομίσθησαν

181. 3. ἐπιβατεύοντος: *serving as a marine*. Cp. 7. 184. 8. — 5. ἐς τοῦτο, ἐς ὃ: *emphatic for ἐς ὃ*. — κατεκρεουργήθη ἅπας: *was all chopped into butcher's meat*. The comp., as well as the simple verb, un-Attic and rare. Cp. Aesch. *Pers.* 466 παίουσι, κρεοκοποῦσι δυστήνων μέλη. For κατα-, cp. καταχορδεύνω 6. 75. 18. — 9. σινδόνης βυσσίνης: *of fine linen* ('byssus linen'). Cp. 2. 86. 25.

— 11. ἐκπαγλεόμενοι: *with great admiration*. Pythes was recaptured by the Greeks at Salamis and restored to Aegina (8. 92).

182. 1. αἱ δύο: the art. designates part of a definite whole. — 4. ἐξοκέλλει: *runs ashore*, ἐξ- indicating *from* the sea shorewards, while ἐπώκειλαν (6) means *ran upon the shore* (cp. 6. 16. 5). — 7. ἀποθορόντες: Epic and Ionic for Attic ἀποπηδήσαντες.

183 ἐς Ἀθήνας. ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες οἱ ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ στρα-  
 τοπεδευόμενοι πυνθάνονται παρὰ πυρσῶν ἐκ Σκιάθου.  
 πυνθόμενοι δὲ καὶ καταρρωδήσαντες ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀρτε-  
 μισίου μετορμίζοντο ἐς Χαλκίδα, φυλάζοντες μὲν τὸν  
 Εὐριπον, λείποντες δὲ ἡμεροσκόπους περὶ τὰ ὑψηλὰ τῆς 5  
 Εὐβοίης. τῶν δὲ δέκα νεῶν τῶν βαρβάρων τρεῖς ἐπή-  
 λασαν περὶ τὸ ἔρμα τὸ μεταξὺ ἐὼν Σκιάθου τε καὶ  
 Μαγνησίης, καλεόμενον δὲ Μύρμηκα. ἐνθαῦτα οἱ βάρ-  
 βαροι ἐπειδὴ στήλην λίθου ἐπέθηκαν κομίσαντες ἐπὶ  
 τὸ ἔρμα, ὀρμηθέντες αὐτοὶ ἐκ Θέρμης, ὥς σφι τὸ ἐμπο- 10  
 δὼν ἐγεγόνει καθαρὸν, ἐπέπλεον πάσῃσι τῇσι νηυσί,  
 ἔνδεκα ἡμέρας παρέντες μετὰ τὴν βασιλέος ἐξέλασιν  
 ἐκ Θέρμης. τὸ δὲ ἔρμα σφι κατηγήσατο ἐὼν ἐν πόρῳ  
 μάλιστα Πάμμων Σκύριος. πανημερὸν δὲ πλέοντες οἱ  
 βάρβαροι ἐξανύουσι τῆς Μαγνησίης χώρας ἐπὶ Σηπιάδα 15  
 τε καὶ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν τὸν μεταξὺ Κασθαναίης τε πόλιος  
 ἰόντα καὶ Σηπιάδος ἀκτῆς.

183. 2. παρὰ πυρσῶν: *from fire-*  
*signals*. The prep., used elsewhere  
 in pers. const., prob. because πυρ-  
 σεόντων was in the author's mind.  
 — 5. ἡμεροσκόπους: *scouts* who  
 from high points watched the  
 enemy's movements, which was  
 possible only by day of course. —  
 7. τὸ ἔρμα: *the reef* or sunken  
 rock, now known to Greek sailors  
 as *Leftari*. — 10. αὐτοί: *i.e.* the  
 main body. — ὥς σφι . . . καθαρὸν:  
*since the hindrance had now been*  
*removed, i.e.* the reef was now  
 marked by the pillar, so that the

ships could avoid it. καθαρὸν,  
 usually applied to a place (*clear*  
*of*), here used of the obstacle it-  
 self (*removed*). — 12. παρέντες:  
*having let pass*. — 13. ἐκ Θέρ-  
 μης: for position of this second  
 modifier, see on ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα 7.  
 176. 6. — σφι κατηγήσατο: *had*  
*shown them*. — ἐν πόρῳ μάλιστα:  
*exactly in the fareway*. — 15. ἐξα-  
 νύουσι: *sc.* τὴν ὁδόν. Apparently  
 intrans. (abs.), as 6. 139. 16. Cp.  
 κατανύσας 6. 140. 5. — τῆς Μαγ-  
 νησίης χώρας: *chorographic gen.*  
 with Σηπιάδα. This promontory

184 Μέχρι μὲν νυν τοῦτου τοῦ χώρου καὶ Θερμοπυλέων ἀπαθῆς τε κακῶν ἦν ὁ στρατός, καὶ πλήθος ἦν τῆν- καῦτα ἔτι, ὡς ἐγὼ συμβαλλόμενος εὐρίσκω, τῶν μὲν ἐκ τῶν νεῶν τῶν ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίης, εἰσέων ἑπτὰ καὶ διηκο- σιέων καὶ χιλιέων, τὸν μὲν ἀρχαῖον ἐκάστων τῶν ἐθνέων 5 ἐόντα ὁμιλον τέσσερας καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδας καὶ πρὸς χιλιάδα τε καὶ τετρακοσίους, ὡς ἀνὰ διηκοσίους ἄνδρας λογιζόμενοισι ἐν ἐκάστη νηί. ἐπεβάτευον δὲ ἐπὶ τού- των τῶν νεῶν, χωρὶς ἐκάστων τῶν ἐπιχωρίων ἐπιβατέων, Περσέων τε καὶ Μήδων καὶ Σακέων τριήκοντα ἄνδρες. 10

was the southern extremity of Magnesia.

ESTIMATE OF XERXES' COMBINED FORCES AT THIS POINT (CC. 184-187)

184. A general review and catalogue of the host has already been given (cc. 60-100), but only according to nationality and equipment, the general summary of numbers, which were continually swelling as the army advanced, being reserved till the moment when the threshold of Greece had been reached and just before storms and combats by sea and land had begun to change conditions. The dramatic effect of the enumeration, at this point, of the incredible host that seemed about to overwhelm Hellas is enhanced by the long-drawn-out statement of numbers.

2. πλήθος ἦν: the numbers should follow in nom. or gen., but the parenthetical ὡς . . . εὐρίσκω induces a change of const., τὸν μὲν ἀρχαῖον ὁμιλον, in which the subject πλήθος is renewed, being made to depend on εὐρίσκω. — 3. τῶν μὲν: repeated in τοῦτο μὲν τὸ ναυτικόν (18) and antithesis to τοῦ δὲ πεζοῦ (20). — 5. ἀρχαῖον: *original*, i.e. native crew of each ship before the addition of Persian and other marines. Cp. 7. 89. 2 ff. and 7. 96. 1. — ἐκάστων τῶν ἐθνέων: recounted 7. 89-95. — 6. ἐόντα: suppl. ptc. with εὐρίσκω. Cp. 7. 8. a 14. — πρὸς: adv. — 7. ὡς . . . λογιζόμενοισι: *on the supposition that one reckons*. S. 1497; H.A. 771 b. The pl., as 5. 53. 7, is unusual. — ἀνὰ διηκοσίους ἄνδρας: *at the rate of 200 men*, the usual crew of a Greek trireme, of whom some 170 were rowers. — 10. τριήκοντα;

οὗτος ἄλλος ὁμιλος γίνεται τρισμύριοι καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ πρὸς διηκόσιοί τε καὶ δέκα. προσθήσω δ' ἔτι τούτῳ καὶ τῷ προτέρῳ ἀριθμῷ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πεντηκοντέρων, ποιήσας ὃ τι πλεόν ἦν αὐτῶν ἢ ἔλασσον, ἀν' ὀγδῶκοντα ἄνδρας ἐνεῖναι. συνελέχθη δὲ ταῦτα τὰ 15 πλοῖα, ὥς καὶ πρότερον εἰρέθη, τρισχίλια. ἤδη ὦν ἄνδρες ἀν εἶεν ἐν αὐτοῖσι τέσσερες μυριάδες καὶ εἴκοσι. τοῦτο μὲν δὴ τὸ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίης ναυτικὸν ἦν, σύμπαν ἐὼν πεντήκοντα μυριάδες καὶ μία, χιλιάδες δὲ ἔπεισι ἐπὶ ταύτησι ἑπτὰ καὶ πρὸς ἑκατοντάδες ἕξ καὶ δεκάς. τοῦ 20 δὲ πεζοῦ ἐβδομήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν μυριάδες ἐγένοντο, τῶν δὲ ἱππέων ὀκτὼ μυριάδες. προσθήσω δ' ἔτι τούτοισι τὰς καμήλους τοὺς ἐλαύνοντας Ἀραβίους καὶ τοὺς τὰ ἄρματα Λίβυας, πλήθος ποιήσας διςμυρίους ἄνδρας. καὶ δὴ τό τε ἐκ τῶν νεῶν καὶ τοῦ πεζοῦ 25 πλήθος συντιθέμενον γίνεται διηκόσιαί τε μυριάδες καὶ τριήκοντα καὶ μία καὶ πρὸς χιλιάδες ἑπτὰ καὶ ἑκατοντάδες ἕξ καὶ δεκάς. τοῦτο μὲν τὸ ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς Ἀσίης

on Greek ships the usual complement of marines in early times was large, e.g. the Chians had at Lade 40 on each ship (6. 15. 5); but as more reliance came to be placed on skillful maneuvering, the number was reduced; at Salamis the Athenians had 18, in the Pelop. War 10 (Thuc. 1. 49). — 11. οὗτος ἄλλος ὁμιλος: note the rare omission of the art. The pron. is then usually post-pos. — 14. ποιήσας: *assuming*, as 24 below and 7. 186. 6. — ὃ τι πλεόν . . . ἢ ἔλασ-

σον: *whatever there was of them more or less, i.e. on the average.* — ἀν' . . . ἐνεῖναι: *that about 80 men were on each.* — 16. πρότερον: 7. 97. 10. — ἤδη ὦν: *so then.* — 17. ἀν εἶεν: for opt., see on 7. 180. 6. — 23. τὰς καμήλους: dependent on ἐλαύνοντας and outside of attrib. position, whereas τὰ ἄρματα in same const. is regular. — Ἀραβίους καὶ . . . Λίβυας: see 7. 86. With τοὺς τὰ ἄρματα sc. ἐλαύνοντας. — 25. καὶ δὴ: *and so, as* 7. 186. 6. — 28. τοῦτο: *herewith.*

στράτευμα ἔξαναχθὲν εἴρηται, ἀνευ τε τῆς θεραπήης  
 τῆς ἐπομένης καὶ τῶν σιταγωγῶν πλοίων καὶ ὅσοι 30  
 185 ἐνέπλεον τούτοισι. τὸ δὲ δὴ ἐκ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἀγόμενον  
 στράτευμα ἔτι προσλογιστέα τούτῳ παντὶ τῷ ἐξηριθμη-  
 μένῳ· δόκησιν δὲ δεῖ λέγειν. νέας μὲν νυν οἱ ἀπὸ  
 Θρήκης Ἑλληνες καὶ ἐκ τῶν νήσων τῶν ἐπικειμένων  
 τῇ Θρήκῃ παρείχοντο εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν. ἐκ μὲν νυν 5  
 τούτων τῶν νεῶν ἄνδρες τετρακισχίλιοι καὶ δισμύριοι  
 γίνονται. πεζοῦ δὲ τὸν Θρήκες παρείχοντο καὶ Παῖονες  
 καὶ Ἑορδοὶ καὶ Βοττιαῖοι καὶ τὸ Χαλκιδικὸν γένος καὶ  
 Βρύγοι καὶ Πίερες καὶ Μακεδόνες καὶ Περραιβοὶ καὶ  
 Ἑνιῆνες καὶ Δόλοπες καὶ Μάγνητες καὶ Ἀχαιοὶ 10  
 καὶ ὅσοι τῆς Θρήκης τὴν παραλίην νέμονται, τούτων  
 τῶν ἐθνέων τριήκοντα μυριάδας δοκέω γενέσθαι. αὗται  
 ὦν αἱ μυριάδες ἐκείνησι προστεθεῖσαι τῇσι ἐκ τῆς  
 Ἀσίας γίνονται αἱ πᾶσαι ἀνδρῶν αἱ μάχιμοι μυριάδες

— 29. ἔξαναχθὲν: note the ptc. (where there is another modifier) outside of attrib. position, whereas in 23 the noun modifier was so placed. — 31. ἐνέπλεον: used, as ἐνείναι (or πλεῖν and εἶναι ἐν), of the men belonging to a ship; ἐπιπλεῖν (ἐπεῖναι, ἐπιβατεύειν) of the marines and all who sailed in addition to the crew. The regular crew were mostly below the deck, the others above (Stein).

185. 2. προσλογιστέα: for impers. verbal with dependent object, see S. 2152; HA. 990. For the pl. (esp. poetic and Ionic), cp.

ἀκουστέα 3. 61. 17. Such neut. plurals of adjs are esp. frequent. — 3. δόκησιν λέγειν: *make a guess*. δόκησις, which occurs only here in Hdt., is found several times in Soph., Eur., and Thuc., but elsewhere prob. only in late writers. — ἀπὸ . . . ἐκ: change of prep. for variety. — 7. Παῖονες . . . Μακεδόνες: tribes belonging to Macedonia. — 9. Περραιβοὶ . . . Ἀχαιοὶ: tribes belonging to Thessaly. — 11. τούτων τῶν ἐθνέων: resumes πεζοῦ. — 14. αἱ πᾶσαι . . . μυριάδες: fuller explanation of the preceding μυριάδες. The repetition

185 διηκόσιαι καὶ ἐξήκοντα καὶ τέσσερες, ἔπεισι δὲ ταύτησι 15  
 τούτου ἑόντος ἀριθμὸν τοσούτου τὴν θεραπήνην τὴν  
 ἐπομένην τούτοισι καὶ τοὺς ἐν τοῖσι σιταγωγοῖσι ἀκά-  
 τοισι ἑόντας καὶ μάλα ἐν τοῖσι ἄλλοισι πλοίοισι τοῖσι  
 ἅμα πλέουσι τῇ στρατιῇ, τούτους τῶν μαχίμων ἀνδρῶν 5  
 οὐ δοκέω εἶναι ἐλάσσονας ἀλλὰ πλέονας. καὶ δὴ  
 σφεας ποίεω ἴσους ἐκείνοισι εἶναι καὶ οὔτε πλέονας  
 οὔτε ἐλάσσονας οὐδέν· ἐξισούμενοι δὲ οὗτοι τῷ μαχίμῳ  
 ἐκπληροῦσι τὰς ἴσας μυριάδας ἐκείνοισι. οὕτω πεντα-  
 κοσίας τε μυριάδας καὶ εἴκοσι καὶ ὀκτὼ καὶ χιλιάδας 10  
 τρεῖς καὶ ἑκατοντάδας δύο καὶ δεκάδας δύο ἀνδρῶν  
 ἤγαγε Ξέρξης ὁ Δαρείου μέχρι Σηπιάδος καὶ Θερμο-  
 187 πυλέων. οὗτος μὲν δὴ τοῦ συνάπαντος τοῦ Ξέρξεω  
 στρατεύματος ἀριθμὸς, γυναικῶν δὲ σιτοποιῶν καὶ

of the art. with the attribs. (αἱ πᾶ-  
 σαι, αἱ μάχιμοι) gives esp. empha-  
 sis. Hdt.'s estimate of the total  
 fighting force was, then, 2,641,610,  
 composed as follows: from Asia, on  
 triremes, 241,400; marines, 36,210;  
 on penteconters, 240,000; infantry,  
 1,700,000; cavalry, 80,000; camel-  
 drivers and charioteers, 20,000;  
 from Europe, naval force 24,000,  
 foot force 300,000.

186. 1. τοῦ μαχίμου: collec-  
 tive, as τὸ ἱππικόν 7. 87. 7.—  
 —3. ἀκάτοισι: small, light ves-  
 sels, strangely used here for trans-  
 ports.—4. καὶ μάλα: *and again*,  
 μάλα for μάλα αὖ, as 8. 66. 14  
 and freq.—5. ἅμα: governing τῇ

στρατιῇ. For irreg. position, cp.  
 μεταξὺ 7. 124. 2.—τούτους: sum-  
 ming up the foregoing, while τῶν  
 μαχίμων ἀνδρῶν repeats τοῦ μαχί-  
 μου of l. 1.—6. καὶ δὴ σφεας  
 ποίεω ἴσους ἐκείνοισι εἶναι: as in  
 Greek armies, where every hoplite  
 had his *θεράπων*, to carry his bag-  
 gage, provisions, and shield, every  
 horseman his *ἵπποκόμος* or groom.  
 But the proportion would hardly  
 hold for a Persian army, made up  
 as it was in the main of light  
 troops. Furthermore, it is clear  
 that Hdt. had in mind when speak-  
 ing of the *θεραπήνη* only the land-  
 force, not the fleet.

187. 1. τοῦ συνάπαντος τοῦ . . .



παλλακῶν καὶ εἰνούχων οὐδεὶς ἂν εἴποι ἀτρεκέα ἀριθμόν· οὐδ' αὖ ὑποζυγίων τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κτηνῶν τῶν ἀχθοφόρων καὶ κυνῶν Ἰνδικῶν τῶν ἐπομένων, οὐδ' ἂν τούτων ὑπὸ πλήθεος οὐδεὶς ἂν εἴποι ἀριθμόν. ὥστε οὐδέν μοι θῶμα παρίσταται προδοῦναι τὰ ρεῖθρα τῶν ποταμῶν ἔστι ὧν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ὁκως τὰ σιτία ἀντέχρησε θῶμά μοι μυριάσι τοσαύτησι. εὐρίσκω γὰρ συμβαλλόμενος, εἰ χοίνικα πυρῶν ἕκαστος τῆς ἡμέρης ἐλάμβανε καὶ μηδὲν πλέον, ἔνδεκα μυριάδας μεδίμνων τελεομένας ἐπ' ἡμέρῃ ἐκάστη καὶ πρὸς τριηκοσίους τε ἄλλους μεδίμνους καὶ τεσσαράκοντα. γυναιξὶ δὲ καὶ εἰνούχοισι καὶ ὑποζυγίοισι καὶ κυσὶ οὐ λογίζομαι. ἀνδρῶν δ' ἑουσέων τοσούτων μυριάδων κάλλεός τε εἵνεκα καὶ μεγάθεος οὐδεὶς αὐτῶν ἀξιονικότερος ἦν αὐτοῦ Ξέρξῳ ἔχειν τοῦτο τὸ κράτος.

188 Ὁ δὲ δὴ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς ἐπεῖτε ὀρμηθεὶς ἔπλει καὶ

στρατεύματος: repetition of art. as 7. 185. 14. — 5. κυνῶν Ἰνδικῶν: on account of their size and strength used in lion hunting. Cp. 1. 192. 19. — 6. οὐδ' ἂν . . . οὐδεὶς ἂν: the ἂν repeated with repeated negatives. — 7. παρίσταται: as 7. 46. 13. — προδοῦναι: = ἐπιλιπεῖν (7. 21. 4). Cp. τοῦ φράγματος προδεδωκότος 8. 52. 7. Cp. Xenophanes frg. 1. 5 ἄλλος δ' οἶνος ἐτοῖμος ὅς οὔποτε φησὶ προδώσειν. — 8. ἔστι ὧν: = ἐνίων. Such forms are esp. freq. in Thuc. S. 2514; HA. 998. — 9. ἀντέχρησε: as 7. 127. 10. — θῶμα: rhetorical repe-

tition. — 10. εὐρίσκω συμβαλλόμενος: as 7. 184. 3. — χοίνικα τῆς ἡμέρης: the smallest day's ration, given even to servants. Cp. Hom. τ 27 οὐ γὰρ ἀεργὸν ἀνέξομαι ὅς κεν ἐμῆς γε χοίνικος ἀπτηται. — 11. ἔνδεκα μυριάδας μεδίμνων κτέ.: a mistake in division. There were 48 choenices in a medimnus, and dividing the total number of men by this, we have  $5,283,220 \div 48 = 110,067\frac{1}{2}$ . — 12. τελεομένας: *spent, consumed*. — 16. ἀξιονικότερος: *worthier* (lit. 'worthier of victory'), to which the inf. clause ἔχειν τοῦτο τὸ κράτος is epexegetical.

κατέσχε τῆς Μαγνησίης χώρας ἐς τὸν αἰγιαλὸν τὸν  
 μεταξύ Κασθαναίης τε πόλιος ἔοντα καὶ Σηπιάδος  
 ἀκτῆς, αἱ μὲν δὴ πρῶται τῶν νεῶν ὄρμεον πρὸς γῆν,  
 ἄλλαι δ' ἐπ' ἐκείνησι ἐπ' ἀγκυρέων· ἄτε γὰρ τοῦ αἰγια- 5  
 λοῦ ἔοντος οὐ μεγάλου πρόκροσσαι ὄρμεον τὸ ἐς πόντον  
 καὶ ἐπὶ ὀκτὼ νέας. ταύτην μὲν τὴν εὐφρόνην οὕτω,  
 ἅμα δὲ ὄρθρῳ ἐξ αἰθρίας τε καὶ νηνεμίας τῆς θαλάσσης  
 ζεσάσης ἐπέπεσέ σφι χειμῶν τε μέγας καὶ πολλὸς  
 ἄνεμος ἀπηλιώτης, τὸν δὴ Ἑλλησποντίνην καλέουσι οἱ 10  
 περὶ ταῦτα τὰ χωρία οἰκημένοι. ὅσοι μὲν νυν αὐτῶν  
 αὐξόμενον ἔμαθον τὸν ἄνεμον καὶ τοῖσι οὕτω εἶχε  
 ὄρμου, οἱ δ' ἔφθησαν τὸν χειμῶνα ἀνασπάσαντες τὰς  
 νέας, καὶ αὐτοὶ τε περιῆσαν καὶ αἱ νέες αὐτῶν· ὅσας  
 δὲ τῶν νεῶν μεταρσίας ἔλαβε, τὰς μὲν ἐξέφερε πρὸς 15

THREE DAYS' STORM; PERSIAN  
 LOSSES; THE HELLENIC FLEET  
 AGAIN AT ARTEMISIUM, THE  
 PERSIAN AT APHETAE; FIF-  
 TEEN TRIREMES CAPTURED AT  
 APHETAE (CC. 188-195)

188. 2. κατέσχε: *landed*, intr.  
 as 8. 41. 1 and as usually in Attic.  
 — 4. αἱ μὲν πρῶται: part. appos.  
 to ὁ ναυτικός. — 6. πρόκροσσαι: *in*  
*rows*, perhaps lit. 'with prows pro-  
 jecting like battlements.' The  
 passage is doubtless due to a remi-  
 niscence of Hom.  $\Xi$  33 ff. — τὸ  
 ἐς πόντον: *seawards* (adv.). —  
 7. ἐπὶ ὀκτὼ νέας: *eight ships deep*.  
 The gen. is more freq. in this  
 const. — τὴν εὐφρόνην: see on 7.

12. 1. — 9. ζεσάσης: fig. Cp. Verg.  
*Georg.* 1. 327 *feruetque fretis spi-*  
*rantibus aequor*, and Job 41. 31  
 "He maketh the deep to boil like  
 a pot." Observe the sigmatism  
 of the passage. — 10. ἄνεμος ἀπη-  
 λιώτης: *i.e.* ὁ ἀφ' ἡλίου πνέων ἄνε-  
 μος (cp. 4. 22. 3). It is Boreas to  
 the Athenians (7. 189. 1) coming  
 to them from the Hellespont, *i.e.*  
 from northeast. — Ἑλλησποντίνην:  
 cp. Plin. 2. 121 *Caeciam qui vo-*  
*cant Hellespontiam*. — 12. τοῖσι  
 οὕτω εἶχε ὄρμου: *who were so*  
*moored*. For gen. with οὕτω ἔχειν,  
 see S. 1441; HA. 757 a. — 13. οἱ  
 δ': δέ in apod., as freq. in Hom.  
 and Hdt. — ἀνασπάσαντες: = ἀνελ-  
 κύσαντες. — 15. μεταρσίας: *in open*

Ἴπνους καλεομένους τοὺς ἐν Πηλίῳ, τὰς δὲ ἐς τὸν αἰγιαλόν· αἱ δὲ περὶ αὐτὴν τὴν Σηπιάδα περιέπιπτον, αἱ δὲ ἰς Μελίβοιαν πόλιν, αἱ δὲ ἐς Κασθαναίην ἐξεβράσσοντο. ἦν δὲ τοῦ χειμῶνος χρῆμα ἀφόρητον. 189 λέγεται δὲ λόγος ὡς Ἀθηναῖοι τὸν Βορέην ἐκ θεοπρόπιου ἐπεκαλέσαντο, ἐλθόντος σφί ἀλλου χρηστηρίου τὸν γαμβρόν ἐπίκουρον καλέσασθαι. Βορέης δὲ κατὰ τὸν Ἑλλήνων λόγον ἔχει γυναῖκα Ἀττικὴν, Ὠρέθυιαν τὴν Ἐρεχθεός. κατὰ δὲ τὸ κῆδος τοῦτο οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, ὥς 5 φάτις ὀρμηται, συμβαλλόμενοι σφίσι τὸν Βορέην γαμβρόν εἶναι, ναυλοχέοντες τῆς Εὐβοίης ἐν Χαλκιδί ὡς ἔμαθον αὐξόμενον τὸν χειμῶνα ἢ καὶ πρὸ τούτου, ἐθύοντό τε καὶ ἐπεκαλέοντο τὸν τε Βορέην καὶ τὴν Ὠρέθυιαν τιμωρῆσαι σφίσι καὶ διαφθεῖραι τῶν βαρβάρων 10 τὰς νέας, ὡς καὶ πρότερον περὶ Ἀθων. εἰ μὲν νυν διὰ ταῦτα τοῖσι βαρβάροισι ὀρμέουσι ὁ Βορέης ἐπέπεσε, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν· οἱ δ' ὦν Ἀθηναῖοι σφίσι λέγουσι βοηθήσαντα τὸν Βορέην πρότερον καὶ τότε ἐκείνα κατεργάσασθαι, καὶ ἱρὸν ἀπελθόντες Βορέῳ ἰδρύσαντο 15

sea, poetical form for Att. μετεώρους. — 16. Ἴπνους: "Ovens." — 18. Μελίβοιαν: between Pelion and Ossa, mentioned as one of the cities of Philoctetes. Hom. B 717. — 19. τοῦ χειμῶνος χρῆμα: the periphrasis of χρῆμα with gen. to express something of great strength or violence, borrowed from colloquial language, is freq., esp. in Hdt. and Ar. Cp. I. 36. 2 ἰὸς χρῆμα μέγα.

189. 2. ἄλλου: i.e. besides those of 7. 140 f. — 3. γαμβρόν: lit. 'marriage-relation,' here *brother-in-law*, as I. 73. 6. — 5. τὸ κῆδος: *affinitas*. Cp. Thuc. 2. 29. 16. — ὡς φάτις ὀρμηται: as the story goes, as 3. 56. 5. Usually λέγεσθαι is added, as 4. 16. 1. — 7. ναυλοχέοντες: as 7. 193. 2, 8. 6. 4, = Att. ὀρμούντες. — 11. πρότερον: cp. 6. 44. — 13. δ' ὦν: at any rate. — 15. ἀπελθόντες: ap-

190 παρὰ ποταμὸν Ἴλισσόν. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πόνῳ νέας οἱ  
 ἐλαχίστας λέγουσι διαφθαρῆναι, τετρακοσιέων οὐκ  
 ἐλάσσονας, ἄνδρας τε ἀναριθμήτους χρημάτων τε  
 πλήθος ἀφθονον· ὥστε Ἀμεινοκλεῖ τῇ Κρητίνεω ἀνδρὶ  
 Μάγνητι γηοχέοντι περὶ Σηπιάδα μεγάλως ἡ ναυηγίη 5  
 αὕτη ἐγένετο χρηστή· ὃς πολλὰ μὲν χρύσεια ποτήρια  
 ὑστέρῳ χρόνῳ ἐκβρασσόμενα ἀνείλετο, πολλὰ δὲ ἀργύ-  
 ρεα, θησαυρούς τε τῶν Περσέων εὗρε, ἄλλα τε [χρύσεια]  
 ἄφατα χρήματα περιεβάλετο. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν τᾶλλα οὐκ  
 εὐτυχέων εὐρήμασι μέγα πλούσιος ἐγένετο· ἦν γάρ 10  
 τις καὶ τοῦτον ἄχαρις συμφορὴ λυπέουσα παιδοφόνος.

191 σιταγωγῶν δὲ ὀλκάδων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πλοίων διαφθειρο-  
 μένων οὐκ ἐπὶν ἀριθμός, ὥστε δείσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ  
 τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ μή σφι κεκακωμένοισι ἐπιθέωνται  
 οἱ Θεσσαλοί, ἕρκος ὑψηλὸν ἐκ τῶν ναυηγίων περιεβά-  
 λοντο. ἡμέρας γὰρ δὴ ἐχέιμαζε τρεῖς· τέλος δὲ ἔντομά 5

parently in the sense of κατελθόν-  
 tes, returned home. — 16. παρὰ  
 ποταμὸν Ἴλισσόν: because, acc. to  
 the legend, it was while plucking  
 flowers on the banks of the Ilissus  
 that Oreithyia had been carried  
 off by Boreas. The scene is the  
 subject of a famous vase-painting.

190. 1. πόνῳ: *struggle*, as 8.  
 89. 1. — 2. λέγουσι: belongs to  
 the principal as well as the rela-  
 tive clause. — 5. γηοχέοντι: *hold-  
 ing land*, only here. — μεγάλως . . .  
 χρηστή: cp. μέγα πλούσιος below  
 (10). The separation here is for  
 emphasis. — 6. αὕτη: see App. —  
 8. θησαυρούς: *treasure chests*. —

[χρύσεια]: see App. — 9. περιεβά-  
 λετο: fig. *acquired*, as 8. 8. 6. —  
 ἀλλ': belongs really to the ptc.  
 clause, for there is the main  
 thought, explained by ἦν γὰρ  
 κτέ. — 10. ἦν λυπέουσα: more  
 emphatic periphrasis = ἐλύπει. —  
 11. παιδοφόνος: poetical term.  
 Ameinocles, it is probable, un-  
 wittingly killed one of his own  
 children.

191. 1. διαφθειρομένων: impf.  
 ptc. The pf. or aor. ptc. would  
 have been more natural. — 2. οὐκ  
 ἐπὶν ἀριθμός: as 7. 170. 22. —  
 3. κεκακωμένοισι: *in evil plight*.  
 — 4. ἕρκος: poetical term. — 5. ἐν-

τε ποιέοντες καὶ καταείδοντες γοῇσι οἱ Μάγοι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, πρὸς τε τούτοισι καὶ τῇ Θέτι καὶ τῇσι Νηρηΐσι θύοντες ἔπαυσαν τετάρτη ἡμέρῃ, ἣ ἄλλως κως αὐτὸς ἐθέλων ἐκόπασε. τῇ δὲ Θέτι ἔθουον πυθόμενοι παρὰ τῶν Ἰώνων τὸν λόγον ὡς ἐκ τοῦ χώρου τούτου ἀρ-<sup>10</sup> πασθείη ὑπὸ Πηλέος, εἴη τε ἅπασα ἡ ἀκτὴ ἡ Σηπιάς  
 192 ἐκείνης τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Νηρηίδων. ὁ μὲν δὴ τε-  
 τάρτη ἡμέρῃ ἐπέπαυτο· τοῖσι δὲ Ἑλλήσι οἱ ἡμερο-  
 σκόποι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων τῶν Εὐβοϊκῶν καταδραμόντες  
 δευτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ ἀπ' ἧς ὁ χειμὼν ὁ πρῶτος ἐγένετο,  
 ἐσήμενον πάντα τὰ γενόμενα περὶ τὴν ναυηγίην. οἱ δὲ  
 ὡς ἐπύθοντο, Ποσειδέωνι σωτῆρι εὐξάμενοι καὶ  
 σπονδὰς προχέαντες τὴν ταχίστην ὀπίσω ἡπείγοντο  
 ἐπὶ τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον, ἐλπίσαντες ὀλίγας τινὰς σφί ἀντι-  
 193 ξόους ἔσεσθαι νέας. οἱ μὲν δὴ τὸ δεύτερον ἐλθόντες  
 περὶ τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον ἐναυλόχουν, Ποσειδέωνος σωτῆρος  
 ἐπωνυμίην ἀπὸ τούτου ἔτι καὶ ἐς τότε νομίζοντες· οἱ

τομα: = σφάγια, acc. to a schol., from cutting off the heads of the victims. Cp. 2. 119. 9, and for similar ceremonies to appease the winds, see Xen. *Anab.* 4. 5. 3 and Verg. *Aen.* 2. 116.—6. καταείδοντες γοῇσι τῷ ἀνέμῳ: singing incantations to the wind with enchantments. καταείδοντες = Att. ἐπάδοντες.—8. ἔπαυσαν: sc. τὸν ἀνεμῶν.—τετάρτη ἡμέρῃ: in that quarter a rainstorm does not usually last more than three days.—9. ἐκόπασε: abated (lit. 'got tired').—10. ἀρπασθείη ὑπὸ Πη-

λέος: i.e. to become his bride. Thetis assumed all sorts of forms to elude Peleus, among them that of the cuttlefish (σηπία), whence the name of the promontory. For the story, see Apollod. 3. 13. 4 and Ovid *Metamorph.* 11. 229-265.

192. 4. ὁ πρῶτος: apparently for τὸ πρῶτον.—8. ὀλίγας τινὰς: only few. τις, generally postpos. with adjs., serves to intensify or weaken, as the context requires. Cp. 7. 104. 13.—ἀντιξόους: cp. 7. 49. 15.

193. 3. νομίζοντες: using, with

δὲ βάρβαροι, ὡς ἐπαύσατό τε ὁ ἄνεμος καὶ τὸ κῦμα  
 ἔστρωτο, κατασπάσαντες τὰς νέας ἔπλεον παρὰ τὴν 5  
 ἡπειρον, κάμψαντες δὲ τὴν ἄκρην Μαγνησίης ἰθέαν  
 ἔπλεον ἐς τὸν κόλπον τὸν ἐπὶ Παγασέων φέροντα.  
 ἔστι δὲ χῶρος ἐν τῷ κόλπῳ τούτῳ τῆς Μαγνησίης,  
 ἔνθα λέγεται τὸν Ἡρακλέα καταλειφθῆναι ὑπὸ Ἰήσονος  
 τε καὶ τῶν συνεταίρων ἐκ τῆς Ἀργούης ἐπ' ὕδωρ πεμ- 10  
 φθέντα, εὔτε ἐπὶ τὸ κῶας ἔπλεον ἐς Αἶαν τὴν Κολχίδα.  
 ἐνθεῦτεν γὰρ ἔμελλον ὑδρευσάμενοι ἐς τὸ πέλαγος  
 ἀπήσειν, ἐπὶ τούτου δὲ τῷ χώρῳ οὖνομα γέγονε Ἀφεταιί.  
 194 ἐν τούτῳ ὦν ὄρμον οἱ Ξέρξῳ ἐποιέοντο. πεντεκαίδεκα  
 δὲ τῶν νεῶν τούτων ἔτυχόν τε ὕσταται πολλὸν ἕξαν-  
 αχθεῖσαι καὶ κως κατεῖδον τὰς ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων νέας. ἔδοξάν τε δὴ τὰς σφετέρας εἶναι οἱ

acc. as several other times in Hdt., though oftener with dative.  
 —5. ἔστρωτο: *was calmed*. This fig. usage seems to be poetical. Cp. Hom. γ 158 ἐστόρεσεν δὲ θεὸς μεγαλήτεα πόντον. — κατασπάσαντες: antithesis of ἀνασπάσαντες (7. 188. 13). — 6. τὴν ἄκρην: not Sepias, but farther west, the Τισαίη ἄκρη of Apoll. Rhod. 1. 568. — ἰθέαν: sc. ὁδόν.  
 —9. λέγεται: for const. see on 7. 56. 4. Heracles was early brought into the legend of the Argo, though the earlier poets differed as to his part in the expedition. Pherecydes says he was left at Aphetae because the Argo could not bear his weight. A widespread tradi-

tion represented him as left on the coast of Mysia, where he had gone out to search for his beloved Hylas, who was carried off by the water nymphs while getting water. See the beautiful idyl of Theocritus (13). — 10. τῶν συνεταίρων: elsewhere simply ἑταῖρος. — 11. τὸ κῶας: i.e. the golden fleece. — 13. ἀπήσειν: sc. τὴν Ἀργώ, or perhaps intr. here as in Thuc. 7. 19. 21. — ἐπὶ τούτου: see on 7. 40. 12. — Ἀφεταιί: in the proper name the aspirate of the common dialect is retained. — 14. ὄρμον ἐποιέοντο: periphr. for ὥρμεον.

194. 2. πολλόν: adv. modifying ὕσταται, like πολλῶ. — 3. καὶ κως: ('and somehow') *by chance*. —

βάρβαροι καὶ πλέοντες ἐσέπεσον ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους· 5  
 τῶν ἐστρατήγει ὁ ἀπὸ Κύμης τῆς Αἰολίδος ὑπαρχος  
 Σανδῶκης ὁ Θαμασίου, τὸν δὴ πρότερον τούτων βασι-  
 λεὺς Δαρεῖος ἐπ' αἰτίῃ τοιῇδε λαβὼν ἀνεσταύρωσε,  
 ἔόντα τῶν βασιλῆων δικαστέων. ὁ Σανδῶκης ἐπὶ  
 χρήμασι ἄδικον δίκην ἐδίκασε. ἀνακρεμασθέντος ὧν 10  
 αὐτοῦ λογιζόμενος ὁ Δαρεῖος εὗρέ οἱ πλέω ἀγαθὰ τῶν  
 ἁμαρτημάτων πεποιημένα ἐς οἶκον τὸν βασιλῆιον·  
 εὐρὼν δὲ τοῦτο ὁ Δαρεῖος καὶ γνούς ὡς ταχύτερα αὐτὸς  
 ἢ σοφώτερα ἐργασμένος εἶη, ἔλυσε. βασιλέα μὲν δὴ  
 Δαρεῖον οὕτω διαφυγὼν μὴ ἀπολέσθαι περιῆν, τότε δὲ 15  
 ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας καταπλώσας ἔμελλε οὐ τὸ δεύτερον  
 διαφυγὼν ἔσεσθαι· ὡς γάρ σφεας εἶδον προσπλέοντας  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες, μαθόντες αὐτῶν τὴν γινομένην ἁμαρτάδα  
 195 ἐπαναχθέντες εὐπετέως σφέας εἶλον. ἐν τούτων μιῇ  
 Ἀρίδωλις πλέων ἦλω, τύραννος Ἀλαβάνδων τῶν ἐν  
 Καρίῃ, ἐν ἐτέρῃ δὲ ὁ Πάφιος στρατηγὸς Πενθύλος ὁ  
 Δημονόου, ὃς ἦγε μὲν δωδέκα νέας ἐκ Πάφου, ἀποβα-

6. ὁ ἀπὸ Κύμης . . . ὑπαρχος: Cp. τὸν ἐκ Δασκυλείου ὑπαρχον 3. 126. 8. Cyme, apparently, then capital of the Ionian satrapy, to which Aeolis belonged; Magnesia sometimes so regarded. — 8. ἐπ' αἰτίῃ τοιῇδε: see a similar story concerning a judgment of Cambyses, 5. 25. — 9. τῶν βασιλῆων δικαστέων: who, seven in number, formed the supreme court in Persia. — 10. ἄδικον δίκην ἐδίκασε: note the parechesis. — 13. ταχύτερα ἢ σοφώτερα: when the comparison is between two

adjs. (or advs.), both may be in the comparative. S. 1080; HA. 645. — 15. διαφυγὼν μὴ ἀπολέσθαι: μὴ with inf. expressing negative result after verb of *negative* meaning. S. 2740; HA. 1029. Cp. 7. 11. 3. — 17. διαφυγὼν ἔσεσθαι: poetical periphrasis for the fut. perfect. GMT. 81. Cp. Soph. O.T. 1146 οὐ σιωπήσας ἔσει; Ant. 1067 ἀντιδούς ἔσει.

195. 2. Ἀλαβάνδων: Alabanda was in Caria south of the Maeander. — 4. ἐκ Πάφου: in western

λὼν δέ σφεων τὰς ἔνδεκα τῷ χειμῶνι τῷ γενομένῳ κατὰ 5  
Σηπιάδα, μῆ τῇ περιγενομένῃ καταπλέων ἐπ' Ἀρτε-  
μίσιον ἦλθ. τούτους οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξιστορήσαντες τὰ  
ἐβούλοντο πυθέσθαι ἀπὸ τῆς Ξέρξεω στρατιῆς, ἀπο-  
πέμπουσι δεδεμένους ἐς τὸν Κορινθίων ἰσθμόν.

- 196 Ὁ μὲν δὴ ναυτικὸς ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων στρατός, παρέξ  
τῶν πεντεκαίδεκα νεῶν τῶν εἶπον Σανδώκεα στρατηγεῖν,  
ἀπίκοντο ἐς Ἀφετάς. Ξέρξης δὲ καὶ ὁ πεζὸς πορευθεὶς  
διὰ Θεσσαλίας καὶ Ἀχαιῆς ἐσβεβληκῶς ἦν καὶ δὴ  
τριταῖος ἐς Μηλιάς, ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ μὲν ἄμιλλαν ποιη- 5  
σάμενος ἵππων τῶν ἑωυτοῦ, ἀποπειρώμενος καὶ τῆς  
Θεσσαλίας ἵππου, πυθόμενος ὡς ἀρίστη εἴη τῶν ἐν  
Ἑλλήσει· ἔνθα δὴ αἱ Ἑλληνίδες ἵπποι ἐλείποντο πολ-  
λόν. τῶν μὲν νυν ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ ποταμῶν Ὀνόχωνος  
μῦθος οὐκ ἀπέχρησε τῇ στρατιῇ τὸ ρεῖθρον πινόμενος· 10  
τῶν δὲ ἐν Ἀχαιίῃ ποταμῶν ῥεόντων οὐδὲ ὅστις μέγι-  
στος αὐτῶν ἐστὶ Ἠπιδανός, οὐδὲ οὗτος ἀντέσχε εἰ μὴ  
197 φλαύρως. ἐς Ἄλον δὲ τῆς Ἀχαιῆς ἀπικομένῳ Ξέρξει  
οἱ κατηγεμόνες τῆς ὁδοῦ βουλόμενοι τὸ πᾶν ἐξηγεῖσθαι  
ἐλεγόν οἱ ἐπιχώριον λόγον, τὰ περὶ τὸ ἶρὸν τοῦ Λαφύ-

Cyprus. — 5. τὰς ἔνδεκα: for art.,  
see on 7. 182. 1. — 8. ἀπὸ: *terminus ex quo*, where περί is more  
common. Cp. 7. 167. 15.

XERXES IN THESSALY. ATHAMAS  
AND THE LEGEND OF HALUS  
(CC. 196-197)

196. 1. ὁ . . . ὁ: for the repe-  
tition of the art., see on 7. 185. 14,  
7. 187. 1. — 4. ἐσβεβληκῶς ἦν: peri-

phrastic for ἐσβεβλήκει. — καὶ δὴ:  
= ἤδη, as 9. 11. 13. — 5. ἐν Θεσ-  
σαλίῃ μὲν: the antithesis is ἐς  
Ἄλον δὲ 7. 197. 1. — 9. Ὀνόχω-  
νος: on this and the Apidanus,  
see on 7. 129. 11. — 10. τὸ ρεῖθρον:  
for const., see on 7. 43. 3. —  
12. οὐδὲ οὗτος: οὐδέ with epana-  
leptic dem. repeating οὐδὲ ὅστις.

197. 2. τὸ πᾶν: *everything pos-  
sible*. Cp. 7. 50. 4. — 3. τοῦ Λαφύ-



στίου Διός, ὡς Ἀθάμας ὁ Αἰόλου ἐμμηχανήσατο Φρίξω  
μόρον σὺν Ἴνοι βουλεύσας, μετέπειτα δὲ ὡς ἐκ θεοπρο-  
πίου Ἀχαιοὶ προτιθεῖσι τοῖσι ἐκείνου ἀπογόνοισι ἀέ-  
θλους τοιούσδε· ὅς ἂν ᾗ τοῦ γένεος τούτου πρεσβύτατος,

στίου Διός: *Zeus the Devourer* (from λαφύσσειν), so named from the human sacrifices offered in his worship. The bloody worship of Zeus Laphystius and the legend connected therewith of Athamas and his child-offering belonged to the old pre-Hellenic race of the Minyae, both at Boeotian Orchomenus and at Thessalian Iolcus. Zeus Laphystius laid claim, as Moloch and Melcart of the Phoenicians, to all that was first born, and the house of the Athamantids, in which the priesthood of the cult was hereditary, as a *sacrum gentile*, had as a duty to offer up its first born. But in course of time, when human sacrifices ceased, a symbolic ram had been substituted for the human victim, though the one thus relieved had to go into exile. In the local legend, as told by Hdt., the god is relieved by transference of the guilt to human beings: Athamas is there induced by his second wife, Ino, who was jealous of the son of the divorced Nephele, to plot against the life of that son, Phrixus. He, however, escaped on the golden-fleeced ram furnished him by Nephele and reached Colchis. Afterwards, in

consequence probably of some pestilence that visited the land, Athamas, as being guilty of the death of his son and so the cause of the plague, was about to be sacrificed as a purificatory offering (καθαρμοός), but was rescued by the opportune arrival of Cytissorus, son of Phrixus, with the news that Phrixus was alive. Athamas being thus relieved, the debt due the god must be paid by Cytissorus and his descendants, the first born in each generation becoming a victim to the god. But a way to evade the literal penalty was found in the substitution of the political death (ἐργεσθαι τοῦ πρυτανηίου) of the eldest son for his actual death. — 4. ὡς: *how*, after ἔλεγον, as below (5, 11). — Φρίξω: note that in the earlier tradition there was no mention of a sister, Helle, who was also plotted against and escaped with Phrixus. — 5. σὺν Ἴνοι: the legend was that she, by getting all the seed corn secretly parched (φρύγειν), caused a famine and then procured an oracle that the god must be appeased by the sacrifice of Phrixus. — 6. προτιθεῖσι: see Dial. § 4. 4. — ἀέθλους: *tasks*, as I. 126. 6, 4. 10. 12. —

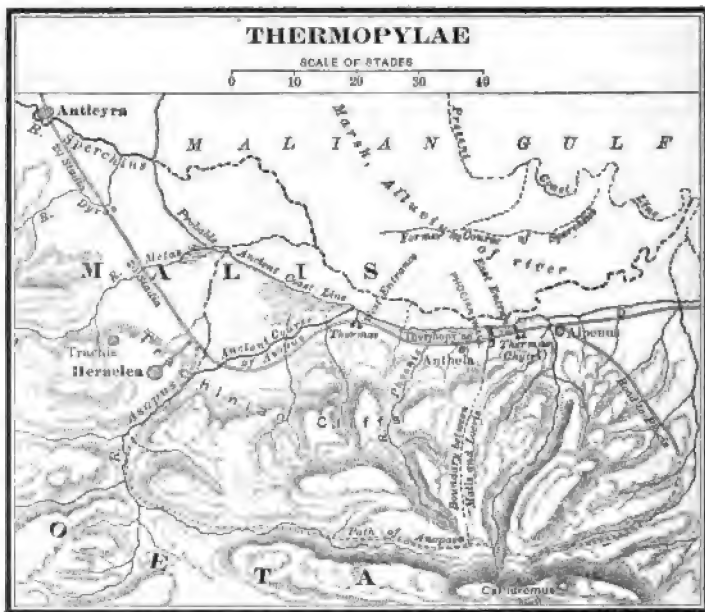
τούτῳ ἐπιτάξαντες ἔργεσθαι τοῦ ληίτου αὐτοὶ φυλακὰς ἔχουσι (λήιτον δὲ καλέουσι τὸ πρυτανήιον οἱ Ἀχαιοί). ἦν δὲ ἐσέλθῃ, οὐκ ἔστι ὅπως ἔξεισι πρὶν ἢ θύσεσθαι<sup>10</sup> μέλλῃ· ὥς τε ἔτι πρὸς τούτοις πολλοὶ ἤδη τούτων τῶν μελλόντων θύσεσθαι δείσαντες οἴχοντο ἀποδράντες ἐς ἄλλην χώραν, χρόνου δὲ προϊόντος ὀπίσω κατελθόντες ἦν ἀλίσκωνται ἐστέλλοντο ἐς τὸ πρυτανήιον· ὥς θύεται τε ἐξηγέοντο στέμμασι πᾶς πυκα-<sup>15</sup> σθεὶς καὶ ὥς σὺν πομπῇ ἐξαχθεῖς. ταῦτα δὲ πάσχουσι οἱ Κυτισσώρου τοῦ Φρίξου παιδὸς ἀπόγονοι, διότι καθαρμὸν τῆς χώρας ποιεομένων Ἀχαιῶν ἐκ θεοπροπίου Ἀθάμαντα τὸν Αἰόλου καὶ μελλόντων μιν θύειν ἀπικό-  
μενος οὗτος ὁ Κυτισσώρος ἐξ Αἴης τῆς Κολχίδος ἐρρύ-<sup>20</sup> σατο, ποιήσας δὲ τοῦτο τοῖσι ἐπιγενομένοις ἐξ ἑωυτοῦ μῆνιν τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνέβαλε. Ξέρξης δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὥς κατὰ τὸ ἄλσος ἐγίνετο, αὐτὸς τε ἔργετο αὐτοῦ καὶ τῇ στρατιῇ πάσῃ παρήγγειλε, τῶν τε Ἀθάμαντος ἀπογόνων τὴν οἰκίαν ὁμοίως καὶ τὸ τέμενος ἐσέβετο.

25

8. τοῦ ληίτου: *town hall* or *prytaneum*, from λῆός, old Ionic for λεώς.  
— 10. οὐκ ἔστι ὅπως ἔξεισι: cp. 7. 102. 11. — πρὶν ἢ: with subjv. as 7. 8. β 8. — 11. ἔτι πρὸς τούτοις: *still farther*, modifying ἔλεγον understood, on which ὥς depends.  
— 12. θύσεσθαι: with pass. force only here. — οἴχοντο ἀποδράντες: doubtless their escape would be connived at. — 14. κατελθόντες: *in case they returned*, regular term for return from exile. — 15. ἐξηγέοντο: resuming ἔλεγον (3) and incor-

porated in the ὥς clause which depends upon it. The word is bracketed by Stein and Sitzler.  
— πᾶς πυκασθεῖς: *all covered*, adj. for adv., as 7. 181. 6. — 16. ὥς: sc. θύεται, prob. the simplest explanation of this confused const. ὥς is unnecessary. — 22. ἐνέβαλε: rare with dat. (τοῖσι ἐπιγενομένοις) for more usual const. τινὰ εἰς τι. Cp. 7. 134. 1 τοῖσι . . . κατέσκηψε. — 23. τὸ ἄλσος: the sacred grove of the ἱρόν (3). — 25. ὁμοίως καὶ: *in like manner as*, as 7. 86. 8.

- 198 Ταῦτα μὲν τὰ ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ καὶ τὰ ἐν Ἀχαίῃ· ἀπὸ δὲ τούτων τῶν χώρων ἦε ἐς τὴν Μηλίδα παρὰ κόλπον



L.L. READES, ENGLAND, 1880, N.Y.

θαλάσσης, ἐν τῷ ἄμπωτίς τε καὶ ῥηχίῃ ἀνὰ πᾶσαν ἡμέρην γίνεται. περὶ δὲ τὸν κόλπον τοῦτόν ἐστι χώρος

THE COUNTRY ABOUT THERMOPYLAE (CC. 198-201)

198. 3. ἐν τῷ ἄμπωτίς . . . γίνεται: in the neighboring Euripus, particularly the northern part, the ebb and flow of the tide, at new and full moon, is esp. strong and regular, whereas in the Mediterra-

nean generally the rise is slight, seldom over one or two feet; hence the exception is the more marked. The flatness, too, of the coast in this region, makes the tide more perceptible. Cp. the same statement concerning the Arabian Gulf, 2. 11. 8. For ἀνὰ πᾶσαν ἡμέρην, *every day*, cp. 7. 106. 4 ἀνὰ πᾶν

πεδινός, τῇ μὲν εὐρύς, τῇ δὲ καὶ κάρτα στεινός· περὶ δὲ τὸν χῶρον ὄρεα ὑψηλὰ καὶ ἄβατα περικλῆει πᾶσαν τὴν Μηλίδα γῆν, Τρηχίνιαι πέτραι καλούμεναι. πρώτη μὲν νυν πόλις ἐστὶ ἐν τῷ κόλπῳ ἰόντι ἀπὸ Ἀχαιίης Ἀντικύρη, παρ' ἣν Σπερχειὸς ποταμὸς ῥέων ἐξ Ἐνιήνων ἐς θάλασσαν ἐκδιδού. ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου διὰ εἴκοσί<sup>10</sup> κου σταδίων ἄλλος ποταμὸς τῷ οὐνομα κείται Δύρας, τὸν βοηθέοντα Ἡρακλεῖ καιομένῳ λόγος ἐστὶ ἀναφανῆναι. ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου δι' ἄλλων εἴκοσι σταδίων ἄλλος<sup>199</sup> ποταμός ἐστι ὃς καλεῖται Μέλας. Τρηχὺς δὲ πόλις ἀπὸ τοῦ Μέλανος τούτου ποταμοῦ πέντε στάδια ἀπέχει. ταύτῃ δὲ καὶ εὐρύτατόν ἐστι πάσης τῆς χώρας ταύτης ἐκ τῶν ὀρέων ἐς θάλασσαν, κατ' ἃ Τρηχὺς πεπόλισται· δισχίλιά τε γὰρ καὶ δισμύρια πλέθρα τοῦ πεδίου ἐστί. <sup>5</sup> τοῦ δὲ ὄρεος τὸ περικλῆει τὴν γῆν τὴν Τρηχινίην ἐστι διασφάξ πρὸς μεσαμβρίην Τρηχίνος, διὰ δὲ τῆς δια-  
 ἔτος. — 5. **πεδινός**: *i.e.* alluvial, from the Sperchius and neighboring rivers. See on 7. 176. 15. — **τῇ μὲν**: about Trachis. — **τῇ δέ**: at Thermopylae. — **καὶ κάρτα**: cp. 7. 16. β 10. — 8. **ἰόντι**: *for one going*. S. 1497; HA. 771 b. Cp. **λογιζομένοισι** 7. 184. 8. — 9. **Ἀντικύρη**: to be distinguished from Anticyra at the foot of Parnassus in Phocis. Both were famed for hellebore. — 10. **δικά**: see on 7. 30. 6. — 11. **κεῖται** = *pass. of τίθημι*. — 12. **Ἡρακλεῖ καιομένῳ**: Heracles in torment from the Nessus-robe sent him by his wife, Deianeira, merely to cure him of his passion for Iole, but which was consuming his flesh, erected for himself a pyre on Mt. Oeta and found relief by death thereon. See on 7. 176. 17.  
<sup>199</sup>. 1. **Τρηχὺς**: on a bluff high above the plain. In the year 426 B.C. the town was refounded, under the direction of the Spartans, six stadia southward, on the left side of the Asopus ravine, and called thereafter Heracleia. — 2. **τούτου**: note the intrusion of the dem. into attrib. position since the name (Μέλανος) is treated as a second modifier. — 4. **κατ' ἃ**: *where*. — 5. **πλέθρα**: doubtless to be taken

- σφάγος Ἀσωπὸς ποταμὸς ρεῖ παρὰ τὴν ὑπωρέην τοῦ  
 200 ὄρεος. ἔστι δὲ ἄλλος Φοῖνιξ ποταμὸς οὐ μέγας πρὸς  
 μεσαμβρίην τοῦ Ἀσωποῦ, ὃς ἐκ τῶν ὀρέων τούτων ῥέων  
 ἐς τὸν Ἀσωπὸν ἐκδιδοί. κατὰ δὲ τὸν Φοῖνικα ποταμὸν  
 στεινότατόν ἐστι· ἁμαξιτὸς γὰρ μούνη [μία] δέδμηται.  
 ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Φοῖνικος ποταμοῦ πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια ἐστι 5  
 ἐς Θερμοπύλας. ἐν δὲ τῷ μεταξὺ Φοῖνικός (τε) ποτα-  
 μοῦ καὶ Θερμοπυλέων κώμη τε ἔστι τῇ οὐνομα Ἀνθήλη  
 κεῖται, παρ' ἣν δὴ παραρρέων ὁ Ἀσωπὸς ἐς θάλασσαν  
 ἐκδιδοί, καὶ χώρος περὶ αὐτὴν εὐρύς, ἐν τῷ Δήμητρος  
 τε ἱρὸν Ἀμφικτυονίδος ἱδρυται καὶ ἔδραι εἰσὶ Ἀμφι- 10  
 κτύοσι καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀμφικτύονος ἱρόν.
- 201 Βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ Ξέρξης ἐστρατοπεδεύετο τῆς Μη-  
 λίδος ἐν τῇ Τρηχινίῃ, οἱ δὲ δὴ Ἕλληνες ἐν τῇ διόδῳ·

as square measure here (a little less than a quarter of an acre), since the figures are too great for linear measure. — 8. Ἀσωπός: a rushing stream, which soon after emerging from the ravine crossed the road and flowed then parallel to the mountain range (παρὰ τὴν ὑπωρέην) through the marshes, received the Phoenix just beyond the first narrows (7. 200. 3), and emptied into the gulf short of Thermopylae.

200. 1. Φοῖνιξ: the name prob. in consequence of the red deposit on its banks from its sulphurous waters. — 9. Δήμητρος Ἀμφικτυονίδος: patron goddess of the Amphictyony. She was called also

Πυλαία. — 10. Ἀμφικτύοσι: the delegates of the twelve states belonging to the Pylaeon Amphictyony, commonly known simply as the Amphictyonic League. The spring meetings of the Amphictyons were held at Thermopylae under the auspices of Demeter, those in the autumn at Delphi, under the auspices of Apollo; though there is some doubt as to the exactness of this statement. — 11. τοῦ Ἀμφικτύονος: mythical ruler at Thermopylae and founder of the league.

201. 2. ἐν τῇ διόδῳ: i.e. in the space between the two narrows (ἔσοδοι), which space was itself called also Thermopylae. The

καλεῖται δὲ ὁ χώρος οὗτος ὑπὸ μὲν τῶν πλεόνων Ἑλλήνων  
 Θερμοπύλαι, ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν ἐπιχωρίων καὶ περιόικων  
 Πύλαι. ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο μὲν νυν ἑκάτεροι ἐν τούτοις  
 τοῖσι χωρίοις, ἐπεκράτει δὲ ὁ μὲν τῶν πρὸς βορέην  
 ἄνεμον ἐχόντων πάντων μέχρι Τρηχίνος, οἱ δὲ τῶν  
 πρὸς νότον καὶ μεσαμβρίην φερόντων τὸ ἐπὶ ταύτης  
 202 τῆς ἡπείρου. ἦσαν δὲ οἷδε Ἑλλήνων οἱ ὑπομένοντες  
 τὸν Πέρσην ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χώρῳ· Σπαρτιηγέων τε τριη-  
 κόσιοι ὀπλῖται καὶ Τεγεατέων καὶ Μαντινέων χίλιοι,  
 ἡμίσεις ἐκατέρων, ἐξ Ὀρχομενοῦ τε τῆς Ἀρκαδίας  
 εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατὸν καὶ ἐκ τῆς λοιπῆς Ἀρκαδίας χίλιοι·  
 5 τοσοῦτοι μὲν Ἀρκαδῶν, ἀπὸ δὲ Κορίνθου τετρακόσιοι  
 καὶ ἀπὸ Φλιοῦντος διηκόσιοι καὶ Μυκηνέων ὀγδώκοντα.  
 οὗτοι μὲν ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου παρήσαν, ἀπὸ δὲ Βοιωτῶν  
 Θεσπιδέων τε ἑπτακόσιοι καὶ Θηβαίων τετρακόσιοι.

camp was behind the restored wall (τείχος 7. 176. 18, 7. 208. 8), and before the wall, beyond the western narrows, was stationed the advance guard. The three days' combat was about the western narrows, whose defense was aided by the Phoenix gorge, and surged back and forth between the Asopus and the wall (Stein).—6. ὁ μὲν: Xerxes.—πρὸς βορέην: more strictly it should be πρὸς ἐσπέρην. See on 7. 176. 12.—8. πρὸς νότον καὶ μεσαμβρίην: the same superabundance as in 7. 129.—φερόντων: for variety after ἐχόντων.—τὸ ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς ἡπείρου: on this part of the

mainland, adverbial and modifying φερόντων. Cp. 7. 20. 15 and 7. 126. 6.

MUSTER-ROLL OF GREEKS AT THE PASS; LEONIDAS AND HIS SPARTANS (CC. 202-207)

202. 4. ἡμίσεις ἐκατέρων: probably, as Stein says, a closer connexion is not implied. The two towns were situated on a shut-in plateau, now called Tripolitza. 8. οὗτοι μὲν ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου: Ephorus (*apud* Diod. 11. 4) adds 1000 Laconian Perioeci, perhaps to make the total of the Peloponnesians tally with the χιλιάδες τέτορες of the inscription cited 7. 228. 6.

203 πρὸς τούτοισι ἐπικλητοὶ ἐγένοντο Λοκροὶ τε οἱ Ὀπούν-  
τιοι πανστρατιῇ καὶ Φωκέων χίλιοι. αὐτοὶ γὰρ σφεας  
οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπεκαλέσαντο, λέγοντες δι' ἀγγέλων ὡς  
αὐτοὶ μὲν ἦκοιεν πρόδρομοι τῶν ἄλλων, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ  
τῶν συμμάχων προσδόκιμοι πᾶσαν εἶεν ἡμέρην, ἥ 5  
θάλασσά τέ σφι εἴη ἐν φυλακῇ ὑπ' Ἀθηναίων τε  
φρουρεομένη καὶ Αἰγινητέων καὶ τῶν ἐς τὸν ναυτικὸν  
στρατὸν ταχθέντων, καὶ σφι εἴη δεινὸν οὐδέν· οὐ γὰρ  
θεὸν εἶναι τὸν ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀλλ' ἄνθρωπον,  
εἶναι δὲ θνητὸν οὐδένα οὐδὲ ἔσεσθαι τῷ κακὸν ἐξ ἀρχῆς 10  
γινομένῳ οὐ συνεμίχθη, τοῖσι δὲ μεγίστοισι αὐτῶν  
μέγιστα· ὀφείλειεν ὦν καὶ τὸν ἐπελαύνοντα, ὡς ἔοντα  
θνητόν, ἀπὸ τῆς δόξης πεσεῖν [ἄν]. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα πυν-  
204 θανόμενοι ἐβοήθειον ἐς τὴν Τρηχίνα. τούτοισι ἦσαν  
μὲν νυν καὶ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ κατὰ πόλιν ἐκάστων, ὁ δὲ  
θωμαζόμενος μάλιστα καὶ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος

203. 1. ἐπικλητοὶ ἐγένοντο: *had been summoned*. Such periphrases with verbals are freq. in Hdt., rare in Attic. — Ὀπούντιοι: including the Ἐπικνημίδιοι, who lived next to the pass. Hdt. distinguishes also elsewhere only Λόκροι Ὀπούντιοι and Ὀζόλαι. — 2. πανστρατιῇ: because they were in immediate danger. — αὐτοί: *independently*, i.e. without appealing to the federal council at the Isthmus. — 3. οἱ Ἕλληνες: i.e. those at Thermopylae. — 6. σφι: *for them*, i.e. the Locrians and Phocians, as σφι in 9. — εἴη ἐν φυλακῇ: *was*

*under guard*, pass. of ἔχειν ἐν φυλακῇ (7. 207. 5). Cp. ἐν σκέπῃ τοῦ πολέμου 7. 172. 11. — 8. οὐ γὰρ θεὸν εἶναι: change to accus. and inf. — 10. εἶναι δὲ θνητὸν οὐδένα . . . οὐ συνεμίχθη: for the sentiment, cp. Pind. *P.* 3. 81 ἐν παρ' ἐσλὸν πῆματα σύνδυο δαίονται βροτοῖς ἀθάνατοι and Soph. *Antig.* 613 οὐδὲν ἔρπει θνατῶν βίῳ πᾶν Διὸς ἐκτὸς ἄτας. See on 7. 46. 14. — ἐξ ἀρχῆς γινομένῳ: *straightway from birth*. Cp. Hom. *Y* 128, η 198. — 11. τοῖσι δὲ . . . μέγιστα: see on 7. 10. c 5. — 13. [ἄν]: see App.

ἡγεόμενος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἦν Λεωνίδης ὁ Ἀναξανδρίδew  
 τοῦ Λέοντος τοῦ Εὐρυκρατίδew τοῦ Ἀναξάνδρου τοῦ 5  
 Εὐρυκράτεος τοῦ Πολυδώρου τοῦ Ἀλκαμένεος τοῦ Τηλέ-  
 κλου τοῦ Ἀρχέlew τοῦ Ἠγησίlew τοῦ Δορύσσου τοῦ  
 Λεωβάτω τοῦ Ἐχέστράτου τοῦ Ἠγίος τοῦ Εὐρυσθέneos  
 τοῦ Ἀριστοδήμου τοῦ Ἀριστομάχου τοῦ Κλεοδαίου τοῦ  
 Ὑλλου τοῦ Ἡρακλέος, κτησάμενος τὴν βασιληίην ἐν 10  
 205 Σπάρτῃ ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου. διζῶν γάρ οἱ ἐόντων πρεσ-  
 βυτέρων ἀδελφεῶν, Κλεομένεός τε καὶ Δωριέος, ἀπελή-  
 λατο τῆς φροντίδος περὶ τῆς βασιληίης. ἀποθανόντος  
 δὲ Κλεομένεος ἄπαιδος ἔρσηνος γόνου, Δωριέος τε  
 οὐκέτι ἐόντος ἀλλὰ τελευτήσαντος καὶ τούτου ἐν Σικελίῃ, 5  
 οὕτω δὴ ἐς Λεωνίδην ἀνέβαινε ἡ βασιληίη, καὶ διότι  
 πρότερος ἐγεγόνει Κλεομβρότου (οὗτος γὰρ ἦν νεώτα-  
 τος Ἀναξανδρίδew παῖς) καὶ δὴ καὶ εἶχε Κλεομένεος  
 θυγατέρα. ὃς τότε ἦεν ἐς Θερμοπύλας ἐπιλεξάμενος  
 ἄνδρας τε τοὺς κατεστεῶτας τριηκοσίους καὶ τοῖσι 10

204. 4. Λεωνίδης ὁ Ἀναξανδρί-  
 δew: the genealogy of the elder  
 house of kings; the younger is  
 given when Leotychides takes com-  
 mand of the fleet 8. 131. The  
 introduction of the full table of  
 illustrious ancestors is an act of  
 homage to the distinguished man.  
 See also the case of Pausanias  
 9. 74. — 10. κτησάμενος . . . ἐξ  
 ἀπροσδοκίτου: 491 B.C. For the  
 adverbial prep. phrase, cp. ἐκ τοῦ  
 ἐμφανέος 7. 205. 17.

205. 1. διζῶν: (Attic δισσων),  
 here = δύο. — 2. ἀπελήλατο τῆς

φροντίδος: *had been far removed  
 from the thought.* — 4. ἄπαιδος  
 ἔρσηνος γόνου: see on 7. 61. 16. —  
 Δωριέος . . . ἐν Σικελίῃ: see on  
 7. 158. 7. — 6. ἀνέβαινε: see on  
 ἀνεχώρησε 7. 4. 7. — 8. καὶ δὴ καὶ  
 εἶχε: transition to independent  
 const. — 10. τοὺς κατεστεῶτας τριη-  
 κοσίους: *the usual* (lit. 'fixed')  
*three hundred*, picked men who  
 were always ready for war and  
 went out under the personal lead-  
 ership of the king. They were also  
 called ἱππεῖς. Cp. 8. 124. 13; Thuc.  
 5. 72. 20. — τοῖσι ἐτόχων παῖ-



ἐτύγχανον παῖδες ἑόντες. παραλαβὼν δὲ ἀπῖκετο καὶ  
 Θηβαίων τοὺς ἐς τὸν ἀριθμὸν λογισάμενος εἶπον, τῶν  
 ἐστρατήγει Λεοντιάδης ὁ Εὐρυμάχου. τοῦδε δὲ εἵνεκα  
 τούτους σπουδὴν ἐποιήσατο Λεωνίδης μούνους Ἑλλή-  
 νων παραλαβεῖν, ὅτι σφέων μεγάλως κατηγόρητο μηδί- 15  
 ζειν· παρεκάλει ὦν ἐς τὸν πόλεμον θέλων εἰδέναι εἴτε  
 συμπέμψουσι εἴτε καὶ ἀπερέουσι ἐκ τοῦ ἐμφανέος τὴν  
 Ἑλλήνων συμμαχίην. οἱ δὲ ἀλλοφρονέοντες ἔπεμπον.  
 206 τούτους μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Λεωνίδην πρῶτους ἀπέπεμψαν  
 Σπαρτιῆται, ἵνα τούτους ὀρῶντες οἱ ἄλλοι σύμμαχοι  
 στρατεύωνται μηδὲ καὶ οὗτοι μηδίσωσι, ἣν αὐτοὺς  
 πυνθάνωνται ὑπερβαλλομένους· μετὰ δέ, Κάρνεια γάρ  
 σφι ἦν ἐμποδῶν, ἐμελλον ὀρτάσαντες καὶ φυλακὰς 5  
 λιπόντες ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ κατὰ τάχος βοηθεῖν πανδημεῖ.  
 ὥς δὲ καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ τῶν συμμάχων ἐνένωντο καὶ αὐτοὶ  
 ἕτερα τοιαῦτα ποιήσειν· ἦν γὰρ κατὰ τὸντὸ Ὀλυμπιάς  
 τούτοις τοῖσι πρήγμασι συμπεσοῦσα· οὐκ ὦν δοκέ-

**δες ἑόντες**: that in case of their death their family might not die out. —

12. **ἐς τὸν ἀριθμὸν λογισάμενος**: see 7. 202. 9. — 15. **ὅτι . . . μηδίζειν**: because they were loudly accused of medizing. The inf. after κατηγόρητο for the regular ὅτι or ὥς. Cp. Thuc. 1. 95. 17 κατηγορεῖτο αὐτοῦ οὐχ ἡκιστα μηδισμός. — 17. **ἀπερέουσι**: will renounce. Cp. ἀπειπάμενος 7. 14. 5. — 18. **ἀλλοφρονέοντες**: though otherwise minded, i.e. inclined to medize.

206. 4. **ὑπερβαλλομένους**: putting off (sc. στρατεύεσθαι). —

**Κάρνεια**: the great Dorian festival in honor of Apollo celebrated for nine days every year toward the end of August, during which all Dorians abstained from arms. — 7. **ὥς δὲ καὶ . . . καὶ αὐτοὶ ἑτερα τοιαῦτα**: strongly pleonastic. — **ἐνένωντο**: see Dial. § 1. ii. 8. — 8. **ἦν συμπεσοῦσα**: cp. 7. 190. 10. — **κατὰ τὸντὸ τούτοις τοῖσι πρήγμασι**: see on 7. 3. 2. — **Ὀλυμπιάς**: as often in Pindar, for Attic Ὀλύμπια. The fifth and last day of the festival fell this time upon the second full moon after the summer solstice.

οντες κατὰ τάχος οὕτω διακριθήσεσθαι τὸν ἐν Θερμο-  
πύλῃσι πόλεμον ἔπεμπον τοὺς προδρόμους.

207 Οὗτοι μὲν δὴ οὕτω διενένωντο ποιήσιν· οἱ δὲ ἐν  
Θερμοπύλῃσι Ἕλληνες, ἐπειδὴ πέλας ἐγένετο τῆς ἐσβο-  
λῆς ὁ Πέρσης, καταρρωδέοντες ἐβουλεύοντο περὶ ἀπαλ-  
λαγῆς. τοῖσι μὲν νυν ἄλλοισι Πελοποννησίοισι ἐδόκει  
ἐλθοῦσι ἐς Πελοπόννησόν τὸν Ἴσθμὸν ἔχειν ἐν φυλακῇ· 5  
Λεωνίδης δὲ Φωκέων καὶ Λοκρῶν περισπερχθέντων τῇ  
γνώμῃ ταύτῃ αὐτοῦ τε μένειν ἐψηφίζετο πέμπειν τε  
ἀγγέλους ἐς τὰς πόλεις κελεύοντάς σφι ἐπιβοηθεῖν, ὥς  
ἐόντων αὐτῶν ὀλίγων στρατὸν τὸν Μήδων ἀλέξασθαι.

208 ταῦτα βουλευομένων σφέων ἔπεμπε Ξέρξης κατὰσκοπον  
ἱππέα ἰδέσθαι ὁκόσοι εἰσὶ καὶ ὅ τι ποιέοιεν. ἀκηκόει  
δὲ ἔτι ἔων ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ ὥς ἀλισμένη εἴη ταύτῃ στρατιῇ  
ὀλίγῃ, καὶ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας ὥς εἴσαν Λακεδαιμόνιοί τε  
καὶ Λεωνίδης, ἔων γένος Ἡρακλείδης. ὥς δὲ προσή- 5  
λασε ὁ ἱππεὺς πρὸς τὸ ὑπράτοπεδον, ἐθηεῖτό τε καὶ

— 10. κατὰ τάχος οὕτω: possibly merely an emphatic way of saying *so quickly* (cp. 7. 47. 6, 7. 223. 4); but the words may be rendered just as they come, *not expecting that with speed would thus be decided the contest at Thermopylae*.

207. 5. ἔχειν ἐν φυλακῇ: cp. εἶ-  
ναι ἐν φυλακῇ 7. 203. 6. — 6. περι-  
σπερχθέντων: *being indignant at*. Valckenaer thus emends for περι-  
σπερχόντων, because everywhere else the verb is σπέρχεσθαι. Cp.  
1. 32. 3, 5. 33. 19. — 9. ὀλίγων:  
*too few*. The positive gets from

the context the force of the com-  
parative. For the dependent inf.,  
see S. 1063; HA. 952.

WHAT XERXES' SCOUT REPORTED  
OF THE GREEK ARMY; XERXES  
QUESTIONS DEMARATUS (CC.  
208-209)

208. 2. ἰδέσθαι: in Ionic the  
active and middle are used practi-  
cally without distinction. — ὁκόσοι  
εἰσὶ καὶ ὅ τι ποιέοιεν: change of  
mood as often; see on 7. 151. 10. —  
4. τοὺς ἡγεμόνας: proleptic accus-  
ative. Cp. 7. 18. 10. — 6. ἐθηεῖτο:

κατώρα πᾶν μὲν οὐ τὸ στρατόπεδον· τοὺς γὰρ ἔσω  
 τεταγμένους τοῦ τείχεος, τὸ ἀνορθώσαντες εἶχον ἐν  
 φυλακῇ, οὐκ οἶά τε ἦν κατιδέσθαι· ὁ δὲ τοὺς ἔξω ἐμάν-  
 θανε, τοῖσι πρὸ τοῦ τείχεος τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειτο. ἔτυχον δὲ <sup>10</sup>  
 τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἔξω τεταγμένοι. τοὺς  
 μὲν δὴ ὥρα γυμναζομένους τῶν ἀνδρῶν, τοὺς δὲ τὰς  
 κόμας κτενιζομένους. ταῦτα δὴ θεώμενος ἐθώμαζε  
 καὶ τὸ πλήθος ἐμάνθανε. μαθὼν δὲ πάντα ἀτρεκέως  
 ἀπήλαυνε ὀπίσω κατ' ἡσυχίην· οὔτε γάρ τις ἐδίδωκε <sup>15</sup>  
 ἀλογίης τε ἐκύρησε πολλῆς· ἀπελθὼν τε ἔλεγε πρὸς  
 209 Ξέρξην τά περ ὁπώπει πάντα. ἀκούων δὲ Ξέρξης οὐκ  
 εἶχε συμβαλέσθαι τὸ ἐόν, ὅτι παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ἀπο-  
 λεόμενοι τε καὶ ἀπολέοντες κατὰ δύναμιν· ἀλλ' αὐτῷ  
 γελοῖα γὰρ ἐφαίνοντο ποιεῖν, μετεπέμψατο Δημάρητον  
 τὸν Ἀρίστωνος, ἐόντα ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ. ἀπικόμενον <sup>5</sup>  
 δέ μιν εἰρώτα Ξέρξης ἕκαστα τούτων, ἐθέλων μαθεῖν  
 τὸ ποιεόμενον πρὸς τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων. ὁ δὲ εἶπε·  
 "Ἦκουσας μὲν καὶ πρότερόν μεο, εὔτε ὀρμῶμεν ἐπὶ τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα, περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων· ἀκούσας δὲ γέλωτά

see Dial. § 4. 10. — 7. οὐ: accented because postpos. and emphatic; so esp. in contrasts with μὲν and δέ. Kr. *Spr.* 67, 10, 2. — ἔσω: note the irreg. position. Cp. μεταξύ 7. 124. 2, 7. 183. 7. — 10. τοῖσι . . . ἔκειτο: *whose post was in front of the wall*. — 12. τοὺς τὰς κόμας κτενιζομένους: the Spartans had worn long hair since the battle of Thyrea, acc. to 1. 82. 39. — 15. κατ' ἡσυχίην: *undisturbed*. —

οὔτε . . . τε: for the correlation, see on 7. 8. a 2. — 16. ἀλογίης ἐκύρησε πολλῆς: practically pass. of ἐν ἀλογίῃ ἔχειν (6. 75. 25).

209. 2. τὸ ἐόν: *the reality*, explained by the ὅτι clause. — 7. τὸ ποιεόμενον: the pass. of ποιεῖν is not freq., γίνεσθαι being commonly substituted. — πρὸς: with gen. to express agency, as 7. 2. 12. — 8. πρότερον: 7. 101 ff. — 9. γέλωτά με ἔθεο: *you made me a*

με ἔθεο λέγοντα τῇ περ ὥρων ἐκβησόμενα πρήγματα<sup>10</sup>  
ταῦτα· ἐμοὶ γὰρ τὴν ἀληθείην ἀσκέιν ἀντία σέο, βασι-  
λεῦ, ἀγὼν μέγιστός ἐστι. ἄκουσον δὲ καὶ νῦν. οἱ  
ἄνδρες οὗτοι ἀπίκαται μαχησόμενοι ἡμῖν περὶ τῆς  
ἐσόδου καὶ ταῦτα παρασκευάζονται. νόμος γάρ σφι  
ἔχων οὕτω ἐστί· ἐπεὰν μέλλωσι κινδυνεύειν τῇ ψυχῇ,<sup>15</sup>  
τότε τὰς κεφαλὰς κοσμέονται. ἐπίστασο δέ, εἰ τούτους  
γε καὶ τὸ ὑπομένον ἐν Σπάρτῃ καταστρέφει, ἔστι  
οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἔθνος ἀνθρώπων τὸ σέ, βασιλεῦ, ὑπομενεῖ  
χεῖρας ἀνταειρόμενον· νῦν γὰρ πρὸς βασιληίην τε  
καλλίστην τῶν ἐν Ἑλλήσι προσφέρει καὶ ἄνδρας<sup>20</sup>  
ἀρίστους. κάρτα τε δὴ Ξέρξῃ ἄπιστα ἐφαίνετο τὰ  
λεγόμενα εἶναι καὶ δεύτερα ἐπειρώτα ὄντινα τρόπον  
τοσοῦτοι ἔοντες τῇ ἑωυτοῦ στρατιῇ μαχῆσονται. ὁ δὲ  
εἶπε· ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐμοὶ χρῆσθαι ὥς ἀνδρὶ ψεύστη, ἦν  
<sup>210</sup>μὴ ταῦτά τοι ταύτῃ ἐκβῇ τῇ ἐγὼ λέγω. ταῦτα λέγων  
οὐκ ἔπειθε τὸν Ξέρξην. τέσσερας μὲν δὴ παρήκε  
ἡμέρας, ἐλπίζων αἰεὶ σφεας ἀποδρῆσεσθαι· πέμπτη δέ,  
ὥς οὐκ ἀπαλλάσσοντο ἀλλὰ οἱ ἐφαίνοντο ἀναιδεῖν τε  
καὶ ἀβουλίῃ διαχρεώμενοι μένειν, πέμπει ἐπ' αὐτοὺς<sup>5</sup>  
Μήδους τε καὶ Κισσίου θυμωθεῖς, ἐντειλάμενός σφεας

*laughing-stock*, as 3. 29. 7. Cp. 7. 105. 1. — 11. ἀληθείην ἀσκέιν ἀντία σέο: cp. 7. 101. 16. — 12. ἀγὼν μέγιστός ἐστι: with ἐμοί, *it is my greatest endeavor*. — 14. ταῦτα παρασκευάζονται: *are making these preparations, i.e. to this end (to fight)*. — 17. τὸ ὑπομένον: collective neuter = τοὺς ὑπομένοντας. Cp. τὸ ὑγαῖνον 7. 157. 18. —

18. ὑπομενεῖ χεῖρας ἀνταειρόμενον: see on 7. 101. 8. ὑπομένειν, *await, remain* (as in 17), in the const. with suppl. ptc. gets the meaning *dare*. — 19. βασιληίην καλλίστην: the royal family of the Heraclidae was the oldest and most famous in Greece. — 23. τοσοῦτοι: *only so many, i.e. so few*. — 24. χρῆσθαι: inf. for imv., as 7. 159. 8.

ζωγρήσαντας ἄγειν ἐς ὄψιν τὴν ἐωυτόυ. ὥς δ' ἐσέπεσον  
φερόμενοι ἐς τοὺς Ἑλληνας οἱ Μῆδοι, ἐπιπτον πολλοί,  
ἄλλοι δ' ἐπεσῆσαν καὶ οὐκ ἀπήλαννον, καίπερ μέγας  
προσπταίνοντες. δῆλον δ' ἐποίεον παντί τεω καὶ οὐκ 10  
ἦκιστα αὐτῷ βασιλεῖ ὅτι πολλοὶ μὲν ἄνθρωποι εἶεν,  
ὀλίγοι δὲ ἄνδρες. ἐγίνετο δὲ ἡ συμβολὴ δι' ἡμέρης.

211 ἐπεῖτε δὲ οἱ Μῆδοι τρηχέως περιείποντο, ἐνθαῦτα οὗτοι  
μὲν ὑπεξῆσαν, οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ἐκδεξάμενοι ἐπῆσαν, τοὺς  
ἀθανάτους ἐκάλε βασιλεύς, τῶν ἦρχε Ἰδάρνης, ὥς δὲ  
οὗτοί γε εὐπετέως κατεργασόμενοι. ὥς δὲ καὶ οὗτοι  
συνέμισγον τοῖσι Ἑλλησι, οὐδὲν πλέον ἐφέροντο τῆς 5  
στρατιῆς τῆς Μηδικῆς ἀλλὰ τὰ αὐτά, ἅτε ἐν στενο-  
πόρῳ τε χώρῳ μαχόμενοι καὶ δόρασι βραχυτέροισι  
χρεώμενοι ἢ περ οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ οὐκ ἔχοντες πλήθει  
χρήσασθαι. Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ ἐμάχοντο ἀξίως λόγου,  
ἄλλα τε ἀποδεικνύμενοι ἐν οὐκ ἐπισταμένοισι μάχεσθαι 10  
ἐξεπιστάμενοι, καὶ ὅκως ἐντρέψαιαν τὰ νῶτα, ἀλείς

THE GREEKS DEFEND THE WEST-  
ERN ENTRANCE FOR TWO DAYS  
(CC. 210-212)

210. 7. ἐσέπεσον . . . , ἐπιπτον:  
note epanastrophe — comp. fol-  
lowed by simple verb. — 8. ἐπιπτον  
. . . ἐπεσῆσαν καὶ οὐκ ἀπήλαννον:  
impfs. because these things re-  
peated themselves throughout the  
day with every onset (φερόμενοι 8).  
— 9. μέγας προσπταίνοντες: *fail-  
ing greatly*; (lit. 'stumbling'), as  
7. 170. 17. — 11. ἄνθρωποι, ἄνδρες:  
differing as *homines* and *virī*.

211. 1. τρηχέως περιείποντο:  
*were roughly handled*. Cp. 6. 15.  
2, 6. 44. 12. — 2. ἐκδεξάμενοι: *tak-  
ing their place, relieving them*. —  
τοὺς ἀθανάτους: cp. 7. 83. 3 ff.  
— 3. ὥς δὲ: *as though*, as 7. 17.  
8. — 5. οὐδὲν πλέον ἐφέροντο: cp. 7.  
168. 23. — 7. δόρασι βραχυτέροισι:  
cp. 7. 61. 6. — 10. ἄλλα ἀποδεικνύ-  
μενοι: *showing otherwise*, though  
ἄλλα is cogn. acc. with ἀποδεικνύ-  
μενοι, on which the suppl. ptc.  
ἐξεπιστάμενοι depends. — 11. ὅκως  
ἐντρέψαιαν τὰ νῶτα . . . δηθεν:  
*whenever they turned their backs*

φεύγεσκον δῆθεν, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ὀρῶντες φεύγοντας  
 βοῇ τε καὶ πατάγῳ ἐπῆσαν, οἱ δ' ἂν καταλαμβανό-  
 μενοι ὑπέστρεφον ἀντίοι εἶναι τοῖσι βαρβάροισι, μετα-  
 στρεφόμενοι δὲ κατέβαλλον πλήθει ἀναριθμήτους τῶν<sup>15</sup>  
 Περσέων· ἐπιπτον δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν Σπαρτιητέων ἐν-  
 θαῦτα ὀλίγοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν ἐδυνάετο παραλαβεῖν οἱ  
 Πέρσαι τῆς ἐσόδου πειρώμενοι καὶ κατὰ τέλεα καὶ παν-  
 212 τοίως προσβάλλοντες, ἀπήλυνον ὀπίσω. ἐν ταύτῃσι  
 τῇσι προσόδοισι τῆς μάχης λέγεται βασιλέα θεοό-  
 μενον τρις ἀναδραμεῖν ἐκ τοῦ θρόνου, δέισαντα περὶ τῇ  
 στρατιῇ. τότε μὲν οὕτω ἡγωνίσαντο, τῇ δ' ὕστεραίῃ  
 οἱ βάρβαροι οὐδὲν ἄμεινον ἀέθλεον· ἅτε γὰρ ὀλίγων<sup>5</sup>  
 ἐόντων, ἐλπίσαντές σφεας κατατετρωματίσθαι τε καὶ  
 οὐκ οἴους τε ἔσεσθαι ἔτι χεῖρας ἀνταείρασθαι συνέβαλ-  
 λον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες κατὰ τάξιν τε καὶ κατὰ ἔθνηα

*in a body they would flee appar-  
 ently.* Iterative opt., as 6. 12. 3.  
 S. 2568; HA. 914, B 2. φεύγε-  
 σκον is coördinate with ἀποδεικνύ-  
 μενοι, the const. having changed  
 to finite verb, as 7. 6. 11 and freq.  
 in Hdt. — 13. ἂν: with ὑπέστρε-  
 φον, iterative impf. S. 1894; HA.  
 835. — 15. πλήθει ἀναριθμήτους:  
*innumerable multitudes*, lit. 'in-  
 numerable in multitude.' — 17. οὐ-  
 δὲν ἐδυνάετο παραλαβεῖν: *were not  
 able to win any success.* For form  
 of ἐδυνάετο, see D. § 4. 3. — 18. τῆς  
 ἐσόδου πειρώμενοι: *trying the pass.*

212. 2. τῇσι προσόδοισι τῆς  
 μάχης: *onsets of the battle.* Cp.  
 7. 223. 3. — λέγεται βασιλέα: see

on 7. 56. 4. — θεοόμενον: this  
 was quite possible from the lofty  
 Trachis (cp. 7. 201. 2), so long as  
 the combat was before the en-  
 trance. — 3. ἀναδραμεῖν ἐκ τοῦ θρό-  
 νου: cp. 7. 15. 2. Hdt. would seem  
 to have had in mind Hom. Υ 61  
 δέισας δ' ἐκ θρόνου ἄλτο καὶ ἴαχε  
 μή οἱ ὑπερθεῖν | γαῖαν ἀναρρή-  
 ξει Ποσειδάων ἐνοσίχθων, de-  
 picting the terror of Aides at the  
 earthquake caused by Poseidon.  
 — 5. ἀέθλεον: as 1. 67. 2 =  
 ἐμάχοντο. — 6. κατατετρωματίσθαι:  
*had been disabled by wounds*, as  
 Thuc. 7. 80. 3. For pf. inf. see  
 GMT. 109. — 8. κατὰ τάξιν τε καὶ  
 κατὰ ἔθνηα: *by companies as well*

κεκοσμημένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἐν μέρει ἕκαστοι ἐμάχοντο, πλὴν Φωκέων· οὗτοι δὲ ἐς τὸ ὄρος ἐτάχθησαν φυλά- 10  
 ξοντες τὴν ἀτραπὸν. ὥς δὲ οὐδὲν εὕρισκον ἀλλοιό-  
 τερον οἱ Πέρσαι ἢ τῇ προτεραιῇ ἐνῶρων, ἀπήλουν.  
 213 ἀπορέοντος δὲ βασιλέος ὃ τι χρήσεται τῷ παρόντι  
 πρήγματι, Ἐπιάλτης ὁ Εὐρυδῆμου ἀνὴρ Μηλιεὺς ἦλθέ  
 οἱ ἐς λόγους ὥς μέγα τι παρὰ βασιλέος δοκέων οἴσσεσθαι,  
 ἔφρασε τε τὴν ἀτραπὸν τὴν διὰ τοῦ ὄρεος φέρουσιν ἐς  
 Θερμοπύλας καὶ διέφθειρε τοὺς ταύτῃ ὑπομείναντας 5  
 Ἑλλήνων. ὕστερον δὲ δέισας Λακεδαιμονίους ἔφυγε  
 ἐς Θεσσαλίην, καὶ οἱ φυγόντι ὑπὸ τῶν Πυλαγόρων, τῶν  
 Ἀμφικτυόνων ἐς τὴν Πυλαίην συλλεγομένων, ἀργύριον  
 ἐπεκηρύχθη. χρόνῳ δὲ ὕστερον, κατῆλθε γὰρ ἐς Ἀντι-  
 κύρην, ἀπέθανε ὑπὸ Ἀθηνάδεω ἀνδρὸς Τρηχινίου. ὃ 10  
 δὲ Ἀθηνάδης οὗτος ἀπέκτεινε μὲν Ἐπιάλτην δι' ἄλλην

as by nations. Cp. 9. 33. 1 κατὰ ἔθνεα καὶ κατὰ τέλεια.— 11. τὴν ἀτραπὸν: cp. 6. 175. 6 and 7. 216, 217.— 12. ἐνῶρων: sc. ἐν τοῖς Ἑλλησι. The impf. describes the continuance of an action already past, where we should use plpf.

TREACHERY OF EPIALTES. HYDARNES GETS ROUND BY THE PATH ANOPAEA INTO THE REAR OF THE GREEKS (CC. 213-218)

213. 1. ὃ τι χρήσεται τῷ παρόντι πρήγματι: *how he shall manage the present matter*. ὃ τι is cogn. acc.— 2. ἦλθέ οἱ ἐς λόγους: *came to speech with him*.

S. 1523 a; HA. 772 a.— 6. Λακεδαιμονίους: as chief of the states in the Amphictyonic League.— 7. καὶ οἱ φυγόντι ἀργύριον ἐπεκηρύχθη: *and for him when he had fled a price was proclaimed*.— τῶν Πυλαγόρων: the deputies of the twelve Amphictyonic states who constituted the assembly (Πυλαίη). See on 7. 200. 11. There were, besides these, *ἱερομνήμονες*, a sort of standing local committee charged with matters of religious worship and administration.— τῶν Ἀμφικτυόνων: appos. to Πυλαγόρων.— 8. τὴν Πυλαίην: sc. σύνοδον.— συλλεγομένων: inexact for aor., as 7. 237. 6.— 9. κατῆλθε:

αἰτίην, τὴν ἐγὼ ἐν τοῖσι ὀπισθε λόγοισι σημανέω,  
 214 ἐτιμήθη μέντοι ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων οὐδὲν ἦσσαν. Ἐπι-  
 ἀλτης μὲν οὕτω ὕστερον τούτων ἀπέθανε· ἔστι δὲ  
 ἕτερος λεγόμενος λόγος, ὡς Ὀνήτης τε ὁ Φαναγόρεω  
 ἀνὴρ Καρύστιος καὶ Κορυδαλλὸς Ἀντικυρεὺς εἰσι οἱ  
 εἶπαντες πρὸς βασιλέα τούτους τοὺς λόγους καὶ περιη- 5  
 γησάμενοι τὸ ὄρος τοῖσι Πέρσῃσι, οὐδαμῶς ἔμοιγε  
 πιστός. τοῦτο μὲν γὰρ τῷδε χρή σταθμώσασθαι, ὅτι  
 οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων Πυλαγόροι ἐπεκήρυξαν οὐκ ἐπὶ Ὀνήτῃ  
 τε καὶ Κορυδαλλῷ ἀργύριον ἀλλ' ἐπὶ Ἐπιάλτῃ τῷ  
 Τρηχινίῳ, πάντως κου τὸ ἀτρεκέστατον πυθόμενοι· 10  
 τοῦτο δὲ φεύγοντα Ἐπιάλτην ταύτην τὴν αἰτίην οἶδα-  
 μεν. εἰδείη μὲν γὰρ ἂν καὶ ἐὼν μὴ Μηλιεὺς ταύτην  
 τὴν ἀτραπὸν Ὀνήτης, εἰ τῇ χώρῃ πολλὰ ὠμιληκῶς εἶη,  
 ἀλλ' Ἐπιάλτης γάρ ἐστι ὁ περιηγησάμενος τὸ ὄρος  
 215 κατὰ τὴν ἀτραπὸν, τοῦτον αἷτιον γράφω. Ξέρξης δέ,

see on 7. 197. 14. — 12. ἐν τοῖσι ὀπισθε λόγοισι σημανέω: this promise was not fulfilled.

214. 2. ἔστι δὲ . . . λόγος: as 7. 150. 2. — 4. Καρύστιος: Carystus was in southern Euboea. — 5. περιηγησάμενοι τὸ ὄρος τοῖσι Πέρσῃσι: the acc. is governed by περι, as in 14 below; the dat. by the verb, as in 7. 215. 6. — 8. ἐπεκήρυξαν οὐκ ἐπὶ Ὀνήτῃ: note the repetition of the prep. here, a simple dat. in 7. 213. 7. — 10. πάντως κου: as 7. 157. 7. — τὸ ἀτρεκέστατον: cp. τὴν ἀτρεκείην 6. 1. 8. — 11. φεύγοντα: suppl. ptc. with οἶδα-

μεν. — οἶδαμεν: as 2. 17. 5, 4. 46. 5, 9. 60. 16; usually ἴδμεν in Hdt. See D. § 4. 6. — 12. εἰδείη μὲν γὰρ ἂν: a slight ellipsis must be supplied, something like this: "But the other story is not inherently improbable, for —." — ἐὼν μὴ Μηλιεὺς: the ptc. in this context is conditional, hence μὴ, else we should expect οὐ, since Hdt. has stated that Onetes was a Carystian (4). — 13. εἰ . . . ὠμιληκῶς εἶη: if he had had much intercourse with that country. See on ὠμίλησαν 7. 26. 10. Cp. Thuc. 6. 55. 19 συνεχῶς ὠμιλῇκει τῇ ἄρχῃ.



ἐπεὶ ἤρεσε τὰ ὑπέσχετο Ἐπιάλτης κατεργάσασθαι, αὐτίκα περιχαρῆς γενόμενος ἔπεμπε Ἑδάρνεα καὶ τῶν ἐστρατήγει Ἑδάρνης. ὀρμέατο δὲ περὶ λύχνων ἀφὰς ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. τὴν δὲ ἀτραπὸν ταύτην ἐξεύρουσιν μὲν οἱ ἐπιχώριοι Μηλιεῖς, ἐξευρόντες δὲ Θεσσαλοῖσι κατηγήσαντο ἐπὶ Φωκέας, τότε ὅτε οἱ Φωκεῖς φράξαντες τείχει τὴν ἐσβολὴν ἦσαν ἐν σκέπῃ τοῦ πολέμου· ἐκ τε τόσου δὴ κατεδέδεκτο εὐῶσα οὐδὲν χρηστὴ Μηλιεῦσι.

216 ἔχει δὲ ὧδε ἡ ἀτραπὸς αὕτη· ἄρχεται μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀσωποῦ ποταμοῦ τοῦ διὰ τῆς διασφάγος ῥέοντος, οὐνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει τούτῳ καὶ τῇ ἀτραπῇ τὸντὸ κεῖται, Ἀνόπαια· τείνει δὲ ἡ Ἀνόπαια αὕτη κατὰ ῥάχιν τοῦ ὄρεος, λήγει δὲ κατὰ τε Ἀλπηνὸν πόλιν, πρῶτην 5 εὐῶσαν τῶν Λοκρίδων πρὸς τῶν Μηλιέων, καὶ κατὰ

215. 3. τῶν ἐστρατήγει: *i.e.* "the Immortals." See 7. 83.—4. περὶ λύχνων ἀφὰς: *about lamplight*. Cp. the phrase "early candlelight."—7. τότε: see 7. 176. 19.—8. ἐν σκέπῃ τοῦ πολέμου: as 7. 172. 11.—ἐκ τόσου: *sc.* χρόνου, *terminus ex quo*, where we say, "for so long a time."—9. κατεδέδεκτο . . . Μηλιεῦσι: *sc.* ἡ ἐσβολή, *had been proved by the Malians to be of no use, i.e.* for warding off an enemy.

216. 2. Ἀσωποῦ: see on 7. 199. 8.—3. κεῖται: = *τέθεται*.—4. Ἀνόπαια: etymology and meaning uncertain. Cp. Empedocles, *frag.* 168, where ἀνόπαιον is applied to fire *blazing up*; also

Hom. *a* 320 ὄρνις δ' ὡς ἀνόπαια διέπτατο. The path is now called Μουνοπάτι, *single path* (Stein).—5. Ἀλπηνόν: cp. 7. 176. 9 30, 7. 229. 5.—6. τῶν Λοκρίδων: *sc.* πόλεων.—πρὸς τῶν Μηλιέων: *toward the Malians*.—κατὰ Μελαμπόγου τε . . . ἔδρας: the legend was that once, as Heracles was asleep at the stone named, after him, Melampyrgus, the Cercopes stole his weapons and paraded up and down in mimicry of the hero. When he awoke he seized the little creatures, swung them tied together head downward on a pole over his shoulders, and went his way. They in this position observing his characteristic of μελάμ-

- Μελαμπύγου τε καλεόμενον λίθον καὶ κατὰ Κερκώπων  
 217 ἔδρας, τῇ καὶ τὸ στεινότατόν ἐστι. κατὰ ταύτην δὴ τὴν  
 ἀτραπὸν καὶ οὕτω ἔχουσαν οἱ Πέρσαι τὸν Ἀσωπὸν  
 διαβάντες ἐπορεύοντο πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα, ἐν δεξιῇ μὲν  
 ἔχοντες ὄρεα τὰ Οἰταίων, ἐν ἀριστερῇ δὲ τὰ Τρηχινίων.  
 ἡὼς τε δὴ διέφαινε καὶ οἱ ἐγένοντο ἐπ' ἀκρωτηρίῳ τοῦ  
 ὄρους. κατὰ δὲ τοῦτο τοῦ ὄρους ἐφύλασσον, ὥς καὶ  
 πρότερόν μοι εἴρηται, Φωκέων χίλιοι ὀπλῖται, ῥνόμενοί  
 τε τὴν σφετέρην χώραν καὶ φρουρέοντες τὴν ἀτραπὸν.  
 ἡ μὲν γὰρ κάτω ἐσβολὴ ἐφυλάσσετο ὑπὸ τῶν εἰρηται.  
 τὴν δὲ διὰ τοῦ ὄρους ἀτραπὸν ἐθελονταὶ Φωκεῖς ὑποδε- 10  
 218 ξάμενοι Λεωνίδῃ ἐφύλασσον. ἔμαθον δέ σφεας οἱ  
 Φωκεῖς ὧδε ἀναβεβηκότας· ἀναβαίνοντες γὰρ ἐλάν-

πυγος, and being reminded of a warning of their mother to beware of such a person, were greatly amused. Heracles, asking the reason of their laughing and chattering and being told, got into such a good humor that he turned them loose. — 7. *Μελαμπύγου*: a rather coarse nickname of Heracles as the manliest of all heroes. — *Κερκώπων*: lit. 'tail-fellows' (cp. *κέρκος*), dwarfish, droll, and mischievous ape-like creatures, differently named in different countries, but always connected with Heracles. The tradition became localized at Thermopylae the more naturally as the Heracles-legend was firmly fixed in the region. See on 7. 176. 17. They figured consider-

ably in early Greek art, e.g. in the metopes of the temple of Selinus in Sicily, and were the subject of the Homeric poem *Κέρκωπες*. — 8. *τῇ*: the rocks referred to in 7 are part of the cliffs that shut in the narrow pass. Between these and Alpenus the way led down.

217. 5. *τε . . . καί*: for this paratactic arrangement (Homeric coördination), see on 12. 2. — *οἱ*: demonstrative. The usage is rare. — 7. *ῥνόμενοι τε . . . τὴν ἀτραπὸν*: the Anopaea ended in the mountain road which led from Alpenus over Callidromus into the valley of the upper Cephisus. The Phocians guarded at once this mountain road and the Anopaea. — 10. *ὑποδεξάμενοι Λεωνίδῃ*: *havinḡ*

θανον οἱ Πέρσαι τὸ ὄρος πᾶν ἐὼν δρυῶν ἐπίπλεον. ἦν  
 μὲν δὴ νηνεμῖη, ψόφου δὲ γινομένου πολλοῦ, ὥς οἰκὸς  
 ἦν φύλλων ὑποκεχυμένων ὑπὸ τοῖσι ποσί, ἀνά τε ἔδρα-  
 5 μον οἱ Φωκεῖς καὶ ἐνέδυνον τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ αὐτίκα οἱ  
 βάρβαροι παρήσαν. ὥς δὲ εἶδον ἄνδρας ἐνδυομένους  
 ὄπλα, ἐν θώματι ἐγένοντο· ἐλπόμενοι γὰρ οὐδέν σφι  
 φανήσεσθαι ἀντίξουν ἐνεκύρησαν στρατῷ. ἐνθαῦτα  
 Ἰδάρνης καταρρωδήσας μὴ οἱ Φωκεῖς ἔωσι Λακεδαι-  
 10 μόνιοι, εἶρετο Ἐπιάλτην ὁποδαπὸς εἴη ὁ στρατός, πυθό-  
 μενος δὲ ἀτρεκέως διέτασσε τοὺς Πέρσας ὥς ἐς μάχην.  
 οἱ δὲ Φωκεῖς ὥς ἐβάλλοντο τοῖσι τοξεύμασι πολλοῖσι  
 τε καὶ πυκνοῖσι, οἷχοντο φεύγοντες ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρεος  
 τὸν κόρυμβον, ἐπιστάμενοι ὥς ἐπὶ σφέας ὀρμήθησαν  
 15 ἀρχήν, καὶ παρεσκευάδατο ὥς ἀπολεόμενοι. οὗτοι μὲν  
 δὴ ταῦτα ἐφρόνεον, οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Ἐπιάλτην καὶ Ἰδάρνεα  
 Πέρσαι Φωκέων μὲν οὐδένα λόγον ἐποιέοντο, οἱ δὲ κατέ-  
 219 βαινον τὸ ὄρος κατὰ τάχος. τοῖσι δὲ ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι  
 ἐοῦσι Ἑλλήνων πρῶτον μὲν ὁ μάντις Μεγιστίης ἐσιδὼν  
 ἐς τὰ ἱρὰ ἔφρασε τὸν μέλλοντα ἔσεσθαι ἅμα ἡοῖ σφι

*promised Leonidas.* Cp. ὑποδέκομαι 7. 158. 22.

218. 3. τὸ ὄρος: governed by ἀναβαίνοντες. Cp. 18 κατέβαινον τὸ ὄρος, and 6. 134. 16 καταθρῶσκοντα τὴν αἵμασιν. — δρυῶν ἐπίπλεον: these mountains are still covered with fine forests of oak and pine. — 5. ἀνά τε ἔδραμον: as 7. 156. 5. — 11. ὁποδαπός: cp. 5. 13. 6 ὁποδαπή. — 15. ἐπιστάμενοι: *believing*, as freq. in Hdt. — 16. ἀρ-

χήν: adv., originally adv. accus. — 18. οὐδένα λόγον ἐποιέοντο: cp. 7. 13. 3. — οἱ δέ: Homeric repetition of the subject. See on 7. 6. 24.

THE ALLIES SENT HOME, EXCEPT THE THEBANS AND THESPIANS; THE SEER MEGISTIAS; THE FINAL STRUGGLE (CC. 219-225)

219. 3. τὰ ἱρὰ: as 7. 221. 5; usually τὰ σφάγια. — ἅμα ἡοῖ: *i.e.*

θάνατον. ἐπὶ δὲ καὶ αὐτόμολοι ἦσαν οἱ ἐξαγγείλαντες τῶν Περσέων τὴν περίοδον. οὗτοι μὲν ἔτι νυκτὸς ἑσπέρην 5 μηναν, τρίτοι δὲ οἱ ἡμεροσκόποι καταδραμόντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἄκρων ἤδη διαφαινούσης ἡμέρης. ἐνθαῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ σφῶν ἐσχίζοντο αἱ γνώμαι· οἱ μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἔων τὴν τάξιν ἐκλιπεῖν, οἱ δὲ ἀντέτεινον. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο διακριθέντες οἱ μὲν ἀπαλλάσσονται καὶ 10 διασκεδασθέντες κατὰ πόλιν ἕκαστοι ἐτράποντο, οἱ δὲ αὐτῶν ἅμα Λεωνίδῃ μένειν αὐτοῦ παρεσκευάδατο. λέγεται δὲ καὶ ὡς αὐτὸς σφῶν ἀπέπεμψε Λεωνίδης, μὴ ἀπόλωνται κηδόμενος· αὐτῷ δὲ καὶ Σπαρτιητέων τοῖσι παρῶσι οὐκ ἔχειν εὐπρεπέως ἐκλιπεῖν τὴν τάξιν ἐς τὴν ἡλθον φυλάζοντες ἀρχήν. ταύτῃ καὶ μᾶλλον 5 γνώμην πλείστὸς εἰμι, Λεωνίδην, ἐπεῖτε ἦσθετο τοὺς συμμάχους ὄντας ἀπροθύμους καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντας συνδιακινδυνεύειν, κελεῦσαί σφῶν ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι, αἰτῷ δὲ ἀπιέναι οὐ καλῶς ἔχειν. μένοντι δὲ αὐτοῦ κλέος

the next morning. They fell on the morrow (c. 223). — 4. ἐπὶ δὲ: afterwards, adv., answering to πρῶτον μὲν. — 6. οἱ ἡμεροσκόποι: sc. ἑσπέρην. See on 7. 183. 5. — 9. οὐκ ἔων: as 7. 143. 16. — 11. κατὰ πόλιν ἕκαστοι ἐτράποντο: turned to their several cities.

220. 3. αὐτῷ: for himself (emphatic). — 4. οὐκ ἔχειν: dependent on a verb of saying (ἔφη) implied in ἀπέπεμψε or a verb of thinking (ἐνόμιζε) implied in κηδόμενος. For similar change of const., cp. 7. 203. 9. — 5. ἀρχήν: cp. 7. 218.

16. — ταύτῃ καὶ μᾶλλον γνώμην πλείστὸς εἰμι: that way even more I am inclined in my opinion. Cp. 1. 120. 19 ταύτῃ πλείστος τῇ γνώμῃ εἰμί, 5. 126. 2 Ἀρισταγόρῃ ἢ πλείστη γνώμῃ ἦν, and Thuc. 3. 31. 11 τὸ πλείστον τῆς γνώμης εἶχεν ὅτι τάχιστα τῇ Πελοποννήσῃ πάλιν προσμεῖξαι. The expression γνώμην πλείστὸς εἰμι = πλείστος γινώσκω or πλείστος γνώμην τίθεμαι. There is a kind of confusion of thought in the use of both comparative (μᾶλλον) and superlative here. — 8. αὐτῷ δὲ . . . οὐ καλῶς

μέγα ἐλείπετο, καὶ ἡ Σπάρτης εὐδαιμονίη οὐκ ἐξηλεί-<sup>10</sup>  
 φετο. ἐκέχρηστο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς Πυθίης τοῖσι Σπαρ-  
 τιήτησι χρεωμένοισι περὶ τοῦ πολέμου τούτου αὐτίκα  
 κατ' ἀρχὰς ἐγειρομένου, ἥ Λακεδαίμονα ἀνάστατον  
 γενέσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἢ τὸν βασιλέα σφέων  
 ἀπολέσθαι. ταῦτα δέ σφι ἐν ἔπεσι ἐξαμέτροισι χρῆ<sup>15</sup>  
 ἔχοντα ᾤδε·

Ῥμῖν δ', ᾧ Σπάρτης οἰκήτορες εὐρυχόριοι,  
 Ἡ μέγα ἄστν ἐρικυδὲς ὑπ' ἀνδράσι Περσείδῃσι  
 Πέρθεται, ἥ τὸ μὲν οὐχί, ἀφ' Ἡρακλέος δὲ γενέθλης  
 Πενθήσει βασιλῇ φθίμενον Λακεδαίμονος οὔρος.<sup>20</sup>  
 Οὐ γὰρ τὸν ταύρων σχήσει μένος οὐδὲ λεόντων  
 Ἀντιβίην· Ζηνὸς γὰρ ἔχει μένος· οὐδέ ἔφημι  
 Σχήσεσθαι, πρὶν τῶνδ' ἕτερον διὰ πάντα δάσσηται.

ἔχειν: depends prob. on a verb of saying implied in *κελεύσαι*, though it might be construed with *γνώμην πλείστός εἰμι*. — 10. *ἐλείπετο*: change to independent const., as if simply expressing the sentiment of the historian, though the thought is Leonidas'. — 12. *αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχάς*: as 7. 88. 9, 7. 148. 6. — 13. *ἐγειρομένου*: see on 7. 148. 7. — *ἀνάστατον*: see on 7. 56. 7. — 14. *γενέσθαι*: for the aor. inf. expressing the command or warning of the oracle, see GMT. 98. — 17. Ῥμῖν δ': the oracle turns now (with δέ) to the Spartans in distinction from the rest of the states that were consulting. — *εὐρυχόριοι*: cp. Hom. *ν* 414 *εὐρύχο-*

*ρον Λακεδαίμονα*. — 18. *ἄστν ἐρικυδὲς*: note the unusual synzesis. — *ὑπ' ἀνδράσι*: *by men*, lit. 'under' (local). — 19. *πέρθεται*: prophetic present. — 20. *βασιλῇ*: poetic contraction (*βασιλέα*). — *Λακεδαίμονος οὔρος*: cp. 7. 141. 16. — 21. *τόν*: sc. *Πέρσῃν*. — *σχήσει ἀντιβίην*: *shall withstand* ('hold in conflict'). — 22. *οὐδέ ἔφημι σχήσεσθαι*: *nor will he be checked, I think*. — 23. *πρὶν . . . δάσσηται*: *till one or other of these he shall have torn in pieces, i.e.* the king or the city. The Persian is figured as a raging monster. For *πρὶν*, without *ἄν*, with the subjunctive, cp. 4. 157. 11, 6. 82. 7. The idea of *complete* destruction (*διὰ*

ταῦτά τε δὴ ἐπιλεγόμενον Λεωνίδην καὶ βουλόμενον  
κλέος καταθέσθαι μούνων Σπαρτιητέων, ἀποπέμψαι<sup>25</sup>  
τοὺς συμμάχους μᾶλλον ἢ γνώμη διενειχθέντας οὕτω  
<sup>221</sup> ἀκόσμως οἴχεσθαι τοὺς οἰχομένους. μαρτύριον δέ μοι  
καὶ τόδε οὐκ ἐλάχιστον τούτου περί γεγόνε, ὅτι καὶ τὸν  
μάντιν ὃς εἶπετο τῇ στρατιῇ ταύτῃ, Μεγιστήν τὸν  
Ἀκαρνήνα, λεγόμενον εἶναι τὰ ἀνέκαθεν ἀπὸ Μελάμ-  
ποδος, τοῦτον τὸν εἶπαντα ἐκ τῶν ἱρώων τὰ μέλλοντά<sup>5</sup>  
σφι ἐκβαίνειν, φανερός ἐστι Λεωνίδης ἀποπέμπων, ἵνα  
μὴ συναπόληταί σφι. ὁ δὲ ἀποπεμπόμενος αὐτὸς μὲν

. . . δάσσηται) is intensified by πάντα, which modifies ἕτερον. Cp. πᾶς 7. 197. 16. — 24. ἐπιλεγόμενον: = λογιζόμενον. — Λεωνίδην . . . ἀποπέμψαι: return to indir. disc. dependent on γνώμην πλεῖστός εἰμι. — 25. κλέος καταθέσθαι μούνων Σπαρτιητέων: to lay up glory for the Spartans alone. κλέος καταθέσθαι, as 9. 78. 7. — 27. οἴχεσθαι τοὺς οἰχομένους: for the const. and alliteration, cp. 7. 175. 7 ἦλωσαν οἱ ἄλόντες.

G. B. Grundy (*The Great Persian War*, 1901, p. 305 ff.) argues that the view here preferred by Herodotus came from Spartan sources, but that what really happened was probably as follows: when Leonidas learned that Hydarnes had been sent round by the path to cut off his rear, he divided his forces, dispatching about half (3500) to meet Hydarnes at a point above

the east entrance to the pass (near the modern village, Upper Drakospilia), remaining himself with the Spartans, Thespians, and Thebans (about 2800), to hold the west entrance. What happened to the 3500, if sent against Hydarnes, is of course not known. This theory gives a reasonable explanation for the retention of the Thebans (see on 7. 222. 6), as well as explains more adequately the conduct of the Thespians in remaining with Leonidas; but any such view was entirely unknown in antiquity.

221. 4. τὰ ἀνέκαθεν: by descent, adv. phrase freq. in Hdt. — ἀπὸ Μελάμποδος: a famous mythical seer, whose winning of the hand of Pero, the sister of Nestor, is told by Hom. ο 225 ff. — 5. τοῦτον: emphatically renewing the subj. of the sentence (Μεγιστήν). 6. ἀποπέμπων: conative impf. ptc.

οὐκ ἀπέλιπε, τὸν δὲ παῖδα συστρατευόμενον, ἔοντα οἱ  
 222 μουνογενέα, ἀπέπεμψε. οἱ μὲν νυν σύμμαχοι οἱ ἀπο-  
 πεμπόμενοι οἷχοντό τε ἀπιόντες καὶ ἐπείθοντο Λεωνίδῃ,  
 Θεσπιεῖς δὲ καὶ Θηβαῖοι κατέμειναν μῦνοι παρὰ  
 Λακεδαιμονίοισι. τούτων δὲ Θηβαῖοι μὲν ἀέκοντες  
 ἔμενον καὶ οὐ βουλόμενοι (κατεῖχε γάρ σφεας Λεωνίδης  
 ἐν ὁμήρων λόγῳ ποιούμενος), Θεσπιεῖς δὲ ἐκόντες  
 μάλιστα, οἱ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἀπολιπόντες Λεωνίδην καὶ  
 τοὺς μετ' αὐτοῦ ἀπαλλάξεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καταμείναντες  
 συναπέθανον. ἐστρατήγει δὲ αὐτῶν Δημόφιλος Δια-  
 δρόμεω.

10

223 Ξέρξης δὲ ἐπεὶ ἡλίου ἀνατείλαντος σπονδὰς ἐποιή-  
 σατο, ἐπισχὼν χρόνον ἐς ἀγορῆς κου μάλιστα πλη-  
 θώρην πρόσδοον ἐποιεῖτο· καὶ γὰρ ἐπέσταλτο ἐξ  
 Ἐπιάλτεω οὕτω· ἀπὸ γὰρ τοῦ ὄρεος ἡ κατάβασις συν-  
 τοματέρῃ τέ ἐστι καὶ βραχύτερος ὁ χώρος πολλὸν  
 ἢ περ ἡ περίοδος τε καὶ ἀνάβασις. οἱ τε δὴ βάρβαροι  
 οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξέρξην προσῆσαν καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Λεωνίδην  
 Ἕλληνες, ὥς τὴν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἔξοδον ποιούμενοι, ἥδη  
 πολλῶ μᾶλλον ἢ κατ' ἀρχὰς ἐπεξῆσαν ἐς τὸ εὐρύτερον

— 8. ἀπέλιπε: abs. as 7. 170. 8; with obj. expressed 7. 222. 7.

222. 4. ἀέκοντες καὶ οὐ βουλό-  
 μενοι: positive idea repeated nega-  
 tively, or *vice versa*, freq. in Hdt.  
 and Soph.—6. ἐν ὁμήρων λόγῳ  
 ποιούμενος: *counting them as hos-*  
*tages*. Cp. 3. 125. 15 ἐν ἀνδραπό-  
 δων λόγῳ ποιούμενος εἶχε. This  
 statement of Hdt. with regard to  
 the Thebans is criticised and dis-

puted by Plutarch (*de Malig. Hdt.*  
 33); and some modern scholars,  
 esp. Grote, take the view that the  
 Thebans remained of their own  
 accord.

223. 1. ἡλίου ἀνατείλαντος σπον-  
 δὰς ἐποιήσατο: cp. 7. 54. 5.—  
 2. ἀγορῆς πληθώρην: *full market*,  
*i.e.* the forenoon from about 9 to  
 12.—κου μάλιστα: cp. 7. 22. 3.—  
 9. ἐς τὸ εὐρύτερον τοῦ αὐχένος: *into*

τοῦ αὐχένος. τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔρυμα τοῦ τείχεος ἐφυλάσ-<sup>10</sup>  
 σετο, οἱ δὲ ἀνὰ τὰς προτέρας ἡμέρας ὑπεξιώντες ἐς τὰ  
 στεινόπορα ἐμάχοντο. τότε δὲ συμμίσγοντες ἔξω τῶν  
 στεινῶν ἐπιπτον πλήθει πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων· ὅπισθε  
 γὰρ οἱ ἡγεμόνες τῶν τελέων ἔχοντες μάστιγας ἐρρά-  
 πιζον πάντα ἄνδρα, αἰεὶ ἐς τὸ πρόσω ἐποτρύνοντες.<sup>15</sup>  
 πολλοὶ μὲν δὴ ἐσέπιπτον αὐτῶν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ  
 διεφθείροντο, πολλῶ δ' ἔτι πλέονες κατεπατέοντο ζωοὶ  
 ὑπ' ἀλλήλων. ἦν δὲ λόγος οὐδεὶς τοῦ ἀπολλυμένου.  
 ἅτε γὰρ ἐπιστάμενοι τὸν μέλλοντα σφίσι ἔσεσθαι  
 θάνατον ἐκ τῶν περιόντων τὸ ὅρος, ἀπεδείκνυντο ῥώμης<sup>20</sup>  
 ὅσον εἶχον μέγιστον ἐς τοὺς βαρβάρους, παραχρεώ-

*the wider part of the pass, i.e.* where the pass opens out toward Trachis (ἔξω τῶν στεινῶν 12). — 10. τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔρυμα . . . ἐφυλάσ-  
 σετο: *for the fence of the wall was kept under guard.* For this wall, cp. 7. 176. 18, 7. 215. 7. — 12. τότε δὲ συμμίσγοντες ἔξω τῶν στεινῶν: parallel to ὑπεξιώντες ἐς τὰ στεινόπορα (11) and with the same subj. (οἱ Ἕλληνες), so that the const. would naturally continue ἀπέκτειναν πολλοὺς τῶν β. Instead of this there is a sudden change of const. with πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων as subj. In view of the sudden change of subj. here and back again in l. 18, St. suggests that the words ἐπιπτον (13) . . . ἀπολλυμένου (18) may have been added later by the historian. If these words are an after addition, there

was originally a full stop, not after ἐμάχοντο, but after στεινῶν, or some verb has fallen out after στεινῶν. — 13. πλήθει πολλοί: *a vast multitude*, as 6. 44. 12, and freq. Cp. 7. 20. 4. — 14. ἔχοντες μάστιγας: cp. 7. 22. 5. — 18. ἦν δὲ λόγος οὐδεὶς τοῦ ἀπολλυμένου: *and no account was made of those that perished.* τοῦ ἀπολλυμένου is doubtless collective for τῶν ἀπολλυμένων. Cp. 4. 135. 3 τῶν ἦν ἐλάχιστος ἀπολλυμένων λόγος. — 19. ἅτε γὰρ ἐπιστάμενοι κτί: γάρ gives the cause of the great losses of the enemy, but with a sudden change of subject (to the Greeks). — 20. ῥώμης ὅσον εἶχον μέγιστον: *all the strength they had in the greatest degree.* The part. gen. depends on ὅσον, which is intensified by μέγιστον. — 21. παραχρεώ-



224 μενοί τε καὶ ἀτέοντες. δόρατα μὲν νυν τοῖσι πλέοσι αὐτῶν τηνικαῦτα ἤδη ἐτύγχανε κατεηγότα, οἱ δὲ τοῖσι ξίφεσι διεργάζοντο τοὺς Πέρσας. καὶ Λεωνίδης τε ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πόνῳ πίπτει ἀνὴρ γενόμενος ἄριστος, καὶ ἕτεροι μετ' αὐτοῦ ὀνομαστοὶ Σπαρτιητέων, τῶν ἐγὼ ὥς 5 ἀνδρῶν ἀξίων γενομένων ἐπυθόμην τὰ οὐνόματα, ἐπυθόμην δὲ καὶ ἀπάντων τῶν τριηκοσίων. καὶ δὴ Περσέων πίπτουσι ἐνθαῦτα ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καὶ ὀνομαστοί, ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ Δαρείου δύο παῖδες, Ἀβροκόμης τε καὶ Ὑπεράνθης, ἐκ τῆς Ἀρτάνεω θυγατρὸς Φραταγούνης 10 γεγονότες Δαρείῳ. ὁ δὲ Ἀρτάνης Δαρείου μὲν τοῦ βασιλέως ἦν ἀδελφεός, Ὑστάσπεος δὲ τοῦ Ἀρσάμεος παῖς· ὃς καὶ ἐκδίδους τὴν θυγατέρα Δαρείῳ τὸν οἶκον πάντα τὸν ἐωυτοῦ ἐπέδωκε, ὥς μούνου οἱ εἰούσης ταύτης 225 τέκνου. Ξέρξεώ τε δὴ δύο ἀδελφεοὶ ἐνθαῦτα πίπτουσι

μενοί τε καὶ ἀτέοντες: *with reckless disregard of life and blind fury.* ἀτέω elsewhere in classic Greek only in Hom. Y 332

Αἰνεΐα, τίς σ' ὦδε θεῶν ἀτέοντα  
κελεύει  
ἀντία Πηλείωνος ὑπερθύμιο μάχε-  
σθαι;

224. 2. οἱ δέ: Homeric repetition of the subj. Cp. 7. 6. 24. — 3. διεργάζοντο: *dispatched*, in this sense freq. in Hdt., rare in Attic. Cp. Eur. *Heracl.* 174. — Λεωνίδης τε: corresponding to καὶ δὴ Περσέων (7). — 6. ἀξίων γενομένων: *sc. πυνθίσθαι τὰ οὐνόματα αὐτῶν.* — ἐπυθόμην δὲ καὶ ἀπάντων τῶν τριη-

κοσίων: Hdt. may have read the names on the column inscribed therewith which was erected upon the grave of Leonidas at Sparta when his remains were removed thither in 440 B.C. Cp. Paus. 3. 14. 1. — 9. ἐν δὲ δὴ καί: common formula in Hdt. where some person or thing is to be singled out of a total. ἐν δὲ is adv., of course. — 10. Φραταγούνης: for the six wives of Darius, see on 7. 3. 19. — 13. ἐκδιδούς: *giving in marriage.* Cp. English "give away" (the bride). — τὸν οἶκον: *his property*, as 3. 53. 12. — 14. ἐπέδωκε: *gave in dowry.* Cp. Hom. I 147 ἐγὼ δ' ἐπὶ μείλια δώσω πολλὰ μάλ'.

μαχόμενοι (καὶ) ὑπὲρ τοῦ νεκροῦ τοῦ Λεωνίδεω Περσέων  
 τε καὶ Λακεδαιμονίων ὠθισμὸς ἐγένετο πολλός, ἐς ὃ  
 τοῦτόν τε ἀρετῇ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὑπεξείρυσαν καὶ ἐτρέψαντο  
 τοὺς ἐναντίους τετράκις. τοῦτο δὲ συνεστήκει μέχρι 5  
 οὐ οἱ σὺν Ἐπιάλτῃ παρεγένοντο. ὥς δὲ τοιούτους ἦκειν  
 ἐπύθοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐνθεῦτεν ἤδη ἑτεροιοῦτο τὸ  
 νεῖκος· ἐς τε γὰρ τὸ στενὸν τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀνεχώρεον  
 ὀπίσω καὶ παραμειψάμενοι τὸ τεῖχος ἐλθόντες ἕζοντο  
 ἐπὶ τὸν κολωνὸν πάντες ἀλείς οἱ ἄλλοι πλὴν Θηβαίων. 10  
 ὁ δὲ κολωνός ἐστι ἐν τῇ ἐσόδῳ, ὅκου νῦν ὁ λίθινος  
 λέων ἕστηκε ἐπὶ Λεωνίδῃ. ἐν τούτῳ σφέας τῷ χώρῳ  
 ἀλεξομένους μαχαίρησι, τοῖσι αὐτῶν ἐτύγχανον ἔτι  
 περιεοῦσαι, καὶ χερσὶ καὶ στόμασι κατέχωσαν οἱ βάρ-  
 βαροι βάλλοντες, οἱ μὲν ἐξ ἐναντίας ἐπισπόμενοι καὶ 15  
 τὸ ἔρυμα τοῦ τεύχεος συγχώσαντες, οἱ δὲ περιελθόντες  
 πάντοθεν περισταδόν.

225. 3. καὶ . . . πολλός: an accidental hexameter. Cp. 7. 178. 9. — ἐς δ: *until*; Herodotean. GMT. 616. — 4. ὑπεξείρυσαν: only here in classic Greek. The simple verb is poetic and dialectic. — 5. τοῦτο δὲ συνεστήκει: *this conflict continued*. — 7. ἐνθεῦτεν ἤδη: *from that point on*. Cp. 6. 76. 5. — ἑτεροιοῦτο: changed (Attic ἡλλαοῦτο), as 2. 142. 19, 9. 102. 11. — 9. ἕζοντο: *posted themselves*, as 6. 5. 14. — 11. ὁ δὲ κολωνός: between the eastern entrance and the θερμὰ λουτρά (7. 176. 16), on the left, there is a hill that is

assumed to be the one here mentioned. — 12. λέων: manifestly with reference to the name of the hero. Cp. Simonides' epitaph for this monument:

θηρῶν μὲν κάρτιστος ἐγὼ, θνατῶν  
 δ', ὃν ἐγὼ νῦν  
 φρουρῶ, τῷδε τάφῳ λαῖνος ἐμβε-  
 βαώς.

[ἀλλ' εἰ μὴ θυμὸν γε Λέων ἐμὸν οὐ-  
 νομα τ' εἶχεν,  
 οὐκ ἂν ἐγὼ τύμβῳ τῷδ' ἐπέθηκα  
 πόδας.]

— ἐπὶ Λεωνίδῃ: *in honor of Leonidas*. Cp. Hom. Ψ 776. — 16. περιελ-

- 226 Λακεδαιμονίων δὲ καὶ Θεσπιδέων τοιούτων γενομένων ὁμῶς λέγεται ἄριστος ἀνὴρ γενέσθαι Σπαρτιήτης Διηνέκης· τὸν τότε φασὶ εἰπεῖν τὸ ἔπος πρὶν ἢ συμμείξαι σφεας τοῖσι Μήδοισι, πυθόμενον πρὸς τεο τῶν Τρηχινίων ὡς ἐπεὰν οἱ βάρβιροι ἀπιέωσι τὰ τοξεύματα, 5 τὸν ἥλιον ὑπὸ τοῦ πλήθεος τῶν οἰστῶν ἀποκρύπτουσι· τοσοῦτο πλήθος αὐτῶν εἶναι· τὸν δὲ οὐκ ἐκπλαγέντα τούτοις εἰπεῖν, ἐν ἀλογίῃ ποιούμενον τὸ Μήδων πλήθος, ὡς πάντα σφί ἀγαθὰ ὁ Τρηχίνιος ξείνος ἀγγέλλοι, εἰ ἀποκρυπτόντων τῶν Μήδων τὸν ἥλιον ὑπὸ σκιῇ ἔσοιτο 10
- 227 πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἡ μάχη καὶ οὐκ ἐν ἡλίῳ. ταῦτα μὲν καὶ ἄλλα τοιουτότροπα ἔπεά φασι Διηνέκεα τὸν Λακεδαιμόνιον λιπέσθαι μνημόσυνα. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον ἀριστεύσαι λέγονται Λακεδαιμόνιοι δύο ἀδελφεοί, Ἀλφεός τε καὶ Μάρων Ὀρσιφάντου παῖδες. Θεσπιδέων δὲ εὐδο- 5 κίμει μάλιστα τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Διθύραμβος Ἀρματίδεω.
- 228 θαφθεῖσι δὲ σφί αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ τῇ περ ἔπεσον καὶ τοῖσι

θόντες πάντοθεν περισταδόν: note the alliteration; πάντοθεν περισταδόν modifying κατέχωσαν . . . βάλλοντες. Cp. Thuc. 7. 81. 24 ἐβάλλοντο περισταδόν.

INDIVIDUAL HEROIC DEEDS; EPI-  
TAPHS TO THE FALLEN; FATE  
OF TWO SURVIVORS; CONDUCT  
OF THE THEBANS (CC. 226-  
233)

226. 3. πρὶν ἢ συμμείξαι: see on 7. 2. 5.—4. πυθόμενον πρὸς τεο: rare const. for τινός or παρά τινος, or perhaps this is treated as

practically pass. const.—5. ἀπιέωσι: Att. ἀφίωσι.—6. ὑπὸ τοῦ πλήθεος: cp. 7. 187. 6.—7. τὸν δέ: resuming τόν above (3).—8. ἐν ἀλογίῃ ποιούμενον: treating with contempt. Cp. 7. 208. 16.—11. καὶ οὐκ ἐν ἡλίῳ: see on 7. 40. 4, 7. 46. 13, 7. 222. 4.

227. 2. τοιουτότροπα: found only here in Hdt., but four times in Thuc. (2. 8. 12, 2. 13. 32, 4. 25. 20, 8. 84. 20).—3. λιπέσθαι μνημόσυνα: cp. 24. 3.

228. 1. θαφθεῖσι: Att. ταφείσι.—αὐτοῦ ταύτῃ: see on 7.

πρότερον τελευτήσασι ἢ ὑπὸ Λεωνίδεω ἀποπεμφθέντας  
οἶχέσθαι, ἐπιγέγραπται γράμματα λέγοντα τάδε·

Μυριάσιν ποτὲ τῇδε τριακοσίαις ἐμάχοντο

Ἐκ Πελοποννάσου χιλιάδες τέτορες.

5

ταῦτα μὲν δὴ τοῖσι πᾶσι ἐπιγέγραπται, τοῖσι δὲ Σπαρ-  
τήτησι ἰδίῃ·

᾿Ω ξεῖν', ἀγγέλλειν Λακεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῇδε

Κείμεθα τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι.

Λακεδαιμονίοισι μὲν δὴ τοῦτο, τῷ δὲ μάντι τόδε·

10

Μνήμα τόδε κλεινοῖο Μεγιστία, ὃν ποτε Μῆδοι

Σπερχεῖον ποταμὸν κτεῖναν ἀμειψάμενοι,

Μάντιος, ὃς τότε Κῆρας ἐπερχομένας σάφα εἰδὼς

Οὐκ ἔτλη Σπάρτης ἡγεμόνας προλιπεῖν.

10. ᾿θ 12. — 2. πρότερον ἢ: with inf., as 7. 2. 5. Cp. 7. 226. 3. — 3. γράμματα: *inscription, epitaph*. There is an inexactness in statement here, for the inscription, taken with Hdt.'s expression (θαφθεῖσι), would imply that 4000 fell, whereas after Hydarnes' circuit of the pass had become known, Hdt. tells us (7. 222) all had been sent home except the Spartiatae, the Thespians, and the Thebans. Furthermore the inscription says ἐκ Πελοποννάσου χιλιάδες τέτορες, whereas acc. to the enumeration in 7. 202 the number was 3100. — 4. μυριάσιν τριακοσίαις: an exaggeration even of Hdt.'s numbers as given 7. 185. 14. — 5. Πελοπον-

νάσου: Doric form, as is also τέτορες (= τέσσαρες). — 8. ἀγγέλλειν: inf. for inv. — 9. ῥήμασι: = νόμοις. Later authors give νομίμοις, but ῥήμασι seems to be used with reference to the ῥήτραι of the Lycurgean legislation. Cicero's translation of this most famous of the epitaphs (*Tusc.* 1. 42) is:

*Dic, hospes, Spartae nos te hic  
vidisse iacentes,  
Dum sanctis patriae legibus obse-  
quimur.*

— 11. Μεγιστία: Doric gen. —

12. ἀμειψάμενοι: = διαβάντες. Cp. Hes. *Theog.* 749; Aesch. *Choëph.* 965; and παραμειψάμενοι 7. 225. 9.

— 14. οὐκ ἔτλη: *did not endure*, as

ἐπιγράμμασι μὲν νυν καὶ στήλῃσι, ἔξω ἢ τὸ τοῦ μάν-  
τιος ἐπίγραμμα, Ἀμφικτύονές εἰσὶ σφεας οἱ ἐπικοσμή-  
σαντες· τὸ δὲ τοῦ μάντιος Μεγιστίειω Σιμωνίδης ὁ  
Λεωπρέπεός ἐστι κατὰ ξεινίην ὁ ἐπιγράψας.

229 Δύο δὲ τούτων τῶν τριηκοσίων λέγεται Εὐρυτόν τε  
καὶ Ἀριστόδημον, παρὲν αὐτοῖσι ἀμφοτέροισι κοινῶ  
λόγῳ χρησαμένοισι ἢ ἀποσωθῆναι ὁμοῦ ἐς Σπάρτην,  
ὥς μεμετιμένοι τε ἦσαν ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὑπὸ Λεω-  
νίδεω καὶ κατεκέατο ἐν Ἀλπηνοῖσι ὀφθαλμιῶντες ἐς τὸ 5  
ἔσχατον, ἢ εἰ γε μὴ ἐβούλοντο νοστήσαι, ἀποθανεῖν  
ἅμα τοῖσι ἄλλοις, παρεόν σφι τούτων τὰ ἕτερα ποιεῖν  
οὐκ ἐβελῆσαι ὁμοφρονεῖν, ἀλλὰ γνώμῃ διενειχθέντας  
Εὐρυτον μὲν πυθόμενον τῶν Περσέων τὴν περίοδον  
αἰτήσαντά τε τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐνδύντα ἄγειν αὐτὸν κελεῦσαι 10

freq. in Hom.—15. ἔξω ἢ: *except*, as  
2. 3. 12. Cp. πλὴν ἢ 6. 5. 15.—τὸ  
... ἐπίγραμμα: the regular const.  
would be τῷ ἐπιγράμματι, but  
the acc. is dependent also in  
loose const. on ἐπικοσμήσαντες.  
—17. Σιμωνίδης: of Ceos (556–  
468 B.C.), as a lyric poet second  
only to Pindar, and surpassing all  
others in the noble epitaphs in  
elegiac verse dedicated to the  
heroes of the Persian wars. He  
was an intimate at the courts of  
various tyrants, first of the Peis-  
istratidae at Athens, then of the  
Aleuadae and Scopadae in Thes-  
saly, finally of Hiero at Syracuse.  
In the Persian war period he was  
the friend at Athens of Miltiades,

Themistocles, and Pausanias.—  
18. κατὰ ξεινίην ὁ ἐπιγράψας: *i.e.*  
he had the inscription set up in  
honor of Megistias on account of  
guest-friendship. Cp. ἐπιγέγρα-  
πται above. He was the author of  
all three epitaphs here quoted.

229. 2. παρὲν: acc. abs. as  
6. 72. 4, 6. 82. 3. Cp. ἐξέον 7.  
230. 3.—κοινῶ λόγῳ χρησαμέ-  
νοις: *if they had been of one*  
*mind*, = ὁμοφρονήσασι (8).—  
5. ἐς τὸ ἔσχατον: *extremely*.—  
7. παρεόν: repeating παρεόν of 2.  
—8. γνώμῃ διενειχθέντας: as 7.  
220. 26. With this in part. appos.  
are Εὐρυτον μὲν . . . Ἀριστόδημον  
δέ.—10. αὐτόν: pers. pron. for  
reflex. S. 1228 a; HA. 684 a.—

τὸν εἰλωτα ἐς τοὺς μαχομένους, ὅκως δὲ αὐτὸν ἡγαγε, τὸν μὲν ἀγαγόντα οἴχεσθαι φεύγοντα, τὸν δὲ ἐσπεσόντα ἐς τὸν ὄμιλον διαφθαρῆναι, Ἀριστόδημον δὲ λιποψυχέοντα λειφθῆναι. εἰ μὲν νυν ἦν μούνον Ἀριστόδημον ἀλγῆσαντα ἀπονοστήσαι ἐς Σπάρτην, ἣ καὶ ὁμοῦ<sup>15</sup> σφεων ἀμφοτέρων τὴν κομιδὴν γενέσθαι, δοκεῖν ἐμοὶ οὐκ ἂν σφι Σπαρτιήτας μῆνιν οὐδεμίαν προσθέσθαι· νυν δὲ τοῦ μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπολομένου, τοῦ δὲ τῆς μὲν αὐτῆς ἐχομένου προφάσιος, οὐκ ἐβελήσαντος δὲ ἀποθνήσκειν, ἀναγκαίως σφι ἔχειν μνηῖσαι μεγάλως Ἀριστοδήμῳ.<sup>20</sup> οἱ μὲν νυν οὕτω σωθῆναι λέγουσι Ἀριστόδημον ἐς Σπάρτην καὶ διὰ πρόφασιν τοιήνδε, οἱ δὲ ἄγγελον πεμφθέντα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου, ἐξέον αὐτῷ καταλαβεῖν

11. τὸν εἰλωτα: Lacedaemonian hoplites were attended by at least one Helot, who as *θεράπων* carried his shield and must be close by him in battle to give succor. The Helots fought, too, as light-armed troops, and were used to get provisions, work on fortifications, etc. The number of Helots at Thermopylae is unknown; Stein infers from 8. 25 that there were at least 3000. At Plataea each hoplite was attended by seven (9. 28. 5). — *ὅκως*: Attic ὥς (ὅτε). — 12. ἐσπεσόντα: = pass. of ἐκβάλλω, with force of middle here. — 13. λιποψυχέοντα: *losing courage*, as Soph. frg. 440; usually *swoon*. Valckenaer conjectured plausibly φιλοψυχέοντα. — 14. εἰ μὲν νυν ἦν: *if*

*now it had happened*. — 15. ἀλγῆσαντα: = νοσῆσαντα, referring to his ophthalmia. So almost all editors read for ἀλογῆσαντα. — 16. τὴν κομιδὴν γενέσθαι: lit. *the return had been made*. — *δοκεῖν*: abs. inf. See on 7. 24. 1. — 17. σφι: *them*, because the prot. refers to both, though actually the anger affected only one. — προσθέσθαι: *display*. Cp. προστίθηναι, *inflict*, 7. 11. 5. — 18. τοῦ δὲ . . . προφάσιος: *clinging to the same excuse*, i.e. with no better excuse than the other. — 20. ἀναγκαίως σφι ἔχειν: = ἀνάγκην αὐτοῖς εἶναι, *dependent*, as προσθέσθαι, on δοκεῖν ἐμοί.

230. 3. ἐξέον: cp. 7. 229. 2. — καταλαβεῖν τὴν μάχην γινομένην: *to*

τὴν μάχην γινομένην οὐκ ἐβελῆσαι, ἀλλ' ὑπομείναντα  
 ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ περιγενέσθαι, τὸν δὲ συνάγγελον αὐτοῦ 5  
 231 ἀπικόμενον ἐς τὴν μάχην ἀποθανεῖν. ἀπονοστήσας  
 δὲ ἐς Λακεδαιμόνα Ἀριστόδημος ὄνειδός τε εἶχε καὶ  
 ἀτιμίην· πάσχων δὲ τοιάδε ἡτίμωτο· οὔτε οἱ πῦρ  
 οὐδεὶς ἔναυε Σπαρτιητέων οὔτε διελέγετο, ὄνειδός τε εἶχε  
 232 ὁ τρέσας Ἀριστόδημος καλεόμενος. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν ἐν τῇ  
 ἐν Πλαταιῇσι μάχῃ ἀνέλαβε πᾶσαν τὴν ἐπενειχθεῖσαν  
 αἰτίην. λέγεται δὲ καὶ ἄλλον ἀποπεμφθέντα ἄγγελον  
 ἐς Θεσσαλίην τῶν τριηκοσίων τούτων περιγενέσθαι, τῷ  
 οὔνομα εἶναι Παντίτην· νοστήσαντα δὲ τοῦτον ἐς Σπάρ- 5  
 233 την, ὡς ἡτίμωτο, ἀπάγξασθαι. οἱ δὲ Θηβαῖοι, τῶν ὁ  
 Λεοντιάδης ἐστρατήγει, τέως μὲν μετὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 ἐόντες ἐμάχοντο ὑπ' ἀναγκαίης ἐχόμενοι πρὸς τὴν βα-  
 σιλέος στρατιήν· ὡς δὲ εἶδον κατυπέρτερα τῶν Περσέων  
 γινόμενα τὰ πρήγματα, οὕτω δὴ, τῶν σὺν Λεωνίδῃ Ἑλ- 5  
 λήνων ἐπειγομένων ἐπὶ τὸν κολωνόν, ἀποσχισθέντες

*find the battle going on.*—5. συν-  
 ἄγγελον: only here.

231. 3. πάσχων τοιάδε: defin-  
 ing the nature and extent of the  
 ἀτιμία in this case. At Athens  
 ἀτιμία (cp. *infamy*) was the loss  
 of civil rights total or partial. At  
 Sparta the punishment depended  
 upon public opinion, which was  
 generally fearfully severe. See  
*Resp. Lac.* 9. 4 f.; *Plut. Ages.*  
 30. — πῦρ οὐδεὶς ἔναυε: *would give*  
*him light for a fire*, an act of  
 neighborly kindness which ordi-  
 narily was a sacred duty. Cp.

*Cic. de Off.* 1. 52 *patri de igne ignem*  
*capere.*—5. ὁ τρέσας: *the craven*,  
 the sentiment against whom at  
 Sparta is expressed in *Tyrt. frag.* 11.  
 14 *τρεσσάντων δ' ἀνδρῶν πᾶσ' ἀπό-*  
*λωλ' ἀρετῇ.*

232. 2. ἀνέλαβε: *made good*,  
*effaced*, as 8. 109. 9. He died at  
 Plataea after prodigies of valor,  
 and Hdt. considered him far the  
 bravest there, but says he received  
 no public honors because the Spar-  
 tans thought he wished to be slain  
 in consequence of his imputed  
 guilt (9. 71).

τούτων χειράς τε προέτεινον καὶ ἦσαν ἄσσον τῶν βαρ-  
 βάρων, λέγοντες τὸν ἀληθέστατον τῶν λόγων, ὥς καὶ  
 μηδίζουσι καὶ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ ἐν πρώτοισι ἔδοσαν  
 βασιλεῖ, ὑπὸ δὲ ἀναγκαίης ἐχόμενοι ἐς Θερμοπύλας 10  
 ἀπικοίατο καὶ ἀναίτιοι εἶεν τοῦ τρώματος τοῦ γεγονότος  
 βασιλεῖ. ὥστε ταῦτα λέγοντες περιεγίνοντο· εἶχον  
 γὰρ καὶ Θεσσαλοὺς τούτων τῶν λόγων μάρτυρας. οὐ  
 μέντοι τά γε πάντα εὐτύχησαν· ὥς γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἔλαβον  
 οἱ βάρβαροι ἐλθόντας, τοὺς μὲν τινὰς καὶ ἀπέκτειναν 15  
 προσιόντας, τοὺς δὲ πλέονας αὐτῶν κελεύσαντος Ξέρξεω  
 ἔστιζον στίγματα βασιλῆα, ἀρξάμενοι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρα-  
 τηγοῦ Λεοντιάδew, τοῦ τὸν παῖδα Εὐρύμαχον χρόνῳ  
 μετέπειτα ἐφόνευσαν Πλαταιεῖς στρατηγήσαντα ἀν-  
 δρῶν Θηβαίων τετρακοσίων καὶσχόντα τὸ ἄστυ τὸ 20  
 Πλαταιέων.

234 Οἱ μὲν δὴ περὶ Θερμοπύλας Ἕλληνες οὕτω ἡγωνί-

233. 7. ἄσσον: = ἐγγυτέρω, Ionic and poetic. — 8. τὸν ἀληθέστατον τῶν λόγων: cp. 7. 104. 3. — 9. μηδίζουσι . . . ἀπικοίατο: note change of mood. See on 7. 151. 10. — 11. τοῦ τρώματος: *damage, loss*, as freq. in Hdt. — 12. ὥστε: *and so, itaque*. — 14. τά γε πάντα εὐτύχησαν: cogn. acc. Cp. 7. 190. 9. — ὥς γὰρ . . . ἐλθόντας: the real apod. to this is τοὺς δὲ κτέ., and τοὺς μὲν τινὰς ἀπέκτειναν προσιόντας, though grammatically coördinate, is really subordinate. — 17. ἔστιζον στίγματα βασιλῆα: *branded with royal brands* (cogn.

acc.), *i.e.* on the forehead with hot iron. Cp. like treatment of captives by Samians, Plut. *Per.* 20; by Syracusans, Plut. *Nic.* 29. See on 7. 35. 4. — 19. μετέπειτα: at the opening of the Peloponnesian War (spring of 431). — στρατηγήσαντα: rather a prominent Theban aristocrat, who negotiated with certain Plataeans, desirous of revenge on some of their fellow-citizens, the introduction of Theban soldiers by night into Plataea. See Thuc. 2. 2 ff. Another Leontiades a hundred years later betrayed Thebes to Phoebidas.



σαντο, Ξέρξης δὲ καλέσας Δημάρητον εἰρώτα ἀρξάμενος ἐνθένδε· Δημάρητε, ἀνὴρ εἰς ἀγαθός. τεκμαίρομαι δὲ τῇ ἀληθείῃ· ὅσα γὰρ εἶπας, ἅπαντα ἀπέβη οὕτω. νῦν δέ μοι εἰπέ, κόσοι τινές εἰσι οἱ λοιποὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, 5 καὶ τούτων ὁκόσοι τοιοῦτοι τὰ πολέμια, εἴτε καὶ ἅπαντες. ὁ δὲ εἶπε· ὦ βασιλεῦ, πλήθος μὲν πολλὸν πάντων τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ πόλιες πολλαί· τὸ δὲ θέλεις ἐκμαθεῖν, εἰδήσεις. ἔστι ἐν τῇ Λακεδαίμονι Σπάρτη πόλις ἀνδρῶν ὀκτακισχιλίων μάλιστα, καὶ οὗτοι πάντες εἰσὶ 10 ὅμοιοι τοῖσι ἐνθάδε μαχεσαμένοισι· οἱ γὰρ μὲν ἄλλοι Λακεδαιμόνιοι τούτοις μὲν οὐκ ὅμοιοι, ἀγαθοὶ δέ. εἶπε πρὸς ταῦτα Ξέρξης· Δημάρητε, τέφω τρόπῳ ἀπονητότατα τῶν ἀνδρῶν τούτων ἐπικρατήσομεν; ἴθι ἐξηγέο. σὺ γὰρ ἔχεις αὐτῶν τὰς διεξόδους τῶν βουλευμάτων, 15 235 οἷα βασιλεὺς γενόμενος. ὁ δ' ἀμείβετο· ὦ βασιλεῦ,

ADVICE OF DEMARATUS TO XERXES; OPPOSITION OF ACHAEMENES; MALTREATMENT OF THE CORPSE OF LEONIDAS (CC. 234-238)

234. 4. τῇ ἀληθείῃ: *by thy truthfulness*, explained by ὅσα γὰρ κτέ.— 5. κόσοι . . . ὁκόσοι: coördination of direct and indirect interrogatives, as freq. in Hdt.— 6. εἴτε καὶ ἅπαντες: *sc. τοιοῦτοι τὰ πολέμια εἰσιν. εἴτε, or whether*, answering to ὁκόσοι. Cp. 2. 53. 2.— 8. πολλαί: *acc. to Strabo*, p. 362, the epithet ἐκατόμπολις was applied to Laconia. The names of over sixty communal-

ties are known.— 9. εἰδήσεις: see Dial. § 4. 6.— 10. ἀνδρῶν ὀκτακισχιλίων: *i.e.* of military age (20-60). The number is moderate for 9000 households (κλήροι). Arist. *Pol.* 2. 9 states that the number of hoplites was said to have been once 10,000. At Plataea there were 5000 (9. 28. 9). In 418 B.C. over 5000 could still be levied (Thuc. 5. 64, 5. 68).— 11. οἱ ἄλλοι Λακεδαιμόνιοι: *i.e.* Perioeci, etc.— 12. εἶπε πρὸς ταῦτα: *asyn-deton*. See on 7. 50. 1.— 15. ἔχεις αὐτῶν τὰς διεξόδους τῶν βουλευμάτων: *thou knowest the ins and outs of their counsels*. Cp. 3. 156. 15.

εἰ μὲν δὴ συμβουλευεαί μοι προθύμως, δίκαιόν με σοί  
 ἔστι φράζειν τὸ ἄριστον. εἰ τῆς ναυτικῆς στρατιῆς  
 νέας τριηκοσίας ἀποστείλειας ἐπὶ τὴν Λάκαιναν χώραν.  
 ἔστι δὲ ἐπ' αὐτῇ νῆσος ἐπικειμένη τῇ οὐνομά ἐστι 5  
 Κύθηρα, τὴν Χίλων ἀνὴρ παρ' ἡμῖν σοφώτατος γενό-  
 μενος κέρδος μέζον ἔφη εἶναι Σπαρτιήτησι κατὰ τῆς  
 θαλάσσης καταδεδυκέναι μᾶλλον ἢ ὑπερέχειν, αἰεὶ τι  
 προσδοκῶν ἀπ' αὐτῆς τοιοῦτο ἔσεσθαι οἷόν τοι ἐγὼ  
 ἐξηγέομαι, οὔτι τὸν σὸν στόλον προειδώς, ἀλλὰ πάντα 10  
 ὁμοίως φοβεόμενος ἀνδρῶν στόλον. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς  
 νήσου ὀρμώμενοι φοβεόντων τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους.  
 παροίκου δὲ πολέμου σφι ἐόντος οἰκείου οὐδὲν δεινοὶ  
 ἔσονται τοι μὴ τῆς ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος ἀλiscoμένης ὑπὸ  
 τοῦ πεζοῦ βοηθέωσι ταύτῃ. καταδουλωθείσης δὲ τῆς 15  
 ἄλλης Ἑλλάδος ἀσθενὲς ἤδη τὸ Λακωνικὸν μῦνον  
 λείπεται. ἦν δὲ ταῦτα μὴ ποιῆς, τάδε τοι προσδόκα  
 ἔσεσθαι· ἔστι τῆς Πελοποννήσου ἰσθμὸς στενός· ἐν  
 τούτῳ τῷ χώρῳ πάντων Πελοποννησίων συνομοσάντων  
 ἐπὶ σοὶ μάχας ἰσχυροτέρας ἄλλας τῶν γενομένων προσ- 20

235. 3. εἰ . . . ἀποστείλειας: best taken as the answer to the question *τέφ' τρόπῳ* . . . ἐπικρατήσομεν; It might be explained as a hortatory wish, as 7. 5. 9.—5. ἔστι ἐπικειμένη: cp. 7. 190. 10.—6. Χίλων: contemporary with the father of Peisistratus (1. 59), and reckoned among the Seven Wise Men. His fear with regard to Cythera was realized when the Athenians, under Nicias, in 424 B.C., made it the

starting-point for harassing incursions into Lacedaemonian territory. Cp. Thuc. 4. 52 ff.—8. μᾶλλον: pleonastic after μέζον, as 7. 50. 7.—13. παροίκου δὲ . . . οἰκείου: a war of their own at their own doors.—οὐδὲν δεινοὶ ἔσονται τοι: personal const. for impersonal.—19. συνομοσάντων ἐπὶ σοὶ: having sworn to a league against thee. Cp. 7. 148. 3.—20. προσδέξο: change for variety

δέκεο ἔσσεσθαί τοι. ἐκείνο δὲ ποιήσαντι ἀμαχητὶ ὃ  
 236 τε ἰσθμὸς οὗτος καὶ αἱ πόλεις προσχωρήσουσι. λέγει  
 μετὰ τούτον Ἀχαιμῆνης, ἀδελφεός τε ἐὼν Ξέρξῳ καὶ  
 τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ στρατηγός, παρατυχὼν τε τῷ  
 λόγῳ καὶ δείσας μὴ ἀναγνωσθῇ Ξέρξης ποιεῖν ταῦτα·  
 ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὁρῶ σε ἀνδρὸς ἐνδεκόμενον λόγους ὅς 5  
 φθονεῖ τοι εὖ πρήσσοντι ἢ καὶ προδιδοῖ πρήγματα τὰ  
 σά. καὶ γὰρ δὴ καὶ τρόποισι τοιούτοισι χρεώμενοι  
 Ἕλληνες χαίρουσι· τοῦ τε εὖτυχεῖν φθονέουσι καὶ τὸ  
 κρέσσον στυγέουσι. εἰ δ' ἐπὶ τῇσι παρεούσησι τύχησι,  
 (ἐκ) τῶν νέες νευαυηγῆκασι τετρακόσiai, ἄλλας ἐκ τοῦ 10  
 στρατοπέδου τριηκοσίας ἀποπέμψεις περιπλεῖν Πελο-  
 πόννησον, ἀξιόμαχοί τοι γίνονται οἱ ἀντίπαλοι· ἀλῆς  
 δὲ ἐὼν ὁ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς δυσμεταχειρίστος τε αὐτοῖσι  
 γίνεται, καὶ ἀρχὴν οὐκ ἀξιόμαχοί τοι ἔσονται, καὶ πᾶς  
 ὁ ναυτικὸς τῷ πεζῷ ἀρήξει καὶ ὁ πεζὸς τῷ ναυτικῷ 15  
 ὁμοῦ πορευόμενος· εἰ δὲ διασπάσεις, οὔτε σὺ ἔσσει  
 ἐκείνοισι χρήσιμος οὔτε ἐκείνοι σοί. τὰ σεωντοῦ δὲ

after προσδόκα (17). — 21. ἀμα-  
 χητὶ: Attic ἀμαχεί.

236. 2. Ἀχαιμῆνης: cp. 7. 6.  
 — τε . . . καὶ . . . , τε . . . καί: ob-  
 serve the correlation of the two  
 explanatory clauses. — 4. ἀναγνω-  
 σθῇ: see on 77. 1. — 7. καὶ γὰρ δὴ:  
*for of a surety*. Cp. Hom. II 810.  
 The following καί means *even* or  
*also*. Cp. καὶ γὰρ καί, 6. 108. 3.  
 — τοιούτοις: looks forward. —  
 8. τοῦ εὖτυχεῖν: gen. of cause. —  
 φθονέουσι . . . στυγέουσι: homoe-  
 oteleuton. στυγεῖν = μισεῖν, poet-

ical. — 9. ἐπὶ: *after, on top of*.  
 See on 7. 164. 10. — 10. (ἐκ) τῶν:  
*in consequence of which*. For the  
 Mss. reading τῶν, Baehr suggested  
 ἐκ τῶν, which seems to be nec-  
 essary. — 11. ἀποπέμψεις: fut. in  
 monitory cond., as 16 below, the  
 pres. in the apod. (γίνονται) em-  
 phatically anticipating the fut. —  
 12. ἀξιόμαχοί τοι γίνονται: cp. 7.  
 157. 16. — 13. δυσμεταχειρίστος:  
*hard to deal with*. Cp. δυσχειρω-  
 τότατοι 7. 9. β 12. — 14. ἀρχήν: see  
 on 7. 9. β 7. — 17. ἐκείνοισι: *i.e.*

τιθέμενος εὖ γνώμην ἔχε τὰ τῶν ἀντιπολέμων μὴ ἐπιλέ-  
γεσθαι πρήγματα, τῇ τε στήσονται τὸν πόλεμον τά τε  
ποιήσουσι ὅσοι τε πληθὸς εἰσι. ἱκανοὶ γὰρ ἐκείνοί γε <sup>20</sup>  
αὐτοὶ ἐωυτῶν πέρι φροντίζειν εἰσὶ, ἡμεῖς δὲ ἡμέων  
ὡσαύτως. Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ ἦν ἴωσι ἀντία Πέρσῃσι  
237 ἐς μάχην, οὐδὲν τὸ παρεὸν τρώμα ἀκέονται. ἀμείβεται  
Ξέρξης τοισίδε· Ἀχαιοί, εὖ τέ μοι δοκεῖς λέγειν  
καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα. Δημάρητος δὲ λέγει μὲν τὰ ἄριστα  
ἐλπεται εἶναι ἐμοί, γνώμη μέντοι ἐσσοῦται ὑπὸ σέο.  
οὐ γὰρ δὴ κείνῳ γε ἐνδέξομαι ὅπως οὐκ εὖνοεῖ τοῖσι <sup>5</sup>  
ἐμοῖσι πρήγμασι, τοῖσί τε λεγομένοισι πρότερον ἐκ  
τούτου σταθμώμενος καὶ τῷ ἔοντι, ὅτι πολιήτης μὲν  
πολιήτῃ εὖ πρήσσοντι φθονεῖ καὶ ἔστι δυσμενὴς τῇ  
σιγῇ, οὐδ' ἂν συμβουλευομένου τοῦ ἀστοῦ πολιήτης  
ἀνὴρ τὰ ἄριστα οἱ δοκέοντα εἶναι ὑποθέοιτο, εἰ μὴ <sup>10</sup>  
πρόσω ἀρετῆς ἀνήκοι· σπάνιοι δὲ εἰσι οἱ τοιοῦτοι·  
ξείνος δὲ ξείνῳ εὖ πρήσσοντί ἐστι εὐμενέστατον πάν-  
των, συμβουλευομένου τε ἂν συμβουλεύσειε τὰ ἄριστα.

those sent to Cythera. — 18. γνώ-  
μην ἔχε: periphrasis for γίγνωσκε,  
*determine*. — μὴ ἐπιλέγεσθαι: *not*  
*to consider*. Cp. 7. 50. 3. Note  
intrusion of the inf. into its ob-  
ject clause. — 19. στήσονται τὸν  
πόλεμον: *will set on foot the war*.  
Cp. 7. 9. β 3. — 23. τρώμα: cp. 7.  
233. 11. — ἀκέονται: = ἀκέσονται.  
The figure in τρώμα is sustained.  
ἀκέονται is a conjecture for the  
Mss. ἀνιένται, which is not found  
elsewhere.

237. 5. κείνο: explained by the

ὅπως clause. Cp. 7. 16. α 1. —  
ὅπως: see on 7. 159. 5. — 6. ἐκ  
τούτου: see on 7. 11. 14. — 7. τῷ  
ἔοντι: *by the fact*, explained by  
the ὅτι clause. — 8. τῇ σιγῇ: *by*  
*his silence*, when he should advise  
or warn. — 9. ἀστοῦ: for variety  
with πολιήτης. — 10. εἰ μὴ πρόσω  
ἀρετῆς ἀνήκοι: *unless he had got*  
*far on in virtue*. Cp. 7. 9. γ 4. For  
πρόσω with gen., see S. 1439 a;  
HA. 757. — 12. εὐμενέστατον: neu-  
ter pred., esp. freq. in gnomic utter-  
ances. Cp. 7. 10. η 7. — 13. συμ-

οὕτω ὦν κακολογίης πέρι τῆς ἐς Δημάρητον, ἐόντος  
 238 ἐμοὶ ξείνου, ἔχασθαι τινα τοῦ λοιποῦ κελεύω. ταῦτα  
 εἰπας Ξέρξης διεξῆγε διὰ τῶν νεκρῶν καὶ Λεωνίδεω,  
 ἀκηκοὺς ὅτι βασιλεὺς τε ἦν καὶ στρατηγὸς Λακεδαιμο-  
 νίων, ἐκέλευσε ἀποταμόντας τὴν κεφαλὴν ἀνασταυρῶ-  
 σαι. δῆλὰ μοι πολλοῖσι μὲν καὶ ἄλλοισι τεκμηρίοισι, 5  
 ἐν δὲ καὶ τῷδε οὐκ ἤκιστα γέγονε, ὅτι βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης  
 πάντων δὴ μάλιστα ἀνδρῶν ἐθυμώθη ζῶντι Λεωνίδῃ·  
 οὐ γὰρ ἂν κοτε ἐς τὸν νεκρὸν ταῦτα παρενόμησε, ἐπεὶ  
 τιμᾶν μάλιστα νομίζουσι τῶν ἐγὼ οἶδα ἀνθρώπων  
 Πέρσαι ἀνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τὰ πολέμια. οἱ μὲν δὲ ταῦτα 10

βουλευομένου τε . . . συμβουλευέσθαι  
 τὰ ἄριστα: and if he consulted  
 would give the best counsel; juxtapo-  
 sition of contrasted voices, as  
 7. 209. 3, 7. 235. 11, 13. — 14. ἐόν-  
 τος ἐμοὶ ξείνου: the gen. abs. em-  
 phasizes the causal relation to the  
 following clause. — 15. ἔχασθαι: =  
 ἀπέχασθαι. See on 7. 169. 11. —  
 τινα: general term for specific,  
 freq. in exhortations or warnings.  
 See on 7. 5. 12. — τοῦ λοιποῦ: for  
 the future, as 6. 12. 20. Cp. τὸ  
 λοιπὸν in same sense 7. 104. 24.  
 The readings of the Mss. vary  
 much in this last sent., but the  
 general sense is clear.

238. 4. ἐκέλευσε . . . ἀνασταυ-  
 ρῶσαι: so Artaxerxes had the  
 head and right hand of Cyrus the  
 younger cut off and set up on a  
 pole (Xen. *Anab.* 1. 10. 1; Plut.  
*Artax.* 13). — 5. δῆλα: neut. pl.

where sing. is more natural, as  
 freq. in Hdt. and Thuc. — 6. ἐν  
 δέ: adv. Cp. 7. 224. 8. — 8. γάρ:  
 for else, the cond. being omitted.  
 Cp. 6. 50. 9, 6. 68. 13. — 9. τιμᾶν  
 μάλιστα: see e.g. 7. 181.

#### SECRET MESSAGE OF DEMARA- TUS TO SPARTA; SAGACITY OF GORGO

239. Krüger considers this  
 whole chapter an interpolation  
 ("ein ungehöriges Einschiesel"),  
 interrupting the context, not con-  
 nected with anything that had gone  
 before, and characterized by confu-  
 sion of statement as well as by un-  
 usual expressions. Abicht thinks  
 it a manifest imitation of the sto-  
 ries told in 1. 123 and 5. 35. In  
 bracketing the chapter, Krüger is  
 followed by Kallenberg, Abicht,  
 and Sitzler. But Stein, who finds

239 ἐποίεον, τοῖσι ἐπετέτακτο ποιεῖν. [ἄνειμι δὲ ἐκέισε τοῦ λόγον τῇ μοι τὸ πρότερον ἐξέλιπε. ἐπύθοντο Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὅτι βασιλεὺς στέλλοιτο ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα πρῶτοι, καὶ οὕτω δὴ ἐς τὸ χρηστήριον τὸ ἐς Δελφοὺς ἀπέπεμψαν, ἔνθα δὴ σφί ἐχρήσθη τὰ ὀλίγῳ πρότερον εἶπον· 5 ἐπύθοντο δὲ τρόπῳ θωμασίῳ. Δημάρητος γὰρ ὁ Ἀρίστωνος φυγὼν ἐς Μήδους, ὥς μὲν ἐγὼ δοκέω, καὶ τὸ οἶκός ἐμοὶ συμμάχεται, οὐκ ἦν εὖνοος Λακεδαιμονίοισι, πάρεστι δὲ εἰκάζειν εἴτε εὐνοίῃ ταῦτα ἐποίησε εἴτε καὶ καταχαίρων· ἐπεῖτε γὰρ Ξέρξης ἔδοξε στρατηλατέων ἐπὶ 10 τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἔων ἐν Σούσοισι ὁ Δημάρητος καὶ πυθόμενος ταῦτα ἠθέλησε Λακεδαιμονίοισι ἐξαγγεῖλαι. ἄλλως μὲν δὴ οὐκ εἶχε σημήναι· ἐπικίνδυνον γὰρ ἦν μὴ λαμφθεῖν· ὁ δὲ μηχανᾶται τοιάδε· δελτίον δίπτυχον λαβὼν τὸν κηρὸν αὐτοῦ ἐξέκνησε καὶ ἔπειτα ἐν 15

the chapter "in content and language above suspicion," brackets merely the introductory formula, *ἄνειμι . . . ἐξέλιπε*, as suitable only for a return to the main narrative after a digression, as I. 140. 15, 7. 137. 22, not to bring in an anecdote. An explanation, needed for 7. 220. 10 ff., to show how the Spartans before the rest of the Hellenes got news of the intended invasion, and which, given earlier, would have interrupted inappropriately the account of the catastrophe at Thermopylae, Stein says might well come in here; but he thinks it a later addition of Hdt., not properly wrought into the narrative.

1. [*ἄνειμι δὲ κτέ.* : a formula of return from a digression. Cp. 7. 137. 22. — *ἐκέισε* : 7. 220. 10 ff. — 2. *ἐξέλιπε* : *left off*. — 7. τὸ οἶκός : *probability*, as 7. 103. 15. — 8. ἐμοὶ συμμάχεται : *supports me*. Personification, as I. 98. 17 τὸ μὲν κού τι καὶ τὸ χωρίον συμμαχεῖ, and 5. 65. 7 τοῖσι δὲ ἡ αὐτὴ αὐτῇ (*sc. συντυχίῃ*) σύμμαχος. — 10. καταχαίρων : *in derision*, as I. 129. 2. Cp. ἐπιχαίρειν, ἐπίχαρις, ἐπίχαρμα. — 14. λαμφθεῖν : = *ληφθεῖν*. — δελτίον δίπτυχον : a tablet with two leaves folding together so as to protect the wax. δελτίον seems not to be found elsewhere, and δίπτυχον is poetical.

τῷ ξύλῳ τοῦ δελτίου ἔγραψε τὴν βασιλέως γνώμην, ποιήσας δὲ ταῦτα ὀπίσω ἐπέτηξε τὸν κηρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ γράμματα, ἵνα φερόμενον κεινὸν τὸ δελτίον μηδὲν πρήγμα παρέχοι πρὸς τῶν ὁδοφυλάκων. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἀπίκετο ἐς τὴν Λακεδαίμονα, οὐκ εἶχον συμβαλέσθαι 20 οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, πρὶν γε δὴ σφι, ὥς ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι, Κλεομένεος μὲν θυγάτηρ, Λεωνίδεω δὲ γυνὴ Γοργῷ ὑπέθετο ἐπιφρασθεῖσα αὐτή, τὸν κηρὸν κνᾶν κελεύουσα, καὶ εὐρήσειν σφέας γράμματα ἐν τῷ ξύλῳ. πειθόμενοι δὲ εὖρον καὶ ἐπελέξαντο, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῖσι ἄλλοισι Ἑλ- 25 λησι ἐπέστειλαν. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω λέγεται γενέσθαι.]

— 17. ἐπέτηξε τὸν κηρὸν: *poured melted wax over*. — 18. κεινόν: *blank*. — μηδὲν πρήγμα παρέχοι: *might give no trouble*. Cp. 7. 147. 9. — 19. ὁδοφυλάκων: *elsewhere only in late writers*. — 20. ἀπίκετο: *sc. τὸ δελτίον*. — συμβαλέσθαι: *to interpret, understand*. — 21. πρὶν γε δὴ: *until at last*. — 23. ἐπιφρασθεῖσα αὐτή: *having*

*thought of it herself*. For another instance of Gorgo's sagacity, see 5. 51, where she, then a child of 8 or 9 years, advises her father against a bribe from Aristagoras. — 24. εὐρήσειν: *sc. λέγουσα from κελεύουσα*. — 25. ἐπελέξαντο: *read*; with this meaning only in Ionic. — 26. ἐπέστειλαν: *sent word, i.e. of the proposed invasion of Greece*.

## ΗΡΟΔΟΤΟΥ

ΤΟΥ

ΑΛΙΚΑΡΝΗΣΣΕΟΣ ΙΣΤΟΡΙΩΝ ΟΓΔΟΗ

ΕΠΙΓΡΑΦΟΜΕΝΗ ΟΥΡΑΝΙΑ

- 1 Οἱ δὲ Ἑλλήνων ἐς τὸν ναυτικὸν στρατὸν ταχθέντες ἦσαν οἶδε, Ἀθηναῖοι μὲν νέας παρεχόμενοι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι καὶ ἑπτὰ· ὑπὸ δὲ ἀρετῆς τε καὶ προθυμίας Πλαταιεῖς, ἅπειροι τῆς ναυτικῆς ἔόντες, συνεπλήρουν τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι τὰς νέας, Κορίνθιοι δὲ τεσσαεράκοντα νέας παρέιχοντο, Μεγαρεῖς δὲ εἴκοσι. καὶ Χαλκιδεῖς ἐπλήρουν εἴκοσι, Ἀθηναίων σφι παρεχόντων τὰς νέας, Αἰγινῆται δὲ ὀκτωκαίδεκα, Σικυνῶνιοι δὲ δυοκαίδεκα, Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ δέκα, Ἐπιδαύριοι δὲ ὀκτώ, Ἐρετριεῖς δὲ ἑπτὰ, Τροιζήνιοι δὲ πέντε, Στυρεῖς δὲ δύο καὶ Κήιοι 10

THE CONTINGENTS OF THE GREEK FLEET; REASONS FOR CHOOSING A SPARTAN AS COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF (CC. 1-3)

1. 1. τὸν ναυτικὸν στρατὸν: the advance of the Persian fleet from Therma to Aphetae was described in 7. 179-195. This was followed by the account of Thermopylae. The naval engagements at Artemisium are now taken up, and, as in the case of Thermopylae (7. 202), Salamis (8. 43-48), and Plataea (9. 28-30), Herodotus begins with an enumeration of the Greek forces. The opening words

form a more natural connection with the close of 7. 238 than with that of 7. 239, though the transition is abrupt at the best. — 3. ὑπό: *by reason of*. Syn. § 5. — Πλαταιεῖς: warm friends of the Athenians on account of their aid against the Thebans. See. 6 108. 4 f. — 6. παρέιχοντο: a change from the partic. in 2 after the intervening clause ὑπὸ δὲ . . . τὰς νέας. — καί: here and in 10 καί is used between equal numbers, δέ in the other cases. — Χαλκιδεῖς: Athens settled 4000 colonists in Chalcis in Euboea about 506 B.C. See 5. 77. 11, 6. 100. 4. — 7. σφι: Att.



δύο τε νέας καὶ πεντηκόντε-  
 ρους δύο. Λοκροὶ δέ σφι οἱ  
 Ὀπούντιοι ἐπεβοήθεον πεντηκόντε-  
 ρους ἔχοντες ἑπτά.  
 2 ἦσαν μὲν ὧν οὗτοι οἱ στρατευόμενοι ἐπ' Ἀρτεμίσιον,  
 εἰρέεται δέ μοι καὶ ὡς τὸ πλῆθος ἕκαστοι τῶν νεῶν  
 παρείχοντο. ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῶν συλλεχθεισῶν νεῶν ἐπ'  
 Ἀρτεμίσιον ἦν, πάρεξ τῶν πεντηκόντερων, διηκόσiai  
 καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ μία. τὸν δὲ στρατηγὸν τὸν τὸ 5  
 μέγιστον κράτος ἔχοντα παρείχοντο Σπαρτιῆται Εὐρυ-  
 βιάδην Εὐρυκλείδew· οἱ γὰρ σύμμαχοι οὐκ ἔφασαν,  
 ἦν μὴ ὁ Λάκων ἡγεμονεύῃ, Ἀθηναίοισι ἔψεσθαι ἡγεο-  
 μένοισι, ἀλλὰ λύσειν τὸ μέλλον ἔσεσθαι στρατεύμα.  
 3 ἐγένετο γὰρ κατ' ἀρχὰς λόγος, πρὶν ἢ καὶ ἐς Σικελίην

αὐτοῖς. Syn. § 9. 5. — 11. νέας: =  
 τριήρεις as opposed to πεντηκόντε-  
 ροι or πλοῖα transports. — σφι: τοῖς Ἕλλησι. — 12. Ὀπούντιοι: so  
 named from their chief city to dis-  
 tinguish them from the Ὀζόλαι  
 (8. 32. 8) on the Corinthian Gulf.

2. 1. Ἀρτεμίσιον: for its loca-  
 tion see 7. 176. 1 f. — 2. εἰρέεται δὲ  
 κτῆ.: and I have mentioned them  
 just in the order of the number  
 of ships supplied by each. In the  
 enumeration of the contingents at  
 Salamis (8. 43-48) a geographical  
 division is made, though some at-  
 tention is also paid to the number  
 of ships furnished. At Plataea  
 (9. 28-30) the order is that of  
 the line of battle, beginning on  
 the right. Stein suggests that the  
 present arrangement is made with  
 reference to the following discus-

sion about the leader. See App.  
 — 3. ἀριθμός: the sum, the count  
 of the ships; but τὸ πλῆθος τῶν  
 νεῶν in 2 is the size of the number  
 of the ships. — 4. πάρεξ: Att.  
 χωρίς. — 8. ὁ Λάκων: if the ques-  
 tion of the leadership was settled  
 at the preliminary meeting of  
 Greek envoys at the Isthmus (7.  
 145. 2, 7. 172. 4), as is implied in  
 the next chapter, the Laconian  
 does not refer to Eurybiades, for  
 at that time he had probably not  
 been appointed; it means rather  
 the Laconian commander, whoever  
 he might be. Note also the gen-  
 eral phrase Ἀθηναίοισι . . . ἡγεο-  
 μένοισι, the Athenians if they were  
 the leaders. — 9. λύσειν: οὐκ be-  
 fore ἔφασαν affects only ἔψεσθαι.

3. 1. πρὶν ἢ καὶ: even before.  
 Att. writers omit ἢ. — ἐς Σικελίην:

πέμπειν ἐπὶ συμμαχίην, ὥς τὸ ναυτικὸν Ἀθηναίοισι  
 χρεὸν εἶη ἐπιτράπειν. ἀντιβάντων δὲ τῶν συμμάχων  
 εἶκον οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, μέγα τε ποιεόμενοι περιεῖναι τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα καὶ γνόντες, εἰ στασιάσουσι περὶ τῆς ἡγεμο- 5  
 νίης, ὥς ἀπολείται ἡ Ἑλλάς, ὀρθὰ νοέοντες· στάσις  
 γὰρ ἔμφυλος πολέμου ὁμοφρονέοντος τοσοῦτω κάκιόν  
 ἐστὶ ὅσῳ πόλεμος εἰρήνης. ἐπιστάμενοι ὦν αὐτὸ  
 τοῦτο οὐκ ἀντέτεινον ἀλλ' εἶκον, μέχρι ὅσου κάρτα  
 ἐδέοντο αὐτῶν, ὥς διέδεξαν· ὥς γὰρ δὴ ὠσάμενοι τὸν 10  
 Πέρσην περὶ τῆς ἐκείνου ἤδη τὸν ἀγῶνα ἐποιέοντο,  
 πρόφασιν τὴν Πausanίῳ ὕβριν προῖσχόμενοι ἀπεί-  
 λοντο τὴν ἡγεμονίην τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα

see 7. 157 f. — 2. *πέμπειν*: impf. inf. "The durative tenses of *πέμπειν* are often used where we should expect the complexive (or aoristic) tenses" (Gildersleeve on Pind. *Ol.* 2. 23). Cp. *ἐπὶ δὲ Αἰακὸν* . . . *νῆα ἀπέστελλον* 8. 64. 10. — *συμμαχίην*: *allies*. For the concrete sense, cp. *καὶ ἐς τὴν Λακεδαίμονα πρέσβεις ἀπέστειλαν ὅπως ξυμμαχία τε αὐτοῖς παραγένηται* Thuc. 6. 73. 2. — 5. *γνόντες*: *having formed the opinion*. — *εἰ στασιάσουσι*: on the fut. indic. see GMT. 447. — 7. *ὁμοφρονέοντος*: *undertaken with united purpose*. The word, which properly applies to those engaged in the war, is transferred to the war itself. This poetical use is explained by Verrall (*Class. Rev.* 17 (1903), p. 98) as a probable quotation from some gnomic poet.

He restores the hexameters as follows: *ὀρθὰ νοεῖντες· | εἰρήνης γὰρ ὅσῳ πόλεμος, τοσσῶδε κάκιον | ἔμφυλος πολέμου στάσις ἐστὶν ὁμοφρονέοντος*. — *κάκιον*: for the neut. see S. 1048; HA. 617. — 8. *αὐτό*: the emphasis this gives to *τοῦτο* may be brought out in connection with the verb, *being quite persuaded of this*. — 9. *μέχρι ὅσου*: *as long as*. — 10. *αὐτῶν*: *i.e. τῶν συμμάχων*. Or *until they* (the allies) *needed them* (the Athenians); but the change of subj. is strange, and Hdt. uses *μέχρι οὗ* *until* (with aor.), not *ὅσου*. Cp. 3. 157. 10 *μέχρι ζῆς through life*. — *διέδεξαν*: Dial. § 1. ii. 2. — *ὥς γὰρ δὴ*: *for, in fact, when*. — 11. *περὶ τῆς*: *sc. γῆς*. — *ἐκείνου*: refers to τὸν Πέρσιν. — 12. *ἀπειλόντο*: Dial. § 2. 3,

4 μὲν ὕστερον ἐγένετο· τότε δὲ οὗτοι οἱ καὶ ἐπ' Ἀρτε-  
 μίσιον Ἑλλήνων ἀπικόμενοι ὥς εἶδον νέας τε πολλὰς  
 καταχθείσας ἐς τὰς Ἀφετὰς καὶ στρατιῆς ἅπαντα πλέα,  
 ἐπεὶ αὐτοῖσι παρὰ δόξαν τὰ πρήγματα τῶν βαρβάρων  
 ἀπέβαινε ἥ ὥς αὐτοὶ κατεδόκεον, καταρρωδήσαντες 5  
 δρησμον ἐβουλεύοντο ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀρτεμισίου ἔσω ἐς τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα. γνόντες δὲ σφεας οἱ Εὐβοεῖς ταῦτα βουλευο-  
 μένους ἐδέοντο Εὐρυβιάδew προσμεῖναι χρόνον ὀλίγον,  
 ἔστ' ἂν αὐτοὶ τέκνα τε καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας ὑπεκθέωνται.  
 ὥς δ' οὐκ ἔπειθον, μεταβάντες τὸν Ἀθηναίων στρατηγὸν 10  
 πείθουσι Θεμιστοκλέα ἐπὶ μισθῷ τριήκοντα ταλάν-  
 τοισι, ἐπ' ᾧ τε καταμεΐναντες πρὸ τῆς Εὐβοίης ποιή-

— 14. ὕστερον: after the capture of Byzantium in 477 B.C. (Thuc. 1. 94-95; Arist. *Ath. Pol.* 23).

THEMISTOCLES, BRIBED BY THE  
 EUBOEANS, PREVENTS THE RE-  
 TREAT OF THE GREEKS (CC.  
 4, 5)

4. 1. καὶ: *actually*; cp. 7. 239.  
 19. Apparently there is a refer-  
 ence to the retreat to Chalcis (7.  
 183. 4). — 3. Ἀφετὰς: on its po-  
 sition see 7. 193. — 5. ἥ ὥς . . .  
 κατεδόκεον: unnecessary after παρὰ  
 δόξαν, but occurring also in 1. 79.  
 9. Cp. ἤκουε . . . τοὺς ἐναντίους λό-  
 γους ἥ ὥς αὐτὸς κατεδόκει 1. 22. 11.  
 The Greeks had expected few Per-  
 sian ships to be left after the storm  
 at Sepias (7. 192. 8). — 6. δρη-  
 σμὸν ἐβουλεύοντο: the mid. again  
 in 8. 75. 14, but δρησμὸν ἐβούλεον

in 8. 18. 6, 8. 97. 5, 8. 100. 5. — ἔσω:  
*i.e.* into the inner waters by way  
 of the Euripus. — 7. σφεας: Att.  
 αὐτοῦς. — 9. οἰκέτας: the house-  
 hold in general. — ὑπεκθέωνται:  
 Dial. § 1. 1. 2. — 10. μεταβάντες:  
 in μετα- lies the idea of change  
 from Eurybiades to Themistocles.  
 — 11. μισθῷ: in appos. to ταλάν-  
 τοισι; for the order cp. 1. 160. 12,  
 5. 65. 10. — 12. ἐπ' ᾧ τε: with  
 fut. indic. instead of inf. (GMT.  
 610). — Little credence should be  
 given to this story of the bribery  
 of Themistocles. It was to the  
 interest of the Athenians, above  
 all, that the battle with the Persian  
 fleet should be fought out at Arte-  
 misium, while Eurybiades could  
 not allow a retreat without expos-  
 ing Leonidas, since the Persian  
 fleet need only sail down and land

5 σονται τὴν ναυμαχίην. ὁ δὲ Θεμιστοκλῆς τοὺς Ἑλλήνας ἐπισχεῖν ὧδε ποιεῖ· Εὐρυβιάδῃ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων μεταδιδοῖ πέντε τάλαντα ὡς παρ' ἑωυτοῦ δῆθεν διδούς. ὡς δέ οἱ οὗτος ἀνεπέπειστο (Ἀδεΐμαντος γὰρ ὁ Ὠκύτου, Κορινθίων στρατηγός, τῶν λοιπῶν ἤσπαιρε μῶνος, φάμενος ἀποπλεύσεσθαι τε ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀρτεμισίου καὶ οὐ παραμενεῖν), πρὸς δὴ τοῦτον εἶπε ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς ἐπομόσας· Οὐ σύ γε ἡμέας ἀπολεύσεις, ἐπεὶ τοι ἐγὼ μέζω δῶρα δώσω ἢ βασιλεὺς ἂν τοι ὁ Μήδων πέμψει ἀπολιπόντι τοὺς συμμαχοὺς. ταῦτά 10 τε ἅμα ἠγόρευε καὶ πέμπει ἐπὶ τὴν νέα τὴν Ἀδεϊμάντου τάλαντα ἀργυρίου τρία. οὗτοί τε δὴ πληγέντες δώροισι ἀναπεπεισμένοι ἦσαν καὶ τοῖσι Εὐβοεῦσι ἐκεχάριστο, αὐτός τε ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς ἐκέρδηνε· ἐλάνθανε δὲ τὰ

troops in his rear in order to make his destruction certain. Possibly the Euboeans were frightened into furnishing some needed supplies by threats of withdrawal.

5. 3. μεταδιδοῖ: Dial. § 4. 4. — ὡς παρ' ἑωυτοῦ δῆθεν διδούς: *giving it as out of his own pocket, of course.* δῆθεν is frequently strongly ironical. — 5. γάρ: see Syn. § 31. 4. — 6. ἤσπαιρε: *resisted.* Properly of violent physical struggles; so of fish just caught in 9. 120. 4. — τε . . . καὶ οὐ: Hdt. often puts a statement both positively and negatively for emphasis. — 8. οὐ σύ γε κτί.: in this answer of Themistocles note the effect produced by the juxtaposition of

the pronouns, by the alliteration in μέζω δῶρα δώσω, and by the order βασιλεὺς . . . τοι ὁ Μήδων . . . ἀπολιπόντι. — 11. τε ἅμα . . . καί: so promptly did he send the money that the two actions were almost simultaneous: "no sooner said than done." See Syn. § 30. 2 c. — 12. πληγέντες δώροισι: cp. πληγεῖς ὑπὸ τῆς δωροδοκίας Plut. *Dem.* 25. See App. — 13. τοῖσι Εὐβοεῦσι ἐκεχάριστο: *the Euboeans had been satisfied.* This is an unusual impers. construction of χαρίζομαι. — 14. αὐτός τε: this answers to οὗτοί τε. — δέ: this introduces a slight contrast, while ἀλλ' in the next line is the proper word for the strong contrast following the neg-

λοιπα ἔχων, ἀλλ' ἠπιστέατο οἱ μεταλαβόντες τούτων<sup>15</sup>  
τῶν χρημάτων ἐκ τῶν Ἀθηνέων ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τῷ λόγῳ  
τούτῳ [τὰ χρήματα].

- 6 Οὕτω δὴ κατέμεινάν τε ἐν τῇ Εὐβοίῃ καὶ ἐναυμά-  
χησαν. ἐγένετο δὲ ὧδε· ἐπεῖτε δὴ ἐς τὰς Ἀφetaς  
περὶ δεῖλιν πρωΐην γινομένην ἀπίκατο οἱ βάρβαροι,  
πυθόμενοι μὲν ἔτι καὶ πρότερον περὶ τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον  
ναυλοχεῖν νέας Ἑλληνίδας ὀλίγας, τότε δὲ αὐτοὶ ἰδόν-<sup>5</sup>  
τες, πρόθυμοι ἦσαν ἐπιχειρεῖν, εἴ πως ἔλοιεν αὐτάς.  
ἐκ μὲν δὴ τῆς ἀντίης προσπλεῖν οὐ κώ σφι ἐδόκει  
τῶνδε εἵνεκα, μή πως ἰδόντες οἱ Ἕλληνες προσπλέοντας  
ἐς φυγὴν ὁρμήσειαν φεύγοντάς τε εὐφρόνη καταλαμ-  
βάνη· καὶ ἐμελλον δῆθεν ἐκφεύξεσθαι, ἔδει δὲ μηδὲ<sup>10</sup>

ative idea in ἐλάνθανε. — 15. ἠπι-  
στέατο: *believed*. See Dial. § 4. 3.

THE PERSIANS SEND SHIPS ROUND  
EUBOEAE TO CUT OFF THE  
GREEKS (CC. 6, 7)

6. 2. ἐπεῖτε: Att. ἐπεὶ. — 3. περὶ  
δεῖλιν κτί.: *about the beginning  
of the afternoon*. Cp. 8. 9. 7. —  
γινομένην: Dial. § 2. 5. — ἀπί-  
κατο: Dial. § 4. 3. — 4. πυθόμενοι:  
probably from the Greek ships  
captured some days before (7.  
179 f.). — ἔτι καὶ πρότερον: cp.  
(without καί) 1. 92. 20, 6. 33. 16,  
8. 69. 9. — 5. ἰδόντες: on the way  
past Artemisium to Aphetae. —  
6. εἴ πως εἰοίεν: *if haply they  
might take them*. A frequent con-  
struction in Homer, and not un-

common in Hdt. (GMT. 487 f.).  
Cp. 7. 145. 15. For πως see Dial.  
§ 2. 1. — 7. ἐκ . . . τῆς ἀντίης: *from  
in front*, in contrast with the plan  
for taking them in the rear, which  
is presently explained. — 9. κατα-  
λαμβάνη: *come upon*. Usually  
this verb implies something unex-  
pected and unpleasant. Cp. 8. 21.  
9, 8. 109. 25. — 10. ἐμελλον δῆθεν  
ἐκφεύξεσθαι: *they were quite cer-  
tain to escape*. The past tense  
ἐμελλον, like ἔδει in the next clause,  
expresses the thought of the Per-  
sians from the point of view of the  
time of Hdt. (GS. 272). The  
direct thought of the Persians  
would be "they are, no doubt  
(δῆθεν), going to escape." δῆθεν,  
consequently, is not ironical, as in

πυρφόρον τῷ ἐκείνων λόγῳ ἐκφυγόντα περιγενέσθαι. 7 πρὸς ταῦτα ὧν τάδε ἐμνηχανῶντο· τῶν νεῶν ἀπασέων ἀποκρίναντες διηκοσίας περιέπεμπον ἔξωθεν Σκιάθου, ὡς ἂν μὴ ὀφθείησαν ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων περιπλέουσai Εὐβοίαν κατὰ τε Καφηρέα καὶ περὶ Γεραιστὸν ἐς τὸν Εὐριπον, ἵνα δὴ περιλάβοιεν οἱ μὲν ταύτῃ ἀπικόμενοι 5 καὶ φράξαντες αὐτῶν τὴν ὀπίσω φέρουσιν ὁδόν, σφεῖς δὲ ἐπισπόμενοι ἐξ ἐναντίας. ταῦτα βουλευσάμενοι ἀπέπεμπον τῶν νεῶν τὰς ταχθείσας, αὐτοὶ οὐκ ἐν νόρῳ ἔχοντες ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρης τοῖσι Ἕλλησι ἐπιθήσεσθαι, οὐδὲ πρότερον ἢ τὸ σύνθημά σφι ἔμελλε φανήσεσθαι 10 παρὰ τῶν περιπλεόντων ὡς ἡκόντων. ταύτας μὲν δὴ περιέπεμπον, τῶν δὲ λοιπέων νεῶν ἐν τῇσι Ἀφετῇσι

8. 5. 4. Cp. τί δὴ ἀνδρωθέντες δῆθεν ποιήσουσι *what will they do when they are really men* (6. 138. 18). — 11. πυρφόρον: the priest who bore the sacred fire. His person was inviolable; hence οὐδὲ πυρφόρος ἐλείφθη became a proverbial expression for utter annihilation.

7. 2. Σκιάθου: an island east of Magnesia, north of Artemisium. The squadron passed northwards between Magnesia and Sciathus, and then sailed down the east side of the island. — 3. ἂν: on the opt. with ἄν in a final clause, see GMT. 329. Cp. 7. 176. 24. — 4. κατὰ, περί: *past, around*. Geraestus is the southernmost point of Euboea. Hence the different prepositions,

the latter of doubling the cape. —

5. οἱ μὲν: those in the 200 ships. — ταύτῃ: *in that way*, i.e. by the Euripus. — 6. σφεῖς: this refers to the subj. of περιέπεμπον, the main body of the Persians. See Syn. § 9. 1. a. — 9. ἐπιθήσεσθαι: for the fut. instead of the aor., see GMT. 113; GS. 326; Syn. § 15. 4. c. — 10. ἔμελλε: the imperf. of μέλλω with the inf. expresses a fut. idea in past time; in Attic πρὶν ἂν φανῇ. Hdt. uses the subjv. with πρὶν ἢ πρότερον ἢ (without ἂν) in 7. 197. 11 and 9. 87. 5, etc. (GMT. 651, 653). With the present case cp. ἐκέλευε . . . ἀπαγγέλλειν ὅτι πρότερον ἤξει παρ' ἐκείνων ἢ Ἀστυάγης αὐτὸς βουλήσεται 1. 127. 5. — 11. ὡς ἡκόντων: Syn.

8 ἐποίεοντο ἀριθμόν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἐν τῷ οὗτοι ἀριθμόν ἐποίεοντο τῶν νεῶν (ἦν γὰρ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ τούτῳ Σκυλλίης Σκιωναῖος, δύτης τῶν τότε ἀνθρώπων ἄριστος, ὃς καὶ ἐν τῇ ναυηγίῃ τῇ κατὰ Πήλιον γενομένη πολλὰ μὲν ἔσωσε τῶν χρημάτων τοῖσι Πέρσησι, 5 πολλὰ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς περιεβάλετο), οὗτος ὁ Σκυλλίης ἐν νόῳ μὲν εἶχε ἄρα καὶ πρότερον αὐτομολήσειν ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἀλλ' οὐ γάρ οἱ παρέσχε ὡς τότε. ὅτε μὲν δὴ τρόπῳ τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν ἔτι ἀπύκετο ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν ἀτρεκέως, θωμάζω δὲ εἰ τὰ λεγόμενά ἐστι 10 ἀληθέα· λέγεται γὰρ ὡς ἐξ Ἀφετέων δὺς ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν οὐ πρότερον ἀνέσχε πρὶν ἢ ἀπύκετο ἐπὶ τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον, σταδίους μάλιστά κη τούτους ἐς ὀγδῶ-

§ 25. 3. — 13. ἀριθμόν: this was their first opportunity to learn the extent of the damage done by the storm (7. 193).

SCYLLIAS, THE DIVER, INFORMS THE GREEKS OF THE SQUADRON SENT ROUND EUBOEA

8. 2. ἦν γάρ: see 8. 5. 5. Syn. § 31. 4. — 3. Σκιωναῖος: Scione was a town on the peninsula of Pallene. — 4. καί: also. He displayed his skill then as well as on the present occasion. — ναυηγίη: see 7. 188 f. — 5. πολλὰ μὲν . . . πολλὰ δέ: anaphora. — 7. ἄρα: he really had it in mind to desert, though the contrary might have been inferred. Cp. 7. 35. 11, 8. 111. 11. Syn. § 15. 2 f. — καὶ πρό-

τερον: the beginning words ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ have been forgotten. — 8. ἀλλ' οὐ γάρ: but, as a matter of fact, it was not possible. For the separation of ἀλλὰ γάρ, cp. 7. 158. 11, 9. 27. 22. — οἱ: Att. αὐτῷ. — παρέσχε: it was possible. Freq. in Hdt. — ὡς τότε: as on this occasion. — ὅτε: Dial. § 3. ii. 4. — 9. τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν ἔτι: from this on. Cp. ἐνθεῦτεν οὐκέτι 8. 118. 3, and, with adverbs of place, 2. 5. 5, 2. 8. 15, 2. 119. 12, 5. 9. 1. — 13. σταδίους κτί: thereby passing through the sea something like eighty stades. τούτους, in apposition to σταδίους, means the distance from Aphetae to Artemisium. Hdt. freq. uses μάλιστά κη to make a statement less exact. Cp. 1. 76. 5,

κοντα διὰ τῆς θαλάσσης διεξελθών. λέγεται μὲν νυν καὶ ἄλλα ψευδέσι εἵκελα περὶ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς τούτου, τὰ δὲ <sup>15</sup> μετεξέτερα ἀληθέα· περὶ μέντοι τούτου γνώμη μοι ἀποδεδέχθω πλοίῳ μιν ἀπικέσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ Ἄρτεμίσιον. ὥς δὲ ἀπίκητο, αὐτίκα ἐσήμαινε τοῖσι στρατηγοῖσι τὴν τε ναυηγίην ὥς γένοιτο καὶ τὰς περιπεμφθείσας τῶν νεῶν περὶ Εὐβοίαν. τοῦτο δὲ ἀκούσαντες οἱ Ἕλληνες λόγον σφίσι αὐτοῖσι ἐδίδοσαν. πολλῶν δὲ λεχθέντων ἐνίκα τὴν ἡμέρην ἐκείνην αὐτοῦ μέιναντάς τε καὶ αὐλισθέντας, μετέπειτα νύκτα μέσσην παρέντας πορεύεσθαι καὶ ἀπαντᾶν τῇσι περιπλεούσῃσι τῶν νεῶν. <sup>5</sup> μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο, ὥς οὐδεὶς σφι ἐπέπλει, δείλην ὀψίην γινομένην τῆς ἡμέρης φυλάξαντες αὐτοὶ ἐπανέπλεον ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους, ἀπόπειραν αὐτῶν ποιήσασθαι

2. 75. 2.— 16. μετεξέτερα: Att. ἐνα. Pausanias 10. 19. 1 tells us that Scyllias dived down and loosened the anchors of the Persian ships during the storm off Pelion. Hdt. had probably heard the tale, but thought it less worth telling than this one, which he so gravely rejects.— 19. ὥς γένοιτο: how it had gone, i.e. the details. The main fact was already known to the Greeks (7. 192).— τὰς περιπεμφθείσας: he told of the ships that had been sent round. The supplm. instead of the attrib. ptc. would seem more natural with σημαίνω; possibly elliptical for he reported the sending round of the ships that had been sent. Cp. 8. 80. 4.

#### THE FIRST SEA FIGHT AT ARTEMISIUM (CC. 9-11)

9. 2. λόγον . . . ἐδίδοσαν: they discussed the matter. Cp. 1. 97. 9, 6. 138. 15, and, of individuals, ἐπεὶ ἐξηγέρθη ὁ Κῦρος, ἐδίδου λόγον ἐωντῷ 1. 209. 11.— 3. ἐνίκα: it prevailed. The subj. is πορεύεσθαι καὶ ἀπαντᾶν. Cp. ἐπεῖτε ἐνίκα μὴ ἐκλιπεῖν τὴν πόλιν 6. 101. 8. Hdt. does not explain why this plan was not carried out.— 4. νύκτα μέσσην: in Att. only plur. Cp. 8. 76. 5.— παρέντας: letting pass.— 6. δέλην . . . φυλάξαντες: waiting until the afternoon grew late. Cp. 8. 6. 3, 8. 14. 10.— 8. αὐτῶν: this is



10 βουλόμενοι τῆς τε μάχης καὶ τοῦ διεκπλόου. ὁρῶντες δὲ σφεας οἱ τε ἄλλοι στρατιῶται οἱ Ξέρξῃ καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐπιπλέοντας νηυσὶ ὀλίγησι, πάγχυ σφίμανίνην ἐπενείκαντες ἀνῆγον καὶ αὐτοὶ τὰς νέας, ἐλπίσαντες σφεας εὐπετέως αἰρήσειν, οἰκότα κάρτα ἐλπίσαντες, τὰς μὲν γε τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὁρῶντες ὀλίγας νέας, τὰς δὲ ἐωντῶν πλήθει τε πολλαπλησίας καὶ ἄμεινον πλεούσας. καταφρονήσαντες ταῦτα ἐκυκλοῦντο αὐτοὺς ἐς μέσον. ὅσοι μὲν νυν τῶν Ἰώνων ἦσαν εὖνοοι τοῖσι Ἕλλησι, ἀέκοντές τε ἐστρατεύοντο συμφορὴν τε ἐποίοντο 10 μεγάλην ὁρῶντες περιεχομένους αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐπιστάμενοι ὥς οὐδεὶς αὐτῶν ἀπονοστήσει· οὕτω ἀσθενέα σφί ἐφαίνετο εἶναι τὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πρήγματα. ὅσοισι δὲ καὶ ἡδομένοισι ἦν τὸ γινόμενον, ἄμιλλαν ἐποιέοντο

further defined by μάχης and διεκπλόου. — 9. διεκπλόου: a maneuver in which a ship darted through the enemy's line to get a favorable position for ramming, or to break the oars of the hostile ship in passing. Some years later the Athenians acquired great skill in such tactics.

10. 3. πάγχυ: Att. πάνυ. For its use with ἐπενείκαντες cp. πάγχυ δοκεῖν or καταδοκεῖν *to be thoroughly convinced* 1. 31. 4, 6. 16. 10, 7. 32. 7 and πάγχυ ἐλπίζειν *to confidently expect* 3. 157. 4, 8. 12. 7. In *μανίνην τε τοῖσι Ἀθηναίοισι ἐπέφερν καὶ πάγχυ ὀλεθρίην* 6. 112. 6 it is hard to separate πάγχυ from ὀλεθρίην. — 4. ἐπενείκαντες: Ion.

aor. of ἐπιφέρω, but not etymologically related to ἡνεγκον. — ἐλπίσαντες: *having conceived the hope*. — 5. σφίας: Att. αὐτούς; the Greeks are referred to. — οἰκότα: Att. εἰκότα. — 6. ὀλίγας: sc. εούσας (cp. 6. 112. 6). Sitzler takes ὀλίγας, πολλαπλησίας, and πλεούσας attributively. — 8. καταφρονήσαντες ταῦτα: *conceiving this idea*. καταφρονεῖν in Hdt. is generally a strengthened φρονεῖν, not *to despise*. — ἐκυκλοῦντο . . . ἐς μέσον: *they were trying to surround them*. Impf. of attempted action. — 10. συμφορὴν τε ἐποιέοντο: *held it a misfortune*. — 11. ἐπιστάμενοι: *believing*. — 13. ὅσοισι δὲ καὶ ἡδομένοισι: dat. of interest. S. 1487;

ὁκως αὐτὸς ἕκαστος πρῶτος νέα Ἀττικὴν ἔλων παρὰ<sup>15</sup>  
 βασιλέος δῶρα λάμπεται. Ἀθηναίων γὰρ αὐτοῖσι  
 11 λόγος ἦν πλείστος ἀνὰ τὰ στρατόπεδα. τοῖσι δὲ Ἑλ-  
 λησι ὡς ἐσήμηνε, πρῶτα μὲν ἀντίπρωροι τοῖσι βαρβά-  
 ροισι γενόμενοι ἐς τὸ μέσον τὰς πρύμνας συνήγαγον,  
 δεύτερα δὲ σημήναντος ἔργου εἶχοντο, ἐν ὀλίγῳ περ  
 ἀπολαμφθέντες καὶ κατὰ στόμα. ἐνθαῦτα τριήκοντα<sup>5</sup>  
 νέας αἰρέουσι τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ τὸν Γόργου τοῦ  
 Σαλαμινίων βασιλέος ἀδελφεὸν Φιλάονα τὸν Χέρσιος,  
 λόγιμον ἐόντα ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἄνδρα. πρῶτος δὲ  
 Ἑλλήνων νέα τῶν πολεμίων εἶλε ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖος, Λυκο-  
 μήδης Αἰσχυραίου, καὶ τὸ ἀριστήριον ἔλαβε οὗτος. τοὺς<sup>10</sup>  
 δ' ἐν τῇ ναυμαχίῃ ταύτῃ ἑτεραλκέως ἀγωνιζομένους νύξ

HA. 771 a; G. 1584. — 16. λάμπεται: Att. λήψεται. — αὐτοῖσι λόγος ἦν πλείστος: *they talked most* about the Athenians. Cp. τῆς σῆς δικαιοσύνης ἦν λόγος πολλός 6. 86. a 16.

11. 2. ἐσήμηνε: sc. ὁ σαλπικ-  
 κτής. — πρῶτα μὲν . . . δεύτερα δέ:  
 properly the two clauses should  
 form the apod. to ὡς ἐσήμηνε. The  
 introduction of σημήναντος makes  
 a slight anacoluthon. — 4. περ: Att.  
 καίπερ. — 5. ἀπολαμφθέντες: Att.  
 ἀποληφθέντες. Cp. 8. 10. 16. From  
 the description of Hdt. we might  
 infer that the whole Greek fleet  
 formed in a circle, allowing the  
 Persians to surround them; but  
 such a position would permit the  
 Persians to enter the strait be-

tween Euboea and the mainland,  
 which it was the chief object of the  
 Greeks to prevent. — 7. Σαλαμι-  
 νίων: of Cyprus (7. 98. 6). —  
 10. τοὺς δ': in demonstr. sense  
 = Att. τούτους. Syn. § 8. 2. —  
 11. ἑτεραλκέως: cp. τῶν δὲ Σαμίων  
 οἱ στρατευόμενοι, ἐόντες τε ἐν τῷ  
 στρατοπέδῳ τῷ Μηδικῷ καὶ ἀπα-  
 ραιρημένοι τὰ ὄπλα, ὡς εἶδον αὐτίκα  
 κατ' ἀρχὰς γινομένην ἑτεραλκέα τὴν  
 μάχην, ἔρδον ὅσον ἐδυνάετο, προσω-  
 φελεῖν ἐθέλοντες τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι 9.  
 103. 5. The common interpreta-  
 tion of ἑτεραλκής in both these  
 passages is *indecisive*, i.e. *with the*  
*strength (ἀλκή) now on one side,*  
*now on the other*. In Homer we  
 have quite a different meaning.  
 Cp. ἡ μὲν δὴ γίγνωσκε μάχης ἑτερ-

ἐπελθοῦσα διέλυσε. οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἕλληνες ἐπὶ τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον ἀπέπλεον, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἐς τὰς Ἀφετάς, πολλὸν παρὰ δόξαν ἀγωνισάμενοι. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ναυμαχίῃ Ἀντίδωρος Λήμνιος μούνος τῶν σὺν βασιλεῖ Ἑλλήνων<sup>15</sup> ἔοντων αὐτομολεῖ ἐς τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καὶ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι διὰ τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον ἔδοσαν αὐτῷ χῶρον ἐν Σαλαμῖνι. 12 ὥς δὲ εὐφρόνη ἐγεγόνει, ἦν μὲν τῆς ὥρης μέσον θέρος, ἐγίνετο δὲ ὕδωρ τε ἄπλετον διὰ πάσης τῆς νυκτὸς καὶ σκληραὶ βρονταὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ Πηλίου· οἱ δὲ νεκροὶ καὶ τὰ ναυήγια ἐξεφορέοντο ἐς τὰς Ἀφετάς, καὶ περὶ τε τὰς πρώρας τῶν νεῶν εἰλέοντο καὶ ἐτάρασσον τοὺς ταρσοὺς 5

αλκία νίκην Π 362, in truth he recognized that victory was now with the other side (it had been with his own). Cp. Hdt. 9. 103. 5, which may be translated, in perfect agreement with the context, *the Samians* —, *when they saw right at the beginning that the strength in the battle was with the other side, did what they could to help the Greeks*. Here we are told that the Greeks captured thirty ships, while nothing is said of any Persian successes. Further, a slight contrast with the statement here may be seen in the words of 8. 16. 5 ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ναυμαχίᾳ παραπλήσιοι ἀλλήλοισι ἐγίνοντο. Note also just below in this chapter οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι . . . πολλὸν παρὰ δόξαν ἀγωνισάμενοι. Consequently we should translate *night separated them contend-*

*ing in this battle with different strength*. The context shows on which side the greater strength was displayed. — 16. ἔοντων: this position of the ptc. is made possible by σὺν βασιλεῖ.

A STORM AT NIGHT TERRIFIES THE PERSIANS AT APHETAE, AND DESTROYS THE SQUADRON SAILING ROUND EUBOEAE; REINFORCEMENTS ARRIVE FOR THE GREEKS; IN THE AFTERNOON THEY DESTROY SOME CILICIAN SHIPS (CC. 12-14)

12. 1. μὲν . . . δέ: the first clause is in thought subord., though coörd. in form: *though it was mid-summer*. — τῆς ὥρης μέσον θέρος: = τῆς θερινῆς ὥρης μέσον. As the Greek said θέρος ὥρη *season of summer*, the gen. ὥρης is evidently due to μέσον. — 5. πρώρας:

τῶν κωπέων. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἱ ταύτῃ ἀκούοντες ταῦτα ἐς φόβον κατιστέατο, ἐλπίζοντες πάγχυ ἀπολεῖσθαι ἐς οἷα κακὰ ἦκον· πρὶν γὰρ ἢ καὶ ἀναπνεύσαι σφεας ἔκ τε τῆς ναυηγίης καὶ τοῦ χειμῶνος τοῦ γενομένου κατὰ Πήλιον, ὑπέλαβε ναυμαχίῃ καρτερή, ἐκ δὲ 10 τῆς ναυμαχίης ὄμβρος τε λάβρος καὶ ῥεύματα ἰσχυρὰ 13 ἐς θάλασσαν ὀρμημένα βρονταί τε σκληραί. καὶ τοῦτοις μὲν τοιαύτῃ νύξ ἐγίνετο, τοῖσι δὲ ταχθεῖσι αὐτῶν περιπλεῖν Εὐβοίαν ἢ αὐτῇ περ ἐοῦσα νύξ πολλὸν ἦν ἔτι ἀγριωτέρῃ, τοσοῦτῳ ὅσῳ ἐν πελάγει φερομένοισι ἐπέπιπτε, καὶ τὸ τέλος σφί ἐγένετο ἄχαρι· ὥς γὰρ δὴ 5 πλέουσι αὐτοῖσι χειμῶν τε καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπεγίνετο ἐοῦσι κατὰ τὰ Κοῖλα τῆς Εὐβοίης, φερόμενοι τῷ πνεύματι

the ships were drawn up on land stern foremost.—6. οἱ ταύτῃ: *those there*, in apposition to those sailing round Euboea. Cp. τοῦτοις μὲν in 8. 13. 1.—7. κατιστέατο: Att. καθίσταντο.—πάγχυ: see 8. 10. 3.—8. ἐς οἷα κακὰ ἦκον: = ὅτι ἐς τοιαῦτα κτέ.—12. ὀρμημένα: *having started for the sea, i.e. on the way to the sea*. For the pf., cp. 8. 35. 1 and ὥς φάτις ὀρμηται 7. 189. 6 as the story goes.

13. 1. τοῦτοις μὲν κτέ.: *these had such a night, but those appointed . . . had one far fiercer still, although it was the same*.—5. ἄχαρι: *unpleasant*; euphemistic for κάκιοντες.—6. τὸ ὕδωρ: the art. is not used with χειμῶν, because the wind was not specifically

mentioned above.—7. τὰ Κοῖλα: the southwest coast of Euboea from Cape Geraestus north (Strabo 445). From Aphetae around Scythus to the Κοῖλα is about 150 miles. The estimates of the distance a ship could travel in a day vary considerably (cp. 1. 203. 7, 2. 11. 5, 2. 117. 4, 4. 86. 2, 7. 183. 14, 8. 66. 3; Thuc. 2. 97. 1; Xen. *Anab.* 6. 4. 2). In 4. 86 Hdt. reckons 700 stades (about 80 miles) as an average 'long day's' sail; in 7. 183 it is said that the Persian fleet sailed from Therma to C. Sepias (about 105 miles), πανήμερον (perhaps 15 hours) πλέοντες. On this basis it is safe to say that a fleet of 200 ships could not get from Aphetae to Geraes-

καὶ οὐκ εἰδότες τῇ ἐφέροντο ἐξέπιπτον πρὸς τὰς πέτρας.  
 ἐποιεῖτό τε πᾶν ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ ὅκως ἂν ἐξισωθείη τῷ  
 14 Ἑλληνικῷ τὸ Περσικὸν μηδὲ πολλῷ πλέον εἶη. οὗτοι  
 μὲν νυν περὶ τὰ Κοῖλα τῆς Εὐβοίης διεφθείροντο · οἱ  
 δὲ ἐν Ἀφετῇσι βάρβαροι, ὥς σφι ἀσμένοισι ἡμέρη  
 ἐπέλαμψε, ἀτρέμας τε εἶχον τὰς νέας καὶ σφι ἀπεχρῆτο  
 κακῶς πρήσσουσι ἡσυχίην ἄγειν ἐν τῷ παρεόντι. τοῖσι 5  
 δὲ Ἕλλησι ἐπεβοήθειον νέες τρεῖς καὶ πεντήκοντα Ἀττι-  
 καί. αὐταί τε δὴ σφεας ἐπέρρωσαν ἀπικόμεναι καὶ  
 ἅμα ἀγγελίῃ ἐλθοῦσα ὥς τῶν βαρβάρων οἱ περιπλέ-  
 οντες τὴν Εὐβοίαν πάντες εἶησαν διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τοῦ  
 γενομένου χειμῶνος. φυλάξαντες δὴ τὴν αὐτὴν ὥρην 10  
 πλέοντες ἐπέπεσον νηυσὶ Κιλίσσησι · ταύτας δὲ δια-

tus under 20 hours (probably they would take much longer). If, then, they were destroyed during the night, they must have started before the preceding afternoon. It is generally supposed that Hdt. refers to the same afternoon in 8. 6. 2 and 8. 9. 7, but his statements are not definite. See 8. 15. 6. — 8. ἐφέροντο: impf. indic. instead of pres. opt. or indic. in indir. disc. S. 2624; HA. 936; G. 1489. — 9. ὅκως ἂν: cp. 8. 7. 3. — 10. μηδὲ πολλῷ πλέον: in 8. 66. 6 Hdt. says that the Persian force when it arrived at Athens was not less than when it came to Sepias, a manifest exaggeration, due to his desire to magnify the victory of the

Greeks. Here his religious feelings are uppermost, and he sees in the storm a sign that the Greek cause was favored by Heaven. — μηδέ: freq. in Hdt. after affirmative clauses, but generally when there is a strong contrast = *but not*. See Syn. § 29.

14. 3. ἀσμένοισι: cp. 8. 10. 13. — 6. τρεῖς καὶ πεντήκοντα: this brings the Athenian contingent up to 180 ships (cp. 8. 1. 2), the same number as they had at Salamis (8. 44. 3). — 8. ἀγγελίῃ: the fact that the fleet was destroyed could not have been known before daylight, so that it must have been well on in the afternoon before the news reached the Greeks. — 10. δὴ: *sa*, — 11. πλέοντες: with the

φθείραντες, ὥς εὐφρόνη ἐγίνετο, ἀπέπλεον ὀπίσω ἐπὶ τὸ  
 15 Ἀρτεμίσιον. τρίτῃ δὲ ἡμέρῃ δεινόν τι ποιησάμενοι οἱ  
 στρατηγοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων νέας οὕτω σφι ὀλίγας λυμαί-  
 νεσθαι καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ Ξέρξεω δειμαίνοντες οὐκ ἀνέμειναν  
 ἔτι τοὺς Ἕλληνας μάχης ἄρξαι, ἀλλὰ παρακελευσά-  
 μενοι κατὰ μέσον ἡμέρης ἀνῆγον τὰς νέας. συνέπιπτε 5  
 δὲ ὥστε τὰς αὐτὰς ταύτας ἡμέρας τὰς τε ναυμαχίας  
 γίνεσθαι ταύτας καὶ τὰς πεζομαχίας τὰς ἐν Θερμοπύ-  
 λησι. ἦν δὲ πᾶς ὁ ἀγὼν τοῖσι κατὰ θάλασσαν περὶ  
 τοῦ Εὐρίπου, ὥσπερ τοῖσι ἀμφὶ Λεωνίδα τὴν ἐσβολὴν  
 φυλάσσειν. οἱ μὲν δὲ παρεκελεύοντο ὅκως μὴ παρή- 10

pres. tense, cp. the impf. ἀπέπλεον  
 below and ἀνῆγον 8. 15. 5.

#### THE THIRD NAVAL BATTLE

(CC. 15-17)

15. 1. δεινόν τι: τις strength-  
 ens adjs. See Syn. § 11. 2. — 3. τὸ  
 ἀπὸ Ξέρξεω: *what X. would do*;  
 cp. 7. 101. 13. — 6. ὥστε: with  
 συνέπιπτε Hdt. also uses the inf.  
 without ὥστε. Cp. also συνεπεπτώ-  
 κει ἔρις εὐόσα 1. 82. 3. See GMT.  
 588; Syn. § 23. 4. b. — τὰς αὐτὰς  
 ταύτας ἡμέρας: cp. 7. 151. 6. Syn.  
 § 2. 3. From 7. 210. 2 we learn  
 that Xerxes let four days pass,  
 after his arrival at Thermopylae,  
 before he attacked Leonidas. The  
 attack lasted three days (7. 210-  
 225). According to 7. 196 the  
 Persian fleet arrived at Artemi-  
 sium on the third of these seven  
 days, and it was early afternoon

(8. 6. 3). The present statement  
 makes the sea fights take place on  
 the fifth, sixth, and seventh days.  
 Consequently, if the other state-  
 ments are correct, the events de-  
 scribed in 8. 6-9 must have taken  
 up the afternoon of the third, all  
 of the fourth, and most of the fifth  
 day. In that case the afternoons  
 referred to in 8. 6. 3 and 8. 9. 7  
 would not be the same. See 8.  
 13. 6. — 10. φυλάσσειν: with ἀγών.  
 Cp. 7. 11. 18. — οἱ μὲν δὲ: the lines  
 immediately preceding rather turn  
 one's thoughts aside to a compari-  
 son between the Greek land and  
 sea forces. In the present sen-  
 tence the Persian and Greek fleets  
 are again in mind, παρεκελεύοντο  
 resuming the παρακελευσάμενοι  
 above, though the Greeks instead  
 of the Persians are now the sub-  
 ject. — ὅκως μὴ: see GMT. 355.

σουσι ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα τοὺς βαρβάρους, οἱ δ' ὅκως τὸ  
 Ἑλληνικὸν στράτευμα διαφθείραντες τοῦ πόρου κρα-  
 16 τήσουσι. ὥς δὲ ταξάμενοι οἱ Ξέρξῳ ἐπέπλεον, οἱ  
 Ἕλληνες ἀτρέμας εἶχον πρὸς τῷ Ἀρτεμισίῳ. οἱ δὲ  
 βάρβαροι μηνοειδὲς ποιήσαντες τῶν νεῶν ἐκυκλοῦντο,  
 ὥς περιλάβοιεν αὐτούς. ἐνθεῦτεν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπα-  
 νέπλεόν τε καὶ συνέμισγον. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ναυμαχίᾳ 5  
 παραπλήσιοι ἀλλήλοισι ἐγίνοντο. ὁ γὰρ Ξέρξῳ  
 στρατὸς ὑπὸ μεγάλθεός τε καὶ πλήθεος αὐτὸς ὑπ' ἐωυτοῦ  
 ἔπιπτε, ταρασσομένων τε τῶν νεῶν καὶ περιπιπτουσέων  
 περὶ ἀλλήλας· ὅμως μέντοι ἀντείχε καὶ οὐκ εἶκε· δεινὸν  
 γὰρ χρῆμα ἐποιέοντο ὑπὸ νεῶν ὀλίγων ἐς φυγὴν τράπε- 10  
 σθαι. πολλαὶ μὲν δὴ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νέες διεφθείροντο,  
 πολλοὶ δὲ ἄνδρες, πολλῷ δ' ἔτι πλείονες νέες τε τῶν  
 βαρβάρων καὶ ἄνδρες. οὕτω δὲ ἀγωνιζόμενοι διέστη-  
 σαν χωρὶς ἐκάτεροι.

- 17 Ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ναυμαχίᾳ Αἰγύπτιοι μὲν τῶν Ξέρξῳ  
 στρατιωτέων ἡρίστευσαν, οἱ ἄλλα τε μεγάλα ἔργα

16. 3. μηνοειδὲς: *a crescent*.  
 Neut. adj. as subst. Cp. 7. 199.  
 2, 7. 200. 4. — 6. γάρ: to be taken  
 with the whole sentence, as far as  
 εἶκε, the first clause to ἀλλήλας  
 being practically concessive. —  
 7. ὑπό: cp. 8. 1. 3. — μεγάλθεος: Dial.  
 § 1. ii. 1. μεγάλθεος and πλήθεος  
 are here synonymous, since there  
 is no reference to the size of the  
 vessels. They are used merely for  
 rhetorical effect, which is largely  
 aimed at in this chap. Cp. the syn-  
 onymous ταρασσομένων and περι-

πιπτουσέων in 8; the positive and  
 negative form of assertion in 9,  
 with the added effect of likeness  
 of sound in -εἶχε, εἶκε; the anapho-  
 ra πολλαὶ μὲν . . . πολλοὶ δὲ . . .  
 πολλῷ δ' in 11, 12; and the  
 fullness of expression in 3-4, and  
 in διέστησαν χωρὶς 13. — 11. διε-  
 φθείροντο: cp. the contingents at  
 Salamis (cc. 43-48) with the num-  
 bers in c. 1. — 13. ἀγωνιζόμενοι: cp.  
 the pres. ptc. in 8. 11. 11 and the  
 aor. in 8. 11. 14. The aor. would  
 be more usual here. Cp. 8. 62. 1.

ἀπεδέξαντο καὶ νέας αὐτοῖσι ἀνδράσι εἶλον Ἑλληνίδας  
 πέντε. τῶν δὲ Ἑλλήνων κατὰ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέρην  
 ἡρίστευσαν Ἀθηναῖοι καὶ Ἀθηναίων Κλεωῖης ὁ Ἀλκι-  
 βιάδew, ὃς δαπάνην οἰκίην παρεχόμενος ἐστρατεύετο  
 ἀνδράσι τε διηκοσίοισι καὶ οἰκίῃ νηί.

- 18 Ὡς δὲ διέστησαν, ἄσμενοι ἐκάτεροι ἐς ὄρμον ἡπεί-  
 γοντο. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ὡς διακριθέντες ἐκ τῆς ναυ-  
 μαχίης ἀπηλλάχθησαν, τῶν μὲν νεκρῶν καὶ τῶν  
 ναυηγίων ἐπεκράτεον, τρηχέως δὲ περιεφθέντες, καὶ  
 οὐκ ἦκιστα Ἀθηναῖοι τῶν αἰ ἡμίσεαι τῶν νεῶν τετρω-  
 μέναι ἦσαν, δρυσμόν δὴ ἐβούλευον ἔσω ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.

17. 3. ἀπεδέξαντο: Dial. § 1. ii.  
 2. — αὐτοῖσι ἀνδράσι: dat. of ac-  
 companiment (S. 1525; HA. 774 a;  
 B. 392. 3 note; G. 1191). — 5. Ἀθη-  
 ναῖοι: cp. Plut. *Them.* 8 Πίνδαρος  
 οὐ κακῶς εἰκε... ἐπὶ τῆς ἐν Ἀρτεμι-  
 σίφ μάχης εἰπεῖν· ὅθι παῖδες Ἀθα-  
 ναίων ἐβάλλοντο φαεινὰν | κρηπιδ᾽  
 ἐλευθερίας (see Bergk, *Poet. Lyr.*<sup>5</sup>  
 i. 1. p. 414). Plutarch also cites  
 from a *stèle* in the temple of Artemis  
 at Artemisium these verses: Παντοδαπῶν ἀνδρῶν γενεὰς Ἀσίης  
 ἀπὸ χώρης | παῖδες Ἀθηναίων τῷδε  
 ποτ' ἐν πελάγει | ναυμαχίῃ δαμά-  
 σαντες, ἐπεὶ στρατὸς ὤλετο Μήδων,  
 | σήματα ταῦτ' ἔθεσαν παρθένῃ  
 Ἀρτέμιδι. Cp. the claim of Isoc-  
 rates, *Paneg.* 90, that the Athe-  
 nians with sixty ships met the  
 whole fleet of the enemy at Artemisium.  
 — Ἀλκιβιάδew: grandfather of the celebrated Alcibiades.

Cp. Plut. *Alcib.* 1. — 6. οἰκίην: the  
 trierarch usually received from the  
 state the hull and mast. It was his  
 duty to fit out the ship and secure  
 the crew, whose wages and rations  
 were supplied from the public funds.  
 — 7. διηκοσίοισι: cp. 7. 184. 7.

THE GREEKS PLAN A RETREAT;  
 NEWS OF THE DEFEAT AT  
 THERMOPYLAE HASTENS THEIR  
 DEPARTURE; THEMISTOCLES  
 LEAVES MESSAGES FOR THE  
 IONIANS (CC. 18-22)

18. 3. τῶν μὲν κτί: *though they  
 were masters.* To be left in pos-  
 session of the dead was regarded  
 as a sign of victory, for only the  
 defeated would neglect the sacred  
 duty of burial. — 5. αἱ ἡμίσεαι...  
 τετρωμένοι: yet the full contingent  
 of 180 ships is present at Salamis  
 a few weeks later (8. 44. 3).



19 νόφ δὲ λαβὼν Θεμιστοκλῆς ὥς εἰ ἀπορραγείη ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 βαρβάρου τό τε Ἴωνικὸν φύλον καὶ τὸ Καρικόν, οἳοί τε  
 εἶησαν τῶν λοιπῶν κατύπερθε γενέσθαι, ἐλαυνόντων  
 τῶν Εὐβοέων πρόβατα ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν, ταύτῃ συλ-  
 λέξας τοὺς στρατηγούς ἔλεγέ σφι ὥς δοκεῖ εἶχειν τινὰ 5  
 παλάμην τῇ ἐλπίζοι τῶν βασιλέος συμμάχων ἀποστή-  
 σειν τοὺς ἀρίστους. ταῦτα μὲν νυν ἐς τοσοῦτο παρε-  
 γύμνου, ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖσι κατήκουσι πρήγμασι τάδε ποιητέα  
 εἶναί σφι ἔλεγε, τῶν τε προβάτων τῶν Εὐβοϊκῶν κατα-  
 θύειν ὅσα τις ἐθέλοι (κρέσσον γὰρ εἶναι τὴν στρατιὴν 10  
 εἶχειν ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους), παραίνει τε προειπεῖν τοῖσι  
 ἑωυτῶν ἐκάστους πῦρ ἀνακαίειν· κομιδῆς δὲ πέρι τὴν  
 ὥρην αὐτῷ μελήσειν ὥστε ἀσινέας ἀπικέσθαι ἐς τὴν  
 Ἑλλάδα. ταῦτα ἤρεσέ σφι ποιεῖν καὶ αὐτίκα πῦρ  
 20 ἀνακαυσάμενοι ἐτράποντο πρὸς τὰ πρόβατα. οἱ γὰρ  
 Εὐβοεῖς παραχρησάμενοι τὸν Βάκιδος χρησμόν ὥς

19. 2. βαρβάρου: for the sing.  
 cp. 8. 22. 15, 8. 29. 6. — 3. εἶησαν:  
 indirect form of οἳοί τε εἰσι. For  
 the pres. instead of the fut. see 8.  
 102. 8. — ἐλαυνόντων . . . ταύτῃ:  
*as the E.'s were in the habit of*  
*driving their flocks to the sea,*  
*he assembled the generals there.*  
 The gen. abs. gives the reason for  
 assembling the generals at the  
 place where they would see the  
 flocks. His object comes out in  
 10, though the connection between  
 the slaughter of the flocks and his  
 plan for winning over the Ionians  
 is not made clear. Apparently it

was a device for delaying the re-  
 treat. — 5. δοκεῖ: either this or  
 ἐλπίζοι is unnecessary. — 8. τάδε:  
 explained by καταθύειν and προει-  
 πεῖν, but with the latter παραίνει is  
 inserted after the parenthesis. —  
 12. ἐκάστους: the plur. with refer-  
 ence to the smaller groups in each  
 Greek division. For the accus.  
 after the dat., cp. Λυδοῖσί τε πᾶσι  
 προεῖπε θύειν πάντα τινὰ αὐτῶν 1.  
 50. 6, and 3. 70. 6. — πέρι: anas-  
 trophe. — 13. ὥστε: see Syn. § 23.  
 4. h.

20. 2. παραχρησάμενοι: *disre-*  
*garding.* See S. § 4. ii. B. 1. — Βά-

οὐδὲν λέγοντα, οὔτε τι ἐξεκομίσαντο οὐδὲν οὔτε προσάξαντο ὥς παρεσομένου σφι πολέμον, περιπετέα τε ἐποιήσαντο σφίσι αὐτοῖσι τὰ πρήγματα. Βάκιδι γὰρ ὧδε ἔχει περὶ τούτων ὁ χρησμός·

Φράζεο, βαρβαρόφωνος ὅταν ζυγὸν εἰς ἄλα βάλλῃ  
 Βύβλινον, Εὐβοίης ἀπέχειν πολυμηκάδας αἶγας.

τούτοισι οὐδὲν τοῖσι ἔπεισι χρησαμένοισι ἐν τοῖσι τότε  
 παρευούσι τε καὶ προσδοκίμοισι κακοῖσι παρῇν σφι <sup>10</sup>  
<sup>21</sup> συμφορῇ χρῆσθαι πρὸς τὰ μέγιστα. οἱ μὲν δὲ ταῦτα  
 ἔπρησσον, παρῇν δὲ ὁ ἐκ Τρηχίνος κατάσκοπος. ἦν  
 μὲν γὰρ ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ κατάσκοπος Πολύας, γένος  
 Ἀντικυρεύς, τῷ προσετέτακτο, καὶ εἶχε πλοῖον κατῆρες  
 ἔτοιμον, εἰ παλήσειε ὁ ναυτικὸς στρατός, σημαίνειν <sup>5</sup>

κιδος: like Orpheus and Musaeus (7. 6. 14) Bacis was a mythical seer, from whom a collection of oracles was said to have descended.

— 3. τι . . . οὐδέν: *nothing at all*.

Syn. § 11. 2. — προσάξαντο: referred by some to προ-σάπτω *stock beforehand* (cp. σάξαντες ὕδατι τὴν ἐσβολήν 3. 7. 3, and σάπτω *equip* 7. 62. 10 etc.), by others to προ-εσ-άγω. The 1 aor. mid. of ἄγω is used by Homer, but is rare.

— 4. ὥς: here *modal*, in the preceding line *causal*. — περιπετέα κτί.: *brought misfortune upon themselves*. — 5. Βάκιδι: dat. of interest. Cp. οἶα καὶ Ὀμήρῳ Διομήδης λέγει Plato, *Rep.* 389 e. — 8. βύβλινον: see 7. 25, 34, 36. — 9. τούτοις: with ἔπεισι. — χρησαμένοισι:

with σφι. There is a play on the double meaning of χάσμαι, which with ἔπεισι is *pay attention to*, while συμφορῇ χρῆσθαι is either *to be unfortunate* (1. 42. 3), or *to take it hard* (7. 134. 8, 7. 141. 2).

21. 1. οἱ μὲν: the Greeks, who were slaughtering the flocks. — 2. ὁ: the article, as if the scout had been already mentioned, with explanatory γάρ clause. — Τρηχίνος: the land from which the pass of Thermopylae leads into Locris (7. 176. 6). — 4. Ἀντικυρεύς: see 7. 198. 9. — κατῆρες: *fitted*, sc. ἐρετμοῖσι. — 5. παλήσει: not found elsewhere. Hesychius gives ἐπάλησεν· ἐφθάρη, a meaning which suits the context better than *to be engaged in a struggle*; cp. 1. 9. —

τοῖσι ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι ἐοῦσι· ὥς δ' αὐτως ἦν Ἀβρώνιχος ὁ Λυσικλέος Ἀθηναῖος καὶ παρὰ Λεωνίδῃ ἔτοιμος τοῖσι ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ ἐοῦσι ἀγγέλλειν τριηκοντέρῳ, ἦν τι καταλαμβάνῃ νεώτερον τὸν πεζόν. οὗτος ὢν ὁ Ἀβρώνιχος ἀπικόμενός σφι ἐσήμαινε τὰ γεγονότα περὶ 10 Λεωνίδην καὶ τὸν στρατὸν αὐτοῦ. οἱ δὲ ὥς ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα, οὐκέτι ἐς ἀναβολὰς ἐποιέοντο τὴν ἀποχώρησιν, ἐκομίζοντο δὲ ὥς ἕκαστοι ἐτάχθησαν, Κορίνθιοι πρῶτοι, 22 ὕστατοι δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι. Ἀθηναίων δὲ νέας τὰς ἄριστα πλεούσας ἐπιλεξάμενος Θεμιστοκλῆς ἐπορεύετο περὶ τὰ πότιμα ὕδατα, ἐντάμνων ἐν τοῖσι λίθοισι γράμματα, τὰ Ἴωνες ἐπελθόντες τῇ ὑστεραίῃ ἡμέρῃ ἐπὶ τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον ἐπελέξαντο. τὰ δὲ γράμματα ἔλεγον τάδε· 5 Ἄνδρες Ἴωνες, οὐ ποιεῖτε δίκαια ἐπὶ τοὺς πατέρας στρατευόμενοι καὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα καταδουλούμενοι. ἀλλὰ μάλιστα μὲν πρὸς ἡμέων γίνεσθε· εἰ δὲ ὑμῖν ἐστι τοῦτο μὴ δυνατόν ποιῆσαι, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου

6. ὥς δ' αὐτως: cp. 7. 86. 9. Freq. in Hom. = Att. ὡσαύτως δέ.— Ἀβρώνιχος: two years later he went to Sparta with Themistocles and Aristides on an embassy about the walls of Athens (Thuc. 1. 91). —9. νεώτερον: euphemistic for κακόν. Cp. 7. 52. 10. —13. Κορίνθιοι πρῶτοι κτλ.: if the order of battle corresponded to the position on shore, we might infer that at Artemisium the Corinthians held the left wing, the Athenians the right, an arrangement which would give the two states with the

largest contingents the places of honor; the order was different at Salamis (8. 85). For another story about the readiness of the Corinthians to run away, see 8. 94.

22. 2. ἐπιλεξάμενος: choose. Cp. 1. 5 where the same verb means to read.—3. ἐντάμνων: Dial. § 1. ii. 1.—5. ἔλεγον: plur. because the inscription was written in different places. Cp. 5. 112. 5. Kühner-Gerth § 365 b.—6. πατέρας: the Athenians; cp. 1. 14 and 7. 51. 8, 11.—9. ὑμεῖς δέ: cp. 1. 13. See Syn. § 28. 3.—ἐκ τοῦ μέσου . . .

ἡμῖν ἔξεσθε καὶ αὐτοὶ καὶ τῶν Καρῶν δείσθε τὰ αὐτὰ <sup>10</sup>  
 ὑμῖν ποιεῖν· εἰ δὲ μηδέτερον τούτων οἶόν τε γίνεσθαι,  
 ἀλλ' ὑπ' ἀναγκαίης μέζονος κατέζευχθε ἢ ὥστε ἀπίστα-  
 σθαι, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ, ἐπεὰν συμμίσγωμεν, ἐθε-  
 λοκακεῖτε, μεμνημένοι ὅτι ἀπ' ἡμέων γέγονατε καὶ ὅτι  
 ἀρχῆθεν ἢ ἐχθρῇ πρὸς τὸν βάρβαρον ἀπ' ὑμέων ἡμῖν <sup>15</sup>  
 γέγονε. Θεμιστοκλῆς δὲ ταῦτα ἔγραφε, δοκεῖν ἐμοί,  
 ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρα νοέων, ἵνα ἡ λαθόντα τὰ γράμματα  
 βασιλέα Ἰωνας ποιήσῃ μεταβαλεῖν καὶ γενέσθαι πρὸς  
 ἑωυτῶν, ἡ ἐπεῖτε (ἀν) ἀνενειχθῇ καὶ διαβληθῇ πρὸς  
 Ξέρξην, ἀπίστους ποιήσῃ τοὺς Ἰωνας καὶ τῶν ναυμα- <sup>20</sup>  
 23 χίων αὐτοὺς ἀπόσχη. Θεμιστοκλῆς μὲν ταῦτα ἐνέ-  
 γραψε· τοῖσι δὲ βαρβάροισι αὐτίκα μετὰ ταῦτα πλοῖον  
 ἦλθε ἀνὴρ Ἰστιαεὺς ἀγγέλλων τὸν δρησμὸν τὸν ἀπ'  
 Ἀρτεμισίου τῶν Ἑλλήνων. οἱ δ' ὑπ' ἀπιστίας τὸν μὲν  
 ἀγγέλλοντα εἶχον ἐν φυλακῇ, νέας δὲ ταχέας ἀπέστει- <sup>5</sup>  
 λαν προκατοφόμενας· ἀπαγγειλάντων δὲ τούτων τὰ

**ἔξεσθε**: retire from the center of the contest and sit down as a spectator, i.e. take no part in the fight. — 10. ἡμῖν: dat. of interest. S. 1474; HA. 770; B. 381; G. 1171. — 11. ὑμῖν: the dat. depends on τὰ αὐτά. S. 1500; HA. 773 a; B. 392. 2; G. 1175. — 12. μέζονος: D. § 1. ii. 2. — ἢ ὥστε: S. 2264; HA. 954; B. 645; G. 1458. — 15. ἀρχῆθεν: for the assistance given to the Ionians against Persia, see 5. 97 f. — 16. δοκεῖν ἐμοί: abs. infin. Cp. ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν 8. 30. 5. S. 2012; HA. 956; B. 642.

1; Syn. § 23. 2. — 17. ἐπ' ἀμφοτέρα νοέων: making his plans with both things in view. Cp. 9. 97. 9. — 19. ἐπεῖτε ἀνενειχθῇ: on omitted ἀν see Syn. § 20. 2. Here the first syllable of ἀνενειχθῇ may be the cause. — διαβληθῇ: misrepresented.

THE PERSIAN FLEET COMES TO ARTEMISIUM; AT THE INVITATION OF XERXES IT VISITS THERMOPYLAE (CC. 23-25)

23. 3. Ἰστιαεὺς: Histiaea was a town on the north coast of Euboea. — 6. τὰ ἦν: the facts. —

ἦν, οὕτω δὴ ἅμα ἤλιψ σκιδναμένῳ πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὴ  
ἐπέπλει ἀλῆς ἐπὶ τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον. ἐπισχόντες δὲ ἐν  
τούτῳ τῷ χώρῳ μέχρι μέσου ἡμέρης, τὸ ἀπὸ τούτου  
ἔπλεον ἐς Ἰστιαίην. ἀπικόμενοι δὲ τὴν πόλιν· ἔσχον 10  
τῶν Ἰστιαίων καὶ τῆς Ἑλλοπίης μοίρης, γῆς δὲ τῆς  
Ἰστιαιώτιδος, τὰς παραθαλασσίας κώμας πάσας ἐπέ-  
24 δραμον. ἐνθαῦτα δὲ τούτων ἐόντων Ξέρξης ἐτοιμασά-  
μενος τὰ περὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς ἔπεμπε ἐς τὸν ναυτικὸν  
στρατὸν κήρυκα. προετοιμάσατο δὲ τάδε· ὅσοι τοῦ  
στρατοῦ τοῦ ἐωντοῦ ἦσαν νεκροὶ ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι (ἦσαν  
δὲ καὶ δύο μυριάδες), ὑπολιπόμενος τούτων ὡς χιλίους, 5  
τοὺς λοιποὺς τάφρους ὀρυξάμενος ἔθαψε, φυλλάδα τε  
ἐπιβαλὼν καὶ γῆν ἐπαμυσάμενος, ἵνα μὴ ὀφθείησαν ὑπὸ  
τοῦ ναυτικοῦ στρατοῦ. ὥς δὲ διέβη ἐς τὴν Ἰστιαίην  
ὁ κῆρυξ, σύλλογον ποιησάμενος παντὸς τοῦ στρατοπέ-  
δου ἔλεγε τάδε· Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης 10  
τῷ βουλομένῳ ὑμέων παραδιδοῖ ἐκλιπόντα τὴν τάξιν  
καὶ ἐλθόντα θεήσασθαι ὅπως μάχεται πρὸς τοὺς ἀνοή-  
τους τῶν ἀνθρώπων, οἳ ἤλπισαν τὴν βασιλέως δύναμιν  
25 ὑπερβαλεῖσθαι. ταῦτα ἐπαγγειλαμένου, μετὰ ταῦτα  
οὐδὲν ἐγένετο πλοίων σπανιώτερον· οὕτω πολλοὶ ἤθε-  
λον θεήσασθαι. διαπεραιωθέντες δὲ ἐθήεοντο διεξιόν-

7. σκιδναμένῳ: *spreading its light*.

— 9. τὸ ἀπὸ τούτου: *after that*.

For the art., cp. τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν 8. 8. 9, τὸ πρῶτον, etc. — 11. Ἑλλοπίης: the northern half of Euboea. The gen. depends on κώμας. — γῆς δὲ τῆς Ἰστιαιώτιδος: in appos. to Ἑλλοπίης, defining it more closely.

For δέ, connecting phrases in appos., see Syn. § 27 d.

24. 5. καί: *quite*; cp. 7. 41. 14.

— 6. φυλλάδα τε κτέ.: the boughs were thrown over the heaped-up earth to conceal the signs of burial.

— 11. παραδιδοῖ: Dial. § 4. 4.

25. 1. ἐπαγγειλαμένου: *sc. τοῦ*

τες τοὺς νεκροὺς · πάντες δὲ ἡπιστέατο τοὺς κειμένους εἶναι πάντας Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ Θεσπιάς, ὁρῶντες καὶ τοὺς εἰλωτας. οὐ μὲν οὐδ' ἐλάνθανε τοὺς διαβεβηκότας Ξέρξης ταῦτα πρήξας περὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς τοὺς ἑωντοῦ · καὶ γὰρ δὴ καὶ γελοῖον ἦν · τῶν μὲν χίλιοι ἐφαίνοντο νεκροὶ κείμενοι, οἱ δὲ πάντες ἐκέατο ἅλεις συγκεκομισμένοι ἐς τὸντὸ χωρίον τέσσερες χιλιάδες. ταύτην μὲν <sup>10</sup>

κήρυκος. — 4. ἡπιστέατο: *thought*; cp. 8. 5. 15. — 5. ὁρῶντες κτλ.: this would seem to imply that there were none among the dead except Lacedaemonians, Thespians, and Helots. — 6. οὐ μὲν οὐδ' : *by no means*, Syn. § 26. e. — 8. καὶ γὰρ κτλ.: *for it was in fact quite absurd*. — τῶν μὲν κτλ.: *of them* (the Persians) *a thousand were seen lying dead*; *of the others* (the Greeks) *the whole number had been brought to the same spot and lay together, four thousand*. The point of contrast, that would strike the Persian spectator as absurd, is not clear. There seem to be two possibilities: (1) The Persians lay scattered, while the Greeks were heaped together to attract attention. But there is nothing in the first clause to imply this. (2) The difference in the size of the numbers. In that case Hdt. is attributing to the Persian the later Greek view. There would be nothing absurd in an immense force destroying 4000 men with a loss of but 1000. — 10. τέσσερες χιλιά-

δες: it is difficult to explain this number. At the end of the two days' fighting, during which few Greeks fell (7. 211. 16, 7. 212. 5), all withdrew except the 300 Spartans, 700 Thespians, and 400 Thebans (7. 222. 3), and the Thebans surrendered (7. 233). There were also some Helots (cp. 1. 6 above and 7. 229), but their number is not given; 7. 229. 11 implies at least one per Spartan. Unless we assume seven Helots per Spartan as at Plataea (9. 28. 5) and also assume that the 700 Thespians were attended by an equal number of light-armed (cp. 9. 29. 10), there is no way of making up 4000; and such assumptions are improbable in view of Hdt.'s silence in the description of Leonidas' force (7. 202). There is evidently some connection between the number here and that in the epitaph (7. 228). Some editors omit τέσσερες χιλιάδες, but the sentence then loses the only point of contrast that it contains. Either Hdt. used the figures carelessly with

τὴν ἡμέρην πρὸς θέην ἐτράποντο, τῇ δ' ἰστεραίῃ οἱ μὲν  
 ἀπέπλεον ἐς Ἰστιαίην ἐπὶ τὰς νέας, οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Ξέρξην  
 26 ἐς ὁδὸν ὀρμέατο. ἦκον δὲ σφί αὐτόμολοι ἄνδρες ἀπ'  
 Ἀρκαδίας ὀλίγοι τινές, βίου τε δεόμενοι καὶ ἐνεργοὶ  
 βουλόμενοι εἶναι. ἄγοντες δὲ τούτους ἐς ὅψιν τὴν  
 βασιλέος ἐπυνθάνοντο οἱ Πέρσαι περὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 τί ποιοίεν· εἰς δὲ τις πρὸ πάντων ἦν ὁ εἰρωτῶν αὐτοὺς 5  
 ταῦτα. οἱ δὲ σφί ἔλεγον ὥς Ὀλύμπια ἄγουσι καὶ θεω-  
 ρέοιεν ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν καὶ ἵππικόν. ὁ δὲ ἐπείρετο ὃ  
 τι τὸ ἄεθλον εἴη σφί κείμενον περὶ ὅτεο ἀγωνίζονται·  
 οἱ δὲ εἶπον τῆς ἐλαίης τὸν διδόμενον στέφανον. ἐνθαῦτα

the epitaph in mind, or he estimated the number in some such way as is suggested above. In favor of the latter view note the opening words of 7. 228, which expressly state that the epitaph was written in honor of those that fell, and also the fact that the figures in 7. 202 indicate that Hdt. did not accept the 4000 of the epitaph as the number of Peloponnesians in Leonidas' original force. — 13. ὀρμέατο: Att. ὠρμηγτο.

A PERSIAN COMMENT ON THE  
 OLYMPIAN PRIZE FOR VICTORS  
 (C. 26)

26. 2. Ἀρκαδίας: the majority of the Peloponnesian force at Thermopylae was composed of Arcadians (7. 202). — 5. πρὸ: in the place of; see Syn. § 5. — 6. Ὀλύμπια: in this year the Olympic

games closed on the 19th or 20th of August. The fighting at Thermopylae seems to have taken place later in the month, for the Athenians expected to find the Peloponnesian main force in Boeotia immediately after the battle (8. 40. 9), and yet it would take them several days after the close of the festival to march that distance. The present incident, then, must have occurred before the battle. Herodotus, indeed, does not definitely indicate the time. Having completed the account of Thermopylae and Artemisium, he digresses a little (cp. 27-28) before passing on to Salamis. — 7. ὃ τι τὸ ἄεθλον: what is offered them as the prize for which they contend. The questioner assumes that some prize is offered; hence the art. — 9. εἶπον κτλ.: they men-

εἶπας γνώμην γενναιοτάτην Τριτανταίχμης ὁ Ἀρταβά-<sup>10</sup>  
 νου δε λήην ὤφλε πρὸς βασιλέος. πυνθανόμενος γὰρ  
 τὸ ἄεθλον ἐὼν στέφανον ἀλλ' οὐ χρήματα, οὔτε ἡνέσχετο  
 σιγῶν εἶπέ τε ἐς πάντας τάδε · Παπαί, Μαρδόνιε, κοίους  
 ἐπ' ἄνδρας ἤγαγες μαχησομένους ἡμέας, οἳ οὐ περὶ χρη-  
<sup>27</sup>μάτων τὸν ἀγῶνα ποιεῖνται ἀλλὰ περὶ ἀρετῆς. τοῦτ' ὃν  
 μὲν δὴ ταῦτα εἶρητο · ἐν δὲ τῷ διὰ μέσον χρόνῳ, ἐπεῖτε  
 τὸ ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι τρῶμα ἐγεγόνει, αὐτίκα Θεσσαλοὶ  
 πέμπουσι κήρυκα ἐς Φωκέας, αἵτε σφι ἐνέχοντες αἰεὶ  
 χόλον, ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ ὑστάτου τρώματος καὶ τὸ κάρτα.<sup>5</sup>  
 ἐσβαλόντες γὰρ πανστρατιῇ αὐτοὶ τε οἱ Θεσσαλοὶ καὶ  
 οἱ σύμμαχοι αὐτῶν ἐς τοὺς Φωκέας οὐ πολλοῖσι ἔτεσι  
 πρότερον ταύτης τῆς βασιλέος στρατηλασίης ἐσώθη-  
 σαν ὑπὸ τῶν Φωκέων καὶ περιέφθησαν τρηχέως. ἐπεῖτε  
 γὰρ κατειλήθησαν ἐς τὸν Παρνησσὸν οἱ Φωκεῖς ἔχοντες<sup>10</sup>  
 μάντῳ Τελλίην τὸν Ἥλειον, ἐνθαῦτα ὁ Τελλίης οὗτος

*tioned the crown that is given.*

Cp. τὰς περιπεμφθείσας 8. 8. 20. —  
 10. εἶπας: Att. εἰπών. — Τριταν-  
 ταίχμης: one of the six command-  
 ers-in-chief. Cp. 7. 82. 2, 7.  
 121. 14. Some of the Mss. read  
 Τιγράνης. Tigranes in 7. 62. 4 is  
 called Ἀχαιμενίδην. His position  
 as leader of the Medes (7. 62. 4),  
 and of the Persian army at Mycale  
 (9. 96. 13) points to a close rela-  
 tionship with the King; but he is  
 not elsewhere called ὁ Ἀρταβάνου.  
 — 11. δειλίην ὤφλε: *was held guilty*  
*of cowardice.* — 12. οὔτε . . . τε:  
*not . . . but.* Syn. § 30. 2. b.

THE ENMITY OF THE THESSALIANS  
 AND PHOCIANS IN FORMER  
 TIMES. THE THESSALIANS  
 NOW DEMAND A MONEY PAY-  
 MENT; THE PHOCIANS REFUSE  
 (CC. 27-30)

27. 3. τρῶμα: Dial. 1. ii. 8. —  
 4. αἵτε: with causal participle. Syn.  
 § 25. 4. — αἰεὶ: see 7. 176. 20. —  
 5. ἀπὸ: *after.* Syn. § 5. — καὶ τὸ  
 κάρτα: *particularly so.* Cp. 7. 16.  
 β 10. — 7. σύμμαχοι: see 7. 132.  
 2. — 8. ἐσώθησαν: *ἡττήθησαν.* —  
 11. Τελλίην: in 9. 37 the Telliadae  
 are mentioned as a well-known



σοφίζεται αὐτοῖσι τοιόνδε· γυνῶσας ἄνδρας ἑξακο-  
 σίους τῶν Φωκέων τοὺς ἀρίστους, αὐτοὺς τε τούτους καὶ  
 τὰ ὄπλα αὐτῶν, νυκτὸς ἐπεθήκατο τοῖσι Θεσσαλοῖσι,  
 προείπας αὐτοῖσι, τὸν ἂν μὴ λευκανθίζοντα ἴδωνται, 15  
 τοῦτον κτείνειν. τούτους ὦν αἱ τε φυλακαὶ τῶν Θεσ-  
 σαλῶν πρῶται ἰδοῦσαι ἐφοβήθησαν, δόξασαι ἄλλο τι  
 εἶναι τέρας, καὶ μετὰ τὰς φυλακὰς αὐτῇ ἡ στρατιῇ  
 οὕτω ὥστε τετρακισχιλίων κρατῆσαι νεκρῶν καὶ ἀσπί-  
 δων Φωκέας, τῶν τὰς μὲν ἡμισέας ἐς Ἄβας ἀνέθεσαν, 20  
 τὰς δὲ ἐς Δελφούς· ἡ δὲ δεκάτη ἐγένετο τῶν χρημάτων  
 ἐκ ταύτης τῆς μάχης οἱ μεγάλοι ἀνδριάντες οἱ περὶ τὸν  
 τρίποδα συνεστέωτες ἔμπροσθε τοῦ νηοῦ τοῦ ἐν Δελ-  
 28 φοῖσι, καὶ ἕτεροι τοιοῦτοι ἐν Ἄβησι ἀνακέαται. ταῦτα  
 μὲν νυν τὸν πεζὸν ἐργάσαντο τῶν Θεσσαλῶν οἱ Φωκεῖς  
 πολιορκέοντας ἑωυτούς· ἐσβαλοῦσαν δὲ ἐς τὴν χώραν  
 τὴν ἵππον αὐτῶν ἐλυμήναντο ἀνηκέστως. ἐν γὰρ τῇ

family of seers. — 14. ἐπεθήκατο : Att. ἐπέθετο. — 15. αὐτοῖσι : the 600 men. — ἴδωνται : Att. ἴδωσι. — 17. ἄλλο τι κτί. : *something else* (than it really was), *namely a marvel*. — 19. κρατῆσαι : ingressive. — 20. Ἄβας : a town of Phocis with a celebrated temple and oracle of Apollo. — 21. ἡ δέ : *the regular tenth*. — 23. συνεστέωτες : Hdt. frequently uses this word in the sense of *contend* (7. 142. 5, 8. 79. 1), and, according to Pausanias (10. 13. 7), in this group Heracles and Apollo had hold of the tripod and were coming to

blows about it, while Leto and Artemis were restraining Apollo, and Athena Heracles. But since *περὶ* takes the accus. here we should perhaps translate *standing around the tripod*. Yet cp. ἐγένετο δὲ πρῶτον περὶ τὰ γέγρα μᾶχη 9. 62. 8, with local *περὶ* in connection with *μάχη*.

28. 3. πολιορκέοντας : the plur. on account of the collective idea in *πεζόν*. Cp. στρατὸς . . . ἀπίκοντο 7. 196. 1. — ἑωυτούς : as indirect reflexive. — ἐσβαλοῦσαν κτί. : Pausanias (10. 1. 3) puts this event before that of the preceding

ἐσβολῇ ἢ ἐστὶ κατὰ Ῥάμπολιν, ἐν ταύτῃ τάφρον μεγά-  
 λην ὀρύξαντες ἀμφορέας κεινοὺς ἐς αὐτὴν κατέθηκαν,  
 χοῦν δὲ ἐπιφορήσαντες καὶ ὁμοιώσαντες τῷ ἄλλῳ χώρῳ  
 ἐδέκοντο τοὺς Θεσσαλοὺς ἐσβάλλοντας. οἱ δὲ ὡς  
 ἀναρπασόμενοι τοὺς Φωκέας φερόμενοι ἐσέπεσον ἐς  
 τοὺς ἀμφορέας. ἐνθαῦτα οἱ ἵπποι τὰ σκέλεα διεφθάρη-  
 29 σαν. τούτων δὴ σφι ἀμφοτέρων ἔχοντες ἔγκοτον οἱ  
 Θεσσαλοὶ πέμψαντες κήρυκα ἡγόρευον τάδε· ὦ Φωκεῖς,  
 ἤδη τι μᾶλλον γνωσιμαχεῖτε μὴ εἶναι ὅμοιοι ἡμῖν.  
 πρόσθε τε γὰρ ἐν τοῖσι Ἑλλήσι, ὅσον χρόνον ἐκεῖνα  
 ἡμῖν ἦνδανε, πλεόν αἰεὶ κοτε ὑμέων ἐφερόμεθα, νῦν τε 5  
 παρὰ τῷ βαρβάρῳ τοσοῦτο δυνάμεθα ὥστε ἐπ' ἡμῖν  
 ἐστὶ τῆς γῆς ἐστερηθῆναι καὶ πρὸς ἡνδραποδίσθαι  
 ὑμέας· ἡμεῖς μέντοι τὸ πᾶν ἔχοντες οὐ μνησικακέομεν,  
 ἀλλ' ἡμῖν γενέσθω ἀντ' αὐτῶν πεντήκοντα τάλαντα  
 ἀργυρίου, καὶ ὑμῖν ὑποδεκόμεθα τὰ ἐπιόντα ἐπὶ τὴν 10

chapter; note that Hdt. refers to the latter as τὸ ὕστατον τρῶμα (8. 27. 4). — 5. Ῥάμπολιν: a town in the valley of the Cephissus, between Elatea and Abae (8. 33. 6). — 6. κεινοὺς: Dial. § 1. i. 3. — 8. ἐδέκοντο: Att. ἐδέχοντο. Dial. § 2. 4. — ὡς ἀναρπασόμενοι: as though they were going to overwhelm. Cp. 9. 60. 2. — 10. σκέλεα: on the case see S. 1601; G. 1239.

29. 3. ἤδη τι κτέ.: now at length be somewhat more inclined to admit that you are not our equals. For γνωσιμαχεῖν cp. 3. 25. 18, 7. 130. 7. — 4. ἐκεῖνα: =

τὰ ἐκείνων the affairs of the Greeks. Cp. 2. 39. 7, 2. 40. 5. — 5. — αἰεὶ κοτε: on every occasion whatsoever. πλεόν . . . ἐφερόμεθα: we got more, were worth more, were more powerful. Cp. 7. 168. 23, 7. 211. 5. — 7. ἐστερηθῆναι, ἡνδραποδίσθαι: perfs. pass. with ὑμέας as subj. — πρόσ: Syn. § 6. — 8. τὸ πᾶν ἔχοντες: though we are all powerful. Cp. αὐτὰρ κείθι φιλήσεται, οἷά κ' ἔχωμεν Hom. ο 281 so far as we are able. — 9. ἀντ' αὐτῶν: in return for it, i.e. in payment for not enslaving you. Syn. § 12. 3. — 10. τὰ ἐπιόντα: sc. κακά.

30 *χώρην ἀποτρέψειν. ταῦτά σφι ἐπαγγέλλοντο οἱ Θεσσαλοί. οἱ γὰρ Φωκεῖς μῦνοι τῶν ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων οὐκ ἐμῆδιζον, κατ' ἄλλο μὲν οὐδέν, ὥς ἐγὼ συμβαλλόμενος εὐρίσκω, κατὰ δὲ τὸ ἔχθος τὸ Θεσσαλῶν. εἰ δὲ Θεσσαλοὶ τὰ Ἑλλήνων ἠῦξον, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, ἐμῆδιζον* 5 *ἂν οἱ Φωκεῖς. οἱ ταῦτα ἐπαγγελλομένων Θεσσαλῶν οὔτε δώσειν ἔφασαν χρήματα παρέχειν τέ σφι Θεσσαλοῖσι ὁμοίως μηδίζειν, εἰ ἄλλως βουλοίατο. ἀλλ' οὐκ* 31 *ἔσεσθαι ἐκόντες εἶναι προδόται τῆς Ἑλλάδος. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀννηνείχθησαν οὗτοι οἱ λόγοι, οὕτω δὴ οἱ Θεσσαλοὶ κεχολωμένοι τοῖσι Φωκεῦσι ἐγένοντο ἡγεμόνες τῷ βαρβάρῳ τῆς ὁδοῦ. ἐκ μὲν δὴ τῆς Τρηχινίης ἐς τὴν Δωρίδα ἐσέβαλον. τῆς γὰρ Δωρίδος χώρας ποδεῶν* 5 *στευνὸς ταύτῃ κατατείνει, ὥς τριήκοντα σταδίων μάλιστά κη εὖρος, κείμενος μεταξὺ τῆς τε Μηλίδος καὶ Φωκίδος χώρας, ἥ περ ἦν τὸ παλαιὸν Δρυοπίς. ἡ δὲ χώρα αὕτη ἐστὶ μητρόπολις Δωριῶν τῶν ἐν Πελοπον-*

30. 4. *Θεσσαλῶν*: objective gen. — 5. *ἠῦξον... ἐμῆδιζον*: impfs. of continued action in past unreal cond. — 8. *εἰ ἄλλως βουλοίατο*: *if they at all cared to*. Cp. 7. 16. γ 7. — 9. *ἐκόντες εἶναι*: *willingly at least*. Syn. § 23. 2.

THE PERSIANS PASS THROUGH DORIS INTO PHOCIS. THEY DIVIDE, AND THE MAIN BODY ENTERS BOEOTIA ON ITS WAY TO ATHENS (CC 31-34)

31. 4. *ἐκ... Τρηχινίης*: probably the army crossed the mountains

into Phocis by several passes, leading either directly from Trachis, as this one, or from Locris. If the whole army went in the manner described by Herodotus, the capture of Thermopylae was unnecessary. — 6. *μάλιστά κη*: cp. 8. 8. 13. — 8. *ἡ περ*: referring to *ποδεῶν* but agreeing with the pred. *Δρυοπίς*. Dryopis was but a part of Doris and is distinguished by Hdt. in 8. 43. 8 and 1. 56. 16 from that part in which Erineus and Pindus were situated. — *ἡ δὲ χώρα αὕτη*: Doris.

νήσῳ. ταύτην ὦν τὴν Δωρίδα γῆν οὐκ ἐσίναντο ἐσβαλ-  
 10 ὄντες οἱ βάρβαροι· ἐμῆδιζόν τε γὰρ καὶ οὐκ ἐδόκει  
 32 Θεσσαλοῖσι. ὥς δὲ ἐκ τῆς Δωρίδος ἐς τὴν Φωκίδα  
 ἐσέβαλον, αὐτοὺς μὲν τοὺς Φωκέας οὐκ αἰρέουσι. οἱ  
 μὲν γὰρ τῶν Φωκέων ἐς τὰ ἄκρα τοῦ Παρνησσοῦ ἀνέ-  
 βησαν (ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἐπιτηδέη δέξασθαι ὄμιλον τοῦ Παρ-  
 νησσοῦ ἢ κορυφή, κατὰ Νέωνα πόλιν κειμένη ἐπ' 5  
 ἑωυτῆς· Τιθορέα οὖνομα αὐτῇ· ἐς τὴν δὴ ἀνηνείκαντο  
 καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀνέβησαν)· οἱ δὲ πλείονες αὐτῶν ἐς τοὺς  
 Ὀζόλας Λοκροὺς ἐξεκομίσαντο, ἐς Ἀμφιτσαν πόλιν  
 τὴν ὑπὲρ τοῦ Κρισαίου πεδίου οἰκημένην. οἱ δὲ βάρ-  
 10 βαροι τὴν χώραν πᾶσαν ἐπέδραμον τὴν Φωκίδα·  
 Θεσσαλοὶ γὰρ οὕτω ἦγον τὸν στρατόν· ὁκόσα δὲ  
 ἐπέσχον, πάντα ἐπέφλεγον καὶ ἔκειρον, καὶ ἐς τὰς  
 33 πόλεις ἐνιέντες πῦρ καὶ ἐς τὰ ἱρά. πορευόμενοι γὰρ  
 ταύτῃ παρὰ τὸν Κηφισὸν ποταμὸν ἐδῆρουν πάντα, καὶ  
 κατὰ μὲν ἔκαυσαν Δρυμὸν πόλιν, κατὰ δὲ Χαράδραν  
 καὶ Ἐρωχον καὶ Τεθρώνιον καὶ Ἀμφίκαιαν καὶ Νέωνα  
 καὶ Πεδιέας καὶ Τριτέας καὶ Ἐλάτειαν καὶ Ἱάμπολιν καὶ 5  
 Παραποταμίους καὶ Ἄβας, ἔνθα ἦν ἱρὸν Ἀπόλλωνος  
 πλούσιον, θησαυροῖσί τε καὶ ἀναθήμασι πολλοῖσι κατε-

32. 2. αὐτοὺς μὲν: the con-  
 trasted clause is in l. 9, where,  
 however, we have οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι in-  
 stead of τὴν δὲ χώραν. — 4. καὶ ἐπι-  
 τηδέη: quite suitable. — 5. κορυφή:  
 some distance below the peak, at  
 the foot of a precipitous wall of  
 rock, there was a place suitable for  
 defense, and a cave near by capa-  
 ble of concealing a large body of

fugitives. Here there was in later  
 times a fort (Plut. *Sulla* 15) and  
 town (Pausan. 10. 3. 2, 32. 8). —  
 ἐπ' ἑωυτῆς: by itself. — 6. ἀνηνεί-  
 καντο: obj. omitted. Cp. next line  
 and 8. 36. 11. — 13. πόλεις: Dial.  
 § 3. i. 4.

33. 3. κατὰ μὲν . . . κατὰ δέ:  
 see Syn. § 7. — 6. Ἄβας: see 8.  
 27. 20. — 7. θησαυροῖσι: treasure

σκευασμένον· ἦν δὲ καὶ τότε καὶ νῦν ἔστι χρηστή-  
 ριον αὐτόθι· καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἱρὸν συλήσαντες ἐνέπρῃσαν.  
 καὶ τινες διώκοντες εἶλον τῶν Φωκέων πρὸς τοῖσι 10  
 ὄρεσι, καὶ γυναῖκάς τινες διέφθειραν μισγόμενοι ὑπὸ  
 34 πλήθεος. Παραποταμίους δὲ παραμειβόμενοι οἱ βάρ-  
 βαροι ἀπίκοντο ἐς Πανοπέας. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ἤδη διακρι-  
 νομένη ἡ στρατιὴ αὐτῶν ἐσχίζετο. τὸ μὲν πλείστον  
 καὶ δυνατώτατον τοῦ στρατοῦ ἅμα αὐτῷ Ξέρξῃ πορευό-  
 μενον ἐπ' Ἀθήνας ἐσέβαλε ἐς Βοιωτούς, ἐς γῆν τὴν 5  
 Ὀρχομενίων. Βοιωτῶν δὲ πᾶν τὸ πλήθος ἐμήδιζε,  
 τὰς δὲ πόλεις αὐτῶν ἄνδρες Μακεδόνες διατεταγμένοι  
 ἔσωζον, ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀποπεμφθέντες. ἔσωζον δὲ  
 τῇδε, δῆλον βουλόμενοι ποιεῖν Ξέρξῃ ὅτι τὰ Μήδων  
 35 Βοιωτοὶ φρονέοιεν. οὗτοι μὲν δὴ τῶν βαρβάρων ταύτη  
 ἐτράποντο, ἄλλοι δὲ αὐτῶν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες ὁρμέατο  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἱρὸν τὸ ἐν Δελφοῖσι, ἐν δεξιῇ τὸν Παρνησσὸν  
 ἀπέργοντες. ὅσα δὲ καὶ οὗτοι ἐπέσχον τῆς Φωκίδος,  
 πάντα ἐσιναμώρεον· καὶ γὰρ τῶν Πανοπέων τὴν πόλιν 5

*chambers.* Many Greek states had separate chambers in these temples. Cp. I. 14. 8. — II. ὑπό: *by reason of.* Cp. 8. 1. 3.

34. 2. ἐνθεῦτεν κτέ.: *from that point their army was divided and separated.* — 6. Ὀρχομενίων: the part of Boeotia nearest Panopeus. — πᾶν τὸ πλήθος: except the Plataeans and Thespians. Cp. 8. 50, 9. 28–30. — 8. Ἀλεξάνδρου: cp. 7. 173, 175. — 9. δῆλον βουλόμενοι κτέ.: we should expect merely δῆλον ποιεόντες in explanation of τῇδε.

THE OTHER DIVISION OF THE ARMY MARCHES AGAINST DELPHI, BUT THE TEMPLE IS SAVED BY DIVINE AID (CC. 35–39)

35. 2. ὁρμέατο: *were bound for*; plupf. — 4. ἀπέργοντες: *leaving on the right.* ἀπέργειν *to shut off* is properly used of rivers and mountains which form boundaries. Hence of men whose line of march forms the boundary. Cp. 7. 43. II, 7. 110. 2, 7. 112. 5. — 5. ἐσινα-

ἐνέπρησαν καὶ Δαυλίων καὶ Αἰολιδέων. ἐπορεύοντο δὲ ταύτῃ ἀποσχισθέντες τῆς ἄλλης στρατιῆς τῶνδε εἵνεκα, ὅπως συλήσαντες τὸ ἱρὸν τὸ ἐν Δελφοῖσι βασιλεὶ Ξέρξῃ ἀποδέξαιεν τὰ χρήματα. πάντα δ' ἡπίστατο τὰ ἐν τῷ ἱρῷ ὅσα λόγου ἦν ἄξια Ξέρξης, ὥς ἐγὼ πυνθά-  
 νομαι, ἄμεινον ἢ τὰ ἐν τοῖσι οἰκίοισι ἔλιπε, πολλῶν αἰεὶ  
 λεγόντων, καὶ μάλιστα τὰ Κροίσου τοῦ Ἀλυάττεω ἀνα-  
 36 θήματα. οἱ δὲ Δελφοὶ πυνθανόμενοι ταῦτα ἐς πᾶσαν  
 ἀρρωδίην ἀπύκατο, ἐν δείματι δὲ μεγάλῳ κατεστεῶτες  
 ἐμαντεύοντο περὶ τῶν ἱρῶν χρημάτων, εἴτε σφέα κατὰ  
 γῆς κατορύξωσι εἴτε ἐκκομίσωσι ἐς ἄλλην χώραν. ὁ δὲ  
 θεὸς σφεας οὐκ ἔα κινεῖν, φὰς αὐτὸς ἱκανὸς εἶναι τῶν 5  
 ἐωντοῦ προκατῆσθαι. Δελφοὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες  
 σφέων αὐτῶν πέρι ἐφρόντιζον. τέκνα μὲν νυν καὶ γυναῖ-  
 κας πέρην ἐς τὴν Ἀχαιίην διέπεμψαν, αὐτῶν δὲ οἱ μὲν  
 πλείστοι ἀνέβησαν ἐς τοῦ Παρνησοῦ τὰς κορυφὰς καὶ  
 ἐς τὸ Κωρύκιον ἄντρον ἀνηνείκαστο, οἱ δὲ ἐς Ἀμφισσαν 10  
 τὴν Λοκρίδα ὑπεξῆλθον. πάντες δὲ ὧν οἱ Δελφοὶ ἐξέ-  
 λιπον τὴν πόλιν, πλὴν ἐξήκοντα ἀνδρῶν καὶ τοῦ προφή-

μῆριον: *wantonly destroyed*. — 6. Αἰολιδέων: not otherwise known. — 9. ἀποδέξαιεν: Dial. I. ii. 2. — 12. τὰ Κροίσου: among other things Croesus dedicated a lion of pure gold weighing ten talents (I. 50, 51, 92).

36. 1. πυνθανόμενοι: for the pres. cp. 8. 35. 11, 8. 42. 2, etc. — 2. ἀπύκατο: plupf. — κατεστεῶτες: cp. 7. 138. 7. — 3. σφέα: Syn. § 9. 4. — 4. κατορύξωσι: S. 1805;

HA. 866. 3; B. 577; G. 1358. — 5. ἔα: Att. εἶα. — 6. προκατῆσθαι: *sit down before* as an outpost (cp. 7. 172. 14), *protect*. — 7. πέρι: *anastrophe*. — 10. ἄντρον: the first chamber of the cave is 100 feet high, 100 wide, and 200 deep. — 11. πάντες δὲ ὧν κτέ.: *at any rate all left the city*. ὧν implies that the *main* fact is that the Delphians were all gone, it matters not whither. Syn. § 32. I. f.

37 τεω. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀγχοῦ τε ἦσαν οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπιόντες καὶ ἀπώρων τὸ ἱρόν, ἐν τούτῳ ὁ προφήτης, τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Ἀκήρατος, ὁρᾷ πρὸ τοῦ νηοῦ ὄπλα προκείμενα ἔσωθεν ἐκ τοῦ μεγάρου ἐξενηνευγμένα ἱρά, τῶν οὐκ ὄσιον ἦν ἄπτεσθαι ἀνθρώπων οὐδενί. ὁ μὲν δὴ ἦε Δελφῶν τοῖσι 5 παρεούσι σημανέων τὸ τέρας· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἐπειδὴ ἐγίνοντο ἐπειγόμενοι κατὰ τὸ ἱρόν τῆς Προνηΐης Ἀθηναίης, ἐπιγίνεται σφι τέρεα ἔτι μέζονα τοῦ πρὶν γενομένου τέρεος. θῶμα μὲν γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο κάρτα ἐστί, ὄπλα ἀρήγια αὐτόματα φανῆναι ἔξω προκείμενα τοῦ 10 νηοῦ· τὰ δὲ δὴ ἐπὶ τούτῳ δεύτερα ἐπιγενόμενα καὶ διὰ πάντων φασμάτων ἄξια θωμάσαι μάλιστα. ἐπεὶ γὰρ δὴ ἦσαν ἐπιόντες οἱ βάρβαροι κατὰ τὸ ἱρόν τῆς Προνηΐης Ἀθηναίης, ἐν τούτῳ ἐκ μὲν τοῦ οὐρανοῦ κεραυνοὶ αὐτοῖσι ἐνέπιπτον, ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Παρνησσοῦ 15 ἀπορραγεῖσαι δύο κορυφαὶ ἐφέροντο πολλῶ πατάγῳ ἐς αὐτοὺς καὶ κατέλαβον συχνούς σφεων, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἱροῦ τῆς Προνηΐης βοή τε καὶ ἀλαλαγμὸς ἐγίνετο.

37. 2. ἀπώρων: *were in sight of*, though still some distance away (cp. l. 14). Att. ἀφεώρων.—

4. ἐκ τοῦ μεγάρου: explaining ἔσωθεν.— ἱρά: moved from its natural position with ὄπλα in order to introduce the rel. clause. It is because the arms are *sacred* that it is not holy to touch them.—

5. ὁ μὲν δὴ: the subj. is expressed merely to give a contrast to οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι, though there is no real contrast between the actions of the two parties. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι is

placed before ἐπειδὴ with the same purpose.— 7. Προνηΐης: this epithet is applied to Athena because her temple is reached before that of Apollo by one approaching from Daulis, the common direction.— 8. τέρεα: Dial. § 3. i. 6.— 9. κάρτα: *decidedly*.— 10. ὄπλα... φανῆναι: explanatory of τοῦτο.— προκείμενα κτί.: explains ἔξω.— 12. ἑτά: *beyond*. Syn. § 5.— θωμάσαι: on the act. inf. see GMT. 763.— 16. ἀπορραγεῖσαι: 2 aor. pass. part. of ἀπορρήγνυμι.

38 συμμιγέντων δὲ τούτων πάντων φόβος τοῖσι βαρβά-  
 ροῖσι ἐνεπεπτώκει. μαθόντες δὲ οἱ Δελφοὶ φεύγοντάς  
 σφεας, ἐπικαταβάντες ἀπέκτειναν πληθὸς τι αὐτῶν. οἱ  
 δὲ περιεόντες ἰθὺ Βοιωτῶν ἔφευγον. ἔλεγον δὲ οἱ ἀπο-  
 νοστήσαντες οὗτοι τῶν βαρβάρων, ὥς ἐγὼ πυνθάνομαι, 5  
 ὥς πρὸς τούτοισι καὶ ἄλλα ὤρων θεῖα· δύο γὰρ ὀπλί-  
 τας μέζονας ἢ κατὰ ἀνθρώπων φύσιν [ἔχοντας] ἔπεσθαί  
 39 σφι κτείνοντας καὶ διώκοντας. τούτους δὲ τοὺς δύο  
 Δελφοὶ λέγουσι εἶναι ἐπιχωρίους ἥρωας, Φύλακόν τε  
 καὶ Αὐτόνοον, τῶν τὰ τεμένεά ἐστι περὶ τὸ ἱρόν, Φυλά-  
 κου μὲν παρ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδὸν κατύπερθε τοῦ ἱροῦ τῆς  
 Προνηΐης, Αὐτονόου δὲ πέλας τῆς Κασταλῆς ὑπὸ τῇ 5  
 ῾Ταμπεΐῃ κορυφῇ. οἱ δὲ πεσόντες ἀπὸ τοῦ Παρνησσοῦ  
 λίθοι ἔτι καὶ ἐς ἡμέας ἦσαν σόοι, ἐν τῷ τεμένει τῆς  
 Προνηΐης ῾Αθηναίης κείμενοι, ἐς τὸ ἐνέσκηψαν διὰ τῶν  
 βαρβάρων φερόμενοι. τούτων μὲν νυν τῶν ἀνδρῶν  
 αὕτη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱροῦ ἀπαλλαγὴ γίνεται. 10  
 40 Ὁ δὲ Ἑλλήνων ναυτικὸς στρατὸς ἀπὸ τοῦ ῾Αρτε-  
 μισίου ῾Αθηναίων δεσθέντων ἐς Σαλαμῖνα κατίσχει τὰς  
 νέας. τῶνδε δὲ εἵνεκα προσεδεήθησαν αὐτῶν σχεῖν  
 πρὸς Σαλαμῖνα ῾Αθηναῖοι, ἵνα αὐτοὶ παῖδάς τε καὶ  
 γυναῖκας ὑπεξαγάγωνται ἐκ τῆς ῾Αττικῆς, πρὸς δὲ καὶ 5

38. 2. ἐνεπεπτώκει: the plupf. expresses the continuance of the fear.

— 3. πληθός τι: quite a large number.

— 7. μέζονας κτέ.: see App.

ἔπεσθαι: impf. Cp. ὤρων l. 6.

39. 3 τὸ ἱρόν: of Apollo.

5. πέλας: Att. ἐγγύς.

Κασταλῆς: the fountain sacred to Apollo

and the Muses rises in an angle formed by two precipitous walls

of rock, Hyampeia and Nauplia.

7. ἐς ἡμέας: down to my time.

— σόοι: preserved. Att. σῶοι.

10. αὕτη κτέ.: see Syn. § 8. 6

for the omission of the article.

— ἀπαλλαγὴ: departure.



βουλεύσονται τὸ ποιητέον αὐτοῖσι ἔσται. ἐπὶ γὰρ τοῖσι κατήκουσι πρήγμασι βουλὴν ἔμελλον ποιήσεσθαι ὥς ἐψευσμένοι γνώμης. δοκέοντες γὰρ εὐρήσειν Πελοποννησίους πανδημεὶ ἐν τῇ Βοιωτίῃ ὑποκατημένους τὸν βάρβαρον, τῶν μὲν εὖρον οὐδὲν ἐόν, οἱ δὲ ἐπυνθάνοντο <sup>10</sup> τὸν Ἴσθμὸν αὐτοὺς τειχέοντας, τὴν Πελοπόννησον περὶ πλείστου τε ποιεομένους περιεῖναι καὶ ταύτην ἔχοντας ἐν φυλακῇ, τὰ ἄλλα δὲ ἀπιέναι. ταῦτα πυνθανόμενοι οὕτω δὴ προσεδεθήσάν σφεων σχεῖν πρὸς τὴν <sup>41</sup> Σαλαμῖνα. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι κατέσχον ἐς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα, Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ ἐς τὴν ἑωυτῶν. μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἀπιξιν κήρυγμα ἐποιήσαντο, Ἀθηναίων τῇ τις δύναται σώζειν τέκνα τε καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας. ἐνθαῦτα οἱ μὲν πλείστοι ἐς Τροιζῆνα ἀπέστειλαν, οἱ δὲ ἐς Αἴγινα, <sup>5</sup> οἱ δὲ ἐς Σαλαμῖνα. ἔσπευσαν δὲ ταῦτα ὑπεκθέσθαι τῷ χρηστηρίῳ τε βουλόμενοι ὑπηρετεῖν καὶ δὴ καὶ τοῦδε εἵνεκα οὐκ ἦκιστα· λέγουσι Ἀθηναῖοι ὄφιν μέγαν φύλακα τῆς ἀκροπόλιος ἐνδιατᾶσθαι ἐν τῷ ἱρῷ. λέ-

THE GREEK FLEET, AFTER LEAVING ARTEMISION, STOPPED AT SALAMIS. THE ATHENIANS MOVE FROM THE CITY TO PLACES OF SAFETY (CC. 40-41)

40. 6. τό: Syn. § 13. 1. — 8. γνώμης: S. 1392; HA. 748; B. 362; G. 1117. — 9. ὑποκατημένους: c. acc.; generally absol. — 10. τῶν μὲν κτέ.: *of them they found not a trace.* — οἱ δέ: Syn. § 9. 1. c. — 12. ταύτην: emphatic repetition of τὴν Πελο-

πόννησον, although it is placed so prominently before the τε . . . καὶ clauses. — 13. ἀπιέναι: this is parallel to τειχέοντας (for a variation between part. and inf. after πυνθάνομαι, cp. 5. 15. 6). — πυνθανόμενοι: cp. 8. 36. 1 and note the impf. in l. 10.

41. 3. Ἀθηναίων: part. gen. w. τις. — 4. οἰκέτας: see 8. 4. 9. — 7. χρηστηρίῳ: see 7. 140. — καὶ δὴ καὶ: *and in particular.* The expression is further strengthened by οὐκ ἦκιστα. — 9. ἱρῷ: the tem-

γουςί τε ταῦτα καὶ δὴ καὶ ὥς ἐόντι ἐπιμήνια ἐπιτελέουσι <sup>10</sup>  
 προτιθέντες· τὰ δ' ἐπιμήνια μελιτόεσσα ἔστι. αὕτη δ'  
 ἡ μελιτόεσσα ἐν τῷ πρόσθε αἰεὶ χρόνῳ ἀναισιμουμένη  
 τότε ἦν ἄψανστος. σημηνάσης δὲ ταῦτα τῆς ἱρείης  
 μᾶλλον τι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι καὶ προθυμότερον ἐξέλιπον τὴν  
 πόλιν ὥς καὶ τῆς θεοῦ ἀπολελοιπυίης τὴν ἀκρόπολιν. <sup>15</sup>  
 ὥς δέ σφι πάντα ὑπεξέκειτο, ἔπλεον ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον.  
<sup>42</sup> ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ἅπ' Ἀρτεμισίου ἐς Σαλαμῖνα κατέσχον τὰς  
 νέας, συνέρρει καὶ ὁ λοιπὸς πυνθανόμενος ὁ τῶν Ἑλλή-  
 νων ναυτικὸς στρατὸς ἐκ Τροιζῆνος· ἐς γὰρ Πώγωνα  
 τὸν Τροιζηνίων λιμένα προείρητο συλλέγεσθαι. συνε-  
 λέχθησάν τε δὴ πολλῶ πλέονες νέες ἢ ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ <sup>5</sup>  
 ἐναυμάχουν καὶ ἀπὸ πολίων πλεόνων. ναύαρχος μὲν  
 νυν ἐπὶ ὧτος ὃς περ ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ, Εὐρυβιάδης  
 Εὐρυκλείδω ἀνὴρ Σπαρτιήτης, οὐ μέντοι γένεός γε  
 τοῦ βασιλίου ἐών. νέας δὲ πολλῶ πλείστας τε καὶ  
<sup>43</sup> ἄριστα πλεούσας παρείχοντο Ἀθηναῖοι. ἐστρατεύοντο  
 δὲ οἶδε· ἐκ μὲν Πελοποννήσου Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐκκαί-

ple of Athena Polias. — 10. ἐπιμήνια κτί.: *they make monthly offerings, setting them forth* (for the snake). — 12. ἀναισιμουμένη: pres. expressing repeated action in past time. — 14. μᾶλλον τι . . . καὶ προθυμότερον: *all the more eagerly*. Cp. 1. 96. 12 and μᾶλλον τι καὶ θεώτερον 1. 174. 17, μᾶλλον τι καὶ ταχύτερον 9. 101. 15. — 15. ὥς . . . ἀπολελοιπυίης: *in the belief that the goddess had deserted*. — 16. ὑπεξέκειτο: = plupf. pass. of ὑπεκτίθμ, with σφι of the agent.

THE NUMBERS AND COMPOSITION  
 OF THE GREEK FLEET (CC.  
 42-48)

42. 2. ὁ τῶν Ἑλλήνων: for the repetition of the art. with the second attribute, cp. 7. 196. 1, 8. 108. 6, 23. — 4. λιμένα: the island of Calauria, which lies off the coast of Troezen, makes a large and well-protected harbor. — 7. ὧτος: Ion. crasis of ὁ αὐτός. — 9. βασιλίου: the Spartan commander was generally a king.

δεκα νέας παρεχόμενοι, Κορίνθιοι δὲ τὸντὸ πλήρωμα παρεχόμενοι [τὸ] καὶ ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ· Σικυώνιοι δὲ πεντεκαίδεκα παρείχοντο νέας, Ἐπιδαύριοι δὲ δέκα, 5 Τροιζήνιοι δὲ πέντε, Ἑρμιονεῖς δὲ τρεῖς, ἐόντες οὗτοι πλὴν Ἑρμιονέων Δωρικόν τε καὶ Μακεδνὸν ἔθνος, ἐξ Ἑρинеοῦ τε καὶ Πύδου καὶ τῆς Δρυοπίδος ὕστατα ὄρμη- θέντες. οἱ δὲ Ἑρμιονεῖς εἰσι Δρύοπες, ὑπὸ Ἡρακλέος τε καὶ Μηλίων ἐκ τῆς νῦν Δωρίδος καλεομένης χώρας 10 44 ἔξαναστάντες. οὗτοι μὲν νυν Πελοποννησίων ἐστρα- τεύοντο, οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῆς ἔξω ἡπείρου, Ἀθηναῖοι μὲν πρὸς πάντας τοὺς ἄλλους παρεχόμενοι νέας ὀγδώκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν, μῶνοι· ἐν Σαλαμῖνι γὰρ οὐ συνεναυμάχησαν Πλαταιεῖς Ἀθηναίοισι διὰ τοιόνδε τι πρῆγμα· ἀπαλ- 5 λασσομένων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀρτεμισίου, ὡς

43. 3. πλήρωμα: = πλήθος νεῶν.  
— 7. Μακεδνόν: doubtless connected with Μακεδών. According to 1. 56 the Dorians lived in Phthiotis and Histiaeotis before they came to Doris. — 8. Ἑρинеοῦ: Tyrtæus Fr. 2 refers to Erineus as the home of the Heraclidae before they came to Peloponnesus. Pindar, *Pyth.* 1. 65, says the same of Pindus. — Δρυοπίδος: cp. 8. 31. 8. — 9. Δρύοπες: cp. 1. 146. 7, 8. 46. 18, 8. 73. 9. — Ἡρακλέος: cp. 7. 176, 198. — 11. ἔξαναστάντες: pass. of ἐκβάλλω. Cp. 7. 75. 8, 8. 127. 4.

44. 2. Ἀθηναῖοι μὲν: in part. appos. to οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῆς ἔξω ἡπείρου. Cp. αὐται μὲν νυν αἱ ἡπειρώτιδες

Αἰολίδες πόλεις . . . αἱ δὲ τὰς νή- σους ἔχουσαι πέντε μὲν πόλεις τὴν Λέσβον νέμονται 1. 151. 1. For an exact parallel we should have here παρείχοντο instead of παρε- χόμενοι. Cp. the apod. in 45. 1. — πρὸς πάντας τοὺς ἄλλους: in com- parison with all the rest. The construction is unusual in that we have a definite figure given instead of 'many' or 'most'; as if we should say "London has a popula- tion of 6,000,000 in comparison with all the cities in the world." For a similar use cp. φόρον ἀπα- γίνεον πρὸς πάντας τοὺς ἄλλους ἐξήκοντα καὶ τριηκόσια τάλαντα ψήγματος 3. 94. 9. — 4. μῶνοι: explained by the foll. clause. See

ἐγίνοντο κατὰ Χαλκίδα, οἱ Πλαταιεῖς ἀποβάντες ἐς  
 τὴν περαιὴν τῆς Βοιωτίας χώρας πρὸς ἐκκομιδὴν ἐτρά-  
 πουτο τῶν οἰκετέων. οὗτοι μὲν νυν τούτους σώζοντες  
 ἐλείφθησαν. Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν Πελασγῶν ἐχόντων <sup>10</sup>  
 τὴν νῦν Ἑλλάδα καλεομένην ἦσαν Πελασγοί, ὀνομα-  
 ζόμενοι Κραναοί, ἐπὶ δὲ Κέκροπος βασιλέος ἐκλήθησαν  
 Κεκροπίδαι, ἐκδεξαμένου δὲ Ἐρεχθέος τὴν ἀρχὴν Ἀθη-  
 ναῖοι μετωνομάσθησαν, Ἴωνος δὲ τοῦ Ξούθου στρα-  
 τάρχεω γενομένου Ἀθηναίοισι ἐκλήθησαν ἀπὸ τούτου <sup>15</sup>  
<sup>45</sup> Ἴωνες. Μεγαρεῖς δὲ τῷ τὸ πλήρωμα παρείχοντο καὶ  
 ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ, Ἀμπρακιῶται δὲ ἐπὶ τὰ νέας ἔχοντες  
 ἐπεβοήθησαν, Λευκάδιοι δὲ τρεῖς, ἔθνος εἶοντες οὗτοι  
<sup>46</sup> Δωρικὸν ἀπὸ Κορίνθου. νησιωτέων δὲ Αἰγινῆται τριή-  
 κοντα παρείχοντο. ἦσαν μὲν σφί καὶ ἄλλαι πεπληρω-  
 μέναι νέες, ἀλλὰ τῇσι μὲν τὴν ἐωυτῶν ἐφύλασσαν,  
 τριήκοντα δὲ τῇσι ἄριστα πλεούσῃσι ἐν Σαλαμῖνι ἕναν

8. 1. 4. — 8. τὴν περαιὴν: sc. μοῖ-  
 ραν. — 12. Κραναοί: Pindar, *Ol.*  
 7. 82 etc., and Ar. *Ach.* 75, use  
 κραναός as an epithet of Athens.  
 The latter also uses αἱ Κρανααί  
 for Ἀθῆναι (*Aves* 123) and τὴν  
 Κραναάν of the Acropolis (*Lys.*  
 480). The name was evidently  
 derived from the rocky citadel,  
 but a mythical king was cre-  
 ated to account for it. Cp. παῖδες  
 Κραναοῦ Aesch. *Eum.* 1011. —  
 13. Ἀθηναῖοι: because Erechtheus  
 was the foster-son of Athena  
 (Hom. B 547). — 14. Ἴωνος: Ion  
 was the son of Xuthus and Creusa,

daughter of Erechtheus. When  
 the Eleusinians attacked Athens,  
 Ion, then king of the Aegiales,  
 came to the assistance of his grand-  
 father, and was appointed στρα-  
 τάρχης of the army. The four Attic  
 tribes were named after his sons.  
 Cp. 5. 66. 10, 7. 94. 6.

45. 4. ἀπὸ Κορίνθου: Ambra-  
 cia and Leucas were said to have  
 been colonized by sons of Cypselus,  
 tyrant of Corinth.

46. 1. νησιωτέων: freq. with-  
 out the art. when referring to the  
 islands of the Aegaeon. Cp. νῆσαι  
 8. 108. 9 — 2. ἄλλαι: see note on 8.

μάχησαν. Αἰγινῆται δέ εἰσι Δωριεῖς ἀπὸ Ἐπιδαύρου . 5  
 τῇ δὲ νήσῳ πρότερον οὖνομα ἦν Οἰνώνη. μετὰ δὲ  
 Αἰγινήτας Χαλκιδεῖς τὰς ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ εἴκοσι παρεχό-  
 μενοι καὶ Ἑρετριεῖς τὰς ἐπτά· οὗτοι δὲ Ἴωνές εἰσι.  
 μετὰ δὲ Κήιοι τὰς αὐτὰς παρεχόμενοι, ἔθνος ἐὼν Ἴωνι-  
 κὸν ἀπὸ Ἀθηνέων. Νάξιοι δὲ παρείχοντο τέσσερας, 10  
 ἀποπεμφθέντες μὲν ἐς τοὺς Μήδους ὑπὸ τῶν πολιητέων,  
 κατὰ περ οἱ ἄλλοι νησιῶται, ἀλογήσαντες δὲ τῶν ἐντο-  
 λέων ἀπικάτο ἐς τοὺς Ἑλληνας Δημοκρίτου σπεύσαντος,  
 ἀνδρὸς τῶν ἀστῶν δοκίμου καὶ τότε τριηραρχέοντος·  
 Νάξιοι δὲ εἰσι Ἴωνες ἀπὸ Ἀθηνέων γεγονότες. Στυρεῖς 15  
 δὲ τὰς αὐτὰς παρείχοντο νέας τὰς περ ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ,  
 Κύθνιοι δὲ μίαν καὶ πεντηκόντερον, ἐόντες συναμφότε-  
 ροι οὗτοι Δρύοπες. καὶ Σερίφιοί τε καὶ Σίφνιοι καὶ  
 Μήλιοι ἐστρατεύοντο· οὗτοι γὰρ οὐκ ἔδοσαν μῦνοι  
 47 νησιωτέων τῷ βαρβάρῳ γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ. οὗτοι μὲν  
 ἅπαντες ἐντὸς οἰκημένοι Θεσπρωτῶν καὶ Ἀχέροντος  
 ποταμοῦ ἐστρατεύοντο· Θεσπρωτοὶ γάρ εἰσι ὁμυρέον-  
 τες Ἀμπρακιώτῃσι καὶ Λευκαδίοισι, οἳ ἔξ ἐσχάτων

48. 7. — 9. *ἴον*: assim. to the pred. *ἔθνος*. — 13. *ἀπικάτο*: Dial. § 4. 3. There is a slight anacoluthon in the sentence; we should expect *ἀπικμένοι δέ* to balance *ἀποπεμ-  
 φθέντες μὲν*. — *Δημοκρίτου*: according to Simonides (Fr. 136), he was the third to begin the fight at Salamis (cp. 8. 84. 10), and took five ships, besides saving one. — 15. *Στυρεῖς*: Thuc. 7. 57 says they were Ionians. Their dialect, as

known from inscriptions, is Ionic, though with a few peculiarities. — 18. *Σερίφιοι κτί.*: with the exception of Naxos all the islands mentioned in this chapter are the farthest westward of the group, and so most removed from the fear of Persian aggression.

47. 2. *οἰκήμενοι*: *dwelling*. Hdt. uses the pf. pass. in the sense of the pres. act. in Att. Cp. 8. 115. 22. — 3. *εἰσι ὁμυρέοντες*:

χωρέων ἐστρατεύοντο. τῶν δὲ ἐκτὸς τούτων οἰκημένων 5  
 Κροτωνιῆται μῦνοι ἦσαν οἱ ἐβοήθησαν τῇ Ἑλλάδι  
 κινδυνεούσῃ μιῇ νηί, τῆς ἦρχε ἀνὴρ τρεῖς πυθιονίκης  
 48 Φάϋλλος. Κροτωνιῆται δὲ γένος εἰσὶ Ἀχαιοί. οἱ μὲν  
 νυν ἄλλοι τριήρεας παρεχόμενοι ἐστρατεύοντο, Μήλιοι  
 δὲ καὶ Σίφνιοι καὶ Σερίφιοι πεντηκοντέρους. Μήλιοι  
 μὲν, γένος ἔοντες ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμόνος, δύο παρείχοντο,  
 Σίφνιοι δὲ καὶ Σερίφιοι, Ἴωνες ἔοντες ἀπ' Ἀθηνέων, 5  
 μίαν ἑκάτεροι. ἀριθμὸς δὲ ἐγένετο ὁ πᾶς τῶν νεῶν,  
 πάρεξ τῶν πεντηκοντέρων, τριηκόσiai καὶ ἐβδομήκοντα  
 καὶ ὀκτώ.

49 Ὡς δὲ ἐς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα συνήλθον οἱ στρατηγοὶ

= ὅμοιροι εἰσι 1. 57. 4 or ὁμοῦρέ-  
 ονσι 2. 33. 13. — 6. Κροτωνιῆται :  
 in southern Italy. — 7. πυθιονίκης :  
 the Pythian games were held  
 every four years at Delphi. Pau-  
 sanias 10. 9. 2 tells us that Phayl-  
 lus won the pentathlon twice and  
 the foot race once. He adds that  
 he furnished his own ship and  
 manned it with Crotonians dwell-  
 ing in Greece. There was a  
 statue of him at Delphi, from  
 which Hdt. probably drew his in-  
 formation. Ar. *Ach.* 215, *Wasps*  
 1206, mentions a Phayllus as a  
 typical runner.

48. 2. ἄλλοι : the Ceans pro-  
 vided two penteconters and two  
 triremes (8. 1. 11, 8. 46. 9); the  
 Cythnians one each (8. 46. 17). —  
 7. τριηκόσiai κτλ. : the sum total of  
 the numbers given by Hdt. is 366,

not 378. It is commonly assumed  
 that the twelve missing ships are  
 those with which the Aeginetans  
 were guarding their own land (8.  
 46. 2). This conclusion is based  
 on the statement of Pausanias (2.  
 29. 5) that the Aeginetans fur-  
 nished the next largest number af-  
 ter the Athenians. As there were  
 forty Corinthian ships (8. 1. 5, 8.  
 43. 3), the statement of Pausanias  
 would be correct if twelve ships  
 were added to the thirty Aegine-  
 tan. However, it is more probable  
 that the error is due to Hdt. For  
 another miscalculation, see 7. 187.  
 11, and note the inaccuracy in  
 1. 2. Aeschylus, *Persae* 338, says  
 there were 310 Greek ships. For  
 other statements, cp. Thuc. 1. 74;  
 Demosth. *De Cor.* § 238; Isoc.  
*Paneg.* § 98.

ἀπὸ τῶν εἰρημένων πολίων, ἐβουλευόντο, προθέντος  
 Εὐρυβιάδεω γνώμην ἀποφαίνεσθαι τὸν βουλούμενον,  
 ὅκου δοκέοι ἐπιτηδεότατον εἶναι ναυμαχίην ποιεῖσθαι  
 τῶν αὐτοῖ χωρέων ἐγκρατεῖς εἰσι· ἡ γὰρ Ἀττικὴ ἀπέιτο 5  
 ἤδη, τῶν δὲ λοιπέων πέρι προετίθει. αἱ γνῶμαι δὲ τῶν  
 λεγόντων αἱ πλείσται συνεξέπιπτον πρὸς τὸν Ἴσθμὸν  
 πλώσαντας ναυμαχεῖν πρὸ τῆς Πελοποννήσου, ἐπιλέ-  
 γοντες τὸν λόγον τόνδε, ὡς εἰ νικηθέωσι τῇ ναυμαχίᾳ,  
 ἐν Σαλαμῖνι μὲν ἔοντες πολιορκήσονται ἐν νήσῳ, ἵνα 10  
 σφί τιμωρίῃ οὐδεμία ἐπιφανήσεται, πρὸς δὲ τῷ Ἴσθμῳ  
 50 ἔς τοὺς ἑωυτῶν ἐξοίσονται. ταῦτα τῶν ἀπὸ Πελοπον-  
 νήσου στρατηγῶν ἐπιλεγομένων ἐληλύθει ἀνὴρ Ἀθη-  
 ναῖος ἀγγέλλων ἤκειν τὸν βάρβαρον ἐς τὴν Ἀττικὴν  
 καὶ πᾶσαν αὐτὴν πυρπολεῖσθαι. ὁ γὰρ διὰ Βοιωτῶν  
 τραπόμενος στρατὸς ἅμα Ξέρξῃ, ἐμπρήσας Θεσπιδέων 5  
 τὴν πόλιν αὐτῶν ἐκλελοιπότες ἐς Πελοπόννησον καὶ τὴν  
 Πλαταιέων ὡσαύτως, ἡκέ τε ἐς τὰς Ἀθήνας καὶ πάντα  
 ἐκεῖνα ἐδῆγον. ἐνέπρησε δὲ Θέσπειάν τε καὶ Πλάταιαν  
 51 πυθόμενος Θηβαίων ὅτι οὐκ ἐμῆδιζον. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς

WHILE THE GREEKS AT SALAMIS  
 ARE DISCUSSING THE BEST  
 PLACE FOR A NAVAL BATTLE,  
 THE ARRIVAL OF THE PERSIANS  
 IN ATHENS IS ANNOUNCED  
 (CC. 49-50)

49. 2. προθέντος: of the pre-  
 siding officer who proposes to a  
 meeting the subject for discussion.  
 Usually w. acc. λόγον (8. 59. 2),  
 γνώμην. — 4. ὅκου . . . τῶν χωρέων

κτέ.: in which of the places which  
 they control. — 5. ἀπέιτο: Att.  
 ἀφείτο; plupf. pass. of ἀφίημι. —  
 7. συνεξέπιπτον: were in agreement.  
 Cp. 7. 151. 1, 8. 123. 8. — 8. ἐπι-  
 λέγοντες: as if πλείστοι ἐγίνωσκον  
 had preceded. — 9. εἰ: Syn. § 18. 1.  
 — 10. πολιορκήσονται: in pass.  
 sense. — 12. ἐξοίσονται: cp. 8. 76. 15.  
 50. 2. ἐπιλεγομένων: consider-  
 ing. Note the diff. voice in 8. 49.  
 9. — 8. ἐκεῖνα = τὰ ἐκεῖ. — 9. ἐμῆ-

διαβάσιος τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου, ἐνθεν πορεύεσθαι ἤρξαντο οἱ βάρβαροι, ἕνα αὐτοῦ διατρίψαντες μῆνα, ἐν τῷ διέβαινον ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην, ἐν τρισὶ ἐτέροισι μηνσὶ ἐγένοντο ἐν τῇ Ἀττικῇ, Καλλιάδεω ἄρχοντος Ἀθηναίοισι. 5 καὶ αἰρέουσι ἔρημον τὸ ἄστυ καὶ τινας ὀλίγους εὐρίσκουσι τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐν τῷ ἱρῷ ἔοντας, ταμίας τε τοῦ ἱεροῦ καὶ πένητας ἀνθρώπους, οἱ φραξάμενοι τὴν ἀκρόπολιν θύρησί τε καὶ ξύλοισι ἡμύνοντο τοὺς ἐπιόντας, ἅμα μὲν ὑπ' ἀσθενείης βίον οὐκ ἐκχωρήσαντες ἐς Σαλα- 10 μῖνα, πρὸς δὲ αὐτοὶ δοκέοντες ἐξευρηκέναι τὸ μαντήιον τὸ ἢ Πυθίῃ σφί ἐχρησε, τὸ ξύλινον τεῖχος ἀνάλωτον ἔσεσθαι· αὐτὸ δὴ τοῦτο εἶναι τὸ κρησφύγετον κατὰ τὸ 52 μαντήιον καὶ οὐ τὰς νέας. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ἰζόμενοι ἐπὶ τὸν καταντίον τῆς ἀκροπόλιος ὄχθον, τὸν Ἀθηναῖον καλέουσι Ἀρήιον πάγον, ἐπολιόρκεον τρόπον τοιόνδε· ὅκως στυππεῖον περὶ τοὺς οἷστοὺς περιθέντες ἄψειαν,

**διζον**: impf. ind. for a pres. indic. in the direct statement.

THE PERSIANS AFTER A STUBBORN RESISTANCE TAKE THE ACROPOLIS AND PLUNDER THE TEMPLE OF ATHENA (CC. 51-53)

51. 4. ἐν τρισὶ κτλ.: the arrival in Athens probably took place about the ninth or tenth of Sept., allowing nine or ten days for the march from Thermopylae. See 8. 26. — 5. Καλλιάδεω: Calliades was archon eponymous in 480 B.C. This is the only instance in Hdt.

of the method of dating which later became regular. — 7. ἱρῷ: the old Erechtheum, the temple of Athena Polias. — ταμίας: there were ten stewards in charge of the funds and treasures of the temple. — 10. ἀσθενείης βίον: poverty. According to Aristotle, *Ath. Pol.* 23, the senate of the Areopagus distributed eight drachmas to each man at this time. — 11. μαντήιον: for the oracle and the diff. interpretations, see 7. 141-2.

52. 4. ὅκως: whenever. Hdt. is fond of thus subordinating the first of two successive actions. —



ἐτόξενον ἐς τὸ φράγμα. ἐνθαῦτα Ἀθηναίων οἱ πολιορ- 5  
 κεόμενοι ὁμῶς ἡμύνοντο, καίπερ ἐς τὸ ἔσχατον κακοῦ  
 ἀπιγμένοι καὶ τοῦ φράγματος προδεδωκότος. οὐδὲ  
 λόγους τῶν Πεισιστρατιδῶν προσφερόντων περὶ ὁμο-  
 λογίης ἐνεδέκοντο, ἀμυνόμενοι δὲ ἄλλα τε ἀντεμνηχα-  
 νῶντο καὶ δὴ καὶ προσιόντων τῶν βαρβάρων πρὸς τὰς 10  
 πύλας ὁλοιτρόχους ἀπίεσαν, ὥστε Ξέρξην ἐπὶ χρόνον  
 συχνὸν ἀπορίησι ἐνέχεσθαι οὐ δυνάμενόν σφεας ἐλεῖν.  
 53 χρόνῳ δ' ἐκ τῶν ἀπόρων ἐφάνη δὴ τις ἐξοδος τοῖσι  
 βαρβάροισι· ἔδει γὰρ κατὰ τὸ θεοπρόπιον πᾶσαν τὴν  
 Ἀττικὴν τὴν ἐν τῇ ἡπείρῳ γενέσθαι ὑπὸ Πέρσῃσι.  
 ἔμπροσθε ὦν πρὸ τῆς ἀκροπόλιος, ὀπισθε δὲ τῶν πυλέων  
 καὶ τῆς ἀνόδου, τῇ δὴ οὔτε τις ἐφύλασσε οὔτ' ἂν ἤλπισε 5  
 μὴ κατέ τις κατὰ ταῦτα ἀναβαίῃ ἀνθρώπων, ταύτῃ ἀνέ-  
 βησάν τινες κατὰ τὸ ἶρόν τῆς Κέκροπος θυγατρὸς

7. προδεδωκότος: it is implied that the wooden defense was destroyed by fire. — 8. Πεισιστρατιδῶν: cp. 7. 6. Thuc. 6. 59. 4 says that Hippias came to Marathon with the Persians, "being now an old man." Presumably the sons of Hippias are here meant. He had five children, while Hipparchus and Thessalus seem to have had none (Thuc. 6. 55). — 11. ἐπὶ χρόνον συχνόν: probably about two weeks (Busolt, *Gr. Gesch.* 2. 695). — 12. οὐ: the negat. belongs closely with δυνάμενον. GMT. 598-9.

53. 1. δὴ: this strengthens the indef. idea in τις. — 4. ἔμπροσθε . . .

πρό: cp. 1. 11 and οἱ ἄνω ὑπὲρ Μασσαλῆς οἰκόντες 5. 9. 16. Though the entrance was on the west, the side referred to here as the *front* is the north side, where the temple of Aglaurus is to be placed (Eurip. *Ion.* 8 f., 493 f.). Pausanias (1. 18. 2) says that Aglaurus cast herself down from the Acropolis ἐνθα ἦν μάλιστα ἀπότομον . . . κατὰ τοῦτο ἐπανα-  
 βάντες Μῆδοι κτέ. This agrees with the description of Herodotus in l. 9; yet some suppose that the Persians entered by a cleft in the rock. — 6. μὴ . . . ἀναβαίῃ: as after a verb expressing fear. Cp. 1. 77. 20. — κατὰ ταῦτα: repeating the

Ἀγλαύρου, καί [τοι] περ ἀποκρήμνου ἐόντος τοῦ  
 χώρου. ὥς δὲ εἶδον αὐτοὺς ἀναβεβηκότας οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι  
 [ἐπὶ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν], οἱ μὲν ἐρρίπτεον ἑωυτοὺς κατὰ <sup>10</sup>  
 τοῦ τείχεος κάτω καὶ διεφθείροντο, οἱ δὲ ἕς τὸ μέγαρον  
 κατέφευγον. τῶν δὲ Περσέων οἱ ἀναβεβηκότες πρῶτον  
 μὲν ἐτράποντο πρὸς τὰς πύλας, ταύτας δὲ ἀνοίξαντες  
 τοὺς ἰκέτας ἐφόνεον· ἐπεὶ δὲ σφί πάντες κατέστρωντο,  
 τὸ ἱρὸν συλήσαντες ἐνέπρησαν πᾶσαν τὴν ἀκρόπολιν. <sup>15</sup>  
<sup>54</sup>σχὼν δὲ παντελέως τὰς Ἀθήνας Ξέρξης ἀπέπεμψε ἐς  
 Σοῦσα ἄγγελον ἱππέα Ἀρταβάνω ἀγγελέοντα τὴν παρε-  
 οῦσάν σφί εὐπρηξίην. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς πέμψιος τοῦ κήρυκος  
 δευτέρῃ ἡμέρῃ συγκαλέσας Ἀθηναίων τοὺς φυγάδας,  
 ἑωυτῷ δὲ ἐπομένους, ἐκέλευε τρόπῳ τῷ σφετέρῳ θῦσαι <sup>5</sup>  
 τὰ ἱρὰ ἀναβάντας ἐς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν, εἴτε δὴ ὦν ὄψιν  
 τινὰ ἰδὼν ἐνυπνίου ἐνετέλλετο ταῦτα, εἴτε καὶ ἐνθύμιόν  
 οἱ ἐγένετο ἐμπρήσαντι τὸ ἱρόν. οἱ δὲ φυγάδες τῶν  
 Ἀθηναίων ἐποίησαν τὰ ἐντεταλμένα. τοῦ δὲ εἵνεκεν  
<sup>55</sup>τούτων ἐπεμνήσθην, φράσω. ἔστι ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει  
 ταύτῃ Ἐρεχθῆος τοῦ γηγενέος λεγομένου εἶναι νηός, ἐν  
 τῷ ἐλαίῳ τε καὶ θάλασσᾳ ἔνι, τὰ λόγος παρὰ Ἀθηναίων

idea in τῇ. — 10. ἐρρίπτεον: note the descriptive impfs. in these lines.

THE ATHENIAN EXILES, SACRIFIC-  
 ING ON THE ACROPOLIS, BE-  
 HOLD A MARVEL (CC. 54-55)

54. 2. Ἀρταβάνω: cp. 7. 53.  
 1. — 5. ἑωυτῷ δέ: cp. 8. 23. 11. —  
 7. εἴτε καὶ . . . ἐγένετο: for a simi-  
 lar change to a finite verb cp. 1.

19. 9, 9. 5. 6. — ἐνθύμιόν οἱ ἐγένετο: it rested heavy on his mind. Impers. const., with partic. expressing the reason for repentance, as with μεταμέλει.

55. 2. γηγενός: pred. with εἶναι. Cp. Ἐρεχθῆος μεγαλήτορος, ὃν ποτ' Ἀθήνη | θρέψε Διὸς θυγά-  
 τηρ, τέκε δὲ ζεῖδωρος ἄρουρα Hom. B 547. — 3. θάλασσα: i.e. a salt spring (Pausan. 1. 26. 5). — παρὰ:

Ποσειδέωνά τε καὶ Ἀθηναίην ἐρίσαντας περὶ τῆς χώρας  
μαρτύρια θέσθαι. ταύτην ὦν τὴν ἐλαίην ἅμα τῷ ἄλλῳ 5  
ἱρῷ κατέλαβε ἐμπρησθῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων· δευ-  
τέρῃ δὲ ἡμέρῃ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμπρήσιος Ἀθηναίων οἱ θύειν  
ὑπὸ βασιλέος κελευόμενοι ὥς ἀνέβησαν ἐς τὸ ἱρόν, ὧρων  
βλαστὸν ἐκ τοῦ στελέχεος ὅσον τε πηχυαῖον ἀναδέδρα-  
μηκότα. οὗτοι μὲν νυν ταῦτα ἔφρασαν. 10

- 56 Οἱ δὲ ἐν Σαλαμῖνι Ἕλληνες, ὥς σφι ἐξαγγέλθη  
ὥς ἔσχε τὰ περὶ τὴν Ἀθηνέων ἀκρόπολιν, ἐς τοσοῦτον  
θόρυβον ἀπίκοντο ὥστε ἔνιοι τῶν στρατηγῶν οὐδὲ  
κυρωθῆναι ἔμενον τὸ προκείμενον πρῆγμα, ἀλλ' ἐς τε  
τὰς νέας ἐσέπιπτον καὶ ἰστία αἰείροντο ὥς ἀποθουσός 5  
μενοι· τοῖσί τε ὑπολειπομένοισι αὐτῶν ἐκυρώθη πρὸ  
τοῦ Ἴσθμοῦ ναυμαχεῖν. νύξ τε ἐγίνετο καὶ οἱ δια-  
λυθέντες ἐκ τοῦ συνεδρίου ἐσέβαινον ἐς τὰς νέας.  
57 ἐνθαῦτα δὴ Θεμιστοκλέα ἀπικόμενον ἐπὶ τὴν νέα εἵρετο

expressing the source. Cp. 7. 103. 11 and ὁ παρὰ Περσέων λόγος λέγεται 6. 54. 2.—5. μαρτύρια θέσθαι: adduced as proofs, i.e. of their earlier possession of the land. According to Apollodorus (3. 14. 1) Poseidon was the first to come to Athens, and he produced the salt spring on the Acropolis as a mark of his possession; but, when Athena came, she took the precaution of making Cecrops a witness of the creation of the olive. Accordingly, at the trial he testified that she was the first.—6. κατέλαβε: it happened. Cp.

7. 38. 11, 7. 155. 2. In νοῦσον ἤ μιν κατέλαβε νοσῆσαι τὰ αἰδοῖα 3. 149. 4 we have a definite subj., further defined by an inf.

THE GREEKS, AFTER DECIDING TO SAIL TO THE ISTHMUS, ARE PERSUADED BY THEMISTOCLES TO REMAIN AT SALAMIS (CC. 56-63)

56. 4. ἔμενον: c. acc. and inf.; more commonly followed by an *until* clause. Note the picturesque impfs.—7. οἱ: demonstrative. Syn. § 8. 2. The chronology of Hdt. is rather mixed here. We

Μνησίφιλος ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖος ὃ τι σφί εἴη βεβουλευ-  
 μένον. πυθόμενος δὲ πρὸς αὐτοῦ ὡς εἴη δεδωγμένον  
 ἀνάγειν τὰς νέας πρὸς τὸν Ἴσθμὸν καὶ πρὸ τῆς Πελο-  
 ποννήσου ναυμαχεῖν, εἶπε· Οὐ τοι ἄρα, ἦν ἀπαείρωσις  
 τὰς νέας ἀπὸ Σαλαμῖνος, περὶ οὐδεμιᾶς ἔτι πατρίδος  
 ναυμαχήσεις· κατὰ γὰρ πόλις ἕκαστοι τρέφονται, καὶ  
 οὔτε σφέας Εὐρυβιάδης κατέχειν δυνήσεται οὔτε τις  
 ἀνθρώπων ἄλλος ὥστε μὴ οὐ διασκεδασθῆναι τὴν  
 στρατιήν· ἀπολείται τε ἡ Ἑλλὰς ἀβουλίῃσι. ἀλλ' 10  
 εἴ τις ἔστι μηχανή, ἴθι καὶ πειρῶ διαχέαι τὰ βεβου-  
 λεύμένα, ἦν κως δύνῃ ἀναγνῶσαι Εὐρυβιάδην μετα-  
 58 βουλεύσασθαι ὥστε αὐτοῦ μένειν. κάρτα τε τῷ

naturally infer from his statement that "some of the generals did not wait for the matter to be decided," that the meeting described in chs. 49-50 is still going on; but the meeting in ch. 50 was being held at the time of the arrival of the Persians in Athens, while the present one is fixed by the fall of the Acropolis, a "considerable time" (8. 52. 12) having elapsed.

57. 2. **Μνησίφιλος**: following Plutarch, *de Malig.* 37, many modern scholars have doubted the truth of this anecdote, on the ground that it robs Themistocles of much of the credit for the Greek success at Salamis. Toward the end of the fifth century B.C. it was a much-discussed question whether Themistocles had rendered his great services to the state through

his own natural abilities, or by following wise counselors. Thucydides states his opinion very emphatically: οἰκεία γὰρ ξυνέσει καὶ οὔτε προμαθὼν εἰς αὐτὴν οὐδὲν οὔτ' ἐπιμαθὼν, τῶν τε παραχρήμα δι' ἐλαχίστης βουλῆς κράτιστος γνώμων καὶ τῶν μελλόντων ἐπὶ πλεῖστον τοῦ γενησομένου ἄριστος εἰκαστής 1. 138. — 5. οὐ τοι ἔρα κτί.: *certainly then, if they withdraw their ships from Salamis, you will not again fight a naval battle for a common fatherland.* — 9. ὥστε μὴ οὐ: the double neg. follows a verb of prevention in a neg. clause. S. 2745; B. 435; G. 1550. On ὥστε see GMT. 588. — 12. ἀναγνῶσαι: *persuade*. The 1 aor. is. not found in Att. — μεταβουλεύσασθαι: with inf. in 7. 12. 8.

Θεμιστοκλεῖ ἤρесе ἡ ὑπόθηκη καὶ οὐδὲν πρὸς ταῦτα ἀμειψάμενος ἦε ἐπὶ τὴν νέα τὴν Εὐρυβιάδew. ἀπικό-  
 μενος δὲ ἔφη ἐθέλειν οἱ κοινόν τι πρῆγμα συμμῖζαι.  
 ὁ δ' αὐτὸν ἐς τὴν νέα ἐκέλευε ἐσβάντα λέγειν, εἴ τι 5  
 θέλει. ἐνθαῦτα ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς παριζόμενός οἱ κατα-  
 λέγει ἐκεῖνά τε πάντα τὰ ἤκουσε Μνησιφίλου, ἑωυτοῦ  
 ποιέόμενος, καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ προστιθείς, ἐς ὃ ἀνέγνωσε  
 χρῆζων ἔκ τε τῆς νεὸς ἐκβῆναι συλλέξαι τε τοὺς στρατ-  
 59 ηγοὺς ἐς τὸ συνέδριον. ὥς δὲ ἄρα συνελέχθησαν,  
 πρὶν ἢ τὸν Εὐρυβιάδην προθεῖναι τὸν λόγον τῶν εἵνεκα  
 συνήγαγε τοὺς στρατηγούς, πολλὸς ἦν ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς  
 ἐν τοῖσι λόγοισι οἷα κάρτα δεόμενος. λέγοντος δὲ  
 αὐτοῦ ὁ Κορινθίων στρατηγὸς Ἀδείμαντος ὁ Ὠκύτου 5  
 εἶπε· ὦ Θεμιστόκλεις, ἐν τοῖσι ἀγῶσι οἱ προεξανιστά-  
 μενοι ραπίζονται. ὁ δὲ ἀπολυόμενος ἔφη· Οἱ δέ γε  
 60 ἐγκαταλειπόμενοι οὐ στεφανοῦνται. τότε μὲν ἡπίως

58. 7. ἑωυτοῦ ποιέόμενος: on the attitude of Hdt. toward Themistocles see 8. 4, 5.—8. καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ: strictly speaking, this should be closely connected with ἐκεῖνά τε as obj. of καταλέγει, and we should expect τὰ αὐτὸς προσετίθει instead of προστιθείς, but the insertion of ἑωυτοῦ ποιέόμενος leads naturally to the partic.  
 —9. χρῆζων: by his urgency.

59. 1. ἄρα: then: the result of the arguments of Themistocles.  
 —2. τῶν εἵνεκα: for the plur. cp. πυθόμενοι . . . τὸν λόγον, ἐπ' οἷσι 3. 48. 9, and 8. 68. α 5.—3. πολλὸς

ἦν κτέ.: was talking a great deal. Cp. 1. 98. 2, 7. 158. 2, 9. 91. 2; Thuc. 4. 22. 2; Dem. *De Cor.* 199.—4. οἷα: with causal partic. S. 2085; HA. 977; B. 656. 1; G. 1575.—5. Ἀδείμαντος: Plutarch, *Thest.* 11, makes Eurybiades the speaker, and adds that when Themistocles replied, Eurybiades was about to strike him with his staff. Themistocles simply said πάταξον μὲν ἄκουσον δέ.—6. οἱ προεξανιστάμενοι: of runners who start before the signal is given. Cp. 9. 62. 1.

60. 1. τότε μὲν: in contrast

[πρὸς] τὸν Κορίνθιον ἀμείψατο, πρὸς δὲ τὸν Εὐρυβιάδην ἔλεγε ἐκείνων μὲν ἔτι οὐδὲν τῶν πρότερον λεχθέντων, ὡς ἔπεα νῆα ἀπαείρωσι ἀπὸ Σαλαμῖνος διαδρήσονται· παρεόντων γὰρ τῶν συμμαχῶν οὐκ ἔφερε οἱ κόσμον οὐδένα 5 ἀκατηγορεῖν· ὁ δὲ ἄλλου λόγου εἶχετο, λέγων τάδε· Ἐν σοὶ νῦν ἐστὶ σῶσαι τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἣν ἐμοὶ πείθῃ ναυμαχίην αὐτοῦ μένων ποιεῖσθαι μηδὲ πειθόμενος τούτων τοῖσι λόγοισι ἀναζεύξης πρὸς τὸν Ἴσθμὸν τὰς νέας. ἀντίθεος γὰρ ἐκάτερον ἀκούσας. πρὸς μὲν τῷ Ἴσθμῳ 5 συμβάλλων ἐν πελάγει ἀναπεπταμένῳ ναυμαχήσεις, [ἐς] τὸ ἥκιστα ἡμῖν σύμφυτον ἐστὶ νέας ἔχουσι βαρυτέρας καὶ ἀριθμὸν ἐλάσσονας· τοῦτο δὲ ἀπολείς Σαλαμῖνά τε καὶ Μέγαρά καὶ Αἴγιναν, ἣν περ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα εὐτυχήσωμεν. ἅμα γὰρ τῷ ναυτικῷ αὐτῶν ἔψεται καὶ 10 ὁ πεζὸς στρατός, καὶ οὕτω σφέας αὐτὸς ἄξεις ἐπὶ τὴν β Πελοπόννησον, κινδυνεύσεις τε ἀπάσῃ τῇ Ἑλλάδι. ἣν δὲ τὰ ἐγὼ λέγω ποιήσης, τοσάδε ἐν αὐτοῖσι χρηστὰ εὐρήσεις· πρῶτα μὲν ἐν στεινῷ συμβάλλοντες νηυσὶ ὀλίγησι πρὸς πολλὰς, ἣν τὰ οἰκότα ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου ἐκβαίνῃ, πολλὸν κρατήσομεν· τὸ γὰρ ἐν στεινῷ ναυμαχεῖν πρὸς 5 ἡμέων ἐστὶ, ἐν εὐρυχωρίῃ δὲ πρὸς ἐκείνων. αὗτις δὲ

with 61. 6. — 3. ὡς κτέ.: explanatory of τῶν πρότερον λεχθέντων. — 6. ὁ δὲ: cp. 8. 40. 10.

α 3. τούτων: emphatically placed in contrast to ἐμοί instead of τοῖσι τούτων λόγοισι. — 4. ἀναζεύξης: properly applied to the *yoking up* when a land force moves. — 7. βαρυτέρας: since the Persian ships carried a larger crew (7.

184) they must have been larger than the Greek ships. Plutarch, *Them.* 14, is authority for the statement that the Greek ships were lower in the water. Possibly βαρυτέρας means *clumsier*. Stein suggests βραδυτέρας. — 8. τοῦτο δὲ: *on the other hand*; without preceding τοῦτο μὲν. — 12. Ἑλλάδι: see Syn. § 4. i. B. 2.

Σαλαμῖς περιγίνεται, ἐς τὴν ἡμῶν ὑπέκκειται τέκνα τε καὶ γυναῖκες. καὶ μὲν καὶ τόδε ἐν αὐτοῖσι ἔνεστι, τοῦ καὶ περιέχεσθε μάλιστα· ὁμοίως αὐτοῦ τε μένων προ-  
 ναυμαχῆσεις Πελοποννήσου καὶ πρὸς τῷ Ἴσθμῳ, οὐδέ <sup>10</sup>  
 σφεας, εἴ περ εὖ φρονεῖς, ἄξεις ἐπὶ τὴν Πελοπόννησον.  
 γ ἦν δέ γε καὶ τὰ ἐγὼ ἐλπίζω γένηται καὶ νικήσωμεν τῇσι  
 νηυσί, οὔτε ὑμῖν ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμὸν παρέσονται οἱ βάρβα-  
 ροι οὔτε προβήσονται ἑκαστέρῳ τῆς Ἀττικῆς, ἀπίαςί τε  
 οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ, Μεγάροισί τε κερδανέομεν περιεούσι καὶ  
 Αἰγίνῃ καὶ Σαλαμῖνι, ἐν τῇ ἡμῖν καὶ λόγιόν ἐστι τῶν 5  
 ἐχθρῶν κατύπερθε γενέσθαι. οἰκότα μὲν νυν βουλευο-  
 μένοισι ἀνθρώποισι ὥς τὸ ἐπίπαν ἐθέλει γίνεσθαι· μὴ  
 δὲ οἰκότα βουλευομένοισι οὐκ ἐθέλει οὐδὲ ὁ θεὸς προσ-  
 61 χωρεῖν πρὸς τὰς ἀνθρωπείας γνώμας. ταῦτα λέγοντος  
 Θεμιστοκλέος αὐτῖς ὁ Κορίνθιος Ἀδείμαντος ἐπέφερετο,  
 σιγᾶν τε κελεύων τῷ μὴ ἔστι πατὴρ καὶ Εὐρυβιάδην  
 οὐκ ἔων ἐπιψηφίζειν ἀπόλι ἀνδρί· πόλιν γὰρ τὸν Θεμι-  
 στοκλέα παρεχόμενον οὕτω ἐκέλευε γνώμας συμβάλλε- 5

β 7. ὑπέκκειται: *have been carried out*. — 8. καὶ μὲν καὶ: *and further*. Syn. § 26. C. — ἐν αὐτοῖσι: *therein, i.e. in doing what I say*.

γ 4. Μεγάροισι: for the dat. cp. 7. 39. 15, 8. 60. α 12. — 5. λόγιον: the oracle is ambiguous as usual. See 7. 141. 23. — 6. γενέσθαι: on the tense see Syn. § 15. 4. C. — οἰκότα μὲν κτί.: *now, as a general rule reasonable plans are wont to succeed for men, but if they do not plan what is*

*reasonable neither will God come over to their views*. The subject of the first ἐθέλει lies in οἰκότα βουλευομένοισι. οὐδέ is also *not*, i.e. if man will not do his part, God also will not do his. Cp. 7. 50. 12.

61. 2. ἐπέφερετο: *attacked*. — 3. μὴ: on the neg. see Syn. § 19. 3. — 4. ἐπιψηφίζειν: *to give the floor to, not to give a vote to*. Cp. γνώμας συμβάλλεσθαι below. Eurybiades did not take a vote, but decided the matter him-

σθαι. ταῦτα δέ οἱ προέφερε, ὅτι ἡλώκεσάν τε καὶ κατεί-  
 χοντο Ἀθῆναι. τότε δὴ ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς κεινόν τε καὶ  
 τοὺς Κορινθίους πολλά τε καὶ κακὰ ἔλεγε, ἑωυτοῖσί τε  
 ἑδήλου λόγῳ ὡς εἴη καὶ πόλις καὶ γῆ μέζων ἢ περ ἐκεί-  
 νοισι, ἔστ' ἂν διηκόσiai νέες σφι ἔωσι πεπληρωμέναι ·<sup>10</sup>  
 οὐδαμὸν γὰρ Ἑλλήνων αὐτοὺς ἐπιόντας ἀποκρούσε-  
 62 σθαι. σημαίνων δὲ ταῦτα τῷ λόγῳ διέβαινε ἐς Εὐρυ-  
 βιάδην, λέγων μᾶλλον ἐπεστριμμένα · Σὺ εἰ μενεῖς  
 αὐτοῦ καὶ μένων ἔσεαι ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός · εἰ δὲ μή, ἀνατρέ-  
 ψεις τὴν Ἑλλάδα · τὸ πᾶν γὰρ ἡμῖν τοῦ πολέμου  
 φέρουσι αἱ νέες. ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ πείθεο. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὴ<sup>5</sup>  
 ποιήσης, ἡμεῖς μὲν ὡς ἔχομεν ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς οἰκέτας  
 κομιεόμεθα ἐς Σῆριν τὴν ἐν Ἰταλίῃ, ἣ περ ἡμετέρη τε  
 ἐστι ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἔτι, καὶ τὰ λόγια λέγει ὑπ' ἡμέων αὐτὴν  
 δεῖν κτισθῆναι · ὑμεῖς δὲ συμμάχων τοιῶνδε μουνωθέν-  
 63 τες μεμνήσεσθε τῶν ἐμῶν λόγων. ταῦτα δὲ Θεμιστο-

self; see 8. 63. 6. — 7. τότε δὴ: see 8. 60. 1. — 8. ἑωυτοῖσι: the pron. be-  
 longs with εἴη καὶ πόλις, but is put  
 forward for emphasis. — 10. διηκό-  
 σiai: the 20 Chalcidian ships  
 (8. 1. 6) are included.

62. 1. σημαίνων: pres. of an  
 action prior to that of the main  
 verb. — τῷ λόγῳ διέβαινε: *he*  
*crossed in speech* from A. to E.,  
*i.e. he turned to*. Cp. κατέβαινε  
 λέγων 1. 118. 6 *he closed with the*  
*statement*. — 2. ἐπεστριμμένα: *ear-*  
*nestly*. Pf. part. as adv. — εἰ  
 μενεῖς: the apod. of the first of two  
 contrasted condits. is not infre-

quently omitted. Cp. Hom. A. 135.  
 — 6. ποιήσης: see Syn. § 18. 1, 2.  
 — 7. τὴν ἐν Ἰτ.: as opposed to  
 that in Paeonia (8. 115. 17). —  
 ἡμετέρη: Siris was said to have  
 been colonized by the Ionians  
 of Colophon, or the Rhodians  
 (Strabo, 264). The Athenian  
 claim may be based upon their  
 relationship to the Ionians (8.  
 22. 6). — 8. ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἔτι: *even*  
*in olden times*. Cp. ἔοντες ἄνδρες  
 δόκιμοι ἀνέκαθεν ἔτι 5. 62. 16. —  
 αὐτήν: the pers. pron. instead  
 of repeating the rel. in a differ-  
 ent case. — 9. κτισθῆναι: Thuri,



κλέος λέγοντος ἀνεδιδάσκετο Εὐρυβιάδης · δοκεῖν δέ μοι, ἀρρωδήσας μάλιστα τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἀνεδιδάσκετο, μή σφεας ἀπολίπωσι, ἣν πρὸς τὸν Ἴσθμὸν ἀνάγη τὰς νέας · ἀπολιπόντων γὰρ Ἀθηναίων οὐκέτι ἐγίνοντο ἀξιο- 5  
μαχοὶ οἱ λοιποί. ταύτην δὲ αἰρεῖται τὴν γνώμην, αὐτοῦ  
64 μένοντας διαναυμαχεῖν. οὕτω μὲν οἱ περὶ Σαλαμίνα  
ἔπεσι ἀκροβολισάμενοι, ἐπεῖτε Εὐρυβιάδῃ ἔδοξε, αὐτοῦ  
παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς ναυμαχήσοντες. ἡμέρη τε ἐγίνετο  
καὶ ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ ἀνιόντι σεισμὸς ἐγένετο ἐν τε τῇ  
γῇ καὶ τῇ θαλάσσῃ. ἔδοξε δέ σφι εὖξασθαι τοῖσι 5  
θεοῖσι καὶ ἐπικαλέσασθαι τοὺς Αἰακίδας συμμάχους.  
ὥς δέ σφι ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐποίεον ταῦτα · εὖξάμενοι γὰρ πᾶσι  
τοῖσι θεοῖσι αὐτόθεν μὲν ἐκ Σαλαμῖνος Αἶαντά τε καὶ  
Τελαμῶνα ἐπεκαλέοντο, ἐπὶ δὲ Αἰακὸν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους  
Αἰακίδας νέα ἀπέστελλον ἐς Αἴγιναν. 10

65 Ἐφη δὲ Δίκαιος ὁ Θεοκύδεος ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖος, φυγὰς  
τε καὶ παρὰ Μήδοισι λόγιμος γενόμενος τοῦτον τὸν  
χρόνον, ἐπεῖτε ἐκείρετο ἡ Ἀττικὴ χώρα ὑπὸ τοῦ πεζοῦ  
στρατοῦ τοῦ Ξέρξεω, εὐῶσα ἔρημος Ἀθηναίων, τυχεῖν  
τότε ἔὼν ἅμα Δημαρήτῳ τῷ Λακεδαιμονίῳ ἐν τῷ Θρια- 5  
σίῳ πεδίῳ, ἰδεῖν δὲ κονιορτὸν χωρέοντα ἀπ' Ἐλευσίνος

which was colonized by Athens in 444 B C., is some 40 miles south of Siris. Hdt. himself joined the colony.

Phocus, and their descendants. The gods were believed to come in person; it is not implied that their statues were brought.

THE SIGNS AND WONDERS THAT  
PRECEDE THE BATTLE (CC. 64-  
65)

65. 2. τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον: defined by ἐπεῖτε ἐκείρετο κτέ. and repeated in τότε. — 5. Δημαρήτῳ: the exiled King of Sparta. Cp. 7. 3, 101 f., 234 f. — Θριασίῳ: the plain about Eleusis, stretching

64. 3. ἡμέρη τε . . . καί: cp. 8.  
56. 7. — 9. τοὺς ἄλλους: Peleus,

ὥς ἀνδρῶν μάλιστα κη τρισμυρίων, ἀποθωμάζειν τέ σφεας τὸν κονιορτὸν ὅτεών κοτε εἶη ἀνθρώπων, καὶ πρόκατε φωνῆς ἀκούειν, καὶ οἱ φαίνεσθαι τὴν φωνὴν εἶναι τὸν μυστικὸν ἱακχον. εἶναι δ' ἀδαήμονα τῶν<sup>10</sup> ἱρῶν τῶν ἐν Ἐλευσίνι γινομένων τὸν Δημάρητον, εἰρέσθαι τε αὐτὸν ὃ τι τὸ φθεγγόμενον εἶη τοῦτο. αὐτὸς δὲ εἰπεῖν· Δημάρητε, οὐκ ἔστι ὅκως οὐ μέγα τι σίνος ἔσται τῇ βασιλέος στρατιῇ. τάδε γὰρ ἀρίδηλα, ἐρήμου ἐούσης τῆς Ἀττικῆς, ὅτι θείον τὸ φθεγγόμενον, ἀπ' <sup>15</sup> Ἐλευσίνος ἰὰν ἐς τιμωρίην Ἀθηναίοισι τε καὶ τοῖσι συμμαχοῖσι. καὶ ἦν μὲν γε κατασκήψῃ ἐς τὴν Πελοπόννησον, κίνδυνος αὐτῷ τε βασιλεῖ καὶ τῇ στρατιῇ τῇ ἐν τῇ ἡπείρῳ ἔσται, ἣν δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς νέας τράπηται τὰς ἐν

to the east and north. — 7. **τρисμυρίων**: this is the number assigned to the citizens of Athens in 5. 97. 15, and it is natural to suppose that Hdt. had in mind the fact that the procession to Eleusis was followed by a large portion of the population (Ar. *Plut.* 1013). Others think the 30,000 to be the number of the initiated. The ignorance of Demaratus proves that at this time there could not have been many of the Greeks outside of Attica among the initiates. — 9. **πρόκατε**: **πρόκα** is probably a neut. plur. of an adj. **πρό-κος** derived from **πρό** (cp. Lat. *reci-procus*). For the **-τε** cp. Ion. **ἐπέι-τε**: **ἐπέι**. — **ἀκούειν**: impf. inf. Cp. **ἀποθωμάζειν**

and **φαίνεσθαι**. — 10. **ἱακχον**: Iacchus (who is quite distinct from Dionysus) was a god of the lower world, son of Zeus Chthonios and Demeter. His connection with the Eleusinian mysteries probably arose in Attica. Foucart thinks he may have been a personification of the cry **ἱακχε**. His temple was in Athens, and a figure of the god was carried in the great procession from Athens to Eleusis amid shouts of **ἱακχ' ὦ ἱακχε** (Ar. *Frogs*, 316 f.). Strabo, 10. 468, calls him **ὁ ἀρχηγέτης τῶν μυστηρίων**. As predicate to **φωνήν** the meaning of **ἱακχον** must be the *Iacchus-shout*. — **τῶν ἱρῶν**: the sacred rites. — 17. **κατασκήψῃ**: the subject is

Σαλαμῖνι, τὸν ναυτικὸν στρατὸν κινδυνεύσει βασιλεὺς 20  
 ἀποβαλεῖν. τὴν δὲ ὀρτὴν ταύτην ἄγουσι Ἀθηναῖοι  
 ἀνὰ πάντα ἔτεα τῇ Μητρὶ καὶ τῇ Κούρῃ, καὶ αὐτῶν τε  
 ὁ βουλόμενος καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων μυεῖται· καὶ  
 τὴν φωνὴν τῆς ἀκούεις ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ὀρτῇ ἰακχάζουσι.  
 πρὸς ταῦτα εἰπεῖν Δημάρητον· Σίγα τε καὶ μηδενὶ 25  
 ἄλλῳ τὸν λόγον τοῦτον εἴπῃς. ἦν γάρ τοι ἐς βασιλέα  
 ἀνευειχθῇ τὰ ἔπεα ταῦτα, ἀποβαλεῖς τὴν κεφαλὴν, καί  
 σε οὔτε ἐγὼ δυνήσομαι ρύσασθαι οὔτ' ἄλλος ἀνθρώπων  
 οὔδ' εἷς. ἀλλ' ἔχ' ἥσυχος, περὶ δὲ στρατιῆς τῆσδε  
 θεοῖσι μελήσει. τὸν μὲν δὴ ταῦτα παραινεῖν, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ 30  
 κονιορτοῦ καὶ τῆς φωνῆς γενέσθαι νέφος καὶ μεταρσιω-

the divine manifestation represented by *κονιορτόν* l. 6. — 21. *ὀρτήν*: the great Eleusinian festival occurred every year in the month Boedromion and lasted several days. On the 19th of the month the great procession took place, followed at night in Eleusis by the celebration of the mysteries, in part consisting of dramatic scenes and tableaux, representing the story of Demeter and Persephone, *the mother and daughter*. It is often assumed that the marvel described by Dicaeus occurred on the day before the battle, which would fix the date of Salamis on the 20th of Boedromion, *i.e.* about the 22d September. As a matter of fact Hdt. does not indicate when the vision was seen. It was *when the Attic*

*land was being ravaged by the army of Xerxes* (l. 3), and before the battle (l. 20). Probably Hdt. inserts the story here because in ch. 64 he has told of another marvel, the earthquake, and of the assistance hoped for from the Aeacidae, which suggests that given by the Eleusinian deities. The very abruptness with which the story begins and the lack of chronological connection indicates that the reason for its insertion here is the one indicated (Busolt, *Gr. Gesch.* 2. 704). Cp. note on 8. 26. 6. — 29. *ἔχ' ἥσυχος*: cp. *κάρτ' ἂν εἶχον ἡσυχώς* Eur. *Suppl.* 305. — *στρατιῆς τῆσδε*: on the omission of the article, see Syn. § 8. 6. — 30. *ἐκ*: *after*. — 31. *μεταρσιωθέν*: *raised aloft*. Aor. pass. part.

θὲν φέρεσθαι ἐπὶ Σαλαμῖνος ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. οὕτω δὴ αὐτοὺς μαθεῖν ὅτι τὸ ναυτικὸν τὸ Ξέρξεω ἀπολεῖσθαι μέλλοι. ταῦτα μὲν Δίκαιος ὁ Θεοκύδεος ἔλεγε, Δημαρχίου τε καὶ ἄλλων μαρτύρων καταπτόμενος.

- 66 Οἱ δὲ ἐς τὸν Ξέρξεω ναυτικὸν στρατὸν ταχθέντες, ἐπειδὴ ἐκ Τρηχῖνος θεησάμενοι τὸ τρῶμα τὸ Λακωνικὸν διέβησαν ἐς τὴν Ἰστιαίην, ἐπισχόντες ἡμέρας τρεῖς ἔπλεον δι' Εὐρίπου, καὶ ἐν ἐτέρῃσι τρισὶ ἡμέρησι ἐγένοντο ἐν Φαλήρῳ. ὥς μὲν ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, οὐκ ἐλάσσονες ἐόντες ἀριθμὸν ἐσέβαλον ἐς τὰς Ἀθήνας κατὰ τε ἡπειρον καὶ τῇσι νηυσὶ ἀπικόμενοι, ἣ ἐπὶ

THE PERSIAN FLEET ARRIVES AT PHALERUM. AFTER A CONSULTATION WITH THE GENERALS XERXES DECIDES UPON A NAVAL BATTLE, IN SPITE OF THE OPPOSITION OF ARTEMISIA (CC. 66-69)

66. 1. The movements of the Persian fleet are taken up from ch. 25.—3. *ἡμέρας τρεῖς*: on the day after the fall of Leonidas the Persian fleet sailed to Histiaea (8. 23). The next day was devoted to sight-seeing at Thermopylae (8. 25). If the day of their return to Histiaea (8. 25. 12) is not included in the three days' stop here mentioned, the arrival of the fleet at Athens took place at the end of the ninth day after the taking of Thermopylae. Accord-

ing to Busolt's reckoning this was about Sept. 9.—5. *Φαλήρῳ*: the Peiraeus was not at this time the chief harbor of Athens. Cp. *Φαλήρου*, τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐπίνειον τότε τῶν Ἀθηναίων 6. 116. 7. — *μὲν*: see Syn. § 26. a.—6. *ἐλάσσονες*: according to previous statements the Persians had lost 400 ships in the storm at Sepias (7. 190), 200 in the storm off Euboea (8. 7, 14), and 45 on the first day at Artemisium (7. 194, 8. 11). This makes a total loss of 645 exclusive of the large number disabled on the second and third days at Artemisium (8. 14, 16). It is of course utterly absurd to suppose that these losses could have been made up by the Islands. Their contingents would be small (cp. 8. 46), and seventeen ships from

τε Σηπιάδα ἀπίκοντο καὶ ἐς Θερμοπύλας. ἀντιθήσω γὰρ τοῖσί τε ὑπὸ τοῦ χειμῶνος αὐτῶν ἀπολομένοισι καὶ τοῖσι ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι καὶ τῇσι ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ ναυ- 10 μαχήνῃσι τούσδε τοὺς τότε οὐκω ἐπομένους βασιλεῖ, Μηλίας καὶ Δωριέας καὶ Λοκροὺς καὶ Βοιωτοὺς πανστρατιῇ ἐπομένους πλὴν Θεσπίων τε καὶ Πλαταιέων, καὶ μάλα Καρυστίους τε καὶ Ἀνδρίους καὶ Τηνίους τε καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς νησιώτας πάντας, πλὴν τῶν πέντε 15

the Islands have already been included in the formal numbering of the forces (7. 95. 1). It is to be observed that Hdt. does not say that the losses in *ships* were made up by the Islands. He seems rather to imply that the losses in *men* by land and sea together were compensated for by the gains. The 20,000 Persians killed at Thermopylae (8. 24. 5) could be replaced, perhaps, by the states mentioned, but hardly more than these. The exaggeration is so great that it is difficult to offer any excuse. — 8. Σηπιάδα: where the first losses occurred (7. 188). Note the chiasmic arrangement ἡπειρον . . . νησί . . . Σηπιάδα . . . Θερμοπύλας. — 9. χειμῶνος: the second storm in which 200 ships were destroyed off Euboea (8. 7, 14) is not mentioned. — 12. Μηλίας: it is strange that these are mentioned, since they lived north of the pass and must have fallen under the King's power before the

battle. Diod. Sic. 11. 4. 7 says that 1000 Melians joined Leonidas, though Hdt. omits them from his list (7. 202. 3). — Λοκροὺς: see 7. 203. 1, 8. 1. 11. — 14. μάλα: further. This use is not Att. The naval forces are thus separated from the land. — Καρυστίους: a town in southern Euboea. — 15. πέντε: six islands are mentioned in 8. 46, Keos, Naxos, Kythnos, Seriphos, Siphnos, and Melos. Stein and Abicht assume that Hdt. forgot Keos, but give no reason. Keos stands out from the others only because it alone was represented at Artemision (8. 1. 10). We might suppose Naxos to be the one omitted, since it at first submitted to the King (8. 46. 10), and the other five form a geographical group as the farthest west. But, since the bronze serpent of Delphi (8. 82. 5) contains but five names, omitting Seriphos, it is more likely that Hdt. had that fact in mind.

πολίων τῶν ἐπεμνήσθην πρότερον τὰ οὐνόματα. ὅσῳ  
 γὰρ δὴ προέβαινε ἐσωτέρῳ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ὁ Πέρσης,  
 67 τοσοῦτῳ πλέω ἔθνεά οἱ εἶπετο. ἐπεὶ ὦν ἀπικάτο ἐς  
 τὰς Ἀθήνας πάντες οὗτοι πλὴν Παρίων (Πάριοι δὲ  
 ὑπολειφθέντες ἐν Κύθνῳ ἐκαραδόκεον τὸν πόλεμον κῆ  
 ἀποβήσεται), οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ὡς ἀπίκοντο ἐς τὸ Φάληρον,  
 ἐνθαῦτα κατέβη αὐτοὺς Ξέρξης ἐπὶ τὰς νέας, ἐθέλων σφί 5  
 συμμῖξαι τε καὶ πυθέσθαι τῶν ἐπιπλεόντων τὰς γνώμας.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπικόμενος προῖζετο, παρήσαν μετάπεμπτοι οἱ  
 τῶν ἐθνέων τῶν σφετέρων τύραννοι καὶ ταξίαρχοι ἀπὸ  
 τῶν νεῶν, καὶ ἴζοντο ὥς σφι βασιλεὺς ἐκάστῳ τιμὴν  
 ἐδεδώκει, πρῶτος μὲν ὁ Σιδώνιος [βασιλεὺς], μετὰ δὲ ὁ 10  
 Τύριος, ἐπὶ δὲ ὄλλοι. ὥς δὲ κόσμῳ ἐπεξῆς ἴζοντο,  
 πέμψας Ξέρξης Μαρδόνιον εἰρώτα ἀποπειρώμενος ἐκά-  
 68 στου εἰ ναυμαχίην ποιεοίτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ περιῶν εἰρώτα ὁ  
 Μαρδόνιος ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τοῦ Σιδωνίου, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι  
 κατὰ τῶντὸ γνώμην ἐξεφέροντο, κελεύοντες ναυμαχίην  
 α ποιεῖσθαι, Ἀρτεμισίη δὲ τάδε ἔφη· Εἰπεῖν μοι πρὸς  
 βασιλέα, Μαρδόνιε, ὥς ἐγὼ τάδε λέγω, οὔτε κακίστη  
 γενομένη ἐν τῇσι ναυμαχίησι τῇσι πρὸς Εὐβοίῃ οὔτε

67. 1. ἀπικάτο: 3 pl. plupf. Dial. § 4. 3. — 3. ὑπολειφθέντες: *remaining behind*. Cp. 8. 44. 10. — 4. οἱ δὲ: resumptive. Cp. 7. 95. 9, 7. 141. 11. — 6. τῶν ἐπιπλεόντων: only the chief captains are meant. Cp. 7. 98. 1 and l. 8 below. — 7. οἱ . . . τύραννοι: *those who were despots of their nations*. — 8. ταξίαρχοι: *commanders of squadrons*; of naval officers also in 7. 99. 1.

— 9. ὥς: *as, i.e. in what order*. Cp. 8. 2. 3, 8. 21. 13. — 10. Σιδώνιος: the Sidonians furnished the best ships (7. 96. 3). — 11. ὄλλοι: οἱ ἄλλοι. — 13. ποιεοίτο: indirect form of a delib. subjunct.

68. 3. κατὰ τῶντὸ: *to the same effect*. — 4. Ἀρτεμισίη: see 7. 99. α 1. εἰπεῖν: imperat. use. S. 2013; HA. 957; B. 644; G. 1536. — μοι: *I pray thee*. Ethical dat.

ἐλάχιστα ἀποδεξαμένη. δέσποτα, τὴν δὲ ἐοῦσαν γνώ-  
μην με δίκαιόν ἐστιν ἀποδείκνυσθαι, τὰ τυγχάνω φρο- 5  
νέουσα ἄριστα ἐς πρήγματα τὰ σά. καὶ τοι τάδε  
λέγω, φείδεο τῶν νεῶν μηδὲ ναυμαχίην ποιέο· οἱ γὰρ  
ἄνδρες τῶν σῶν ἀνδρῶν κρέσσονες τοσοῦτό εἰσι κατὰ  
θάλασσαν ὅσον ἄνδρες γυναικῶν. τί δὲ πάντως δεῖ σε  
ναυμαχίῃσι ἀνακινδυνεύειν; οὐκ ἔχεις μὲν τὰς Ἀθή- 10  
νας, τῶν περ εἵνεκα ὁρμήθης στρατεύεσθαι, ἔχεις δὲ τὴν  
ἄλλην Ἑλλάδα; ἐμποδὼν δέ τοι ἴσταται οὐδεὶς· οἱ δέ  
β τοι ἀντέστησαν, ἀπήλλαξαν οὕτω ὡς κείνους ἔπρεπε. τῇ  
δὲ ἐγὼ δοκέω ἀποβήσεσθαι τὰ τῶν ἀντιπολέμων πρήγ-  
ματα, τοῦτο φράσω· ἦν μὲν μὴ ἐπειχθῆς ναυμαχίην  
ποιεόμενος, ἀλλὰ τὰς νέας αὐτοῦ ἔχῃς πρὸς γῇ μένων ἢ  
καὶ προβαίνων ἐς τὴν Πελοπόννησον, εὐπετέως τοι, 5  
δέσποτα, χωρήσει τὰ νοέων ἐλήλυθας. οὐ γὰρ οἰοί τε  
πολλὸν χρόνον εἰσὶ τοι ἀντέχειν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ  
σφεας διασκεδᾷς, κατὰ πόλιν δὲ ἕκαστοι φεύξονται.  
οὔτε γὰρ σῦτος πάρα σφι ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ταύτῃ, ὡς ἐγὼ  
πυνθάνομαι, οὔτε αὐτοὺς οἰκός, ἦν σὺ ἐπὶ τὴν Πελοπόν- 10  
νησον ἐλαύνῃς τὸν πεζὸν στρατόν, ἀτρεμειν τοὺς ἐκεῖ-

— 4. ἀποδεξαμένη: Dial. § 1. ii. 2.

— δέ: cp. 7. 141. 23, and ὡ ξείνῃ  
Ἀθηναίῃς, ἣ δ' ἡμετέρῃ κτέ. 1. 32. 2.

— ἐοῦσαν: Artemisia implies that  
the rest had not given their real  
opinion; the contrast is suggested  
by δέ. Cp. 8. 137. 22, 8. 142.  
3. — 5. τὰ τυγχάνω κτέ.: explana-  
tory of γνώμην. — 6. καὶ τοι: with-  
out the Att. adversative force. —

9. πάντως: at all. — 10. ἀνακινδυν-  
εύειν: run a risk. There is no idea  
of repetition in ἀνα-. Cp. 8. 100.  
8. — 13. ἀπήλλαξαν κτέ.: got their  
deserts. With ἀπήλλαξαν came off  
cp. ἀπαλλαγῇ 8. 39. 10.

β 3. ἦν μὲν: the contrasted  
idea is in γ 1; there ἐπειχθῆς is fol-  
lowed by the more common infin.  
— 4. πρὸς γῇ: with μένων. —  
6. χωρήσει: will come, happen. —  
10. οἰκός: Att. εἰκός. — 11. τοὺς

— 4. ἀποδεξαμένη: Dial. § 1. ii. 2.  
— δέ: cp. 7. 141. 23, and ὡ ξείνῃ  
Ἀθηναίῃς, ἣ δ' ἡμετέρῃ κτέ. 1. 32. 2.  
— ἐοῦσαν: Artemisia implies that  
the rest had not given their real  
opinion; the contrast is suggested  
by δέ. Cp. 8. 137. 22, 8. 142.  
3. — 5. τὰ τυγχάνω κτέ.: explana-  
tory of γνώμην. — 6. καὶ τοι: with-  
out the Att. adversative force. —  
9. πάντως: at all. — 10. ἀνακινδυν-  
εύειν: run a risk. There is no idea  
of repetition in ἀνα-. Cp. 8. 100.  
8. — 13. ἀπήλλαξαν κτέ.: got their  
deserts. With ἀπήλλαξαν came off  
cp. ἀπαλλαγῇ 8. 39. 10.

θεν αὐτῶν ἤκοντας, οὐδέ σφι μελήσει πρὸ τῶν Ἀθηνέων  
 ναυμαχεῖν. ἦν δὲ αὐτίκα ἐπειχθῆς ναυμαχῆσαι, δει-  
 μαίνω μὴ ὁ ναυτικὸς στρατὸς κακῶθεις τὸν πεζὸν  
 προσδηλήσῃται. πρὸς δέ, ὦ βασιλεῦ, καὶ τόδε ἐς  
 θυμὸν βάλεο, ὡς τοῖσι μὲν χρηστοῖσι τῶν ἀνθρώπων  
 κακοὶ δούλοι φιλέουσι γίνεσθαι, τοῖσι δὲ κακοῖσι χρη-  
 στοί. σοὶ δὲ ἔόντι ἀρίστῳ ἀνδρῶν πάντων κακοὶ δούλοί  
 εἰσι, οἱ ἐν συμμάχων λόγῳ λέγονται εἶναι, ἔοντες Αἰγύπ-  
 τιοὶ τε καὶ Κύπριοι καὶ Κίλικες καὶ Πάμφυλοι, τῶν  
 69 ὄφελός ἐστι οὐδέν. ταῦτα λεγούσης πρὸς Μαρδόνιον,  
 ὅσοι μὲν ἦσαν εὐνοοὶ τῇ Ἀρτεμισίῃ, συμφορὴν ἐποιέοντο  
 τοὺς λόγους ὡς κακὸν τι πεισομένης πρὸς βασιλέως,  
 ὅτι οὐκ ἔα ναυμαχίην ποιεῖσθαι· οἱ δὲ ἀγαιόμενοί τε  
 καὶ φθονέοντες αὐτῇ, ἅτε ἐν πρώτοισι τετιμημένης διὰ  
 5 πάντων τῶν συμμάχων, ἐτέρποντο τῇ ἀνακρίσει ὡς ἀπο-  
 λεομένης αὐτῆς. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνηνείχθησαν αἱ γνώμαι ἐς  
 Ξέρξην, κάρτα τε ἦσθη τῇ γνώμῃ τῇ Ἀρτεμισίης,  
 καὶ νομίζων ἔτι πρότερον σπουδαίην εἶναι τότε πολλῶ  
 μᾶλλον αἶνει. ὅμως δὲ τοῖσι πλέοσι πείθεσθαι ἐκέλευε, 10

ἐκείθεν κτλ.: limits αὐτοῦς above.  
 On the position of αὐτῶν see Syn.  
 8. 12.

γ 5. τοῖσι δὲ κακοῖσι χρηστοί:  
 inserted for the rhetorical effect of  
 the antithesis. For other rhetori-  
 cal devices in this speech cp. the  
 questions and anaphora in α 9 f.  
 Gnomic thoughts, like this, are  
 much affected in early oratory.—  
 7. ἔοντες Αἰγύπτιοι: I mean the  
 Egyptians.

69. 3. ὡς: cp. ll. 6, 12 and ἀτε  
 1. 5. See S. 2086; HA. 977-8; B.  
 656; G. 1574-5.—πρὸς: at the  
 hands of. κακὸν πάσχειν has pass.  
 force.—4. ἔα: more freq. opt. or  
 impf. ind. GMT. 714, 715.—5. τετι-  
 μημένης: gen. abs. instead of agree-  
 ing with αὐτῇ.—διά: cp. 8. 37. 13.  
 —6. ἀνακρίσει: opposition. Cp.  
 τοὺς δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀνακρινομένους πρὸς  
 ἑωυτούς (answering each other  
 back) 9. 56. 2.—9. ἔτι: cp. 8.



τάδε καταδόξας, πρὸς μὲν Εὐβοίῃ σφέας ἐθелоκακεῖν ὥς οὐ παρεόντος αὐτοῦ, τότε δὲ αὐτὸς παρεσκευάστο θεήσασθαι ναυμαχέοντας.

- 70 Ἐπεὶ δὲ παρήγγελλον ἀναπλεῖν, ἀνῆγον τὰς νέας ἐπὶ τὴν Σαλαμῖνα, καὶ παρεκρίθησαν διαταχθέντες κατ' ἡσυχίην. τότε μὲν νυν οὐκ ἐξέχρησέ σφι ἡ ἡμέρη ναυμαχίην ποιήσασθαι· νύξ γὰρ ἐπεγένετο· οἱ δὲ παρεσκευάζοντο ἐς τὴν ὑστεραίην. τοὺς δὲ Ἕλληνας εἶχε δέος τε καὶ ἀρρωδία, οὐκ ἤκιστα δὲ τοὺς ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου· ἀρρώδεον δέ, ὅτι αὐτοὶ μὲν ἐν Σαλαμῖνι κατήμενοι ὑπὲρ γῆς τῆς Ἀθηναίων ναυμαχεῖν μέλλοιεν, νικηθέντες τε ἐν νήσῳ ἀπολαμφθέντες πολιορκήσονται, ἀπέντες τὴν ἐωυτῶν ἀφύλακτον· τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων ὁ πεζὸς ὑπὸ τὴν παρεούσαν νύκτα ἐπορεύετο  
71 ἐπὶ τὴν Πελοπόννησον· καίτοι τὰ δυνατὰ πάντα ἐμεμηχάνητο ὅκως κατ' ἡπειρον μὴ ἐσβάλοιεν οἱ βάρβαροι. ὥς γὰρ ἐπύθοντο τάχιστα Πελοποννήσιοι τοὺς ἀμφὶ Λεωνίδην ἐν Θερμοπύλῃσι τετελευτηκέναι, συνδραμόντες ἐκ τῶν πολίων ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμὸν ἵζοντο, καὶ σφι

62. 8. — 12. τότε δέ: not parallel in construction to the μὲν-clause.

THE PERSIAN FLEET PUTS OUT FOR SALAMIS. THE DISMAY OF THE PELOPONNESIANS (CC. 70-71)

70. 4. οἱ δέ: cp. 8. 40. 10. — 9. μᾶλλον: for the opt. in a causal clause, see S. 2242; H<sup>A</sup>. 925; B. 598; G. 1506. The parallel δέ-clause is left independent: *they*

*feared because the barbarian had started on his march, while they (as they reflected) were going to be shut up, etc.* — 10. ἀπέντες: this expresses the result of ἀπολαμφθέντες πολιορκήσονται, while the *being shut up* is the result of the condit. νικηθέντες. — 11. ὑπὸ τὴν παρεούσαν νύκτα: see Syn. § 5. For the imperf. ἐπορεύετο with such a temporal phrase, see GS. 206.

71. 1. καίτοι: *and yet*. It is

ἐπὴν στρατηγὸς Κλεόμβροτος ὁ Ἀναξανδρίδew, Λew-  
 νίδew δὲ ἀδελφεός. ἰζόμενοι δὲ ἐν τῷ Ἴσθμῳ καὶ  
 συγχώσαντες τὴν Σκιρωνίδα ὁδόν, μετὰ τοῦτο ὥς σφι  
 ἔδοξε βουλευομένοισι, οἰκοδόμεον διὰ τοῦ Ἴσθμοῦ τεῖ-  
 χος. αἶτε δὲ ἐουσέων μυριάδων πολλέων καὶ παντὸς 10  
 ἀνδρὸς ἐργαζομένου ἦνετο τὸ ἔργον· καὶ γὰρ λίθοι  
 καὶ πλίνθοι καὶ ξύλα καὶ φορμοὶ ψάμμου πλήρεις  
 ἐσεφορέοντο, καὶ ἐλίννον οὐδένα χρόνον οἱ βοηθή-  
 72 σαντες ἐργαζόμενοι, οὔτε νυκτὸς οὔτε ἡμέρης. οἱ δὲ  
 βοηθήσαντες ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμόν πανδημεὶ οἶδε ἦσαν Ἑλλή-  
 νων, Λακεδαιμόνιοί τε καὶ Ἀρκάδες πάντες καὶ Ἡλεῖοι  
 καὶ Κορίνθιοι καὶ Σικυώνιοι καὶ Ἐπιδαύριοι καὶ Φλιά-  
 σιοι καὶ Τροιζήνιοι καὶ Ἑρμιονεῖς. οὗτοι μὲν ἦσαν οἱ 5  
 βοηθήσαντες καὶ ὑπεραρρωδέοντες τῇ Ἑλλάδι κινδυ-  
 νεύουσα· τοῖσι δὲ ἄλλοισι Πελοποννησίοισι ἔμελε  
 οὐδέν. Ὀλύμπια δὲ καὶ Κάρνεια παροιχώκει ἤδη.

implied that the fear was ground-  
 less. — 6. *Λewνίδew δέ*: see 8. 23.  
 11. — 8. *Σκιρωνίδα*: for a consid-  
 erable distance the road passed  
 along a narrow ledge with a moun-  
 tain wall on one side, and a de-  
 scent of 600 or 700 feet on the  
 other; it was therefore very easy  
 to block it up. — 9. *τεῖχος*: ac-  
 cording to Diod. Sic. 11. 16 the  
 wall ran "for forty stades from  
 Lechaëum as far as Cenchreæ."  
 The remains are still to be seen.  
 — 11. *ἦνετο*: *was coming to a*  
*completion*. — 12. *ξύλα*: for pali-  
 sades.

THE PELOPONNESIAN STATES THAT  
 TOOK PART IN THE WORK.  
 THE ORIGIN OF THESE RACES  
 (CC. 72-73)

72. 3. *Ἀρκάδες πάντες*: Tegea  
 and Orchomenus were the only  
 Arcadian states present at Plataea  
 (9. 28. 7, 13); at Thermopylae  
 there were also some Mantineans  
 and others (7. 202). — 6. *Ἑλλάδι*:  
 for the dat. instead of the gen. cp.  
*περίειδαισα c. dat.*, and *περὶ ἐωντῷ*  
*δειμαίνοντα* 3. 35. 16, 8. 74. 5. —  
 8. *Ὀλύμπια κτ.*: these feasts had  
 delayed the march of the full force

73 Οἰκεῖ δὲ τὴν Πελοπόννησον ἔθνεα ἑπτὰ. τούτων δὲ τὰ μὲν δύο αὐτόχθονα ἔοντα κατὰ χώραν ἱδρύται νῦν τῇ καὶ τὸ πάλαι οἶκεον, Ἀρκάδες τε καὶ Κυνούριοι. ἔν δὲ ἔθνος τὸ Ἀχαιϊκὸν ἐκ μὲν Πελοποννήσου οὐκ ἐξεχώρησε, ἐκ μέντοι τῆς ἑωυτῶν, οἰκεῖ δὲ τὴν ἄλλο- 5 τρήν. τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ ἔθνεα τῶν ἑπτὰ τέσσερα ἐπήλυδά ἐστι, Δωριεῖς τε καὶ Αἰτωλοὶ καὶ Δρύοπες καὶ Λήμνιοι. Δωριέων μὲν πολλαὶ τε καὶ δόκιμοι πόλεις, Αἰτωλῶν δὲ Ἥλις μούνη, Δρυόπων δὲ Ἑρμιῶν τε καὶ Ἀσίνη ἡ πρὸς Καρδαμύλῃ τῇ Λακωνικῇ, Λημνίων δὲ Παρωρεῖται 10 πάντες. οἱ δὲ Κυνούριοι αὐτόχθονες ἔοντες δοκέουσι μῦνοι εἶναι Ἴωνες, ἐκδεδωρίενται δὲ ὑπὸ τε Ἀργείων ἀρχόμενοι καὶ τοῦ χρόνου, ἔοντες Ὀρνεῖται καὶ περιόι-

to Thermopylae (7. 206). In this year the Olympic games were celebrated on Aug. 17-20, and the Karnean festival was concluded about the same time, so that work on the wall had been going on now for about a month.

73. 2. τὰ μὲν δύο: for the art. with a numeral which is part of a larger number, see S. 1125; HA. 664; G. 948. — κατὰ χώραν: cp. 8. 78. 4, 8. 108. 2. — ἱδρύται . . . οἶκεον: the second verb is in the plur. on account of Ἀρκάδες τε καὶ Κυνούριοι. — 3. Κυνούριοι: their land lies between Laconia, Arcadia, and Argolis. — 5. τὴν ἄλλοτρήν: *the land of another people*. The art. is used as in τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν. In 1. 145 we are told that the

Achaean drove out the Ionians.

— 6. τέσσερα: sc. ἔοντα; cp. 8.

122. 8. — 7. Δρύοπες: cp. 8. 43. 9.

— Λήμνιοι: according to 4. 145 the original inhabitants of Lemnos were Minyans, who had been driven out by Pelasgians.

— 10. Παρωρεῖται: the inhabitants of Lepreon, Makistos, and other towns of Triphylia in Elis (4. 148). παρώρεια is properly a *mountain side*. — 12. ἐκδεδωρίενται: pf. of ἐκδωρίεω (: Δωριεύς).

Verbs in -εω are not factitive, though βασιλεύω is so used in the Septuagint. The reading is uncertain. Translate: *they have been made thorough Dorians both by the Argives, to whom they are subject, and by time*. — 13. Ὀρνεῖ-

κοι. τούτων ὧν τῶν ἐπταῖ ἐθνέων αἱ λοιπαὶ πόλεις,   
 παρέξ τῶν κατέλεξα, ἐκ τοῦ μέσου κατέατο· εἰ δὲ ἔλεν-   
 15 θέρως ἔξεστι εἰπεῖν, ἐκ τοῦ μέσου κατήμενοι ἐμῆδιζον.

74 Οἱ μὲν δὴ ἐν τῷ Ἰσθμῷ τοιούτῳ πόνῳ συνέστασαν,   
 ἅτε περὶ τοῦ παντὸς ἤδη δρόμῳ θεόντες καὶ τῇσι νηυσὶ   
 οὐκ ἐλπίζοντες ἐλλάμψεσθαι· οἱ δὲ ἐν Σαλαμῖνι ὁμως   
 ταῦτα πυνθανόμενοι ἀρρώδεον, οὐκ οὕτω περὶ σφίσι   
 αὐτοῖσι δειμαίνοντες ὡς περὶ τῇ Πελοποννήσῳ. τέως   
 5 μὲν δὴ αὐτῶν ἀνὴρ ἀνδρὶ παραστὰς σιγῇ λόγον ἐποιεῖτο,   
 θῶμα ποιούμενοι τὴν Εὐρυβιάδew ἀβουλίην· τέλος δὲ   
 ἐξερράγη ἐς τὸ μέσον. σύλλογός τε δὴ ἐγίνετο καὶ   
 πολλὰ ἐλέγετο περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν, οἱ μὲν ὡς ἐς τὴν Πελο-   
 πόννησον χρεὸν εἶη ἀποπλεῖν καὶ περὶ ἐκείνης κινδυν-   
 10 νεύειν, μηδὲ πρὸς χώρης δοριαλώτου μένοντας μάχεσθαι,   
 Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ καὶ Αἰγινῆται καὶ Μεγαρεῖς αὐτοῦ μένον-

ται: the name meant among the Argives the same as *περίοικοι* among the Lacedaemonians. It was derived from a town Ὀρνεαί, northwest of Argos, the early inhabitants of which had been subdued and deprived of civil rights. — 15. ἐκ τοῦ μέσου κατέατο: cp. 8. 22. 9. Att. καθήντο.

THE GREEKS AGAIN DISCUSS A RETREAT FROM SALAMIS. THE DEVICE OF THEMISTOCLES TO PREVENT THIS CAUSES FURTHER MOVEMENTS OF THE PERSIANS. THE FULFILLMENT OF AN ORACLE (CC. 74-77)

74. 1. συνέστασαν: were strug-

gling with; plupf. Cp. 7. 170. 9. — 2. περὶ τοῦ παντὸς κτέ.: *running a race with their all at stake*. — 3. ἐλλάμψεσθαι: *shine, distinguish themselves*. — 4. ταῦτα: that the wall was being built. — ἀρρώδεον: the narrative is taken up from 70. 7. — περὶ: Syn. § 5. — σφίσι αὐτοῖσι: Syn. § 10. 2. — 7. θῶμα ποιούμενοι: c. gen. 7. 99. 2. θαυμάζω also has the double constr. — 8. ἐξερράγη: impers.; *there was an open outbreak* of the dissatisfaction. — 9. περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν: *the same things* as had been discussed before. — οἱ μὲν: as if πολλὰ ἔλεγον preceded. — 10. περὶ ἐκείνης: cp. l. 5. — 12. Ἀθηναῖοι κτέ.:

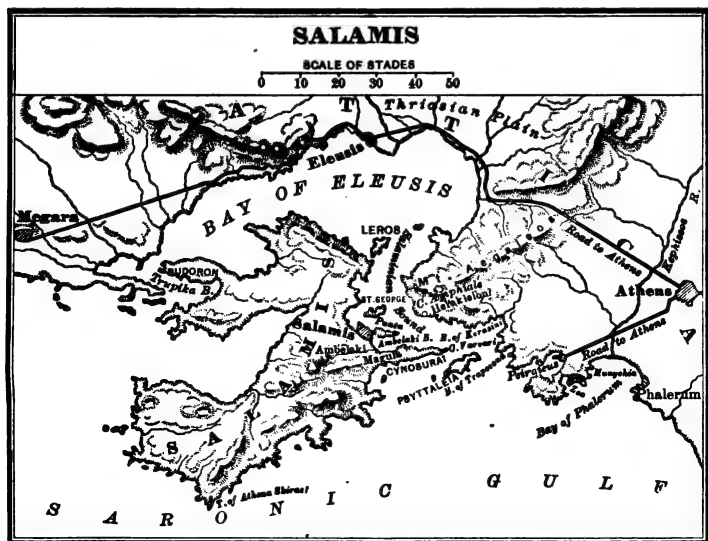
75 τας ἀμύνεσθαι. ἐνθαῦτα Θεμιστοκλέης ὡς ἔσσοῦτο τῇ γνώμῃ ὑπὸ τῶν Πελοποννησίων, λαθὼν ἐξέρχεται ἐκ τοῦ συνεδρίου, ἐξελθὼν δὲ πέμπει ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον τὸ Μήδων ἄνδρα πλοῖψ, ἐντειλάμενος τὰ λέγειν χρεόν, τῷ οὔνομα μὲν ἦν Σίκιννος, οἰκέτης δὲ καὶ παιδαγωγὸς ἦν 5 τῶν Θεμιστοκλέος παίδων· τὸν δὲ ὕστερον τούτων τῶν πρηγμάτων Θεμιστοκλέης Θεσπιέα τε ἐποίησε, ὡς ἐπεδέκοντο οἱ Θεσπιεῖς πολίητας, καὶ χρήμασι ὄλβιον. ὃς τότε πλοῖψ ἀπικόμενος ἔλεγε πρὸς τοὺς στρατηγούς τῶν βαρβάρων τάδε· Ἐπεμψέ με στρατηγὸς ὁ Ἀθηναίων 10 λάθρῃ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων (τυγχάνει γὰρ φρονέων τὰ βασιλέος καὶ βουλόμενος μᾶλλον τὰ ὑμέτερα κατύπερθε γίνεσθαι ἢ τὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πρήγματα) φράσσοντα ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες δρησμὸν βουλευνται καταρρωδικότες, καὶ νῦν παρέχει κάλλιστον ὑμέας ἔργον ἀπάντων ἐξεργά- 15 σασθαι, ἣν μὴ περιύδητε διαδράντας αὐτούς. οὔτε γὰρ ἀλλήλοισι ὁμοφρονέουσι οὔτ' ἔτι ἀντιστήσονται ὑμῖν, πρὸς ἑωυτούς τε σφέας ὄψεσθε ναυμαχέοντας

because their homes would be at the mercy of the enemy if the fleet withdrew to the Isthmus. Cp. Αἰγινήται δὲ καὶ Μεγαρεῖς τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας ἀνεπλήρουν· οὔτοι γὰρ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ναυτικώτατοι μετὰ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους καὶ μάλιστα φιλοτιμήσεσθαι διὰ τὸ μόνους τῶν Ἑλλήνων μηδεμίαν ἔχειν καταφυγὴν, εἰ τι συμβαίῃ πταῖσμα κατὰ τὴν συμμαχίαν Diod. Sic. 11. 18. 2.

75. 1. ἔσσοῦτο τῇ γνώμῃ: cp. γνώμῃσι νικᾶν 3. 82. 13. — 2. λαθὼν ἐξέρχεται: GMT. 893. — 7. ἐποίησε:

had him made. — ἐπεδέκοντο: the Thespians lost 700 hoplites at Thermopylae (7. 202, 222). Only 1800 citizens were left at the time of the battle of Plataea (9. 30). — 9. τότε: in contrast to ὕστερον 1. 7. — 15. παρέχει: *it is possible*; c. dat. 8. 8. 8, 8. 30. 7. — 16. περιύδητε διαδράντας: *permit their escape*. The aor. partic. denotes the simple occurrence of the act. GMT. 148. Cp. 7. 168. 6 for pres. partic., 7. 16. a 6 for pres. infin. with περιωρᾶν. GMT. 903. 6. — 18. ἑωυτούς: = ἄλ-

76 τοὺς τὰ ὑμέτερα φρονέοντας καὶ τοὺς μῆ. ὁ μὲν ταυτὰ σφι σημήνας ἐκποδὼν ἀπαλλάσσετο· τοῖσι δὲ ὡς πιστὰ ἐγίνετο τὰ ἀγγελλθέντα, τοῦτο μὲν ἐς τὴν νησιῦδα τὴν



[Ψυττάλειαν] μεταξύ Σαλαμῖνός τε κειμένην καὶ τῆς ἡπείρου πολλοὺς τῶν Περσέων ἀπεβίβασαν· τοῦτο δέ, 5 ἐπειδὴ ἐγίνοντο μέσαι νύκτες, ἀνήγον μὲν τὸ ἀπ' ἐσπέρης κέρας κυκλούμενοι πρὸς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα, ἀνήγον δὲ οἱ ἀμφὶ τὴν Κέον τε καὶ τὴν Κυνόσουραν τεταγμένοι,

λήλους. — 19. τοὺς . . . φρονέοντας: explaining σφέας.

76. 5. πολλούς: the noblest of the Persians, according to Aesch. *Persae* 441 ff. — 6. μέσαι νύκτες: Aeschylus makes the messenger

reach the Persians before sun-down, and the movements take place when darkness has come (*Persae* 377). — 7. κέρας: subject of ἀνήγον. — κυκλούμενοι: in an encircling movement. — 8. Κυνό-

κατεῖχόν τε μέχρι Μουνυχίης πάντα τὸν πορθμὸν τῆσι  
 νηυσί. τῶνδε εἵνεκα ἀνῆγον τὰς νέας, ἵνα δὴ τοῖσι 10  
 Ἕλλησι μὴδὲ φυγεῖν ἐξῆ, ἀλλ' ἀπολαμφθέντες ἐν τῇ  
 Σαλαμῶνι δοῖεν τίσιν τῶν ἐπ' Ἀρτεμισίῳ ἀγωνισμάτων.  
 ἐς δὲ τὴν νησίδα τὴν Ψυττάλειαν καλεομένην ἀπεβίβα-  
 ζον τῶν Περσέων τῶνδε εἵνεκα, ὥς ἐπεὰν γίνηται ναυμα-  
 χίη, ἐνθαῦτα μάλιστα ἐξοισομένων τῶν τε ἀνδρῶν καὶ 15  
 τῶν ναυηγίων (ἐν γὰρ δὴ πόρῳ [τῆς] ναυμαχίης τῆς  
 μελλούσης ἔσσεσθαι ἔκειτο ἡ νῆσος), ἵνα τοὺς μὲν περι-  
 ποιέωσι, τοὺς δὲ διαφθείρωσι. ἐποίεον δὲ σιγῇ ταῦτα,  
 ὥς μὴ πυνθανοῖατο οἱ ἐναντίοι. οἱ μὲν δὲ ταῦτα τῆς  
 νυκτὸς οὐδὲν ἀποκοιμηθέντες παραρτέοντο. 20

77 Χρησμοῖσι δὲ οὐκ ἔχω ἀντιλέγειν ὥς οὐκ εἰσὶ ἀλη-  
 θεῖς, οὐ βουλόμενος ἐναργέως λέγοντας πειρᾶσθαι κατα-  
 βάλλειν, ἐς τοιάδε ῥήματα ἐσβλέψας.

Ἄλλ' ὅταν Ἀρτέμιδος χρυσαόρου ἱερὸν ἀκτὴν  
 νηυσὶ γεφυρώσωσι καὶ εἰναλίην Κυνόσουραν, 5  
 ἐλπίδι μαινομένη λιπαρὰς πέρσαντες Ἀθήνας,  
 δῖα Δίκη σβέσσει κρατερὸν Κόρον, Ὑβριος υἱόν,

σουραν: supposed to be the long point of Salamis stretching eastward toward Psyttaeia. There was a Cynosura at Marathon. Keos is not known. — 15. ἐξοισομένων: cp. 8. 49. 12. — 16. πόρῳ: if the Greeks attempted to escape as reported, the island would be in the center of the fight. πόρος is either a *way of passing*, as the *ford* of a river, or a *strait*. Here it may be either the place over

which the battle was to rage backward and forward, or the *strait* (picturesquely viewed) between the two lines of ships.

77. 3. ῥήματα: MSS. πρήγματα. — 4. Ἀρτέμιδος . . . ἀκτὴν: the peninsula of Munychia. — 5. γεφυρώσωσι: usually with accus. of place bridged, here of the points connected. — 7. υἱόν: cp. ὕβριν κόρου μάτερᾱ Pindar, *Ol.* 13. 10; but τίκτε κόρος ὕβριν Solon, *Fr.* 8;

δεωνὸν μαιμώνοντα, δοκεῦντ' ἀνὰ πάντα πιθέσθαι.  
 Χαλκὸς γὰρ χαλκῷ συμμίσχεται, αἵματι δ' Ἄρης  
 πόντον φοινίξει. τότε ἑλεύθερον Ἑλλάδος ἡμάρ 10  
 εὐρύοπα Κρονίδης ἐπάγει καὶ πότνια Νίκη.

ἐς τοιαῦτα μὲν καὶ οὕτω ἐναργέως λέγοντι Βάκιδι ἀντι-  
 λογίας χρησμῶν περί οὔτε αὐτὸς λέγειν τολμῶ οὔτε  
 παρ' ἄλλων ἐνδέκομαι.

78 Τῶν δὲ ἐν Σαλαμῖνι στρατηγῶν ἐγένετο ὠθισμὸς  
 λόγων πολλός. ἦδεσαν δὲ οὐκ ὅτι σφέας περιεκυ-  
 κλοῦντο τῇσι νηυσὶ οἱ βάρβαροι, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ τῆς ἡμέ-  
 ρης ὥρων αὐτοὺς τεταγμένους, ἐδόκεον κατὰ χώραν  
 79 εἶναι. συνεστηκότων δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐξ Αἰγίνης  
 διέβη Ἀριστείδης ὁ Λυσιμάχου, ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖος μὲν,

Theognis 153. — 8. **πιθέσθαι**: the reading is corrupt. — 12. **ἐς τοιαῦτα κτέ.**: the passage is difficult. Does **τοιαῦτα** refer to the verses or to events (? **πρήγματα** or **ρήματα** in l. 3)? Does **ἐς τοιαῦτα** belong with **λέγειν** (cp. 9. 43. 3, 4, 11; 7. 130. 13) or should we insert **ἐσβλέψας** from l. 3 (cp. Stein)? Is **Βάκιδι** a dat. of interest (cp. **ποιήσαντι Φρυγίῃ δῖα δάκρυα ἔπεσε τὸ θέητρον** 6. 21. 10) or does it depend upon **ἀντιλογίας**? Should we retain **ἀντιλογίης**, and, if so, does it depend upon **περί**, or upon **οὐδ' ἄν** (Stein) to be supplied as the object of **λέγειν**? **ἀντιλογίας** would give a common object for **λέγειν** and **ἐνδέκομαι**; the latter, indeed, might take an infin. **λέγειν**, but **παρ'**

**ἄλλων** suggests that a substantive should be the object, possibly **τὸ λέγειν περί** (Abicht). Translate, *when Bacis speaks with reference to such matters and so clearly I do not myself dare to utter arguments against oracles* (cp. **χρησμοῖσι ἀντιλέγειν**, l. 1), *nor do I permit them to others* (accept them from others). This whole chapter is bracketed by Krüger, Gomperz, and Kallenberg.

78. 2. **περικυκλοῦντο**: for pres. of the direct form.

79. 1. **συνεστηκότων**: *being at strife*. Cp. 8. 27. 23. — 2. **Ἀριστείδης**: Aristides had been banished in 482 B.C., but on account of the Persian invasion a general pardon of those in exile had been



ἔξωστρακισμένος δὲ ὑπὸ τοῦ δήμου, τὸν ἐγὼ νενόμικα,  
 πυνθανόμενος αὐτοῦ τὸν τρόπον, ἄριστον ἄνδρα γενέ-  
 σθαι ἐν Ἀθήγησι καὶ δικαιοτάτον. οὗτος ὠνὴρ στὰς 5  
 ἐπὶ τὸ συνέδριον ἐξεκαλεῖτο Θεμιστοκλέα, ἐόντα μὲν  
 ἑωυτῷ οὐ φίλον, ἐχθρὸν δὲ τὰ μάλιστα· ὑπὸ δὲ μεγά-  
 θεος τῶν παρεόντων κακῶν λήθην ἐκείνων ποιούμενος  
 ἐξεκαλεῖτο, θέλων αὐτῷ συμμῖξαι. προακηκόει δὲ ὅτι  
 σπεύδοιεν οἱ ἀπὸ Πελοποννήσου ἀνάγειν τὰς νέας πρὸς 10  
 τὸν Ἴσθμόν. ὥς δὲ ἐξῆλθέ οἱ Θεμιστοκλῆς, ἔλεγε  
 Ἀριστείδης τάδε· Ἡμέας στασιάζειν χρεόν ἐστι ἐν τε  
 τῷ ἄλλῳ καιρῷ καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐν τῷδε περὶ τοῦ ὁκότερος  
 ἡμέων πλέω ἀγαθὰ τὴν πατρίδα ἐργάσεται. λέγω δέ  
 τοι ὅτι ἴσον ἐστὶ πολλά τε καὶ ὀλίγα λέγειν περὶ 15  
 ἀποπλόου τοῦ ἐνθεῦτεν Πελοποννησίοισι. ἐγὼ γὰρ  
 αὐτόπτης τοι λέγω γενόμενος ὅτι νῦν οὐδ' ἦν θέλωσι  
 Κορίνθιοί τε καὶ αὐτὸς Εὐρυβιάδης οἰοί τε ἔσονται  
 ἐκπλῶσαι· περιεχόμεθα γὰρ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων κύκλῳ.

voted (Plut. *Them.* 11). Plutarch, *Arist.* 8, says that the vote was passed while Xerxes was marching through Thessaly and Boeotia; and, unless the Athenians were continuing their civil government at Salamis, it is clear that it must have been at least three weeks before the battle (cp. 8. 52). Hdt. does not expressly state that Aristides is just returning from exile, though *προακηκόει* in l. 9 would imply that he was ignorant of conditions at Salamis. In chap. 95 he takes charge of the

land forces of the Athenians. — 3. *νενόμικα*: *I have come to the conclusion*. Cp. 7. 153. 20. — 5. *στὰς ἐπὶ*: cp. *καταστάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄρχοντας* 3. 46. 2. See Syn. § 5. — 8. *ἐκείνων*: the evils implied in *ἐχθρόν*. — 9. *συμμῖξαι*: intrans. Cp. 8. 58. 4. — 13. *τοῦ*: this belongs to the whole clause that follows. — 19. *περιεχόμεθα*: we are not told by what way A. came (though cp. 8. 81. 2). He might have passed in south of Psyttaleia without seeing that there was a blockade on the west also.

80 ἀλλ' ἐσελθὼν σφι ταῦτα σήμνηον. ὁ δ' ἀμείβετο τοι-  
 σίδε· Κάρτα τε χρηστὰ διακελεύεαι καὶ εὖ ἡγγειλας·  
 τὰ γὰρ ἐγὼ ἐδεόμην γενέσθαι, αὐτὸς αὐτόπτης γενό-  
 μενος ἦκεις. ἴσθι γὰρ ἐξ ἐμέο τὰ ποιόμενα ὑπὸ  
 Μήδων. ἔδει γάρ, ὅτε οὐκ ἐκόντες ἤθελον ἐς μάχην 5  
 κατίστασθαι οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀέκοντας παραστήσασθαι.  
 σὺ δὲ ἐπεὶ περ ἦκεις χρηστὰ ἀπαγγέλλων, αὐτὸς σφι  
 ἄγγειλον. ἦν γὰρ ἐγὼ αὐτὰ λέγω, δόξω πλάσας λέγειν  
 καὶ οὐ πείσω ὥς οὐ ποιούντων τῶν βαρβάρων ταῦτα.  
 ἀλλὰ σφι σήμνηον αὐτὸς παρελθὼν ὥς ἔχει. ἐπεὰν δὲ 10  
 σημήνης, ἦν μὲν πείθονται, [ταῦτα δὴ τὰ κάλλιστα,]  
 ἦν δὲ αὐτοῖσι μὴ πιστὰ γένηται, ὅμοιον ἡμῖν ἔσται·  
 οὐ γὰρ ἔτι διαδρήσονται, εἴ περ περιεχόμεθα πανταχό-  
 81 θεν, ὥς σὺ λέγεις. ταῦτα ἔλεγε παρελθὼν ὁ Ἀριστεί-  
 δης, φάμενος ἐξ Αἰγίνης τε ἦκειν καὶ μόγις ἐκπλῶσαι  
 λαθὼν τοὺς ἐπορμέοντας· περιέχεσθαι γὰρ πᾶν τὸ  
 στρατόπεδον τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὑπὸ τῶν νεῶν τῶν Ξέρξεω·  
 παραρτεῖσθαι τε συνεβούλευε ὥς ἀλεξήσομένους. καὶ 5  
 ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπας μετεστήκει, τῶν δὲ αὖτις ἐγίνετο  
 λόγων ἀμφισβασίη· οἱ γὰρ πλείονες τῶν στρατηγῶν  
 82 οὐκ ἐπέιθοντο τὰ ἐσαγγελθέντα. ἀπιστεόντων δὲ τοῦ-  
 των ἦκε τριήρης ἀνδρῶν Τηνίων αὐτομολέουσα, τῆς

80. 2. *χρηστά*: referring to 79. 12. — 3. *γάρ*: explaining εὖ. The antecedent of the relative clause depends upon αὐτόπτης. — 4. *ἐξ ἐμέο*: sc. ὄντα or ποιόμενα. Cp. 8. 8. 19. — 5. *ἐκόντες ἤθελον*: they would not of their own free will. — 6. *ἀέκοντας παραστήσασθαι*:

to compel their presence. — 9. *ὥς οὐ κτλ.*: because in their opinion the Barbarians are not doing this. — 11. *ταῦτα . . . κάλλιστα*: cp. 8. 62. 3. — 13. *οὐ γὰρ ἔτι*: for they will not go on with their retreat.

81. 2. *ἐκπλῶσαι λαθὼν*: for the more common ἔλαθε ἐκπλῶσας.

ἦρχε ἀνὴρ Παναίτιος ὁ Σωσιμένεος, ἣ περ δὴ ἔφερε  
τὴν ἀληθείην πᾶσαν. διὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον ἐνεγράφη-  
σαν Τήνιοι ἐν Δελφοῖσι ἐς τὸν τρίποδα ἐν τοῖσι τὸν 5  
βάρβαρον κατελοῦσι. σὺν δὲ ὧν ταύτῃ τῇ νηὶ τῇ  
αὐτομολησάσῃ ἐς Σαλαμῖνα καὶ τῇ πρότερον ἐπ' Ἀρτε-  
μίσιον τῇ Δημνίῃ ἐξεπληροῦτο τὸ ναυτικὸν τοῖσι Ἑλ-  
λησι ἐς τὰς ὀγδῶκοντα καὶ τριηκοσίας νέας· δύο γὰρ  
δὴ νεῶν τότε κατέδει ἐς τὸν ἀριθμόν.

10

82. 3. ἀνὴρ: this is unusual in prose without additional defining words. Cp. 8. 46. 14.— 5. τρίποδα: according to 9. 81 one tenth of the spoils taken in the battle of Plataea was dedicated at Delphi in the form of a golden tripod standing upon three bronze serpents, so intertwined that Hdt. in 9. 81. 4 speaks of the *τρικάρηνος ὄφεις*. This monument was taken to Constantinople by Constantine, and is still preserved. Upon the column Pausanias, the Greek general at Plataea, had the arrogance to inscribe the following distich: Ἑλλήνων ἀρχηγὸς ἐπεὶ στρατὸν ὤλεσε Μήδων, | Πανσανίας Φοῖβῳ μνήμ' ἀνέθηκε τόδε. "This distich the Lacedaemonians at once removed from the tripod, and inscribed the names of all the states which had united in overthrowing the barbarian, and made the dedication" (Thuc. 1. 132. 2). The inscription contains all the names of the states mentioned by Hdt.

as present at the battles of Thermopylae, Artemisium, Salamis, and Plataea, except the Locrians (7. 203. 2, 8. 1. 11), Seriphians (8. 46. 18), Crotonians (8. 47. 5), Lemnians (8. 82. 8), Paeanians (9. 28. 23), Phocians (7. 203. 2), and Mantineans (7. 202. 3). From another tenth of the Plataean spoils there was dedicated at Olympia a bronze Zeus (9. 81. 6) upon the base of which the Greek states were also inscribed (Paus. 5. 23). The names are the same as on the Delphian column except for the omission of the Thespians, Eretrians, Leucadians, and Siphnians.— 8. Δημνίη: see 8. 11. 14.— 9. τὰς: the 380 suggested by the 378 of 8. 48. 6.— 10. τότε: this refers to the time when the 378 ships were counted on gathering at Salamis (8. 42-48). As a matter of fact the Lemnian ship was then present, having deserted at Artemisium.— κατέδει: subject τὸ ναυτικόν.

- 83 Τοῖσι δὲ Ἑλλήσι ὥς πιστὰ δὴ τὰ λεγόμενα ἦν τῶν  
 Τηνίων ῥήματα, παρεσκευάζοντο ὥς ναυμαχήσοντες.  
 ἡώς τε δὴ διέφαινε καὶ οἱ σύλλογον τῶν ἐπιβατέων  
 ποιησάμενοι, προηγόρευε εὖ ἔχοντα μὲν ἐκ πάντων  
 Θεμιστοκλῆς. τὰ δὲ ἔπεα ἦν πάντα (τὰ) κρέσσω τοῖσι 5  
 ἡσσοσι ἀντιτιθέμενα, ὅσα δὴ ἐν ἀνθρώπου φύσι καὶ  
 καταστάσι ἐγγίνεται· παραινέσας δὲ τούτων τὰ κρέσσω  
 αἰρεῖσθαι καὶ καταπλέξας τὴν ῥῆσιν, ἐσβαίνειν ἐκέλευε  
 ἐς τὰς νέας. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν δὴ ἐσέβαινον, καὶ ἦκε ἡ  
 ἀπ' Αἰγίνης τριήρης, ἥ κατὰ τοὺς Αἰακίδας ἀπεδήμησε. 10  
 84 ἐνθαῦτα ἀνῆγον τὰς νέας ἀπάσας οἱ Ἕλληνες. ἀναγο-  
 μένοισι δέ σφι αὐτίκα ἐπεκέατο οἱ βάρβαροι. οἱ μὲν  
 δὴ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες [ἐπὶ] πρύμνην ἀνεκρούοντο καὶ  
 ὤκελλον τὰς νέας, Ἀμεινύης δὲ Παλληνεὺς ἀνὴρ Ἀθη-

THE GREEKS PREPARE TO FIGHT.

THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS (CC. 83-95), WITH DETAILS ABOUT ARTEMISIA (CC. 87-88), THE PHOENICIANS AND IONIANS (C. 90), THE AEGINETANS AND ATHENIANS (CC. 91-93), THE CORINTHIANS (C. 94), AND ARISTIDES (C. 95)

83. 1. τῶν Τηνίων: cp. τὸν πάντα Ἀστυάγεος ῥηθέντα λόγον 1. 109. 4. — 3. τε δὴ . . . καί: Syn. § 30. 2. c. — ἐπιβατέων: the fighting men, not the crews. — 4. προηγόρευε: the preceding οἷ is left without a verb, the rest being forgotten on account of the prominence given to Themistocles.

— εὖ ἔχοντα: with ἐκ πάντων = best of all. — 7. καταστάσι: condition. The "contrasts" in man's condition would include freedom and slavery, in his nature, courage and cowardice. — 8. καταπλέξας: like our *winding up*. — 9. ἦκε: the blockade was thus passed twice from the outside. — 10. Αἰακίδας: see 8. 64. 9.

84. 3. πρύμνην ἀνεκρούοντο: backed water. Below in line 14 and in Ar. *Wasps* 399 without ἐπὶ. Aeschylus says nothing of this hesitation. — 4. Ἀμεινύης: said by Diodorus Siculus (11. 27) and others to be a brother of the poet Aeschylus, who belonged, however, to the Eleusinian deme. Plu-

ναῖος ἐξαναχθεῖς νηὶ ἐμβάλλει. συμπλεκείσης δὲ τῆς 5  
 νεὸς καὶ οὐ δυναμένων ἀπαλλαγῆναι, οὕτω δὴ οἱ ἄλλοι  
 Ἀμεινίη βοηθέοντες συνέμισγον. Ἀθηναῖοι μὲν οὕτω  
 λέγουσι τῆς ναυμαχίης γενέσθαι τὴν ἀρχήν, Αἰγινῆται  
 δὲ τὴν κατὰ τοὺς Αἰακίδας ἀποδημήσασαν ἐς Αἶγιναν,  
 ταύτην εἶναι τὴν ἄρξασαν. λέγεται δὲ καὶ τάδε, ὥς 10  
 φάσμα σφί γυναικὸς ἐφάνη, φανείσαν δὲ διακελεύσα-  
 σθαι ὥστε καὶ ἅπαν ἀκοῦσαι τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατό-  
 πεδον, ὄνειδίσασαν πρότερον τάδε· ὦ δαιμόνιοι, μέχρι  
 κόσου ἔτι πρύμνην ἀνακρούσεσθε;

- 85 Κατὰ μὲν δὴ Ἀθηναίους ἐτετάχατο Φοῖνικες (οὔτοι  
 γὰρ εἶχον τὸ πρὸς Ἐλευσῖνός τε καὶ ἐσπέρης κέρας),  
 κατὰ δὲ Λακεδαιμονίους Ἴωνες· οὔτοι δ' εἶχον τὸ πρὸς  
 τὴν ἡῶ τε καὶ τὸν Πειραιέα. ἐθελοκάκεον μέντοι αὐτῶν  
 κατὰ τὰς Θεμιστοκλέος ἐντολὰς ὀλίγοι, οἱ δὲ πλείονες 5  
 οὔ. ἔχω μὲν νυνὶ συχνῶν οὐνόματα τριηράρχων καταλέ-  
 ξαι τῶν νέας Ἑλληνίδας ἐλόντων, χρήσομαι δὲ αὐτοῖσι  
 οὐδὲν πλὴν Θεομήστορος τε τοῦ Ἀνδροδάμαντος καὶ  
 Φυλάκου τοῦ Ἰστιαίου, Σαμίων ἀμφοτέρων. τοῦδε δὲ

tarch, *Them.* 14, mentions an Ameinias "the Decelean" in connection with the battle.—8. ἀρχήν: cp. ἡρξε δ' ἐμβολῆς Ἑλληνικῇ ναῦς, ἀποθραύει πάντα Φοινίσσης νεὸς κόρυμβ' Aesch. *Pers.* 409. The Phoenicians were opposed to the Athenians (85. 1); consequently the evidence of Aeschylus is in favor of the Athenian story. Simonides, Fr. 139, says Democritus of Naxos (8. 43. 13) was the

third to begin.—11. φανείσαν: the constr. changes from ὥς to acc. and infin.—14. κόσου: Dial. § 2. 1.

85. 3. Λακεδαιμονίους: these, with their sixteen ships, would be but a small part of the right wing. Diodorus (11. 18. 2) places the Aeginetans and Megarians on the right. Cp. 8. 91. 2.—9. Σαμίων: the author's stay in Samos would give him a particular interest in these men.

εἵνεκα μέμνημαι τούτων μούνων, ὅτι Θεομήστωρ μὲν<sup>10</sup>  
 διὰ τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον Σάμου ἐτυράννευσε καταστησάν-  
 των τῶν Περσέων, Φύλακος δὲ εὐεργέτης βασιλέος  
 ἀνεγράφη καὶ χώρῃ ἐδωρήθη πολλῇ. οἱ δ' εὐεργέται  
 βασιλέος ὀροσάγγαι καλέονται Περσιστί. περὶ μὲν  
 νυν τούτους οὕτω εἶχε· τὸ δὲ πλῆθος τῶν νεῶν ἐν τῇ  
 Σαλαμῖνι ἐκεραϊζέτο, αἱ μὲν ὑπ' Ἀθηναίων διαφθει-  
 ρόμεναι, αἱ δὲ ὑπ' Αἰγυπτέων. ἅτε γὰρ τῶν μὲν  
 Ἑλλήνων σὺν κόσμῳ ναυμαχεόντων (καὶ) κατὰ τάξιν,<sup>5</sup>  
 τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων οὔτε τεταγμένων ἔτι οὔτε σὺν νόῳ  
 ποιεόντων οὐδέν, ἔμελλε τοιοῦτό σφι συνοίσεσθαι οἷόν  
 περ ἀπέβη. καίτοι ἦσάν γε καὶ ἐγένοντο ταύτην τὴν  
 ἡμέρην μακρῷ ἀμείνονες αὐτοὶ ἑωυτῶν ἢ πρὸς Εὐβοίῃ,  
 πᾶς τις προθυμεόμενος καὶ δειμαίνων Ξέρξην, ἐδόκει<sup>10</sup>  
 ἑκάστος ἑωυτὸν θεήσασθαι βασιλέα. κατὰ μὲν δὴ  
 τοὺς ἄλλους οὐκ ἔχω [μετεξετέρους] εἰπεῖν ἀτρεκέως ὥς  
 ἑκάστοι τῶν βαρβάρων ἢ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἡγωνίζοντο·  
 κατὰ δὲ Ἀρτεμισίην τάδε ἐγένετο, ἀπ' ᾧ εὐδοκίμησε  
 μᾶλλον ἔτι παρὰ βασιλεῖ. ἐπειδὴ γὰρ ἐς θόρυβον<sup>5</sup>  
 πολλὸν ἀπίκετο τὰ βασιλέος πρήγματα, ἐν τούτῳ τῷ  
 καιρῷ ἢ νηὺς ἢ Ἀρτεμισίης ἐδιώκετο ὑπὸ νεὸς Ἀττικῆς·

86. 5. σὺν κόσμῳ: this corre-  
 sponds to σὺν νόῳ, and κατὰ τάξιν  
 to τεταγμένων; chiasitic arrange-  
 ment. — 7. ἔμελλε: *was bound to*.  
 — 9. αὐτοὶ ἑωυτῶν: the phrase is  
 logically unnecessary since ἢ πρὸς  
 Εὐβοίῃ follows. It serves to  
 strengthen the comparative. Cp.  
 2. 25. 23. — 11. ἑωυτῶν: obj. of  
 θεήσασθαι. For the aor. infin. cp.

8. 100. 10 and ὁ δὲ πᾶν μᾶλλον  
 δοκέων κείνην αἰτῆσαι 9. 109. 9.  
 Here the pres. infin. would suit  
 the context. See Syn. § 15. 4. c.

87. 3. ἑκάστοι: the plur. gen-  
 erally in reference to each of sev-  
 eral groups, yet here in contrast  
 with an individual, Artemisia. —  
 7. νεὸς Ἀττικῆς: that of Ameinias  
 (8. 84. 4). Cp. 8. 93. 5. —

καὶ ἡ οὐκ ἔχουσα διαφυγεῖν, ἔμπροσθε γὰρ αὐτῆς  
 ἦσαν ἄλλαι νέες φίλιαι, ἡ δὲ αὐτῆς πρὸς τῶν πολεμίων  
 μάλιστα ἐτύγχανε ἐοῦσα, ἔδοξέ οἱ τότε ποιῆσαι, τὸ καὶ 10  
 συνήνεικε ποιησάσῃ· διωκομένη γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς Ἀττικῆς  
 φέρουσα ἐνέβαλε νηὶ φιλήν ἀνδρῶν τε Καλυνδέων καὶ  
 αὐτοῦ ἐπιπλέοντος τοῦ Καλυνδέων βασιλέος Δαμασιθύ-  
 μου. εἰ μὲν καὶ τι νεῖκος πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐγεγόνει ἔτι περὶ  
 Ἑλλήσποντον ἑόντων, οὐ μέντοι ἔχω γε εἰπεῖν, οὔτε εἰ 15  
 ἐκ προνοίης αὐτὰ ἐποίησε, οὔτε εἰ συνεκύρῃσε ἡ τῶν  
 Καλυνδέων κατὰ τύχην παραπεσοῦσα νηὺς. ὥς δὲ ἐνέ-  
 βαλέ τε καὶ κατέδυσε, εὐτυχίῃ χρησαμένη διπλᾶ ἑωυτὴν  
 ἀγαθὰ ἐργάσατο· ὃ τε γὰρ τῆς Ἀττικῆς νεὸς τριή-  
 ραρχος ὥς εἶδέ μιν ἐμβάλλουσιν ἰνὴ ἀνδρῶν βαρβά- 20  
 ρων, νομίσας τὴν νέα τὴν Ἀρτεμισίης ἢ Ἑλληνίδα εἶναι  
 ἡ αὐτομολεῖν ἐκ τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ αὐτοῖσι ἀμύνειν, ἀπο-  
 88 στρέψας πρὸς ἄλλας ἐτράπετο. τοῦτο μὲν τοιοῦτο αὐτῇ

8. καὶ ἡ: Artemisia. See Syn. § 8.

2. The construction changes to ἔδοξέ οἱ in l. 10. — 9. πρὸς τῶν πολεμίων μάλιστα: nearest the enemy. Cp. πρὸς ἐσπέρης μᾶλλον 4. 48. 12, and 8. 120. 8; in 9. 68. 6 πρὸς τῶν πολεμίων ἀγχιστα ἐοῦσα. — 11. συνήνεικε: turned out well. Cp. 9. 37. 27. In 8. 88. 11 and 7. 8. a 7 the kind of result is indicated by an additional phrase. — γὰρ: explanatory of τότε. Cp. l. 5. — 12. φέρουσα: rushing on. Cp. 8. 91. 7, 9. 102. 13. — ἀνδρῶν τε κτί.: the two phrases descriptive of νηὶ are joined by τε . . . καί, though in

different syntactical constructions, the second being a gen. abs. Cp. πυραμῖς λίθου τε ξεστοῦ καὶ ζῶων ἐγγεγλυμένων 2. 124. 18. — 14. εἰ μὲν καὶ κτί.: now even if there was a quarrel . . . yet I really can not say whether. — 16. συνεκύρῃσε: this, with κατὰ τύχην and παραπεσοῦσα, emphasizes the idea of chance. — 19. τε: the corresponding καὶ clause is lacking. At the beginning of the next chapter τοῦτο μὲν repeats the first good fortune and the second is introduced by τοῦτο δέ. — 22. αὐτοῖσι: the Greeks.

συνήνεικε γενέσθαι διαφυγεῖν τε καὶ μὴ ἀπολέσθαι, τοῦτο δὲ συνέβη ὥστε κακὸν ἐργασαμένην ἀπὸ τούτων αὐτὴν μάλιστα εὐδοκιμῆσαι παρὰ Ξέρξῃ. λέγεται γὰρ βασιλέα θεόμενον μαθεῖν τὴν νέα ἐμβαλοῦσαν, καὶ δὴ 5 τινὰ εἰπεῖν τῶν παρεόντων· Δέσποτα, ὁρᾷς Ἀρτεμισίην ὡς εὖ ἀγωνίζεται καὶ νέα τῶν πολεμίων κατέδυσσε; καὶ τὸν ἐπειρέσθαι εἰ ἀληθῆώς ἐστὶ Ἀρτεμισίης τὸ ἔργον, καὶ τοὺς φάναι, σαφέως τὸ ἐπίσημον τῆς νεὸς ἐπισταμένους· τὴν δὲ διαφθαρεῖσαν ἠπιστάτο εἶναι πολε- 10 μίνην. τά τε γὰρ ἄλλα, ὡς εἴρηται, αὐτῇ συνήνεικε ἐς εὐτυχίην γενόμενα καὶ τὸ τῶν ἐκ τῆς Καλυνδικῆς νεὸς μηδένα ἀποσωθέντα κατήγορον γενέσθαι. Ξέρξην δὲ εἰπεῖν λέγεται πρὸς τὰ φραζόμενα· Οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες γεγόνασίν μοι γυναῖκες, αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες ἄνδρες. ταῦτα 15 89 μὲν Ξέρξην φασὶ εἰπεῖν. ἐν δὲ τῷ πόνῳ τούτῳ ἀπὸ μὲν ἔθανε ὁ στρατηγὸς Ἀριαβίγνης ὁ Δαρείου, Ξέρξῃ ἐὼν ἀδελφεός, ἀπὸ δὲ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τε καὶ ὀνομαστοὶ Περσέων καὶ Μήδων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων συμμάχων, ὀλίγοι δὲ τινες καὶ Ἑλλήνων· ἅτε γὰρ νέιν ἐπιστάμενοι, 5 τοῖσι αἱ νέες διεφθείροντο καὶ μὴ ἐν χειρῶν νόμῳ ἀπολύμενοι, ἐς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα διένειον. τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων

88. 2. διαφυγεῖν κτί: explanatory of τοιοῦτο. — 9. φάναι: said yes. For ἔφασαν of the direct form. — ἐπίσημον: probably a figure-head. Cp. 3. 37. 7. The σημήιον on an admiral's ship (see 8. 92. 10) was no doubt a flag. — ἐπισταμένους: knowing, but ἠπιστάτο believed. — 12. τό: with the infin. clause, which is parallel to τὰ ἄλλα.

— 14. φραζόμενα: for the pres. tense, see 8. 83. 1, 7. 209. 20.

89. 1. ἀπὸ μὲν . . . ἀπὸ δέ: cp. 8. 33. 3 and see Syn. § 7. — 2. Ἀριαβίγνης: see 7. 97. 1. — 6. καὶ μὴ κτί: this phrase is parallel to the relative clause — those whose ships were destroyed and who did not perish. — 7. ἐς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα διένειον: these words are cited in



οἱ πολλοὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ διεφθάρησαν, νεῦν οὐκ ἐπι-  
 στάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ αἱ πρῶται ἐς φυγὴν ἐτράποντο,  
 ἐνθαῦτα αἱ πλείσται διεφθείροντο. οἱ γὰρ ὅπισθε 10  
 τεταγμένοι, ἐς τὸ πρόσθε τῇσι νηυσὶ παριέναι πειρώ-  
 μενοι ὡς ἀποδεξόμενοι τι καὶ αὐτοὶ ἔργον βασιλεῖ,  
 90 τῇσι σφετέρῃσι νηυσὶ φευγούσῃσι περιέπιπτον. ἐγέ-  
 νετο δὲ καὶ τότε ἐν τῷ θορύβῳ τούτῳ· τῶν τινες Φοινί-  
 κων, τῶν αἱ νέες διεφθάρησαν, ἐλθόντες παρὰ βασιλέα  
 διέβαλλον τοὺς Ἴωνας, ὡς δι' ἐκείνους ἀπολοίαιτο αἱ  
 νέες, ὡς προδόντων. συνήνεικε ὦν οὕτω ὥστε Ἴωνων 5  
 τε τοὺς στρατηγούς μὴ ἀπολέσθαι Φοινίκων τε τοὺς  
 διαβάλλοντας λαβεῖν τοιόνδε μισθόν· ἔτι τούτων ταῦτα  
 λεγόντων ἐνέβαλε νηὶ Ἀττικῇ Σαμοθρηκίῃ νηῦς. ἥ τε  
 δὴ Ἀττικὴ κατεδύετο καὶ ἐπιφερομένη Αἰγιναίῃ νηῦς  
 κατέδυσε τῶν Σαμοθρηκίων τὴν νέα. ἅτε δὲ ἔόντες 10  
 ἀκοντισταὶ οἱ Σαμοθρηκεῖς τοὺς ἐπιβάτας ἀπὸ τῆς κατα-  
 δυσάσης νεὸς βάλλοντες ἀπήραξαν καὶ ἐπέβησάν τε  
 καὶ ἔσχον αὐτήν. ταῦτα γενόμενα τοὺς Ἴωνας ἐρρύ-  
 σατο· ὡς γὰρ εἶδὲ σφῆας Ξέρξης ἔργον μέγα ἐργασα-  
 μένους ἐτράπετο πρὸς τοὺς Φοίνικας οἷα ὑπερλυπεόμενός 15  
 τε καὶ πάντας αἰτιώμενος, καὶ σφῆων ἐκέλευσε τὰς

proof of the view that the Greek fleet was lined along the Salaminian shore, and not across the strait from Salamis to Attica. — 10. οἱ γὰρ ὅπισθε τεταγμένοι: the Persian line was possibly two or three ships deep, but the expression in Aeschylus' *Persians* (366), στοίχοις τρισὶν ἐκπλοῦς φυλάσσειν, applies only to those guarding the

outlets. — 13. σφετέρῃσι: reflexive. See Syn. § 10. 3.

90. 2. τῶν τινες Φ.: Syn. § 11. 3. — 5. προδόντων: sc. αὐτῶν. Gen. abs. instead of agreeing with Ἴωνας. Cp. 8. 69. 5. — οὕτω: explained by ἔτι τούτων κτέ. On ὥστε with συνήνεικε, see Syn. § 23. 4. b. — 13. ἔσχον: took possession of. — Ἴωνας: Samothrace was colo-

κεφαλὰς ἀποταμείν, ἵνα μὴ αὐτοὶ κακοὶ γενόμενοι τοὺς ἀμείνονας διαβάλλωσι. ὅκως γάρ τινα ἴδοι Ξέρξης τῶν ἑωυτοῦ ἔργον τι ἀποδεικνύμενον ἐν τῇ ναυμαχίῃ, κατήμενος ὑπὸ τῷ ὄρει τῷ ἀντίον Σαλαμῖνος, τὸ καλεῖται Αἰγάλεως, ἀνεπυθάνετο τὸν ποιήσαντα, καὶ οἱ γραμματισταὶ ἀνέγραφον πατρόθεν τὸν τριτῆραρχον καὶ τὴν πόλιν. πρὸς δέ τι καὶ προσεβάλετο φίλος ἑὼν Ἀριαράμνης ἀνὴρ Πέρσης παρεὼν τούτου τοῦ Φωινίου πάθεος.

- 91 Οἱ μὲν δὲ πρὸς τοὺς Φοίνικας ἐτράποντο · τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων ἐς φυγὴν τραπομένων καὶ ἐκπλεόντων πρὸς τὸ Φάληρον Αἰγινῆται ὑποστάντες ἐν τῷ πορθμῷ ἔργα ἀπεδέξαντο λόγου ἄξια. οἱ μὲν γὰρ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐν τῷ θορύβῳ ἐκεραΐζον τὰς τε ἀντισταμένας καὶ τὰς φευγούσας τῶν νεῶν, οἱ δὲ Αἰγινῆται τὰς ἐκπλεούσας · ὅκως δέ τινες τοὺς Ἀθηναίους διαφύγοιεν, φερόμενοι ἐσέπιπτον ἐς τοὺς Αἰγινήτας. ἐνθαῦτα συνεκύρεον νέες ἥ τε Θεμιστοκλέος διώκουσα νέα, καὶ ἡ Πολυκρίτου τοῦ

nized from Samos (Strabo 457). — 18. ὅκως γάρ: this explains how X. knew that Ionians had sunk the ship. — 20. ὑπὸ τῷ ὄρει: cp. ἔδραν γὰρ εἶχε παντὸς εὐαγῆ στρατοῦ, ὑψηλὸν ὄχθον ἄγχι πελαγίας ἁλὸς Aesch. *Persae* 466 and Ξέρξης μὲν ἄνω καθήστο . . . , ὥς μὲν Φανόδημός φησιν, ὑπὲρ τὸ Ἡράκλειον, ἣ βραχεὶ πόρῳ διείργεται τῆς Ἀττικῆς ἣ νήσος · ὥς δ' Ἀκεστόδωρος, ἐν μεθορίῳ τῆς Μεγαρίδος ὑπὲρ τῶν καλουμένων Κεράτων Plut. *Them.* 13. The Heracleum which

Phanodemus refers to was probably near Cape Amphiale. — 22. πατρόθεν: adding the father's name for greater exactness. — 24. προσεβάλετο: *contributed*, a common meaning of συμβάλλομαι. — φίλος ἑὼν: Ἰωσι seems to have been dropped from the text.

91. 1. οἱ μὲν: those ordered to execute the Phoenicians. — 2. ἐκπλεόντων: *i.e.* out of the sound between Attica and Salamis. — 3. πορθμῷ: between Psyttaleia and Attica.

Κριοῦ ἀνδρὸς Αἰγινήτεω νηὶ ἐμβαλοῦσα Σιδωνίῃ, ἥπερ  
 εἶλε τὴν προφυλάσσουσιν ἐπὶ Σκιάθῳ τὴν Αἰγιναιήν,  
 ἐπ' ἧς ἔπλει Πυθέης ὁ Ἰσχενόου, τὸν οἱ Πέρσαι κατα- 5  
 κοπέντα ἀρετῆς εἵνεκα εἶχον ἐν τῇ νηὶ ἐκπαγλεόμενοι·  
 τὸν δὴ περιάγουσα ἅμα τοῖσι Πέρσῃσι ἦλω νηὺς ἡ  
 Σιδωνίῃ, ὥστε Πυθέην οὕτω σωθῆναι ἐς Αἶγιναν. ὥς  
 δὲ ἐσεῖδε τὴν νέα τὴν Ἀττικὴν ὁ Πολύκριτος, ἔγνω τὸ  
 σημήιον ἰδὼν τῆς στρατηγίδος, καὶ βώσας τὸν Θεμι- 10  
 στοκλέα ἐπεκερτόμησε ἐς τῶν Αἰγινητέων τὸν μηδισμόν  
 ὀνειδίζων. ταῦτα μὲν νυν νηὶ ἐμβαλὼν ὁ Πολύκριτος  
 ἀπέρριψε ἐς Θεμιστοκλέα· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι τῶν αἰ νέες  
 περιεγένοντο φεύγοντες ἀπίκοντο ἐς Φάληρον ὑπὸ τὸν  
 93 πεζὸν στρατόν. ἐν δὲ τῇ ναυμαχίῃ ταύτῃ ἤκουσαν  
 Ἑλλήνων ἄριστα Αἰγινῆται, ἐπὶ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι, ἀνδρῶν  
 δὲ Πολύκριτός τε ὁ Αἰγινήτης καὶ Ἀθηναῖοι Εὐμένης τε  
 ὁ Ἀναγυράσιος καὶ Ἀμεινίης Παλληνεύς, ὃς καὶ Ἀρτε-  
 μισίην ἐπεδίωξε. εἰ μὲν νυν ἔμαθε ὅτι ἐν ταύτῃ πλέοι 5  
 Ἀρτεμισίῃ, οὐκ ἂν ἐπαύσατο πρότερον ἢ εἰλέ μιν ἢ  
 καὶ αὐτὸς ἦλω. τοῖσι γὰρ Ἀθηναίων τριηράρχοισι  
 παρεκεκέλευστο, πρὸς δὲ καὶ ἄεθλον ἔκειτο μύριαι δραχ-  
 μαί, ὃς ἂν μιν ζώῃν ἔλῃ· δεινὸν γάρ τι ἐποιέοντο  
 γυναιῖκα ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας στρατεύεσθαι. αὕτη μὲν δὴ, 10  
 ὥς πρότερον εἴρηται, διέφυγε· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι,  
 τῶν αἰ νέες περιεγεγόνεσαν, ἐν τῷ Φαλήρῳ.

92. 3. Κριοῦ: referred to in 6.  
 50, 73 as prominent among the  
 Aeginetans.—ἥπερ: *the very one*  
*which*. See 7. 179 f.—11. ἐς:  
*with reference to*.—14. ὑπὸ:  
*under the protection of*.

93. 1. ἤκουσαν: *were spoken*  
*of*.—4. Ἀναγυράσιος: of the  
 deme Anagyrus.—Ἀμεινίης: see  
 8. 84. 4.—5. ταύτῃ: as if τὴν  
 νηῦν τὴν Ἀρτεμισίης preceded.  
 —9. ὃς: anteced. sc. τούτῳ.

94 Ἀδείμαντον δὲ τὸν Κορινθίων στρατηγὸν λέγουσι Ἀθηναῖοι αὐτίκα κατ' ἀρχάς, ὡς συνέμισγον αἱ νέες, ἐκπλαγέντα τε καὶ ὑπερδεύσαντα, τὰ ἱστία ἀειράμενον οἷχεσθαι φεύγοντα, ἰδόντας δὲ τοὺς Κορινθίους τὴν στρατηγίδα φεύγουσαν ὡσαύτως οἷχεσθαι. ὥς δὲ ἄρα 5 φεύγοντας γίνεσθαι τῆς Σαλαμινίης κατὰ τὸ ἱρόν Ἀθηναίης Σκιράδος, περιπίπτειν σφί κέλητα θείῃ πομπῇ, τὸν οὔτε πέμψαντα φανῆναι οὐδένα, οὔτε τι τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς στρατιῆς εἰδόσι προσφέρεσθαι τοῖσι Κορινθίοισι. τῇδε δὲ συμβάλλονται εἶναι θεῖον τὸ πρῆγμα· ὥς γὰρ 10 ἀγχοῦ γενέσθαι τῶν νεῶν, τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ κέλητος λέγειν τάδε· Ἀδείμαντε, σὺ μὲν ἀποστρέψας τὰς νέας ἐς φυγὴν ὄρμησαι καταπροδοὺς τοὺς Ἕλληνας· οἱ δὲ καὶ δὴ νικῶσι ὅσον αὐτοὶ ἡρῶντο ἐπικρατῆσαι τῶν ἐχθρῶν. ταῦτα λεγόντων ἀπιστεῖν γὰρ τὸν Ἀδείμαντον, αὐτίς 15 τάδε λέγειν, ὡς αὐτοὶ οἰοί τε εἰεν ἀγόμενοι ὄμηροι ἀποθνήσκειν, ἣν μὴ νικῶντες φαίνωνται οἱ Ἕλληνες. οὕτω δὴ ἀποστρέψαντα τὴν νέαν αὐτόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπ' ἐξεργασμένοισι ἐλθεῖν ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον.

94. 3. τὰ ἱστία: usually left on land when a battle was to be fought. — 6. γίνεσθαι: inf. in a subord. clause in indirect narration. Cp. φανῆναι etc. Syn. § 24. ii. 2. — Σαλαμινίης: sc. γῆς. The gen. depends upon κατὰ . . . Σκιράδος. — ἱρόν: the position of the temple is uncertain. It is variously placed at the southern, north-eastern, and northwestern points. Hdt. does not explain how the

Corinthians escaped the blockade. — 8. οὔτε τι κτί.: and which approached the C.'s knowing nothing etc. τόν is object of πέμψαντα and subject of προσφέρεσθαι. The second οὔτε does not affect the main verb of its clause. — 13. καὶ δὴ: already. Syn. § 33. i. — 15. λεγόντων: (gen. abs.) since A. did not believe them, when they said this. — 16. οἱ τε εἰεν: were ready. — 19. ἐπ' ἐξεργασμένοισι:

τούτους μὲν τοιαύτη φάτις ἔχει ὑπὸ Ἀθηναίων, οὐ 20  
 μέντοι αὐτοὶ γε Κορίνθιοι ὁμολογέουσι, ἀλλ' ἐν πρώ-  
 τοισι σφέας αὐτοὺς τῆς ναυμαχίης νομίζουσι γενέσθαι ·  
 95 μαρτυρεῖ δέ σφι καὶ ἡ ἄλλη Ἑλλάς. Ἀριστείδης δὲ ὁ  
 Λυσιμάχου ἀνὴρ Ἀθηναῖος, τοῦ καὶ ὀλίγῳ τι πρότερον  
 τούτων ἐπεμνήσθην ὡς ἀνδρὸς ἀρίστου, οὗτος ἐν τῷ  
 θορύβῳ τούτῳ τῷ περὶ Σαλαμῖνα γενομένῳ τάδε ἐποίει ·  
 παραλαβὼν πολλοὺς τῶν ὀπλιτέων οἱ παρετετάχατο 5  
 παρὰ τὴν ἀκτὴν τῆς Σαλαμινίης χώρας, γένος ἔοντες  
 Ἀθηναῖοι, ἐς τὴν Ψυττάλειαν νῆσον ἀπέβησε ἄγων, οἱ  
 τοὺς Πέρσας τοὺς ἐν τῇ νησιῷ ταύτῃ κατεφόνευσαν  
 πάντας.

96 Ὡς δὲ ἡ ναυμαχίη διελέλυτο, κατειρύσαντες ἐς τὴν  
 Σαλαμῖνα οἱ Ἕλληνες τῶν ναυηγίων ὅσα ταύτῃ ἐτύγ-  
 χανε ἔτι ἔοντα, ἔτοιμοι ἦσαν ἐς ἄλλην ναυμαχίην, ἐλπί-  
 ζοντες τῇσι περιεούσῃσι νηυσὶ ἔτι χρήσεσθαι βασιλέα.  
 τῶν δὲ ναυηγίων πολλὰ ὑπολαβὼν ἄνεμος ζέφυρος ἔφερε 5  
 τῆς Ἀττικῆς ἐπὶ τὴν ἥονα τὴν καλεομένην Κωλιάδα,

*after it was all over.* — 20. τού-  
 τους μὲν κτί. : *of these this story is*  
*told.* — 22. σφέας αὐτούς : *Syn. § 10.*  
 2. b. — τῆς ναυμαχίης : dependent  
 upon ἐν πρώτοις and = τῶν ναυ-  
 μαχόντων. — 23. μαρτυρεῖ : *cp. the*  
*following verses of Simonides :* ὦ  
 ξεῖν' εὐνδρόν ποτ' ἐναίομεν ἄστυ Κο-  
 ρίνθον | νῦν δ' ἄμμ' Αἶαντος νᾶσος  
 ἔχει Σαλαμῖς | ρεῖα δὲ Φοινίσσας  
 νῆας καὶ Πέρσας ἐλόντες | καὶ Μή-  
 δους ἱερὰν Ἑλλάδα ῥυσάμεθα *Fr.*  
*100, and οὗτος Ἀδελμάντου κείνου*  
*τάφος οὐ διὰ βουλᾶς | Ἑλλὰς ἐλευ-*

*θερίας ἀμφέθετο στέφανον* *Fr. 103.*

95. 8. For Aeschylus' account  
 of this incident, see *Persae* 447 ff.  
 He attributed the exploit to the  
 Greek sailors after their victory.

#### THE FULFILLMENT OF AN ORACLE (C. 96)

96. 1. κατειρύσαντες : *towing*  
*to land.* *Cp. ἀν-άγω* of put-  
 ting out from shore. — 3. ἐλπίζον-  
 τες : *expecting.* — 6. Κωλιάδα : the  
 promontory was a few miles south  
 of Phalerum ; near by was a temple

ὥστε ἀποπλησθῆναι τὸν χρησμὸν τὸν τε ἄλλον πάντα τὸν περὶ τῆς ναυμαχίης ταύτης εἰρημένον Βάκιδι καὶ Μουσαίῳ, καὶ δὴ καὶ κατὰ τὰ ναυήγια τὰ ταύτη ἐξενεχθέντα τὸ εἰρημένον πολλοῖσι ἔτεσι πρότερον τούτων<sup>10</sup> ἐν χρησμῷ Λυσιστράτῳ Ἀθηναίῳ ἀνδρὶ χρησμολόγῳ, τὸ ἐλελήθει πάντας τοὺς Ἕλληνας,

Κωλιάδες δὲ γυναῖκες ἐρετμοῖσι φρύξουσι.

τοῦτο δὲ ἔμελλε ἀπελάσαντος βασιλέος ἔσεσθαι.

97 Ξέρξης δὲ ὡς ἔμαθε τὸ γεγονὸς πάθος, δείσας μή τις τῶν Ἰώνων ὑποθῆται τοῖσι Ἕλλησι ἢ αὐτοῖ νοήσωσι πλεῖν ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον λύσοντες τὰς γεφύρας καὶ ἀπολαμφθεῖς ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ κινδυνεύσῃ ἀπολέσθαι, δρῆσμὸν ἐβούλετο· θέλων δὲ μὴ ἐπίδηλος εἶναι μήτε<sup>5</sup> τοῖσι Ἕλλησι μήτε τοῖσι ἑωυτοῦ ἐς τὴν Σαλαμίνα χῶμα

of Aphrodite Koliae. — 7. τὸν χρησμὸν τὸν τε κτέ.: χρησμὸν is sing. though τε . . . καὶ introduces two oracles in apposition to it, because Hdt. has in mind particularly (καὶ δὴ καί) the second, but suddenly recalls the other. — πάντα: *in full*. The first oracle is that in 8. 77 presumably, though no mention is there made of Musaeus. Possibly the same oracle was found in both collections. — 10. τὸ εἰρημένον . . . ἐν χρησμῷ: these words resume τὸν χρησμὸν of 1. 7. — 11. χρησμολόγῳ: cp. 7. 6. 13. — 12. ἐλελήθει: no one had understood the meaning until Hdt. pointed it out. — 14. ἔμελλε: past future. Hdt. places

himself in thought at the time of the battle.

XERXES, WHILE PLANNING FLIGHT, MAKES OPEN PREPARATIONS AGAINST THE GREEKS. MEANWHILE HE SENDS A MESSENGER TO SUSA (CC. 97-99)

97. 1. ἔμαθε: *realized* the extent of his defeat. Diodorus (11. 19) says that 40 Greek ships and more than 200 Persian ships were destroyed, exclusive of those captured with their crews. — 6. χῶμα: according to Ctesias *Pers.* 26 and Strabo 395, Xerxes started the mole before the battle. Strabo says it was near Cape

ἐπειρᾶτο διαχοῦν, γαύλους τε Φοινικηίους συνέδει, ἵνα  
 ἀντί τε σχεδῆς ἔωσι καὶ τείχεος, ἀρτεῖτό τε ἐς πόλεμον  
 ὡς ναυμαχίην ἄλλην ποιησόμενος. ὁρῶντες δέ μιν  
 πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα πρήσσοντα εὖ ἠπιστέατο ὡς ἐκ 10  
 παντὸς νόον παρεσκευάσται μένων πολεμήσειν. Μαρ-  
 δόνιον δ' οὐδὲν τούτων ἐλάνθανε ὡς μάλιστα ἔμπειρον  
 98 ἐόντα τῆς ἐκείνου διανοίης. ταῦτά τε ἅμα Ξέρξης  
 ἐποίει καὶ ἔπεμπε ἐς Πέρσας ἀγγελέοντα τὴν παρεού-  
 σάν σφι συμφορὴν. τούτων δὲ τῶν ἀγγέλων ἔστι  
 οὐδὲν ὃ τι θάσσον παραγίνεται θνητὸν ἔόν· οὕτω τοῖσι  
 Πέρσῃσι ἐξεύρηται τοῦτο. λέγουσι γὰρ ὡς ὅσων ἀν 5  
 ἡμερέων ἦ ἡ πᾶσα ὁδός, τοσοῦτοι ἵπποι τε καὶ ἄνδρες  
 διεστᾶσι, κατὰ ἡμερησίην ὁδὸν ἐκάστην ἵππος τε καὶ

Amphiale, and Ctesias places it near the Heracleum, which is located, most probably, near Cape Amphiale (see 8. 90. 20). This point would certainly be the most fitting for a mole on account of the narrowness of the passage, and the shallows that are found there. But it is exceedingly improbable that the attempt was made before the battle. If the Persians were in this position at that time, the whole story of the alarm of the Greeks at the appearance of the fleet on the day of the battle and of Themistocles' message to Xerxes must be given up. Further, the Persians were confident of a victory by sea, and in that case the mole was useless. After the battle the Persians could not have at-

tempted any work either at this point or across to Psyttaleia, for the Greeks were in control of the passages. It is improbable that Xerxes did more than give out that he was going to build a mole and have the merchantmen tied together, to deceive his followers. — 8. *τείχεος*: to protect the men at work. As a *σχεδῆς* it would be used to carry out material. — 11. *πολεμήσειν*: on the fut. see Syn. § 15. 4. c.

98. 3. *ἀγγέλων*: Aeschylus represents his messenger as coming directly from the field of battle (*Persae* 266). The *ἀγγελος* in the Drama must be an eyewitness of the scene he describes. — 4. *οὕτω*: so skillfully. Cp. 4. 200. 15. — 7. *διεστᾶσι*: are placed at intervals. —

ἀνὴρ τεταγμένος· τοὺς οὐτε νιφετός, οὐκ ὄμβρος, οὐ καῦμα, οὐ νύξ ἔργει μὴ οὐ κατανύσαι τὸν προκείμενον αὐτῷ δρόμον τὴν ταχίστην. ὁ μὲν δὴ πρῶτος δραμῶν 10 παραδιδόι τὰ ἐντεταλμένα τῷ δευτέρῳ, ὁ δὲ δεύτερος τῷ τρίτῳ· τὸ δὲ ἐνθεῦτεν ἤδη κατ' ἄλλον διεξέρχεται παραδιδόμενα, κατὰ περ (ἐν) Ἑλλησι ἢ λαμπαδηφορίῃ τὴν τῷ Ἡφαίστῳ ἐπιτελεύουσι. τοῦτο τὸ δράμημα τῶν 99 ἵππων καλέουσι Πέρσαι ἀγγαρήιον. ἡ μὲν δὴ πρώτη ἐς Σούσα ἀγγελίη ἀπικομένη, ὡς ἔχει Ἀθήνας Ξέρξης, ἔτερψε οὕτω δὴ τι Περσέων τοὺς ὑπολειφθέντας ὡς τάς τε ὁδοὺς μυρσίῃ πάσας ἐστόρεσαν καὶ ἐθυμίων θυμῆματα καὶ αὐτοὶ ἦσαν ἐν θυσίῃσιν τε καὶ εὐπαθείῃσιν· 5 ἡ δὲ δευτέρη σφί ἀγγελίῃ ἐπεσελθοῦσα συνέχει οὕτω ὥστε τοὺς κιθῶνας κατερρήξαντο πάντες, βοῇ (δὲ) τε καὶ οἰμωγῇ ἐχρέωντο ἀπλῆτῳ, Μαρδόνιον ἐν αἰτίῃ τιθέντες.

8. οὐτε . . . οὐκ . . . οὐ: such asyndeton is more freq. in poetry, but cp. Lys. 32. 16. Emphasis is thus given to each word. — 9. μὴ οὐ: GMT. 815. — 10. αὐτῷ: after plur. τοὺς, the thought shifting to the individual task. Cp. 4. 65. 9. — 12. κατ' ἄλλον: distributive, *by relays it is passed along and reaches its destination*. — 13. λαμπαδηφορίῃ: in this race the torch must be brought to the goal still lighted. It was evidently a relay-race, but it was not run with horses, for their use is spoken of as a novelty in Plato *Rep.* 328. — 15. ἀγγαρήιον: Aesch. *Agam.* 282 uses the phrase ἀπ' ἀγγάρου

πυρός in a description of the flashing of a message by beacon lights from one height to another. The word is etymologically the same as the Greek ἄγγελος.

99. 1. πρώτη: see 8. 54. 1. — 3. ὥς: = ὥστε. — 5. αὐτοί: emphasis upon the personal enjoyment as opposed to the public celebration by offerings to the gods. — 7. κιθῶνας: χιτῶνας. Dial. § 2. 4. — κατερρήξαντο: cp. πολλὰ δ' ἀμαλαῖς χερσὶ καλύπτρας κατερεϊκόμεναι Aesch. *Pers.* 537. Aeschylus' word κατερεῖκω is used of *rending* garments in 3 66. 2. — 8. οἰμωγῇ κτί.: cp. πεινθοῦσι γόοις ἀκορεστάτοις Aesch. *Pers.* 545.



οὐκ οὕτω δὲ περὶ τῶν νεῶν ἀχθόμενοι ταῦτα οἱ Πέρσαι ἐποίεον ὡς περὶ αὐτῷ Ξέρξῃ δειμαίνοντες.

10

- 100 Καὶ περὶ Πέρσας μὲν ἦν ταῦτα τὸν πάντα μεταξὺ χρόνον γενόμενον, μέχρι οὗ Ξέρξης αὐτὸς σφεας ἀπικόμενος ἔπαυσε. Μαρδόνιος δὲ ὁρῶν μὲν Ξέρξην συμφορὴν μεγάλην ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίης ποιούμενον, ὑποπτεύων δὲ αὐτὸν δρησμὸν βουλευεῖν ἐκ τῶν Ἀθηνέων, φροντί- 5 σας πρὸς ἐωυτὸν ὡς δώσει δίκην ἀναγνώσας βασιλέα στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ οἱ κρέσσον εἴη ἀνακινδυνεύσαι ἢ κατεργάσασθαι τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἢ αὐτὸν καλῶς τελευτῆσαι τὸν βίον ὑπὲρ μεγάλων αἰωρηθέντα· πλέον μέντοι ἔφερε οἱ ἡ γνώμη κατεργάσασθαι τὴν 10 Ἑλλάδα· λογισάμενος ὦν ταῦτα προσέφερε τὸν λόγον τόνδε· Δέσποτα, μήτε λυπέο μήτε συμφορὴν μηδεμίαν μεγάλην ποιέο τοῦδε τοῦ γεγονότος εἵνεκα πρήγματος. οὐ γὰρ ξύλων ἀγὼν ὁ τὸ πᾶν φέρων ἐστὶ ἡμῖν, ἀλλ' ἀνδρῶν τε καὶ ἵππων. σοὶ δὲ οὔτε τις τούτων τῶν τὸ 15 πᾶν σφί ἤδη δοκούντων κατεργάσθαι ἀποβὰς ἀπὸ τῶν νεῶν πειρήσεται ἀντιωθῆναι οὐτ' ἐκ τῆς ἡπείρου τῆσδε·

THE ADVICE OF MARDONIUS AND ARTEMISIA (CC. 100-102)

100. 1. τὸν πάντα . . . χρόνον: as opposed to πάντα τ. χρ. this expression elsewhere (cp. 8. 140. α 13, β 6) in Hdt. refers to a long period of time. See Syn. § 8. 5. — 4. ἐκ: cp. εἵνεκα below and two accs. in 8. 69. 2. — 6. πρὸς: *in reference to*. — ἀναγνώσας: see 7. 9. — 9. αἰωρηθέντα: *in a venture for*

a great stake. — 10. ἔφερε: *intrans.* With this expression the person is dat. in 3. 77. 2, gen. in 4. 11. 10, 5. 118. 9 etc. — κατεργάσασθαι: for the tense, cp. 8. 86. 11 and see Syn. § 15. 4. c. This clause is parenthetical. The predicate of Μαρδόνιος l. 3 is προσέφερε. After the long interval λογισάμενος ὦν ταῦτα sums up. — 14. ξύλων: contemptuously for νεῶν. — πᾶν φέρων: cp. 8. 62. 5. — 16. σφί: agent

οἱ τε ἡμῖν ἠντιώθησαν, ἔδοσαν δίκας. εἰ μὲν νυν δοκεῖ, αὐτίκα πειρώμεθα τῆς Πελοποννήσου· εἰ δὲ καὶ δοκεῖ ἐπισχεῖν, παρέχει ποιεῖν ταῦτα. μὴ δὲ δυσθύμει· οὐ<sup>20</sup> γὰρ ἔστι Ἑλληνσι οὐδεμία ἔκδυσις μὴ οὐ δόντας λόγον τῶν ἐποίησαν νῦν τε καὶ πρότερον εἶναι σοὺς δούλους. μάλιστα μὲν νυν ταῦτα ποιεῖ· εἰ δ' ἄρα τοι βεβούλευται αὐτὸν ἀπελαύνοντα ἀπάγειν τὴν στρατιήν, ἄλλην ἔχω καὶ ἐκ τῶνδε βουλήν. σὺ Πέρσας, βασιλεῦ, μὴ ποιή-<sup>25</sup> σης καταγελάστους γενέσθαι Ἑλληνσι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐν Πέρσῃσί τοί τι δεδήληται τῶν πρηγμάτων, οὐδὲ ἐρεῖς ὅκου ἐγενόμεθα ἄνδρες κακοί. εἰ δὲ Φοίνικές τε καὶ Αἰγύπτιοι καὶ Κύπριοί τε καὶ Κίλικες κακοὶ ἐγένοντο, οὐδὲν πρὸς Πέρσας τοῦτο προσήκει τὸ πάθος. ἤδη ὦν,<sup>30</sup> ἐπειδὴ οὐ Πέρσαι τοι αἰτιοὶ εἰσι, ἐμοὶ πείθεο· εἴ τοι δέδοκται μὴ παραμένειν, σὺ μὲν ἐς ἥθεα τὰ σεωντοῦ ἀπέλαυνε τῆς στρατιῆς ἀπάγων τὸ πολλόν, ἐμὲ δὲ σοὶ χρὴ τὴν Ἑλλάδα παρασχεῖν δεδουλωμένην, τριήκοντα<sup>101</sup> μυριάδας τοῦ στρατοῦ ἀπολεξάμενον. ταῦτα ἀκούσας Ξέρξης ὡς ἐκ κακῶν ἐχάρη τε καὶ ἤσθη, πρὸς Μαρδόνιον τε βουλευσάμενος ἔφη ὑποκρινεῖσθαι ὁκότερον

with κατεργάσθαι. — 21. δόντας λόγον: render an account, here = be punished. — 23. μάλιστα: best of all. Cp. 8. 22. 7. — 25. ἐκ τῶνδε: following upon that, i.e. in that case. — 26. οὐδὲ . . . τι: not even anything. — 27. ἐρεῖς: almost you can not say. — 29. Αἰγύπτιοι κτί.: cp. Artemisia's opinion in 8. 68. γ. — 30. οὐδὲν πρὸς . . . προσήκει: bears no relation to, i.e. is not the fault

of. — 32. σὺ μὲν: the advice begun in l. 26 is now concluded. — ἥθεα: home. Cp. 7. 75. 8. — 34. τριήκοντα μυριάδας: the division of one of the six generals (7. 82, 7. 184. 20 ff.).

101. 2. ὡς ἐκ κακῶν: joyful considering his misfortunes, as joyful as circumstances allowed. Cp. Thuc. 7. 42. 2 and see Syn. § 23. 3. b. — 3. βουλευσάμενος: part of what he said. — ὑποκρινεῖσθαι: Att.

ποιήσῃσι τούτων. ὥς δὲ ἐβουλεύετο ἅμα Περσέων τοῖσι ἐπικλήτοισι, ἔδοξέ οἱ καὶ Ἀρτεμισίην ἐς συμβουλίην 5 μεταπέμψασθαι, ὅτι πρότερον ἐφαίνετο μούνη νοέουσα τὰ ποιητέα ἦν. ὥς δὲ ἀπύκετο ἡ Ἀρτεμισίη, μεταστήσάμενος τοὺς ἄλλους, τοὺς τε συμβούλους Περσέων καὶ τοὺς δορυφόρους, ἔλεξε Ξέρξης τάδε. Κελεύει με Μαρδόνιος μένοντα αὐτοῦ πειρᾶσθαι τῆς Πελοποννήσου, 10 λέγων ὥς μοι Πέρσαι τε καὶ ὁ πεζὸς στρατὸς οὐδενὸς μεταίτιοι πάθεός εἰσι, ἀλλὰ βουλομένοισί σφι γένοιτ' ἂν ἀπόδεξις. ἐμὲ ὦν ἡ ταῦτα κελεύει ποιεῖν, ἡ αὐτὸς ἐθέλει τριήκοντα μυριάδας ἀπολεξάμενος τοῦ στρατοῦ παρασχέω μοι τὴν Ἑλλάδα δεδουλωμένην, αὐτὸν δέ με 15 κελεύει ἀπελαύνειν σὺν τῷ λοιπῷ στρατῷ ἐς ἡθεα τὰ ἐμά. σὺ ὦν ἐμοί, καὶ γὰρ περὶ τῆς ναυμαχίης εὖ συνεβούλευτας τῆς γενομένης οὐκ ἐῷσα ποιεῖσθαι, νῦν τε συμβούλευσον ὁκότερα ποιέων ἐπιτύχω εὖ βουλευ- 102 σάμενος. ὁ μὲν ταῦτα συνεβουλεύετο, ἡ δὲ λέγει τάδε. Βασιλεῦ, χαλεπὸν μὲν ἐστὶ συμβουλευομένῳ τυχεῖν τὰ ἄριστα εἶπασαν, ἐπὶ μέντοι τοῖσι κατήκουσι πρήγμασι.

ἀπο.— 5. ἐπικλήτοισι: *his chosen advisers*. Cp. 9. 42. 8.— 7. τά: Syn. § 13. 1.— 12. βουλομένοισι κτέ.: *they would be glad of an opportunity to prove this*. Cp. 8. 10. 13.— 18. νῦν τε: τε is difficult. νῦν τε freq. begins a sentence with an inferential rather than a temporal meaning. Cp. 8. 140. α 4, 8. 143. 7. But νῦν is temporal here, with reference to the *former* good advice. After an introductory voc.,

followed by an explanatory γάρ clause, the prin. clause begins with νῦν ὦν (1. 30. 13, 1. 121. 4, 9. 87. 5) or σύ νυν (1. 124. 5, 4. 97. 11). Here the introductory σὺ ὦν ἐμοί is hardly parallel. *Now also* is the meaning best suited to the context, but τε can not mean *also*. Possibly νῦν ἔτι (cp. 1. 57. 3) should be read. Cp. 9. 58. 4 ὦ παῖδες Ἀλκιέω, ἔτι τί λέξετε *what further have you to say?*

δοκεῖ μοι αὐτὸν μὲν σε ἀπελαύνειν ὀπίσω, Μαρδόνιον δέ, εἰ ἐθέλει τε καὶ ὑποδέκεται ταῦτα ποιήσιν, αὐτοῦς καταλιπεῖν σὺν τοῖσι ἐθέλει. τοῦτο μὲν γάρ, ἣν καταστρέψῃται τά φησι θέλειν καὶ οἱ προχωρήσῃ τὰ νοέων λέγει, σὸν τὸ ἔργον, ὦ δέσποτα, γίνεται· οἱ γὰρ σοὶ δοῦλοι κατεργάσαντο· τοῦτο δέ, ἣν τὰ ἐναντία τῆς Μαρδονίου γνώμης γένηται, οὐδεμία συμφορὴ μεγάλη ἔσται σέο τε περιέοντος καὶ ἐκείνων τῶν πρηγμάτων [περὶ οἶκον τὸν σόν]. ἣν γὰρ σύ τε περιῆς καὶ οἶκος ὁ σός, πολλοὺς πολλακίς ἀγῶνας δραμέονται περὶ σφέων αὐτῶν οἱ Ἕλληνες. Μαρδονίου δέ, ἣν τι πάθῃ, λόγος οὐδεὶς γίνεται· οὐδέ τι νικῶντες οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῶσι, δούλον σὸν ἀπολέσαντες· σὺ δέ, τῶν εἵνεκα τὸν 103 στόλον ἐποιήσω, πυρώσας τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀπελᾶς. ἦσθη τε δὴ τῇ συμβουλίῃ Ξέρξης· λέγουσα γὰρ ἐπετύγχανε τὰ περ αὐτὸς ἐνόει. οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάντες καὶ πᾶσαι συνεβούλευον αὐτῷ μένειν, ἔμενε ἂν δοκεῖν ἐμοί· οὕτω καταρρωδῇκει. ἐπαινέσας δὲ τὴν Ἀρτεμισίην ταύτην 5 μὲν ἀποστέλλει ἄγουσαν αὐτοῦ τοὺς παῖδας ἐς Ἐφε-

102. 4. αὐτὸν μὲν σε: Syn. § 10.

4. — 5. ταῦτα ποιήσιν: refers to παρασχεῖν τὴν Ἑλλάδα δεδουλωμένην. — 7. τὰ νοέων λέγει: *what he intends and tells*. — 8. γίνεται: pres. in anticipation of the fut. Cp. the aor. κατεργάσαντο in l. 9 with the force of a fut. pf. — 9. ἐναντία: on the following case, see Syn. § 4. i. A. — 11. ἐκείνων: *there*, in Persia. — 13. δραμέονται περὶ: cp. 7. 57. 6. — 15. γίνεται: pres. for fut.

XERXES SENDS HIS SONS TO EPHESUS IN CHARGE OF ARTEMISIA AND HERMOTIMUS. THE STORY OF HERMOTIMUS (CC. 103-106)

103. 2. τε δὴ: on account of the γάρ clause, καί does not follow, but ἐπαινέσας δέ. — 6. ἄγουσαν: in ἄγω and φέρω the pres. ptc. is more freq. than the fut. after πέμπω etc. GS. 338. — τοὺς παῖδας:

104 σον· νόθοι γάρ τινες παῖδες οἱ συνείποντο. συνέπεμπε δὲ τοῖσι παισὶ φύλακον Ἑρμότιμον, γένος μὲν ἔοντα Πηδασέα, φερόμενον δὲ οὐ τὰ δεύτερα τῶν εὐνούχων παρὰ βασιλεῖ. [οἱ δὲ Πηδασεῖς οἰκεύουσι ὑπὲρ Ἀλικαρνησσοῦ. ἐν δὲ τοῖσι Πηδάσοισι τούτοισι τοιόνδε συμφέρεται πρῆγμα γίνεσθαι· ἐπεὰν τοῖσι ἀμφικτύοσι πᾶσι τοῖσι ἀμφὶ ταύτης οἰκεύουσι τῆς πόλιος μέλλῃ τι ἐντὸς χρόνου ἔσεσθαι χαλεπὸν, τότε ἡ ἱρεὶα αὐτόθι τῆς Ἀθηναίης φύει πάγωνα μέγαν. τοῦτο δέ σφι δις ἤδη  
105 ἐγένετο. ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν Πηδασέων ὁ Ἑρμότιμος ἦν] τῷ μεγίστῃ τίσις ἤδη ἀδικηθέντι ἐγένετο πάντων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν. ἀλόντα γὰρ αὐτὸν ὑπὸ πολεμίων καὶ πωλεόμενον ὠνεῖται Πανιώνιος ἀνὴρ Χῖος, ὃς τὴν ζόην κατεστήσατο ἀπ' ἔργων ἀνοσιωπάτων· ὅκως γὰρ κτή-  
σαιτο παῖδας εἶδεος ἐπαμμένους, ἐκτάμνων ἀγινέων ἐπώλει ἐς Σάρδεις τε καὶ Ἐφεσον χρημάτων μεγάλων. παρὰ γὰρ τοῖσι βαρβάροισι τιμιώτεροί εἰσι οἱ

cp. 7. 39. 4. The γάρ clause also explains the τοῖς. Cp. 8. 21. 2.

104. 3. οὐ τὰ δεύτερα: i.e. he held the first place.—4. οἱ δὲ Πηδασεῖς: the bracketed passage occurs in 1. 175, where it is better suited to the context. It was probably a marginal note to Πηδασέα. The words vary considerably from 1. 175 and there are a number of peculiar expressions.—6. τοῖσι ἀμφικτύοσι . . . πόλιος: in 1. 175 αὐτοῖσί τε καὶ περιοικοῖσι.—7. πᾶσι: the word is unnecessary.—ἀμφί: with gen. in local

sense exceedingly rare (Theocr. 25. 9).—8. ἐντὸς χρόνου: this phrase is not elsewhere used.—9. δις: in 1. 175 τρίς.

105. 2. ἤδη: limiting μεγίστη—greatest as yet. Cp. 8. 106. 13 and Thuc. 6. 31. 6; with a comparative 2. 148.—3. ἴδμεν: ἴσμεν.—4. πωλεόμενον: being on sale.—τὴν ζόην κατεστήσατο: had set himself to gain his living.—6. ἐπαμμένους: possessed of. Perf. part. of ἐφάπτω. Cp. 1. 199. 23.—ἐκτάμνων: Dial. § 1. ii. 1. The pres. partics. of his regular

εὐνούχοι πίστιος εἵνεκα τῆς πάσης τῶν ἐνορχέων. ἄλλους τε δὴ ὁ Πανιώνιος ἐξέταμε πολλούς, ἅτε ποιεόμενος 10 ἐκ τούτου τὴν ζόην, καὶ δὴ καὶ τοῦτον. καὶ οὐ γὰρ τὰ πάντα ἐδυστύχει ὁ Ἑρμότιμος, ἀπικνεῖται ἐκ τῶν Σαρδίων παρὰ βασιλέα μετ' ἄλλων δώρων, χρόνου δὲ προϊόντος πάντων τῶν εὐνούχων ἐτιμήθη μάλιστα παρὰ Ξέρξη. 106 ὥς δὲ τὸ στρατεύμα τὸ Περσικὸν ὄρμα βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας ἐὼν ἐν Σάρδισι, ἐνθαῦτα καταβὰς κατὰ δὴ τι πρῆγμα ὁ Ἑρμότιμος ἐς γῆν τὴν Μυσίην, τὴν Χίωι νέμονται, Ἀταρνεὺς δὲ καλεῖται, εὕρισκει τὸν Πανιώνιον ἐνθαῦτα. ἐπιγνοὺς δὲ ἔλεγε πρὸς αὐτὸν πολλοὺς καὶ 5 φιλίους λόγους, πρῶτα μὲν οἱ καταλέγων ὅσα αὐτὸς δι' ἐκείνων ἔχοι ἀγαθὰ, δευτέρα δέ οἱ ὑπισχνεόμενος ἀντὶ τούτων ὅσα μιν ἀγαθὰ ποιήσει, ἣν κομίσας τοὺς οἰκέτας οἰκῇ ἐκείνῃ, ὥστε ὑποδεξάμενον ἄσμενον τοὺς λόγους τὸν Πανιώνιον κομίσαι τὰ τέκνα καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα. ὥς 10 δὲ ἄρα πανοικίῃ μιν περιέλαβε, ἔλεγε ὁ Ἑρμότιμος τάδε· Ὡ πάντων ἀνδρῶν ἤδη μάλιστα ἀπ' ἔργων ἀνοσιωτάτων τὸν βίον κτησάμενε, τί σε ἐγὼ κακὸν ἢ αὐτὸς ἢ τῶν ἐμῶν τις ἐργάσατο, ἢ σὲ ἢ τῶν σῶν τινα, ὅτι με ἀντ' ἀνδρὸς ἐποίησας τὸ μηδὲν εἶναι; ἐδόκεις τε θεοὺς 15 λήσειν οἷα ἐμηχανῶ τότε· οἷ σε ποιήσαντα ἀνόσια, νόμῳ δικαίῳ χρεώμενοι, ὑπήγαγον ἐς χεῖρας τὰς ἐμάς, ὥστε σε μὴ μέμψασθαι τὴν ἀπ' ἐμέο τοι ἐσομένην δίκην.

custom. — 9. τῆς πάσης: *in all things*.

106. 2. δὴ τι: cp. 8. 53. 2. —

4. Ἀταρνεὺς: opposite Lesbos

See 1. 160. — 9. ἐκείνῃ: *there*, in Atarneus. — 12. ἤδη: see 105. 2.

— 14. ὅτι: *in respect of which, on account of which*. — 15. ἐποίησας:

with accus. and infin. με εἶναι. Cp.

8. 100. 26. — τό: with μηδέν. Cp.

1. 32. 4. — 16. λήσειν: the sub-

ject is οἷα ἐμηχανῶ. — 18. ὥστε:

ὥς δέ οἱ ταῦτα ὤνειδισε, ἀχθέντων τῶν παιδῶν ἐς ὄψιν ἠναγκάζετο ὁ Πανιώνιος τῶν ἐνωτοῦ παιδῶν, τεσσέρων 20 ἑόντων, τὰ αἰδοῖα ἀποτάμνειν, ἀναγκαζόμενος δὲ ἐποίει ταῦτα· αὐτοῦ τε, ὥς ταῦτα ἐργάσατο, οἱ παῖδες ἀναγκαζόμενοι ἀπέταμνον. Πανιώνιον μὲν νυν οὕτω περιῆλθε ἥ τε τίσις καὶ Ἑρμότιμος.

- 107 Ξέρξης δὲ ὥς τοὺς παῖδας ἐπέτρεψε Ἀρτεμισίῃ ἀπάγειν ἐς Ἐφεσον, καλέσας Μαρδόνιον ἐκέλευέ μιν τῆς στρατιῆς διαλέγειν τοὺς βούλεται, καὶ ποιεῖν τοῖσι λόγοισι τὰ ἔργα [πειρώμενον] ὅμοια. ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέρην ἐς τοσοῦτο ἐγίνετο, τῆς δὲ νυκτὸς κελεύσαν· 5 τος βασιλέος τὰς νέας οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκ τοῦ Φαλήρου ἀπῆγον ὀπίσω ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ὥς τάχειος εἶχε ἕκαστος, διαφυλαξούσας τὰς σχεδίας πορευθῆναι βα-

see Syn. § 23. 4. h. — 23. *περιῆλθε*: *came around to*, as his inevitable fate. — *ἥ τε τίσις καὶ Ἑ.*: for the gen., because Hermotimus himself took part in the punishment.

THE PERSIAN FLEET SETS SAIL FOR THE HELLESPONT AND IS PURSUED BY THE GREEKS AS FAR AS ANDROS. THE ADVICE OF THEMISTOCLES: HIS MESSAGE TO XERXES (CC. 107-110)

107. 4. *ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέρην*: there has been no reference to time since the close of the battle (chap. 96). Apparently *this day* is still the day of the battle (cp. the next chap.). But when, then, was the attempt made to build the

mole? When did the councils with Mardonius and Artemisia take place? When were the Egyptian marines disembarked (9. 32. 10)? And was no time taken for repairs? It is to be noted that the battle lasted till nightfall (Aesch. *Pers.* 428). Hdt. is frequently very loose in his chronology (see 8. 15). — 5. *ἐς τοσοῦτο ἐγίνετο*: *things reached this point*. Cp. 7. 167. 4, 8. 126. 1, 9. 18. 18, 9. 66. 1, though all these passages have subjects of *ἐγίνετο* expressed. — 7. *τάχειος*: for the gen. with *εἶχε*, *ἦκειν* and an adverb see S. 1441. — 8. *σχεδίας*: = *γεφύρας*. Cp. 8. 97. 8. — *πορευθῆναι*: infin. of purpose. See Syn. § 23. 6. e. —

σιλει. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀγχοῦ ἦσαν Ζωστήρος πλέοντες οἱ βάρ-  
 βαροι, ἀνατείνουσι γὰρ ἄκραι λεπταὶ τῆς ἡπείρου, ταύτας 10  
 ἔδοξάν τε νέας εἶναι καὶ ἔφευγον ἐπὶ πολλόν. χρόνῳ  
 δὲ μαθόντες ὅτι οὐ νέες εἶεν ἀλλ' ἄκραι, συλληχθέντες  
 108 ἐκομίζοντο. ὥς δὲ ἡμέρη ἐγίνετο, ὁρῶντες οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 κατὰ χώραν μένοντα τὸν στρατὸν τὸν πεζὸν ἡλπιζον  
 καὶ τὰς νέας εἶναι περὶ Φάληρον, ἐδόκεόν τε ναυμα-  
 χήσειν σφέας παραρτέοντό τε ὥς ἀλεξήσομενοι. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ ἐπύθοντο τὰς νέας οἰχωκυίας, αὐτίκα μετὰ ταῦτα 5  
 ἔδοκει ἐπιδιώκειν. τὸν μὲν νυν ναυτικὸν τὸν Ξέρξῳ  
 στρατὸν οὐκ ἐπεῖδον διώξαντες μέχρι Ἄνδρου, ἐς δὲ τὴν  
 Ἄνδρον ἀπικόμενοι ἐβουλεύοντο. Θεμιστοκλῆς μὲν  
 νυν γνώμην ἀπεδείκνυτο διὰ νήσων τραπομένους καὶ  
 ἐπιδιώξαντας τὰς νέας πλεῖν ἰθὺς ἐπὶ τὸν Ἑλλήσ- 10  
 ποντον λύσοντας τὰς γεφύρας. Εὐρυβιάδης δὲ τὴν  
 ἐναντίην ταύτῃ γνώμην ἐτίθετο, λέγων ὥς εἰ λύσουσι  
 τὰς σχεδίας, τοῦτ' ἂν μέγιστον πάντων σφεῖς κακὸν  
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐργασαίαιτο. εἰ γὰρ ἀναγκασθεῖη ἀπο-  
 λαμφθεῖς ὁ Πέρσης μένειν ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ, πειρῶτο 15  
 ἂν ἡσυχίην μὴ ἄγειν, ὥς ἄγοντι μὲν οἱ ἡσυχίην οὔτε  
 τι προχωρεῖν οἷόν τε ἔσται τῶν πρηγμάτων οὔτε τις  
 κομιδὴ τὸ ὀπίσω φανήσεται, λιμῶ τέ οἱ ἡ στρατιὴ δια-  
 φθερεῖται, ἐπιχειροῦντι δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἔργου ἐχομένῳ

9. Ζωστήρος: a promontory on the west coast of Attica, halfway from the Peiraeus to Sunium. — 10. ταύτας: after a parenthetical γάρ clause, the main clause frequently begins with a demonstrative. See Syn. § 31. 4.

108. 8. Ἄνδρον: just south-east of Euboea. — 12. γνώμην ἐτίθετο: cp. 7. 82. 3. — 13. τοῦτ': in apposition to μέγιστον κακόν. — σφεῖς: Syn. § 9. 1. a. — 16. ὥς ἄγοντι κτί.: since if he remained quiet nothing could come out well



πάντα τὰ κατὰ τὴν Εὐρώπην οἶά τε ἔσται προσχωρήσαι 20  
κατὰ πόλιν τε καὶ κατὰ ἔθνεα, ἥτοι ἀλισκομένων γε ἡ  
πρὸ τούτου ὁμολογεόντων· τροφήν τε ἔξειν σφέας τὸν  
ἐπέτειον αἰεὶ τὸν Ἑλλήνων καρπὸν. ἀλλὰ δοκεῖν γὰρ  
νικηθέντα τῇ ναυμαχίῃ οὐ μενεῖν ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ τὸν  
Πέρσῃ· ἐατέον ὦν εἶναι φεύγειν, ἐς ὃ ἔλθῃ φεύγων 25  
ἐς τὴν ἑωυτοῦ· τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ περὶ τῆς ἐκείνου ποιέ-  
σθαι ἤδη τὸν ἀγῶνα ἐκέλευε. ταύτης δὲ εἶχοντο τῆς  
γνώμης καὶ Πελοποννησίων τῶν ἄλλων οἱ στρατηγοί.  
109 ὥς δὲ ἔμαθε ὅτι οὐ πείσει τοὺς γε πολλοὺς πλεῖν ἐς  
τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς, μεταβαλὼν πρὸς  
τοὺς Ἀθηναίους (οὗτοι γὰρ μάλιστα ἐκπεφευγότες  
περιημέκτεον, ὁρμέατό τε ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον πλεῖν  
καὶ ἐπὶ σφέων αὐτῶν βαλόμενοι, εἰ ὅλλοι μὴ βου- 5  
λοίατο) ἔλεγέ σφι τάδε· Καὶ αὐτὸς ἤδη πολλοῖσι παρ-  
εγενόμην καὶ πολλῷ πλέω ἀκήκοα τοιάδε γενέσθαι,  
ἄνδρας ἐς ἀναγκαίην ἀπειληθέντας νενικημένους ἀνα-  
μάχεσθαι τε καὶ ἀναλαμβάνειν τὴν προτέρην κακότητα.  
ἡμεῖς δὲ (εὖρημα γὰρ εὐρήκαμεν ἡμέας τε αὐτοὺς καὶ 10

of his affairs. — 20. οἶά τε ἔσται προσχωρήσαι: will be likely to join him. — 21. ἀλισκομένων: gen. abs. instead of agreement with ἔθνεα. Cp. 8. 69. 3. — 25. ἐς ὃ ἔλθῃ: on the omission of ἄν, see Syn. § 20. 2. — 27. ἤδη: with τὸ ἐνθεῦτεν. Cp. 8. 98. 12 and 8. 3. 12.

109. 2. μεταβαλὼν: shifting his ground. Cp. 8. 4. 10. — πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους: with ἔλεγε; on account of the parenthesis re-

peated in σφι. — 4. ὁρμέατο: were eager. Plupf. — 5. βαλόμενοι: even taking it upon themselves. Cp. 3. 71. 20, 4. 160. 4. — 6. αὐτὸς... παρεγενόμην: I have had personal experience of. — πολλοῖσι: many such cases. See following τοιάδε, which is explained by ἄνδρας... κακότητα. — 9. ἀναλαμβάνειν: retrieve. — 10. εὖρημα γὰρ κτί.: for by a stroke of good fortune we have saved ourselves. εὖρημα is in ap-

τὴν Ἑλλάδα, νέφος τοσοῦτο ἀνθρώπων ἀνωσάμενοι)  
 μὴ διώκωμεν ἀνδρας φεύγοντας. τάδε γὰρ οὐκ ἡμεῖς  
 κατεργασάμεθα, ἀλλὰ θεοί τε καὶ ἥρωες, οἱ ἐφθόνησαν  
 ἀνδρα ἓνα τῆς τε Ἀσίνης καὶ τῆς Εὐρώπης βασιλεῦσαι,  
 ἔοντα ἀνόσιόν τε καὶ ἀτάσθαλον· ὃς τὰ τε ἱρὰ καὶ τὰ 15  
 ἴδια ἐν ὁμοίῳ ἐποιεῖτο, ἐμπιπράς τε καὶ καταβάλλων  
 τῶν θεῶν τὰ ἀγάλματα· ὃς καὶ τὴν θάλασσαν ἀπεμα-  
 στίγωσε πέδας τε κατῆκε. ἀλλ' εὖ γὰρ ἔχει ἐς τὸ  
 παρεὸν ἡμῖν νῦν μὲν ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι καταμείναντας  
 ἡμέων τε αὐτῶν ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ τῶν οἰκετέων· καί 20  
 τις οἰκίην τε ἀναπλάσασθω καὶ σπόρον ἀνακῶς ἐχέτω,  
 παντελέως ἀπελάσας τὸν βάρβαρον· ἅμα δὲ τῷ ἔαρι  
 καταπλέωμεν ἐπὶ Ἑλλησπόντου καὶ Ἰωνίης. ταῦτα ἔλεγε  
 ἀποθήκην μέλλων ποιήσεσθαι ἐς τὸν Πέρσην, ἵνα ἦν  
 ἄρα τί μιν καταλαμβάνῃ πρὸς Ἀθηναίων πάθος, ἔχρη 25  
 110 ἀποστροφὴν· τὰ περ ὧν καὶ ἐγένετο. Θεμιστοκλῆς  
 μὲν ταῦτα ἔγων διέβαλλε, Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ ἐπείθοντο·  
 ἐπειδὴ γὰρ καὶ πρότερον δεδογμένος εἶναι σοφὸς ἐφάνη  
 ἔων ἀληθῶς σοφός τε καὶ εὖβουλος, πάντως ἔτοιμοι  
 ᾗσαν λέγοντι πείθεσθαι. ὥς δὲ οὗτοί οἱ ἀνεγνωσμένοι 5

position with ἡμέας and Ἑλλάδα. We should expect τὴν σωτηρίαν ἡμῶν, etc. Note also the rhetorical effect in the poetical νέφος, and in ἐς ἀναγκαίην ἀπειληθέντας above. — 13. ἐφθόνησαν: see 7. 10. ε 5. — 14. βασιλεῖσαι: ingressive. — 17. ἀπεμαστίγωσε: see 7. 35. 2. — 18. ἀλλ' εὖ γάρ: see Syn. § 31. 4; but cp. 7. 158. 12. — 21. τις: Syn. § 11. 1. — ἀναπλάσασθω . . .

ἀνακῶς ἐχέτω: unusual expressions. See note on l. 10. — 24. ἐς: w. a person, as the place of deposit. — 26. ὧν: really. Syn. § 32. 1. Themistocles was ostracized some time between 476 and 471 B.C.

110. 2. διέβαλλε: was trying to deceive. — 3. ἐπειδὴ γάρ κτί: for after he was found to be truly wise — he had had the reputation of wisdom before — they were

ἦσαν, αὐτίκα μετὰ ταῦτα ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς ἄνδρας ἀπέπεμπε ἔχοντας πλοῖον, τοῖσι ἐπίστευε σιγᾶν ἐς πᾶσαν βάσανον ἀπικνεομένοισι, τὰ αὐτὸς ἐντείλατο βασιλεῖ φράσαι· τῶν καὶ Σίκιννος ὁ οἰκέτης αὐτῆς ἐγένετο· οἱ ἐπειδὴ ἀπίκοντο πρὸς τὴν Ἀττικὴν, οἱ μὲν κατέμενον <sup>10</sup> ἐπὶ τῷ πλοίῳ, Σίκιννος δὲ ἀναβὰς παρὰ Ξέρξην ἔλεγε τάδε· Ἐπεμψέ με Θεμιστοκλῆς ὁ Νεοκλέος, στρατηγὸς μὲν Ἀθηναίων, ἀνὴρ δὲ τῶν συμμάχων πάντων ἄριστος καὶ σοφώτατος, φράσσοντά τοι ὅτι Θεμιστοκλῆς ὁ Ἀθηναῖος σοὶ βουλόμενος ὑπουργεῖν ἔσχε τοὺς <sup>15</sup> Ἕλληνας τὰς νέας βουλομένους διώκειν καὶ τὰς ἐν Ἑλλησπόντῳ γεφύρας λύειν. καὶ νῦν κατ' ἡσυχίην <sup>111</sup> πολλὴν κομίζω. οἱ μὲν ταῦτα σημήναντες ἀπέπλεον ὀπίσω· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεῖτε σφί ἀπέδοξε μήτ' ἐπιδιώκειν ἔτι προσωτέρῳ τῶν βαρβάρων τὰς νέας μήτε πλεῖν ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον λύσοντας τὸν πόρον, τὴν Ἄνδρον περικατέατο ἐξελεῖν ἐθέλοντες. ἄπρωτοι γὰρ <sup>5</sup> Ἄνδριοι νησιωτῶν αἰτηθέντες πρὸς Θεμιστοκλέος χρή-

*quite ready*, etc.—7. *σιγᾶν*: the fut. inf. might have been used with reference to this particular case; the pres. is a general statement = *in whose silence he trusted*.—8. *τὰ . . . ἐντείλατο*: object of *φράσαι*. Cp. *ἐντειλόμενος τὰ λέγειν* *χρέον* 8. 75. 5.—9. *οἱ*: relative, divided into *οἱ μὲν . . . Σίκιννος* *δέ*.—14. *Θεμιστοκλῆς ὁ Ἀθηναῖος*: this is the beginning of the message as Themistocles gave it, *τὰ αὐτὸς ἐντείλατο*. Considerable doubt has been expressed

about the story of the second message to Xerxes in spite of the letter which Thucydides gives us (1. 137. 4) as sent by Themistocles to Darius. This letter contains the words *γράφας . . . τὴν τῶν γεφυρῶν τότε δι' αὐτὸν οὐ διάλυσιν*.

THE GREEKS COLLECT CONTRIBUTIONS FROM THE ISLANDS (CC. 111–112)

111. 6. *νησιωτῶν*: on the omission of the article, see 8. 46. 1.—

ματα οὐκ ἔδοσαν, ἀλλὰ προῖσχομένου Θεμιστοκλέος λόγον τόνδε, ὡς ἤκοιεν Ἀθηναῖοι περὶ ἑωυτοὺς ἔχοντες δύο θεοὺς μεγάλους, Πειθῷ τε καὶ Ἀναγκαίῃν, οὕτω τέ σφι κάρτα δοτέα εἶναι χρήματα, ὑπεκρίναντο πρὸς <sup>10</sup> ταῦτα λέγοντες ὡς κατὰ λόγον ἦσαν ἄρα αἱ Ἀθῆναι μεγάλαι τε καὶ εὐδαίμονες καὶ θεῶν χρηστῶν ἤκοιεν εὖ, ἐπεὶ Ἀνδρίους γε εἶναι γεωπείνας ἐς τὰ μέγιστα ἀνήκοντας, καὶ θεοὺς δύο ἀχρήστους οὐκ ἐκλείπειν σφέων τὴν νῆσον ἀλλ' αἰεὶ φιλοχωρεῖν, Πενίην τε καὶ <sup>15</sup> Ἀμηχανίην, καὶ τούτων τῶν θεῶν ἐπηβόλους ἔοντας Ἀνδρίους οὐ δώσειν χρήματα· οὐδέποτε γὰρ (ἂν) τῆς ἑωυτῶν ἀδυναμίας τὴν Ἀθηναίων δύναμιν εἶναι κρέσσω. οὗτοι μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ὑποκρινάμενοι καὶ οὐ <sup>112</sup> δόντες χρήματα ἐπολιορκέοντο. Θεμιστοκλέης δέ, οὐ γὰρ ἐπαύετο πλεονεκτέων, ἐσπέμπων ἐς τὰς ἄλλας νήσους ἀπειλητηρίους λόγους αἰτεῖ χρήματα διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν ἀγγέλων [χρεώμενος] τοῖσι καὶ πρὸς βασιλέα

8. περὶ ἑωυτούς: *around them*, as part of their force, = *on their side*. — 11. κατὰ λόγον: *in proportion*. — ἦσαν ἄρα: the imperf. with ἄρα is used when the real state of affairs is suddenly appreciated. See Syn. § 15. 2. f. The Andrians had known before that Athens was great and prosperous, but they had not known of their two good gods. They had known that they themselves were poor and had two worthless gods, and, now that the fourth fact is known, they realize that the whole thing

is *in proportion* (κατὰ λόγον). Mathematically stated, it is *poor Andrians: bad gods = rich Athens: good gods*. Translate *it is then in perfect proportion that Athens is prosperous and well provided with good gods, since the Andrians are poor and two worthless gods never leave their island*. — 12. θεῶν: on the gen. see 8. 107. 7. — 13. εἶναι: inf. in a subord. clause in indirect narration, though λέγοντες ὡς with finite moods precedes. — 18. ἀδυναμίας κτέ.: see 7. 172. 17.

ἐχρήσατο, λέγων ὥς εἰ μὴ δώσουσι τὸ αἰτεόμενον, 5  
 ἐπάξει τὴν στρατιὴν τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ πολιορκέων  
 ἐξαιρήσει. λέγων ταῦτα συνέλεγε χρήματα μεγάλα  
 παρὰ Καρυστίων τε καὶ Παρίων, οἱ πυνθανόμενοι τὴν  
 τε Ἄνδρον ὥς πολιορκέοιτο διότι ἐμήδισε, καὶ Θεμι-  
 στοκλέα ὥς εἶη ἐν αἷνῃ μεγίστῃ τῶν στρατηγῶν, δεί- 10  
 σαντες ταῦτα ἔπεμπον χρήματα. εἰ δὲ δὴ τινες καὶ  
 ἄλλοι ἔδοσαν νησιωτέων, οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν· δοκέω δέ  
 τινας καὶ ἄλλους δοῦναι καὶ οὐ τούτους μούνους.  
 καὶ τοι Καρυστίοισι γε οὐδὲν τούτου εἵνεκα τοῦ κακοῦ  
 ὑπερβολὴ ἐγένετο. Πάριοι δὲ Θεμιστοκλέα χρήμασι 15  
 ἱλασάμενοι διέφυγον τὸ στράτευμα. Θεμιστοκλῆς μὲν  
 νυν ἐξ Ἄνδρον ὁρμώμενος χρήματα παρὰ νησιωτέων  
 ἐκτάτο λάθρῃ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν.

- 113 Οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ Ξέρξην ἐπισχόντες ὀλίγας ἡμέρας μετὰ  
 τὴν ναυμαχίην ἐξήλαυνον ἐς Βοιωτοὺς τὴν αὐτὴν ὁδόν.  
 ἔδοξε γὰρ Μαρδονίῳ ἅμα μὲν προπέμψαι βασιλέα, ἅμα  
 δὲ ἀνωρίην εἶναι τοῦ ἔτεος πολεμεῖν, χειμερίσαι τε  
 ἄμεινον εἶναι ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ, καὶ ἔπειτα ἅμα τῷ ἔαρι 5

112. 8. *Καρυστίων*: in southern Euboea. — 10. *στρατηγῶν*: partitive. — 11. *ταῦτα*: a siege. — 15. *ὑπερβολή*: = *ἀναβολή*. On the treatment of the Carystians, see 8. 121. 2.

THE PERSIAN ARMY LEAVES  
 ATHENS. MARDONIUS SELECTS  
 HIS FORCE (C. 113)

113. 1. *ὀλίγας ἡμέρας*: Busolt (*Griech. Gesch.* 2. 704) concludes

that the withdrawal from Athens took place on October 2, because there was an eclipse of the sun on that date, and in 9. 10. 14 it is said that an eclipse occurred as Cleombrotus with the army at the Isthmus was sacrificing for an attack upon the Persians, presumably at the time of the withdrawal. — 2. *τὴν αὐτὴν*: the γάρ-clause tells why Mardonius made the same march as the King.

πειρᾶσθαι τῆς Πελοποννήσου. ὥς δὲ ἀπίκато ἐς τὴν Θεσσαλίην, ἐνθαῦτα Μαρδόνιος ἐξελέγετο πρώτους μὲν τοὺς Πέρσας πάντας τοὺς ἀθανάτους καλεομένους, πλὴν Ὑδάρνεος τοῦ στρατηγοῦ (οὗτος γὰρ οὐκ ἔφη λείπεσθαι βασιλέως), μετὰ δὲ τῶν ἄλλων Περσέων τοὺς 10 θωρηκοφόρους καὶ τὴν ἵππον τὴν χιλίην, καὶ Μήδους τε καὶ Σάκας καὶ Βακτρίους τε καὶ Ἰνδούς, καὶ τὸν πεζὸν καὶ τὴν ἵππον. ταῦτα μὲν ἔθνεα ὅλα εἴλετο, ἐκ δὲ τῶν ἄλλων συμμαχῶν ἐξελέγετο κατ' ὀλίγους, τοῖσι εἶδεά τε ὑπῆρχε διαλέγων καὶ εἰ τέοισί τι χρηστὸν 15 συνῆδει πεποιημένον· ἐν δὲ πλείστον ἔθνος Πέρσας αἰρεῖτο, ἄνδρας στρεπτοφόρους τε καὶ ψελιοφόρους, ἐπὶ δὲ Μήδους. οὗτοι δὲ πλῆθος μὲν οὐκ ἐλάσσονες ἦσαν τῶν Περσέων, ῥώμῃ δὲ ἴσσοι· ὥστε σύμπαντας 114 τριήκοντα μυριάδας γενέσθαι σὺν ἱππεύσι. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ἐν τῷ Μαρδονίῳ τε τὴν στρατιὴν διέκρινε καὶ Ξέρξης ἦν περὶ Θεσσαλίην, χρηστήριον ἐληλύθει ἐκ Δελφῶν Λακεδαιμονίοισι, Ξέρξην αἰτεῖν δίκας τοῦ Λεωνίδεω φόνου καὶ τὸ διδόμενον ἐξ ἐκείνου 5 δέκεσθαι. πέμπουσι δὴ κήρυκα τὴν ταχίστην Σπαρ-

— 8. τοὺς ἀθανάτους: see 7. 41. 7, 7. 83. 2. — 10. μετὰ δέ: adverbial. — 11. θωρηκοφόρους: see 7. 61. 4 for the equipment of the Persian division. Apparently the main body was thus equipped, though here a selection is spoken of. — τὴν χιλίην: there were two bodies of 1000 horse in the bodyguard of Xerxes. See 7. 40. 6, 7. 41. 5, 7. 55. 11. — 13. ταῦτα: assimilated

to ἔθνεα, which is in apposition. — 14. κατ' ὀλίγους: distributive. As we learn in 9. 32 men were selected only from a small number of the nations. — 15. εἶδεα: physical appearance. — τέοισι: τισί. — 16. ἐν δέ: adverbial. — 17. στρεπτοφόρους: see 7. 83. 10, 9. 80. 9. — 18. οὐκ ἐλάσσονες: a correction of πλείστον above. — 20. σὺν: inclusive of.

τιῇται, ὃς ἐπειδὴ κατέλαβε ἐοῦσαν ἔτι πᾶσαν τὴν στρα-  
τιὴν ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ, ἐλθὼν ἐς ἄψιν τὴν Ξέρξῃ ἐλεγε  
τάδε· Ὡ βασιλεῦ Μῆδων, Λακεδαιμόνιοί τέ σε καὶ  
Ἡρακλεῖδαι οἱ ἀπὸ Σπάρτης αἰτέουσι φόνου δίκας, ὅτι 10  
σφέων τὸν βασιλέα ἀπέκτεινας ῥυόμενον τὴν Ἑλλάδα.  
ὁ δὲ γελάσας τε καὶ κατασχὼν πολλὸν χρόνον, ὥς οἱ  
ἐτύγχανε παρεστῶς Μαρδόνιος, δεικνὺς ἐς τοῦτον εἶπε·  
Τοιγάρ σφι Μαρδόνιος ὁδε δίκας δώσει τοιαύτας οἷας  
115 ἐκείνοισι πρέπει. ὁ μὲν δὴ δεξάμενος τὸ ῥῆθὲν ἀπαλ-  
λάσσετο, Ξέρξης δὲ Μαρδόνιον ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ καταλιπὼν  
αὐτὸς ἐπορεύετο κατὰ τάχος ἐς τὸν Ἑλλησποντον καὶ  
ἀπικνεῖται ἐς τὸν πόρον τῆς διαβάσιος ἐν πέντε καὶ  
τεσσεράκοντα ἡμέρῃσι, ἀπάγων τῆς στρατιῆς οὐδέν 5  
μέρος ὥς εἰπεῖν. ὅκου δὲ πορευόμενοι γινοιάτο καὶ  
κατ' οὔστινας ἀνθρώπους, τὸν τούτων καρπὸν ἀρπά-  
ζοντες ἐσιτέοντο· εἰ δὲ καρπὸν μηδένα εὖροιεν, οἱ δὲ

THE SPARTANS DEMAND SATIS-  
FACTION FOR THE MURDER  
OF LEONIDAS (C. 114)

114. 12. κατασχών: *restrain-  
ing himself, i.e. remaining silent.*  
—14. ὅδε: the article is omitted  
with deictic ὅδε.

THE RETREAT OF XERXES (CC.  
115-120)

115. 4. τὸν πόρον τῆς διαβά-  
σιος: *πόρος* is the *place of pas-  
sage*, *διάβασις* properly *the act of  
passing*. Translate — *the place  
where they crossed*. — πέντε καὶ τεσ-

σεράκοντα: one half the time of  
the march to Attica (8. 51. 4). —  
5. οὐδὲν μέρος: no doubt a great  
exaggeration and not sufficiently  
qualified by ὥς εἰπεῖν. The di-  
vision of 60,000 men under Arta-  
bazus, which was part of the escort  
of the King as far as the Hellespont  
(8. 126. 4), had still 40,000 men  
in the spring (9. 66. 8), although  
engaged in military operations  
after leaving Xerxes (8. 127 ff.).  
For 60,000 left in Ionia see 9. 96. 12.  
See Aeschylus' description of the  
return march in the *Persae*  
480 ff. — 8. οἱ δέ: Syn. § 9. 1. c. —

τὴν ποίην τὴν ἐκ τῆς γῆς ἀναφυομένην καὶ τῶν δέν-  
 δρέων τὸν φλοιὸν περιλέποντες καὶ τὰ φύλλα κατα-<sup>10</sup>  
 δρέποντες κατήσθιον, ὁμοίως τῶν τε ἡμέρων καὶ τῶν  
 ἀγρίων, καὶ ἔλειπον οὐδέν· ταῦτα δ' ἐποίεον ὑπὸ λιμοῦ.  
 ἐπιλαβὼν δὲ λοιμός τε τὸν στρατὸν καὶ δυσεντερὴν  
 κατ' ὁδὸν διέφθειρε. τοὺς δὲ καὶ νοσέοντας αὐτῶν  
 κατέλειπε, ἐπιτάσσωσιν τῇσι πόλισι, ἵνα ἐκάστοτε γίνοιτο<sup>15</sup>  
 ἐλαύνων, μελεδαίνειν τε καὶ τρέφειν, ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ τέ  
 τινας καὶ ἐν Σίρι τῆς Παιονίης καὶ ἐν Μακεδονίῃ.  
 ἔνθα καὶ τὸ ἱρὸν ἄρμα καταλιπὼν τοῦ Διός, ὅτε ἐπὶ  
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἤλανε, ἀπὼν οὐκ ἀπέλαβε, ἀλλὰ δόντες  
 οἱ Παίονες τοῖσι Θρηξὶ ἀπαιτέοντος Ξέρξῃ ἐφασαν<sup>20</sup>  
 νεμομένας ἀρπασθῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν ἄνω Θρηκῶν τῶν  
<sup>116</sup> περὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Στρυμόνος οἰκημένων. ἔνθα καὶ  
 ὁ τῶν Βισαλτέων βασιλεὺς γῆς τε τῆς Κρηστωνικῆς  
 Θρηξὶ ἔργον ὑπερφυνὲς ἐργάσατο· ὃς οὔτε αὐτὸς ἔφη  
 τῷ Ξέρξῃ ἐκὼν εἶναι δουλεύσειν, ἀλλ' οἷχετο ἄνω ἐς  
 τὸ ὄρος τὴν Ῥοδόπην, τοῖσί τε παισὶ ἀπηγόρευε μὴ<sup>5</sup>  
 στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. οἱ δὲ ἀλογήσαντες, ἢ  
 ἄλλως σφί θυμὸς ἐγένετο θεήσασθαι τὸν πόλεμον,  
 ἐστρατεύοντο ἅμα τῷ Πέρσῃ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνεχώρησαν  
 ἀσινεῖς πάντες ἕξ ἔοντες, ἐξώρυξε αὐτῶν ὁ πατὴρ τοὺς

14. τοὺς δέ: *others*, without pre-  
 ceding τοὺς μέν. — 15. ἵνα: *where*.  
 — 17. Σίρι: on the east bank  
 of the Strymon. — 18. ἄρμα: see  
 7. 40. 14. — Διός: the Persian  
 Ahuramazda. — 21. νεμομένας: sc.  
 τὰς ἱπποὺς, implied by ἄρμα.

116. 2. Βισαλτέων: west of the

Strymon. Cp. 7. 115. 4. — Κρη-  
 στωνικῆς: situated between the  
 Axios and the Strymon. Cp. 7.  
 124. 6. — 3. οὔτε . . . τε: *both*  
 refused himself . . . *and*. — 6. ἢ  
 ἄλλως: *or else*. We should expect  
 a participle with this, parallel to  
 ἀλογήσαντες. Cp. 8. 54. 7.



- 117 ὀφθαλμοὺς διὰ τὴν αἰτίην ταύτην. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν τοῦτον τὸν μισθὸν ἔλαβον· οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι ὡς ἐκ τῆς Θρηκῆς πορευόμενοι ἀπίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον, ἐπειγόμενοι τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον τῇσι νηυσὶ διέβησαν ἐς Ἀβυδον· τὰς γὰρ σχεδίας οὐκ εὔρον ἔτι ἐντεταμένας ἀλλ' ὑπὸ 5 χειμῶνος διαλελυμένας. ἐνθαῦτα δὲ κατεχόμενοι σιτία τε πλέω ἢ κατ' ὁδὸν ἐλάγχχανον, οὐδένα τε κόσμον ἐμπιπλάμενοι καὶ ὕδατα μεταβάλλοντες ἀπέθνησκον τοῦ στρατοῦ τοῦ περιεόντος πολλοί. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἅμα Ξέρξῃ
- 118 ἀπικνέονται ἐς Σάρδεις. ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἄλλος ὁδε λόγος λεγόμενος, ὡς ἐπειδὴ Ξέρξης ἀπελαύνων ἐξ Ἀθηνέων ἀπίκετο ἐπ' Ἡϊόνα τὴν ἐπὶ Στρυμόνι, ἐνθεῦτεν οὐκέτι ὁδοιπορίῃσι διεχρήτο, ἀλλὰ τὴν μὲν στρατιὴν Ἰδάρνει ἐπιτράπει ἀπάγειν ἐς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, αὐτὸς δ' ἐπὶ νεὸς 5 Φοινίσσης ἐπιβὰς ἐκομίζετο ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην. πλείοντα δέ μιν ἄνεμον Στρυμονίην ὑπολαβεῖν μέγαν καὶ κυματίνην. καὶ δὴ μᾶλλον γάρ τι χειμαίνεσθαι γεμούσης τῆς νεὸς ὥστε ἐπὶ τοῦ καταστρώματος ἐπεόντων συχῶν Περσέων τῶν σὺν Ξέρξῃ κομιζομένων, ἐνθαῦτα ἐς δέϊμα 10 πεσόντα τὸν βασιλέα εἰρέσθαι βώσαντα τὸν κυβερνήτην εἴ τις ἔστι σφι σωτηρίῃ. καὶ τὸν εἶπαι· Δέσποτα, οὐκ ἔστι οὐδεμία, ἣν μὴ τούτων ἀπαλλαγή τις γένηται τῶν

117. 4. τῇσι νηυσί: the fleet. Cp. 8. 130. 3. — 5. οὐκ εὔρον: Aeschylus, *Persae* 734, says: Ξέρξην φασὶ . . . ἄσμενον μολεῖν γέφυραν γαῖν δυοῖν ζευκτηρίαν. — 7. οὐδένα . . . κόσμον: without restraint. Adverb. acc. Cp. 9. 65. 3. Dat. in 8. 60. γ 4.

118. 1. ἄλλος ὁδε λόγος: another story as follows. — 4. Ἰδάρνει: see 8. 113. 9. — 5. ἐπὶ νεὸς: connect with ἐκομίζετο. — 8. μᾶλλον γὰρ κτί.: since he was being pretty roughly handled by the storm. On τι see Syn. § 11. 2. — 9. ὥστε: Syn. § 25. 4. — 13. ἣν μὴ: Syn.

πολλῶν ἐπιβατέων. καὶ Ξέρξην λέγεται ἀκούσαντα  
 ταῦτα εἰπεῖν· Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, νῦν τις διαδεξάτω ὑμῶν <sup>15</sup>  
 βασιλέος κηδόμενος· ἐν ὑμῖν γὰρ οἶκε εἶναι ἐμοὶ ἡ  
 σωτηρία. τὸν μὲν ταῦτα λέγειν, τοὺς δὲ προσκυνέοντας  
 ἐκπηδᾶν ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν, καὶ τὴν νέα ἐπικουφισθεῖσαν  
 οὕτω δὴ ἀποσωθῆναι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην. ὥς δὲ ἐκβῆναι  
 τάχιστα ἐς γῆν τὸν Ξέρξην, ποιῆσαι τοιόνδε· ὅτι μὲν <sup>20</sup>  
 ἔσωσε βασιλέος τὴν ψυχὴν, δωρήσασθαι χρυσέῳ στε-  
 φάνῳ τὸν κυβερνήτην, ὅτι δὲ Περσέων πολλοὺς ἀπ-  
<sup>119</sup> ὠλεσε, ἀποταμεῖν τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ. οὗτος δὲ ἄλλος  
 λέγεται λόγος περὶ τοῦ Ξέρξεω νόστου, οὐδαμῶς ἔμοιγε  
 πιστός, οὔτε ἄλλως οὔτε τὸ Περσέων τοῦτο πάθος. εἰ  
 γὰρ δὴ ταῦτα οὕτω εἰρέθη ἐκ τοῦ κυβερνήτεω πρὸς  
 Ξέρξην, ἐν μυρίησι γνώμησι μίαν οὐκ ἔχω ἀντίξουν <sup>5</sup>  
 μὴ οὐκ ἂν ποιῆσαι βασιλέα τοιόνδε, τοὺς μὲν ἐκ τοῦ  
 καταστρώματος καταβιβάσαι ἐς κοίλην νέα, ἐόντας  
 Πέρσας καὶ Περσέων τοὺς πρώτους, τῶν δ' ἐρετέων  
 ἐόντων Φοινίκων ὅκως οὐκ ἂν ἴσον πλῆθος τοῖσι Πέρ-  
 σῃσι ἐξέβαλε ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν, ὥς καὶ <sup>10</sup>  
 πρότερόν μοι εἴρηται, ὁδῶ χρεώμενος ἅμα τῷ ἄλλῳ

§ 18. 1. — 15. *τις*: Syn. § 11. 1. —  
 17. *λέγειν* . . . *ἐκπηδᾶν*: repre-  
 senting imperf. indic. Cp. *ἀποσω-*  
*θῆναι*. — 21. *δωρήσασθαι*: on the  
 following cases, see Syn. § 4. ii. B. 1.

119. 3. *πάθος*: acc. of res-  
 pect. This position of *τοῦτο* is  
 allowable when an additional at-  
 tribute like *Περσέων* is present. —  
 5. *ἐν μυρίησι κτέ.*: i.e. not one  
 man in 10,000 would think differ-

ently. — 6. *μὴ οὐκ*: not to be  
 translated; they are due to the  
 negative idea in *ἀντίξουν* and the  
 additional *οὐκ*. — 9. *ὅκως* . . . *ἐξέ-*  
*βαλε*: we should expect an inf. par-  
 allel to *καταβιβάσαι*. *ὅκως* for *ὅτι*  
 is more frequent in Hdt. than in  
 Attic (cp. 7. 161. 5, 7. 237. 5); the  
 preceding verb is negatived. *οὐκ*  
 after *ὅκως* is to be omitted here in  
 translation.

120 στρατῷ ἀπενόστησε ἐς τὴν Ἀσίην. μέγα δὲ καὶ τόδε μαρτύριον· φαίνεται γὰρ Ξέρξης ἐν τῇ ὀπίσω κομιδῇ ἀπικόμενος ἐς Ἀβδηρα καὶ ξεινίην τέ σφι συνθέμενος καὶ δωρησάμενος αὐτοὺς ἀκινάκῃ τε χρυσέῳ καὶ τιήρῃ χρυσοπάστῳ. καὶ ὡς αὐτοὶ λέγουσι Ἀβδηρίται, λέγοντες ἔμοιγε οὐδαμῶς πιστά, πρῶτον ἐλύσατο τὴν ζώνην φεύγων ἐξ Ἀθηνέων ὀπίσω, ὡς ἐν ἀδείῃ ἑών. τὰ δὲ Ἀβδηρα ἴδρυται πρὸς τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου μᾶλλον ἢ τοῦ Στρυμόνος καὶ τῆς Ἡϊόνος, ὅθεν δὴ μὴν φασι ἐπιβῆναι ἐπὶ τὴν νέα.

10

121 Οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐπέιτε οὐκ οἰοί τε ἐγίνοντο ἐξελεῖν τὴν Ἀνδρον, τραπόμενοι ἐς Κάρυστον καὶ δηώσαντες αὐτῶν τὴν χώραν ἀπαλλάσσοντο ἐς Σαλαμῖνα. πρῶτα μὲν νυν τοῖσι θεοῖσι ἐξείλον ἀκροθίνια ἄλλα τε καὶ

120. 2. φαίνεται . . . ἀπικόμενος: *it is clear that he came.*—

3. σφι: the inhabitants of Abdera.

—6. ἐλύσατο τὴν ζώνην: supply *in Abdera*. The phrase means *this was the first place he rested*.

—8. μᾶλλον ἢ τοῦ Στρυμόνος: since ἢ is present the easiest construction syntactically is to supply πρὸς with Στρυμόνος, meaning *Abdera is situated nearer the Hellespont than it is to the Strymon*. But, in the first place, Abdera is really much nearer the Strymon, and further this is not the meaning the context demands, but *Abdera lies nearer the Hellespont than the Strymon does*; for the argument is that Xerxes could not have sailed

from the Strymon since he had reached Abdera, which is farther on the way toward the Hellespont. The latter translation is possible if we assume that the gen. is used instead of the nom. (a doubtful construction), or omit ἢ (with β). There is still a third possibility if we keep in view the fact that πρὸς τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου is not exactly *near the Hellespont*, that is, it would not be used of a place on the other side of the Hellespont from the point of view of the writer. It is barely possible, then, that the meaning is *Abdera lies on this side of the Hellespont, but not on this side of the Strymon*.

τριήρεας τρεῖς Φοινίσσας, τὴν μὲν ἐς Ἴσθμὸν ἀναθεῖναι, 5  
ἣ περ ἔτι καὶ ἐς ἐμέ ἦν, τὴν δὲ ἐπὶ Σούνιον, τὴν δὲ τῷ  
Αἴαντι αὐτοῦ ἐς Σαλαμῖνα. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο διεδάσαντο  
τὴν ληΐην καὶ τὰ ἀκροθίνια ἀπέπεμψαν ἐς Δελφούς,  
ἐκ τῶν ἐγένετο ἀνδριάς ἔχων ἐν τῇ χειρὶ ἀκρωτήριον  
νεός, ἐὼν μέγαθος δυώδεκα πηχέων· ἔστηκε δὲ οὗτος 10

- 122 τῇ περ ὁ Μακεδὼν Ἀλέξανδρος ὁ χρύσεος. πέμψαντες  
δὲ ἀκροθίνια οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐς Δελφούς ἐπειρώτων τὸν  
θεὸν κοινῇ εἰ λελάβηκε πλήρεα καὶ ἀρεστὰ τὰ ἀκρο-  
θίνια. ὁ δὲ παρ' Ἑλλήνων μὲν τῶν ἄλλων ἔφησε ἔχειν,  
παρὰ Αἰγινητέων δὲ οὐ, ἀλλὰ ἀπαίτει αὐτοὺς τὰ ἀρι- 5  
στήα τῆς ἐν Σαλαμῖνι ναυμαχίης. Αἰγινῆται δὲ πυθό-  
μενοι ἀνέθεσαν ἀστέρας χρυσεούς, οἱ ἐπὶ ἱστοῦ χαλκέου  
ἐστᾶσι τρεῖς ἐπὶ τῆς γωνίης, ἀγχοτάτω τοῦ Κροίσου  
123 κρητῆρος. μετὰ δὲ τὴν διαίρεσιν τῆς λήϊης ἔπλεον οἱ  
Ἕλληνες ἐς τὸν Ἴσθμὸν ἀριστήα δάσονται τῷ ἀξιο-  
τάτῳ γενομένῳ Ἑλλήνων ἀνὰ τὸν πόλεμον τοῦτον. ὥς  
δὲ ἀπικόμενοι οἱ στρατηγοὶ διένεμον τὰς ψήφους ἐπὶ  
τοῦ Ποσειδέωνος τῷ βωμῷ, τὸν πρῶτον καὶ τὸν δεύτερον 5  
κρίνοντας ἐκ πάντων, ἐνθαῦτα πᾶς τις αὐτῶν ἐωυτῷ  
ἐτίθετο τὴν ψήφον, αὐτὸς ἕκαστος δοκέων ἄριστος

THE GREEKS DIVIDE THE SPOIL.  
THE HONORS PAID TO THE-  
MISTOCLES (CC. 121-125)

121. 5. τὴν μὲν ἐς Ἴσθμόν: to  
Poseidon. Cp. 8. 123. 5. — 6. τὴν  
... ἐπὶ Σούνιον: Athena had a  
temple here. — 11. Ἀλέξανδρος:  
see 8. 34 and 8. 136 ff.

122. 3. λελάβηκε: Att. εἴληφε.

— 5. ἀριστήα: see 8. 93. 1. —  
8. τρεῖς: two to the Dioscuri, the  
third probably to Apollo Delphi-  
nius. — ἐπὶ τῆς γωνίης: sc. τοῦ  
προνηίου. Cp. 1. 51 9.

123. 4. διένεμον: the usual verb  
with ψήφον is φέρειν. Cp. δια-  
φέρειν 4. 138. 2. Possibly διανέ-  
μειν is used because two votes  
were cast, one for first and one for

γενέσθαι, δεύτερα δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ συνεξέπιπτον Θεμιστοκλέα κρίνοντας. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἐμουνούντο, Θεμιστοκλέης  
 124 δὲ δευτερείοισι ὑπερεβάλλετο πολλόν. οὐ βουλομένων  
 δὲ ταῦτα κρίνειν τῶν Ἑλλήνων φθόνῳ, ἀλλ' ἀποπλεόν-  
 των ἐκάστων ἐς τὴν ἐωυτῶν ἀκρίτων, ὅμως Θεμιστο-  
 κλέης ἐβώσθη τε καὶ ἐδοξώθη εἶναι ἀνὴρ πολλὸν  
 Ἑλλήνων σοφώτατος ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ὅτι δὲ 5  
 νικῶν οὐκ ἐτιμήθη πρὸς τῶν ἐν Σαλαμῖνι ναυμαχη-  
 σάντων, αὐτίκα μετὰ ταῦτα ἐς Λακεδαίμονα ἀπίκητο  
 θελων τιμηθῆναι· καὶ μιν Λακεδαιμόνιοι καλῶς μὲν  
 ὑπέδεξαντο, μεγάλως δὲ ἐτίμησαν. ἀριστήια μὲν νυν  
 ἔδοσαν Εὐρυβιάδῃ ἐλαίης στέφανον, σοφίης δὲ καὶ 10  
 δεξιότητος Θεμιστοκλεῖ, καὶ τούτῳ στέφανον ἐλαίης·  
 ἔδωρήσαντό τε μιν ὅχῳ τῷ ἐν Σπάρτῃ καλλιστεύοντι.  
 αἰνέσαντες δὲ πολλά, προέπεμψαν ἀπρόντα τριηκόσιοι  
 Σπαρτιητέων λογάδες, οὗτοι οἱ περ ἵππεῖς καλέονται,  
 μέχρι οὖρων τῶν Τεγεητικῶν. μῦνον δὲ τοῦτον πάν- 15  
 των ἀνθρώπων τῶν ἡμεῖς ἴδμεν Σπαρτιῆται προέπεμψαν.  
 125 ὥς δὲ ἐκ τῆς Λακεδαίμονος ἀπίκητο ἐς τὰς Ἀθήνας,

second.—8. *δεύτερα*: in the second place; adverbial.—10. *δευτερείοισι*: for the second prize. Dat. of reference.

124. 2. *ταῦτα κρίνειν*: to settle this matter, i.e. who was best.—3. *ἀκρίτων*: in act. sense—without deciding.—4. *ἐβώσθη*: Dial. § 1. ii. 8.—6. *νικῶν*: though the victor.—πρὸς: Syn. § 5.—9. *ἀριστήια*: the prize of valor. Some editors supply ἀνδρείης μὲν as a

contrast to σοφίης δέ; otherwise σοφίης must depend upon the idea of prize in ἀριστήια.—11. *καὶ τούτῳ*: in his case also.—13. *τριηκόσιοι*: in partitive apposition to the subject with which αἰνέσαντες agrees, namely, all the Spartans. Cp. 8. 83. 4. On the number, see 7. 205. 10.—15. *μῦνον*: cp. Θεμιστοκλέα . . . καὶ αὐτοὶ διὰ τοῦτο δὴ μάλιστα ἐτίμησατε ἄνδρα ξένον τῶν ὥς ὑμᾶς ἐλθόντων Thuc. 1. 74. 1.

ἐνθαῦτα Τιμόδημος Ἀφιδναῖος, τῶν ἐχθρῶν μὲν τῶν  
Θεμιστοκλέος ἑὼν, ἄλλως δὲ οὐ τῶν ἐπιφανέων ἀνδρῶν,  
φθόνῳ καταμαργέων ἐνείκει τὸν Θεμιστοκλέα, τὴν ἐς  
Λακεδαίμονα ἄπιξιν προφέρων, ὥς διὰ τὰς Ἀθήνας  
ἔχοι τὰ γέρεα τὰ παρὰ Λακεδαιμονίων, ἀλλ' οὐ δι'  
ἑωυτόν. ὁ δέ, ἐπεῖτε οὐκ ἐπαύετο λέγων ταῦτα ὁ  
Τιμόδημος, εἶπε· Οὕτω ἔχει τοι· οὐτ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἑὼν Βελ-  
βινίτης ἐτιμήθην οὕτω πρὸς Σπαρτιητέων, οὐτ' ἂν σύ,  
ὦνθρωπε, ἑὼν Ἀθηναῖος.

10

- 126 Ταῦτα μὲν νυν ἐς τοσοῦτο ἐγένετο, Ἀρτάβαζος δὲ  
ὁ Φαρνάκεος, ἀνὴρ ἐν Πέρσῃσι λόγιμος καὶ πρόσθε  
ἑὼν, ἐκ δὲ τῶν Πλαταικῶν καὶ μᾶλλον ἔτι γενόμενος,  
ἔχων ἕξ μυριάδας στρατοῦ τοῦ Μαρδόνιος ἐξελέξατο,  
προέπεμπε βασιλέα μέχρι τοῦ πόρου. ὥς δὲ ὁ μὲν ἦν  
ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ, ὁ δὲ ὀπίσω πορευόμενος κατὰ τὴν Παλ-  
λήνην ἐγένετο, ἅτε Μαρδονίου τε χειμερίζοντος περὶ  
Θεσσαλίην τε καὶ Μακεδονίην καὶ οὐδέν κω κατεπεί-  
γοντος ἦκειν ἐς τὸ ἄλλο στρατόπεδον, οὐκ ἐδικαίου

125. 2. Ἀφιδναῖος: Aphidna was an Attic deme of the tribe Aiantis. — 8. οὕτω ἔχει τοι: cp. οὕτω τοι Ἰστιαῖε ἔχει 6. 1. 9, and 7. 161. 12. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish the particle τοι from the dat. of the pronoun. Something of the pronominal value seems to be retained here. For the case, cp. τοιοῦτο μὲν ὑμῖν ἐστι ἡ τυραννίς, ὧ Λακεδαιμόνιοι 5. 92. η 27. — Βελβινίτης: Belbina was a very small and unimportant island near Sunium. The later

form of the story makes the man a Seriphian. Cp. Plato *Rep.* 329 e; Plut. *Them.* 18; Cic. *de Senect.* 8. — 10. ἑὼν Ἀθηναῖος: though you are an Athenian. In l. 8 ἑὼν is conditional.

ARTABAZUS ON HIS RETURN FROM THE HELLESPONT TAKES OLYNTHUS AND BESIEGES POTIDAEA (CC. 126-129)

126. 3. Πλαταικῶν: Artabazus brought a considerable force back to Asia after the defeat. Cp. 9. 66,

ἐντυχὼν ἀπεστεῶσι Ποτιδαιήτησι μὴ οὐκ ἐξανδραπο-<sup>10</sup>  
 δίσασθαί σφεας. οἱ γὰρ Ποτιδαιῆται, ὡς βασιλεὺς  
 παρεξελλάκει καὶ ὁ ναυτικὸς τοῖσι Πέρσῃσι οἰχώκει  
 φεύγων ἐκ τῆς Σαλαμῖνος, ἐκ τοῦ φανεροῦ ἀπέστασαν  
 ἀπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων· ὡς δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ τὴν Παλ-  
<sup>127</sup> λήνην ἔχοντες. ἐνθαῦτα δὴ Ἀρτάβαζος ἐπολιόρκει τὴν  
 Ποτίδαιαν. ὑποπτεύσας δὲ καὶ τοὺς Ὀλυνθίους ἀπίστα-  
 σθαι ἀπὸ βασιλέος, καὶ ταύτην ἐπολιόρκει· εἶχον δὲ  
 αὐτὴν Βοττιαῖοι οἱ ἐκ τοῦ Θερμαίου κόλπου ἐξανα-  
 στάντες ὑπὸ Μακεδόνων. ἐπεὶ δὲ σφεας εἴλε πολιορ-<sup>5</sup>  
 κέων, κατέσφαξε ἐξαγαγὼν ἐς λίμνην, τὴν δὲ πόλιν  
 παραδιδούῃ Κριτοβούλῳ Τορωναίῳ ἐπιτροπεύειν καὶ τῷ  
 Χαλκιδικῷ γένει, καὶ οὕτω Ὀλυνθον Χαλκιδεῖς ἔσχον.  
<sup>128</sup> ἐξελὼν δὲ ταύτην ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος τῇ Ποτιδαίῃ ἐντετα-  
 μένως προσεῖχε, προσέχοντι δὲ οἱ προθύμως συντίθεται  
 προδοσίην Τιμόξεινος ὁ τῶν Σκιωναίων στρατηγός,  
 ὄντινα μὲν τρόπον ἀρχήν, ἔγωγε οὐκ ἔχω εἰπεῖν (οὐ  
 γὰρ ὦν λέγεται), τέλος μέντοι τοιάδε ἐγένετο· ὅκως<sup>5</sup>  
 βυβλίον γράψει ἢ Τιμόξεινος ἐθέλων παρὰ Ἀρτάβαζον  
 πέμψαι ἢ Ἀρτάβαζος παρὰ Τιμόξεινον, τοξεύματος  
 παρὰ τὰς γλυφίδας περιελίζαντες καὶ πτερώσαντες τὸ  
 βυβλίον ἐτόξευον ἐς συγκείμενον χωρίον. ἐπαῖστος δὲ  
 ἐγένετο ὁ Τιμόξεινος προδιδούς τὴν Ποτίδαιαν· τοξεύων<sup>10</sup>

89. — 10. μὴ οὐκ: GMT. 815. 2.  
 — 12. Πέρσῃσι: dat. of interest,  
 practically equal to a possessive  
 gen.

127. 2. ἀπίστασθαι: conative  
 pres. — 8. Χαλκιδικῷ: colonists  
 from Chalcis in Euboea had given

their name to the whole peninsula.  
 — ἔσχον: ingressive.

128. 3. Σκιωναίων: the cities  
 of Pallene were in alliance and a  
 contingent had been sent from  
 Scione to the aid of Potidaea. See  
 I. 16. — 4. ἀρχήν: at first. — 5. ὦν:

γὰρ ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος ἐς τὸ συγκείμενον, ἁμαρτῶν τοῦ  
χωρίου τούτου βάλλει ἀνδρὸς Ποτιδαίητεω τὸν ὦμον,  
τὸν δὲ βληθέντα περιεδραμε ὄμιλος, οἷα φιλεῖ γίνεσθαι  
ἐν πολέμῳ, οἱ αὐτίκα τὸ τόξευμα λαβόντες, ὥς ἔμαθον  
τὸ βυβλίον, ἔφερον ἐπὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς· παρῆν δὲ καὶ 15  
τῶν ἄλλων Παλληναίων συμμαχίῃ. τοῖσι δὲ στρατη-  
γοῖσι ἐπιλεξαμένοισι τὸ βυβλίον καὶ μαθοῦσι τὸν αἴτιον  
τῆς προδοσίης ἔδοξε μὴ καταπλήξαι Τιμόξεινον προ-  
δοσίῃ τῆς Σκιωναίων πόλις εἵνεκα, μὴ νομιζοιαιο  
εἶναι Σκιωναῖοι ἐς τὸν μετέπειτα χρόνον αἰεὶ προ-20  
δῶται. ὁ μὲν δὴ τοιούτῳ τρόπῳ ἐπαῖστος ἐγεγόνει·  
129 Ἀρταβάζῳ δὲ ἐπειδὴ πολιορκέοντι ἐγεγόνεσαν τρεῖς  
μῆνες, γίνεται ἄμπωτις τῆς θαλάσσης μεγάλη καὶ  
χρόνον ἐπὶ πολλόν. ἰδόντες δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι τέναγος  
γενόμενον παρῆσαν ἐς τὴν Παλλήνην. ὥς δὲ τὰς δύο  
μὲν μοίρας διοδοιπορήκεσαν, ἔτι δὲ τρεῖς ὑπόλοιποι 5  
ἦσαν, τὰς διελθόντας χρῆν εἶναι ἔσω ἐν τῇ Παλλήνῃ,  
ἐπῆλθε πλημμυρὶς τῆς θαλάσσης μεγάλη, ὅση οὐδαμά  
κω, ὥς οἱ ἐπιχώριοι λέγουσι, πολλάκις γινομένη. οἱ  
μὲν δὴ νεῦν αὐτῶν οὐκ ἐπιστάμενοι διεφθείροντο, τοὺς  
δὲ ἐπισταμένους οἱ Ποτιδαίηται ἐπιπλώσαντες πλοίοισι 10

Syn. §. 32. 1. b. — 13. φιλεῖ: *is wont*. — 18. καταπλήξαι: *strike him dumb* by producing the evidence of his treachery.

129. 1. Ἀρταβάζῳ: on the case, see Syn. § 4. i. B 3. — 4. παρῆσαν: Potidaea was situated on a narrow isthmus between the mainland and the peninsula of Pallene. It stretched from sea to sea, and the

Persians, having no ships, had been unable to attack it from the south. They now take advantage of the ebb tide and attempt to walk round. — τὰς δύο: on the article, see 8. 73. 2. — 6. τὰς διελθόντας κτί.: *which they had to pass over so as to be in Pallene*. χρῆν governs the ptc., logically. — 8. γινομένη: concessive.



ἀπώλεσαν. αἴτιον δὲ λέγουσι Ποτιδαιῆται τῆς τε ῥήχης [καὶ τῆς πλημμυριδος] καὶ τοῦ Περσικοῦ πάθεος γενέσθαι τόδε, ὅτι ἐς τοῦ Ποσειδέωνος τὸν νηὸν καὶ τὸ ἄγαλμα τὸ ἐν τῷ προαστείῳ ἡσέβησαν οὗτοι τῶν Περσέων οἱ περ καὶ διεφθάρησαν ὑπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης· 15 αἴτιον δὲ τοῦτο λέγοντες εὖ λέγειν ἔμοιγε δοκέουσι. τοὺς δὲ περιγενομένους ἀπῆγε Ἀρτάβαζος ἐς Θεσσαλίην παρὰ Μαρδόνιον.

- 130 Οὗτοι μὲν οἱ προπέμψαντες βασιλέα οὕτω ἔπρηξαν. ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς ὁ Ξέρξεω (ὁ) περιγενόμενος, ὥς προσέμιξε τῇ Ἀσίῃ φεύγων ἐκ Σαλαμῖνος καὶ βασιλέα τε καὶ τὴν στρατιὴν ἐκ Χερσονήσου διεπόρθμευσε ἐς Ἀβυδον, ἐχειμέριζε ἐν Κύμῃ. ἔαρος δὲ ἐπιλάμψαντος πρώιος 5 συνελέγετο ἐς Σάμον· αἱ δὲ τῶν νεῶν καὶ ἐχειμέρισαν αὐτοῦ· Περσέων δὲ καὶ Μήδων οἱ πλείονες ἐπεβάτενον. στρατηγοὶ δὲ σφι ἐπῆλθον Μαρδόντης τε ὁ Βαγαίου καὶ Ἀρταύντης ὁ Ἀρταχαίεω· συνῆρχε δὲ τούτοισι καὶ ἀδελφιδέος αὐτοῦ Ἀρταύντεω προσελομένου Ἰθαμίτρης. 10 ἄτε δὲ μεγάλως πληγέντες, οὐ προῆσαν ἀνωτέρω τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης, οὐδ' ἐπηνάγκαζε οὐδεὶς, ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ Σάμῳ κατήμενοι ἐφύλασσον τὴν Ἰωνίην μὴ ἀποστή, νέας ἔχοντες σὺν τῇσι Ἰάσι τριηκοσίας. οὐ μὲν οὐδὲ προσεδέκοντο τοὺς Ἑλλήνας ἐλεύσεσθαι ἐς τὴν Ἰωνίην ἀλλ' 15

THE PERSIAN FLEET, AFTER WIN-  
TERING IN CYME, ASSEMBLES  
AT SAMOS. THE GREEK FLEET  
SAILS TO DELOS (CC. 130-132)

130. 5. Κύμη: on the coast of  
Asia Minor, south of Lesbos.—

ἐπιλάμψαντος: properly of the  
dawn.—7. Περσέων κτί.: the ma-  
jority of the fighting men on  
board were Persians and Medes.  
—9. Ἀρταχαίεω: see 7. 22. 7,  
7. 117. 3.—14. σύν: including.—  
οὐ μὲν οὐδέ: Syn. § 26. e.—

ἀποχρήσειν σφί τὴν ἐωυτῶν φυλάσσειν, σταθμεόμενοι ὅτι σφέας οὐκ ἐπεδίωξαν φεύγοντας ἐκ Σαλαμῖνος ἀλλ' ἄσμενοι ἀπαλλάσσοντο. κατὰ μὲν νυν τὴν θάλασσαν ἐσσωμένοι ἦσαν τῷ θυμῷ, πεζῇ δὲ ἐδόκεον πολλῷ κρατήσκειν τὸν Μαρδόνιον. ἐόντες δὲ ἐν Σάμῳ ἅμα<sup>20</sup> μὲν ἐβουλευόντο εἴ τι δυναίητο κακὸν τοὺς πολεμίους ποιῆν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ ὠτακούστεον ὅκη πεσεῖται τὰ Μαρ-  
 131 δονίου πρήγματα. τοὺς δὲ Ἕλληνας τό τε ἔαρ γινόμενον ἤγειρε καὶ Μαρδόνιος ἐν Θεσσαλίῃ ἐὼν. ὁ μὲν δὴ πεζὸς οὐκω συνελέγετο, ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς ἀπίκητο ἐς Αἴγινα, νέες ἀριθμὸν δέκα καὶ ἑκατόν. στρατηγὸς δὲ καὶ ναύαρχος ἦν Λευτυχίδης ὁ Μενάρεος τοῦ Ἡγησί-<sup>5</sup> λω τοῦ Ἰπποκρατίδew τοῦ Λευτυχίδew τοῦ Ἀναξίλew τοῦ Ἀρχιδήμου τοῦ Ἀναξανδρίδew τοῦ Θεοπόμπου τοῦ Νικάνδρου τοῦ Χαρίλew τοῦ Εὐνόμου τοῦ Πολυδέκτεw τοῦ Πρυτάνιος τοῦ Εὐρυφῶντος τοῦ Προκλέος τοῦ Ἀριστοδήμου τοῦ Ἀριστομάχου τοῦ Κλεοδαίου τοῦ<sup>10</sup> Ἰλλου τοῦ Ἡρακλέος, ἐὼν τῆς ἐτέρης οἰκίης τῶν βα-

19. πολλῷ: with verbs πολλόν is more frequent.

131. 5. Λευτυχίδης: the successor of Demaratus (6. 65). Both were descended from Theopompus (1. 7), but Demaratus by an elder line, so that the seven (cp. 1. 12) between Theopompus and Leoty-chides had not been kings. — 9. Εὐρυφῶντος: one of the two royal houses, οἱ Εὐρυπωντίδαι, was named from Euryphon. He was, according to Pausan. 3. 7, son of Soos, son of Procles. — 10. Ἀρι-

στοδήμου: who led the Lacedaemonians to Laconia (6. 52), according to their story. From his two sons, Eurysthenes and Procles, sprang the two royal houses of Sparta. For the Ἀγιά-δαι, see 7. 204. — 11. τῆς ἐτέρης οἰκίης: of one of the two royal houses, i.e. the Eurypontidae. On the death of Leonidas, who was the head of the other house, Cleombrotus, his brother, was made guardian of Leonidas' son, Pleistarchus, and commanded the

σιλέων. οὗτοι πάντες, πλὴν τῶν ἐπτά τῶν μετὰ Λευ-  
 τυχίδεα πρώτων καταλεχθέντων, οἱ ἄλλοι βασιλεῖς  
 ἐγένοντο Σπάρτης. Ἀθηναίων δὲ ἐστρατήγει Ξάνθιπ-  
 132 πος ὁ Ἀρίφρονος. ὥς δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐς τὴν Αἰγίναν  
 πᾶσαι αἱ νέες, ἀπίκοντο Ἰώνων ἄγγελοι ἐς τὸ στρατό-  
 πεδον τῶν Ἑλλήνων, οἱ καὶ ἐς Σπάρτην ὀλίγῳ πρότερον  
 τούτων ἀπικόμενοι ἐδέοντο Λακεδαιμονίων ἐλευθεροῦν  
 τὴν Ἰωνίην· τῶν καὶ Ἡρόδοτος ὁ Βασιληίδεω ἦν· οἱ 5  
 στασιῶται σφίσι γενόμενοι ἐπεβούλευον θάνατον Στράττι  
 τῷ Χίου τυράννῳ, ἔοντες ἀρχὴν ἐπτά· ἐπιβουλεύοντες  
 δὲ ὥς φανεροὶ ἐγένοντο, ἐξενείκαντος τὴν ἐπιχείρησιν  
 ἐνὸς τῶν μετεχόντων, οὕτω δὴ οἱ λοιποὶ ἕξ ἔοντες  
 ὑπεξέσχον ἐκ τῆς Χίου καὶ ἐς Σπάρτην τε ἀπίκοντο καὶ 10  
 δὴ καὶ τότε ἐς τὴν Αἰγίναν, τῶν Ἑλλήνων δεόμενοι  
 καταπλῶσαι ἐς τὴν Ἰωνίην· οἱ προήγαγον αὐτοὺς μόγις  
 μέχρι Δήλου. τὸ γὰρ προσωτέρω πᾶν δευνὸν ἦν τοῖσι

Peloponnesian forces at the Isthmus (8. 71. 6). He had died during the winter, and his son, Pausanias, was placed in command of the Spartan army (9. 10). — 12. **ἐπτά**: the Mss. have **δύω**. — 13. **οἱ ἄλλοι**: repeating the subject **οὗτοι** after the explanatory clause. Cp. 8. 67. 3. — 14. **Ξάνθιππος**: father of Pericles (6. 131, 6. 136, 7. 33). He belonged to the same party as Aristides, who was this year in command of the Athenian land forces (9. 28. 28). The setting aside of Themistocles, after his brilliant success the year

before, is very striking. Diodorus (11. 27. 3) says it was because of the gifts he accepted from the Peloponnesians. This may have been used against him, but more probably his policy of a vigorous prosecution of the war by sea (cp. 8. 109. 22) was rejected by the Athenians, who desired to return to their homes and defend them against Mardonius.

132. 6. **σφίσι**: = ἅλλήλοισι. — **Στράττι**: he was tyrant before the Ionian revolt (4. 138. 7). — 12. **οἱ**: *but they*. For the rel., cp. 7. 205. 9. Kühn. § 561. 2. b. —

Ἑλλησι οὔτε τῶν χώρων ἐοῦσι ἐμπείροισι, στρατιῆς  
 τε πάντα πλέα ἐδόκει εἶναι· τὴν δὲ Σάμον ἐπιστάτατο 15  
 δόξῃ καὶ Ἡρακλέας στήλας ἴσον ἀπέχειν. συνέπιπτε  
 δὲ τοιοῦτο ὥστε τοὺς μὲν βαρβάρους τὸ πρὸς ἐσπέρης  
 ἀνωτέρω Σάμου μὴ τολμᾶν καταπλῶσαι καταρρωδη-  
 κότας, τοὺς δὲ Ἕλληνας χρηζόντων Χίων τὸ πρὸς τὴν  
 ἡῶ κατωτέρω Δήλου. οὕτω δέος τὸ μέσον ἐφύλασσε 20  
 133 σφεων. οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἕλληνες ἔπλεον ἐς τὴν Δήλον, Μαρ-  
 δόνιος δὲ περὶ τὴν Θεσσαλίην ἐχείμαζε. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ  
 ὀρμώμενος ἔπεμπε κατὰ τὰ χρηστήρια ἄνδρα Εὐρωπέα  
 γένος, τῷ οὐνομα ἦν Μῦς, ἐντειλάμενος πανταχῇ μιν  
 χρησόμενον ἐλθεῖν, τῶν οἷά τε ἦν σφι ἀποπειρήσασθαι. 5  
 ὃ τι μὲν βουλόμενος ἐκμαθεῖν πρὸς τῶν χρηστηρίων  
 ταῦτα ἐνετέλλετο, οὐκ ἔχω φράσαι· οὐ γὰρ ὧν λέγε-  
 ται· δοκέω δ' ἐγῶγε περὶ τῶν παρεόντων πρηγμάτων  
 134 καὶ οὐκ ἄλλων πέρι πέμψαι. οὗτος ὁ Μῦς ἔς τε  
 Λεβάδειαν φαίνεται ἀπικόμενος καὶ μισθῷ πείσας τῶν  
 ἐπιχωρίων ἄνδρα καταβῆναι παρὰ Τροφώνιον, καὶ ἐς

14. ἐοῦσι . . . ἐδόκει: for participle and finite verb in parallel constructions, cp. 7. 6. 11, 8. 86. 10, 8. 116. 7. — 15. ἐπιστάτατο . . . δόξῃ: *believed*. The statement is rather an exaggerated expression of their feelings under the circumstances than their actual opinion of the relative distance of Samos and the Pillars of Hercules. — 18. ἀνωτέρω: *farther* from land. — 19. χρηζόντων: concessive. — 20. κατωτέρω: *farther* toward Asia Minor.

MARDONIUS CONSULTS A NUMBER  
 OF GREEK ORACLES (CC. 133-  
 135)

133. 2. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ὀρμώμενος: omit the partic. in translation. — 3. κατὰ: *around to*. Cp. 1. 30. 6. — Εὐρωπία: of Europus, a town in Caria (cp. 8. 135. 16). — 5. τῶν: the antecedent is (χρηστηρίους) — 7. οὐ γὰρ ὧν: cp. 8. 128. 5.

134. 2. Λεβάδειαν: a town of Boeotia, west of Lake Copais. — 3. καταβῆναι: near the city was

\*Αβας τὰς Φωκέων ἀπικόμενος ἐπὶ τὸ χρηστήριον· καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐς Θήβας πρῶτα ὡς ἀπύκετο, τοῦτο μὲν τῷ Ἴσμη- 5 νίῳ Ἀπόλλωνι ἐχρήσατο (ἔστι δὲ κατὰ περ ἐν Ὀλυμπίῃ ἱροῖσι αὐτόθι χρηστηριάζεσθαι), τοῦτο δὲ ξεῖνόν τινα καὶ οὐ Θηβαῖον χρήμασι πείσας κατεκοίμησε ἐς Ἀμφιάρεω. Θηβαίων δὲ οὐδενὶ ἔξεστι μαντεύεσθαι αὐτόθι διὰ τόδε· ἐκελευσέ σφεας ὁ Ἀμφιάρεως διὰ χρηστηρίων 10 ποιέμενος ὁκότερα βούλονται ἐλέσθαι τούτων, ἐωντῷ ἢ ἄτε μάντι χρῆσθαι ἢ ἄτε συμμαχῶ, τοῦ ἐτέρου ἀπεχομένους· οἱ δὲ σύμμαχόν μιν εἶλοντο εἶναι. διὰ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἔξεστι Θηβαίων οὐδενὶ αὐτόθι ἐγκατα- 135 κοιμηθῆναι. τόδε δὲ θῶμά μοι μέγιστον γενέσθαι

a cave sacred to Ζεὺς Τροφώνιος. Any one who wished to consult the oracle *descended* into this cave and afterward related his experiences to the priests, who gave an interpretation of them. On the rites, see Pausan. 9. 39. 5 ff.; on the origin of the oracle 9. 37. 4 ff. The story of Trophonius is in part similar to that of the thief of Rhampsinitus' treasures in Hdt. 2. 121. — 4. Ἄβας: see 8. 33. 6. — καὶ δὴ καὶ: introducing the incident which Hdt. wishes to refer to particularly, with a change of constr. — 5. πρῶτα: he visited Thebes *first*. — 7. ἱροῖσι: *with* (burnt) offerings. Cp. ἐπ' Ἴσμηνοῦ τε μαντεῖα σποδῶ Soph. O.T. 21 and ἵνα μάντιες ἄνδρες ἐμπύροις τεκμαιρόμενοι παραπειρῶνται Διὸς ἀργικραύνου Pind. Ol. 8. 2.

— 8. κατεκοίμησε ἐς Ἀμφιάρεω: *he made him lie down to sleep in the temple of Amphiaraus*. Plutarch, *Mor.* 412, *Arist.* 19, tells that a Lydian sent by Mardonius slept in the temple of Amphiaraus and dreamed that an attendant of the god bade him depart; on his refusal he was struck with a great stone on the head and died of the wound. In fulfillment of this dream, says Plutarch, Mardonius was slain by a Spartan named Arimnestus, who crushed his head with a stone. Hdt., 9. 64. 7, relates that Mardonius was killed by a Spartan Arimnestus, but gives no further details. — 10. διὰ χρηστηρίων ποιέμενος: *by means of oracles*. Cp. 6. 4. 1.

135. 1. τόδε δὲ κτλ.: *the following, to me a very great marvel*. —

λέγεται ὑπὸ Θηβαίων· ἐλθεῖν ἄρα τὸν Εὐρωπέα Μῦν, περιστρωφόμενον πάντα τὰ χρηστήρια, καὶ ἐς τοῦ Πτώου Ἀπόλλωνος τὸ τέμενος. τοῦτο δὲ τὸ ἱρὸν καλεῖται μὲν Πτῶον, ἔστι δὲ Θηβαίων, κεῖται δὲ ὑπὲρ τῆς 5 Κωπαΐδος λίμνης πρὸς ὄρει ἀγχοτάτῳ Ἀκραιφίης πόλιος. ἐς τοῦτο τὸ ἱρὸν ἐπεῖτε παρελθεῖν τὸν καλεόμενον τοῦτον Μῦν (ἔπεσθαι δέ οἱ τῶν ἀστῶν αἰρετοὺς ἄνδρας τρεῖς ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ ὡς ἀπογραφομένους τὰ θεσπιεῖν ἔμελλε), καὶ πρόκατε τὸν πρόμαντιν βαρβάρῳ γλώσση<sup>10</sup> χρῆν. καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἐπομένους τῶν Θηβαίων ἐν θώματι ἔχεσθαι ἀκούοντας βαρβάρου γλώσσης ἀντὶ Ἑλλάδος, οὐδὲ ἔχειν ὃ τι χρήσονται τῷ παρεόντι πρήγματι· τὸν δὲ Εὐρωπέα Μῦν ἐξαρπάσαντα παρ' αὐτῶν τὴν ἐφέροντο δέλτον, τὰ λεγόμενα ὑπὸ τοῦ προφήτεω γρά-<sup>15</sup> φειν ἐς αὐτήν, φάναι δὲ Καρίῃ μιν γλώσση χρῆν, συγγραψάμενον δὲ οἴχεσθαι ἀπιόντα ἐς Θεσσαλίην.

2. ἄρα: introducing the story of the marvel. Cp. 5. 87. 8. More commonly γάρ.—4. Πτώου: the name here applied to Apollo is said to have been derived from Ptous, son of Athamas and Themisto (Pausan. 9. 23. 6). There was a mountain (cp. l. 6) of this name, bounding the Copaic plain on the east.—6. πρὸς ὄρει: "the remains of the sanctuary are to be seen in a little mountain valley high up on Mt. Ptous" (Fraser, Pausanias 9. 23. 6).—Ἀκραιφίης: a lofty hill, crowned by a citadel, on the east of Lake Copais. It is

connected by a ridge with Mt. Ptous, which lies to the northeast.

—9. ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ: from the people of Thebes (cp. l. 5).—

10. ἔμελλε: subject Ἀπόλλων.—

καὶ πρόκατε: καί in the apodosis after ἐπεῖτε emphasizes the correspondence in time between the entrance and the utterance of the oracle: as soon as he entered, at once.—πρόμαντιν: cp. 7. III. 9.—

12. Ἑλλάδος: Att. Ἑλληνικῆς.—

13. οὐδέ: Att. καὶ οὐ. ἐν θώματι ἔχεσθαι implies the opposite of ἔχειν κεινῶν. See Syn. § 29.—

16. μιν: the prophet.

136 Μαρδόνιος δὲ ἐπιλεξάμενος ὃ τι δὴ λέγοντα ἦν τὰ χρηστήρια, μετὰ ταῦτα ἔπεμψε ἄγγελον εἰς Ἀθήνας Ἀλέξανδρον τὸν Ἀμύντεω ἄνδρα Μακεδόνα, ἅμα μὲν ὅτι οἱ προσκηδεῖς οἱ Πέρσαι ἦσαν (Ἀλεξάνδρου γὰρ ἀδελφεὴν Γυγαίην, Ἀμύντεω δὲ θυγατέρα, Βουβάρης ἀνὴρ Πέρσης ἔσχε, ἐκ τῆς οἱ ἐγεγόνει Ἀμύντης ὁ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ, ἔχων τὸ οὖνομα τοῦ μητροπάτορος, τῷ δὴ ἐκ βασιλέως τῆς Φρυγίης ἐδόθη Ἀλάβανδα πόλις μεγάλη νέμεσθαι), ἅμα δὲ ὁ Μαρδόνιος πυθόμενος ὅτι πρόξενός τε εἶη καὶ εὐεργέτης ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἔπεμπε. τοὺς 10 γὰρ Ἀθηναίους οὕτω ἐδόκει μάλιστα προσκτήσεσθαι, λεών τε πολλὸν ἄρα ἀκούων εἶναι καὶ ἄλκιμον, τά τε κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν συντυχόντα σφί παθήματα καταργασαμένους μάλιστα Ἀθηναίους ἐπίστατο. τούτων δὲ προσγενομένων κατήλπιζε εὐπετέως τῆς θαλάσσης 15 κρατήσκειν, τά περ ἂν καὶ ἦν, πεζῇ τε ἐδόκει πολλῶ εἶναι κρέσσων· οὕτω τε ἐλογίζετο κατύπερθε οἱ τὰ πρήγματα ἔσεσθαι τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν. τάχα δ' ἂν καὶ

MARDONIUS SENDS ALEXANDER OF MACEDON TO WIN OVER THE ATHENIANS. THE HISTORY OF THE FAMILY OF ALEXANDER (CC. 136-139)

136. 8. Ἀλάβανδα: there was a Carian town of this name, but a Phrygian is not known. Cp. Steph. Byz. Ἀλαβάστρα πόλις Φρυγίας· Ἡρόδοτος. — 9. ἅμα δέ: after the long parenthesis the prin. verb is repeated with the second reason for sending. — πρόξενος: like our

*consul* in some respects, though a citizen of the state in which he lived, not sent from the state he represented. After εὐεργέτης a pronoun referring to the Athenians seems to have been lost. —

14. ἐπίστατο: instead of a participle parallel to ἀκούων. Cp. 8. 132.

14. — 15. κατήλπιζε: κατά has strengthening effect. Cp. 8. 10. 7.

— 17. οἱ: possessive dative. Syn. § 4. 1. B. — 18. τάχα δ' ἂν . . . προλέγοι: *may have foretold*. Syn. § 17.

τὰ χρηστήρια ταῦτά οἱ προλέγοι, συμβουλεύοντα σύμμαχον τὸν Ἀθηναῖον ποιεῖσθαι· τοῖσι δὲ πειθόμενος 20 ἔπεμπε.

- 137 Τοῦ δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρου τούτου ἑβδομος γενέτωρ Περδίκκης ἐστὶ ὁ κτησάμενος τῶν Μακεδόνων τὴν τυραννίδα τρόπῳ τοιῷδε· ἐξ Ἀργεος ἔφυγον ἐς Ἰλλυριοὺς τῶν Τημένου ἀπογόνων τρεῖς ἀδελφεοί, Γαυάνης τε καὶ Ἀέροπος καὶ Περδίκκης, ἐκ δὲ Ἰλλυριῶν ὑπερβαλόντες ἐς τὴν ἄνω Μακεδονίην ἀπίκοντο ἐς Λεβαίην πόλιν. ἐνθαῦτα δὲ ἐθήτεον ἐπὶ μισθῷ παρὰ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὁ μὲν ἵππους νέμων, ὁ δὲ βοὺς, ὁ δὲ νεώτατος αὐτῶν Περδίκκης τὰ λεπτὰ τῶν προβάτων. ἦσαν δὲ τὸ πάλαι καὶ αἱ τυραννίδες τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἀσθενεῖς 10 χρήμασι, οὐ μόνον ὁ δῆμος. ἡ δὲ γυνὴ τοῦ βασιλέως αὐτὴ τὰ σιτία σφί ἔπεσσε. ὅκως δὲ ὀπτῶν, ὁ ἄρτος τοῦ παιδὸς τοῦ θητός, Περδίκκew, διπλήσιος ἐγίνετο αὐτὸς ἑωυτοῦ. ἐπεὶ δὲ αἰεὶ τῶντὸ τοῦτο ἐγίνετο, εἶπε πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα τὸν ἑωυτῆς. τὸν δὲ ἀκούσαντα ἐσῆλθε 15 αὐτίκα ὡς εἶη τέρας καὶ φέροι ἐς μέγα τι. καλέσας δὲ τοὺς θήτας προηγόρευέ σφι ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι ἐκ γῆς τῆς ἑωυτοῦ. οἱ δὲ τὸν μισθὸν ἔφασαν δίκαιοι εἶναι

137. 1. ἑβδομος: this includes Alexander himself; see 8. 139. Cp. Thuc. 2. 99. According to another account (Theopomp. Fr. 30) Κάρανος was the founder of the dynasty. — 4. Τημένου: when the Peloponnesus was conquered by the Heraclidae, Temenus received Argos as his domain. — 5. ὑπερβαλόντες: over Mt. Scardus. —

6. Λεβαίην: its situation is not known. — 9. τὰ λεπτά: i.e. sheep and goats; πρόβατα of herded animals in general. — 10. τυραννίδες: = τύραννοι. — 13. τοῦ θητός: in apposition to παιδός. — διπλήσιος: indicating that he would be King. Cp. 7. 103. 7. — 14. ἑωυτοῦ: gen. after the comparative idea in διπλήσιος. —



ἀπολαβόντες οὕτω ἐξιέναι. ἐνθαῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῦ  
 μισθοῦ πέρι ἀκούσας, ἣν γὰρ κατὰ τὴν καπνοδόκην <sup>20</sup>  
 εἰς τὸν οἶκον ἐσέχων ὁ ἥλιος, εἶπε θεοβλαβῆς γενό-  
 μενος “Μισθὸν δὲ ὑμῖν ἐγὼ ὑμέων ἄξιον τόνδε ἀπο-  
 δίδωμι,” δέξας τὸν ἥλιον. ὁ μὲν δὴ Γανάνης τε καὶ  
 ὁ Ἀέροπος οἱ πρεσβύτεροι ἕστασαν ἐκπεπληγμένοι, ὥς  
 ἤκουσαν ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ παῖς, ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἔχων μάχαι- <sup>25</sup>  
 ραν, εἶπας τάδε “Δεκόμεθα, ὦ βασιλεῦ, τὰ διδοῖς,”  
 περιγράφει τῇ μαχαίρῃ ἐς τὸ ξδαφος τοῦ οἴκου τὸν  
 ἥλιον, περιγράψας δέ, εἰς τὸν κόλπον τρὶς ἀρυσάμενος  
<sup>138</sup> τοῦ ἡλίου, ἀπαλλάσσετο αὐτός τε καὶ οἱ μετ’ ἐκείνου. οἱ  
 μὲν δὴ ἀπῆσαν, τῷ δὲ βασιλεῖ σημαίνει τις τῶν παρέδρων  
 οἶόν τι χρῆμα ποιήσκει ὁ παῖς καὶ ὥς σὺν νόφ κείνων  
 ὁ νεώτατος λάβοι τὰ διδόμενα. ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ἀκούσας  
 καὶ ὀξυνθεὶς πέμπει ἐπ’ αὐτοὺς ἱππέας ἀπολέοντας. <sup>5</sup>  
 ποταμὸς δέ ἐστι ἐν τῇ χώρῃ ταύτῃ, τῷ θύουσι οἱ τού-  
 των τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἀπ’ Ἀργεος ἀπόγονοι σωτῆρι. οὗτος,  
 ἐπεῖτε διέβησαν οἱ Τημενίδαι, μέγας οὕτω ἐρρύη ὥστε  
 τοὺς ἱππέας μὴ οἶους τε γενέσθαι διαβῆναι. οἱ δὲ ἀπι-  
 κόμενοι ἐς ἄλλην γῆν τῆς Μακεδονίης οἴκησαν πέλας <sup>10</sup>  
 τῶν κήπων τῶν λεγομένων εἶναι Μίδεω τοῦ Γορ-  
 δίεω, ἐν τοῖσι φύεται αὐτόματα ρόδα, ἐν ἑκάστον ἔχον  
 ἐξήκοντα φύλλα, ὀδμῇ τε ὑπερφέροντα τῶν ἄλλων. ἐν  
 τούτοισι καὶ ὁ Σιληνὸς τοῖσι κήποισι ἡλω, ὥς λέγεται  
 ὑπὸ Μακεδόνων. ὑπὲρ δὲ τῶν κήπων ὄρος κεῖται Βέρ- <sup>15</sup>

22. 84: Syn. § 27.—29. ἡλίου: partitive gen.

138. 2. σημαίνει: *points out*.  
 —8. Τημενίδαι: see 8. 137. 4.—

11. Μίδεω: for his connection with Macedonia, see .7. 73.—

14. Σιληνός: cp. Xen. *Anab.* I. 2.  
 13.—15. Βέρμιον: situated be-

μιον οὖνομα, ἄβατον ὑπὸ χειμῶνος. ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ὀρμώ-  
μενοι, ὡς ταύτην ἔσχον, κατεστρέφοντο καὶ τὴν ἄλλην  
139 Μακεδονίην. ἀπὸ τούτου δὴ τοῦ Περδίκκεω Ἀλέξανδρος  
ὧδε ἐγένετο· Ἀμύντεω παῖς ἦν Ἀλέξανδρος, Ἀμύντης δὲ  
Ἀλκέτεω, Ἀλκέτεω δὲ πατὴρ ἦν Ἀέροπος, τοῦ δὲ Φίλιπ-  
πος, Φιλίππου δὲ Ἀργαῖος, τοῦ δὲ Περδίκκης ὁ κτησά-  
μενος τὴν ἀρχήν. 5

140 Ἐγεγόνει μὲν δὴ ὧδε Ἀλέξανδρος ὁ Ἀμύντεω·  
ὡς δὲ ἀπύκετο ἐς τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀποπεμφθεὶς ὑπὸ Μαρ-  
αδονίου, ἔλεγε τάδε· Ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, Μαρδόνιος τάδε  
λέγει· Ἐμοὶ ἀγγελίη ἦκει παρὰ βασιλέος λέγουσα  
οὕτω· Ἀθηναίοισι τὰς ἀμαρτάδας τὰς ἐς ἐμὲ ἐξ ἐκείνων  
γενομένας πάσας μετήμι. νῦν τε ὧδε, Μαρδόνιε, ποίει·  
τοῦτο μὲν τὴν γῆν σφι ἀπόδος, τοῦτο δὲ ἄλλην πρὸς 5  
ταύτην ἐλέσθων αὐτοί, ἥντινα ἂν ἐθέλωσι, ἐόντες αὐτό-  
νομοι. ἰρά τε πάντα σφι, ἦν δὴ βούλωνται γε ἐμοὶ  
ὁμολογεῖν, ἀνόρθωσον, ὅσα ἐγὼ ἐνέπρησα. τούτων  
δὲ ἀπιγμένων ἀναγκαίως ἔχει μοι ποιεῖν ταῦτα, ἦν  
μὴ τὸ ὑμέτερον αἷτιον γένηται. λέγω δὲ ὑμῖν τάδε 10  
νῦν· τί μαίνεσθε πόλεμον βασιλεῖ ἀνταειρόμενοι; οὔτε  
γὰρ ἂν ὑπερβάλαισθε οὔτε οἰοί τέ ἐστε ἀντέχειν τὸν  
πάντα χρόνον. εἶδετε μὲν γὰρ τῆς Ξέρξεω στρατηλα-

tween the rivers Haliacmon and Lydias. — 16. ὑπὸ: *in consequence of*. — χειμῶνος: snow and severity of climate. — ἐνθεῦτεν δὲ ὀρμώμενοι: cp. 8. 133. 2. — 17. ταύτην: refers to ἄλλην γῆν 1. 10. — ἔσχον: *became possessors of*.

ALEXANDER'S SPEECH TO THE  
ATHENIANS, AND THE ANSWER  
MADE BY SPARTAN ENVOYS  
(CC. 140-142)

140. α 8. τούτων δὲ ἀπιγμένων:  
*this order having come*. The words  
are those of Mardonius. — 10. τὸ

σίης τὸ πλῆθος καὶ τὰ ἔργα, πυνθάνεσθε δὲ καὶ τὴν  
 νῦν παρ' ἐμοὶ ἐοῦσαν δύναμιν, ὥστε καὶ ἤν 15  
 ὑπερβάλησθε καὶ νικήσητε, τοῦ περ ὑμῖν οὐδεμία ἐλπίς  
 εἴ περ εὖ φρονεῖτε, ἄλλη παρέσται πολλαπλησίη.  
 μὴ ὦν βούλεσθε παρισούμενοι βασιλεῖ στέρεσθαι μὲν  
 τῆς χώρας, θεῖν δὲ αἰεὶ περὶ ὑμέων αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ κατα-  
 λύσασθε. παρέχει δὲ ὑμῖν κάλλιστα καταλύσασθαι 20  
 βασιλέος ταύτῃ ὀρμημένου. ἔστε ἐλεύθεροι, ἡμῖν  
 βόμαιχμίην συνθέμενοι ἄνευ τε δόλου καὶ ἀπάτης. Μαρ-  
 δόνιος μὲν ταῦτα, ὧ Ἀθηναῖοι, ἐνετείλατό μοι εἰπεῖν  
 πρὸς ὑμέας. ἐγὼ δὲ περὶ μὲν εὐνοίης τῆς πρὸς ὑμέας  
 ἐούσης ἐξ ἐμέο οὐδὲν λέξω (οὐ γὰρ ἂν νῦν πρῶτον  
 ἐκμάθοιτε), προσχρήζω δὲ ὑμέων πείθεσθαι Μαρδονίῳ. 5  
 ἐνορῶ γὰρ ὑμῖν οὐκ οἰοισί τε ἐσομένοισι τὸν πάντα  
 χρόνον πολεμεῖν Ξέρξῃ. εἰ γὰρ ἐνῶρων τοῦτο ἐν ὑμῖν,  
 οὐκ ἂν κοτε ἐς ὑμέας ἦλθον ἔχων λόγους τούσδε· καὶ  
 γὰρ δύναμις ὑπὲρ ἄνθρωπον ἢ βασιλέος ἐστὶ καὶ χεὶρ  
 ὑπερμήκης. ἦν ὦν μὴ αὐτίκα ὁμολογήσητε, μεγάλα 10  
 προτεινόντων ἐπ' οἷσι ὁμολογεῖν ἐθέλουσι, δειμαίνω  
 ὑπὲρ ὑμέων ἐν τρίβῳ τε μάλιστα οἰκημένων τῶν συμ-  
 μάχων πάντων αἰεὶ τε φθειρομένων μούνων, ἐξαίρετον  
 μεταίχμιόν τε τὴν γῆν ἐκτημένων. ἀλλὰ πείθεσθε·  
 πολλοῦ γὰρ ὑμῖν ἄξια ταῦτα, εἰ βασιλεύς γε ὁ μέγας 15  
 μούνοισι ὑμῖν Ἑλλήνων τὰς ἀμαρτάδας ἀπιεὶς ἐθέλει

ὑμέτερον: *your part* = ὑμεῖς. Cp.  
 3. 155. 16. — 19. θεῖν κτί.: *to be*  
*always running for your lives.* —  
 22. ἄνευ τε: on the position of τε,  
 see Syn. § 30. 3.

β 6. ἐνορῶ: with accus. and

partic. 1. 123. 4, 1. 170. 10. —  
 11. προτεινόντων: *sc. τῶν Περ-*  
*σέων.* — 13. ἐξαίρετον κτί.: *since*  
*you possess in your land a place*  
*set apart and serving as a common*  
*battle ground.*

- 141 φίλος γενέσθαι. Ἀλέξανδρος μὲν ταῦτα ἔλεξε· Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ πυθόμενοι ἤκειν Ἀλέξανδρον ἐς Ἀθήνας ἐς ὁμολογίην ἄξοντα τῷ βαρβάρῳ Ἀθηναίους, ἀναμνησθέντες τῶν λογίων ὥς σφεας χρεόν ἐστι ἅμα τοῖσι ἄλλοισι Δωριεῦσι ἐκπίπτειν ἐκ Πελοποννήσου ὑπὸς Μήδων τε καὶ Ἀθηναίων, κάρτα τε ἔδεισαν μὴ ὁμολογήσωσι τῷ Πέρσῃ Ἀθηναῖοι, αὐτίκα τέ σφι ἔδοξε πέμπειν ἀγγέλους. καὶ δὴ συνέπιπτε ὥστε ὁμοῦ σφεων γίνεσθαι τὴν κατάστασιν· ἐπανεμείναν γὰρ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι διατρίβοντες, εὖ ἐπιστάμενοι ὅτι ἐμελλον<sup>10</sup> Λακεδαιμόνιοι πύσεσθαι ἤκοντα παρὰ τοῦ βαρβάρου ἄγγελον ἐπ' ὁμολογίῃ, πυθόμενοί τε πέμψειν κατὰ τάχος ἀγγέλους. ἐπίτηδες ὦν ἐποίεον, ἐνδεικνύμενοι
- 142 τοῖσι Λακεδαιμονίοισι τὴν ἐωυτῶν γνώμην. ὥς δὲ ἐπαύσατο λέγων Ἀλέξανδρος, διαδεξάμενοι ἔλεγον οἱ ἀπὸ Σπάρτης ἄγγελοι· Ἡμέας δὲ ἔπεμψαν Λακεδαιμόνιοι δεησομένους ὑμέων μήτε νεώτερον ποιεῖν μηδὲν κατὰ τὴν Ἑλλάδα μήτε λόγους ἐνδέκεσθαι παρὰ τοῦ βαρβάρου. οὔτε γὰρ δίκαιον οὐδαμῶς οὔτε κόσμον φέρον οὔτε γε ἄλλοισι Ἑλλήνων οὐδαμοῖσι, ὑμῖν δὲ δὴ καὶ διὰ πάντων ἤκιστα πολλῶν εἵνεκα· ἡγείρατε γὰρ τόνδε τὸν πόλεμον ὑμεῖς οὐδὲν ἡμέων βουλομέ-

141. 2. ἤκειν: cp. ἤκοντα in l. 10, and πέμψειν l. 11.—4. λογίων: brought from Athens by Cleomenes. See 5. 90.—9. κατάστασιν: presentation of ambassadors. Cp. 3. 46. 4, 9. 9. 3.—13. ἐνδεικνύμενοι: intending to show.

142. 3. ἡμέας δέ: in contrast to Alexander.—4. νεώτερον: = κακόν. Cp. 8. 21. 8. The common meaning *revolutionary* in 5. 35. 22, etc.—5. κατὰ: in respect to.—7. οὔτε: with following δέ, giving greater emphasis to the second clause. Cp. 4. 76. 2.—8. ἡγείρατε:

νων, καὶ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρης ἀρχὴν ὁ ἀγὼν ἐγένετο · 10  
 νῦν δὲ φέρει καὶ ἐς πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ἄλλως τε  
 τούτων ἀπάντων αἰτίους γενέσθαι δουλοσύνης τοῖσι  
 Ἕλλησι Ἀθηναίους οὐδαμῶς ἀνασχετόν, οἷτινες αἰεὶ καὶ  
 τὸ πάλαι φαίνεσθε πολλοὺς ἐλευθερώσαντες ἀνθρώπων.  
 πιεζόμενοισι μέντοι ὑμῖν συναχθόμεθα, καὶ ὅτι καρπῶν 15  
 ἔστερήθητε διζῶν ἤδη καὶ ὅτι οἰκοφθόρησθε χρόνον  
 ἤδη πολλόν. ἀντὶ τούτων δὲ ὑμῖν Λακεδαιμόνιοί τε  
 καὶ οἱ σύμμαχοι ἐπαγγέλλονται γυναικᾶς τε καὶ τὰ ἐς  
 πόλεμον ἄχρηστα οἰκετέων ἐχόμενα πάντα ἐπιθρέφειν  
 ἔστ' ἂν ὁ πόλεμος ὅδε συνεστήκη. μηδὲ ὑμίας Ἀλέξαν. 20  
 δρος ὁ Μακεδὼν ἀναγνώσῃ, λείνας τὸν Μαρδονίου  
 λόγον. τούτῳ μὲν γὰρ ταῦτα ποιητέα ἐστί· τύραννος  
 γὰρ ἐὼν τυράννῳ συγκατεργάζεται· ὑμῖν δέ γε οὐ  
 ποιητέα, εἰ περ εὖ τυγχάνετε φρονέοντες, ἐπισταμένοισι  
 ὡς βαρβάροις ἐστι οὔτε πιστὸν οὔτε ἀληθές οὐδέν. 25  
 143 ταῦτα ἔλεξαν οἱ ἄγγελοι. Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ πρὸς μὲν  
 Ἀλέξανδρον ὑπεκρίναντο τάδε· Καὶ αὐτοὶ τοῦτό γε  
 ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι πολλαπλησίη ἐστὶ τῷ Μήδῳ δύναμις

by taking part in the Ionic revolt (5. 97). — 10. ἀρχὴν: in the beginning. — 11. ἄλλως τε: and on other grounds. The gen. τούτων ἀπάντων perhaps depends upon ἄλλως. Cp. ἄλλα τῶν δικαίων Xen. Mem. 4. 4. 25, τῶνδε τὰ ἔτερα ποιεῖν Hdt. 4. 126. 4. Abicht and Stein take τούτων as well as δουλοσύνης with αἰτίους = that the Athenians who have been the cause of all this should be the cause. Reiske

supplied ἀνευ before τούτων. —

14. τὸ πάλαι: referring to the story of the help given the Heraclidae, and the Seven against Thebes. Cp. 9. 27. — 16. διζῶν: Dial. § 2. 2. No harvest is counted on for the present year and that of 480 had been taken by the Persians. — 18. τὰ . . . οἰκετέων ἐχόμενα: the children and slaves, a periphrasis for τοὺς οἰκέτας. Cp. τὰ τῶν οὐειράτων ἐχόμενα I. 120. 17.

ἡ περ ἡμῖν, ὥστε οὐδὲν δεῖ τοῦτό γε ὀνειδίζειν. ἀλλ' ὅμως ἐλευθερίας γλιχόμενοι ἀμυνόμεθα οὕτω ὅκως 5  
 ἂν καὶ δυνώμεθα. ὁμολογῆσαι δὲ τῷ βαρβάρῳ μήτε  
 σὺ ἡμέας πειρῶ ἀναπείθειν οὔτε ἡμεῖς πεισόμεθα. νῦν  
 τε ἀπάγγελλε Μαρδονίῳ ὡς Ἀθηναῖοι λέγουσι, ἔστ'  
 ἂν ὁ ἥλιος τὴν αὐτὴν ὁδὸν ἦγ τῇ περ καὶ νῦν ἔρχε-  
 ται, μήκοτε ὁμολογήσειν ἡμέας Ξέρξῃ· ἀλλὰ θεοῖσι τε 10  
 συμμάχοισι πίσυνοί μιν ἐπέξιμεν ἀμυνόμενοι καὶ τοῖσι  
 ἥρωσι, τῶν ἐκείνος οὐδεμίαν ὅπῳ ἔχων ἐνέπρησε τοὺς  
 τε οἴκους καὶ τὰ ἀγάλματα. σύ τε τοῦ λοιποῦ λόγους  
 ἔχων τοιούσδε μὴ ἐπιφαίνεο Ἀθηναίοισι, μηδὲ δοκέων  
 χρηστὰ ὑπουργεῖν ἀθέμιστα ἔρδειν παραίνει. οὐ γάρ 15  
 σε βουλόμεθα οὐδὲν ἄχαρι πρὸς Ἀθηναίων παθεῖν,  
 144 ἑόντα πρόξενόν τε καὶ φίλον. πρὸς μὲν Ἀλέξανδρον  
 ταῦτα ὑπεκρίναντο, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς ἀπὸ Σπάρτης ἀγγέ-  
 λους τάδε· Τὸ μὲν δεῖσαι Λακεδαιμονίους μὴ ὁμολο-  
 γήσωμεν τῷ βαρβάρῳ κάρτα ἀνθρωπήιον ἦν. ἀτὰρ  
 αἰσχροῦς γε οἴκατε ἐξεπιστάμενοι τὸ Ἀθηναίων φρό- 5  
 νημα ἀρρωδῆσαι, ὅτι οὔτε χρυσός ἐστι γῆς οὐδαμόθι  
 τοσοῦτος οὔτε χώρη κάλλει καὶ ἀρετῇ μέγα ὑπερφέρειν, α  
 τὰ ἡμεῖς δεξάμενοι ἐθέλοισιν ἂν μηδίσαντες καταδου-  
 λῶσαι τὴν Ἑλλάδα. πολλά τε γὰρ καὶ μεγάλα ἐστὶ  
 τὰ διακωλύοντα ταῦτα μὴ ποιεῖν μηδ' ἦν ἐβελωμεν, 10  
 πρῶτα μὲν καὶ μέγιστα τῶν θεῶν τὰ ἀγάλματα καὶ

THE ATHENIAN REPLY TO ALEX-  
 ANDER AND THE SPARTANS  
 (CC. 143-144)

143. 4. ἡ περ: not Attic. —  
 ὀνειδίζειν: *cast up*. They resent

the reference to their weakness.

— 11. συμμάχοισι: in apposition  
 to θεοῖσι. — μιν: with ἀμυνόμενοι.

144. 6. ἀρρωδῆσαι: with οἴ-  
 κατε. — ὅτι κτέ.: explanatory of  
 φρόνημα. — 7. ἀρετῇ: *fertility*.

τὰ οἰκήματα ἐμπεπρημένα τε καὶ συγκεχωσμένα, τοῖσι  
 ἡμέας ἀναγκαίως ἔχει τιμωρεῖν ἐς τὰ μέγιστα μᾶλλον  
 ἢ περ ὁμολογεῖν τῷ ταῦτα ἐργασαμένῳ, αὐτὶς δὲ τὸ  
 Ἑλληνικόν, ἐὼν ὁμαιμόν τε καὶ ὁμόγλωσσον, καὶ θεῶν<sup>15</sup>  
 ἰδρύματά τε κοινὰ καὶ θυσίαι ἡθεὰ τε ὁμότροπα, τῶν  
 προδότας γενέσθαι Ἀθηναίους οὐκ ἂν εὖ ἔχοι. ἐπί-  
 στασθέ τε οὕτω, εἰ μὴ πρότερον ἐτυγχάνετε ἐπιστά-  
 μενοι, ἔστ' ἂν καὶ εἰς περιῇ Ἀθηναίων, μηδαμὰ ὁμο-  
 λογήσοντας ἡμέας Ξέρξῃ. ὑμέων μέντοι ἀγάμεθα τὴν<sup>20</sup>  
 προνοίην τὴν ἐς ἡμέας ἔχουσαν, ὅτι προεῖдете ἡμέων  
 οἰκοφθορημένων οὕτω ὥστε ἐπιθρέψαι ἐθέλειν ἡμέων  
 τοὺς οἰκέτας. καὶ ὑμῖν μὲν ἡ χάρις ἐκπεπλήρωται,  
 ἡμεῖς μέντοι λιπαρήσομεν οὕτω ὅκως ἂν ἔχωμεν, οὐδὲν  
 λυπέοντες ὑμέας. νῦν δέ, ὥς οὕτω ἐχόντων, στρατιὴν<sup>25</sup>  
 ὥς τάχιστα ἐκπέμπετε. ὥς γὰρ ἡμεῖς εἰκάζομεν, οὐκ  
 ἐκὰς χρόνου παρέτται ὁ βάρβαρος ἐσβαλὼν ἐς τὴν ἡμε-  
 τέρην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὰν τάχιστα πύθηται τὴν ἀγγελίην ὅτι  
 οὐδὲν ποιήσομεν τῶν ἐκείνος ἡμέων προσεδείτο. πρὶν  
 ὦν παρῆναι ἐκείνων ἐς τὴν Ἀττικὴν, ἡμέας καιρός<sup>30</sup>  
 ἔστι προβοηθῆσαι ἐς τὴν Βοιωτίην. οἱ μὲν ταῦτα  
 ὑποκριναμένων Ἀθηναίων ἀπαλλάσσονται ἐς Σπάρτην.

From τοσοῦτος supply οὕτω with  
 μέγα ὑπερφέρονσα. — 14. τὸ Ἑλλη-  
 νικόν: *the Greek race*. — 16. κοινά:  
 this belongs also with θυσίαι. —  
 21. ὅτι προεῖдете: explanatory of  
 προνοίην. — 23. καὶ ὑμῖν μὲν κτέ.:  
*and so far as you are concerned*  
*the kindness is performed in full,*  
*i.e. we take the will for the deed.* —  
 26. οὐκ ἐκὰς χρόνου: *at no distant*

*time*. — 31. Βοιωτίην: the Pelo-  
 ponnesians desired to guard the  
 Isthmus, but the coöperation of the  
 Athenian fleet was essential. The  
 Athenians desired to return to  
 their own land at once, and with-  
 out doubt they worked on the  
 fears of the Spartans by a threat  
 of alliance with Mardonius. Cp.  
 9. 7-10.

# APPENDIX

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### 1. MANUSCRIPTS

- A. Mediceus. Tenth century. Laurentian library, Florence.
- B. Angelicanus, or Passioneus, or Romanus. Eleventh century. Angelican library, Rome.
- C. Florentinus. Eleventh century. Laurentian library, Florence.
- P. Parisinus. Thirteenth century. Paris.
- R. Romanus. Fourteenth century. Vatican library, Rome.
- v. Vindobonensis. Fourteenth century. Vienna.
- s. Sancroftianus or Cantabrigiensis. Fourteenth century. Emmanuel College, Cambridge.

These fall into two groups, A, B, C ( $\alpha$ ), and R, s, v ( $\beta$ ). P agrees sometimes with  $\alpha$ , sometimes with  $\beta$ . In the critical notes  $z$  represents *Aldi editio princeps*.

### 2. TEXT EDITIONS

- DIETSCH-KALLENBERG: Leipzig, 1885, 1894.
- FRITSCH, ADOLF: Leipzig, 1899, 1906.
- HERWERDEN, H. VAN: Utrecht, 1888, 1889.
- HOLDER, ALFRED: Vienna, Leipzig, 1886, 1888.
- STEIN, HEINRICH: Berlin, 1869-72 (*editio maior*), 1884 (*editio minor*).

### 3. ANNOTATED EDITIONS

- ABBOTT, EVELYN: Books V.-VI., Oxford, 1893.
- ABICHT, K.: Leipzig. Fourth edition of VIII. in 1893, of VIII.-IX. in 1892.
- BAEHR, I. C. G.: Leipzig, 1856-61.
- BLAKESLEY, J. W.: London, 1861.
- KRÜGER, K. W.: Leipzig, 1855-75.
- MACAN, R. W.: Books IV.-VI., London, 1895.
- MERRIAM, A. C.: Books VI.-VII., New York, 1885.



SAYCE, A. H.: Books I.-III., London, 1883.

SITZLER, J.: Books VI.-IX., Gotha. Second edition of VII. in 1892, of VIII. in 1898.

STEIN, H.: Berlin. Fifth edition of VII. in 1889, of VIII.-IX. in 1893.

STRACHAN, JOHN: Book VI., London, 1891.

#### 4. TRANSLATIONS

MACAULAY, G. C.: London and New York, 1890.

RAWLINSON, G. AND H.: Oxford, 1858. Text of the translation with notes abridged by A. J. Grant, London, 1897.

#### 5. AUXILIARIES

ABICHT, K.: *Die Wiener Handschrift des Herodot*, Oels, 1888.

BAUER, A.: *Die Entstehung des herodotischen Geschichtswerkes: eine kritische Untersuchung*, Wien, 1878.

—: *Die Schlacht bei Salamis*, *Berichte d. öster. arch. Inst.*, 1901.

DELBRÜCK, H.: *Die Perserkriege*, Berlin, 1887.

GOMPERZ, TH.: *Herodoteische Studien*, Wien, 1883.

GOODWIN, W. W.: *The Battle of Salamis. Harvard Studies in Classical Philology*, 1906.

GRUNDY, G. B.: *The Great Persian War*, London, 1901.

HACHEZ, K.: *De Herodoti itineribus et scriptis*, Göttingen, 1878.

HAUVETTE, A.: *Hérodote: histoires des guerres médiques*, Paris, 1894.

HOFFMANN, O.: *Der ionische Dialekt*, Göttingen, 1898.

KALLENBERG, H.: *Stand der Handschriftenfrage bei Herodot*. *Philologus*, 1885. With bibliography.

KIRCHHOFF, A.: *Ueber die Entstehungszeit des herodoteischen Geschichtswerkes*, Berlin, 1878.

MUNRO, J. A. R.

RAASE, H.: *Ein Beitrag zur Darstellung der Schlacht bei Salamis*, Rostock, 1904.

SCHÖLL, A.: *Herodots Entwicklung zu seinem Beruf*. *Philologus*, 1855.

SMYTH, H. W.: *The Sounds and Inflections of the Greek Dialects. Ionic*. Oxford, 1894.

WHEELER, B. I.: *Herodotus's Account of the Battle of Salamis. Transactions of the American Philological Association*, 1902.

For additional bibliography on the battle of Salamis, see Busolt, *Griechische Geschichte*, II. 700.

## CRITICAL NOTES. BOOK VII

8. β 11. [ἀπικόμενοι] omitted by Dion. H., followed by Kallenberg, Holder, Fritsch, Sitzler. — 26. 16. [ἐν τῇ πόλει] del. Valckenaer, foll. by most eds. — 36. 12. ζεφύρου, so nearly all eds.; K. and Krüger εὔρου with Mss. — 36. 29. [καὶ οἱ ἵπποι] del. Stein (ed. 1884), foll. by K., Hold., Fr., Sitz. — 49. 9. [τὸν λιμένα] del. Kr., foll. by K., St., Hold., F., Sitz. — 63. 8. [τούτων δὲ μεταξὺ Χαλδαῖοι] del. St., as a later interpolation, foll. by most eds. — 73. 6. ἐς Φρύγας del. Gomperz, foll. by K. and Hold.; but while not necessary to the sense, there seems to be no convincing reason for suspecting the words. — 97. 1. οἶδε α omits, foll. by K., St. (1884), F. — 106. 2. μούνῃ α omits; also K., St. (1884), F., Sitz. — 119. 17. ἔσκε α omits, foll. by K. — 121. 9. [στρατόν] omitted by β, foll. by K., Hold., F., Sitz., Ab. — 137. 13. [ἐκ τῆς μήνιος] del. Gomperz, as an interpolation; so K., Hold., St. (1884), F., Sitz. — 142. 9. [κατὰ τὸν φραγμόν] del. Gomperz, as an interpolation, foll. by K., St. (1884), F. — 153. 19. [τοῦ] del. Valckenaer, foll. by K., F., Sitz., Ab. — 154. 8. [ὅς] del. Reiske, foll. by K., F., Ab. A lacuna is assumed by St., who would write (Θήρωνος δὲ πατρὸς or simply (υἱέ)ος. Sitz. writes (Ἀκραγαντίνου ἀνδρ)ός. — 157. 4. τε καὶ Ἀθηναῖοι α omits, foll. by K. and St. — 162. 7. [οὗτος δὲ κτέ.] bracketed by K., Kr., Ab. The words τὸ ἐθέλει λέγειν del. Eltz, foll. by Hold., St., F. — 167. 3. [ἐν τῇ Σικελίῃ] β omits, foll. by K., Hold., F. — 167. 7. [ἐθύετο καὶ] del. Ab., foll. by K., Sitz. [καὶ ἐκαλλιερεῖτο] bracketed by Kr., St. (1884). — 167. 12. [ὡς Καρχηδόνιοι καὶ Συρηκόσιοι] reading of α; ὡς Καρχηδόνιοι reading of β. St. brackets, foll. by K., Hold., Sitz., Ab. Kr. brackets Καρχηδόνιοι καὶ. — 190. 6. αὕτη reading of β, foll. by Hold., St., F., Sitz., Ab. α omits, foll. by Kr., K. — 190. 8. [χρύσεια] del. Valckenaer, foll. by eds. generally. — 203. 13. [ἄν] del. Kr., foll. by K., Hold., F., Sitz., Ab. If genuine, it belongs to ὀφείλειν.

## CRITICAL NOTES. BOOK VIII

2. 2. εἰρέεται; Mss. εἴρηται. 3. ὡς τὸ πλῆθος Mss.; ὅσον Reiske, K., Ab., Sitz. — 3. 5. μέγα τε ποιούμενοι St., Sitz.; μέγα πεποιημένοι Mss., K., Hold.; μέγα τι Ab. — 5. 12. πληγέντες β and eds.; πάντες α. — 19. 2. ὁ α; β omits. 5. θάλασσαν ταύτην α, St.; θάλασσαν, ταύτη β, K., Hold., Ab., Sitz. — 22. 5. ἔλεγον τάδε; τάδε ἔλεγε α, eds.;

λέγοντα τάδε β. 19. ἐπεῖτε ἄν; Mss. omit ἄν. — 25. 11. τέσσερες χιλιάδες bracketed by K., Hold., Sitz. — 32. 9. οἰκημένην K., St., Sitz.; οἰκειομένην Mss., Ab., Hold. — 38. 7. μίζοντας . . . ἔχοντας Mss.; most eds. omit or bracket ἔχοντας; μεζόνως Reiske, Hold.; μέζονα . . . ἄνθρωπον Wessel. — 43. 4. τὸ β; ὁ α; St. omits, cp. 7. 6. 11, 8. 45. 1, 8. 46. 16. — 46. 16. τὰς περ α, K., St., Sitz.; τὰς καὶ β, Hold., Ab. — 49. 9. εἰ α; ἦν β. — 50. 2. ἐληλύθει eds.; ἐλήλυθε Mss. — 53. 2. ἔξοδος Gomperz, K., Sitz.; ἔσοδος Mss., St., Hold., Ab. — 8. καίπερ β, K., Hold.; καὶ τοι α. 10. ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκ. bracketed by Cobet, K., Hold. — 60. α 3. λόγουσι Kr., K., etc.; λέγουσι Mss. 6. τό; ἐς ὃ Mss. — 65. 33. δῆ; Mss. δέ. — 73. 3. νῦν τῇ; Mss. τε. — 74. 2. δρόμω; δρόμου Mss.; δρόμον K., Sitz.; bracketed St., Hold., Ab. 6. τέως; ἕως Mss. — 77. The whole chap. is bracketed by Krüger, Gomperz, K. 3. ῥήματα St., Sitz.; πρήγματα Mss. 8. πιθέσθαι AP; πείθεσθαι B; τίθεσθαι C δ; πείσθαι Düntzer, St. 12. ἐς τοιαῦτα μὲν (ἐσβλέψας) St., Sitz. 13. ἀντιλογίας; Mss. ἀντιλογίης. — 79. 9. προακηκεί eds.; προακήκοε Mss. — 80. 11. ταῦτα δὴ τὰ κάλλιστα, bracketed by Krüger, K. — 82. 3. ἀνὴρ (Τῆμος) Krüger, K. — 83. 3. τε δὴ διέφαινε Wessel., K., Sitz.; τε δὴ ἔφαινε α; τε διέφαινε P. 5. (τὰ) Dobree, K., Sitz., Hold; Mss. omit. — 84. 2. ἐπὶ bracketed by Bekker, K., Hold., Sitz., Ab. — 14. ἀνακρούσεσθε Naber, Hold., Ab.; ἀνακρούεσθε Mss. — 85. 9. τοῦδε δέ Reiske, etc.; τοῦ δε Mss. — 13. χώρα πολλῇ P; χώρα πολλή other Mss. — 86. 5. καί; Mss. omit. 6. οὔτε τεταγμένον; Mss. οὐ. — 87. 2. μετεξετέρους bracketed by St., Hold., Sitz. — 89. 6. καὶ μή Mss.; οἱ μή Krüger, K., Sitz., Ab. — 90. 2. Φοινίκων eds.; Φοίνικες Mss. 10. δέ P; δῆ other Mss. 23. δέ τι eds.; δ' ἔτι Mss. — 94. 1. Κορινθίων Naber, K.; Κορίνθιον Mss. — 96. 7. ἀποπλησθῆναι most eds.; ἀποπλῆσαι Mss. 13. φρίζουσι eds.; φρίζουσι Mss. — 98. 4. ἧ eds.; Mss. omit. 12. κατ' ἄλλον Mss., K.; κατ' ἄλλον (καὶ ἄλλον) St., Hold., Sitz., Ab. 13. (ἐν) St., Hold. — 99. 6. ἐπσελθοῦσα K., Sitz., Hold.; ἐπεξελθοῦσα Mss. 7. (δέ) K. (Praef.), Sitz. — 100. 27. οὐδέ K., Sitz.; οὐδέν Mss. — 101. 3. ὑποκρινεῖσθαι eds.; ἀποκρινεῖσθαι Mss. 19. τε Mss.; suspected by Krüger, St., Hammer, etc. — 102. 12. περὶ οἶκον τὸν σόν bracketed by St., Hold., Ab. — 103. 6. τοὺς β; α omits. — 104. οἱ δὲ Πηδασεῖς . . . Ἑρμότιμος ἦν bracketed by eds. — 106. 4. Χῖοι β; Χῖοι μὲν α, St., Ab., Sitz. — 107. 4. πειρώμενον bracketed by Krüger, Ab. 10. ταύτας β; ταύτης α, St.; ταύτη K., Sitz. — 108. 13. σφέις K., Sitz., Ab.; σφάεις β; σφι α, St., Hold. κακόν β; κακῶν α. 14. ἐργασαίετο most eds.; ἐργάσατο

R.; -σαιντο sz; -σαιτο a, St. 23. τὸν Ἑλλ. καρπὸν K.; τὸν τῶν Ἑλλ. καρπὸν a; β omits τόν. 25. ἔλθῃ β; ἔλθοι a. — 111. 17. ἄν; Mss. omit. — 112. 4. χρεώμενος bracketed by Cobet, K. λόγοισι τοῖσι β; τοῖσι a. 5. Ἀνδρίους β; βασιλέα a. — 113. 4. ἀνωρίην β; ἀνωρίη a, St. 16. ἐν K., Sitz., Ab.; ἐν St., Hold. (cp. 6. 127. 2); β has ἐν. — 128. 18. καταπληῖξαι a; καταπλέξαι β. — 130. 2. ὁ Krüger, K.; Mss. omit. — 131. 12. ἐπτά Paulmier, eds.; Mss. δυῶν. — 135. 1. τότε δέ most eds.; τότε δέ Mss. — 140. a 11. νῦν· τί K., Sitz., Ab.; τάδε. νῦν τί St., Hold. — β 13. ἐξαίρετον μεταίχμιόν τε K., St., Hold.; ἐξαίρετόν τι μετ. z, Sitz.; ἐξαίρετόν τε μετ. R., Ab. — 142. 10. ἀρχήν Schaefer, K., Sitz.; ἀρχῆς Mss., St., Ab. 11. ἄλλως τε Mss., K., St., Ab., Hold.; ὥστε οὕτω ἐχόντων αἰτίους Sitz. — 144. 28. ἐπεάν Bredow and most eds.; ἐπειδάν Mss., St.



## GREEK INDEX

[D. refers to the Dialect Forms, pp. 20-22; S. to the Syntactical Usage, pp. 22-78.]

- ἀγαρήμιον 8. 98. 15.  
 ἄγερος 7. 5. 3, 7. 48. 9.  
 ἀθάνατοι 7. 83. 4.  
 ἀκούειν: *c. accus.* 7. 116. 4.  
 ἄκρος 7. 5. 16, 7. 111. 5.  
 ἀλῆης 7. 134. 8.  
 ἀμφί S. 5.  
 ἀμφισβαστεῖν D. 1. ii. 1.  
 ἄν S. 22.  
 ἀνά S. 5.  
 ἀναγιγνώσκειν: (= ἀναπελθεῖν) 7. 7. 1, 7. 144. 6.  
 ἀναρριπτεῖν κινδύνους 7. 50. 20.  
 ἀνέκαθεν 7. 221. 4.  
 ἀνέσχοντο: *c. inf.* 7. 139. 30.  
 ἀντί S. 5.  
 ἀντίος S. 4. 1 A.  
 ἀπέργειν 8. 35. 4.  
 ἀπό S. 5.  
 ἀρρωδεῖν D. 1. ii. 1.  
 -αται D. 4. 3.  
 ἄτε: *c. ptc.* S. 25. 4.  
 ἀτιμία: (at Sparta) 7. 231. 3.  
 βάσανος 7. 10. α 6.  
 γαμός 7. 155. 8.  
 γάρ S. 31.  
 γῆν τε καὶ ὕδωρ 7. 32. 2.  
 γίνομαι D. 2. 5.  
 γινώσκω D. 2. 5.  
 γνωσιμαχεῖν 7. 130. 7, 8. 29. 3.  
 δέ: in apod. 7. 51. 3, 7. 103. 10, 7. 153. 15, 7. 157. 19, 7. 159. 8, 7. 160. 12. S. 27-28.  
 δέκνυμι D. 1. ii. 2.  
 δέκομαι D. 2. 4.  
 δή S. 33.  
 δῆθεν 8. 6. 10.  
 διὰ S. 5.  
 διεργάζεσθαι 7. 10. γ 9, 7. 224. 3.  
 διξός D. 2. 2.  
 ἰδοῖαι: (*is wont*) = φιλεῖ 7. 50. 15; in fut. conds. S. 18. 3.  
 εἰμί D. 4. 5.  
 ἐκ: (= ἐπὶ) *c. gen.* 7. 11. 14, 7. 16. γ 17, 7. 164. 10. S. 5.  
 ἑκαστος 8. 19. 12.  
 ἐκὼν εἶναι S. 23. 2.  
 ἑλλὰς: (adj.) 7. 22. 16.  
 ἐλθεῖν ἡμῖν ἐς μάχην 7. 9. γ 6.  
 ἐλπίζω ὥς 7. 157. 21.  
 ἐν S. 5; ἐν χερσὶ ἔχειν 7. 5. 10, 7. 47. 5; ἐν φῶ S. 20. 3.  
 ἐναντίος S. 4. 1 A.  
 ἐνθαῦτα D. 2. 4.  
 ἐνθεύτην D. 2. 4.  
 ἑννέα ὁδοί 7. 114. 2.  
 ἔντος: (for μεταξύ) 7. 100. 15.  
 ἔντος ἡμεωντοῦ 7. 47. 12.  
 ἐξελεῖν: *c. accus.* 7. 29. 1.  
 ἐπειτα S. 20. 3.  
 ἐπὶ S. 5; ἐπὶ τοῦδε: (= Att. ἀπὸ τοῦδε) 7. 40. 11.

ἐπικλητός 7. 8. 3.  
 ἐπίστανται: (*believe*) 7. 218. 15, 8. 25. 4.  
 ἐπίστημι: *c. gen.* 7. 22. 9, 7. 117. 3; *c. dat.* 7. 35. 13.  
 ἐπιτροπέειν: *c. gen.* 7. 7. 8, 7. 62. 12; *c. accus.* 7. 78. 9.  
 ἐπιφουτᾶν: *c. dat.* 7. 16. β 2; *c. accus.* 7. 16. γ 13.  
 ἔρχομαι λῖξων 7. 49. 14, 7. 102. 9.  
 ἔς S. 5; ἔς δ S. 20. 3; ἔς οὖ S. 3. 4, 20. 3.  
 ἐσσεύμαι D. 1. ii. 2.  
 ἑτεραλκίως 8. 11. 10.  
 εὖτε: S. 20. 3.

θεόπροπος 7. 140. 1. ~  
 θάμα D. 1. ii. 8.

ιδέσθαι 8. 27. 15.  
 ἵδη: (*forest*) 7. 111. 4.  
 ἰθὺς D. 1. ii. 7.  
 ἱρόν 7. 140. 3. D. 1. ii. 7.  
 Ἴωνες 7. 9. 4.

καλλιερῆιν 7. 113. 10, 7. 167. 6.  
 Κάρνεια 7. 206. 4, 8. 71. 8.  
 κάρτα 8. 27. 5, 8. 37. 9.  
 κατά S. 5.  
 καταγέλασαι: *c. dat.* 7. 9. 6.  
 καταλαμβάνει: (*it happens*) 8. 55. 6.  
 καταπρόϊζει 7. 17. 9.  
 κατορύσσειν: (*bury alive*) 7. 114. 7, 11.  
 κιθόν D. 2. 4.  
 Κοίλα 8. 13. 7.  
 κότε D. 2. 1.  
 κῶς D. 2. 1.

λαμβάνω: Ionic forms, D. 4. 8.  
 λαμπαδηφορίη 8. 98. 13.  
 λείπεσθαι: (*to be inferior to*) 7. 48. 6.  
 Δισαί 7. 123. 12.

μάλιστα κη 8. 8. 13.  
 μέγαθος D. 1. ii. 1.  
 Μελάμπυγος 7. 216. 7.  
 μεμφθείς 7. 146. 8.  
 μὲν S. 26.  
 μετά S. 5.  
 μεταβουλεύεσθαι 7. 12. 8.  
 μετεξέτερα 8. 8. 16.  
 μέχρι οὐ S. 20. 3; μέχρι ὄσου 8. 3. 9.  
 μηδέ S. 29.  
 μιν S. 9. 5.

νηὺς: forms, D. 3. i. 7.  
 νικᾷ: (*it prevails*) 8. 9. 3.  
 νῦν τε 8. 101. 18.

οἱ S. 9. 5.  
 οἶα: *c. ptc.* S. 25. 4.  
 οἱ δέ S. 9. 1 c.  
 ὅκως: temporal S. 20. 3; final S. 21. 5.  
 ὁμιλεῖν 7. 26. 10, 7. 214. 11.  
 ὁμόψηφος 7. 149. 16.  
 ὄνειρος: 7. 15. 9; ὄνειρον 7. 16. β 3.  
 ὀρμήσθαι 8. 12. 12, 8. 35. 2.  
 ὀροσάγγαι 8. 85. 14.  
 οὐ: (in *ei*-clause) 7. 9. 11; (with single word in prot.) 7. 10. θ 10. S. 18. 2.  
 (ἦ) οὐ: after *μᾶλλον*, 7. 16. γ 5.  
 οὐδέ S. 29.  
 οὐρανός 7. 8. γ 6.  
 οὕτω 7. 19. 12, 7. 175. 14.

πάγχυ 8. 10. 3, 8. 12. 7.  
 παλεῖν: 8. 21. 5.  
 παρὰ: S. 5; (*c. gen. of agent*) 7. 103. 11; (for gen. or *ἦ* with compar.) 7. 103. 21.  
 παραβάλλεσθαι: (*wager*) 7. 10. θ 4.  
 παρήχει: (*it is possible*) 8. 8. 8.  
 πειρᾶν, πειρᾶσθαι 7. 9. β 12.  
 πειρώμαι: (with suppl. *ptc.*) 7. 9. α 5.

Πέργamos: (of Troy) 7. 43. 6.  
 περί S. 5.  
 πικρὸν ὕδωρ 7. 35. 7.  
 οἱ πλείονες 7. 149. 12.  
 πόλεμος: (personified) 7. 220. 12.  
 πολλὰ πλῆσιον: (as compar.) 7. 48. 5.  
 πρὶν S. 23. 8.  
 πρό S. 5.  
 προδοῦναι: (= ἐπιλιπεῖν) 7. 187. 7.  
 πρόκατε 8. 65. 8.  
 πρόμαντις 7. 111. 8, 7. 141. 11.  
 πρόσ: S. 5; (*c. gen.* of agent) 7. 2. 12,  
 7. 5. 12, 7. 10. η 12, 7. 16. α 7, 7. 18. 13.  
 πυρφόρος 8. 6. 11.

σαγάρης 7. 64. 6.  
 σέν S. 5.  
 συνίστασθαι 8. 27. 23.  
 σύντροφος 7. 102. 5.  
 σφέα S. 9. 4.  
 σφεῖς S. 9. I a.

τάμνειν D. I. ii. 1.  
 ταῦτα: (looking forward) 7. 84. 1.  
 τε S. 30.  
 τιθεῖναι νόμον 7. 8. α 2.  
 τις: S. 11; (intruding in attrib. pos.) 7.  
 143. 2, 7. 146. 9.  
 τρώμα D. I. ii. 8.

ὑπαρχος 7. 6. 3.  
 ὑπέρ S. 5.  
 ὑπό S. 5.

φερέγγυος 7. 49. 8.

χείρ: (*band*) 7. 20. 4, 7. 157. 14.  
 χρησθαι συμφορῇ 8. 20. 9.

ᾧδε 7. 15. 15, 7. 62. 7, 7. 133. I.  
 ὦν S. 32.

ὥς: (= ὥστε) 7. 24. 6. S. 23. 3; (*c. fut.*  
 for inf.) 7. 161. 6; *c. ptc.* S. 25. 3.  
 ὥς δ' αὖτως 7. 86. 9, 8. 21. 6.  
 ὥς δὲ καὶ 7. 104. 15.  
 ὥσει 7. 109. 11.  
 ὥσπερ S. 20. 3.  
 ὥστε: (pleonastic) 7. 6. 4; *c. inf.* S. 23.  
 4; *c. ptc.* S. 25. 4.

Once Used Terms: ἀπαξ εἰρημένα: ἀγχο-  
 τέρη 7. 175. 6; ἀξιονικότερος 7. 187.  
 16; γυνῶμα 7. 52. 3; διαδέξιον 7. 180.  
 4; δόκσις 7. 185. 3; εἰσέναι (τὸ ὕδωρ)  
 7. 109. 7; ἐπιστατεῖν 7. 22. 9; ἱππο-  
 δρόμος ψιλός 7. 158. 20; ὁμόσιτος 7.  
 119. 13; ὀρχηδόν 7. 144. 5; προδέκτωρ  
 7. 37. 14; προσυμμίσγω 7. 129. 15;  
 συνάγγελος 7. 230. 5; συνίπαρχος 7.  
 88. 2; ταχυάλωτον 7. 130. 9; τοιουτό-  
 τροπον 7. 227. 2; ὑποδέξιος 7. 49. 10;  
 ὑπεχειρῶν 7. 225. 4; χειριδωτός 7. 61.  
 4; ὥσει 7. 109. 11.

Herodotean Words: ἀγερσις 7. 5. 3, 7.  
 48. 9; ἀντιῶ 7. 9. α 9; ἀπαρτιλογία  
 7. 29. 13; ἀτρεκέως 7. 10. η 10; δε-  
 δόξασθε 7. 135. 11; δεύτερα 7. 8. β 13;  
 διέκροος 7. 129. 19; ἔκροος 7. 129. 15;  
 ἔλασις 7. 6. 26; ἐξήλυσις 7. 129. 4;  
 ἐπάγερσις 7. 19. 12; ἐπαύρεσις 7. 158.  
 10; ἐπιλάμπειν 7. 13. 2; εὐαπήγητος  
 7. 63. 4; εὐπρόσωπα 7. 168. 9; θηλυ-  
 δρήης 7. 153. 22; ἰθύνειν 7. 8. β 5;  
 καταεἰδῶ 7. 191. 7; κατηγεμῶν 7. 128.  
 15; κατηγέομαι 7. 130. 1; κατακρεουρ-  
 γεῖν 7. 181. 5; καταφοιτεῖν 7. 125. 3;  
 μελεδωνός 7. 31. 9; σιτοφόρος 7. 125.  
 2; συνέταιρος 7. 193. 10.

Herodotean Idioms: ἀγινεῖν 7. 25. 7;  
 ἀναβαίνειν (= ἀποβαίνειν) 7. 10. θ 6;  
 ἀπονοστεῖν 7. 10. θ 9; ἐπιστατεῖν 7.



22. 9; ἰδέσθαι 7. 208. 2; κατάπερ 7. 16. α 5; καταλαμβάνειν (*settle*) 7. 9. β 10; συγχωρεῖν (= παραχωρεῖν) 7. 161. 18; φορβή (*food for men*) 7. 107. 11.

**Herodotean Constructions:** ἀνάρτημαι *c. inf.* 7. 8. γ 1; ἀνασπᾶν σκηνήν 7. 119. 20; ἀντί *c. inf.* 7. 170. 14; ἀπαις ἔρσεως γόνου 7. 61. 16; αὐτοῦ τῇδε 7. 10. θ 12; εἶπαι ἐς σέ 7. 15. 5; ἐκτείνειν πᾶσαν προθυμίην 7. 10. ζ 6; ἐν δὲ δὴ καὶ 7. 224. 8; ἐν χειρὶ ἔχειν 7. 5. 10 (cp. μετὰ χειράς ἔχειν 7. 16. β 10); ἐς χειράς ἀξεσθαι 7. 8. 1; ἐπισταμαί *c. inf.* 7. 172. 13; ἐσιέναι (τὸ ὕδωρ) 7. 109. 7; ἐς δ 7. 58. 17, 7. 225. 4; εὕρσκειν *c. inf.* 7. 12. 3; ἴστασθαι πολέμους 7. 9. β 2, 7. 175. 3, 7. 236. 19; μέν νυν 7. 7. 4, 7. 8. β 5; μέχρι οὗ 7. 60. 11; ὅπως = ὡς 7. 159. 5, 7. 161. 5; προφέρειν πόλεμον 7. 9. γ 2; ὑπεροικεῖν *c. accus.* 7. 113. 2.

**Herodotean Periphrasis:** 7. 2. 5, 7. 3. 13, 7. 5. 3, 7. 11. 7, 10. 7. 30. 1, 7. 58. 6, 7. 99. 3, 7. 105. 2, 7. 113. 6, 7. 172. 11, 7. 190. 10, 7. 193. 13, 7. 194. 16, 7. 203. 1, 7. 207. 5.

**Homeric Words:** ἀποθορεῖν 7. 182. 7; ἄσσον 7. 233. 7; ἀτέων 7. 223. 22; γέρας 7. 3. 11; εἰδόμενος 7. 56. 6; θεοπρόπιον 7. 117. 9; κεραίῳ 7. 125. 4; μῆνις 7. 134. 2; μετανάστης 7. 161. 20; τυμβοχοεῖν 7. 117. 8.

**Homeric Constructions:** ἀμφί *c. dat.* 7. 143. 9; δεύτερα αὖτις 7. 141. 5; διὰ πάντων 7. 83. 8; ἐνέσχετο 7. 128. 15; ὁ δέ (Hom. repetition of subj.) 7. 6. 24, 7. 8. γ 13, 7. 9. α 2, 7. 10. θ 11, 7. 125. 5, 7. 163. 7, 7. 218. 18, 7. 224. 2; οἱ = αὐτῷ 7. 8. δ 5; τέμνειν ὄρκιον 7. 132. 5 (cp. 7. 124. 4); τις 7. 5. 12; ὑπομέμνειν *c. suppl. φtc.* 7. 101. 8, 7. 209. 18; ὡς ἀν *c. opt.* 7. 176. 24.

**Ionic Words:** ἀλίθειν 7. 170. 5; ἀρτεῖσθαι 7. 143. 16; δικαίῳ 7. 159. 7; διζέει 7. 205. 1; ἐτεροιοῦσθαι 7. 225. 7; μετεξέτερος 7. 142. 6; ῥῆμα (= νόμος) 7. 228. 9.

**Poetical Words and Phrases:** αἰεὶ κοτε 7. 102. 5; αἶνος 7. 107. 6; αἰχμή 7. 152. 16; αἰχεῖν 7. 103. 13; γυνῶμα 7. 52. 3; δειμαίνω 7. 103. 21; δοκεῖν 7. 1. 10; ἐλινύω 7. 56. 4; ἐπέπειν 7. 8. α 7; ἔρδεσκε 7. 33. 11; ἔρκος 7. 191. 4; ἔρξαν 7. 8. β 13; ἐς δεῖμα βάλλειν 7. 139. 29; εὐφρόνη 7. 12. 1; κρατύνω 7. 156. 4; κῦδος 7. 8. α 14; μετάρσιος 7. 188. 15; μηνίω 7. 169. 6; νεῖκος 7. 158. 7; ξυνόν 7. 53. 7; ὁμιλεῖν: (of place) 7. 26. 10, 7. 214. 11; παιδοφόνος 7. 3. 15; παιδοφόνος 7. 190. 11; πίσυνος 7. 10. 5, 7. 85. 7; σημάτωνω 7. 81. 6; στόρνυμι 7. 54. 4 (cp. 7. 193. 5); τειχέων κιθῶνες 7. 139. 10; τέρμα 7. 54. 8.

## ENGLISH INDEX

- Abae 8. 27, 8. 33, 8. 134.  
 Abdera 7. 109, 7. 126, 8. 120.  
 Abronichus 8. 21.  
 Abydenes 7. 44. 4, 7. 95. 7.  
 Abydos 7. 33 f., 7. 37. 7, 7. 43 f., 7. 43, 7.  
 147. 11, 7. 174. 3, 8. 117, 8. 130.  
 Acanthus 7. 115. 8.  
 Accusative S. 2.  
 Aceratus 8. 37. 3.  
 Achaeans Phthiote 7. 132. 3; of Peloponnese 8. 73.  
 Achaia (Phthiotis) 7. 173. 4; of Peloponnese 7. 94, 8. 36.  
 Achaemenes 7. 7. 6, 7. 97. 6.  
 Acheron 8. 47.  
 Acraiphia 8. 135.  
 Acropolis of Athens 7. 142, 8. 41, 8. 51-56.  
 Adverbs S. 14.  
 Aeacidae 8. 64, 8. 83-84.  
 Aeacus 8. 64.  
 Aegaleos 8. 90. 21.  
 Aegialia 7. 94. 6.  
 Aegina 7. 147, 8. 41, 8. 60, 8. 64, 8. 79, 8. 81, 8. 83, 8. 84, 8. 92, 8. 131-132.  
 Aeginetans 7. 144-145, 7. 203, 8. 1, 8. 46, 8. 74, 8. 84, 8. 86, 8. 91-93, 8. 122.  
 Aeolidae 8. 35. 6.  
 Aeropus: brother of Perdiccas 8. 137. 5; son of Philip 8. 139. 3.  
 Aeschraeus 8. 11.  
 Aetolians 8. 73.  
 Agamemnon 7. 159. 2.  
 Aglaurus 8. 53. 8,  
 Agora 7. 58. 12.  
 Agreement S. 1.  
 Ahuramazda 7. 40. 15, 7. 114. 10.  
 Ajax 8. 64, 8. 121.  
 Alabanda: in Caria 7. 195. 2; in Phrygia 8. 136.  
 Alcetes 8. 139.  
 Alcibiades 8. 17. 5.  
 Aleuadae 7. 6. 8, 11.  
 Alexander 7. 173. 15, 8. 34, 8. 121, 8. 136-137, 8. 139-144.  
 Alos 7. 173. 5.  
 Alpenoi 7. 176. 9, 7. 229. 5.  
 Alpenos 7. 216. 5.  
 Alyattes 8. 35.  
 Ambraciots 8. 45, 8. 47.  
 Ameinias 8. 84, 8. 93.  
 Amestris 7. 114. 8.  
 Amphiaraus 8. 134.  
 Amphicaea 8. 33.  
 Amphictyons 7. 200. 10.  
 Amphiloehus 7. 91. 10.  
 Amyntas 7. 173. 8. 136, 8. 139, 8. 140.  
 Anagyrus 8. 93.  
 Anaphora 7. 9. a 1, 7. 18. 9, 7. 119. 4, 8. 8. 5.  
 Anaxandrides: son of Theopompus 8. 131; son of Leon 7. 148, 7. 158, 7. 204 f. 8. 71.  
 Anaxilaus: of Rhegion 7. 165. 12; Spartan 8. 131.  
 Androdamas 8. 85.  
 Andromeda 7. 61. 14.  
 Andros 8. 66, 8. 108, 8. 111, 8. 112, 8. 121,

- Anopaea 7. 175. 6, 7. 216 f.  
 Antander 7. 42. 6.  
 Anticyra 7. 198. 9; men of 7. 214, 8. 21.  
 Antidorus 8. 11.  
 Aorist S. 15. 3.  
 Aphetæ 7. 193. 13, 7. 196. 8. 4, 8. 6-8, 8. 11-12, 8. 14.  
 Aphidnae 8. 125.  
 Apollo 7. 26, 8. 33, 8. 134-135.  
 Appositive designation 7. 8.  $\beta$  11.  
 Arabians 7. 69 f.  
 Arcadia 7. 90. 7, 8. 26; men of 7. 170, 7. 202, 8. 72-73.  
 Archidamus 8. 131.  
 Areopagus 8. 52.  
 Ares 7. 76, 7. 140, 8. 77.  
 Argæus 8. 139.  
 Argives, Medism of, 7. 152 (cp. 7. 73. 16).  
 Argos, Persian negotiations with, 7. 148-152; home of Perdiccas, 8. 137-138.  
 Ariabignes 7. 97. 1; 8. 89. 2.  
 Arians 7. 62. 4, 7. 66.  
 Ariaramnes 8. 90. 25.  
 Aripbron 7. 33, 8. 131.  
 Aristagoras 7. 8.  $\beta$  11.  
 Aristides 8. 79, 8. 81, 8. 95.  
 Aristodemus, at Thermopylae, 7. 229, 7. 231. 2, 7. 232; Spartan king, 7. 204, 8. 131.  
 Aristomachus 8. 131.  
 Aristophanes, parody of Hdt., 7. 14. 7.  
 Arsames 7. 69. 14, 7. 70. 2.  
 Artabanus 7. 10-12, 7. 15-18, 7. 46-52, 7. 66 f., 7. 75, 7. 82, 8. 54. 2.  
 Artabazus 7. 66. 6, 8. 126-129.  
 Artachæes, son of Artæus, 7. 22. 8, 7. 117. 4; father of Artayntes, 8. 130.  
 Artæans 7. 61. 12.  
 Artanes 7. 224. 10.  
 Artaxerxes 7. 151. 8.  
 Artayntes 8. 130.  
 Artemis 7. 176, 8. 77.  
 Artemisia 7. 99, 8. 68, 8. 69, 8. 87-88, 8. 93, 8. 101, 8. 103, 8. 107.  
 Artemisium 7. 175. 12, 7. 176. 4, 8. 2, 8. 4-6, 8. 8, 8. 11, 8. 14, 8. 16, 8. 21-23, 8. 40, 8. 42-46, 8. 66, 8. 72, 8. 82.  
 Article S. 8.  
 Artystone 7. 69. 13.  
 Asia 8. 109, 8. 118-9, 8. 126, 8. 136.  
 Asine 8. 73.  
 Asopus 7. 199. 8.  
 Aspiration D. 2. 3.  
 Assyrians 7. 63.  
 Asyndeton 7. 50. 1, 7. 162. 1.  
 Atarneus 7. 42. 4, 8. 106. 4.  
 Athena 7. 43, 8. 37, 8. 39, 8. 55, 8. 94, 8. 104.  
 Athenians, saviors of Hellas, 7. 139; at Artemisium, 8. 1-5; at Salamis, 8. 84-86, 8. 95; in negotiations with Mar-donius, 8. 140-144.  
 Athens, capture of, 8. 52-55.  
 Athos 7. 22. 29.  
 Atossa 7. 2. 7, 7. 3. 19.  
 Atramyttæum 7. 42. 6.  
 Attraction, S. 13. 3; in verse, 7. 145. 18.  
 Augment D. 4. 1.  
 Autonos 8. 39.  
 Bacis 8. 20, 8. 77, 8. 96.  
 Bactrians 7. 64. 1, 8. 113.  
 Bagæus 7. 80, 8. 130.  
 Barathrum 7. 133. 5.  
 Basileides 8. 132.  
 Bebina 8. 125.  
 Bermium 8. 138.  
 Bibliography of Herodotean Syntax, pp. 78-81; of texts and auxiliaries, pp. 423-424.  
 Bisaltia 7. 115. 5, 8. 116.  
 Boebe 7. 129. 21.

- Boeotians 7. 132, 7. 202, 8. 34, 8. 38, 8. 50, 8. 66, 8. 113.  
 Boges 7. 107. 3, 7. 113. 5.  
 Boreas 7. 189. 3.  
 Bottiaca 7. 123. 20, 7. 127. 6, 8. 127.  
 Brygians 7. 70. 4.  
 Bubares 7. 22. 7, 8. 136.  
 Cadmus 7. 163 f.  
 Caicus 7. 42. 3.  
 Calliades 8. 51. 5.  
 Callias 7. 151. 5.  
 Calyndians 8. 87-88.  
 Camarina 7. 154. 20, 7. 156. 8.  
 Cambyzes 7. 1. 13.  
 Camicus 7. 169. 7.  
 Cane 7. 42. 4.  
 Caphereus 8. 7.  
 Cappadocians 7. 72. 8.  
 Cardamyle 8. 73.  
 Carene 7. 42. 4.  
 Carians 7. 93, 7. 97-98, 8. 22.  
 Carneian festival 7. 206, 8. 72.  
 Carthaginians 7. 165. 10.  
 Carystians 8. 66, 8. 112, 8. 121.  
 Casmena 7. 155. 11.  
 Caspians 7. 67.  
 Castalian spring 8. 39.  
 Cataract 7. 26. 13.  
 Ceans 8. 1, 8. 46.  
 Cecrops 7. 141, 8. 44.  
 Celaenae 7. 26. 11.  
 Ceos (near Salamis) 8. 76. 8.  
 Cephenes 7. 61. 11.  
 Cepheus 7. 61. 13.  
 Cephisus 7. 178, 8. 33.  
 Cercopes 7. 216. 6.  
 Chalcidians: of Euboea, 8. 1, 8. 46; of Thrace, 8. 127.  
 Chalcidice 7. 185, 8. 127.  
 Charadra 8. 33.  
 Charilaus 8. 131.  
 Chersis 7. 98, 8. 11.  
 Chersonese, Thracian, 7. 22, 7. 33, 7. 58, 8. 130.  
 Chians 8. 106, 8. 132.  
 Chilon 7. 235. 6.  
 Chronology 8. 15. 6, 8. 51. 5, 8. 56. 7, 8. 66. 3, 8. 107. 4, 8. 113. 1.  
 Cilicians 7. 77, 7. 91, 7. 98, 8. 14, 8. 68 γ, 8. 100.  
 Cimmerians 7. 20. 7.  
 Cleinias 8. 17.  
 Cleodaeus 7. 204, 8. 131.  
 Cleombrotus 7. 205, 8. 71.  
 Colchians 7. 79.  
 Colias 8. 96.  
 Colossae 7. 30. 7.  
 Conditional clauses S. 18.  
 Coördination of gen. and adj. 7. 25. 2, 7. 34. 3.  
 Copais 8. 135.  
 Corcyraeans 7. 168.  
 Corinthians 8. 1, 8. 5, 8. 21, 8. 43, 8. 61, 8. 72, 8. 79, 8. 94.  
 Corpse, torn by dogs and birds, 7. 10. θ 13.  
 Corycian cave 8. 36.  
 Cranaans 8. 44.  
 Crestonice 8. 116. 2.  
 Cretans, refuse aid to Greeks, 7. 169-171.  
 Crissaeen plain 8. 32.  
 Critalla 7. 26. 3.  
 Critobulus 8. 127.  
 Crius 8. 92.  
 Croesus 7. 30, 8. 35, 8. 122.  
 Crotoniats 8. 47.  
 Cyme 7. 194, 8. 130.  
 Cynosura 8. 76. 8.  
 Cynurians 8. 73. 11.  
 Cyprians 7. 90, 7. 98, 8. 68 γ, 8. 100.  
 Cyrus 7. 8. α 6.  
 Cythnus 7. 90, 8. 46, 8. 67.

- Damasithimus, of Caria, 7. 98. 8; of Calyndus, 8. 87.  
 Danae 7. 61. 13.  
 Danaus 7. 94. 4.  
 Dardanus 7. 43. 12.  
 Darius 7. 1. 2, 7. 3. 19, 8. 89; (wives of) 7. 69. 14; (mission to Athens and Sparta) 7. 133.  
 Dative S. 4; after *ἐνί* (= *πρός*) 7. 164. 10; for gen. with comps. of *κατά* 7. 146. 7; ethical 7. 161. 12.  
 Daulis 8. 35.  
 Delos 8. 132, 8. 133.  
 Delphi 7. 111, 7. 139-140, 8. 27, 8. 35, 8. 82, 8. 114, 8. 121, 8. 122; men of, 8. 36-39.  
 Delphian tripod 8. 82. 5.  
 Demaratus 7. 3. 2, 7. 101-104, 7. 209, 7. 234-237, 7. 239, 8. 65.  
 Demeter 8. 65.  
 Democritus 8. 46. 13.  
 Demonstrative, deictic, 7. 49. 2.  
 Dicaeus 8. 65.  
 Dienece 7. 227.  
 Dogs, Indian, 7. 187. 5.  
 Dorian pentapolis 7. 93. 1.  
 Dorians 7. 95, 8. 31, 8. 45, 8. 46, 8. 66, 8. 73, 8. 141.  
 Dorieus 7. 158. 7, 7. 205. 4.  
 Doris 8. 31, 8. 32, 8. 43.  
 Doriscus 7. 59. 1, 7. 105. 4.  
 Drymus 8. 33.  
 Dryopis 8. 31, 8. 43; men of, 8. 43, 8. 46, 8. 73.  
 Egypt 7. 4. 2; men of, 7. 1, 7. 4, 7. 25, 7. 63, 8. 17, 8. 68, 8. 100.  
 Eion 7. 25. 11, 7. 107. 4, 7. 113. 4, 8. 118, 8. 120.  
 Elateia 8. 33.  
 Eleans 8. 72.  
 Eleusis 8. 65, 8. 85.  
 Elis 8. 73.  
 Ellopia 8. 23.  
 Epanalepsis 7. 16. a 12, 7. 39. 18, 7. 43. 7, 7. 56. 2, 7. 60. 12, 7. 167. 10.  
 Epanastrophe 7. 29. 5, 7. 41. 11, 7. 104. 21, 7. 210. 7.  
 Ephesus 8. 103, 8. 105, 8. 107.  
 Epialtes 7. 213 f.  
 Epidauros 8. 46; men of, 8. 1, 8. 43, 8. 72.  
 Erechtheus 7. 189, 8. 44, 8. 55.  
 Eretrians 8. 1, 8. 46.  
 Erineus 8. 43.  
 Erochus 8. 33.  
 Etesian winds 7. 168. 27.  
 Ethiopians 7. 69, 7. 70.  
 Euboea 8. 4, 8. 6-8, 8. 13, 8. 14, 8. 20, 8. 68 a, 8. 69, 8. 86; men of, 8. 5, 8. 19, 8. 20.  
 Eumenes 8. 93.  
 Eunomus 8. 131.  
 Euripus 7. 173, 7. 183, 8. 7, 8. 15, 8. 66.  
 Europe 8. 51, 8. 97, 8. 108, 8. 109.  
 Europus 8. 133, 8. 135.  
 Eurybiades 8. 2, 8. 4, 8. 5, 8. 42, 8. 49, 8. 57-64, 8. 74, 8. 79, 8. 108, 8. 124.  
 Eurycleides 8. 2, 8. 42.  
 Euryphon 8. 131.  
 Eurytus 7. 229.  
 Euxine shores, Athen. granary, 7. 147. 12.  
 Figura etymologica 7. 10. d 9.  
 Final clauses S. 21.  
 Fire signals 7. 183. 2.  
 Fleet, of Hellenes, first sea fight, 7. 179-183, 7. 188; at Artemisium, 8. 1; at Salamis, 8. 43-48, 8. 82; Persian, 7. 89-95, 7. 185. 4, 8. 66. 6.  
 Future S. 154; middle with passive force, 7. 39. 15.

- Gauanes 8. 137.  
 Gelon 7. 145, 7. 153-166, 7. 168.  
 Genitive S. 3; chorographic, 7. 22. 4, 7. 33. 3; of designation, 7. 156. 8; part. in attrib. position, 7. 110. 6, 7. 129. 3, 7. 156. 11.  
 Geraestus 8. 7.  
 Gergithians 7. 43. 13.  
 Gobryas 7. 2. 7.  
 Gonnus 7. 128. 8.  
 Gordias 8. 138.  
 Gorgo 7. 239. 22.  
 Gorgus 7. 98, 8. 11.  
 Gyagaea 8. 136.  
 Halicarnassus 7. 99, 8. 104.  
 Hamilcar 7. 165. 9, 7. 166 f.  
 Hegesilaus 8. 131.  
 Helle 7. 58. 10.  
 Hellespont: 7. 6. 25; (width) 7. 34. 4; (fettered) 7. 35. 4; (branded) 7. 35. 5; (current) 7. 35. 12; (bridge of) 7. 33-36; (region about) 7. 94. 9, 8. 51, 8. 87, 8. 97, 8. 107-111, 8. 115, 8. 117, 8. 118, 8. 120.  
 Helots 7. 229. 11, 8. 25.  
 Heracles: altar of, 7. 176. 17; and Argo, 7. 193; consumed, 7. 198. 12; *μελάνυρος*, 7. 216. 6, 8. 43, 8. 131.  
 Hermion 8. 73; men of, 8. 43, 8. 72.  
 Hermotimus 8. 104-106.  
 Herodotus, son of Basileides, 8. 132.  
 Hexameter (accidental) 7. 178. 9, 7. 225. 3.  
 Hierophants 7. 153. 8.  
 Hipparchus 7. 6. 15.  
 Hippocratides 8. 131.  
 Histiaea 8. 23-25, 8. 66.  
 Histiaeotis 7. 175. 11, 8. 23.  
 Histiaeus 7. 10. 7, 8. 7. 98. 7; Samian, 8. 85.  
 Homeric: (imitation) 7. 159. 2; (reminiscence) 7. 12. 7, 7. 16.  $\beta$  3, 7. 28. 5.  
 Hyampolis 8. 28, 8. 33.  
 Hybla 7. 155. 3.  
 Hydarnes 7. 83. 3, 7. 135. 4, 7. 211. 4, 7. 215-218, 8. 113. 9, 8. 118. 4.  
 Hyllus 7. 204, 8. 131.  
 Hyrcanians 7. 62. 10.  
 Hystaspes 7. 64. 9.  
 Iacchus 8. 65.  
 Iambic verse (accidental) 7. 169. 6.  
 Ida 7. 42. 7.  
 Illyrians 8. 137.  
 Imperfect S. 15. 2.  
 Inarus 7. 7. 7.  
 Indefinite relative clauses S. 19.  
 Indians 7. 65, 8. 113.  
 Indirect discourse S. 24.  
 Infinitive S. 23; absolute, 7. 3. 17, 7. 24. 1, 7. 104. 12; for imperative, 7. 141. 20, 7. 159. 8, 7. 209. 24.  
 Ion 7. 94, 8. 44.  
 Ionian dodecapolis 7. 94. 1, 7. 95. 4.  
 Ionians 8. 10, 8. 22, 8. 44, 8. 46, 8. 48, 8. 73, 8. 85, 8. 90, 8. 97, 8. 132.  
 Ischenous 7. 181, 8. 92.  
 Ismenian Apollo 8. 134.  
 Isthmus: congress at, 7. 145; deliberations at, 7. 175, 8. 71, 8. 123; wall across, 7. 139. 10, 8. 71. 9; plan of retiring to, 8. 49, 8. 56, 8. 60, 8. 79.  
 Ithamitres 8. 130.  
 Kissians 7. 62. 7.  
 Kyme 7. 194. 6.  
 Lacedaemonians: at Artemisium, 8. 1-3; at Salamis, 8. 43, 8. 85.  
 Laphystian Zeus 7. 197. 3.  
 Lasos 7. 6. 17.

- Laurium 7. 144. 4.  
 Lehadia 8. 134.  
 Lebaea 8. 137.  
 Lemnos, ship of, 8. 11, 8. 82.  
 Leonidas 7. 204-208, 7. 217, 7. 219-225,  
 7. 228 f., 7. 233, 7. 238 f., 8. 15, 8. 21,  
 8. 71, 8. 114.  
 Leontiades 7. 233. 18.  
 Leotychides 8. 131.  
 Leucadians 8. 45, 8. 47.  
 Leuce Acte 7. 25. 9.  
 Libyans 7. 71.  
 Lions 7. 125 f.  
 Locrians 8. 32, 8. 36; Opuntian, 7. 203,  
 7. 207, 8. 1; Ozolian, 8. 32.  
 Lycomedes 8. 11.  
 Lydians 7. 74.  
 Lysicles 8. 21.  
 Lysimachus 8. 79, 8. 95.  
 Lysistratus 8. 96.  
  
 Macedonians 7. 73, 7. 128, 7. 185, 8. 34,  
 8. 127, 8. 137, 8. 138.  
 Maeonians 7. 74. 2, 7. 77. 1.  
 Magi 7. 113. 10.  
 Malis 7. 198, 7. 201, 8. 31; men of, 7.  
 132, 7. 214-216, 8. 43, 8. 66.  
 Mardonius 7. 5. 5, 7. 9 f., 7. 82, 7. 108,  
 7. 121, 8. 26, 8. 67-69, 8. 97, 8. 99-102,  
 8. 107, 8. 113-115, 8. 126, 8. 129-  
 131, 8. 133, 8. 136, 8. 140, 8. 142, 8.  
 143.  
 Mardontes 7. 80, 8. 130.  
 Mascames 7. 106.  
 Masistes 7. 82. 6.  
 Massagetae 7. 18. 10.  
 Maxim 7. 152. 7.  
 Medea 7. 62. 5.  
 Median official dress 7. 116. 3.  
 Medians 7. 62, 7. 86, 8. 89, 8. 113, 8.  
 130.  
  
 Medizing Greeks, oath against, 7. 132.  
 Megabazus 7. 97. 2, 7. 108. 5.  
 Megacreon: (*bon mot*) 7. 120. 1.  
 Megara 8. 60; men of, 8. 1, 8. 45, 8. 74.  
 Megara Hyblaea 7. 156. 10.  
 Megistias 7. 219, 7. 221, 7. 228.  
 Melas River 7. 58. 13.  
 Menares 8. 131.  
 Mesambria 7. 108. 9.  
 Micythus 7. 170. 22 ff.  
 Midas 8. 138.  
 Minos 7. 169.  
 Mnesiphilus 8. 57. 2.  
 Munychia 8. 76.  
 Musaeus 7. 6. 12, 8. 96. 9.  
 Mygdonia 7. 123. 17, 7. 124. 9.  
 Mys 8. 133-135.  
 Mysia 8. 106.  
 Mysians 7. 74.  
  
 Naxians 8. 46  
 Neocles 8. 110.  
 Neon 8. 32-33.  
 Nicander 8. 131.  
 Nike 8. 77.  
 Nisaeen horses and plain 7. 40. 10.  
  
 Ocytus 8. 5, 8. 59.  
 Oenone 8. 46.  
 Oeta 7. 176. 14.  
 Olympia 7. 170, 8. 134.  
 Olympic games 7. 206, 8. 26, 8. 72.  
 Olympus 7. 128. 2, 7. 129. 6.  
 Olynthus 7. 122. 10, 8. 127.  
 Onomacritus 7. 7. 11.  
 Ophryneum 7. 43. 12.  
 Optative S. 17-20.  
 Opuntians 7. 203, 8. 1.  
 Oracles: (to Athenians) 7. 140;  
 (Wooden Wall) 7. 141-143; (to Ar-  
 gives) 7. 148.

- Orchomenus: in Arcadia, 7. 202; in Boeotia, 8. 34.
- Oreithya 7. 189. 4.
- Orneae 8. 73.
- Orpheus 7. 6. 12.
- Ossa 7. 128. 2, 7. 129. 4.
- Otanes 7. 61. 9, 7. 82. 5.
- Othrys 7. 129. 7.
- Ozolian Locrians 8. 32.
- Pactyans 7. 67. 8.
- Paeonians 7. 124. 6, 8. 115.
- Pallene 7. 123.
- Pamphylians 7. 91, 8. 68 γ.
- Panaetius 8. 82.
- Pangaeus, Mount, 7. 112 f.
- Panionius 8. 105-106.
- Panopeus 8. 34-35.
- Paphlagonians 7. 72.
- Parapotamii 8. 33-34.
- Parechesis 7. 89. 7, 7. 129. 8, 7. 194. 10.
- Parians 8. 67, 8. 112.
- Parnassus 8. 27, 8. 32, 8. 35-37, 8. 39.
- Paronomasia 7. 17. 23.
- Paroreatae 8. 73.
- Participle S. 25.
- Particles S. 26-33.
- Patronymic adjectives 7. 106. 5.
- Pausanias 8. 3.
- Pedasians 8. 104-105.
- Pedieis 8. 33.
- Peisistratidae 7. 6. 9, 8. 52.
- Pelasgians 7. 94-95, 8. 44.
- Peleus and Thetis 7. 191.
- Pelion 7. 129. 4, 7. 188, 8. 8, 8. 12.
- Pella 7. 123. 22.
- Peneus 7. 128, 7. 130.
- Perdiccas 8. 137, 8. 139.
- Perfect, periphrastic, 7. 2. 5, 7. 9. 10.
- Periphrasis 7. 5. 3, 7. 99. 3, 7. 105. 2.
- Perrhaebians 7. 128. 8, 7. 132. 2.
- Perseus 7. 11. 23, 7. 61. 13.
- Persian: fleet, 7. 89. 1; supreme court, 7. 194. 9; couriers, 8. 98.
- Persians: 7. 83, 7. 84; lashed into work, 7. 22. 5; lashed into battle, 7. 223. 14; at Salamis, 8. 76, 8. 85.
- Personification 7. 37. 12, 7. 59. 14.
- Phalerum 8. 66, 8. 67, 8. 91-93, 8. 107-108.
- Pharnaces 7. 66, 8. 126.
- Phayllus 8. 47. 8.
- Philaon 8. 11.
- Philip 8. 139.
- Phlegra 7. 138. 8.
- Phliasians 8. 72.
- Phocians 7. 217 f., 8. 27-33.
- Phoenicians 7. 96. 3, 8. 85, 8. 90, 8. 100, 8. 119.
- Phoenix 7. 200. 1.
- Phratagune 7. 224. 10.
- Phrygia 8. 136.
- Phrygians 7. 73.
- Phryxus 7. 197. 4.
- Phylacus, Delphian, 8. 39; Samian, 8. 85.
- Pieria 7. 131. 1.
- Pierians 7. 112. 2.
- Pillars of Hercules 8. 132.
- Pindaricum schema 7. 34. 4.
- Pindus 7. 129. 6, 8. 43.
- Piraeus 8. 85.
- Plataeans 7. 132, 7. 233, 8. 1, 8. 44, 8. 50, 8. 66.
- Pleonasm 7. 37. 10, 7. 40. 3.
- Pluperfect, periphrastic, 7. 119. 16.
- Poetical: figure of speech, 7. 162. 6; plural, 7. 169. 6.
- Pogon 8. 42.
- Polyas 8. 21.
- Polycritus 8. 92-93.
- Polydectes 8. 131.
- Poseidon 8. 55, 8. 129.



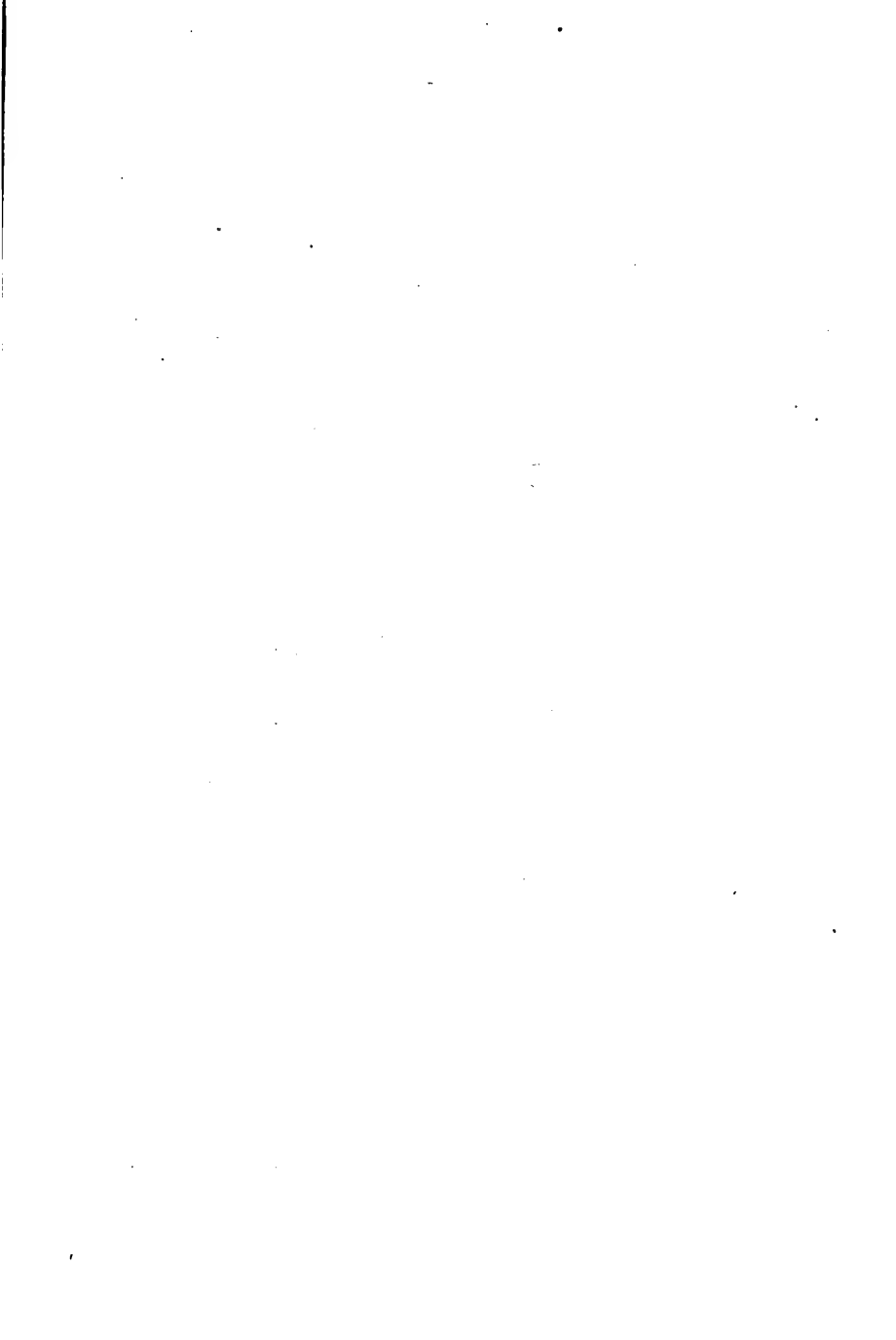
- Positive and negative expressions in juxtaposition 7. 40. 4, 7. 46. 13.
- Potidaea: 7. 123. 5, 8. 127-128; men of, 8. 126-129.
- Prepositions S. 5.
- Present S. 15. 1.
- Prexaspes 7. 97. 2.
- Procles 8. 131.
- Pronaea 8. 37, 8. 39.
- Pronouns S. 9-13.
- Proverbial sayings 7. 10.  $\epsilon$  4, 7. 16.  $\alpha$  2, 7. 57. 6, 7. 203. 10.
- Prytanis 8. 131.
- Psilosis D. 2. 3.
- Psyttaleia 8. 76, 8. 95.
- Ptoon 8. 135.
- Pylagorae 7. 213. 7.
- Pytheas 7. 181, 8. 92.
- Pythia 7. 140. 4.
- Pythius 7. 27. 1, 7. 28. 8, 7. 38. 2.
- Rate of sailing 8. 13. 7.
- Red Sea 7. 80. 2, 7. 89. 8.
- Rheginians and Tarentines, slaughter of, 7. 170. 17.
- Rhetorical questions: 7. 9. 12, 7. 21. 3; figures, 8. 16. 7, 8. 68.  $\gamma$  5.
- Rhodope 8. 116.
- Rhoeteum 7. 43. 11.
- Rivers drunk dry 7. 43. 3, 7. 58. 14, 7. 108. 11, 7. 109. 2, 7. 127. 10, 7. 196. 10.
- Royal road 7. 115. 12.
- Sacians 7. 9. 7, 7. 64. 7. 96. 2, 8. 113.
- Salamis: 7. 141. 23, 7. 142. 15, 7. 143. 7 f., 8. 11, 8. 40-42, 8. 44, 8. 46, 8. 49, 8. 51, 8. 56, 8. 57, 8. 60, 8. 64-65, 8. 70, 8. 74, 8. 76, 8. 78, 8. 82, 8. 86, 8. 89, 8. 90, 8. 94, 8. 95-97, 8. 121-122, 8. 124, 8. 126, 8. 180; (Cyprian) 7. 90. 6, 8. 11; map of, p. 365.
- Samos 8. 85, 8. 130, 8. 132.
- Samothrace 7. 59. 11, 8. 90.
- Sandoces 7. 194. 7.
- Sardis 7. 1. 4, 7. 11. 15, 8. 105, 8. 106, 8. 117.
- Sciathus 7. 176, 7. 179, 7. 183, 8. 7, 8. 92.
- Scione 8. 8, 8. 128.
- Sciras 8. 94.
- Scironian way 8. 71.
- Scribes, royal, 7. 100. 5.
- Scyllias 8. 8.
- Scythes 7. 163. 9.
- Sepias 7. 183. 17, 8. 66.
- Seriphians 8. 46, 8. 48.
- Sicania 7. 170. 2.
- Sicily 7. 163-168, 8. 3.
- Sicinnus 8. 75, 8. 110.
- Sicyonians 8. 1, 8. 43, 8. 72.
- Sidonians 7. 96. 3, 8. 67-68, 8. 92.
- Sigmatism 7. 188. 9.
- Silenus 7. 26. 15, 8. 138.
- Simonides 7. 225. 12, 7. 228. 17.
- Siphnians 8. 46, 8. 48.
- Sirom: (Hiram) 7. 98. 3.
- Sosimenes 8. 82.
- Sousa 7. 3. 3, 7. 151. 3, 8. 54, 8. 99.
- Sparta 7. 3. 11, 7. 234. 9.
- Spartans 7. 104. 4, 8. 2, 8. 42, 8. 114, 8. 124, 8. 125.
- Sperthias and Bulis 7. 134-137.
- Stagirus 7. 115. 7.
- Stentoris, Lake, 7. 58. 17.
- Strattis 8. 132.
- Strymon 7. 24. 8, 7. 113. 4, 7. 114. 4, 8. 115, 8. 118, 8. 120.
- Styrians 8. 1, 8. 46.
- Subjunctive S. 16, 18-20.
- Sun, libations to, 7. 54. 5.
- Sunium 8. 121.
- Supposed case as fact 7. 10.  $\beta$  2.
- Syennesis 7. 98. 4.
- Syleus 7. 115. 6.

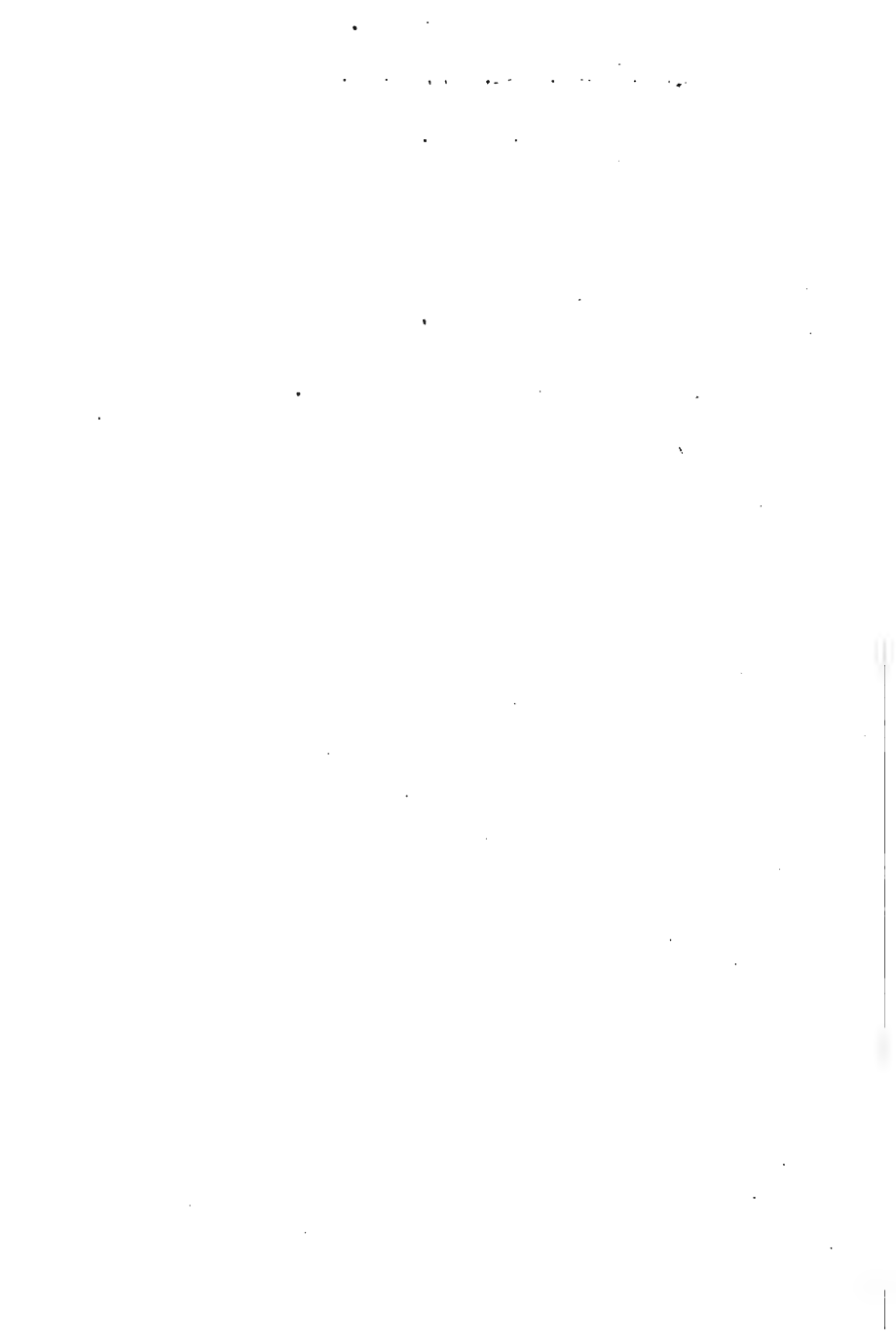
- Talent 7. 36. 21.  
 Talthybius 7. 134. 2, 7. 137. 1.  
 Tegae 7. 170. 8. 124.  
 Telamon 8. 64.  
 Tellias 8. 27.  
 Temenus 8. 137.  
 Tempe 7. 128. 3, 7. 172. 9, 7. 173. 6.  
 Temporal clauses S. 20.  
 Tenians 8. 66, 8. 82-83.  
 Tenses S. 15.  
 Terillus 7. 165. 5.  
 Tethronium 8. 33.  
 Thasians 7. 118. 4.  
 Thebans: retained at Thermopylae, 7. 222; (desert to Persians; survivors are branded) 7. 233; guide Persians, 8. 50.  
 Thebe 7. 42. 5.  
 Themistocles 7. 143. 2, 7. 144. 7. 173. 8. 4, 8. 5, 8. 19, 8. 22, 8. 23, 8. 57-59, 8. 61, 8. 63, 8. 75, 8. 79, 8. 83, 8. 85, 8. 92, 8. 108-112, 8. 123-125.  
 Theoclydes 8. 65.  
 Theodorus' golden plane tree 7. 27. 9.  
 Theomestor 8. 85.  
 Theopompus 8. 131.  
 Therma 7. 121. 4, 7. 124. 5, 7. 127. 1, 7. 183. 13.  
 Thermaic gulf 7. 122. 7, 8. 127.  
 Thermopylae: (pass of) 7. 176; (wall at) 7. 176. 18, 7. 215. 7, 7. 223. 10; (region about) 7. 198-201; (muster roll of Greeks at) 7. 202; (preparations for death struggle) 7. 208 f.; (defense of w. entrance) 7. 210-212; (allies sent home) 7. 219; (Grundy's theory) 7. 220. 7; (final conflict) 7. 223-225; (Simonidean epitaphs) 7. 228; (losses at) 8. 24-25.  
 Theron 7. 165. 4.  
 Thespians 7. 222, 8. 25, 8. 50, 8. 66, 8. 75.  
 Thesprotians 7. 176. 20, 8. 47.  
 Thessalians: medize, 7. 172; enemies of Phocians, 8. 27-32.  
 Thessaly: (geology of) 7. 129, 7. 130; (rivers of) 7. 129.  
 Thracians 7. 75, 8. 115, 8. 116.  
 Thriasian plain 8. 65.  
 Tides 7. 198. 3.  
 Tigranes 7. 62. 3.  
 Timodemus 8. 125.  
 Timoxenus 8. 128.  
 Tithorea 8. 32.  
 Tmesis S. 7.  
 Torone 7. 22. 15, 7. 122. 9, 8. 127.  
 Trachis: (district) 7. 176. 6, 7. 203. 15, 8. 21, 8. 31, 8. 66; (city) 7. 199. 1, 7. 201. 7.  
 Triopion 7. 153. 5.  
 Tritantaechmes 8. 26.  
 Triteis 8. 33.  
 Troezenians 8. 1, 8. 42, 8. 43, 8. 72.  
 Trophonius 8. 134.  
 Tyre 8. 67.  
 Tyrodiza 7. 25. 10.  
 Wish, hortatory, 7. 5. 9.  
 Women, characterizations of, 7. 99. 14.  
 Xanthippus 7. 33, 8. 131.  
 Xerxes: (claim to throne) 7. 2 f.; (genealogy) 7. 11. 8; (dreams) 7. 12-15, 7. 19; (full dress) 7. 15. 16; (magnanimity) 7. 27-29, 7. 136, 7. 146 f.; (entertained by Pythius) 7. 27-29; (punishes Hellespont) 7. 35; (consults Magi about eclipse) 7. 37; (punishes Pythius) 7. 38 f.; (reviews host) 7. 100; (talks with Demaratus) 7. 101-104; (army fed) 7. 118; (at Tempe) 7. 128; (receives earth and water) 7. 130; (enumeration of army) 7. 184-187; (total of army) 7. 185. 13; (army's

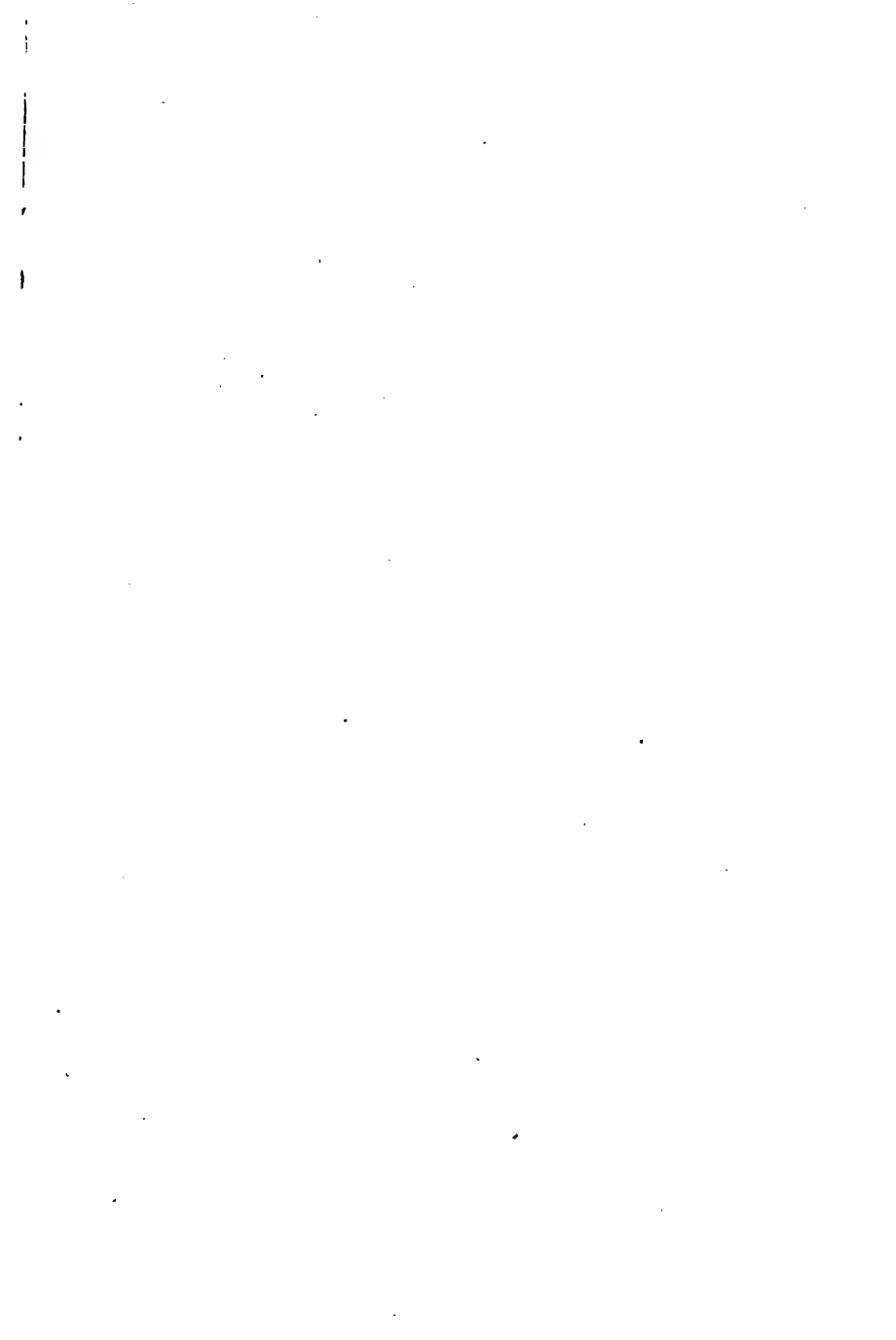
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| daily food) 7. 187. 12; (beauty and stature) 7. 187. 16; (in Thessaly) 7. 196; (sends scout to observe Greeks at Thermopylae) 7. 208; (questions Demaratus) 7. 209; (views assault) 7. 212; (hires Epialtes) 7. 213; (confers with Demaratus) 7. 234 f.; (takes advice of Achaemenes) 7. 237; (maltreats corpse of Leonidas) 7. 238; (takes Athens) 8. 50-54; (holds coun- | cil of battle) 8. 67-69; (at Salamis) 8. 86, 8. 88, 8. 90; (consults about retreat) 8. 97, 8. 100-103; (retreat) 8. 113-120.<br>Xuthus 7. 94. 4, 8. 44.<br>Zeus 8. 115. 18.<br>Zone 7. 59. 11.<br>Zopyrus 7. 82. 8.<br>Zoster 8. 107. |
|--|---|



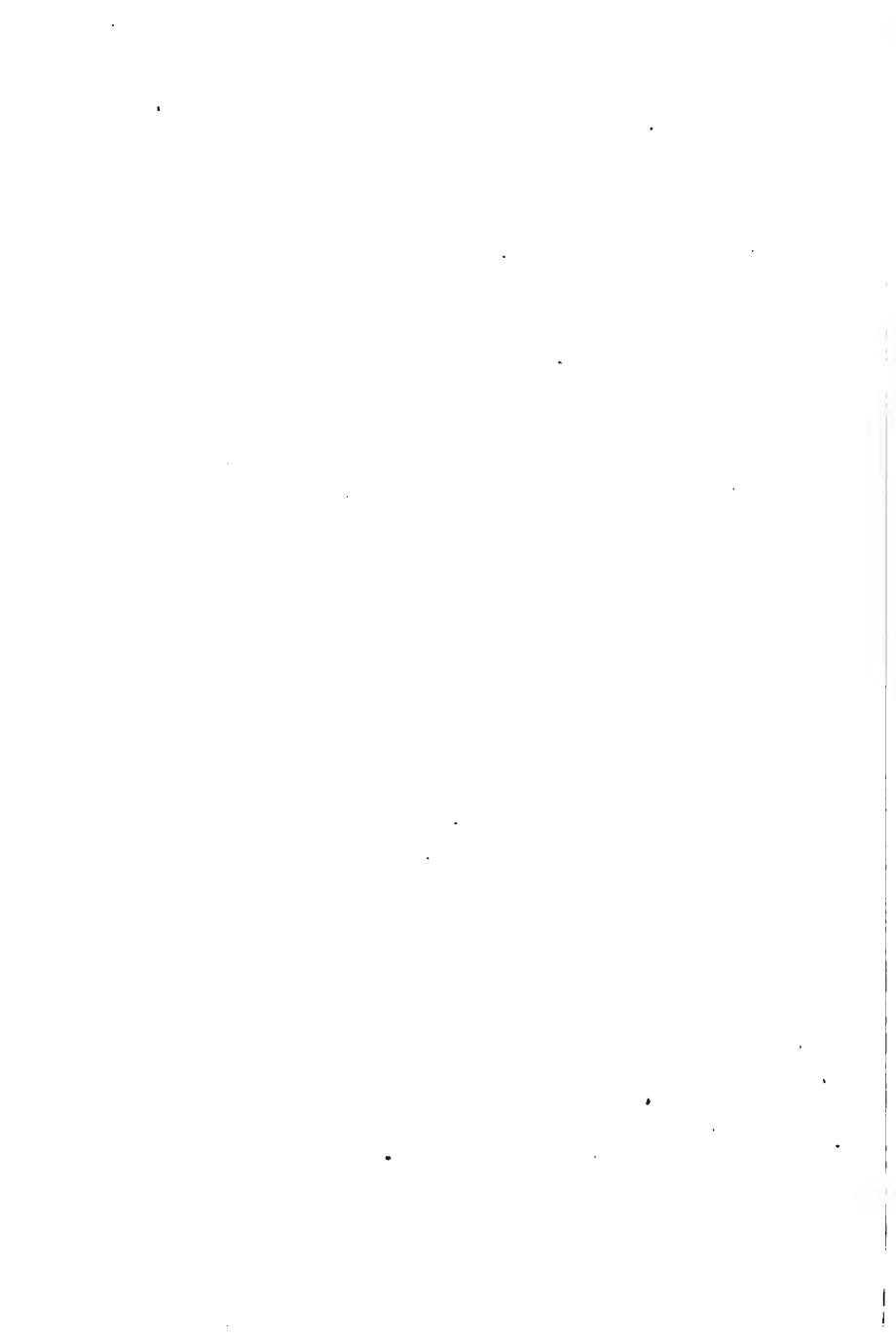


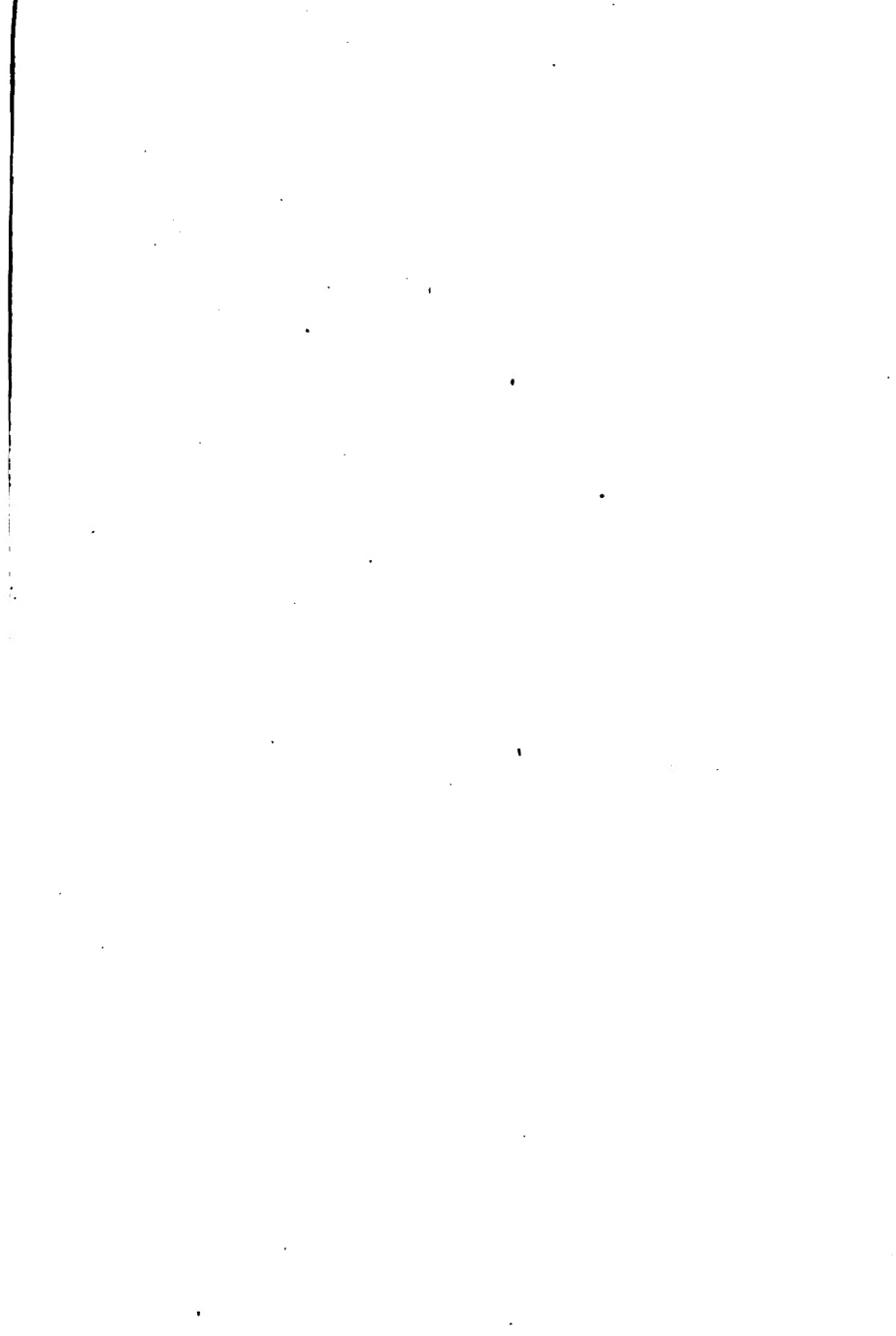














This textbook may be borrowed for two weeks, with the privilege of renewing it once. A fine of five cents a day is incurred by failure to return a book on the date when it is due.

The Education Library is open from 9 to 9 every week day except Saturday when it closes at 5.

DUE

DUE

JAN 3 1923

JAN 17 1923

